



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



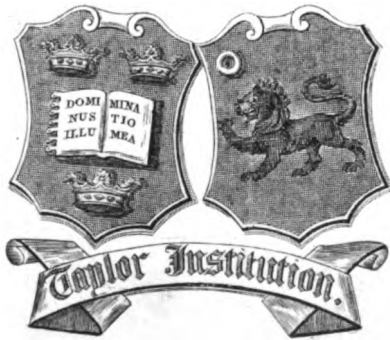
*The Boke of
Duke Huon of Burdeux*

Lord John Bouchier Berners, Sir Sidney Lee

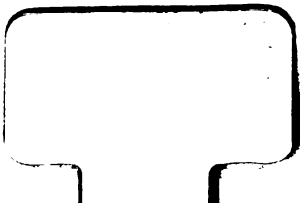
33)
*from a painting by Hans Holbein
now in the possession of the Hon. R. Carruthers Wilson.*

~~16 d. 16~~

~~136 d. 2~~



EETS/ES 40



Guon of Burdeux.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. XL.

1882.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 5, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

THE
ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

The Book of
Duke Huon of Burdeaux

done into English by

Sir John Bourchier, Lord Berners,

and printed by Wynkyn de Worde about 1534 A.D.

EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE COPY OF THE FIRST EDITION,

NOW IN THE POSSESSION OF THE EARL OF CRAWFORD AND BALCARRES,

with an Introduction,

BY

S. L. LEE, B.A.,

BALLIOL COLLEGE, OXFORD.

VOL. I.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL

MDCCCLXXXII, MDCCCLXXXIII.

Extra Series,
XL, XLI.

R. CLAY AND SONS, CHAUCER PRESS, BUNGAY.

THE
ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

PART VII.

The Poë of
Duke Guon of Burdeux

done into English by

Sir John Bourchier, Lord Berners,

and printed by Wynkyn de Worde about 1534 A.D.

EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE COPY OF THE FIRST EDITION,
NOW IN THE POSSESSION OF THE EARL OF CRAWFORD AND BALCARRES,

with an Introduction,

BY

S. L. LEE, B.A.,

BALLIOL COLLEGE, OXFORD.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCLXXXII.

Extra Series,

XI.

CLAY AND TAYLOR, CHAUCER PRESS, BUNGAY.

PREFATORY NOTE.

THE length of this romance has necessitated its publication in two parts. The first part includes the oldest portions of the story, and forms a tale complete in itself.

The opening pages of the Introduction are intended to constitute a general preface to the whole series of English Charlemagne Romances. The later pages deal with the historical and bibliographical points of interest connected with Lord Berners' rendering of the present romance. With the second part will be published an essay on the differences between the language of the first and third editions respectively (*vide* Introd. p. lvi, lvii). Holbein's portrait of the translator will also, it is hoped, appear there. The Hon. H. Tyrwhitt Wilson, the owner of the picture, and a lineal descendant of Lord Berners, has very kindly given permission for its reproduction, but the arrangements necessary for its publication have not yet been completed.

I am desirous of expressing my thanks for assistance rendered me in the preparation of this edition to the Earl of Crawford and Balcarres, whose loan of the unique copy of the book rendered this reprint possible; to Miss Eleanor Marx, who not only undertook the labour of copying the work for the press, but has also corrected the great bulk of the proof sheets; to Mr. R. A. Graves of the British Museum, who aided me very greatly with his wide knowledge when I was attempting to fix the date of the publication of the book; and to Mr. F. J. Furnivall, who, on this as on other occasions, has generously rendered me much assistance. To the works of M. Gaston Paris, M. Paul Meyer, and M. Léon Gautier, I have also been largely indebted, while studying the history of the Charlemagne Romances in France.

S. L. LEE.

26, Brondesbury Villas, London, N. W.
January 10, 1883.

INTRODUCTION.

I.

THE CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES IN FRANCE AND ENGLAND.

- | | |
|---|---|
| § 1. <i>The distribution of the romances</i> , p. vii.
§ 2. <i>Their growth in France</i> , p. viii.
§ 3. <i>The cantilènes</i> , p. ix.
§ 4. <i>La Chanson de Roland</i> , p. x.
§ 5. <i>Its general style</i> , p. xi.
§ 6. <i>Others of its class</i> , p. xiii.
§ 7. <i>Their later development</i> , p. xiii.
§ 8. <i>The family cycles</i> , p. xiv. | § 9. <i>The romances in the 14th century</i> , p. xv.
§ 10. <i>The prose versions</i> , p. xvi.
§ 11. <i>Their subsequent history</i> , p. xvi.
§ 12. <i>The Romances in England</i> , p. xvii.
§ 13. <i>Their classification</i> , p. xviii.
§ 14. <i>Their place in English literature</i> , p. xxi. |
|---|---|

§ 1. OF all the heroes of mediæval Europe Charles the Great has left the deepest impression on its literature. His career has given birth to as vast a series of epic poems and prose romances as any of which we still have visible remains. It was of three "most noble kynges" that French narrative poetry in the early middle ages mainly treated. Alexander of Macedon, Arthur of Brittany, and Charles of France were its moving spirits; and Rome, *les deux Bretagnes*, and France were the countries that it delighted to honour.¹ But the hero who had been the Emperor of the whole western world, and who was often regarded as the first Christian King and the arch-confounder of the Saracens, most powerfully stirred the imagination of the early mediæval poets. And it was not only in the country that claimed to have been the centre of his dominions, that his glorious exploits were recited. France, it must be remembered, throughout the middle ages was the storehouse whence Europe

¹ M. de la Villemarqué (*les romans de la table ronde*, p. 2) says of the fact, "voilà le triple motif poétique dont ils (i. e. les poètes du moyen âge) se plaisaient à tirer des variétés infinies," and quotes the well-known lines from a 13th century poet,—

"Ne sont que trois matières à nul homme entendant :
De France, de Bretagne et de Rome la grand."

chiefly derived its romantic literature. It was a French story-book that Dante represents as having caused the temptation to which Francesca so fatally yielded,¹ and at a time when hero-worship was really a perpetual fact, it was inevitable that the legends of Charles the Great and his fighting men should be everywhere heartily welcomed. In England the poems have not enjoyed so continuous a popularity as elsewhere, but there was a time when to many Englishmen "the holy battles of bold Charlemaine" were (to quote one of their admirers) as familiar as their own thresholds. But in Spain, the Low Countries, in Germany, and in Scandinavian lands, Charles and his companions are numbered among "the paragons of the earth," and each of these countries has enshrined in its popular literature their traditional history. Nor are they wholly unknown in Russia and Hungary; and the Italian poets Boiardo, Ariosto and Tasso, have shed their golden light on many episodes drawn from the French Charlemagne romances, which long before their time had become thoroughly acclimatized in Italy.

§ 2. The development of the Charlemagne romances is an interesting study for the student of literature. But it has been woefully misrepresented by many English writers on the subject.² Known until recently in their prose forms alone, the romances have been regarded as renderings of monkish chronicles; but these, so far from being their progenitors, are themselves largely indebted to the fictions, and the relations between the metrical and prose forms of the romances have been constantly misapprehended. In their early shapes they were always metrical. They grew gradually and imperceptibly out of the traditions of the people, and only the latest of

¹ *Inferno*, v. 66.

² Dunlop, the English historian of fiction, who has attempted a full but very erroneous account of these romances, treats them (with some modifications, it is true) as amplifications of the Latin Chronicle ascribed to Turpin, believed to have been Archbishop of Rheims in the time of Charles. Recent criticism has proved the work to be itself based largely on popular poems, and to have no just claim to the antiquity for a long time ascribed to it. It is not from the pen of Turpin, but from that of two distinct authors living respectively about the middle of the 11th and the beginning of the 12th centuries. Its tone is strongly clerical, and it has of course little right to be regarded as an historical work. Dunlop, moreover, only knew the Charlemagne romances in their prose (*i. e.* their latest) forms.

them can be ascribed to conscious artistic endeavour. They are *Volks-Epen*, and not *Kunst-Epen*: in some respects they are comparable with the Homeric poems, in none with the *Æneid* or *La Gerusalemme Liberata*.

§ 3. In their own life-time the deeds of Charles the Great and of his companions in arms were the subjects of short popular verses sung by the people themselves in the daily intercourse of life. None of the Charlemagne *cantilènes*, as French critics have called the popular poems, have reached us. Few of their class were committed to writing; but we may infer from the testimony of various witnesses that very many at one time existed.¹ In the earliest Charlemagne romances the heroes expect their exploits to be celebrated in song.² From the 7th to the 9th centuries a story of King Clotaire was preserved in verse, and an early mediæval writer describes how Frenchwomen used to sing it together in chorus.³ Written sometimes in German, sometimes in Romance dialects, the *cantilènes* treated of isolated events, briefly and vividly described, and interspersed with exclamations of wonder, joy, and grief, which gave them often a lyrical, rather than an epic, character. In English literature the ballads that found their way into the Anglo-Saxon Chronicle may perhaps be looked upon as most closely resembling them. It is not until nearly the 11th century that professional poets or reciters are met with in French literature. We then find a class of men called *jongleurs* wandering from village to village, from castle to castle, chanting to the accompaniment of a little viol which they carried with them, stories of national or local heroes. It was under their influence that the detached poems were brought together. But hastily united either by themselves, or by professional poets who were known as *trouveurs*, they continued to be expanded or compressed, often on the spur of the moment, as the prejudices of the jongleur or his audience demanded. Nor for nearly three centuries,

¹ M. Gaston Paris. *Histoire Poétique de Charlemagne*, pp. 40, *et seq.*

² *Chanson de Roland*, 1014 and 1466. The edition of the Chanson which I have used is M. Léon Gautier's, published at Tours in 1881.

³ "Carmen publicum juxta rusticitatem per omnium pene volitabat ora ita canentium feminaeque chorus inde plaudendo componebant. "Vita sancti Faronis," quoted from *Historiens de France*, iii. p. 505, by M. Gautier in his *Introd. to Roland*, p. xvij.

after the *trouveurs* had committed most of the poems to writing, did the improvisations cease, and the process was subsequently, and with less excuse, adopted by later copyists. New ideas were introduced to harmonize with the views of each generation of hearers, and, in the days of their decadence, when romances with similar, if somewhat briefer, genealogies were taking their place in popular esteem, attempts were made to embody in the old poems all the characteristics of the new. By such manœuvres as these they were enabled to survive till the invention of printing. Then, clothed in a garb of prose, they were freed from further radical changes, and a fresh lease of popularity which may be said to have not yet expired in France was thus secured for them. None of the Charlemagne romances exist in all these varied forms: some are extant in one shape, some in another; but of all of them such a development may be safely predicated.

§ 4. An examination of the earliest poem concerning Charles the Great, of which any manuscript is extant, will best indicate the leading features of the romances in their classical metrical shape. Like all of its class, it treats of the *deeds* of a single hero closely related to the Emperor, a fact which originally gave the poems the name of *chansons de geste*.¹ The *Chanson de Roland* has been justly placed among the noblest literary monuments of the Middle Ages, and has very many claims, as we shall show later, to the attention of English readers. It dates from the middle of the 11th century. The famous story which it has to tell is the defeat of Charles in the pass of the Pyrenees, and the death of Roland, his nephew, and of eleven other peers, as his chief warriors were called after an institution that comes into prominence in later French history. The incident, like the stories of all the oldest *chansons*, is roughly founded on a strictly historical basis. The episode is related in Eginhard's² authentic record of Charles' life, and to this day the scene of the disaster, the Waterloo of early mediæval France, goes, as

¹ The word *geste* has many meanings in mediæval French. Even in the earliest time it signifies not only an achievement, but the history which chronicles it. Cf. *Roland*—Ço dit la *geste*. 1685, 2095. Later, as we explain below, the word acquired the meaning of family. Traces of this usage appear in *Roland*, cf. v. 788. Deus me confundet, se la *geste* en desment!

² *Vita Karoli*, ix. Passages from this and other historical authorities are quoted and discussed in M. Gautier's *Introd.*, pp. xii-xvi.

in the poem, by the name of Roncevaux or Roncesvalles. In the oral tradition, in which it reached the poet, there are many variations from the historical version, and the changes, to which it has been submitted, admirably illustrate the development that legendary history experienced before and since at the hands of all the *jongleurs de geste*. In 778, the historian informs us, the rear-guard of a vast French army retiring from a campaign in Spain against the Moors, was cut to pieces in the mountains by a band of Gascon rebels, and in the battle Roland, the commander of the Breton coast, and many other imperial officers were slain. In the poem the Gascons become Saracens, in accord with the Crusading temperament which was first growing up in Europe at the time of its composition. Roland is represented as the nephew of Charles in a desire which became more intense in the later poets to unite all their actors by lineal ties. The defeat of the French is attributed to the treachery of Ganelon, one of themselves, from whom afterwards descends the long line of traitors who figure in subsequent romances, and finally the evil doers are signally punished,—in order to give the story the moral tone that is a permanent feature of later *chansons de geste*.¹

§ 5. The general style of the poem closely connects it with the *cantilènes*. Its opening is as brusque as that of the *Iliad*. It assumes on the part of its reader a knowledge of a large number of shorter poems on various subjects, of most of which nothing is now known in France except their names, though one of them has been preserved in an early Icelandic version.² The *Chanson* bears trace of having already undergone many *remaniements*, and of having itself been originally constructed from a series of *cantilènes* narrating episodes of Charles' wars in Spain, bound together by a *jongleur's*

¹ The versification of this poem is identical with that of all except the latest *chansons*. It is written in decasyllabics arranged in stanzas or *tirades* of varying lengths. The verses which number over 4000 in the earliest MSS. are assonanced, that is to say, the vowel sounds of the last syllable in each line of the *tirade* is the same. At the close of each stanza stands the word AOL, which either marks the reciter's pauses or is a rough indication of a musical note.

² Léon Gautier's *Roland*, pp. 60 and 375. The story of the capture of Noples, a little town in Spain, by Charles (Jo vus conquis e Noples e Comibles, v. 198) is preserved in the *Karlamangus Saga*, the Icelandic collection of Charlemagne romances.

improvisations.¹ A simple, persistent religious spirit pervades the poem. Its author was well acquainted with the stories of the Old Testament, and, like Joshua, Charles makes the sun stand still. In the characters of the heroes the poet has successfully portrayed the doughty simplicity and strength, combined with the tenderness of heart that we associate with the German races. They are drawn from Frankish models, and are innocent of Roman culture. Charles himself is of a patriarchal age, of unquestioned courage and irresistible authority, and loves his nephew with a sincerity that, when the catastrophe arrives, gives occasion to a scene of the purest pathos. Roland is a rash warrior filled with a manly affection for his friend Oliver, but at times he displays a childish pride which recalls Achilles to our memory. Female influence finds no place in this or any early poem. Roland, it is true, is affianced to *la belle Aude*, a sister of Oliver, but she plays a curiously insignificant part. Little that is supernatural enters into the story. The miracle that Charles performs, and the invincible nature of Joyeuse and Durendal, the swords of the Emperor and of his nephew, fail to disturb the realistic current of the narrative.²

¹ *Hist. Poët.*, pp. 70, 71.

² The beauty of many portions of the poem and its vivid style may be well illustrated by this short *tirade* (ccv) narrating Roland's death :

“Ço sent Rollanz de sun tens n'i ad plus :
Devers Espagne *gist* en un pui agut.
A l'une main si ad sun piz batut :
'Deus! meie culpe *par* la tue vertut,
De mes pecchiez, des granz e des menus,
Que jo ai fait dès l'ure que nez fui
Tresqu' à cest jur que ci sui consoüz !'
Sun destre guant en ad vers Deu tendut :
Angle de l'ciel i descendent à lui.”—AOI.

The following translation of the passage, which loses very much of the force of the original, may assist some readers. It is taken from Mr. Justice O'Hagan's *Song of Roland* (Lond. 1880), p. 175. The rhymes destroy nearly all the effect of the French rhythm.

“Roland feeleth his hour at hand;
On a knoll he lies towards the Spanish land.
With one hand beats he upon his breast :
'In thy sight, O God, be my sins confessed.
From my hour of birth, both the great and small,
Down to this day, I repent of all.'
As his glove he raises to God on high,
Angels of heaven descend him nigh.”

§ 6. Such are the general characteristics of this and probably very many other early *chansons de geste*. Of the six or seven of identical tone now familiar to us by name, some are still extant, while others are only known from external evidence; they are all referred to the end of the 11th or the beginning of the 12th centuries. They deal with similar military exploits,—with Charles' wars in Saxony, Lombardy, or Apulia.¹ In a few—of a little less early date—an attempt was made to fill in the domestic details of the Emperor's life, and to embody legends of his youth and marriage.² In all, the historical element is still present, though at times it grows very vague. To the *trouveurs* of crusading times, the Saracens are the only known enemies of the French, and the place that the Normans really held in a great part of Europe during Charles' reign is erroneously transferred to them. But in no important respect, except in feebler literary style,—in greater coarseness and in more tedious repetition,—do these poems differ from the *Chanson de Roland*.

§ 7. Towards the close of the 12th century, however, the *Chansons de geste*, and *Roland* with them, gradually underwent further changes. They were lengthened unsparingly, and were inspired with a more distinctly feudal spirit. They glorified the resistance of the barons to their suzerains, in the disintegrating spirit of continental feudalism. To Charles himself little respect is paid. His actions and speeches exhibit him as a feeble dotard,³ and his vassals rise constantly against his authority. "Laissomes ce vieillard qui tous est assotez," says one of the characters in *Guy de Bourgogne*, a *chanson* of the 12th century, and rebellions against his rule form a leading motive in the poems of the date.⁴ The *jongleurs* and *trouveurs* freely reject

¹ Such as *Aspremont* narrating the conquest of Apulia; *les Enfances Ogier*, that of Italy; *Quitain*, that of Saxony; and *Balan*, that of Italy. All of them are not now extant in their early forms, but in their existing shapes have evidently not been radically altered from older originals. Of *Balan*, only a portion is still preserved, which occurs in the later romance of *Fierabras*.—*Hist. Poét.* p. 73.

² Such is *Berte au grand pied*, the history of the mythical mother of Charles, which is evidently a legend of great antiquity, although no reference to Charles' youth occurs in the *Chanson de Roland*.—*Hist. Poét.* p. 73.

³ He is also credited with a revolting sin, cp. Gautier, *Les Epopées Françaises*, iii. 65-6.

⁴ No less than 18 *Chansons* of the period treat of *les guerres de Charlemagne contre ses vassaux*. Among them is Huon of Bordeaux, and Renaud of Montauban, the *Chanson* of the eldest of the four sons of Aymon.

historical traditions, and with little diffidence invent new incidents and characters. The increased influence of the Crusades induced them to send their heroes, and, Charles among the number, to Constantinople, to Jerusalem, and to the further East, and novel adventures are thus provided to meet them at every turn. The female characters grow more important, and every warrior becomes enamoured of a Saracen maiden. The poets were now for the first time entering into rivalry with Chrétien de Troyes, the author of *Percevale*, and of *Eric et Enide*, French versions of the Breton tales of King Arthur, and were incorporating with the old narrative stories of pure adventure and enchantment which harmonized ill with the severe facts of the ancient legends. The romance before us may itself be ascribed in its earliest extant form to this class of *chansons*, and supplies us with copious illustrations of its characteristic features.

§ 8. One other change in principle the *chansons de geste* were slowly experiencing throughout the 13th century. There was something conservative about this new development: although it boldly defied all historical probability, it strictly defined the limits within which the poets, who adopted its method, might allow their imagination to work. Not content with rehearsing the careers of individuals, the attempt was made to combine the separate poems into great cycles, which should narrate the fortunes of families of warriors. The poets recklessly created relationships between the various heroes of the isolated *chansons*, and by endowing them with similar characteristics and destinies, they attempted to force upon their romances some internal unity. Frequently their object was to connect their patrons and their patrons' enemies with warriors or traitors of olden time. Their tone was purely realistic, and the practice gave a new meaning to the word *geste*, and *chansons de geste* were interpreted as family histories. Charles or his father is the progenitor of the chief apocryphal family of the kind, but two other lines are known at least to have been worked up by the *trouveurs* with equal care.¹ Some,

¹ N'ot ke .III. gestes en France la garnie: Dou roi de France est la plus seignoria. . . . Et l'autre après, bien est droit que je die, Est de Doon à la barbe florie. . . . C'il de Maïance qui tant ot baronie. . . . La tierce geste, qui molt fist à proïsier, Fu de Garin de Monglaine le fier. *Girart de Viane*, pp. 1, 2, *chanson* of prob. first years of 13th century, quoted in *Hist. Poët.* p. 76.

like the Labdacidæ and Pelopidæ, were represented as bearing a fatal curse, but no religious notion, as in the Greek stories, was mingled with its transmission. It was wholly ascribed to the accident of blood relationship, and there was no further attempt to explain its cause. Doon of Mayence, the father of one of the *geste*, has, for example, the questionable honour of being regarded by the writers of this class of *Chansons* as the ancestor, through Ganelon, the villain of Roncesvalles, of a whole army of earthly traitors. All who intermarry with his family inevitably grow as sinful as their kinsmen.¹

§ 9. After the 14th century there is little fixed principle in the development of the Charlemagne romances. Additions and interpolations, sequels and prologues of pure invention follow each other in rapid succession. The *jongleurs'* chief endeavour was to catch the popular ear, and with that object before them they adopted every changing literary fashion. It was in vain that the older *trouveurs* protested that they were losing sight of the historical spirit of their predecessors.

“ Chil nouvel jougléor, par leur outrecuidanche
Et pour leur nouviaus dis, l'ont mis en oublianche,”

is the complaint of the author of *Doon de Maience*.² When the Alexandrian romances were at the height of their popularity, their versification was borrowed with its twelve-syllabled lines—a metre still known by the name of the hero which it was first employed to celebrate.³ Similarly, the authors of the *chansons* tried to refine the savagery of their old characters by foisting upon them the gentle courtesy of the Arthurian heroes and heroines. In many of their compositions the magical element of Eastern literature finds a large place, and in the later Middle Ages their successors made no resistance to the spurious chivalry that overran all the literature and social life of the period.⁴ At the same time Charles' history, as it was narrated

¹ The Chanson *Doon de Maience* dates from the 14th century. Alxinger, the German poet, attempted to make of a later form of it an epic poem in 1787.

² Ed. Pey. p. 1, quoted in M. Guessard's *Introd. to Huon*, p. vij.

³ The poem of *Roland* actually underwent the alteration. Cf. M. Gautier's *Introd.*, p. xxxvij. *Huon* and other poems were wholly rewritten in Alexandrines.

⁴ *Vide*, for example, the changes that came over the story of *Ogier le Danois*, of which a great portion exists in a 12th century version. In the latest version the hero visits the palace of Avallon, and is saved by the fairy Morgana, the sister of King Arthur, who, also living there, is visited by the Knights of his

in the *chansons*, found its way into the Chronicles and Latin ecclesiastical poems,¹ as at an earlier date the traditional poetry concerning Roland had entered the Chronicle wrongly ascribed to Turpin, and there the legends were fated to assume a markedly clerical tone.

§ 10. About the date of the invention of printing the metrical romances received their final form.² They were reduced in their contemporary shape to prose, and were soon afterwards printed and published. Many of them are characterized by the affectations and intricacies of style which Cervantes has powerfully satirized in his introduction to *Don Quixote*. But the earliest *Chansons* have for the most part escaped this final desecration. The simplicity of the *Chanson de Roland* did not satisfy the perverted literary tastes of an age which was wont to "praise Syr Topaz for a noble tale." All knowledge of it in its purest shape was lost; the manuscripts containing it disappeared, and the one revealing it to us in its 11th century form was only recovered during the present century.

§ 11. We need not dwell for our present purpose on the later history of the Charlemagne romances. The rise of the theatre did not affect them. With their characters continually repeated, with their perpetual battles, with their lack of female interest, they did not lend themselves to dramatization, and with only one or two was the experiment ever made in France. A few poems, based on incidents in Charles' romantic career, appeared in France in the 17th century. Napoleon, who posed in Europe as the 19th century Charlemagne, encouraged the study of his authentic and fictitious history, and his brother Lucien had the temerity to publish a volume of verses on "le digne précurseur de son frère." The romantic movement of the last century did not immediately affect the Charlemagne romances. They were known only in the late and degenerate prose versions, and although extracts from them were published in *La Bibliothèque des Romans* about 1778, all trace of their development was sought in vain. It was in the 19th century

Round Table. Ogier's magical return to youth, and all the magical machinery of the late romance are probably of Eastern origin. See *Hist. Poét.* pp. 305-13; and Dunlop, *Hist. of Fiction* (edit. 1845), pp. 138-140.

¹ *Hist. Poét.* pp. 92-107.

² Prose versions of thirteen *Chansons* were printed in France between 1480 and 1500.—*Hist. Poét.* p. 470.

that a vigorous and sustained effort was first made to learn their history, and to rediscover their original forms. The result of this endeavour, with which the name of Paulin Paris must be chiefly connected, has been to give the metrical romances a place among the most cherished remains of French mediæval poetry, and to raise about them a gigantic critical literature.

§ 12. If we carefully bear in mind the development of the French Charlemagne romances, which has here been very briefly sketched, we can readily determine the relations to which those that have been introduced into England stand towards them. One criticism may be made on nearly the whole of the English series. They almost all bear trace of being mere translations from French originals, although these have not always reached us. New details are occasionally introduced, but their leading features are literally borrowed, nor have the translators chosen the best or purest models. They have taken *chansons de geste* of the 14th and 15th centuries, and those of an earlier date appear to be unknown to them. The explanation, that a learned French critic has suggested for the fact is probably the true one. "At the time when our epic poetry was flourishing," he says, "that is, in the 13th and far more in the 12th centuries, our *chansons de geste* did not require translation to be understood in England by all whom they could interest; and in the 14th century when English writers wished to appropriate some of them, the old poems had been re-written, and the best of the early ones forgotten."¹ The circumstances that the *Chanson de Roland*, believed by several French writers to be the work of a Norman,² was read as generally in England as in France, and that the earliest extant manuscript of another *Chanson* of the 12th century, relating to Charles' apocryphal travels, leaves no doubt that it was prepared for Anglo-Norman readers,³ gives the best possible support to such criticism. The small effect that the English Charlemagne romances (except in the special case of *Huon of Bordeaux*) have had on our later literature is

¹ M. Paul Meyer in *La Bibliothèque de l'École des Chartes* (1867), p. 309.

² Such is the opinion of M. Gautier, *Introd. to Roland*, pp. xix—xxiv.

³ Cp. *Charlemagne*, an Anglo-Norman poem now first published by M. Francesque Michel, 1836. The MS. is in the Brit. Museum. King's Library, 16, E. viii.

attributable mainly to two causes. In the first place their literary inferiority must be generally acknowledged, and in the second they were in constant rivalry with the Arthurian romances which, although also borrowed from France, appealed more nearly to the history of our own past, and attracted by their gentle chivalrous tone, and their greater abundance of human interest, many writers possessed of a literary power which effectually naturalized them in this country. But it would be as serious an error to under-estimate, as to over-estimate, the influence of the Charlemagne literature in this country, and for myself I believe it has not yet, as a whole, been adequately measured.

§ 13. Including all the fragments of which we have any remains, the English romances are ten in number. Several of them treat of the same legend. Seven are in a metrical form, and have been referred to dates varying from the middle of the 14th to the opening of the succeeding century. Three are translations of prose versions, and appeared in England soon after the invention of printing.¹ The quasi-

¹ For the use of students the general results at which the editors in this series have arrived as to the number, date, and origin of the English Charlemagne Romances may be tabulated thus:

ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.		PROBABLE ORIGINS.
A. <i>Fierabras</i> cycle.		
Metrical.	1. <i>The Sordone of Babylone</i> (? 1400).	1. An early version of the <i>Fierabras</i> story in <i>Balan</i> , a lost <i>Chanson</i> (12th c.).
	2. <i>Sir Ferumbras</i> (? 1380).	2. <i>Fierabras, Chanson de geste</i> (13th c.).
Prose.	3. <i>Charles the Grete</i> , 1485 [Caxton].	3. French prose romance of <i>Fierabras</i> (15th c.), formed of the <i>Ch. de g.</i> with extracts and additions from late Chronicles.
B. <i>Otinell</i> (or <i>Otuel</i>) cycle.		
Metrical.	1. <i>a. Roland and Vernagu.</i>	1. <i>a</i> & <i>β</i> . Remnants of a small English cycle, of which <i>a</i> is probably based on Chroniclers' (and mainly Turpin's) summaries of <i>Chansons</i> , not now known.
	<i>β. Otuel</i> [Auchinleck M ^s .].	<i>β</i> . Derived from a version of <i>Otinell</i> other than that in the extant <i>Chanson</i> of the name.
	2. <i>Sege of Melayne</i> (? 139).	2. Late prologue to <i>Ch. de g. Otinel</i> (13th c.) not extant in France.
	3. <i>Otuel</i> [Thornton MS.] ? 1390.	3. <i>Otinell, Chanson de geste</i> (13th c.).

historical events, to which all with four exceptions refer, are prior to the great expedition to Spain, in which Roland met his death, but they have a very vague historical foundation. The death or conversion of Saracen chiefs, and the marriage of their hastily-baptized daughters with Christian heroes are invariably the central motives of the poems, and the French warriors are challenged to fight with truly 'damnable iteration' by Saracen giants like Ferumbras, Otuel, and Vernagu. The early romances do not evince strong crusading tendencies so distinctly as an emphatic ecclesiastical or theological tone of thought, which is not present in any but the late French poems. *Fierabras* and *Otinel*, two well-known *chansons de geste*, have inspired the greater number of the Early English romances. They narrate the struggles between Charles, as the champion of the Papacy, and the Saracen enemies of Rome; in the first romance the Emperor's object is to recover *les reliques de la Passion*, and in the second to baptize the leading opponent of Christianity. In their extant French forms both poems date from the 13th century; but they bear traces of having already undergone frequent *remaniements*, and although they are free from the extravagant interpolations common to those of a later date, they are far from being the best literary examples of their class. Of *Fierabras*, *Sir Ferumbras*, the metrical romance, which appeared first in this series, is a fairly literal English rendering,¹ and Caxton's prose romance of *Charles the Grete* is translated from an extended French prose version of the same *Chanson*.² *Fierabras*, in an earlier form, originally constituted the central portion of a longer poem known to some early chroniclers, under the

C. Detached Romances.

Metrical.	{	1. <i>Roland's Song</i> (? 1400).	1. <i>Remaniement</i> (13th c.), of <i>Chanson de Roland</i> , now unknown.
		2. <i>Rauf Coilyear</i> (c. 1475).	2. Most probably original.
Prose.	{	3. <i>Four sons of Aymon</i> , 1490 [Caxton].	3. French prose version (15th c.) of the <i>Ch. de g.</i> , <i>Renaud de Montauban</i> (13th c.).
		4. <i>Huon of Bordeaux</i> , ? 1534 [Berners].	4. French prose version (15th c.) of the <i>Ch. de g.</i> <i>Huon de Bordeaux</i> (13th c.).

¹ The English Charlemagne Romances, Pt. I. *Sir Ferumbras*, edited by Sidney J. Herrtage. B.A., E. E. T. S. 1879. (From Ashmole MS. 33.)

² Pts. III. and IV. ed. S. J. Herrtage. 1880-1. (From unique Brit. Mus. copy.)

title of *Balan*, and the *Sordone of Babylone*, which is evidently an adaptation of a more detailed version of the opening part of the story of Fierabras than that to be found in the surviving *Chanson*, is probably based on a portion of the lost cycle, doubtless extant in the time of the English translator.¹ Similarly, *Otinel* has given birth to two metrical translations, of which the one in the Thornton MS. adheres with much literalness² to the *Chanson*, as we now have it, and the other, in the Auchinleck MS., is altogether freer in its general treatment, and perhaps drawn from a *remaniement* other than any we now possess.³ The two romances of *The Sege of Melayne*⁴ and *Roland and Vernagu*⁵ can be referred to no known French poems, but we must hesitate before pronouncing them original English productions. The former is probably taken from some introduction to *Otinel*, written at the period when every Charlemagne legend was receiving various amplifications. The latter is reasonably thought by M. Gaston Paris, to have belonged to an English poem of the 14th century, bearing some such title as 'Charlemagne and Roland,' mainly based on extracts from Turpin's Chronicles and a late version of *Otinel*.

Of the remaining English romances the fragment of the Song of Roland is drawn from a poor 13th century version of the great *Chanson de Roland*.⁶ Caxton's *Four Sons of Aymon*⁷ and Lord Berner's *Huon of Borleaux*,⁸ are both direct translations of French prose romances, that is, of amplified and corrupted versions of two 13th century *chansons de geste*, *Renaud de Montauban*, and *Huon de Bordeaux*. Rauf Coilzear, in the absence of all evidence to the contrary, has been regarded as an original English poem.⁹ It is evidently of a late date, and its connection with the other Charlemagne legends is very slight. Thus almost all the English romances share the characteristics of those *chansons de geste* which have under-

¹ Pt. V. *The Romance of the Sordone of Babylone*, edited by Dr. Hausknecht (E. E. T. S.). 1881. (From Phillipps' MS.)

² Pt. II. pp. 53-105. Ed. by S. J. Herbage. (E. E. T. S.) 1880.

³ Pt. VI. pp. 65, *et seq.* Ed. S. J. Herbage. (E. E. T. S.) 1882.

⁴ Pt. II. pp. 1-53.

⁵ Pt. VI. pp. 1-65.

⁶ Pt. II. pp. 105-137. (From unique Lansdowne MS.)

⁷ Pt. IX. (Not yet reprinted.)

⁸ Pts. VII. and VIII. (1882.)

⁹ Pt. VI. (1882.)

gone numerous renovations. Of the Charlemagne poems in their purest shapes English literature clearly knows nothing.

§ 14. Of the popularity of each of these poems, which in the case of *Ferumbras* and *Otuel* was certainly great in the 14th and 15th centuries, evidence has been given in the prefaces to the various volumes that have already been published, but in the general survey I am here taking I may bring together a few general facts to demonstrate the limits of their influence. We believe that in the early Middle Ages our Norman ancestors were generally well acquainted with the great incidents of the series of legends, although of the vastness of the cycle they knew little. Descriptions of Charles and stories of Roland, for example, were certainly received here with universal favour. It is very probable, as many have pointed out, that the *Chanson de Roland* was sung by the Normans at the battle of Senlac.¹ M. Gautier is of opinion that it is the work of an Anglo-Norman poet, and some French critics have even ascribed it to a famous abbot of Peterborough.² Beside these disputable opinions we may place the facts that the earliest and chief manuscript of this poem has been for many centuries, and is still, in an English library, and that Anglo-Norman versions of other Charlemagne romances leave no doubt that they were largely read in England in the 12th and 13th centuries. Norman-French poems of the period, moreover, always do honour to Charlemagne and Roland. In some verses, in an early English poem, probably of the time of Edward I., we meet with such a passage as this :

Fele romanses men make newe
Of good knyghtes strong and trewe ;
Of hey dedys men rede romance,
Both in England and in Fraunce,
Of Rowelond and of Olyver
And of everie Doseper.³

In later times the Pyrenees were always identified in England with the disaster of Roncesvalles, and when the Black Prince's expedition to

¹ Mr. Herrtage quotes the famous lines from Wace's *Roman de Rou* on the point (Pt. II. of the Series, p. xix). Mr. Freeman, in his *Norman Conquest* (iii. 478), is of opinion that Wace's statement refers to the *Chanson*.

² Introd. to *Roland*, xiv-xxvi.

³ Quoted in Warton's *English Poetry* from an introductory poem to *Richard Cœur de Lion* (temp. Ed. I.), ii. p. 25. (Hazlitt's Edition.)

Spain was celebrated in a Latin poem, a monkish gloss reminded its readers that *Carolus magnus rediens de Hispania amisit ibi Rothelande et caeteros in Rouncivale sepultos*.¹ Chaucer, moreover, and other poets knew Ganelon, the traitor of Roncesvalles, as a typical villain, worthy of a place beside Judas Iscariot or Sinon.² One circumstance in the legend of Roland—his friendship for Oliver—has given us a very common proverbial phrase which France never possessed.³ Spenser, like many of his predecessors from the time of Robert of Brunne, has anglicized the word *douzeperes*, which in the Charlemagne romances is the technical name of the twelve chief companions of the Emperor, and uses it in the singular in the sense of a mighty warrior.⁴ And for a long time in England the fame of the defeat of Roncesvalles survived in a common adjectival epithet, and a strong voice or a strong woman was known as a *rouncival* voice or a *rouncival* woman.⁵

After the Middle Ages Charles the Great grew less familiar to Englishmen, but he was not unknown to them, and the prose romances, which only show him in inglorious dotage, were widely read. More than one play in the 16th century was based on his exploits and those of his companions, and Dyce's statement that he was unacquainted with any old play in which that monarch figures must be regarded as based on imperfect information.⁶ We

¹ Wright's *Political Poems*. i. 105. (Rolls' Series.)

² Chaucer, *Nonne Prestes Tale*, 15,232-4. The Fox is thus addressed:—

“O false morderour, rucking in thy den!

O newe Scariot, *nowe* Genecon,

O false dissimulour, O Greek Sinon.”

See also *Monkes Tale*, 14,653-6.

³ The exact origin of *A Roland for an Oliver*, which is omitted, so far as I can see, from W. C. Hazlitt's *English Proverbs*, has never been explained. The French expression of the same character runs—*Je lui baillerai Guy contre Robert*. A discussion some years ago, in *Notes and Queries*, as to the growth of the phrase, failed to throw any real light on the subject.

⁴ Cp. ‘Big-looking, like a doughty Doucepere,’ *Fuerie Queene*, III. x. 30. Warton in his *Observations on the Fuerie Queene* (i. 252-8) gives an instructive account of the use of the word in England.

⁵ Nares' Dict. (ed. Halliwell and Wright), s.v. *Rouncivall*, large, strong. ‘Th'art a good *rouncival* voice to cry lantern and candlestick.’—*Satiricall*. Speaking of gigantic bones seen at Roncesvalles, Mandeville says, ‘Hereof I take it comes that seeing a great woman we say she is a *Rouncevall*.’—*Travels*. Fol. 22. Ed. 1600. Similarly, Tusser, as Mr. Herrtage points out to me, calls marrow-fat peas, ‘*runcivall* peas.’—*Husbandry*, ch. xli. l. 9.

⁶ Dyce's *Peete*, ii. 88.

have at least one drama in manuscript, of which he is the hero,¹ and two others are known to have existed, although no longer extant, in which he must have played an important part.² Meanwhile Roland or Orlando was re-introduced to English readers in Elizabeth's reign by Sir John Harrington's popular translation of Ariosto's *Orlando Furioso*, and upon this foundation Robert Greene based one of his tame dramatic productions.³ And, though the Roland of the Italian poet differed very much from his prototype in the *chansons de geste*, his reappearance in a new form temporarily renewed their familiarity with his name and many of his characteristic adventures.

Shortly after the 16th century, Charles the Great and Roland, like other mediæval heroes, were practically lost sight of in England, and little attempt has since been made to revive an interest in their legendary history. Not even in chap-books were their achievements perpetuated, and they failed to attract the genius of any great literary worker who might have given them a lasting place in the higher branches of our literature. We have in all periods to seek in somewhat obscure places for indications of their popularity, and, although we may legitimately infer that the Charlemagne heroes were ever held in high honour in mediæval and Tudor England, and although we know that they made their way into the common parlance of our countrymen, we cannot regard them, with one exception, as leaving upon our literature any deep or permanent impression.

¹ My friend, Mr. A. H. Bullen, has pointed out to me the Egerton MS., 1994, in the British Museum, where the play is to be found. He has given an account of it in the 2nd volume of his *Collection of Old Plays*, and I have there, at his request, added a note on the manner in which the legend, embodied in the play, reached this country.

² They were based on Caxton's *Four Sons of Aymon* and Berners' *Huon of Bordeaux*. Vide Henslowe's *Diary*, and *infra*, p. xlvi.

³ *The Historie of Orlando Furioso, one of the Twelve Pieres of France*. 1594. *Infra*, p. xlix.

II.

THE ROMANCE OF HUON OF BORDEAUX.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>§ 1. <i>The 13th century Chanson de geste</i>, p. xxiv.</p> <p>§ 2. <i>Its story</i>, p. xxv.</p> <p>§ 3. <i>Its main characteristics</i>, p. xxvi.</p> <p>§ 4. <i>Historical traditions of Huon</i>, p. xxviii.</p> <p>§ 5. <i>The origin of the Oberon-legend</i>, p. xxix.</p> <p>§ 6. <i>The character of Oberon in the early romance</i>, p. xxxi.</p> <p>§ 7. <i>Amplifications of the Romance</i>, p. xxxii.</p> <p>§ 8. <i>The continuations in the Turin Manuscript</i>, p. xxxiii.</p> <p>§ 9. <i>Other developments of the story in France and Holland</i>, p. xxxv.</p> <p>§ 10. <i>The French prose version</i>, p. xxxvi.</p> | <p>§ 11. <i>Later history of the romance in France</i>, p. xxxvii.</p> <p>§ 12. <i>The English translation</i>, p. xxxviii.</p> <p>§ 13. <i>The political career of Lord Berners</i>, p. xl.</p> <p>§ 14. <i>His literary character</i>, p. xlii.</p> <p>§ 15. <i>His translation of Froissart</i>, p. xliv.</p> <p>§ 16. <i>Other works</i>, p. xlv.</p> <p>§ 17. <i>Lord Berners' death</i>, p. xlv.</p> <p>§ 18. <i>Romances in Elizabethan England</i>, p. xlvi.</p> <p>§ 19. <i>Popularity of Huon of Bordeaux, 1547—1594</i>, p. xlviii.</p> <p>§ 20. <i>Oberon in English literature</i>, p. xlix.</p> <p>§ 21. <i>Bibliography of Huon of Bordeaux</i>, p. lii.</p> <p>§ 22. <i>Conclusion</i>, p. lvii.</p> |
|--|--|

§ 1. The romance of *Huon of Bordeaux* illustrates in several ways the general remarks I have been making on both the French and English versions of the Charlemagne legends, but, beyond the characteristics that it has in common with its class, it possesses certain features peculiar to itself, that perhaps give it its highest interest in the eyes of English readers. In France it has undergone a very extended development, capable of a clearer presentation than in the case of many other of the *chansons de geste*; in England, translated almost literally, it has not only enjoyed its full share of popularity, but, by supplying the Elizabethan poets with the story of Oberon, has exerted upon English literature an influence to which no other members of its class can legitimately lay claim.

None of the forms in which we know the romance of *Huon* can be referred to a very early date. The oldest extant *chanson de geste* on the subject, the manuscript of which is now in the library of

Tours, possesses hardly any of the characteristics of the *Chanson de Roland*.¹ Its incidents are more complicated, and belong for the most part to a very different world. The central interest of the poem is divided between the peer of France, who plays the title-*rôle*, and an omnipotent and omniscient dwarf, who adorns the throne of fairy land. It is impossible to ascribe the story, as it first appears, to any date anterior to the middle of the 13th century. Four times was it probably rewritten in metre before the invention of printing, when it was reduced to prose in France, and in that garb brought to our own shores. But in spite of the amplifications and continuations that the tale has experienced—changes which have more than tripled its original length—the first half of both the French and English prose versions has preserved with little alteration the story as it appears in the 13th century *chanson*. The chapters printed in the volume before us present the old story in its original literary shape. The last portion of Lord Berners' translations, like his French original, owes its origin to sources of far less antiquity.

§ 2. So much of the legend of Huon as reverts to the 13th century is to the following effect. The story in the *Chanson* opens four years after the death of Séguin, the duke of Bordeaux. His two young sons, Huon and Gerard, who have inherited his property, have not as yet done homage to the Emperor, their suzerain. But their troubles have already begun. A traitor at Charles' court, Earl Amaury by name, covets their inheritance, and on the ground that they have not already acknowledged in person their vassalage, denounces them to Charles as rebels against his authority. The Emperor at the moment is of great age and feeble health, and, being about to resign his crown in favour of his son Charlot, is desirous that his supremacy should be recognized in every part of his dominions. Huon and Gerard are, therefore, ordered to appear at once before him at Paris, or forfeit their estates to the Earl, who

¹ For an account of the MS. see M. Guessard's edition of the poem, Paris, 1860, p. xxxix. *et seq.* Its versification is like that of *La Chanson*, but its tirades are much longer, extending at times to 500 vv. The length of the *Chanson* is 10,495 lines. Neither the name nor province of the author is known.

had called the Emperor's attention to their dereliction of duty. Well aware that they could give satisfactory proofs to their royal master of their loyalty, the traitor, as soon as he learnt that the youths were on their way to the capital, induced the prince Charlot, Charles' elder son, over whom he exercised unlimited control, to join him in a plot for waylaying and killing them on their journey. But his plans were unsuccessful. Charlot wounds Gerard, but is himself slain by Huon. The Emperor, on learning the death of his son, vows eternal vengeance upon his murderer. A duel between Huon and Amaury, which proves fatal to the latter, only inflames his wrath, and he finally dismisses the young knight on a grotesque, but perilous, and, to all appearance, fatal mission to Babylon. There the first part of the *chanson de geste* of Huon of Bordeaux may be said to close, and in the remaining verses the form of the story somewhat changes. Very perilous indeed are the adventures that Huon meets in the East, although he is fortunate enough to find a companion in Gerames, an old friend of his father's, who is living a hermit's life among the Saracens. To most of the dangers he must have succumbed, had he only relied on human means of protection. Happily, however, he finds other aid. Oberon, the dwarf-king of the fairies, whose dominions lie between Jerusalem and Babylon, taking pity on the knight's misfortunes, proffers his assistance, and with such support Huon not only successfully performs his mission, but woos and marries Esclaramonde, the daughter of the Emir of Babylon, on her conversion to Christianity. On his return to France the treachery of his brother Gerard plunges him once again into difficulties, but Oberon extricates him from the new dangers, reconciles him to the Emperor, and ultimately names him his successor on the throne of fairy land.

§ 3. The story, it will be perceived, has all the characteristics which were attributed to the *chansons de gestes* in their decline. Charlemagne has no dignity about his bearing. His power is jealously regarded by his vassals, and he is more than once placed in a position of signal humiliation. "Syr, yf ye do as ye haue sayde," are the words addressed to him by one of his counsellors in Lord Berners' version, which here almost literally translates the old French poem—"Sir, yf ye do as ye haue sayd, I nor neuer any other man shall truste you,

& euery man shall say, fare & nere, that herof (hear of) thys extorsyon, that in the end of your dayes ye are become chyldysche, & more lyke a sot then a wyse man."¹ Other circumstances are still more decisive. A reference to Tristram's love for the "fayre Ysoude" and some points in the genealogy of Oberon, indicate that the author was acquainted with the Arthurian romances,² and Huon's statement that he "departyd out of fraunce . . . That any aduenture that I myght here of, though it were neuer so perelous that I shulde neuer eschew it for any fere of deth," brings him in close relations with the heroes of the *romans d'aventures*.³ The absurd length to which the writer pushes the endeavour, that characterizes the later poems of the *jongleurs*, to bring his hero into lineal relationship with all sorts and conditions of men with whom he comes in contact on his journeyings, is another testimony to the lateness of the present form of the legend.⁴ The important place which the enchantments of Oberon hold in the story, the care bestowed on the treatment of the character and influence of Esclaramonde, the hero's bride, and the extravagant unreality of Huon's adventures in the East, likewise supply conclusive evidence in favour of a similar inference. The 13th century *Chanson* must be positively placed among those romances which attempt to graft on the simple lines of the pure *chansons de geste* the varied incident of the tales of the Round Table, and the magical machinery of Eastern stories like the *Arabian Nights' Entertainment*.

¹ *Infra*, p. 47, ll. 9, *et seq.*—

"Quant les noveles iront par la pais

Que diront tout li haut homme jentil?
 Vos jugemens n'ert mais en France ois,
 Tout diront mais, li grant et li petit;
 Qu'en vo vellece estes tous rasotis."

Huon de Bordeaux, ll. 22-29, *et seq.*

See also, Oberon's reference to the Emperor's fatal sin, ll. 10,225, *et seq.*, and *infra*, p. 258.

² *Infra*, p. 157, l. 27, *Huon de Bordeaux*, l. 6808,—

"Tristrans morut por bele Iseut amer."

For Oberon's genealogy see below, pp. 72-3.

³ *Infra*, p. 97, l. 1, *et seq.*, and *Huon*, l. 4595, *et seq.*

⁴ Huon claims relationship with the Pope of Rome, with the Abbot of Cluny, with Garyn of Saint Omers, a lord of Brindisi, with Macaire, the pagan tyrant of Tormont, with Sebylle, the prisoner of the castle of Dunostre, and many others, as the reader will perceive for himself.

§ 4. There are many traces in the poem itself of a legend of a previous period, devoid of such embellishments as I have noticed,— of a *chanson* celebrating Huon's exploits before an enchanted world had become a commonplace with the *trouveurs* or *jongleurs*. Much of the versification of the 13th century, for example, has an older rhythm.¹ The story of the causes of Huon's banishment, after a few slight modifications have been made, has an early mediæval tone,² and, although the historical element is not readily detected, it is easy to perceive that in it has been incorporated many vague memories of early historical events. An early chronicler tells us how a duke of Bordeaux, whose son once challenged Charlot, the Emperor's heir, bore, like the father of the hero of the romance,³ the name of Séguin. Instances, moreover, of such disagreement with the ruler of France as Huon exhibits, occur frequently in the history of the princes of Aquitaine in the 8th century. Similarly, an early manuscript of an epic poem of the 12th century, narrating the exploits of the chief warriors of Lorraine—*Les Loherains*,—contains seventeen verses which tell how Huon, the son of duke Séguin of Bordeaux, slew an earl at Paris, and, being for the crime banished the Empire, went to Lombardy, where he married the daughter of a Count, and finally died of poison.⁴ If this form of the legend has little claim to be considered of the highest antiquity, it sufficiently proves that Oberon was not originally the protector of Huon after his banishment, and that his journey to the East may be regarded as purely apocryphal. But a closer parallel to the adventures of Huon at Paris has been found by a recent writer in *Romania*, in historical facts which possibly have a better claim to be considered as the prototype of the tale. Certain events that took place under Charles the Bald are almost identical with those recorded in the first part of the romance. And, if we allow the general resemblance, the confusion of identity between the Emperor and his grandson, an error that could be

¹ This and the recurrence of the same couplets are noted by M. Gautier in his support of this view.—*Les Epopées Françaises*, iii. 732.

² That is to say, the first 2000 lines of the *Chanson* and just 20 chapters of this text (pp. 1-53).

³ *Les Epopées Françaises*, iii. 732.

⁴ Quoted by M. Gautier (as above).

paralleled in all popular literature, need not cause us much embarrassment. During the reign of Charles the Bald, authentic records tell us, the county of Bordeaux was governed by a duke, named Séguin, whose bold defence of Saintonge against the Normans, usually confounded in the French national traditions with the Saracens, exactly fitted him to be the hero of popular *cantilènes* and of later epic narrative. Similarly, Charles the Bald's eldest son closely resembles the Charlot of the romance. Like the latter, he was "ryght pryuey" with traitors,¹ and he was slain by a brave warrior in pursuit of a foolish adventure.² How these floating traditions of Séguin, Huon and the heir of Charles the Bald may have crystallized, and at length have been introduced into the great Charlemagne epic cycle, is a process of assimilation that must be readily intelligible to the student of popular mythology.

§ 5. As early as the 13th century, however, we have evidence that Oberon became an essential part of the story. Albericus Trium Fontium, in his chronicles which were finished about 1240, gives a version of the legend very similar to that of the romance. "Mortuus est," he writes, "etiam hoc anno (810) Sewinus dux Burdegalensis, cui fratres fuerunt Alelmus et Ancherus, hujus Sewini filii Gerardus et Hugo, qui Karolum, filium Karoli, casu interfecit, Almaricum proditorem in duello vicit, exul de patria ad mandatum regis fugit, *Alberonem, virum mirabilem et fortunatum reperit, et cætera sive fabulosa sive historica connexa.*"³ The passage constitutes one of the earliest records of the existence of the fairy king under the name of Oberon (Auberon) in European literature, and his importance in our own literature, together with the part he takes in the romance before us, is sufficient excuse for our dwelling on his origin and early history. M. Gaston Paris has attempted to show that an apocryphal prince of

¹ *Infra*, p. 15.

² M. Longnon in *Romania*, t. iii., has carefully worked out the probable connection of Huon with the reign of Charles the Bald, and has reprinted from various early chronicles all that is known of Séguin or the young Charles. Charlot bears in *Huon* exactly the opposite character to that which he does in the earlier *Chanson de Geste* of "Ogier le Danois," and there is no historical basis for his treacherous behaviour, unless we admit M. Longnon's theory.—Gautier, *Les Epopées Françaises*, vol. iii. 734.

³ M. Guessard's *Huon de Bordeaux*, p. xij.

the Merovingian dynasty, who was credited with singular powers of enchantment, bore the name of *Albericus*, but we are not ready to regard the Oberon-legend as based on any strictly historical foundation.¹ He is probably a purely mythical character, and, so far, is wholly foreign to the Charlemagne cycle; but, nevertheless, the author of *Huon* has not the slightest logical justification for placing him in an Eastern environment. He springs from the mythology of the Western world, and though many arguments have been advanced to connect him with Celtic or Welsh myths, I incline to the opinion that he is purely Teutonic. M. de la Villemarqué has most vigorously supported the Celtic theory. He identifies the fairy king with the ruler of the enchanted world in Welsh romances, Gwyn-Araun by name, of which he claims Oberon (*i. e.* Auberon, as it is usually spelt in French) to be a literal translation. In Welsh mythology he asserts that Gwyn is brought up, like Oberon, by "Morge li fée," and, similarly, is a dwarf in appearance, and bears at his neck a magic horn.² But the Germanic theory is based on firmer and wider foundations. Auberon, as Keightley long ago pointed out, very closely resembles the dwarf Elberich or Alberich, who figures in many early German folk tales.³ In the *Nibelungen-lied* Alberich is the guardian of the celebrated hoard which Siegfried won from the Nibelungen, and in a story of the *Heldenbuch*, a collection of German romances of the 13th century, a king of the elves bearing the same name plays a rôle very similar to that of Oberon in *Huon of Bordeaux*. Here Ortnit, a German emperor, visits the Sultan of Syria to gain his daughter. Alberich meets him on his journey, and aids him in his quest. He is three feet in height, can foresee the future, and forbids, as in the case of Huon and Esclaramonde,

¹ Cp. *Revue Germanique*, xvi. p. 387.

² See his letter on the subject in M. Guessard's edition of *Huon de Bordeaux*. Paris, 1860, pp. xxv-xxix. M. Gaston Paris positively denies that Gwyn-Araun is a translation of Auberon, and thus the basis of Villemarqué's theory is destroyed. Gwyn = white, but Aube, it is asserted, never represented in French the Latin album (*i. e.* Fr. blanc). *Revue Germanique*, xvi. pp. 350-90.

³ Keightley's *Fairy Mythology*, p. 206. Alberich is connected by Grimm (*Deutsche Mythologie*, p. 599) with Alp- Alb- E. b = elf. *Ich*, another writer explains, is a German termination which has been replaced in French by the Romance termination *on*.

all intercourse between Ortnit and his pagan bride until after the latter's baptism.¹ The connection between him and Oberon is, as Keightley has remarked, indubitable, and the German story, of which he is one of the chief heroes, is almost identical with parts of *Huon*. But there is little need to accept the opinion of some continental critics, and regard either of the tales as borrowed from the other. As M. Gaston Paris has suggested, Alberich or Auberon, perhaps originally a hero of Rhenish folk-lore, doubtless formed part of the Frankish, as of all German, mythology, and his traits have been preserved in the romances of both France and Germany.

§ 6. But though of Teutonic origin, Oberon in the romance before us has submitted in no slight degree to other influences, and has absorbed characteristics from very different sources. His poetic creator would seem indeed to have made of him a *point de rencontre* for those three great currents of the narrative poetry of early mediæval France of which we have already spoken. He represents the ideas that were identified not only with Frankish history, but also with that of *Bretagne et Rome la grand*. Mainly Frankish in tone, Oberon has assimilated some of the spirit not only of Breton romance, but of classical and scriptural antiquity, as it was known in the Middle Ages. Any one of the curious pedigrees that appear in the various versions of the romance illustrates the mingled elements of which he is compounded. In the 13th century *chanson* he thus describes his birth,—

“Jules Cesar me nori bien soué ;
Morge li fée, qui tant ot de biauté,
Che fu ma mère, si me puist Dix salver.
De ces II fui concus et engerréa.”—Vv. 3492-6.

He is, in fact, a son of Julius Cæsar and Morgan le Fay. The former in mediæval legend, it should be borne in mind, is little connected with the Cæsar of history. With Alexander the Great, to whom he is often lineally allied, he shares in the romances the honour of typifying papal and imperial Rome, *i. e.* Christianity and the Western Empire, and his introduction into Oberon's genealogy is the mode adopted by the poet to explain, as Teutonic mythology fails to do, the Christian zeal and crusading fervour, combined with the humane

¹ *Infra*, pp. 153-4; *Huon de Bordeaux*, 6688, *et seq.*

tenderness and sober temperament, by which the dwarf is characterized in the romance. Even in *Ortnit*, Alberich, who in so many ways is a counterfeit presentment of Huon's fairy king, like most dwellers in the enchanted world of Germany, resembles "Puck or Robin Goodfellow," and bears no trace of Oberon's "note of high seriousness." His mother, who can be none other than the third sister of King Arthur, "a great clerk in nigromancy," is similarly given a place in the pedigree, that her presence may account for the Celtic or Breton features implanted in the Oberon of the story of *Huon*. The fear, with which he is at first regarded by the knight and his faithful companion, Gerames, recalls the reputation which the dwarfs usually bear in Breton tradition.¹ The notion that Huon, like Falstaff,² had of fairies,—“he that speaks to them shall die,”—is not common in purely Teutonic stories. At the same time his delicate beauty—his “aungelyke vysage”—connects him with another aspect of Celtic mythology, while his magic cup, which is always full in the hands of the virtuous man,³ but is empty in those of the sinful, has many parallels in the Arthurian and Gaelic romances, but none in those of ancient Germany, or in the early Charlemagne cycle. Furthermore, his Asiatic home and the luxurious splendour of his enchanted palaces and attire recall the stories of the Caliphs. We may therefore finally conclude that Oberon, as he was known in early French literature, was a figure derived from Frankish folk-lore, but, that he has not only been enveloped by the author of *Huon de Bordeaux* in traditions of Christian Rome and Brittany, but has also been tinged with an Eastern colouring. Such, it may be suggested, is a legitimate analysis of his complicated character.

§ 7. The intricacies and incongruities that had, as we have seen, been foisted on an early and simple legend of Huon, even in the 13th-century *chanson de geste*,—the first connected form in which the story is extant,—did not prevent it experiencing further complications

¹ Ce caractère traître et surnois des nains est le plus ordinaire dans les traditions bretonnes ; ils ne parlent guère que lorsqu'ils trouvent l'occasion de nuire à quelqu'un, comme ici (*i. e.* in *Tristran et Ysault*, where King March's dwarf denounces them), etc. De la Villemarqué.—*Les Romans de la Table Ronde*, p. 421.

² *Merry Wives of Windsor*, V. v. 48 : cf. *Infra*, p. 63. “if ye speke to hym, ye are lost for euer.”

³ *Infra*, p. 76.

at the hands of succeeding *jongleurs bâtarde*. Oberon was a character capable of inspiring too lengthy a series of strange adventures to allow a speedy arrest of the development of the romance, and the 10,000 lines of the old poem were lengthened almost immediately to 14,000, and ultimately to 30,000 verses.¹ While the story of Huon's quarrel and strife with the Emperor is preserved in all the extant versions in its main outlines, the *remaniements* of the later part of the 13th and 14th centuries either endeavour to supply their readers with more elaborate information as to Oberon's career before he makes the acquaintance of Huon, or extend the history of the knight himself until he is firmly seated on the throne of fairy land. And a series of stories about his sons and daughters and grand-daughters, in many of which he is made to play the part of a *Deus ex machinâ*, is finally added. Such amplifications, it need hardly be said, are purely fabulous; they are crowded with incidents hopelessly irrational, and often brutally unnatural; and a perusal of them must lead every reader to worship with a whole heart at the shrine of Cervantes, who ultimately succeeded in directing into other channels the perverse ingenuity of the authors of like fictions.

§ 8. No less than seven continuations of *Huon* are extant; four of them have been introduced into the prose version, and form, as in his original, the concluding chapters of Lord Berners' translation. The greater number of these extensions may be found in a unique 14th-century manuscript now at Turin.² The document opens with a lengthy metrical prologue entitled *Le Roman d'Auberon*, which is one of the most remarkable examples of the confused historical notions of mediæval writers with which I remember to have met. It is based for the greater part on detached verses of the

¹ The French MSS. of the metrical romance may be arranged thus :—

- (1) Tours MS. (10,000 vv.). 13th cent.
- (2) Paris MS. I. (14,000 vv.). 13th cent.
- (3) Turin MS. (30,000 vv.). 14th cent.
- (4) Paris MS. II. (Alexandrine *remaniement*). 15th cent.
- (5) Hamilton MS. 1341.

² The fullest description of the MS. and its contents may be found in M. L. Gautier. *Les Epopees Françaises*, iii. 742. Prof. Graf has printed the introductory poem to which I refer as Part I. of a series entitled *I complimenti della Chanson d'Huon de Bordecau*, Halle a/S. 1878.

13th-century *chanson* of *Huon*, combined with copious extracts from the Arthurian romances, and much Oriental and Scriptural imagery. Judas Maccabæus is the hero of its first pages. After fighting with the Saracens, he marries a Saracen princess, and has by her a daughter, Brunehaut, who is destined by the fairies to pass her life in fairy land. Nevertheless, she is wooed and won by Julius Cæsar; but her married life proves unhappy, and her husband at length deserts her, when on a visit to the court of King Arthur, for Morgan le Fay. Of the last union Oberon is the offspring, and, after many chivalric adventures at King Arthur's court, Cæsar's son at a dangerous crisis receives assistance from the dishonoured Brunehaut on condition of befriending Huon, of whose existence he thus hears for the first time. The old tale of the knight of Bordeaux then follows, and it is succeeded by five *chansons* detailing the adventures of Huon's descendants.

Of the first part of the extended romance (*La Chanson d'Esclaramonde*) Huon's wife Esclaramonde is the heroine. Raoul the Emperor of Germany, smitten with love for her, lays siege to Bordeaux, and Huon in order to gain assistance sets sail for the East. His adventures there are more astonishing than before. In his wanderings he meets with Judas Iscariot and Cain, and finds apples of youth with which to rejuvenate all his friends. One of his experiences is identical with an adventure of the third calendar in the *Thousand and One Nights*, repeated in the so-called *Travels of Sir John Mandeville*. But Huon survives all his dangers; with Oberon's aid Bordeaux is saved, and the knight and his wife are conducted on a winged horse to fairy land, on the throne of which the former is at length seated. The wooing of Clarisse or Clariette, the eldest daughter of Huon and Esclaramonde, is the subject of another preposterous addition (*La Chanson de Clarisse et Florent*). Courted by all the princes of Europe, from Hungary to Aragon, she is subjected to every variety of persecution. But she finds a true champion in Florent, the son of Peter of Aragon, with whom Huon, in his rôle of king of fairy land, ultimately unites her.¹ The adventures of Ide,

¹ M. Gaston Paris sees in this story the influence of the well-known romance of Aucassin et Nicolette. See the notes on chap. 158, *et seq.*

the daughter of Clariette and Florent (*La Chanson d'Ide et d'Olive*), immediately follow in the Turin manuscript, and here the imagination of the author assumes very repulsive features. Ide, to escape from the incestuous advances of her own father, travels in man's clothing to the court of the German Emperor, and is forcibly married to his daughter, who has been unhappy enough to fall in love with the stranger. But a strange divine interposition at length extricates the actors from their curious embarrassment. The lengthy series of stories concludes with an account of the misfortunes of Godin, a son of Huon (*La Chanson de Godin*), whose enemies are only routed by his father's enchantments.

§ 9. Another version of Huon's adventures after his reconciliation with the French Emperor is found in a unique manuscript in the National Library at Paris, which is usually referred to the 15th century. Three years pass, and the knight leaves Bordeaux for Oberon's dominions. After passing through Rome and visiting the Holy Sepulchre at Jerusalem, he is welcomed to Fairyland, and amid gorgeous ceremonies crowned its king. Dangers, however, beset him even here. He has to fight a lengthy war with a tribe of giants, but after overcoming them, his wife, and a daughter Judic, of whom the writer says, "plus belle rien ne vit nulz hons vivant," come to share his kingdom. The manuscript breaks off when Huon is just entering on a new war. Another manuscript of the same date as the former contains the romance wholly rewritten and amplified in Alexandrine verse. It is of interest mainly for the familiar references it makes to another amplification of the story, *le livre de Croissant*, a great-grandson of Huon, which is only extant in the prose versions.

Of other forms of the story we know very little. A beautiful manuscript in the Hamilton collection—*le Roman du Loyal Comte Huon*, bearing the date of 1341—may or may not be a copy of one of the manuscripts which have been described as unique. So far as we know, it has never been examined by the French critics of mediæval literature, and I have been unable to obtain a glimpse of it.¹ There

¹ My only knowledge of this MS. is derived from an account of the Hamilton MSS. recently sold to the German Government, and now I believe in Berlin, that appeared in the *Athenæum*, November 11th, 1882. The description is as follows:—Huon, de Bordeaux : *Le Roman du Loyal Comte*

exists, however, in the Dutch language two versions of the story, which are of interest as proofs of its ubiquitousness, if of little else. One in verse, dated about 1400, tells the tale of Huon's return from the East with a few slight variations from the tale as told in the 13th century *chanson de geste*. The other is in prose of the first half of the 16th century.¹ It is very short, and the fact that the place of Gerames, Huon's companion in the French romance, is taken there by Aleaume (*Alelmus*), an uncle of the knight, who figures in the Chronicle of Albericus Trium Fontium, leads me to suppose that it is based on the *chanson* in some slightly earlier form than any now extant in France.

§ 10. After so varied an existence as I have here sketched, the romance of *Huon* was finally reduced to prose in 1454. It was immediately based on the previous metrical versions, and probably the manuscript, now in Turin, was most frequently in the hands of its author. Only one difference of any importance is noticeable in the course of the story of Huon and Oberon. The latter's genealogy is slightly developed, and he is credited with other maternal relatives than those mentioned in the metrical romances. According to the prose story his mother was the lady of the island of Cephalonia, "who was sum tyme wel belouyde of the fayre Florimont of Albaney." But deserting Florimont, "who as then was yonge," she married another by whom she was the mother of Neptanabus and the grandmother of "Alexander y° grate." Her charms subsequently attracted "Sezar as he crossed to Thesalee wher as he fought with Pompee," and thus Julius Cæsar was his father as in the previous versions. The reference to Florimont shows that the *prosatour* was acquainted with Aimes de Varenne's romance of that name, which, in the spirit of the poetical amplifiers, he doubtless laid directly under contribution when altering the pedigree of his fairy king.² The prose reduction, which

Huon, in verse, a manuscript on vellum of the 14th century, being dated 1341. It is ornamented with 76 curious paintings illustrating the romance.

¹ Cp. Huyge von Bourdeus, ein Niederländisches Volksbuch, herausgegeben von Ferdinand Wolf. Stuttgart, 1860. An original prologue gives some additional information as to Charles's history before the opening of the story. His wife is Hildegaert; she has three sons and three daughters.

² *Florimont* is an early French romance, touching the ancestry of Alexander of Macedon. It has itself undergone a development very similar to that of *Huon*. In its earliest form it has been referred to the 12th century.

has no other claim to originality, includes besides the legend of Huon the stories "of those that issued fro him." Three of the *suites* of the Turin manuscript, viz. : (1) the story of Esclaramonde, (2) that of Clariette and Florent, and (3) that of Ide and Olive, have been incorporated with it, and the last portion contains the romance of Croissant, which, as we have noted, has not found a place among the metrical *remaniements*, and occurs here for the first time. The prose version was undertaken, an introductory note tells us, at the express desire of two great lords at the court of Charles VII.—Charles de Rochefort and Hugues de Longueval, and of a third person, Pierre Ruotte. No manuscript of it exists, though it doubtless was largely read in that form by the noblemen at the court of Louis XI., by whom compositions of the kind were held in high esteem. It was printed for the first time at Paris in 1513 by Michel Lenoir.¹

§ 11. Of the popularity of the romance in France there is no lack of evidence, and to grasp its real position in continental literature, I may briefly dwell on it here. Many references to Huon and his adventures occur in the *chansons de geste* of a later date than the one to which he gives his name. His relationship to Oberon made a deep impression on subsequent poets. He is commonly known to them as

Huelin à la clere fachon
A qui fist tout de bien le bon roi Oberon,

and elaborate attempts are often made to connect him and his father, *Sevin de Bordele*, in genealogical tables with other great families of the Charlemagne cycle. The number of extant poetical *remaniements* is itself a proof of the favour the tale met with in the middle ages, and the wide dissemination of the prose version of the story in later times is attested by the number of editions through which it passed. In the 16th century it was reprinted no less than six times, and not only at Paris, but also at Rouen and Lyons. In the 17th century seven new editions were published, and others followed in rapid succession in

¹ The colophon of the earliest British Museum copy, which is the only French prose version I have consulted, bears date *le xxvi iour de novembre mil. v. cens et treize*. Brunet (*Manuel du Libraire* s. v.) gives the date of the oldest copy known in France as *le xxiiij iour de decembre mil cinq cens et seize*. The printer is also Michel Lenoir. The Brit. Mus. copy (12341. i. 12) is therefore probably the earliest edition known. No French editor has noted an earlier edition than that of 1516.

subsequent years.¹ A curious fortune awaited the book in the reign of Henry II. The romance was dramatized, and a religious guild at Paris, whose members were known as "les confrères de la passion et resurrection de nostre sauveur et redempteur Jhesus Christ," undertook its performance during the Christmas festivities of the year 1557. Upon very few of the Charlemagne epics, as we have had occasion to remark already, has the honour of a dramatic version been conferred, and the fact that *Huon of Bordeaux* was selected for the distinction is an emphatic proof of the high place it held in popular esteem. But objections were taken to the proposed representation. The Provost refused to allow the preparations to proceed, and the actors had to appeal to the Parlement of Paris, to enable them to carry out their original intention. Their petition, which greatly agitated the French capital, was granted with the limitation that *le jeu de Huon* was not to be performed within the hours "durant lesquelles se celebre le divin service par les eglises et parroises de ceste ville, et ce le lendemain de la feste de la Nativité Nostre seigneur et sans scandale." The opposition to the performance was probably due in great part to the strictly religious character that the theatre in France bore at the time. Other indications of the general attention bestowed upon the romance are to be found in the French historical literature of the 17th century, where it is treated as a work of high historical authority, and Huon himself is seriously described as one of the heroes "of the antique world," to whose valour the development of southern France was mainly due.² In Germany it will be remembered that Wieland has based on the French prose romance of *Huon*, published in 1778 in an abridged form, his long poem of *Oberon*. Whatever opinion we may hold of its literary value, to it is due a wide extension of Huon's and Oberon's popularity on the continent.³

§ 12. The first edition of Lord Berners' English translation of the

¹ Brunet, *Manuel du Libraire*, s. v.

² M. Guessard's *Huon*, pp. xxvij—xxxiiij.

³ M. Girardin (*Cours de littérature dramatique*, iii, p. 235) has elaborately compared Wieland's poem with the old romance, and with justice complains of the incongruous idyllic sentiment introduced into the story of Huon's relations with Esclaramonde, whom Wieland has rechristened Rezia, and of the complicated passions that the German poet foists upon his characters. Wieland's *Oberon* was published in 1780.

romance is wholly based on the French prose version.¹ Chapter by chapter it follows the printed copy of 1513, which may fairly be regarded as its original, and the translator has performed his task with the utmost fidelity. The book is of the highest rarity. For many years collectors imagined it to be irrecoverably lost,² but a copy, the only one of which we have any information at present, was sold at the sale of Dr. Bliss's library, and at the Corsser sale in 1869, when it was purchased by the late Earl of Crawford and Balcarres, and it is now the property of his son.³ Two copies of a third edition of the

¹ Tabulating the results which have been arrived at as to the various portions of the prose story, Lord Berners' translation may be arranged thus:—

LORD BERNERS' TRANSLATION.	WHENCE DERIVED (THROUGH THE FRENCH PROSE ORIGINAL).
L Chapters 1-85 (included in part I).	I. The xiiiith century <i>Chanson de Geste of Huon</i> as it appears in the Turin MS.
a. Chaps. 1-20.	a. Vv. 1-2000 = an old Carlovingian legend.
β. Chaps. 21-85.	β. Vv. 2000-10041 = later story of Oberon.
Printed in Part II. of this edition.	II. <i>La Chanson d'Esclaramonde</i> in the Turin MS.
	III. <i>La Chanson de Clarisse et Florent</i> in the Turin MS.
	IV. <i>La Chanson d'Ide et Olive</i> in the Turin MS.
	V. <i>La Roman de Croissant</i> , referred to in the Paris MS. (II.) of the Alexandrian <i>rifacimento</i> , but not known elsewhere.
II. Chaps. 86-157.	
III. Chaps. 158-173	
IV. Chaps. 174-180.	
V. Chaps. 181-end.	

Of the extant amplifications *Le Roman d'Auberon*, the story of Huon in Fairyland (in the Paris MS. I.) and the tale of Godin (in Turin MS.) are excluded from the prose versions.

² Cf. Ritson's and Douce's MS. notes reprinted from a copy of the 3rd edition, *infra*, p. lvi.

³ Through whose hands the copy has passed in previous centuries we do not know. Early in the 16th century it was probably in the hands of some love-sick youth who, in the writing of that date, has placed on the margin of Lord Crawford's copy (fols. cviii, back, and cix) the following lines:—

My faythfull hart dothe loue right well
 Her that I can not stayne :
 Wherefore ther is no towng can tell
 The grefes that I sustayne.
 If I showld spend a sumers day
 To wrytte in verse or prose,
 I cowld my dolent mynd display,
 Nor yet halff my loue disclose.

In the seventh line *not* has been erased, and *my* superscribed, but both are

English romance are also extant,—one at the British Museum, and the other at the Bodleian Library,—and it is stated on their title-pages that the rude English of the earlier editions has been here corrected and amended. Of the intervening edition no trace has yet been found.

§ 13. The life of Lord Berners, the English translator of the story, whose name has been “canonized in Fame’s eternal calendar” as the translator of Froissart, forms an interesting but little-known chapter of our political and literary history, and a brief summary of such facts as I have been able to collect together will tend to give the romance before us an additional interest. Born probably at Tharfield in Hertfordshire about 1469, Anthony à Wood¹ is of opinion that, like Tiptoft, the Earl of Worcester, whom in point of literary culture he closely resembles, Berners was educated at Balliol College, Oxford. As early as 1474 he succeeded to the title of his grandfather, John Bouchier, who had been created Baron Berners² in 1455 and was a descendant of Edward III. through his mother, and a younger brother of Thomas Bouchier, Archbishop of Canterbury (1454-1486). On the marriage of one of the royal princes in 1477 he was knighted, and in 1484 at the early age of fifteen Lord Berners would seem to have entered into very active political life. He apparently joined in a premature attempt to raise Henry, duke of Richmond, to the throne, and on its failure he had to flee to Brittany.³ After the accession of Henry VII., who had received much assistance from his friends, Berners came prominently forward in English politics. In 1492 he entered into a contract “to serue the king in his warres beyond see on hole yeere with two speres.”⁴ Five years later he gave signal aid in needful for the sense. The copy sold for £19 at Dr. Bliss’s sale, and £85 at the Corsser sale.

¹ Anthony à Wood, *Athenæ Oxonienses*, i. 72; see also Fuller’s *Hertfordshire Worthies*, p. 32. By far the best memoir of Lord Berners is that prefaced to Mr. Utterson’s edition of his translation of Froissart, but it is very imperfect. (Lond. 1812), i. pp. 4-23.

² Dugdale’s *Baronage*, ii. 129. Lord Berners’ father is described as Humphry Bouchier, and was slain at the battle of Barnet, and buried at Westminster Abbey. His mother was Elizabeth, daughter of Sir Frederick Tilney and widow of Sir Thomas Howard, knight. The first Lord Berners was the youngest son of the Earl of Ewe, whose heir was created Earl of Essex by Edward III.

³ Hardyng’s *Chronicle* (ed. Ellis, 1832), p. 529.

⁴ Rymer, *Fœdera*, xii. 479.

crushing a rebellion of Cornishmen against Henry VII.'s tax-gatherers under Michael Joseph, the blacksmith, and from that date he was received with high favour at court, as "a martial man, well seen in all military discipline."¹ Henry VIII. we know from many circumstances to have been intimately acquainted with him. In 1513 he travelled in the king's retinue to Calais,² and was present with the English army at the capture of Terouenne, where he performed services of no little valour. The war in Scotland was also probably conducted under his superintendence, and he was marshal in the Earl of Surrey's army about the time when Flodden Field was fought.³ On the occasion of the marriage of Princess Mary to Louis XII.,⁴ Lord Berners was appointed Chamberlain to the English Queen of France,⁵ but he had no intention of remaining permanently abroad. He had already been granted by the king (18th May, 1514) the reversion to the office of Chancellor of the Exchequer,⁶ and in 1516 (28th May) he was apparently inducted into the honourable post.⁷ Arrayed in his official robes he at a later date sat for his portrait to Hans Holbein, the painter to Henry VIII.'s court.⁸ In 1518 Berners was sent with the Archbishop of Armagh, a notable diplomatist of the day, on a special mission to Spain to form a lasting alliance between Henry VIII. and Charles of Spain, and the letters of the envoys represent Lord Berners suffering from a severe sickness.⁹ He is, however, at times well enough to send home to Henry VIII. accounts of the bull-baiting and other sports that took place in the Spanish capital. Negotiations dragged on from April to December, and money was not sent from England with such regularity as to enable the am-

¹ Fuller, p. 27. Walpole's *Royal and Noble Authors*, i. 239

² Brewer's *Letters and Papers of Henry VIII.*, i. nos. 4307, 4314, &c.

³ *Ibid.* i. 4375.

⁴ Oct. 9, 1514.

⁵ *Ibid.* i. 5483.

⁶ No. 5097.

⁷ *Ibid.* ii. no. 1946.

⁸ Wornum's edition of Walpole's *Anecdotes of Painting*, i. 82. In one hand he holds a lemon, which is thought to have been regarded as a safeguard against plague infections, and perhaps alludes to Lord Berners' escape from the disease, while attending to the duties of his office. The picture is now in the possession of the Hon. H. Tyrwhitt Wilson, a lineal descendant of Lord Berners, and is at Keythorpe Hall, Leicestershire.

⁹ Brewer's *Letters*, ii. 4383, 4436, &c. At times Berners is described as sick in bed, and the Archbishop has to perform the business of the embassy alone. In one letter gout is mentioned as the cause of his sickness.

bassadors to live with comfort or dignity.¹ "God send hit (*i. e.* the embassy) an ende," Berners writes to Wolsey (26th July, 1518), "for we lye here with most charge and expence, horse & man, & in most scarcitie of all things as well meate as drink that may be thought." Early in 1519 Berners was again in England, and among the noblemen who were ordered to attend the king at The Field of the Cloth of Gold his name occurs. His reputation stood at the time very high, and the Privy Council gave him a vote of thanks (July 2nd, 1520) for an account of the interview between the English and French kings that he had sent them from France. But Lord Berners' busy career was approaching an end. His activity can hardly be exaggerated. While holding high state offices, he had frequently attended Parliament, and had regularly performed the duties of Justice of the Peace for Hertfordshire and Surrey.² He had, moreover, entered upon several harassing law-suits, touching the ownership of several manors in Staffordshire, Wiltshire, and elsewhere,³ and he was experiencing much pecuniary embarrassment. He had borrowed as early as 1511 £350 from the king,⁴ and the loans were frequently repeated. He had no means wherewith to pay his debts: his health was failing, and he apparently desired leisure. A vacancy in the governorship of Calais seemed to present a means of relieving him of his difficulties, and in December 1520 he was appointed deputy of Calais during pleasure with £100 yearly for himself and £104 as 'Spyall money.'⁵ And the remaining years of his life were spent in such retirement as his new position afforded.

§ 14. It was at Calais that he undertook almost all his literary work. He had probably been, like several of his younger contemporaries, a considerable reader from his youth, and may possibly have been one of those persons "of noble estate and degree," whom Caxton frequently describes as ever ready to assist him in his enterprises. Berners doubtless became well acquainted early in life with the French and Spanish languages, and thus he was enabled to make direct

¹ Brewer's *Letters*, ii. no. 4342, 4228, &c. The payments to the embassy were 5 marks a day.—ii. p. 1477.

² In all the Commissions of the Peace issued for these counties during the early years of Henry VIII.'s reign his name appears: *v.* Brewer's *Letters passim*.

³ *Ibid.* iii. nos. 1286-8. ⁴ *Ibid.* i. no. 2044. ⁵ *Ibid.* iii. no. 1074.

acquaintance with the chivalric romances that formed the popular literature of both Spain and France. After his energetic work in previous years, time at Calais probably hung heavily on his hands, and he tells us that it was "somewhat in eschewing" of idleness which "is reputed to be the moder of al vices" that he began his labours as a translator. History, whether of fact or fiction, was, according to his own confession, his literary passion. "When I aduertysed, & remembred the many-folde commodityes of hystorie," he writes in the prologue to Froissart's *Chronicle*, "howe benefyciall it is to mortall folke, & eke howe laudable, & merytoryous a dede it is to write hystories, [I] fixed my mind to do some thyng therin, & euer, when this ymaginayon came to me, I volued, tourned & redde many volumes, & bokes conteyning famouse histories." And it was thus that he was led to undertake the translation of a book like Froissart's *Chronicles*. But he was troubled by little critical sensitiveness as to the truth or falsehood of historical records, and he interpreted history in the freest possible sense. The impossible adventures in some of the books that he "did into our maternal tongue," he admitted "to our humayne reason, sholde seme to be incredible." "But then," he proceeds, "I called agayne to my remembraunce, that I had redde, and seene many a sondrye volume of dyuerse noble hystories, wherein were contayned the redoubted dedes of the auneyent inuynsyble conquerours, & of cther ryght famous knyghtes, who acheued many a straunge & wonderfull aduenture, the whyche, by playne letter to our vnderstandynge, sholde seme in a maner to be supernaturall; wherefore I thought that this present treatise myght as well be reputed for trouthe as some of those." But credulity was by no means the most striking feature of Lord Berners' literary character. There is a humility and simple piety in all his original writing that claims the loving respect of his readers. He did not presume, he says of one of his books, "to have reduced it in to freshe ornate polysshed Englysshe, for I know myselfe insuffycient in the facondyous arte of rethoryke." He never regarded himself as other than "a lerner of the language of Frensshe," although he had spent years in studying it. His prefaces invariably concluded with a hope that the reader would kindly view his shortcomings, and

often with the words:—" In theyr so doynge, I shall praye to God that, after this vayne & transytory lyfe, he may brynge them vnto the perdurable joye of heuen. Amen." ¹

§ 15. It was Henry VIII., who had already so often befriended Lord Berners, that first encouraged, if he did not suggest, the great undertaking of his literary career—the translation of Froissart's *Chronicle*; and he writes himself that he was moved to the task "at the highe commaundement of my most redouted souerayne & lorde kynge Henry the viii." The first volume of the work was published in London in 1523, and the second and last in 1525. And I regard this translation as Lord Berners' first published book. In the introduction he speaks with more than his usual modesty as an untried author, and in the tentative tone of a literary beginner details the principles of translation he has thought proper to adopt. He begs all the "readers & herers therof to take this my rude translacion in gre." "And in that," he continues, "I haue not folowed myne authour worde by worde, yet I trust I haue ensewed the true reporte of the sentence of the mater: & as for the true namyng of all maner of persanages, contreis, cyties, townes, ryuers, & felds, whereas I coude not name them properly nor aptely in Englysshe, I haue written them accordynge as I founde them in frenche." ² Of the success of the book it is unnecessary to dwell here. The noble gentlemen of England, for whom the translator stated it to have been written, gave it a warm welcome, and to its popularity has been ascribed the taste for historical reading and composition by which later literary compositions of the century were characterized.³ The style is vivid and clear, and although a few French words have been introduced, Lord Berners has adhered, as a rule, so closely to English idiom that the work might almost be mistaken for an original English production. It was the longest, as

¹ See besides the Introduction to Froissart, that to *Sir Arthur of Lytle Brytayne* in Utterson's reprint (1812), and to *Castel of Love* in Walpole's *Noble Authors*, i. 243-4.

² These quotations are taken from the earliest edition of the translation (1523).

³ Marsh, *Hist of English Language*, 1862, pp. 495-501, where a suggestive criticism of Berners' translation will be found.

it was the highest in point of literary merit, of any of the few prose histories that had appeared in our language. Hall, Fabian, and Holinshed were subsequently all more or less indebted to it, and repeated editions, published in Elizabeth's reign, testified to its continuous popularity.

§ 16. The other works that Lord Berners undertook at Calais were of a very varied kind. The Charlemagne romance of *Huon of Bordeaux*, I think it probable, followed Froissart's *Chronicle* at no long interval, although its publication was probably much delayed. About the same time he undertook the translation from the French of *The History of Sir Arthur of Lytle Brytayne* (i. e. Brittany), and of a Spanish romance known as *The Castel of Love*.¹ Later he rendered into English from a French version *The Golden Boke of Marcus Aurelius*, and although no other works from his pen are extant, he is credited by some writers with a 'comedy' entitled *Ite in Vineam*, which, Anthony à Wood tells us, was frequently acted at Calais after vespers, and a tract on *The duties of the inhabitants of Calais*.² Warton, on the authority of Oldys, also ascribes to him a translation of Petrarch.³

§ 17. But while engaged in literary pursuits he did not neglect the duties of his office. In 1522 he had received the Emperor Charles V. before crossing the Channel on a visit to England, and the State Papers contain numerous letters from him to Wolsey and other great officers of State, as to the provisioning of the fortifications of Calais; as to the distinguished strangers who arrived there; as to the movements of the armies of France or the Low Countries in the neighbourhood, and like details.⁴ But the close of his life does not appear to have been a happy one. Weak in health and embarrassed by debt, had it not been for the encouragement he received from noble lords and ladies, at the special request of one or more of whom each of his books was undertaken, he would not, it seems, have persisted in his laborious work of translation.⁵ He

¹ Walpole's *Royal and Noble Authors*, i. 242.

² *Atl. Oxon.* i. 33.

³ Warton, *Hist of English Poetry*, iii. p. 64.

⁴ *Henry VIII.'s Letters*, vols. iv. v. vi., *passim*.

⁵ The introduction to *Huon of Bordeaux* in the Oxf. copy of the 1601 edition; see *infra*, p. li.

is bitterly harassed, as his letters show, by his continual lawsuits, which begin to touch his Hertfordshire property, and by the loans that the king had from time to time made him, and which still remained unpaid. In the last years of his life he tried to conciliate his Sovereign, who probably demanded payment in no gentle tone, by frequent presents of hawks;¹ but Henry apparently looked anxiously for the death of his old friend in order to distrain on his property for the debts still owing to him. During his last illness special agents of the king were despatched with indecent haste to watch over Berners' personal possessions in behalf of his creditors. At length on March 16, 1533, the end came.² Six days before, Lord Berners had completed his rendering into English of the *Golden Boke of Marcus Aurelius*, and doubtless knew then that his end was near.³ On his death Henry showed little respect for his memory. He at once ordered all his goods in his house or the town to be arrested until further notice, and his post to be filled immediately. His affairs were found, owing to his illness, to be much disordered, but the inventory taken of his property, and, now at the Record Office, proves that he lived in no little splendour, and it contains an interesting entry stating that eighty books and four pictures formed part of his furniture. Unfortunately all details of these possessions are irrecoverably lost.⁴ It was thus experiencing his full share of the petty vexations of life that Lord Berners passed away. To most readers he survives nowadays as a shadowy name; but such details as I have set down show that his exploits in the various spheres of war, politics, and literature give him a strong claim to a place among the worthies of 16th century England.

§ 18. Of the popularity of all Lord Berners' works, and of *Huon* in

¹ Cp. Privy Purse Expenses for 1529-31, pp. 54 and 231, where gratuities to Lord Berners' servants for bringing the hawks are recorded.

² *Henry VIII.'s Papers*, vi, nos. 238 and 239. A letter begins bearing date March 16, 1533, "My lord deputy is dead."

³ The first edition of 1534 has in the colophon the words: "Ended at Caleis the tenth Dale of Marche, in the yere of the Reigne of our Soveraygne Lorde Kyng Henry the VIII. xxiii." (i. e. 1533).

⁴ I carefully examined the inventory in the hope of finding some account of Lord Berners' books. All that occurs there on the subject is:—"Item in the stody ⁱⁱⁱ books vz oon of Latten & frenche," and below, "iiij pictoura."—Cp. Brewer's *Letters* (in Mr. Gairdner's continuation), vi, p. 611.

particular, there is no lack of evidence. Romances from the reign of Henry VIII. to that of Charles I. formed the most popular literature in England. Their numbers were prodigious. A brief examination of the *Stationers' Registers* shows with what energy the printers set before their public translations of French, Oriental, Italian, and Spanish story-books. At the opening of the century Caxton and Lord Berners have themselves described how anxiously the noble classes, who formed the only contemporary reading public, awaited the publication of their translations. Nor, when the stage was at the height of its prosperity, did the romances cease to be the favourite recreation of the reading classes, which grew in number as the century advanced. The plays, it must be remembered, were not designed for private perusal. Their appearance in print was due to fraud and piracy, and was a constant source of complaint with authors, managers, and actors. Only a few play-books found their ways into the hands of readers, and recourse continued to be made to works like those before us. A writer in 1586 tells us with what unalloyed delight a country gentleman would listen to "pleasant mad-headed knaves, *that* bee properly learned & will reade in diuerse pleasaunt bookes & good Authors: as Sir Guy of Warwicke, the foure sonnes of Ammon," and works of like description.¹ Edmund Spenser in his famous letter to Sir Walter Raleigh writes that it was because he desired to be "most plausible and pleasing" that he coloured his allegory "with an historical fiction, the which the most part of men delight to read." George Chapman² in 1611 describes a typical Statesman as one who was well acquainted with the *Gesta Romanorum* and similar volumes. Some writers are inclined to bestow extravagant eulogy on the romances of Chivalry. Thus John Taylor, the water-poet, writes, with perhaps a touch of sarcasm, when speaking of their heroes: "In all ages and countries it hath euer bin knowne that famous men haue florished, whose worthy Actions & Eminency of place haue euer bene as conspicuous *Beacons* Burning & blazeng to the Spectators' view. The sparkes & flames

¹ *English Courtier and the Cuntrey Gentleman*, 1586, quoted in Mr. Furnivall's edition of *Captain Cow's Ballads*.—Ballad Society, p. xix.

² Chapman's *May Day*, iii. 1.

whereof haue sometimes kindled courage in the most coldest & effeminate cowards." But such literature had at the same time its detractors, as much of it well deserved. Roger Ascham in his *Scholemaster* (1571), like the niece of Don Quixote, regarded all the romances as mischief-makers, and complained that even Sir Thomas Malory's *Morte d'Arthur* was full of 'slaughter' and 'bawdrie.'¹ Similarly, Francis Meres, in his *Palladis Tamia* of 1598, censured romantic histories as being "no lesse hurtfull to youth then the works of *Machiavell* to age."² Robert Burton bitterly complains of the gentry: "if they read on a book at any time it is an English Chronicle" (like *Amadis de Gaule*, &c.), "a playe booke or some pamphlet of news,"³ and elsewhere he says of "such Inamoratoes as read nothing but play-bookes, idle poems," and so forth, that many "proue in the ende as mad as *Don Quixot*."⁴ But nevertheless romances continued to be generally read till the time of the Rebellion, especially by the half-educated classes.⁵ Beaumont and Fletcher in their humorous farce of the *Knight of the Burning Pestle* show how chivalric tales fatally disturbed the equanimity of the lower middle classes at a little earlier date.⁶

§ 19. Of such popularity and such censure Lord Berners' translation enjoyed a full share. His hero for a hundred years was given a place among the worthies of antiquity. He is set beside Godfrey of Boulogne, King Arthur and his knights in a poem, written shortly after the death of Henry VIII.,⁷ the form of which is almost identical with Villon's *Ballade des dames mortes*, familiar to most English readers in Rossetti's exquisite translation. In 1558 the book is mentioned in an inventory of the property of Richard Brereton,

¹ Ascham, *Scholemaster*, p. 80. (Arber's Edition). Cp. his *Toxophilus*. Pref.

² Mere's *Palladis Tamia*, 1598, p. 2668.

³ *Anatomic of Melancholie*, ed. 1621, p. 183.

⁴ *Ibid.* p. 353.

⁵ Cp. *London Chaunticleeres*. 1659, where much popular literature of the kind is referred to.—Hazlitt's *Dodsley*, vol. xii.

⁶ The play was first performed 1613. A grocer's apprentice is there driven from his shop by a desire of pursuing feats of arms, and cuts a very ridiculous figure. It reached its height of popularity about 1635.

⁷ Percy's Folio MS. *Ballads and Romances* (ed. by Hales and Furnivall), 1868, iii. p. 171. On the Fall of Princes:—"Where is Huon of Bordeaux, where is he?"

and valued at the high sum (for those days) of xviiij*d*,¹ and in 1572 the work is referred to among others, in a brief pamphlet, as fit for gentlemen's reading.² Three years later Master Laneham in his letter, descriptive of the Kenilworth festivities of 1575, tells us how Cox, the quixotic old Captain of Coventry, who took a leading part in the pageants, had *Huon of Bordeaux* among other famous romances "at his fingers' ends."³ Gervase Markham, a voluminous prose writer on practical subjects in Elizabeth's day, in *A / Health to the / Gentlemanly profession of Seruing men* (1578), has quoted largely from Lord Berners' translation, when ingeniously illustrating the evil influence of Mammon.⁴ Spenser was evidently well acquainted with the book, and describes how Sir Guyon, his knight of Temperance,

"kighthood tooke of good Sir Huon's hand,
When with King Oberon he came to Faery land."⁵

Similarly *Huon of Bordeaux* is panegyricized by John Taylor, the water-poet, in the passage I have quoted above, and bitterly censured by Francis Meres and Robert Burton. But there exists another curious indication of the high place the romance continued to hold in popular esteem at the end of the century. An entry in Philip Henslowe's *Diary* proves that it was dramatized and produced in that form by the players of the Earl of Sussex in 1593-4. The note runs as follows:—

Rd at hewen of burdoche, the 28 of desembr 1593 iij^l. x^s.
Rd at hewen of burdokes, the 3 of Jenewary 1593(-4) xiiij^s.
Rd at hewen, the 11 of Jenewary 1593(-4).⁶ v^s.

The play, although no trace of it is now extant, was thus at least three times performed.

§ 20. A review of the position that *Huon of Bordeaux* holds in our literary history would be manifestly incomplete without some reference

¹ Halliwell's *Folio of Shakespeare*, vol. v. p. 85.

² *A Brief and Necessary Instruction, &c.*, by E. D. 1572. Quoted from Collier by Mr. Furnivall in his introduction to Cox's Ballads.

³ Nicholl's *Progresses of Queen Elizabeth*. London, 1823, i. 449. Laneham's letter is here reprinted.

⁴ Fol. G, 4. Only two copies of this rare pamphlet are, I believe, known. Both are in the Douce collection of the Bodleian Library. See below, chaps. cviii.-cx. (the story of the Adamant), whence the passage is taken.

⁵ *Faerie Queene*, bk. I. l. 6. ⁶ Henslowe's *Diary* (ed. Collier), pp. 31-2.

to the Oberon of Elizabethan literature. That the fairy king first became known to this country through the agency of Lord Berners' version of his story, there cannot be a shadow of a doubt. Chaucer, it is true, gave to Pluto the title of "King of Faerie" in his *Marchantes Tale*,¹ but the little dwarf Oberon, with his unapproachable beauty and gentle carriage, is the only rightful possessor of the throne of fairy land in our literature. The question has before been raised as to whether Shakespeare was acquainted with Lord Berners' *Huon of Bordeaux* when he wrote *Midsummer Night's Dream*. There is no obvious identity of spirit between the protector of Huon and the husband of Titania, and we can only give a tentative answer. Oberon had appeared on the throne of fairy land before Shakespeare produced his comedy. In the *Faerie Queene* he figures in the *Antiquitie of Faerie* as the latest sovereign of the enchanted world.² In 1591 the fairy king had appeared in a dramatic entertainment, exhibited before Queen Elizabeth when on a progress in Hampshire.³ Similarly, he plays a part in Green's tragedy of *James IV.* (1594),⁴ but he there retains so few of the characteristics of the French original, and holds so incongruous and absurd a position, that we should be loth, although many critics have supported the assumption, to believe that Shakespeare was under obligation to so despicable a production. The Oberon of the great poet's fairy-comedy, although he is set in a butterfly environment, still possesses some features very similar to those of the romantic fairy king. If he is not brought into relations with so purely mundane institutions as the Papacy and the Empire, he is concerned in the affairs of Athens. One point in *Midsummer Night's Dream*, moreover, seems to make the relationship between the two Oberons a matter of less doubt than has been generally allowed. The mediæval fairy dwells in the East: his kingdom is situated somewhere to the east of Jerusalem, in the far-reaching district that was known to mediæval writers under the generic name of India. Shakespeare's fairy is similarly a foreigner to the western

¹ *Canterbury Tales*, line 10,101, &c.

² *F. Q.*, bk. II. x. 75.

³ Halliwell's *Folio of Shakespeare*, i. 80.

⁴ *The Scottishe story of James the Fourthe slayn at Fyldden intermixed with a pleasant Comedie presented by Oboron kinge of ffayres.*—Arber's *Transcript*, ii. 648.

world. He is totally unlike Puck, his lieutenant, "the merry wanderer of the night," who springs from purely English superstition, and it is stated in the comedy that he has come to Greece "from the farthest steep of India." Titania, further, tells her husband how the mother of her page-boy gossiped at her side,¹ in their home, "in the spiced Indian air by night-fall."² And it will be remembered that an Indian boy causes the jealousy of Oberon. Some portions of the romance I, therefore, believe Shakespeare to have assimilated, and to be still visible in his ethereal play. The inference is perhaps supported by a direct reference to *Huon of Bordeaux*, as some commentators have regarded it, in another of Shakespeare's comedies. In *Much Ado About Nothing*, Benedick offers among the many "embassages" he would undertake rather than hold three words with Beatrice, to "fetch you the hair of the Great Cham's Beard,"³ and it has been supposed that we have here an allusion to Huon's endeavour to obtain the beard of the Admiral of Babylon.⁴ The origin of the later Oberons of Drayton, Randolph, and Herrick calls for no comment here. They are obviously based on Shakespeare's own fairy king.

When Lord Berners' translation ceased to be read, the achievements of Huon of Bordeaux lapsed into obscurity. But his story was curiously revived at the beginning of this century. Wieland, the German poet, as I have said already, based on *Huon of Bordeaux* his poem of *Oberon*, and Mr. Sotheby's English translation of the production gained great popularity in this country. Upon it, moreover, was based the libretto of Weber's opera of *Oberon*, which was written for and first performed in a London theatre (April 12, 1826). It is thus that the name of the knight of Bordeaux, as the hero of the opera, has found brief mention in one of Thackeray's novels.⁵

¹ *M. N. D.* II. ii. 65-6. ² *Ibid.* II. ii. 10. ³ *Much Ado*, II. i. 263.

⁴ Halliwell's *Folio of Shakespeare*, iv. 77. Cartwright in his *Siege, or Love's Concert*, 1651, p. 157, has imitated the passage and brought it into closer harmony with Huon's mission.

"Fetch you a hair of the Great Cham's beard;
No more? I'd thought you would have bid me pull
The Parthian king by th' beard, or draw an eye-tooth
From the jaw royall of the Persian monarch."

⁵ *Newcomes*, i. 115. J. J. Ridley when listening to Miss Cann's feeble piano-strumming imagines he sees before him "Sir Huon of Bordeaux sailing up the quay with the Sultan's daughter of Babylon."

§ 21. The bibliography of Lord Berners' translation demands some fuller attention than we have already given it. The *editio princeps* is a black-letter folio of 191 leaves, and is embellished by grotesque initial-letters, and by numerous woodcuts which are more than once repeated, and often indicate much delicacy of workmanship. It is in many ways imperfect. The book almost certainly began, like Caxton's romances, and the other extant works of Lord Berners, with an address to the reader, followed by "a table with all the chapters as they stande in the boke in order," both of which the extant volume is without. In its present condition it abruptly opens with the statement that "here begynnethe the boke of duke Huon of Burdeaux, and of them that issuyd fro him." The last page is likewise missing, and half of the last but one has been torn away. Thus we have lost the colophon with its record of the date of the work. It is therefore a difficult matter to state precisely to what year its publication should be assigned. We have some external evidence to guide us, and the internal character of the book and its typography may give some assistance. But it is a question which we cannot decide with absolute certainty.

A few of the facts in Lord Berners' career will aid us in fixing approximately the time during which the book was written.

The length of the romance of *Huon* precludes us from supposing that it could have been completed before his retirement to Calais; and, if I am right in assuming that Froissart's *Chronicles* was the first literary work that he produced, we must pronounce *Huon* to have been translated between 1525, the date of the completion of *Froissart*, and 1533, the year of Lord Berners' death. But whether it was published within that period, other external evidence renders by no means certain. I believe that like the *Golden Boke of Marcus Aurelius*, and possibly other of his works, it was published posthumously through the aid of an old friend.

In the Oxford copy of the third edition, dated 1601, occurs some thirty lines bearing the superscription—*The printer to the Historie ensuing*—and an examination of this prefatory note which, I cannot doubt, was reprinted, with some revision, from the first and probably the second editions, will, we hope, materially aid us in

settling the question. The preface is divisible into two parts. The first rehearses in general terms the uses to which the good examples of such chivalric knights as Huon may be put, and resembles so closely in style and sentiment the introductory notes written by Lord Berners' own hand in his other works as to create a presumption in favour of the belief that it has been rewritten in somewhat heightened language from his own manuscript.¹ The second details the circumstances under which the romance came to be translated and printed. The concluding half runs as follows:—

“Hence ensued (*i. e.* from the desire to promulgate heroic examples—as expressed in the opening sentences) that desertfull & worthy to bee remembred purpose, of Sir *John Bouchier*, Knight, Lord Berners, when not onely in the woorke of *Huon of Bourdeaux*, but many other famous translations of like conse-

¹ For purposes of readier comparison, and to prove that the prologue in the 1601 edition, does not contradict, with any internal evidence, my belief that it has been taken from the first edition with possibly some “amendment,” I have printed the opening sentence of it and the *Froissart* prologue side by side.

FROISSART.

What condygne graces & thankes ought men to gyue to the writers of historyes, who with their great labours, haue done so moche profyete to the humayne lyfe: they shewe, open, manifest, & declare to the reader by example of olden antiquitie & what we shulde enquire, desyre & folowe: & also what we shulde eschewe, auoyde & utterly flye: for whan we (beynge vnexpert of chances) se, beholde & rede the auncyent gestes & dedes, howe & with what labours, daungers & paryls they were gested & done, they right greatly admonesh, ensigne & teche, vs howe we maye lede forthe our lyues: & farther he that hath perfyte knowledge of others ioye, welth & highe prosperite & also trouble, sorowe & great aduersyte, hath thexpert doctryne of all parylles; . . . What knowledge shulde we haue of auncyent thynges past, & historic were nat? whiche is the testimony thereof, the lyght of trouthe, the maystres of the lyfe humayne, the presydent of remembrance & the messenger of antiquyte.

HUON.

The foundation of all true fame & repute, which in this world is most to be reckoned of & esteemed, (according to the opinion of all writers both ancient & moderne) consisteth in bold, honourable, & heroycall resolution, which enflames the soule with a continuall thirsting desire, of pursuing braue & generous purpose, perfourming of high & adventurous actions, which (when their bodies are mantled up in the obscure moule of earth) leaueth their names cannonized in Fames aeternall Calender, & renouues them as rare presidents to all following Posterities.

quence by him performed, he gaue witness to the world of so laborious an endeavour, & (as it were) squared out an excelent platfourme for generous imitation. But let me not herewithal forget, that the right noble Earle of *Huntingdon*, Lord *Hastings*, was a continuall spurre to him in the pursuite of such paines, & likewise a cheerfull encourager of me in the imprinting, assisting euer both with his purse & honorable countenance the travaile that sorted so good example. Which being now finished & made compleat, etc." The colophon of the same volume states similarly that the translation was undertaken by Lord Berners at the request of Lord Hastings, Earl of Huntingdon.

We have here a clear allusion to Lord George Hastings, who was the companion of Lord Berners in more than one of his campaigns in France, and who was created Earl of Huntingdon in 1530, after which date these sentences must have been written. Similarly, it will be noticed that the reference to Lord Berners' labours is couched in the past tense, and could scarcely have been penned in his lifetime (*i. e.* before 1533). The services done by Lord Huntingdon to the printer here commemorated are, however, clearly connected with the first publication of the romance,—with the printing of Lord Berners' manuscript. The expression of thanks for his aid is directly rendered to the Earl, so that the preface and the book, to which it refers, must have been printed while he was still alive,—that is, before 1542, the year of his death. We should therefore assign the first edition to some date after 1533, and before 1542.

The conclusion is supported by the opinion of bibliographical experts. Lowndes, in the *Bibliographer's Manual*,¹ stated that he believed it to have been printed by Copland about 1540, but the date we are inclined to think is too late by about six years. It is also improbable from a comparison of Lord Crawford's *Huon* with the type and woodcuts of works from William Copland's press that he was the printer. No folio romances, it should further be remembered, were printed by him before 1550. Mr. William Pickering, who carefully examined the type and paper of the unique copy of the first edition, judged that it proceeded from the press of Wynkyn de Worde

¹ 1859, p. 1146.

or Pynson.¹ Mr. R. A. Graves of the British Museum, whose opinion is of a high value in a question of this kind, although he has been unable to find any book with exactly the same type, woodcuts, or initial letters, as in the one before us, has arrived at the conclusion that in its typographical features it most closely resembles the works of Wynkyn de Worde. The differences between the type and initial letters, for instance, of the present book and Wynkyn de Worde's *Boke named the Roiall*, are certainly minuter than in any other works of the time that I have examined. Wynkyn de Worde died towards the end of the year 1534, and was engaged at his press until the last. My final conclusion, therefore, is that Lord Crawford's copy of *Huon of Bordeaux* should be dated about 1534 (*i. e.* after March 16th, 1533, and before January, 1535), and that Wynkyn de Worde was its printer.

It is still more difficult to determine the date of the second edition, which has been wholly lost. No trace of it appears in the *Stationers' Registers*. But the colophon of the third edition, which was probably a rough reprint by an enterprising bookseller of the second edition, itself doubtless a reprint of the first, may enable us to fix the year of publication. It is there stated that the book was translated by Lord Berners "in the year of our Lord God one thousand five hundred three score and ten." Such an assertion taken literally is wholly gratuitous, but it seems probable that it applies to the date of the second edition, whence the words were erroneously copied into the third. Lord Berners' romance may therefore be said to have been published for a second time in 1570. The fact that several bibliographers at the beginning of the century assert distinctly that *Huon of Bordeaux* was printed by Copland, makes it just possible that the second edition came from his press.

¹ Mr. W. C. Hazlitt (*Handbook to Popular Literature of Great Britain*, 1867, p. 289) states it to have been published by Robert Redborne, in 1535. The entry of the book in the catalogue of the Corsser sale, makes it clear that Pickering's opinion, which is quoted by several authorities in favour of Redborne, was as we have stated it above. It is worth noting that several cuts resembling those in *Huon* appear in Pynson's *Sege and dystruccyon of Troye* (1513). They are, however, less finished, and are evidently taken from wholly different blocks. It is just possible that they were copied by the engraver who worked the *Huon* illustrations.

The circumstance that he was the leading publisher of romantic literature at the time, strongly supports the inference.

The edition of 1601, of which, as I have noted, two copies are extant, calls for some comment. It is evidently carelessly edited, and has incorporated, I have shown, features peculiar to the first and second edition indifferently. Its title-page runs as follows:—
 “The / ANCIENT / HONORABLE, FAMOUS / and delightfull Historie of
Huon of / Bourdeaux, one of the peeres / of *Fraunce and Duke of*
Guyenne / Enterlaced with the loue of many La/dies as also the
 fortunes & aduentures of Knights' / *errant, their amorous Seruants* /
 Being now the Third time imprinted & the rude Eng/*lish corrected*
and amended. / London. Printed by *Thomas Purfoot*, and are to be
 sould by / *Edward White*, at his shop at the little North dore / of
 Poules at the signe of the Gunne. 1601.”¹

Neither the copy at the British Museum, nor that at the Bodleian library is quite perfect. The former wants the last pages, and from the latter some twenty pages towards the end are missing.² They are in black-letter octavos, but in type and paper are very inferior to the first edition, and are without woodcuts. A rude attempt has

¹ 1. The Brit. Mus. copy (C. 40d. 42) has on the fly-leaf a MS. note by Mr. Utterson, who reprinted several of Lord Berners' works at the beginning of this century. It runs as follows:—“This is the only copy of L^d Berners' translation of *Huon of Bordeaux* I have ever met with, although in search of it for many years.”—E. V. U. “The writing on the last page,” it continues, in reference to the beautiful manuscript imitations of print which stands in place of the lost pages, “in completion of the work, is, I am told by a competent hand (?) that of the late Mr. Henderson, the Tragedian, to whom, therefore, it is fair to infer the volume had formerly belonged.” On the same page is the autograph of “R. Farmer,” and in two different hands (probably of booksellers) are set the prices £0 10s. 6d. and £1 10s. 0d.

2. The Bodleian copy belonged to Douce, and in his hand appear the following MS. notes:—I. “This the third edition, no other is known at present to exist.” II. “Tho' i have entered the fr^l title in my list, it neither appears where there is a copy of it nor how i am authorized to say Lord Berners was the translator for w^h however i presume there is good authority” (Ritson). This copy is further stated in another note to have been bought at Major Pearson's sale for £1 1s. 0d., and at Mr. Stevenson's sale for £1 5s. 0d.

² In the Bodleian copy, all between chapters 166 and the middle of chapter 171, and between chapter 176 and the last page of the last chapter 184 is missing. It, however, possesses the preface which we have already discussed, and a table of the chapters, both of which the British Museum copy is without. The latter copy has lost its proper title-page and colophon. They are *written* in printed characters.

been made to revise the language of the translation, and to adapt its style to the euphuistic prose of the later part of the 16th century. But after the first few pages the reviser of the "rude English" has abandoned any intention of radically "correcting" the text, and he has contented himself with translating the conspicuously obsolete words and phrases into their more modern equivalents. His labour has for us a very high value. A comparison of the first and third editions very adequately illustrates the change our language had undergone, between the early and the late years of the century, and the variant readings of the latter have therefore been collated in the present edition with Lord Berners' own version and printed at the bottom of each page.¹

Of a later edition of *Huon of Bordeaux* we have no positive information, but the following entry in the *Stationers' Register* in 1615 proves that its copyright continued to be of value to the publisher, and that it may possibly have been subsequently reprinted.

Sexto Novembris : 1615

Master **Purfoote** / Entred for his copies by order of a full Court holden this Day all theis following which were the copies of Master **Thomas Purfoote** his father Deceased x^r

vizt.

*The History of Huon of Burdeaux.*²

§ 22. Thus it will be seen that Lord Berners' rendering of the romance before us has many points of interest for English readers. To the bibliophile the first edition has infinite attractions. All Lord Berners' works are in his eyes to be more coveted than "fine gold," but none has so painfully tantalizing a bibliographical history as the book before us. By the student of language the work must likewise be highly valued. The translator's literary style displays, as well as he could desire, the capacity of the English language at the date of its composition, and the presence of a third edition of a later date

¹ With Part II. will be published an essay on the linguistic points of difference between the two editions.

² Arber's *Transcript*, III. 265b. *Huon* stands among a number of other books; next above it is *The booke of Palmestrye*, and below, *The Italian scholmaster*.

in which Lord Berners' English has been "amended" gives him the best procurable opportunity of tracing the growth of our language in Tudor times. Nor by the reader of English literature must the romance be lightly estimated. It beguiled, as we have seen, the leisure hours of many generations of our ancestors, and it introduced King Oberon to the Elizabethan dramatists and poets. I have omitted to dwell here upon its purely literary characteristics, not because they are deficient in number or without prominence, but because I desired my readers to detect them for themselves. Although the story has not the variety or the sustained interest of the *Morte D'Arthur*, and cannot escape censure for glaring faults of construction, that it shares, throughout its latter portions, with others of its class, many pages in the chapters contained in the present volume are characterized by high artistic merit. Although the battles of brave Huon, and his murderous attacks upon infidel Saracens may prove wearisome at times, the simple honesty of his character cannot fail to win our sympathy, and we feel drawn closer to him because he is no model knight; because he cannot always resist the ordinary human passions, and is cursed with a perilous inquisitiveness. Similarly Esclaramonde, the Saracen maiden, "the most fayrest creature in all Inde, the most swetest and most courtesest," is depicted with a charming *naïveté*. Love at first sight could hardly be portrayed with a more fascinating quaintness than in the words describing the effect upon her of Huon's first rude embrace, which it is part of his mission to Babylon to hazard. "She sawe hym so fayre & felte his mouth so swete that she thought without she myght haue hym to her loue, she sholde dye for sorrow, so *that* she changed couloure, & blusshyd as ruddye as a rose." Of Oberon I have already spoken at some length, but I have left it to my readers to appreciate for themselves the grace and sweetness of his character. He is only half a fairy. The grief that Huon's many failings cause him, his high moral tone, and his humble bearing give him a higher human interest than we are accustomed to associate with the inhabitants of a supernatural world; and there is nothing grotesque about his powers of enchantment. Throughout the story he embodies the spirit of mediæval piety with its material anticipations of a future

life. "And whan," he says, as he concludes his account of the marvellous capacities with which the fairies have endowed him, "I shall departe out of this worlde, my place is aperrelyd in paradyce, for I know that all thyngs creatyd in this mortall world must nedys haue an ende." With some occasional omissions, which each reader will determine for himself, the romance cannot fail to reward perusal. If the language is less melodious than the minstrel's viol described in its pages as making "so swete a sownde that it semed to be the mermaydes of the see," much of it is not to my ear without a music of its own, and, if the pleasure that the story can give, is not that to be derived from the most cunning literary workmanship, the travellers who are wont to saunter along the bye-ways of our literature will not, I believe, regret such time as they spend in surveying its "antique pageantry," and in listening to its recital

"Of turneys and of trophies hung,
Of forests and enchantments drear."

THE ADVENTURES OF
Duke Guon of Burdeaux.

Huon of Burdeux.

¹Here begynnythe the boke of duke Huon of burdeux & of them that issuyd fro him.

4

Capitulo .i.



ⁿ² the tyme acountyde the yere of grace A.D. 756.

.vii. c. & lvi. yeres after the crucyfyinge

of oure Sauyour Ihū Cryst, ther reygnyd

8

in france the ryght glorious and victor-

ous prynce Charles the grete, namyd

Charlemayn / who in his tyme acheuyde, and brought

to an ende many hygh dedes and gret enterprysys by

12

the grace *that* oure lord god had gyuyn hym in this

transetory worlde / for he sayd that god had gyuyn hym

the grace to haue the wyt and conduyt so to do / god

sent to aid hym, to acomplyshe, & to brynge to an ende

16

his noble enterprysys many a noble prynce and baron /

so that, by the ayde of theyr forsses, with the noble

proues that god had enduyd them withall / he conqueryde

the Almayns / Sclauoney / & Spayne / and parte of

Charles the Great reigned in France.

With the aid of his princes and barons he had already conquered the Alemanni, Slavonia, Spain,

¹ Fol. i. col. 1 (A. i.).

² In the 'amended' edition of 1601, this paragraph runs thus :—I italicize all changes :—

In the time *by computation called y^e yeere of grace*, which was Seauen Hundred, Fifty & Six yeares after our Sauours sufferings; Charles the great, *more vulgarly known by the name of Charlemaine*, a right royall, religious, & warlike Prince, rained as *KING* in Fraunce, Emperour of Rome. *Whose course of time was applyed to many high & heroycall enterprises, wherein the favour of heauen was evermore so assistant to him. as his owne heart and good hopes crowned him with the honour of many successfull victories: enabling all his endeavours with the aid of diuers noble Princes & Barons, whose chiualrie & right knightly performances, entitiled him to the conquest of Almaine, Sclauonia, Spaine,*

CHARL. ROM. VI.

B

part of Africa
and Saxony,

and gained
immortal renown.

Affryke / & Saxoney / wher as he had moche ado / but at
the ende, by the ayde of his noble barons and chyualrey /
he subduyde and put them to playne dyscounfyture, and
was crownyde with the crowne of the holy empyre of 4
Rome / the renoume of hym and of hys noble valiaunt
chyualry strechyd out of y^e eest in to the west in such
wyse that for euer theyr shalbe¹ made of hym perpetuall
memory, as here after ye shall here. 8

¶ How the Emperour Charlemayn requyryd
hys barons that they wolde chose one
amonge them to gouerne his empyre.

Ca. .ii. 12

After the
Emperor's piteous
loss of eleven of
his twelve peers
at Roncesvalles,



he summoned his
vassals to a meet-
ing at Paris.

Of it was after that this ryght noble
Emperour charlemayn had lost his
dere nepheuse Rolant & Olyuer, &
dyuers other barons and knyghtes, in 16
the ryght pyteous² & dolorus batayle
that was at Rownseuall / where as theyr was so
grete & so pyteous a losse that al y^e.xii. peres of
france theyr were slayne excepte the good Duke Names 20
of Bauier. On a day y^e noble Emperour held open
court at his noble³ Cite of Paris / where as their was⁴
many / Dukes, Erles / and barons / sonnes / and
nepheuse & parentes⁵ of the noble prynces before slayn 24
and deed in the fore sayde batayle / by the purchase⁶
and grete treason done and ymagenyde⁷ / by Duke

Saxonie, & a great part of Affrike, in all which attempts it is
not to be doubted, but both he & they had their hondes full of
busie employments. But let it suffice, God was their guide,
Religion the cause. Honour the obiect, & perpetuall Fame the
reward, which both led him & his traine to these worthy
attempts, & still brought them backe with the due to theyr
valorous Enterprises: extending both his & their renowns
to all parts of the world, & registering their names in the
Kalender of neuer dying memorie.

¹ shalbe be orig. ² unfortunate. ³ cheefe.
⁴ were assembled. ⁵ kindred. ⁶ falshood.
⁷ contrived.

Ganelon / the noble Emperour euer beyng after in
 doloure / and thought¹ / by reason of the grete anoyauce
 and dyspleasure that he hade of² hys sayde losse / and
 4 also by cause that he was sore³ febylle for⁴ the grete
 age that⁵ he felt hymself in.⁵ Thus when the kynge /
 and the prynces and barons hade dynyd⁶ / the noble **Having dined
with them,**
 Empe^rour called hys lordys before hym, he syttyng
 8 on a benche rychely aperelyd⁶ / and besyde hym
 satte⁹ hys noble barons and knyghtys. Than the kyng
 called to hym Duke Naymes, and sayde / ‘Syr Duke
 Naymes, and al ye¹⁰ my barons beyng here present¹⁰ /
 12 ye know ryght well¹¹ the greate tyme and space that I
 haue bene kyng of Fraunce / and emperour of Rome¹¹ /
 the whiche tyme duryng¹² I have bene seruyd and
 obeyed of you¹² al, whereof I thanke you / & render **Charles thanked
his barons for
their long service.**
 16 grace and prayse to god my swet creatore / and now by
 cause that I knowe certenly / that my lyfe by course
 of nature can not long endure / for thys cause¹³ **He knows his
end is near,**
 pryncipally I haue causyd you all to be assemblyd here
 20 to gether / to declare to you my pleasure & wyll / the
 whiche I requere you all, & humblye desyre you / that
 ye wyll counsell together, and aduyse whiche of you
 may & wyll haue¹⁴ the gouernaunce of my realme / for **and begs them to
choose a
successor.**
 24 I can no longer bere the trauayle and payn of the
 gouernyng¹⁵ therof / for I wyl fro hense forth lyue y^e
 resedew of myn age in peace, and serue our lorde
 god / wherfore, as moche as I may, I desyre you all to
 28 aduyse whiche of you all shalbe therto most able / ye
 know all that I haue two sonnes / that is to say, **He has two sons,**

¹ Greefe & heavynesse. ² by. ³ growen verie. ⁴ through.

⁵⁻⁵ now was stollen upon him. ⁶ were there assembled.

⁷ Fol. i. bk. col. 1 (A. i.). ⁸ in his royall Chaire of Estate.

⁹ likewise placed in their seuerall degrees.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ hether summoned by our royall commaundement.

¹¹⁻¹¹ howe longe I haue gouerned this kingdome of Fraunce
 & likewise swayed the imperiall Diadem of Roome.

¹²⁻¹² I haue found your duty & seruice so agreeable.

¹³ reason. ¹⁴ undertake. ¹⁵ belonging to the ruling.

Lewis and
Charlot,

but neither is
fitted for the
crown.

It was Charlot
who slew the son
of Ogier the Dane,
and caused much
evil thereby.

Loys,¹ who is to yonge, and Charlot, whom I loue well, and he is of age suffysent to rewll. But hys maners and condicions are not mete to haue the gouernaunce of suche two noble empys² as the realme of Fraunce / 4 and the holy empyre of Rome / for ye know well in dayes past, by reason of hys pryde, my realme was lykely to haue bene dystroyed, and I to haue had warre agynst you all, whan by hys felony³ he slew 8 Baudouyn, sonne to good Ogyer the Dane / ⁴ wherby so many illes hath fallen⁴ / that it shall neuer be⁵ out of remembrance ; wherfore, as long as I lyue, I wyll not consent that he shal haue the gouernance⁶ / though he 12 be ryghtfull enherytor / and that after me he ought to haue the syngnory. ⁷ Thus I desyre you to aduyse me⁷ what I shall do.'

¶ The conclusyon & answer that the barons 16 made, & of the ill⁸ erle Amaury / & of the consell that he gaue to the kyng agaynst the .ii. sonnes of Duke Setuin of Burdeux, wherof grete myschyef fell after⁹ / and 20 of the good counsell¹⁰ that duke Naymes gaue to the emperour. Capitulo .iii.

The barons
consult and

declare for
Charlot.



han duke Naymes / & all the barons assemblyd to gether in a corner¹¹ of y^e 24 palays, and there were long to gether. At last they al concludyd that to Charlot y^e kynges eldest sone aperteynyd the gouernyng of the sayd realmes. Then they returnyd to 28 the ¹²kyng, and shewyd hym there conclusyon where

¹ Lewes. ² States. ³ rashness.
⁴ whereon so many mishaps ensued. ⁵ rased *added*.
⁶ gouernment.
⁷⁻⁷ But instantly I entreat your Noble opinions.
⁸ dishonorable. ⁹ afterward ensued. ¹⁰ aduice.
¹¹ priuate parte. ¹² Fol. ii. col. 1.

a pon they were agreyd / of the whiche themperour was
 ryght ioyfull. Than he called before hym hys sone, and
 shewyd hym many fayre reasons before all hys barons /
 4 therwith auauuncyd¹ forth a felon traytour who had greate
 audyence² with themperour, & he had the gouernaunce
 of Charlot the kynges sone, who dyd no thyng but by
 hym³ / he was called Erle Amaury / he was son to on
 8 of the neuewe of the traytour Ganelon. Than he
 sayde to the kyng & noble emperour, ⁴ 'how is it that
 ye hast so sore to delyuer londys to gouerne to Charlot
 your sone ? ⁴ Syr, be not yet so hasty.⁵ But, *ser*, to se &
 12 to proue hys gouernaunce,⁶ gyue hym a lond that ought
 to be your owne, wherof ye be nother honoryd nor
 seruyd⁷ / y^e which⁸ londe .ii. prowde boyes doth kepe /
 who, this vii. yere passyd, wolde not serue you / nor,
 16 syn theyr father y^e duke Seuyne dyed, wold do you any
 obeysaunce / the eldest is namyd Huon / and the other
 Gerarde / they kepe Burdeux and all the londe of
 Aquitainie / they thynke skorne to releue⁹ theyr londys
 20 of you. But, *ser*, yf ye wyl gyue me men,¹⁰ I shal
 brynge theym as prysoners in to your paleys, to do
 your wyll with them / and than the londe that they
 hold / gyue it to Charlot your sone.' 'Amaury,' quod
 24 the emperour, 'I can you gret thanke *that* ye haue
 aduertysyd me of thys mater. I wyll ye take of your
 best frendys, and besyde theym ye shall haue of myn
 .iiii. M.¹¹ knyghtys, wel chosen and prouyd men of
 28 warre / & I wyl that ye brynge to me the two sonnes
 of duke Seuyne, that is to say, Huon / and gerarde,
 who by theyr pryde settyth¹² no thyng by me.'

Amaury,
 a traitorous Earl,

points out
 Charlot's
 inexperience,

and advises that
 as a test he
 should govern
 Bordeaux,
 whose princes
 Huon and
 Gerard,

having done no
 obeisance,

he will make
 prisoners.

The emperor
 assents.

¹ stepped. ² too much secrecie. ³ his direction.

⁴⁻⁴ whence proceeds it that you are so forward in deliuerance of your kingdome to the weake gouerning of Charlot your sonne?

⁵ forbear this hastnisse. ⁶ his ableness in such a case.

⁷ where you haue as yet neither fealtie nor seruice.

⁸ this. ⁹ hold. ¹⁰ and authoritie *added*.

¹¹ Thousand. ¹² set.



Han Duke Naymes, beynge there
 present, herd the wordys of Amaury,
 and saw how the emperour consentyd
 to hys desyre, he stept forth fyerslye,¹ 4
 & ² beheld Amaury, and sayde openly:³

Duke Naymes
 complains of
 Amaury's guile
 and the king's
 haste.

'syr emperour, grete yll and greate syn it is *that* ye so
 lyghtly do beleue suche men as ye know wel were neuer
 certen nor trew. Syr, duke Seuyn hath seruyd you all 8
 hys dayes wel and trewly / nor neuer dyd thynge wherby
 ye ought to dysenheryte hys chydren / the cause that
 they haue not come to your presence or thys tyme to
 serue you is none other cause but by reason they be so 12
 yonge. And also theyr mother who louth theym in-
 tierly / wyll not gladly suffer them to departe fro hyr,
 by cause of theyr yonge age. But, syr, yf ye wyll beleue
 me, ye shal not be so hasty to take from them there 16
 londes. But, syr, do as a noble prynce ought to do
 for y^e loue of theyr father who so trewly hath seruyd
 you / syr, sende .ii. of your knyghtes to y^e duches theyr
 mother / & let them say to hyr fro you, that she do 20
 sende hyr tow sonnes to you in to your court to serue

He advises that
 Huon and his
 brother, who are
 very young.


¹ boldly.

² Fol. ii. col. 2.

³ This speech is wholly rewritten in the later edition, and runs thus:—The ill is great but the sinne farre greater, when men of no truth or certaintie are so highly listned unto. As for Duke Seuyn, is it not well knowne, my Lord, what true & honorable seruice all his dayes he did you? & can you then bee so easily woone to disinherit his children? Consider, good my Lord, that the reason why as yet they haue not tendered their dutie in your presence, is nothing else but their want of years for such allegiance, & their Mother deerely respecting them, is loath to leaue their companie so young. And would your Highness but be aduysed by me, you should not so rashly depriue them of their londes: but rather as best becomineth a vertuous Prince, & in some regard of their Father's good seruice, first send two of your knyghtes to the Duchesse & let them in your name commaund her Sonnes personall appearance at your Court in case of seruice & dutifull homage: which if she or they shall refuse to doe, then may you justly procede otherwise against them. But I dare (my Lord) engage my honour, that send them shee will, and that onely a Mother's loue & care of her Children hath been the reason of their absence all this while.

you and to do theyr homage. And yf it be so that she
 nor they wyll not obey your commaundement, then should be sent for
 to do homage.
 shall ye haue a iust cause to prouyde a remedye. But,
 4 syr, I know for certeyn / y^e duches wyl send them to
 you, for y^e absence that they haue made is for no
 thyng / but for the loue that the mother hath vnto
 hyr chyldren.'

8 ¶ Howe that themperour Charlemayne sent
 two knyghtys to the duches to burdeux to
 commaund hyr to sende hyr two sonnes to
 hys court. Capitulo iiiii.

12 ¹  Han the emperour Charles had hard Charles approves.
 duke Naimes speke, he sayde, 'Syr
 duke, I knowe certainly² *that* duke
 Seuyne hath seruyd vs trewly / and the
 reason that ye haue shewyd is iust.

16 And therefore I graunt that it shalbe as ye haue
 deuysyd.³ 'Syr,'⁴ quod y^e duke, 'I thanke your
 grace.' Than incontynent the kyng sent for two
 20 knyghtes, and gaued them in charge to go to burdeux
 to do hys message to the duches, and to the sonnes of
 duke Seuyne / the whiche they dyd, and so departyd
 fro Parys without restyng past one night in a place,
 24 tyll⁵ they aryued at burdeux / and than incontynent
 they went to y^e palays, where as they founde the
 duches, who was as than but newly rysyn fro hyr
 dyner; and whan she was aduertysyd of there comm-
 28 yng / she cam in haste to mete them / accompenyd
 with Huon hyr son, who was by hyr; and Gerarde
 came after with a sparhawke⁶ on hys fyst / when the
 messengers saw the duches and hyr two goodly sonnes /
 32 they kneyled down, and salutyd the duches / & hyr
 two sonnes⁷ fro kyng Charlemayn, and sayd, 'Lady,
They salute the
 duchess and her
 sons from the
 Emperor,

¹ Fol. ii. back, col. 1.² for certainty.³ aduised.⁴ My Lord.⁵ untill.⁶ sparrowhawke.⁷ col. 2.

and bid her send
her sons to court
on peril of losing
her land to
Charlot.

to you we be sent fro our emperour Charles / who by
vs sendyht to¹ you hys salutasyon with honour and
amyte.' When the noble lady vnderstode that they
were messengers sent fro the noble emperour Charles / 4
she auaunsyd and embrasyd theym / and sayde how they
were ryght welcom. 'Dam,'² quod they, 'our emperour
hath sent vs to you / & commaundyth you to send to
hym your two sonnes to serue hym in hys court / for 8
ther are but³ few in hys realme, but that are come to
his seruyce, except your sonnes / &, lady, syn ye know
that the londe *that* ye hold parteynynge to your sonnes
is holden of y^e emperour Charles, by *reason* of his 12
realme of⁴ Fraunce / and he hath greate merueyll *that*
ye have not sent them or⁵ thys tyme to do hym seruice
as other dukes & prynces⁶ hath⁷ done / wherfore,⁸
lady, he commaundyth you for your welth, and con- 16
ceruasyon of your londys, *that* ye send them to hym /
or yf ye do not / know for certeyn he wyll take fro
you suche londys as ye hold, & gyue them to Charlot
hys sone / ⁹ Wherfore may it please you to shewe vs 20
your good wyll.' ⁹

¶ The aunswer that the duches of burdeux
made to themperours messengers.

Capitulo v. 24

The duchess
pleads in excuse
their youth,



Han the good lady hade well vnder-
stonde the messengers, she answered
them swetly,¹⁰ & sayde, 'Syr,¹¹ knowe
for certeyn the cause that¹² I have not 28
sent my sonnes / to the court or¹³ thys
tyme / to serue y^e kynge as reason is¹⁴ / was by cause I

¹ unto. ² Madome. ³ verie. ⁴ royall prerogative in.
⁵ ere. ⁶ in like case, *added*. ⁷ have. ⁸ In this respect.
⁹⁻⁹ This is the summe of our Messuage, and wee attend
your answeare.

¹⁰ gently. ¹¹ My Lordes and honourable Freendes.
¹² the reason why. ¹³ before. ¹⁴ dutie required.

saw theym so yonge;¹ and also for the loue of duke
 Seuyn theyr father / and by cause I knewe certainly and the Emperour's
 love to their
 father.
 that my ryghtfull ²lorde, the emperour Charlemayne /
 4 loued alwayes the duke Seuyn, trustynge alwayes
 that he wold take no dyspleasure with the chyldren /
 these thynges hath³ ben the pryncypall cause that I
 haue not sent them or thys⁴ to serue the kynge /
 8 wherfore, Syrs, I requyre you, as affectuosly as I can,⁵
 to be meanes to themperour and to al the other barons
 to haue me and my chyldren excusyd, for y^o faulte is
 alonlye in me and not in them.' Than Huon stept
 12 forth before hys mother and sayde:—'Madame, yf
 it had ben your pleasure, ye myght haue sent vs or⁶
 thys tyme' / 'that is trew,' quod Gerardyn / 'for we be
 grete ynow to be made knyghtes.'⁷ The lady behelde
 16 hyr two sonnes and wepyng sayde to the messengers,
 'Syr, ye may retourne to the kynge / howe be it ye
 shal reste you thys nyght in my house, and to morow
 retourne⁸ at your pleasure / and ye shall recommend She bids the
 messengers stay
 the night,
 20 me and my sonnes to y^o kynges good grace & to the
 other barons and knyghtes / and amonge other salute and salute Duke
 Naymes on their
 return.
 duke Naymes, who is nere parent⁹ to my sonnes / and
 desyre hym for y^o loue of duke Seuin to haue my sonnes
 24 as recommendyd.'¹⁰ ¹¹'Dame,'¹² quod the messengers,
 'haue ye no dought / for Duke Naymes is a noble man
 and a trew knyght / nor he wyl neuer¹³ be in no¹⁴ plase
 where any yll iugement¹⁵ shulde be gyuen.' Than the
 28 duches commaundyd hyr sonnes / that they shulde make
 the kynges messengers good chere and to bryng them in
 to theyr chambre to reste them / the whiche they dyde /

¹ in regarde of their tender yeares. ² Fol. iii. col 1 (A. iii.).

³ haue. ⁴ all this while.

⁵ let my entreats preuaile so much with you as ⁶ before.

⁷ are old ynough to haue our knighthood. ⁸ depart.

⁹ kinsman. ¹⁰ to stand a continuall freend unto them.

¹¹ Fol. iii. col. 2. ¹² Madame. ¹³ will he at any time.

¹⁴ omitted. ¹⁵ opinion.

In the presence
of the messengers,
the duchess
promises to send
Huon and Gerard
to the Emperor at
Easter,
and advises them
as to their
conduct at court.

Presents are
given to the
messengers,

and they depart
for Paris.

and were serued, and festyd as it aparteyned.¹ Than
y^e next mornynge they retourned to y^e palayes where as
they founde the duches and hyr two sonnes / and they
humbly salutyd the lady / whan y^e duches sawe them 4
she called Huon and Gerardyn, and sayde, 'chyl dren,
here in the presence of these two knyghtes I say that
at Ester ye shal go to our soueren lorde themperour
Charlemayn / and, when ye be in y^e court, serue your 8
soueren lorde well & trewly, as subgettes ought to doo ;
be delygent at all tymys to serue hym trewly,² and
kepe company with noble men such as ye se *that* be
of good³ condysyons / be not in the plase where yll 12
wordys be spoken, or yll counsell gyuen / fly fro com-
pany of them *that* louth not honour & trouthe /
open not your eeres to here liers, or false reporters, or
flaterers / haunt often the chyrche, and gyue largely 16
for goddes sake / be lyberal and courteys, & gyue to
poore knyghtes / fly the company of ianglers / and all
goodnes shall folow therby. I wyll there be gyuen
to eche of these knyghtes a courser & a ryche 20
gowne, as it aparteyneth to the messengers of a noble
emperour as is Charlemayne / & also eche of them
to haue a C.⁴ florence' / 'Madame,' *quod* Huon, 'your
pleasure shalbe acomplyshed' / than the .ii. sonnes 24
causyd to be brought before the palays two goodly
horses, and presentyd them to the two knyghtes, and
gave eche of them a ryche gown and a .C. florence /
Whereof the messengers were ioyfull, and thanked the 28
duches and hyr two ⁵sonnes, & sayde that theyr
courtesey shulde be remembred in tyme to come / how-
beyt they knew well it was done for y^e honour of the
kynge / then they toke leue of the duches and of hyr 32
two sonnes, and so departyd / and rode without lette

¹ as appertained to their worth. ² faithfully.

³ and vertuous *added*. ⁴ hundred.

⁵ Fol. iii. back, col. 1.

tyll they came to Parys, where as they founde the
emperour in hys palayes syttyng amonge hys barons /
the kyng parseyued them / and incontynent called
4 them to his presence, and, or¹ they hade layser to
speke, the kyng badde them welcome home, and
demaundyd of them yf they had ben at Burdeux, and
spoken with the duches and the .ii. sonnes of duke
8 Seuyne, & whether they wolde come and serve hym in
hys court or not. 'Syr,'² quod they, 'we haue ben at
burdeux, and done your message to the duches / who
ryght humbly reseuyed vs, and made vs grete fest³ and
12 chere / when she had hard vs speke, and knewe that
we were your messengers, she made vs the best chere
that she cowde deuise, and sayde *that* the cause why
she had not sente hyr sonnes to your courte before thys
16 tyme, was by cause of theyr yonge age / and she
humbly requyreth your grace ⁴to haue⁵ hyr and hyr
two sonnes excuysyd / and that at thys next Ester she
wyl sende them to your court. And, syr,⁶ the two
20 chyldren are so goodly⁷ that it is pleasure to beholde
them / specyally Huon the eldest is so fayre and so
well formyd that nature cannot amende hym. Also,
syr, for the loue of you she hath gyuen eche of vs a
24 goodly horse, & a ryche gowne, and a C. florence of
gold. Syr, y^o goodnes, the valewre and y^o courtesey
that is in the duches and in hyr sonnes cannot be
recountyde. Syr, y^o duches and hyr two sonnes
28 requyreth your grace⁸ to retayne *them* alwayes in your
fauoure and good grace / and to pardone the faulte of
theyr longe absence.'

On their arrival
they inform the
Emperor of the
duchess' promise,

and her sons'
behaviour
towards them.

¹ ere. ² Dread Lord. ³ gaue us gentle entertainment.

⁴ Fol. iii. back. col. 2. ⁵ hold. ⁶ trust me, my Lord.

⁷ two such lovely Gentlemen.

⁸ and on their behalf are we to entreat your Maiestie.

¶ How themperour was content with the report of the two knyghtes / and howe the traytor erle Amaury went & complayned to Charlot the kynges sone. Capitulo .vi. 4



Han themperour had hard y^e messengers speke, he was ryght ioyfull, and sayd / 'alwayes I haue harde say that a good Impe¹ bryngethe forth 8 good ²frente / I say it for duke

Charles commends the conduct of the youths as worthy the sons of his friend and knight Duke Sevin,

Seuyn / who in his tyme was a valyant & trewe knyght, & by *that* I se and here³ the two chyl dren resembleth theyr good father. I se⁴ they haue reseyued my 12 messengers ryght honorably, and with grete reuerence hath gyuen them grete⁵ gyftes, y^e whiche shalbe to them vaylable⁶ in tyme to come / for they shal no soner be come to my court, but in the dyspyght of them⁷ 16 *that* wyl speke agaynst them, I shall do for them in suche wyse that it shalbe an ensample⁸ to al other to do well / for I wyl make them, for loue of theyr father, of my pryuey counsell.' Than themperour 20 behelde duke Naymes and sayde : ' Syr duke,⁹ alwayes your parentes¹⁰ hath¹¹ ben good and trew, and certenly I wyl *that* Amaury be banys hed my court / for he, nor neuer none¹² of hys lynage, gaue as yette any good 24 counsell.' 'Syr,' quod the duke, 'I knewe well y^e longe absence of duke Seuyns sonnes was for none other cause but by reason of theyr yought' / Whan the erle Amaury had harde the kynges speke, & sawe howe 28 he was chafyd¹³ agaynste hym, he was sorowful, and so departed secretely fro the courte, and sware that he wolde purchase¹⁴ for the two sonnes of duke Seuyn

and promises them high posta at court.

He orders Amaury to be banished.

Amaury in grief, and filled with hate of Huon and Gerard, devisees a plot against them.

¹ tree. ² Fol. iiii. col. 1. ³ that. ⁴ perceiue.
⁵ no meane. ⁶ available. ⁷ any. ⁸ example.
⁹ My Lord. ¹⁰ kindred. ¹¹ haue. ¹² euer any.
¹³ offended. ¹⁴ prouide.

suche a broth¹ that they shulde bothe dye in dolowre,²
 and wolde do so myche that he wolde brynge all
 Fraunce in to heuynes and trouble³ / so he went to hys
 4 lodgyng sorowfull and in grete dyspleasure / and than
 he imagyned and studyed on the mater, & howe to
 brynge about his interpryse / than he departed fro hys
 lodgyng, and went to Charlot the kynges sone, with
 8 whome he was ryght pryuey / he founde hym syttyng
 on a ryche couche⁴ deusyng⁵ with a yonge knyght /
 than Amaury⁶ wepyng with a peteous vysage / and
 hys eyen full of water,⁶ he entred in to the chambre /
 12 and knelyde downe before Charlot, who hadde of hym
 grete petye to se hym in that case. Than⁷ Charlot
 toke hym vp, & demaundyd wherfore he made that
 sorow, and whether any man had dyspleased hym.
 16 'Syr,' quod Amaury, 'I shall shew you / trew it is⁸
 the two sonnes of duke Seuyne of burdeaux / shal come
 to the courte, and, as I haue harde say, the kynge hath
 sayde that, at there commynge, they shalbe made of hys
 20 pryuey counsell / so that none other aboute the kynge
 shall haue⁹ no profyght nor wynynge. But they and
 I can se none other that yf they thus come / by them,
 all other⁹ that be now grete about the kynge shalbe
 24 chasyd away, so *that* within this .ii. yere they shall
 haue y⁹ beste quarter¹⁰ of the realme of Fraunce / &
 you, yf ye suffer it, they shal brynge you clere out of
 temperours fauore your father. Therefore, Syr, I requyre
 28 you helpe me now in thys besynes / for in tyme past
 duke Seuyne theyr father, by grete wronge and grete

He reveals it and
 his wrongs to
 Charlot the king's
 son,

and begs for his
 aid.

¹ traine. ² as should cost both their liues.

³ and hazard the heuinesse & trouble of all Fraunce
 beside. ⁴ bed. ⁵ communing.

⁶ shewing a very sad countenance, the teares in his
 eyes & tracherie in his heart.

⁷ Fol. iiii. col. 2. ⁸ my greefe is not without great cause, for.

⁹ any honour or reckoning made of them. And assure
 yourselfe, my Lord, that if the State be thus aduanced, they.

¹⁰ partes.

treason, he toke fro me a strong castell of myn owne, & I neuer dyd him dysplesure / *ser*, ye ought to ayde in this besines,¹ for I am of *that* lynage / by reason of the noble quene your mother.' 4

¶ Whan Charlot had wel understonde y^eerle Amaury, he demaundyd in what maner he myght ayde him / 'syr,' quod he, 'I shal shew you. I shall assemble y^e best of my lynage, & ye shal let me haue of yours .lx. 8 knyghtes well armyd, & I shal lye in y^e way / to mete with y^e .ii. boyes / & I shal lay y^e bushment² in a lyttyll wood a lege fro Montleherry on y^e way to Orleance, by y^e whiche waye they must nedes come / 12 & than we shall sette on them, & slay them also, *that* none shal speke therof / and if it be knowen after, who dare say agaynst you, or were any helme³ agaynst you?' / 'syr,' quod Charlot, 'sease⁴ & apeace your 16 sorow / for I shal neuer haue ioy in my herte tyll I be reuengyd of these .ii. boyes / goo, & make redy your men, & I shal prepare myn, & I wyl go my self with you y^e soner to make an end of this besynes⁵ / whan 20 Amaury hard⁶ Charlot so liberally to offer hym selfe to go in hys ayde, he thanked hym, and embrased hys lege, & wolde a⁷ kyssed his shoo. But Charlot wold not suffer hym. But toke hym vp, and sayde :—'Syr, 24 haste you / and put to your payne that thys besynes may com to a good end.' Amaury departed fro Charlot ryght ioyous, and, at the day apoynted, he seasyd not day nor nyght to assemble hys men and hys next⁸ 28 frendys / and, in the euenyng before, he came to Charlot, who was as than also redy, and hys men / and, as secreteley as they myght, they departed about the owre of mydnyght out of Parys, al armed, and they 32 seasyd⁹ not tyll they came to the plase apoynted to

The earl proposes to lay an ambush on the road,

and set upon the youths and slay them in their journey from Bordeaux.

Charlot agrees to assist him.

Charlot and Amaury prepare the plot,

and leave Paris at midnight with their men.


¹ serious matter. ² ambushment. ³ helme in feeld.

⁴ qualifie. ⁵ businesse. ⁶ Fol. iiiii. back, col. 1.

⁷ haue. ⁸ nearest. ⁹ stayed.

tary the *commynge* of the .ii. sonnes of duke Seun /
now I wyll leue to speke of them, and returne to
speke of the two sonnes of duke Seun / Huon and
4 Gerardyn.

¶ Howe the two sonnes of duke Seun of
burdeux toke leue of the duches there
mother / & howe *in* there way they ouer
8 toke the good abbot of Cluny there vncl
goynge towardys Paris to the emperour
Charlemayn. Capitulo .vii.

12  E¹ haue wel harde here before howe the
messengers of the kynges departed fro
burdeux. Than the two chyl dren² made
them redy to go to the courte, rychely
apareyled / and well fornysshyd of
16 euery thyng nedefull, aswell of gold & syluer & other
aparel of sylke as to theyr estate apperteynyd / than
they³ assemblyd the bar⁴ons of the countre, to whom
they recommaundyd theyr londys and sygnoryes /
20 and dyd chose out .x. knyghtes and .iiii. counsellers
to ryde with them to ayde and to gouerne theyr
besynes. Than they sent for y^e provost of Gerone,
called *ser* Guyre, to whom they recommaundyd all the
24 *feactes*⁵ of iustice / than,⁶ when Huon and his brother
had chosen them that shuld go in theyr companye,
than⁷ they toke theyr leue of y^e duches there mother,
and of the barons of the countre, who sore dyd wepe
28 by cause of there deperture / of⁸ the which they had
good occasyon so to do / and more yf they hade knowen
the peteous⁹ aduenture that ¹⁰fell after to the two
chyl dren ; for, yf y^e duches had knowen¹⁰ therof, she

Huon and Gerard
take leave of their
friends and their
mother.

Ten knyghts bear
them company.

¹ You. ² sons. ³ there. ⁴ Fol. iiii. back, col. 2.
⁵ affaires. ⁶ Then. ⁷ than *om.* ⁸ for. ⁹ haplesse.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ afterward befell them on the way. Or had the good
Duchesse but dreamed.

wold neuer haue sufferyd them to departe fro hyr / for
 after there fell suche myschyfe that it is a peteous¹
 thyng to recount it. Thus y^e .ii. bretherne departyd
 & kyssyd theyr mother, sore wepyng. Thus² they 4
 toke theyr horses and theyr company, and in passyng
 by y^e strettys of y^e towne / y^e people made grete
 sorow for theyr departyng, & sore wepyng, prayed to
 god to be³ theyr gyde and condute. The wepynges & 8
 lamentacyons were so extreme *that* the .ii. brethern
 kowd not haue so ferme a⁴ courage. But that they
 gaue many a sore seygh at theyr⁵ departinge out of
 the town / and when they had rydyn a certeyn space, 12
 and that theyr sorow was sumwhat apeasyd / than⁶
 Huon called hys brother Gerarde & sayde, 'Brother,
 we go to the court to serue the kyng, wherfore we
 haue cause to be ioyfull / wherfore⁷ lette vs two synge 16
 a songe to refreshe vs' / 'brother,' quod Gerarde, 'my
 hert is not very ioyfull to synge nor to make fest⁸ / for
 thys nyght I drempt⁹ a merwelous dreme / me thought
 .iii. lybardes¹⁰ assayllyd me and drew out¹¹ my hert out 20
 of my body. But me thought ye skapyd¹² saue and
 sownd, and retournyd bak / wherfore, dere brother, yf¹³
 it be your pleasure / to withstond my dreme, ¹⁴the
 whiche I reken our wyage to be a daungerous passage / 24
 therfor I wold desyre you lete vs retourne¹⁴ agayn to
 Burdeux to our mother. She¹⁵ wyll be ioyfull of our
 retourne.' 'Brother,' quod Huon, '& god wyll, we
 shall not retourne for feer of a dreme, it shuld be for 28
 euer to our reproche and shame / I wyll not retourne
 to Burdeux tyll¹⁶ I haue sene the kyng. Therefore,

The duchess and

her people weep
 at their departure.

On their way
 Gerard tells Huon
 a dream of evil
 import.

¹ lamentable. ² Then. ³ Fol. v. col. 1. ⁴ firme.

⁵ the. ⁶ then. ⁷ therefore.

⁸ sing or make any sport at all. ⁹ dreamed. ¹⁰ Leopardes.

¹¹ drewe. ¹² you escapyd. ¹³ if so.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ which makes me dread our iourney to be dangerous:
 might I preuaile with you, we would ride backe.

¹⁵ who. ¹⁶ vntill.

swete brother, dismay you not. But rather make good chere; our lorde Ihesu Crist shal gyde & condute vs in saue gard.' Thus these two bretherne rode nyght
4 and day so longe tyll they parseyued before theym the Abbot of Cluny with a .xxx. horse in hys companye, and he was goynge to the kynges court.

They see before them the Abbot of Cluny and his company.



8 Han Huon parseyued that companye, he called hys brother Gerardyn and sayde: 'loo, yonder I se men of relygyon holdyng the way to Parys / & y^e1 know well whan we departyd fro y^e duches
12 our mo²ther, she chargyd vs that we shuld always companye with good peopyl / therefore it is good that we make hast to ouertake them.' 'Brother,' quod Gerardyn, 'your pleasure be fulfilled: '
16 so they rode so longe that they ouertoke the Abbot, who regardyd on y^e ryght syde, and saw the .ii. bretheren commyng to ouertake hym. Than³ he stode styll, and saw Huon who came rydyng on before /
20 Huon salutyd hym humbly / and the abbot in lyke maner to hym / & demaundyd whether he rode so hastily, and fro whense he came, and what he was, and who was hys father. 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'syn⁴ it
24 is your pleasure to knowe, Duke Seuyn of burdeux was our father: it is .vii. yere syns he trepasyd⁵ thys lyfe. And, ser, behold here my brother, who is yonger than⁶ I, and we are goynge to noble kynge Charlemayns
28 court, to releue of hym our londys and countre / for he hath sent for vs by two noble knyghtes / and, syr, we are in dowt of sum truble by the way' / When the good Abbot vnderstode that they were sonnes to duke
32 Seuyn, he was ryght ioyfull / and in token of trew amyte he embrassyd theym one after another, and sayde / 'dere frendys, haue no dowt, for, by the grace

They ride on and salute the Abbot.

The Abbot welcomes them kindly,

¹ you.

² Fol. v. col. 2.

³ Then.

⁴ since.

⁵ departed.

⁶ then.

and offers to
conduct them to
Paris.

of Ihesu Cryst, I shall condute¹ you saucly to Parys /
for duke Seuyn your father was my cousyn germayn,
wherfore² I am bownd to ayde you : know³ for
trought, I⁴ am sworne of the greate counsell with 4
kyng Charlemayn / and yf there be any that wyl
moue or styre against you, I shall ayde you to my
power / wherfore ye⁵ may ryde suerly in my company
without any dowt.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I thanke you' / 8
thus they rode talkyng with y^c abbot theyr parent :⁶
that nyght they came to Montleherry. Than the next
day they rose⁷ be tymys and herd masse, & after
masse⁸ toke theyr horsse; and they were in all a .iiii. 12
score horsse / & they rode so longe tyll they came to a
lytyll ⁹ woodsyde / where as Charlot and the erle
Amaury lay in a bushment / and¹⁰ they spyed Huon
and Gerarde rydyng before, wherof they were ioyfull. 16
Than Amaury¹¹ sayde to Charlot, 'Syr, now is the tyme
come to be reuengyd of the damage that duke Seuyn
dyd to me / yonder I se hys .ii. sonnes commyng : yf
they be not incontynent slayne by vs, we are not 20
worthy to haue any lond.¹² And Syr, by theyr deth
ye shall be lordo of Burdeux / and of all the duchy of
Aqyutanie.'¹³

Together they
approach the
wood,
where Charlot
and Amaury lie
in ambush.



¹⁴ ¶ Howe by the counsell of the erle of¹⁵ 24
Amaury they ran fyrst¹⁶ [at] Gerardyn,
brother to Huon, & bare hym to the erth,
and sore woundyd hym, wherof Huon was
ryght sorowfull. Capitulo .viii. 28

¹ conducte. ² therefore. ³ and know. ⁴ that I.
⁵ you. ⁶ kinsman. ⁷ arose. ⁸ afterward.

⁹ Fol. v. back, col. 1. ¹⁰ lay closely ambushed, there.

¹¹ Then Americ. ¹² Land or life. ¹³ Aquitaine.

¹⁴ Fol. v. back, top of col. 2. ¹⁵ of Earle ¹⁶ firste at.



4 **W**han¹ that Charlot vnderstode the erle
 Amaury, he strechyd hym in hys
 steropes, and toke a spere with a
 sharpe hed, and issuyd out² alone out
 of the wood / when Amaury saw that
 Charlot went out of the wood alone, he drew a lytyll
 out of the way, & sayde to hys men, 'suffer Charlot
 8 alone, there nede none go to ayde hym.' Thys sayde
 y^e false traytour, by cause he desyred no thyng elles,
 but³ one of the sonnes of duke Seuyn myght sley Charlot,
 4 wherby he thought [Charlot] shuld be dystroyed
 12 in acusyng them of murder, wherby he myght come
 to⁴ his dampnable⁵ intent / Charlot came agaynst thes
 .ii. brethern / the Abbot of Cluny saw Charlot comm-
 ynge al armyde / and saw in the wood a greate nombre
 16 of armyd men⁶ / then he stode styll, and called Huon
 & Gerarde, & sayde / 'dere neuewe, I parseyue⁷ in
 yonder wood a knyght all armyd, and the wood full of
 horsemen : I can not tell what they meane. Haue ye
 20 done any wronge to any man? yf ye haue done, or
 holde any thyng that ys not your owne / steppe forth
 and offer hym reason, and promyse to make a mendys.'
 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I know no man luyng that I or
 24 my brother haue done to hym any displeasure / nor
 we kuow not that any creature do⁸ hate vs' / than
 Huon sayde to hys brother, 'Syr,⁹ ryde on before, and
 mete with yonder knyght / and demaunde what is hys
 28 pleasure.' Gerarde rode forth and mette with Charlot,
 and demandyd what hys pleasure was to haue, or
 whether he was kepar of that passage or not, and
 demaundyd any trybute or not : yf he dyd, he was
 32 redy to pay yt. Charlot aunswered hym fyersly, and
 sayde, 'what art thou?' Gerarde aunswered and

Charlot advances
alone from the
wood fully armed

The Abbot
perceives him
afar off.

Huon sends
Gerard to ask his
pleasure.

¹ Across the page, not in columns. ² yssued. ³ but that.

⁴ and as himselfe detecting them of the murder.

⁵ Fol. vi. col. 1. ⁶ men more. ⁷ perceiue.

⁸ doth. ⁹ Brother.

sayde, 'Syr, I am of the Cite of Burdeux, and sone to duke Seuyne, whom god pardon; and hereafter commyth Huon myn elder brother, and we are goyng to Parys to the kynges court, to releue our londys and our fees, 4 and to serue hym / and yf there be any *that* wyl any thyng with vs, let hym come to Parys, & we shall do hym reason.' 'Hold thy toung,' quod Charlot, 'whether thou wylt or not, I wyll haue reason ¹of that / that 8 Seuin thy father toke fro me¹ / for he toke .iiii. of my Castelles,² and I kowd neuer ³haue reason of hym.³

But now, syne⁴ thou art here, I wyl be reuengyd of the wronge that thy father dyde to me, for as long as thou 12 and thy brother be a lyue, I shall neuer haue ioy in my hert / there for ⁵beware of me, for, or⁵ it be nyght, I shall ⁶make thy lyfe depart fro thy bodye.' 'Syr,' quod Gerarde, 'haue petye of me: ye may se I am but 16 naked without armure. It shalbe greatly to your veleny⁷ and reproche yf I be thus slayne by you: it neuer commyth of a yentyll courage of any⁸ knyght to assayle any person without armure or wepeyn / howe 20 be it, syr, I crye you mercy / wel ye se *that* I haue nother swerde / shyld / nor spere / to defende me with all / ye may se yonder comyng my elder brother, who shalbe redy to make you amendes, yf any harme hath 24 bene done to you' / 'peace,' quod Charlot / 'theyr ys as now no thyng so dere to⁹ me as can moue me contrare. But that shamfully I shall put [thee] to y¹⁰ deth / beware of me.' Gerarde, who was but yonge, 28 was in greate feer, and called apon our lorde god, and tournyd hys hors to come agayne to hys brother. But Charlot, who was in hys foolyshe opynyon,¹¹ cowchyd hys spere / and ran after Gerarde, and strake¹² hym on 32

Charlot replies that their father did him base wrong,

for which he will revenge himself now by slaying Gerard.

Gerard pleads that he is unarmed.

Charlot will hear nothing,

and rushes upon him.

¹— for some wrongs done me by thy Father Duke Seuin.
² Castles from me. ³— know the reason thereof. ⁴ since,
⁵— stand on thy ground, for before. ⁶ Fol. vi. col. 2.
⁷ shame. ⁸ or a. ⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ put thee to.
¹¹ desperate moode. ¹² strooke.

the syde with suche force that the spere ran throw
 parte of hys body, and so bare hym to the erth, Gerard falls.
 wenyng he had bene slayn / how be it y^e stroke was
 4 not mortale / ¹our lord god sauyd hym at that tyme ;
 howbeit¹ he was so sore hurte that he kowd not
 remoue for payne that he felt. The good Abbot of
 Cluny behelde Gerarde, and saw hym borne to the
 8 ground, and peteously wepyng,² sayde to³ Huon / 'ha,
 cosyn, I se yonder your brother Gerarde slayn, the
 whiche⁴ sleyth my⁵ hert.' 'A, ser,' quod⁶ Huon, 'for Huon thinks him
slain,
 goddessaake counsel me.⁷ Alas, what shall the duches our
 12 mother say when she knowith that my brother is slayne,
 who so swetly⁸ hath norysshed vs. A, my dere brother
 Gerarde / now I se wel your dreame is⁹ trew. Alas *that* I
 had not belyued you; yf I hade thys had not fortunyd.¹⁰
 16 A, Syr,' quod⁶ Huon to the Abbot, 'I requere¹¹ you¹² and in vain begs
aid of the Abbot,
 socoure me / for yf I shulde be slayne I wyll go and
 wyl demaunde of yonder knyght for ¹³what occasyon he
 hath slayne my brother, nor I shal neuer retourne tyl¹⁴
 20 I haue slayn him or he me.' 'A, fayre nephew,' quod⁶
 the Abbote, 'beware what ye do / haue no trust to be who is a priest
and man of
peace.
 socouryd by me / for ye knowe well in thys cas / I
 can not ayde you / I am a prest & serue gode; I may
 24 not be where any man ys slayne.' 'Syr,' quod⁶ Huon,
 'of suche companye as yours is we myght well forbeer.'
 Then Huon behelde peteouslye¹⁵ the .x. knyghtes that
 came with hym fro burdeuxe / And sayde, 'Syr, ye He appeals to the
knights of his
escort.
 28 that are come hether with me / and haue bene
 norysshede in my hous, how say you, wyll ye ayede
 me to reuenge y^e deth of my brother / & to socoure me
 agaynst thys fals mourderers that hath lyene¹⁶ in a

1-1 although in sooth verie dangerous, for.

² (overcome with great greefe.) ³ unto.

⁴ the sight whereof. ⁵ poore *added*. ⁶ quoth.

⁷ in this heaue case *added*. ⁸ louingly. ⁹ too *added*.

¹⁰ happened. ¹¹ desire. ¹² to *added*.

¹³ Fol. vi. back, col 1. ¹⁴ untill. ¹⁵ heavily. ¹⁶ lain.

They gladly lend
assistance.

wayte and slayn my brother Gerarde?' 'Syr,' quod¹ they,² 'to dye in the quarell³ we shall⁴ ayde & socoure you:⁵ goo forth & haue no dowt' / and then they rode forth with suche smal defence as they had. Then⁴ Huon brochyd⁶ forth his hors *with* such fyersnes that he made the erth to trymble vndere hym / and hys knyghtes folowyde hym *with* a hardye courage, determynde⁷ to do walyauntly / when the goode Abbot⁸ saw hys nephew depart and hys companye he had grete petye / he prayed our lorde god to defende them fro deth. And the Abbot wyth hys companye folowyde softly after Huon to see what ende y⁹ matere shulde¹² come vnto. Huon rode so long til⁸ he came wher as hys brother lay sore woundyd. Then he cryede alowde, 'my ryght dere brother, yf theyr be any lyfe in your bodye, aunswer me, & shew me how ye fele your selfe.'¹⁶ 'Brother,' quod¹ Gerarde, 'I am sore woundyde; I can not tell yf I may skape a lyue / thynke on your selfe / yt ys no losse of me / fly ye away yonder; ye may see how the woode ys full of armyde men / and they²⁰ abyde for no thyng but to sley you as they haue done me.'

Huon rides to
wher his brother
lies sorely
wounded.



¶ Howe Huon of Burdeuxe was soroufull when he sawe hys brother Gerarde so sore²⁴ woundyde / and how he slew Charlotte / and how he came before the kyng at Parys and apealyde¹⁰ hym of treason.

Capitulo .ix. 28

¹ quoth. ² were we sure *added*. ³ yet *added*.
⁴ should. ⁵ therefore *added*. ⁶ spurred.
⁷ determining. ⁸ untill. ⁹ Fol. vi. back, col. 2.
¹⁰ appeached.



4 Hen Huon vnderstod his brother / he
 hade grete petye,¹ and sayde how² he
 hade rather dye then to³ departe
 wythoute reuengynge of hym, ' & god
 wyl I shall not departe tyl I haue
 slayn hym that hath brought you in to thys poynte'⁴ /
 then he sporryd hys hors, and folowyd after Charlot,
 8 who was retournynge to the woode to hys companye /
 but when Charlot parseyuyde how Huon folowyd
 hym / he tournyde hys hors and behelde hym fyerslye.
 Then Huon cryed *with* a hye voyse & sayd, 'wassale,⁵
 12 who⁶ art thou *that* hath⁷ slayn my brother? wher wert
 thou borne?' / Charlot answeyrd⁸ & sayde, 'I was borne
 in Almayne, & I am sone to Duke Thyrrey' / Huon
 beleuyd he had sayd trouthe, by cause⁹ Charlot had a
 16 dysgysyd shyld bycause he wolde not be knowen / 'a,
 quod Huon, 'god gyue the incombraunce;¹⁰ why hast
 thou slayne my brother?' / than Charlot answeyrd
 fersly,¹¹ and [sayd], 'thy fader Duke Seuyne toke fro me
 20 .iii. castels, and wolde neuer do me ryght / therfor I haue
 slayne thy brother, and in lyke wyse so shal I the.'
 ¶ Then Huon in grete yre¹² sayd, 'false and vntrew
 knyght & morderer, or¹³ it be nyght, I shall shewe thee
 24 thy dolour that thou hast brought me in'¹⁴ / than
 Charlot sayd, 'beware the of me fore I defy the' /
 Huon, who had but small¹⁵ armure, toke hys cloke of
 skerlat & wrappyd it about hys arme, & drewe hys
 28 sworde & sporryd his hors, & came agaynst Charlot
 with his sword in his hande, and Charlot on the other
 parte came agaynst him with his spere in the reste, &
 he stroke Huon about the ryght arme, so *that* the
 32 stroke passyd through the doublenes of his cloke, and

Huon promises to
avenge the injury,

and challenges
Charlot,

who falsely
declares himself
Duke Thierry's
son.

Huon prepares to
fight,

¹ was verie sorrowfull. ² that. ³ omitted. ⁴ perill.

⁵ villaine. ⁶ what. ⁷ hast. ⁸ Fol. vii. col. 1.

⁹ for. ¹⁰ shame for y^e fact. ¹¹ boldly.

¹² rage. ¹³ before.

¹⁴ quittance this wrong appon thine own head. ¹⁵ no.

and strikes
Charlot dead.

through his gowne and shyrt, & myst the¹ fleshe / thus
Huon scapyd² that stroke, & thankyd god therof / then
he lyfte vp his sworde with bothe his handys and lette
the brydell of his hors goo, and so with all his myght 4
and vertu he stroke Charlot on the helme in suche
wyse that the serkell nor coyfe³ of stele cowd not
defende hym. But that the sworde went in to his
brayne, and so fell to the erth, and neuer rose after: 8
thus Charlot was slayne myserably / then the traytour
Amaury, beyng in the wode, perseyuyd well how
Charlot was slayn, wher of he thankyd god, & sayde,
'Charlot is deed, god be thankyd / for by that stroke 12
I shall brynge Fraunce in to suche a trouble, that I
shall atayne to all my desyres.' Then Huon, seyng
Charlot deed, retournyd to Gerarde hys brother, lyenge
styll on the 'erthe, brought hym Charlot horse, and 16
demaundyd yf he myght ryde or not / 'brother,' quod
Gerarde, 'I thynke yes; yf my wounde were bounde
fast I wolde assay.'

Huon binds up
his brother's
wound,

and sets him on
Charlot's horse.

¶ Then Huon alyghtyd and toke a pece of his shyrt, 20
and therwith bounde his brothers wounde / therwith⁵
Huons knyghtes came to hym, and aydyd⁶ to set
Gerarde on his hors: but for the payne that he
sufferyd he swounyd⁷ twyse / then when he came 24
agayne to hym selfe they set hym on an amblynge
palfrey, and a knyght behynd hym to sustayne hym vp
ryght / then he sayde to Huon / 'brother, I requyre⁸
you let vs departe fro hense without goynge any 28
farther forward; rather let vs retourne to Bourdeux
to the Duches our moder, for I dowght yf we goo
any forther that some grete yll shall come to vs / I
promyse you yf we be perseyuyd by them that be in 32
the wode, and *that* they knowe that ye haue slayne
hym that hurt me, I fere me they wyll sle vs al' /

¹ his. ² escaped. ³ wikle nor coft. ⁴ Fol. vii. col. 2.
⁵ then. ⁶ holpe. ⁷ swounded. ⁸ desire.

'brother,' quod Huon, 'by the grace of god I shal not
 retourne for feer of deth / tyll I haue sene y^e kyng to
 apele¹ hym of treason, when vnder his condught and
 4 commaundement we be betrayed, and watchyd by y^e
 waye to murder vs' / 'brother,' quod Gerard, 'as your
 plesour is, so be it' / then they rode forthe the way to
 Parys fayre and easly, by cause of Gerard who was sore
 8 hurt / then y^e knyghtes that were inbushyd² in the
 wode sayd to syr Amaury, 'syr, what shall we doo,
 senne³ Charlot is slayne and lyeth in the playne / and
 yf we shall goo after them that hath done this dede /
 12 it shall be yll done yf they scape⁴ alyue a way.'
 Then syr Amaury answeyrd and sayde, 'let them goo,
 god curse them, lette vs folowe them aferre of / tyll
 they come to Parys / let vs cary with vs the body of
 16 Charlot and brynge it to the kyng / and there ye
 shall se what I shall saye, and yf ye wyll agree to bere
 wytnes⁵ of that I shall say to y^e kyng, I shall⁶ make
 you all so ryche *that* ye shall neuer be power after' /
 20 they answeyrd they wolde fulfyll his pleasure / then
 they went out of y^e wode, and came there as Charlot
 lay deed / then they toke hym vp and layde hym
 before y^e erle Amaury on his horse necke / and so
 24 rode forth that, god confounde them,⁷ / for as moche as
 in them lay, they dyd⁸ to haue Huon iugyd to dethe /
 thus they rode the hye waye to parys / & the abbot of
 cluney, who was rydyn⁹ on before, lokyd behynde hym
 28 and sawe the .ii. brethren comynge after hym / then he
 taryed and demandyd of Huon what aduenture he had
 founde / 'syr,' quod he, 'I haue slayne hym that hath
 sore hurt my brother / and¹⁰ he thought to haue slayn
 32 me / but, thankyd be god, I haue lefte hym ded in the

He proceeds to
 court to accuse
 the Emperor of
 treason,
 for the attack
 has been made
 while under his
 safe conduct.

Amaury raises
 Charlot's body on
 to his own horse,
 and follows after
 Huon.

Huon with his
 brother meets the
 Abbot again.

He recounts to
 him the
 aduenture.

¹ appeach. ² ambushed. ³ see. ⁴ escape.

⁵ Fol. vii. back, col. 1. ⁶ will.

⁷ mischeefe & mishap followe them. ⁸ laboured. ⁹ ridden.

¹⁰ where.

The Abbot
promises to plead
for him to the
King.

'place' / 'fayr nephew,' quod the abbot, 'I am sory
therof, but seen¹ it is done / yf any plee² come therby,
and *that* ye be excusyd³ before y^e kynge, I shall ayed
you with all my power' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'of that 4
I thanke you' / then Huon lokyd behynde hym and
sawe were⁴ the erle Amaury with all his powre came
fayre & easely after hym / therwith all his blode⁵
trymbelyd / then he sayd to the abbot / 'syr, what 8
shall I do? yonder I se them aproche that desyryth⁶
my deth / they be the same that laye in y^e wode
wachynge for vs' / 'fayr nephew,' quod the abbot,
'haue no dought / for they that come after vs cometh⁷ 12
but a soft pase; they make no semblant to ouer take
you / let vs ryde on a good pase, we shall be anone at
Parys; it is but .ii. myles thether.' Then they rode on,

They reach Paris.

and restyd not tyll they came to the paleys, and ther 16
alyghtyd and went vp. Huon helde his brother by the
hande, and the abbot by the other hande / then they
sawe the kynge syttyng amonge his barons / then
Huon salutyd duke Naymes and all the other barons, 20
and sayde / ⁸'god that for vs dyed on a crosse saue all
these noble barons / and ⁹confounde the kynge whome
I se there syttyng⁹ / for there was neuer harde of a
greter¹⁰ treason then the kyng hath purchasyd for¹¹ 24
vs / seyng that by his messengers and his letters
patentes he hath sent fore vs to do hym seruyce / the
which *commaundement* we haue¹² obeyed as to our
souerayne lorde / but by false treason & a wayte hath¹³ 28
layde asspyall¹⁴ fore vs, and a grete busschement,¹⁵ for to
haue murderyd vs by the way / and¹⁶ they haue¹⁷

Huon tells the
barons in the
King's presence
of the treachery
he has practised
on them.

¹ seeing. ² hurt. ³ accused. ⁴ where.

⁵ heart. ⁶ desire. ⁷ come. ⁸ Fol. vii. back, col. 2.

⁹ Health & faire hap to all these noble Lords, but shame
& dishonour to my Lord the King.


¹⁰ fowler. ¹¹ practised against. ¹² in all dutie.

¹³ been *added*. ¹⁴ secretly. ¹⁵ close ambush. ¹⁶ first.

¹⁷ *omitted*.

assayld my brother here present, and by them was he brought in to that poynt¹ / *that* they lefte hym for deed / and he sayde that² they set on me to haue
4 slayne me / but by y^e ayed of oure lord Ihesu Cryste with my sworde I so defendyd me / *that* he that thought to haue slayne vs, I haue slayne hym.'

¶ How the kynge was sore dyspleasyd with
8 Huon bycause he apeychyd hym of treason / & how Huon shewyd all the maner why he slewe the knyght that woundyd his brother. Capitulo .x.

12  Hen the kynge vnderstode³ Huon he
16 sayd, 'wassell,⁴ beware and thynke well what thou sayest here before all my barons / for neuer of⁵ all my lyfe I
20 nother dyde⁶ nor consent⁷ any treason / but by the fayeth that I owe to saynt Denys,⁸ and by my berde / yf it be so that thou canst not proue this that thou layest to my charge / I shall cause bothe the
24 and thy⁹ brother to dye an yll¹⁰ deth' / whan Huon herd the kyng how he toke his wordes / he stept forthe and sayd / 'O thou¹¹ kynge, beholde here my brother, who by the¹² is sore hurte and in iuperdy¹³ of
28 hys lyfe' / and so dyd¹⁴ of his brothers gowne and his doublet to his shyrt, and than vpeneth the grete wounde, so that the blode ranne out,¹⁵ so that Gerardyn fell¹⁶ in a swoune before the kyng and the barons, for¹⁷
the grete payne¹⁸ that he felt: wherof the emperour

Charles is
wrathful at the
charge brought
against him by
Huon.

Huon shows
Gerard's wound
to the court.

¹ into such danger. ² afterward. ³ had heard.

⁴ knight. ⁵ in. ⁶ did I euer act. ⁷ give consent to.

⁸ my maker. ⁹ Fol. viii. col. 1. ¹⁰ euill. ¹¹ Great.

¹² thy meanes. ¹³ ieopardie. ¹⁴ did take.

¹⁵ abundantly *added*. ¹⁶ it enforced G. to fall. ¹⁷ through.

¹⁸ anguish.

Charles pittes the
injured youth,

and promises to
punish him who
has brought him
to such a plight.

Huon describes at
length the manner
of the attack,

had suche pyte¹ / that his herte tenderyd² / than
incontynent³ he sent for his surgens, causyng them to
serche his wounde / than he demaundyd yf they coude
sauē his lyfe / and when they hadde well vysytyd⁴ the
wounde, they sayde / 'syr, by the plesure⁵ of god with
in this moneth he shal be hole & sounde' / the kyng
was glad of that answerē / than he regardyd⁶ Huon
and sayde, 'sene thou leyst this deed to my charge /
by the feyth that I owe to god & to saint Denis /
neuer in my lyfe I thought to do this treason⁷ / but by
y^e glorious saynt James,⁸ and by the crowne that I bere
on my hede / yf I may knowe who hath done this⁹ I
shall do suche puyeyon¹⁰ and so grete iustyce that it
shall before euer¹¹ a perpetuall memory¹² / & I shall
do you suche ryght¹³ that ye shall haue no cause to
complayn' / 'syr,' quod¹⁴ Huon, 'I thanke you, for in
obbeyyngē of your commaundement this myschyf is
fallen to vs. I can not thynke nor knowe that any
tyme of oure lyfe nother I nor¹⁵ my brother dyd neuer
wronge nor¹⁶ trespace to any creature / syr, at lenth I
shall shewe the maner of this dede¹⁷ / after that why¹⁸
departyd fro Burdeaux we founde no aduenture / but
whan we came with in a lege of mount leherry / we
met with our vnclē, the Abbot of cluney / and so fell in
company with hym / to conducte vs to your court, and
so we rode to gether tyll we came on this syde mount
leherry / than¹⁹ we sawe a lytell wode, and by the

¹ took such compassion.

² that he could not choose but much bemoane him.

³ And therefore immediately. ⁴ thorowly searched.

⁵ help. ⁶ and beholding.

⁷⁻⁷ thou must thinke, that thou hast touched the royall
reputation of a King & that in such sort, as verie hardly may
the condition of Majestie endure it.

⁸ by my Countreys honour. ⁹ heynous offence added.

¹⁰ right. ¹¹ as it shall remaine for. ¹² of due honour added.

¹³ And that yourselves shall report. ¹⁴ My Lord, answered.

¹⁵ either . . or. ¹⁶ ever . . or.

¹⁷ but thus (by your kingly pacience) the case happened.

¹⁸ we. ¹⁹ Fol. viii. col. 2.

bryghtnen of the sonne we sawe the helmes and
 speres and shyldes of them that were embusshyd in the
 wode, and the one came out of y^e wode all armyd, his
 4 spere in his hande, and shyld aboute his necke, and
 he came softe a¹ pace to warde vs / than all we stode
 styll, and sent my brother to the knyght to know
 wether they were spyes or men to kepe y^e passage, to
 8 y^e entent that, yf they demandyd any trybute, they
 shold haue ryght of vs / yf they wolde haue any of
 vs / whan my brother came nere to the knyght he
 demandyd what we were / & my brother sayde / how
 12 we were the chyldren of the Duke of burdeux, and
 where comynge by your commaundement to your court,
 to releue our londys and fees of your grace / than the
 knyght sayde how we were the same persons that he
 16 sought for / and sayd how that a .vii. yere² passyd that
 duke Seuyne our father had taken fro hym .iii. castels /
 the whiche was neuer so / than my brother offeryd
 hym that if he wolde com to parys before you & your
 20 barons he shuld haue ryght done to hym, yf he hadde
 any wronge done to hym / than the knyght answeryd
 that he wolde not so do / and ther with sodenly
 couchyd his spere, and stroke my brother as ye see, he
 24 beyng vnarmyd, so that he fell to the erthe, wenyng
 he had been slayne / and than he rode agayne fayre
 and easley towarde the wode. And whan I sawe my
 brother borne to the erthe, I had suche sorowe at my
 28 herte that I coude tarry no lenger to be auengyde /
 than I demandyd of myne vncler yf he wolde ayed me /
 he answeryd and sayd no, because he was a preest, so
 he and all his monkes departyd, and lefte me alone /
 32 than I toke the .x. knyghtes that came with me out of
 my countre / and I rode as faste as I coude to the
 entent that he sholde not ³skape⁴ that had so woundyd

and of his
brother's fall.

¹ a soft. ² yeres. ³ Fol. viii. back. col. 1.

⁴ escape.

my brother / & as sone as he sawe *that* I folowyd
 hym / he retournyd agaynst me / *than* I demaundyd
 of hym what he was / he sayd he *perteynyd* to Duke
 terrey of Ardayn / *than* I demaundyd why he had 4
 slayne my brother ; he answeyrd & sayd in lyke wyse
 he wold serue me / & therwith he couchyd his spere &
 stroke me on y^e syde through my gowne & dowblet, &
 hurte not my fleshe, as it was the pleasure of god / *than* 8
 I wrappyd my mantell aboute myne arme & I drew out
 my sworde, & with bothe my handys as he passyd by
 me I gaue hym such a stroke *that* I cloue his hede
 nere to the tethe / & so he fell downe to y^e erthe 12
 deed. I know not what he is / But what soeuer he be,
 I haue slayn hym / & yf there be any *that* wyll
 demaund ryght in this case, let hym in to your royall
 court before al your peeres, & I shal do hym reason yf 16
 it be founde *that* I haue done any wronge ; & whan
 I had slayne hym, I layde my brother on y^e deed
 knyghtes horse, & ouer toke y^e abbot myne vncler / as
 I rode I sawe¹ behynd me I saw them *that* where 20
 inbusshyd in y^e wode come rydyng after, & one knyght
 came before & brought vpon his horse y^e sayde deed
 knyght. I knowe well, yf they be not come, they
 wyll soone be here / whan kyng Charlemayn vnder- 24
 stode Huon / he hadde grete meruayll what knyght it
 was *that* was slayne, and sayd to Huon / 'knowe for
 trough I shall do you reason, for I know none so grete
 in my realme, who so euer it be, yf I can proue on hym 28
 any poynt of treason, but I shall cause hym to dye an
 yll² deth / for y^e mater touchyth me ryght nere, syn³
 vnder myne assurance & by my commandement ye
 are come hether.' Than y^e kynge commaundyd *that* 35
 Gerarde sholde be had to a goodly chambre & well
 lokyd vnto / y^e whiche was done.

He tells how he
 slew his brother's
 would-be
 murderer,

and how his body
 is now being
 borne to the
 court.

Charles wonders
 who the false
 knight may be.

Gerard by the
 king's order is
 carefully tended.

¹ and looked. ² euill. ³ seeing.

¶ How Charlot the kynges sone ¹ was brought
 before hym deed, & of the grete sorow
 that he made / & how the erle Amaury
 4 appellyd ² Huon for the deth of Charlot /
 & how the kyng wolde haue runne vpon
 Huon / & of the good counsell that Duke
 Naymes of bauyer gaue to the kyng.

8 Ca. .xi.



12 **H**w³ Huon of Burdeux & y^o abbot
 of cluney his vncler herd the good
 wyll of the kyng & the offer *that*
 he had made / they knelyd down
 to haue kyst his fote, & thankyd
 hym of his courtesey / than⁴ y^o
 kyng⁵ toke hym vp. Than y^o abbot sayd, 'syr, all
 16 that my nephew Huon had sayd is trew' / y^o ki[n]ge
 sayd, 'I belyue you wel' / y^o king dyd to them honour,
 & feest⁶ / but he had grete desire to knowe the trough
 of *this* case / & sayd, 'Huon, & ye, abbot of cluney /
 20 know for trough⁷ I haue a sone whome I loue
 enterly / yf ye haue slayne hym in doynge suche a
 velayn⁸ dede as to breke my assurance, I do pardon
 you, so *that* it be as ye say' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'of⁹
 24 *that* I thanke your grace / & surely y^o trough is as I
 haue shewyd you' / then y^o kyng sent for Charlot his
 sone / so he was serchyd for in his logynge / & there
 it was sayde how he was departyd out of y^o towne y^o
 28 nyght before / so y^o messengers departyd, & whan they
 came in to the strete / they sawe where the erle Amaury
 came rydynge with Charlot deed on his horse neck /
 & they herde in stretes lordes, knyghtes, ladyes, &

Huon and the
 Abbot thank the
 king for his
 courtesey.

Charles asserts
 that if Charlot
 himself proved
 the traitor his
 death should be
 readily pardoned.

He sends for
 Charlot.

But meanwhile
 his body is being
 carried to the
 palace.

¹ Fol. viii. back, col. 2. ² appeached. ³ when.

⁴ but. ⁵ knyng *in orig.*

⁶ fessted them in his Pallaice royally. ⁷ certaintie.

⁸ villainous. ⁹ for.

The people throng
the streets,
and greet the
cortège with
lamentation.

Charles hears the
cry, and
bids Duke
Naymes discover
its cause.

But straightway
Amaury brings
the corpse into
the audience
chamber,

and lays it down
before the King.

Duke Naymes
endeavours to
assuage Charles'
grief.

damasels making grete cryes & pytyous complayntes for Charlot, the kynges sone, whome they sawe deed / these messengers had grete meruayll¹ / at the last they persayuyd it was for y^e loue of the deth of Charlot / 4 than they returnyd to the palayes / but by rayson of the cry² that the pepull made, ³the noyse therof ⁴cam to the palayes. Y^e kyng Charlemayn herd his sonne Charlot namyd / than he sayde to duke Naymes / 8 'syr, I haue grete meruayll what noyse is it *that* is made in y^e towne, & as me thynkyth I here my sonne Charlot namyd / sertenly my hert gyuyth me *that* it is my sone that Huon hath slayne, wherfore I requyre 12 you go & knowe what the matter is.'³

¶ Than duke Naymes / departyd, & incontent he incounteryd Charlot borne deed betwene .iiii. knyghtes vpon a shyld / whan he sawe *that*, he was ryght 16 sorowfull, so *that* he coud speke no⁵ worde / than y^e vnhappy erle Amaury went vp in to y^e hall, & came before y^e kyng & all his barons, & ther he leyde downe Charlot / whan Charles sawe his sonne so 20 slayne / y^e doloure & sorow that he made was inportable ;⁶ it was pyte to se him / than duke Naymes had as mych sorow as other,⁷ seyng the pytfull aduenture, & also y^e sorow⁸ *that* his lordes made / than he came 24 to the kyng & sayde / 'syr,⁹ *comforte* yourselfe in this mysaduenture / syr, by takyng this dolour¹⁰ ye car

¹ were annoyed at these exclamations, but.

² outeries & pityous moone.

³ From 'the noise . . . is' is thus altered:—with oft repetition of Charlot's name (all which the Emperour, leaning at a windowe, confusedly heard) his heart waxed wondrous heauie, saying, 'Mee thinkes I heare such sorrow as hath not been usuall, and my Sonne Charlot's name is tossed to & fro in this outcry; it maketh me feare that it is my Sonne whome thou hath slain.' Then calling Duke Naymes unto him, requested him to goe forth & resolue him on this matter.

⁴ Fol. ix. col. 1. ⁵ one. ⁶ unspeakable.

⁷ any other. ⁸ moane. ⁹ Good my Lord.

¹⁰ by ouergreeuing at this ill hap.

wynne nothyng / nor recouer your chyldre agayne / syr,
 ye know well *that* my cousin Ogger the dane slew my
 sonne Bertrand / who bare your message of defyaunce
 4 to the kyng of Pauey / yet I dyd suffer it without any
 grete sorow making, by cause I knew well sorow coude
 not recouer hym agayne' / 'Naymes,' quod the kyng,
 'I can not forgete this / I haue grete desyre to knowe
 8 the cause of this dede' / than duke Naymes sayd to
 duke Amaury / 'syr, know you who hath slayne
 Charlot, & for what cause?' Than erle amaury stept
 forthe, and sayde with a loude woyses¹ / 'syr² kyng
 12 Charlemayn / what³ demaunde you any forther, whan
 ye haue hym before you *that* hath slayn your sonne? &
 that is Huon of Bourdeux, who is syttinge there in
 your presence' / whan the kyng herd what the erle
 16 Amaury had sayd / he lokyd feersly on Huon, and had
 stryken⁴ him with a knyfe,⁵ & duke Naymes had not
 ben,⁷ who blamed the kyng, & sayd, 'a, syr,⁸ what
 thynke⁹ you to do this day, to receyue y^e chyldren of
 20 duke Seuyne in to y[ou]r court, & hath promysed to do
 them ryght & reason, & now wold sle them / so may
 all suche as shall here of y^e mater shal¹⁰ say *that* ye
 haue sent for them to¹¹ murder & to sle them / and *that*
 24 ye sent your sonne to lye in a wayte for them, to haue
 slayne them / syr, ¹²by that I se in you / as now ye
 maynteyne not youre selfe lyke a man, but rather lyke
 a chyldre¹² / syr, demaunde of erle Amaury / the cause
 28 why he had forthe Charlot your sonne / & why *that* he
 assaylyd y^e .ii. brethren' / ther was present Huon, who
 was grete abasshyd of the kyng¹³ / who receyuyd
 hym so humbly,¹⁴ & now wolde sle hym / he was in

The King inquires
the manner of his
son's death.

Amaury
denounces Huon
as the murderer.

Charles would
have rushed upon
Huon but for
Duke Naymes'
intervention.

Huon fears the
King in his
wrath.

¹ voyce. ² Great. ³ why. ⁴ Fol. ix. col. 2. ⁵ stroken.

⁶ his Sceptre. ⁷ but for duke N. ⁸ Forbear, my Lord.

⁹ meane. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ to no other end but to.

¹²⁻¹³ By this may be discerned, that you forget the true
Majestie of a King, & expresse actions unseeming Charlemaine.

¹³ at the Kings furie. ¹⁴ first so kindly.

grete fere / and as moche as he myght he drewe backe
fro the kyng / & was abasshyd¹ in *that* he had slayn
the kynges sonne vnknowyng;² & than he was sore
troubelyd it was no meruayll, for they³ he sawe no 4
man *that* perteynyd to hym nor⁴ to ayed hym / nor⁵
too mayntayne his ryght / but alonely y^e good abbot of
cluney, his vncl / who coud gyue him none other ayed
but *with* his wordes : than he toke on hym corage, & 8
ryght humbly sayd to y^e kyng / 'syr, I requyre your
grace touch me not / for, syr, know for trough / he that
lyeth ther deed before you / I slew him in my defence /
and knew him not
to be the King's
son.
& not knowyng *that* he was your sonne Charlot / 12
for, syr, yf I had knowyn *him* I wolde in no wyse haue
touchyd hym / for, syr, ye may well knowe yf I had
knowyn *that* it had ben he I wolde not haue com
to you for resyne;⁶ I wold rather haue fled awaye 16
so farre that no man shulde haue herd any tydynges of
me / &, syr, for goddes sake I requyre you, as hertely
as I can, to let me haue ryght / I submyt my body / to
abide the iugement of your noble Peres, ⁷and yf it can 20
be prouyd *that* I slewe Charlot knowyng hym to be
your sone / than, syr, let me haue a shamefull dethe' /
than all the Peeres & barons beyng theyr sayde with
a hye voyse / how he had spoken resonably, & that yf 24
the erle Amaury wolde any thinge say to the contrary,
it was tyme than to speke and to shewe it.

The barons ask
Amaury for his
account of the sad
business.

¶ How the traytour erle Amauri chargid
Huon before the emperour, how that he 28
traytourously with treason prepensyd⁸ had
slayne the kynges sonne, & in that quarell
he appellyd Huon to batayll. Ca. .xii.

¹ greatly agreed. ² not knowing him.

³ And blame him not to be much troubled in mind when.

⁴ omitted.

⁵ or.

⁶ rescue.

⁷ Fol. ix. back, col. 1.

⁸ pretended.

W
4
 Hen the kyng had harde Huon speke,
 he beheld duke naymes, & desyred
 him too shewe¹ hys aduysse. 'syr,'
 quod the duke, 'I can seye none other
 thyng to you but as I sayd before /
 demaunde erle Amaury why he led fourth your sonne
 all armid, and kepte the busschement in the woode to set
 8 on the .ii. bretheren, or elles what was it that he sought
 for there' / then erle Amaury sayd, 'syr, I shall shewe
 you the trouthe, & yf I do otherwyse let me dye a
 shamefull dethe / trewe it is, this nyght passyd, your
 12 sonne sent for me, desyryng me to ryde with hym an
 hawkyng / and I desyred hym to abyde tyll² the
 mornynge / but he sayd *that* he would nedes go afore
 nyght / then I grauntyd to go with hym, so that he
 16 woulde ryde armyd / for I doughtyd the men of Arden,
 to the entente that yf we met with eny of them we
 myght be able to resyt them ; and so we dyd / thus we
 rode out of this towne, and came into a lytell wode,
 20 and there *we* cast of our hawkys, and theyre we lost one
 of them, and therwith the same waye came the chyldren
 of duke seuyn / and there we sawe Huon, the eldest, who
 is here present, who³ had taken vp oure hawke / and
 24 your sone came in courteyse manner to hym, and
 desyryd hym to rendre agayne his hawke, but the
 traytoure would not in no wyse / then Gererde, the
 yonger brother, came to your sonne, and they straue so
 28 togyther that your sonne strake him ; then Huon, with-
 out eny word spekyng, lyft vp his swerd, & so
 petuously⁴ slew youre sone / then he & his brother ran
 awaye so fast that we coulde not ouer take hym,⁵
 32 wherof we were sory / thus he knewe well your sonne,
 and he slew hym / and yf he wyll say the contrary,
 here is my gage, the which I present here before you /

The King follows Duke Naymes' advice, and appeals to Amaury.

The false Earl tells a lying story

how he and Charlot, while hawking, lost a hawk,

which Huon seized and refused to restore,

and how Huon thereon struck Charlot down.

Amaury challenges Huon to reassert that he knew not who Charlot was.

¹ giue. ² untill. ³ Fol. ix. back, col. 2.
⁴ villainously. ⁵ them.

and yf he be soo hardy to lyfte vp my gawge, I shall make hym confesse it or¹ it be nyght that it is trew that I haue sayd: and this I wyll proue,² my body ayenst his.' 4

¶ How the abbot of cluney wold proue that the sayeng of the erle amaury was fals & vntrew, & how the erle dyd cast his gauge ayenst Huon, who toke it vp. Ca. .xiii. 8

The Abbot of Cluny declares Amaury to have falsely spoken.



After that erle Amaury had endyd his tale, y^e abbot of cluney stept fourthe, and sayd to the kyng, 'syr, ye neuer herd so fals a tale before as 12 this traytour Amaury hathe sayd, for I and .iiii. moo³ of my mounkes,

beynge preestes here presente, ar redy to swere & to make solempne othe *that* the sayeng of this traytour is 16 false, and therefore there ought no gage to be layde in y^e cause, synse⁴ there is trew wyttenes of the mater' / 'syr,' quod the kyng, 'the wyttenes is to be beleuyd / syr Amaury, how say you therto?' / 'A, syr,' quod 20 he, 'I wolde be lothe to say agaynst y^e abbot, but y^e trough is as I haue sayd / y^e abbot may say as it playse him / but yf Huon be so hardy to deny this *that* I haue sayd before you / let him com in to y^e felde 24 agaynst me, &, or⁵ it be nyght, I shall cause him to ⁶confesse it openly' / whan y^e abbot harde *that*, he had grete meruayll, & beheld Huon, & sayde⁷ / 'fayr nephew, offer your gage, for the ryght is with y^e / for 28 yf *thou* be vanquysshid in this quarel, yf euer I retourne in to myne abbey theyr is no seynt in my churche, but I shall with a staffe beat & breke them all to pyces /

Amaury adheres to his story.

The Abbot bids Huon accept the false Earl's challenge.

¹ ere. ² with *added*. ³ more. ⁴ seeing.

⁵ before. ⁶ Fol. x. col. 1.

⁷ he grew offended, & looking stearely upon H., sayd.

for yf god wyll suffer suche a wronge, I shal gyue
 suche strokes vpon y^e shryne of seynt Peter *that* I
 shall leue nother gold nor precyous stone hole to-
 4 gether' / 'syr,' quod Huon / '& god wyll I shall not
 let to lyft vp his gage, for I shall proue *that* falsly and
 vntrewely / syr Amaury lyeth, as an yll¹ & a false
 traytour, & shal make him to confesse *that* I neuer
 8 knew *that* he *that* I slewe was y^e kynges sonne' / than
 y^e kyng sayd *that* Huon muost lay² hostage / 'syr,'
 quod Huon, 'ye shall haue my brother; I can not
 delyuer you any *that* is so nere me as he is / for here I
 12 haue nother cosyn nor kynsman *that* wyl lay in hostage
 for me' / 'fayre neuw,' quod y^e abbot, 'say not so /
 for I & my monkes wyl be pledges for you, & yf
 anythinge shuld fall to you other wyse than wel,
 16 which god forbed, than shame haue kyng Charlemayn,
 without he hange on the galous bothe me & all my
 monkes.' 'A, syr,'³ quod the kyng, 'ye say yll / for
 I wold neuer do *that*' / than sayde the kyng to
 20 Amaury / 'sir, lay⁴ pledges for your part' / the traytour
 answeyrd / 'sir, here be .ii. of my nephese shall be
 pledge for me' / 'I am content,' quod the kyng, 'on y^e
 condycyon *that* yf *thou* be vanquysshid or dyscomfytyd
 24 I shall cause *them* to dye an yll deth.' than y^e pledges
 said they wold be no pledges on *that* condycyon: let
 other be pledges who wold: but they sayd yf y^e king
 wold take *them* on the lesynge⁵ of ther londes / they
 28 were content / & the kyng graunted them.

If his nephew
 be defeated,
 he will break all
 the images of the
 saints in his
 church.

Huon takes up
 the challenge,

and gives his
 brother as
 hostage.

Amaury offers his
 two nephews as
 pledges.

¶ How those .ii. champions came in to the
 felde where as they shuld fyght, acompanyd
 with there frendis. Capitulo .xiiii.

¹ euill.

² giue.

³ Go to, Abbot.

⁴ bring in.

⁵ loosing.



¹ Hus as ye herd both *partes* delyueryd pledges; than y^e kyng, to be in y^e more suerte, put them both in a toure² tyll y^e day of y^e batayll: than y^e feld was 4 ordaynyd, for / y^e kyng than sware that his sonne shuld not be buryed tyll he that were vanquysshyd were hanged, yf he were not slayne in y^e felde / than he *commandyd* duke Naymes to be redy with an 8 C. knyghtes to kepe y^e felde & to se that no treason shuld be done; for he sayd he had rather lese³ y^e best Cyte of his realme / 'syr,' quod duke Naymes, 'be y^e pleasour⁴ of god, the mater shall be so orderyd for y^e 12 suerte of both partes, that none shal haue wrong' / y^e which thinge was done so delygently that euery thinge was redy / so bothe partes were brought in to the church of our lady in Paris, accompenyd with theyr 16 frendes, as in suche a case requyryd. with Amaury was is next frendes, all issuyd of y^e genalogy of Gannelon / whan they both had hard masse, they toke a sopp⁵ of wyne / than they were rychely armyd & 20 mountyd on good horses, & so tooke y^e way to y^e felde / y^e stages were redy, & y^e kyng & his barons there redy⁶ / abydyng for the .ii. champyons / who came one after another through y^e strettes / fyrst came 24 y^e erle Amaury, & he rode tyll he came to the felde, & than he alyghtyd, & salutyd y^e kynge & all the barons / than Huon cam anone after, acompenyd with a goodly soort / there was⁷ lenyng in wyndous ladys & 28 damesels a grete nombre, who all prayed our lord Ihū Cryst to ayed & to defend Huon fro the traytour Amaury / the peopell compleynynd / and thought it in possyble that Huon shulde resyst agaynst erle Amaury / 32 by cause Huon was so fayre and yong / but of the age of foure an twenty yere. But he was so fayre and

The lists are prepared for the duel.

The Duke Naymes makes all arrangement.

The champions with their friends repair to church on the day appointed for the fight,

and thence ride to the field.

The people debate the chances of the warriors.


¹ Fol. x. col. 2. ² Tower. ³ loose. ⁴ grace.

⁵ draught. ⁶ present. ⁷ were.

so well made of body that he coude not be amendyd,¹
 nor none more repl^{te} with vertu / there fore he was
 sore bemoynd² both of men and ³ woman that sawe hym
 4 passe by / & by cause y^e erle Amaury was a byg⁴ man
 & a valyant, & an expert man⁵ in armes, none stronger
 in all the kynges court / he was preuy⁶ with the
 kyng, & welbelouyd / pyte it was that⁷ he was suche
 8 a traytour, for a worse coud not be founde in any
 realme / he had grete trust in his owne strenthe / &
 lytyll praysyd⁸ Huon of bourdeux, thynkyng he
 shuld not longe endure agaynst hym / but there is a
 12 comon prouerbe / the which hath begyld many a
 man : it is sayd that a small rayne abatyth a grete
 wynd / for yf our lord Ihū Cryst wyll saue Huon / y^e
 force & pyssance of erle Amaury shall do Huon but
 16 small hurt / for the ryght excellent proffers⁹ and grete
 corage that was in Huon defendyd hym, as ye shall
 here here after.

¶ How those .ii. champions made theyr
 20 othes vpon the relykes that theyr sayenge
 was trewe / & what the kyng sayde.

Capitulo .xv.

24  Hus Huon [rode]¹⁰ tyll he came in to
 y^e felde : than he salutyd the kyng &
 all the barons ryght humbly / than he
 aprochyd to the relykes, & ther made
 his soleme othe in the presence of
 28 duke Naymes of Bauyer, who was
 keper of the felde, affermyng *that* neuer in his lyfe he
 knewe not *that* he had slayne Charlot, the kinges

Huon swears on
 the relykes that he
 has spoken truth.

¹ no knight so gallant & seemly. ² bemoynd in the orig.

³ Fol. x. back, col. 1. ⁴ big boned. ⁵ knight.

⁶ inward. ⁷ everie one greatly pityed that. ⁸ regarded.

⁹ partes. ¹⁰ rode is written in the orig.

sonne, &¹ all *that* erle Amaury hath sayd was false & vntrew, & that he lyed lyke a false traytour, & so kyssed the relykes / whan Huon had thus made his othe, erle Amaury stept forthe all afrayde / and sware 4 how Huons othe was false, and *that* [he] surely knew *that* it was Charlot whan he slewe him, by cause he claymyd his hawke, y^e which Huon had taken vp, & *that* he sayd he ²wold cause hym to confesse or³ it 8 were nyght. whan he had sworne, he thought to haue retournyd to his horse, & stumblyd so *that* he had nerehand fallen to y^e erth. all *that* saw it toke it for an yll syne, & iugyd in ther mindes how y^e mater was 12 lykely to go yll⁴ agaynst the erle Amaury. whan bothe those champyons had made⁵ theyr othes, & the duke Naymes had causyd the felde to be avoydyd / had set the keepers of the f-ldde in deu order as it 16 aperteynyd / *than* the .ii. champyons lept on theyr horses, theyr speres in theyr handys, & there shyldes about theyr neckes / *than* a crye was made *that* none shulde be so hardy to moue or to make any token to 20 any of y^e partes vpon payn of deth / after *that* crye made y^e noble emperour Charlemayn, full of Ire & dyspleasour, causyd it to be cryed,⁶ *that* yf it fortunyd *that* the vanquysser sle his enmye in y^e feld / or⁷ he 24 confesse y^e treason for y^e deth of his sonne, *that* *than* y^e vanquesser to lese all his londys, & hym selfe to be bannysshyd out of y^e realme of france, & out of y^e empyre of Rome for euer / after *that* crye made⁸ duke 28 Naymes & y^e other barons & peeres cam to the kyng and sayde / 'A, syr, what wyll ye do? / this that ye wolde do⁹ is agaynst the statute of the noble realme of fraunce & of y^e empyre of Rome / for often tymes it 32

Amaury swears that Huon speaks falsely.

Amaury stumbles when mounting his horse.

The champions enter the lists.

The Emperor proclaims that should either of them be slain before he had confessed the truth as to Charlot's death, the survivor should be banished and lose his land.

¹ that as he was true knight, & loyall liegeman to the Emperour, *added*.

² Fol. x. back, col. 2. ³ ere. ⁴ euill. ⁵ taken.

⁶ againe to be proclaimed. ⁷ before.

⁸ proclamation ended. ⁹ you haue proclaymed.

happyth¹ *that* one of y^e champions is slayne & haue
no puissance² to speke³ / for your grete renowne, the
whiche so long tyme hath been spred abroad, that it
4 shulde be quenshyd or blamysshyd, it shall be sayde
that you who hath lyuyd in so grete tryumphe⁴ all y^e
dayes of your lyfe, & now in your latter dayes to
become a⁵ chylde;’ of the which wordes / the kyng
8 toke small ragarde.

Duke Naymes
urges that the
King is herein
unjust.

¶ How Huon of burdeux and the erle
Amaury fought together be⁶fore kyng
Charleman, & how the traytour Amaury
12 was slayne by the noble prowes and
cheualry of Huon. Ca. .xvi.

16 **W**han kyng Charlemayn had herd Duke
naimes / he swore by saynt Denys of
fraunce & by his crowne & berde that
it shulde be as he had sayd, nor other
wyse he wolde not do it / than the
noble barons where sory & sore dyspleasyd. and they
20 departyd fro y^e kyng, & sayd *that* by all semylytude⁷ fro
thens forth ryght sholde haue no place in his court. many
noble prynces & barones murmuryd sore at y^e crye⁸
that was made / those⁹ .ii. champions drew a parte, &
24 eche of them fersly regardyd other / than erle Amaury
spake aloude & sayd / ‘*thou* Huon of burdeux, false
traytour¹⁰ knyght / this day I shall cause the to confesse
thy falsnes / how be it I haue grete pyte of the, I see
28 the so yonge¹¹ / yf¹² *thou* wylt confesse this murder
that *thou* hast done / I shall desyre kyng charlemayn

His barons make
like complaint,
but Charles will
bear nothing.

Amaury cries
aloud that Huon
is a false traitor.

¹ happeneth. ² power.

³ shall therefore the conquerour been so much iniuried?
added.

⁴ dignity. ⁵ weaker than a. ⁶ Fol. xi. col. 1.

⁷ likelihood. ⁸ proclamation. ⁹ and the.

¹⁰ trayterous. ¹¹ in regard of thy youth.

¹² therefore.

Huon answers
in rage.

They rush on
one another,
and their horses
fall.

They fight on
foot.

Amaury strikes
Huon's helmet
so that he nearly
swoons.

to haue mercy¹ vpon the' / whan Huon² herde the
treatour so speke, for anger he blusshyd red & sayde /
'a! thou false gloton and yll traytour,³ thy venemus
wordys full of bytternes doth no thyng⁴ abasshe me / 4
for the good ryght that I am in shall ayed me by the
helpe of our lorde Ihesu Cryst / and I shall so ponyshe
thy trespace / that this day I shall make the to confesse
thy falsnes haue ther of no dought' / ther with couchyd 8
ther speres & dasht⁵ so to ther horses / that it semed
that the thounder had fallen fro heuen / thus with
ther sharpe speres they enconteryd in suche wyse that
ther spers brake to ther handes, so that y^e sleuers flew 12
a hye in y^e ayer, & in to y^e kynges stage / & both ther
horses fell to the erth / & the knyghts sore astonnyd
with ther fallyng / than venturously⁶ they releuyd
them with ther swordys in ther handys, & so aprochyd 16
eche to other / and so fought eche with another⁷ &
Huons horse strangelyd syr Amauries horse, &⁸ whan
he saw his horse slayne / Amaury stept to Huon for to
haue slayne him / ⁹ than Huon stept betwene them⁹ & 20
lift vp his sword, & gaue y^e erle such a stroke that he
was astonnyed therwith, & reculyd¹⁰ backe more than
.ii. pases, & more ¹¹ had he not fallen to y^e erth¹¹ / so
that all that sawe them had meruayll of Huons vertu & 24
force, seyng y^e grett strenght that was in syr Amaury /
than whan y^e erle Amaury felte hym selfe in grete
payne he began to dysspyse the name of god and of the
glorious vyrgyn mary / how be it, as well as he myght 28
he aprochyd to Huon, and with his sworde gaue Huon
suche a stroke on the helme that all the floures &
precyous stones ther flewe abrode in the felde, and the
syracle of the helme all to broken / and the stroke was 32

¹ compassion. ² Fol. xi. col. 2. ³ most disloyall knight.
⁴ at all. ⁵ gave such carrier. ⁶ very boldly.
⁷ so long while that. ⁸ who.
⁹⁻⁹ but Huon met him valiantly. ¹⁰ stagged.
¹¹⁻¹¹ hardly holding himself from falling to the earth.

so puysaunt that Huon was therwith astonyd, and by force was fayne to syt¹ on one of his knees to the erthe² / and he hadde nere almost fallen to the erthe /
 4 & there was present in y^e feld lordes & knyghtes / & one of y^e abbot of ^scluneys syruantes / whan he saw y^e grete stroke *that* Huon had receyuyd, he departyd out of y^e felde & went in to y^e churche, were as he founde
 8 his mayster y^e abbot in his prayers for y^e good spede of Huon his nephew / than the varlot sayd,⁴ ‘a, syr,⁵ pray hertely to our lorde Ihesu Cryste to socoure your nephew / for I sawe hym fayne to knell upon one of his
 12 knees in grete dought of deth’ / than y^e good abbot with out any answer lyfte vp his handys to warde heuen deuoutly, & wepyng, prayyng to god ayed & to defende y^e honoure of his nephew & to mayntayne his
 16 ryght / thus Huon beyng in y^e felde in grete doute of his lyfe, felyng *that* force⁶ of y^e erle Amaury / he callyd with a good herte to our lorde Ihesu Cryste / requyryng hym to ayed his ryght, y^e whiche he
 20 knewe *that* it was trew⁷ / whan erle Amaury sawe *that* Huon had receiuyd of hym such a heuy stroke, he sayde, ‘Huon, I belyue *thou* wylt not endure longe / better it were *that thou* confesse y^e dede or⁸ I slee
 24 *thee*, for, or it be nyght, I shall cause *thee* to waue in the wynde’ / ‘holde thy tounge, thou false traytour,’ quod Huon; ‘thyne ylnes⁹ shall not ayed the / for I shall bryng the to that poynt / that all thy frendys
 28 shall haue shame of the’ / than Huon auansyd hym, and made semblant too haue stryken Amaury on the helme. Than Amaury lyfte vp his shyld to haue receyuyd y^e stroke / but whan Huon sawe that / he
 32 tornyd his stroke to a reuerse, and stroke Amaury

The Abbot prays for his nephew's safety.

Amaury threatens to slay Huon unless he confesses the wilful murder of Charlot.

Huon dares him,

and strikes off Amaury's left arm.

¹ fall. ² the other Legge but weakly supporting him.

³ Fol. xi. back, col. 1. ⁴ to whom the seruant sayd.

⁵ Ah, my Lord. ⁶ sturdie strength. ⁷ to be most true.

⁸ before. ⁹ illness.

under the arme with his sharpe sword, so that he stroke of his arme, the which fell downe into the felde, shyld and all.

¶ whan erle Amaury sawe & felt y^e meruelous 4 stroke, & that he had loste his lyfte arme, & sawe it lay in y^e felde, he was full of payne and sorow / & aduysyd hym selfe of a grete treason. Than he spake to Huon and sayde / 'a, noble knyght, haue pyte of my, 8 for ¹wrongfully & without cause I haue appellyd you of the deth of Charlot, y^e kynges sone / but I knowe y^e tought ye knew hym not / but he is dede by my neymes ; for I brought hym in to the wode for to 12 haue murderyd you and your brother. I am redy knowlege² this before the kyng and all his barons, and to dyscharge you therof / I pray you slee³ my not ; I yelde me to you / take here my sworde' / than 16 Huon came to hym and put downe hys arme to haue taken the sworde / but than the false traytour Amaury with a reuerse stroke / stroke Huon on the arme, thynkyng to haue stryken it of / but he faylyd. How 20 be it, he gaue hym a grete wounde in the arme, so that the blode fell downe./ whan Huon sawe his grete⁴ treason / he sayd, 'O thou vntrew & false traytour / thyne ylnes can no lenger saue the / for thou shalt 24 neuer do trayson more' / than Huon lyft vp his sworde / & gaue the erle suche a meruaylous stroke betwene the helme & the shulder / that he stroke of his hede clene fro y^e body, so *that* the helme & hede 28 fell one way and y^e body another way / alas, what hape was it to Huon *that* he dyd not remembre or he slewe Amaury y^e crye⁵ *that* y^e emperour had made before / for after Huon sufferyd so moche payne & trauayell⁶ / 32

Amaury falsely
appeals to Huon's
pity.

and offers him his
sword.
But when Huon
advances to
take it,

Amaury deals
him a fierce blow
which misses its
aim.

In anger Huon
cleaves Amaury's
head before
he can confess
his sin.

¹ Fol. xi. back, col. 2. ² to acknowledg.


³ kill. ⁴ horrible. ⁵ Proclamation.

⁶ iniurie as might moue the verie hardest heart to compassionate his case, and as you shall more large vnderstand in the following discourse,

¹that theyr is no clerke can wryten it nor bryng it in
to memorey / and so Huon slewe the erle Amaury.¹

¶ How² that³ after the emperour Charlemayn

4 had seen the erle Amaury⁴ slayn, he com-
mandyd expresly that Huon shoulde avoyde
the realme and empyre and to be banny. hyd
for euer. Capitulo .xvii.

8 ⁵  Hen that duke Naymes who kept the
felde / sawe how by Huon the erle was
slayne he was ryght ioyfull / and came
to Huon and demaundyd how he dyde /
12 'syr,' quod he, 'thankyd be god I

Huon is brought
before the King.

fele no dolour nor grefe' / then they brought hym to
the palayes to the kyng, whoo was departed out of
the felde, when he saw y^o erle slayne and was therof
16 ryght sorowfull / then he demaundyd of Huon and of
the duke Naymes yf they had herde y^o erle Amaury
confesse the treason that he had layde to Huon for the
deed⁷ of Charlot his sone / 'syr,'⁸ quod y^o Duke, 'I

Charles asks if
Amaury confessed
his sin,

20 thynke he dyd confesse it / but I herde it not / for
Huon pressyd so sore on hym that he had no leyser to
do it' / then Charlemayn sayde / 'a, erle Amaury,
I knowe certenly *thou* dydest neuer *that* treason, nor
24 neuer thought it / wherfore thou art slayne wrongfully
and with out cause / for ther was neuer a trewer
knyght than thou wert / for⁹ I am sure yf thou
haddest done it thou woldest haue confessyd it before

and when he
learns that none
heard his
confession,

28 me' / then the kyng sayd to¹⁰ Huon, 'I charge the
incontenent to avoyde my realme / out of the whiche I
bannysche the for euer / nor *thou* shalt neuer enioy
one fote of lounde in Bourdeux nor in Aquitanie / and

he bids Huon
depart the
realm,
and surrender
his lands.

¹ omitted in Lord Berners. ² after. ³ the. ⁴ was.

⁵ Fol. xii. col. 1. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ death. ⁸ My Lord.

⁹ and. ¹⁰ vnto.

Huon begs
Charles have
mercy upon him,

and denounces his
injustice.

also I defende¹ the that thou neuer be so hardy to go
to Bourdeux / for by my² lorde saynt Denis,² yf I
knowe that thou goest thether I shall make *the* to dye
an yll deth / nor ther is no man lyuynge, though he be 4
neuer so nere³ frend to⁴ me,⁵ yf he make any request
for *the* I shall neuer loue hym / nor he shall neuer
after come in to⁶ my syght' / then Huon sayd, ⁷'syr,
how is it?⁷ ⁸haue I not done my deuore / sene before 8
you & all your barons I haue dyscomfytyd in playn
batayll he *that* hath brought you in to all this trouble? /
⁹syr, sertenly yf ye do to me as ye say, I shall
complayne me to god / for neuer more wronge was 12
done to any noble man / yll ye remembre y^e good
seruyce⁸ *that* the noble duke Seuyn my father hath
done to¹⁰ you / so *that* by¹¹ this ye shewe grete
ensample to all your noble barones and knyghtes for 16
them to be well aduysyd how fro hense forthe they
shuld order *them* self, & how to truste in you, when
that by your owne aloneley¹² opinion, foundyd vpon all
yll¹³ grounde / & agaynst all statutes royal & emperall, 20
wold execute your owne vnreasonable wyll / *sertenly* yf
it wher another¹⁴ prynce besyde you *that* wolde do me
this grete wronge, or I wolde consent so to be delt with
all / many a castell and many a good towne shuld be 24
distroied & brought to ruyn, & many pour men
dystroyed¹⁵ and dyssherytyd, & many a knyght brought
to dethe.'

¹ forbid. ²⁻² honour & crowne. ³ a.

⁴ vnto. ⁵ but. ⁶ to omitted.

⁷⁻⁷ Alas, my Lord, what iustice is this?

⁸⁻⁸ haue I done any more then knighthood bound me
too? haue not you and your Barons seene him discomfited in
playne Battaile that hath brought you unto all this trouble?
vndoubtedly, my Lord, if you doe to me as you say, God in
heauen be my witnes that neuer more wrong was done to any
noble man. This is but bad remembrance of the good
service. ⁹ Fol. xii. col. 2. ¹⁰ vnto. ¹¹ for.

¹² obstinate. ¹³ euill. ¹⁴ any other.

¹⁵ more impouerished.

¶ when Huon had thus spoken to y^e kyng / duke
 Naymes stept forthe and sayd to the kyng / 'syr,¹
 what thynke² you to do? / ye haue seen *that* Huon had
 4 done his deuore³ / ⁴when he hath brought his enemy
 to vttrance, and slayne hym⁴ / ye may well thynke
that it was the worke of god when suche a chyld
 shuld brynge to vttrance⁵ & dysconfyt suche a pusant
 8 knyght as was y^e erle Amaury. Syr,⁶ yf ye do as ye
 haue sayde / ⁷I nor neuer any⁷ other man shall⁸
 truste you / ⁹& euery man shall say fare & nere *that*
 herof thys extorsyon,⁹ that in the ende of your dayes
 12 ye are become chydysche,¹⁰ & more lyke a sot¹¹ then a
 wyse man.¹² then Huon desyryd all y^e barons *that*
 were ther present *that* they wold all requyre y^e kyng to
 haue mercy¹³ of hym, seen they were all bounde so to
 16 do in that he was one of the peeres of the realme /
 then all the prynces and barons, holdyng Huon by
 y^e hande, knelyd down before y^e kyng / *than* Huon
 sayd / ¹⁴'syr, sene your grace to hate me so sore as ye
 20 speke of / I requyre you at y^e ¹⁵request her of all your
 barons / that ye wyl graunt me *that* I may abyde
 in myne owne countree for euer, and neuer to com
 in your syght, and in this I requyre your grace of
 24 mercy.¹⁴

Duke Naymes
 intercedes for
 Huon.

The barons
 entreat Charles
 in his behalf.

Huon begs
 Charles to permit
 him to liue for
 euer at
 Bourdeaux.

¹ My Lord. ² meane. ³ no more then his dutie.

⁴⁻⁴ hauing brought his enemy to confusion, and slayn him.

⁵ shame. ⁶ Therefore, my Lord.

⁷⁻⁷ neither I nor any. ⁸ euer.

⁹⁻⁹ but euery one farre & neere that shall heare of this
 crueltie, will report.

¹⁰ sencelesse. ¹¹ Tyrant.

¹² Prince. ¹³ more respect.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ Seeing it is so, my Lord, that your displeasure is such
 againste me as you haue expressed, Let your Barons and my
 selfe obtaine but this fauour at your handes, that I may be
 confined to my owne natiue Countrey for euer, there to lead a
 poore & priuate life, neuer to be admitted to your presence
 againe, & for this grace we shall all right humbly thanke you.

¹⁵ Fol. xii. back, col. 1.

¶ How kynge Charlemayne sent Huon to do a message in babylon to the admyrall gaudyse. Capitulo .xviii.

Charles is obdurate.



Duke Naymes protests against his unjust sentence.

He and the barons leave his presence in anger.

¶ Hen the emperour hade herd Huon 4 speke, he sayde incontynent, 'auoyd out of my syght / for whcn I remembre my sone Charlot whome thou haste slayne, I haue no member¹ on me but 8 that² trymbeleth for the dysplesour that I haue to the / & I charge all my barons here present that they neuer speke to me more for the' / when duke Naymes herde y^e kynge say so, he sayde to all the barons / 'syrs,³ ye 12 that be here present & haue well herde the grete vnresonableness that the kynge do⁴ too one of oure peres / the whyche, as ye knowe well, it is agaynst ryght and reason / and a thyng not to be sufferyd. 16 But that by cause we knowe serteynly the kynge is our souerayn lord, we muste suffer his plesour. But fro hense forthe / sens he wyl vse hym selfe and to do thynges agaynst reason and honour, I wyll neuer abyde 20 an oure lenger with hym / but I⁵ wyll departe and neuer retourne agayne in to y^e place wher as suche extorsyon⁶ and vnresonableness is vsed / I wyll go in to my countre of Bauier / and lette the kynge do fro 24 hense forth as he lyst.' Than all the barons departyd with the duke fro the kynge without spekyng any⁷ worde, & so lefte the kynge alone in hys palayes / when the kynge sawe the⁸ duke depart and hys other 28 lordys / he was ryght sorowful and in greate displeasure / and sayd to the yonge knyghtes that were left about hym / how that he ought⁹ greatly to be anoyed for⁹ y^e deth of hys sone, who was slayne so 32

¹ parte. ² it. ³ My Lords. ⁴ offers. ⁵ I omitted.
⁶ extemitie. ⁷ (one). ⁸ Fol. xii. back, col. 2.
⁹⁻⁹ in nature to take heauylie.

peteously,¹ / and also² to se how hys barons had
 abandonyd hym and left hym alone / ³than he sayde
 openly / ' I se well I am³ forsyd sum what to folow
 4 theyr wylles' / and ther with he wept peteously / and
 incontynent marchyd⁴ forth and folowed them, &
 sayd, 'duke Naymes and all ye my barons, I requyre
 you⁵ retourne agayne, for of force I most graunt your
 8 desyres⁶ / though it be agaynst that promys that I
 made before' / then the duke and all other⁷ retournyd
 to the palayes with the kyng / who sat downe on a
 benche of gold, & hys barons abowt hym. Than he
 12 sent for Huon, who knelyd downe before the kyng,
 requyryng hym humbly of mercy and petye; than⁸ the
 kyng sayde / 'Huon, sen thou woldest be agreed⁹
 with me, ¹⁰Then it must behoue the to do that I
 16 commaunde and orden.'¹⁰ ¹¹'Syr,' quod Huon, 'to obey
 you there is no thyng in this mortall worlde than any
 humayn body may do, But that I shall vndertake to
 do it / not lettyng for fere of any deth, though it be
 20 to go to the dry tre / ye, or to hell gattes to fyght witt
 the fendes there, as sum tyme dyd Hercules,¹¹ yf I may
 therby be agreed with¹² your grace.' 'Huon,' quod
 the kyng, 'I thynke to sende the in to a worse place,
 24 for of .xv. messengers that I haue sent, ther was neuer
 none retournyd agayne / I shal shew *thee* whether thou
 shalt go / sen¹³ thou wylt *that* I shall haue mercy of

Charles declares
 himself forced
 to relent,

and recalls the
 barons.

He bids Huon
 approach him,

and orders him
 to depart on a
 perilous mission
 to Babylon.

¹ disloyally. ² and could not likewise but greeue.

³⁻³ therefore there is no remedy, but I must be.

⁴ went. ⁵ (to). ⁶ requests.

⁷ the rest. ⁸ to whom. ⁹ at peace.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ it is requisite that thou performe whatsoever I
 enioyne thee.

¹¹⁻¹¹ Else, my Lord (said Huon), god forbid, there is no
 man in the world owes you more obedience than I doe, or shall
 more gladly vndertake whatsoever your highnesse shall please
 to command me, dreadlesse of death or any danger, be it goe
 to Hell gates, to fight with the fiendes there, as sometime did
 Hercules.

¹² reconciled to. ¹³ seeing.

He is to
enter the palace
of Admiral
Gaudys,

kill the chief
lord present,

and thrice kiss
the Admiral's
daughter
Esclarmonde.

Huon is to
bring home
for Charles
hawks, bears,
youths,
and maidens,
together with
a handful of
hair from the
Admiral's beard,
and four of his
teeth.

thee. thou must go to the cyte of Babylone / to the
admyrall Gaudys / and shew hym¹ / as I shal declare²
to *thee* / and³ be ware on payne of thy lyfe *that* thou
fayle not to do it / whan thou cummyst there, mount 4
vp in to hys palays / and there tary tyll he be at hys
dyner,⁴ and whan thou seest hym sytte at the table,
thaz thou to be armyde with thy sworde nakyd in thy
hande / and loke the⁵ gretest lord that thou seest 8
sytte at his table, whether he be kyng or admyrall /
thou most stryke of hys hede / and after that⁶ do
so myche as to fyaunce and to kys thre tymes the
fayre Esclarmonde, dowghter to the Admyrall Gaudysse,⁶ 12
openly in his presence / and before all other there
present / for I⁷ wyll thou knowyst⁷ she is the fayrest
mayde *that* is now lyuyng / ⁸ and after that⁸ thou
shalte say to the admirall Gaudyse that I commaunde 16
hym to sende me a .M. hawks, a .M. berers, and a .M.
wayters all cheynede, and a .M. yonge varlettes / and a
.M. of the fayrest maydens in his realme. And also
thou to bryng me thy handfull of the here of hys 20
herde / and .iiii. of hys grettest teth.' 'A, Syr,'⁹
quod the barons, 'We se well ye desyre gretely hys
deth whan ye charge hym wythe suche a message.'
'That is trewe,' quod the kyng, 'for without I haue his 24
berde & hys grete teth¹⁰ without tromperey or couyn,¹⁰
Lette hym neuer retourne in to Fraunce, nor come in to
my presence / for and¹¹ he do he shal be hangyd and
drawyn.' 'Syr,'¹² quod Huon, 'haue ye shewyd me all 28
your pleasure?' 'Ye,' quod the kyng, 'my wyll is
as I haue sayde, yf thou wylt haue peace with me.'

¹ there doe. ² appoint. ³ but.

⁴ Fol. xiii. col. 1. ⁵ the verie.

⁶⁻⁸ enquire for faire Esclermond, daughter to the Admirall,
and kisse her there.

⁷⁻⁷ giue the to vnderstand. ⁸⁻⁸ this being done.

⁹ Alas, my Lord. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ brought me hether unfaynedly.

¹¹ if. ¹² My Lord.

'Syr,¹ quod Huon, 'by y^e grace of god I shall
 1 founryshe your message / the fere of dethe shall not
 lette me to do it.' 'Huon,' quod the kyng, 'yf god
 4 of his grace wyll suffer the to retourne agayne in to
 Fraunce, I charge the be not so hardy to come to
 Bourdeux nor to no² parte of thy countre tyll thou
 hast spoken with me / yf I fynde the doynge contrare /
 8 I shall cause the to dye an yll dethe. And vpon this I
 wyll thou layest vnto me good hostages.' 'Syr,³ quod
 Huon, 'here be x. knyghtes whom I shall leue with
 you for suerte, to the entent that ye shalbe con^tent with
 12 me / howbeit, syr,⁵ I requyre your grace to suffer the
 knyghtes that came *with* me fro Burdeux to go with
 me to the holy sepulcre.' 'I am content,' quod y^e
 kyng, 'that they go with y^e to the red see.'⁶ 'Syr,⁷
 16 quod Huon, 'I thanke your grace.' Than Huon made
 hym redy to founryshe his vyage.

Huon accepts the mission, and prepares to set out.

Charles permits a few knights from Bourdeaux to go with him.

¶ Howe Huon of Burdeux toke leue of the
 kyng & of the barons, and rode withe the
 20 good abbote to Cluny. Capitulo .xix.

After that ⁸Charlemaigne had gyuen
 Huon y^e charge of hys message, the
 24 kyng called be fore hym Gerardyne,
 brother to Huon, & delyuered to hym
 the gouernance of all his brothers
 londes in his absence tyll his retourne.

Gerard is intrusted with the care of Huon's lands in his absence.

And thus whan Huon was redy he came to y^e kyng
 28 and to the barons / to take his leue, and the Abbot of
 Cluny⁹ sayde he wolde go *with* hym parte of his way /
 &¹⁰ .xii. of the gretest pryn¹¹ce and ladyes conuayed,

The Abbot of Cluny, with other ladies and gentlemen, insist on accompanying Huon a little way on his road.

¹ My Soueraigne Lord. ² any. ³ My Lord.
⁴ Fol. xiii. col. 2. ⁵ my Lord. ⁶ thether or else where.
⁷ My Lord. ⁸ king. ⁹ who.
¹⁰ so likewise did. ¹¹ Fol. xiii. back, col. 1.

At Troyes
all but the Abbot
bid him farewell,
and return.

a¹ .ii. ²dayes iournay; and whan they came to the
towne of Troye in Champayne / duke Naymes toke
leue of his cosyn Huon, and gaue hym a sominer
charged with gold, and kyssed hym at theyr departynge / 4
then gerard his brother toke his leue, & also kyssed
hym / but knowe for trought the kysse that he gaue
hym was lyke to the kysse *that* Judas gaue to ³our
lorde god³ / the whiche was derely bought, as ye shall 8
here after / thus duke Naymes and gerard departyd
and toke theyr way to Parys / &⁴ the abbot and Huon
restyd not tyll thy came to the abbey of cluney, wher
as they were receuyd with grete ioye and well feestyd / 12
than the nexte mornynge / Huon departyd, and toke
leue of his vncl sore wepynge, desyrynge hym ⁵that
he might be recommendyd⁵ to his mother the duches,
and to gerard his brother. the abbot promysyd so to 16
do, and gaue Huon his nephew a mulet chargyd with
money coraunt in fraunce / thus he departyd and toke
the way to rome. Now leue we to speke of Huon, and
shewe of duke Naymes and Gerard, who retornyd 20
to Parys. than⁶ gerard requyryd the kyng that it
wolde playse hym to resyue his homage for the londes
of bourdeux, to the entent *that* he myght be auancyd,
and to be in y^e state of one of y^e peeres of fraunce / 24
the whiche thyng duke Naymes wolde not consent
vnto nor agre to it / but sayd to the kyng, 'syr,⁷ ye
ought not to suffer that Huon shuld be dysherytyd' /
wher of gerarde was not content / but duke Naymes 28
set lytell therby / for he beleuyd Huon inteerly /
so this homage was delayed / than gerarde retournyd
to bourdeux / where as he was well receuyd. ⁸whan
the Duches sawe hym and not Huon to retourne, she 32
was sorowfull in her harte / than she demaundyd of

At Cluny the
Abbot leaves him.

Gerard seeks
to obtain from
Charles the rank
of peer of
France.

Duke Naymes
begs the Emperor
to refuse the
request.

Gerard goes to
Bourdeaux,
and tells his
mother what has
passed.

¹ accompany him for. ² Fol. xiii. back, col. 2.
³⁻³ his Maister. ⁴ but. ⁵⁻⁵ to recommend. ⁶ where.
⁷ My Lord. ⁸ but.

Gerard why that Huon his brother was ¹not retournyd
 with hym / than Gerarde shewyd her all the hole
 mater and aduenture / and of the departynge of Huon,
 4 and of the maner of hys vyage / wherof the Duches
 had suche sorow / that she fell syke, and so lay .xxix.
 dayes, and on the .xxx. day she dyed, and renderyd vp
 her soule to god, wherof all the countre was sorowfull.
 8 Gerard nobly buryed her in the Church of saynt
 Seueryne by the duke her husbonde / Anon² after
 maryed hym to the doughter of duke Gylberde of
 Cecyll / who was the gretest traytour and moost
 12 crewell that myght be harde of / Anon² & Gerard his
 sone in lawe lernyd his wayes and folowyd his
 condycyon / for he delte so yll with the towne of
 bourdeux & with the countre about, that pyte it was to
 16 here the poore people / and wepte³ for the losse of
 duke Seuyn and of the Duches / and prayed to god
 for y^e good retourne of there lorde Huon / Now we
 shall leue to speke of them, and speke of ⁴Huon.

The duchess falls
 sick on learning
 Huon's fate,
 and thirty days
 later dies.

Gerard weds the
 daughter of the
 traitorous Duke
 Gylberde of
 Cecyll.

20 ¶ How Huon of bourdeux came to Rome, &
 was confessyd of the pope, who was his
 vncl; & of his departynge, & how he
 came to brandys, wher he founde his vncl
 24 Garyn of saint Omers, who fore loue of
 Huon passyd the see with hym.

Capitulo .xx.

28 **M** Ere before ye⁵ herde how Huon
 departyd fro his vncl, the abbot
 of Cluney / so longe he rode with
 his knyghtes that he came to the
 Cyte of Rome / and there he was
 32 logyd in a good hostrey / than Huon

Huon reaches
 Rome.



¹ Fol. xiiii. col. 1. ² Anon *in orig.* ³ To weep.
⁴ returne vnto. ⁵ howe.

Huon salutes
the Pope,
who was his
mother's brother.

He confesses
to him,

and receives
absolution.

The Pope
entertains Huon,

rose in the mornynge, accompanyd with Guychard, whom he well louyd, and with the other knyghtes that ¹came thether with hym, and went to the churche of saynt Peter and herde masse,² & whan y^e mas³ was done the 4 pope cam out of his oretorey / than Huon cam to hym and humbly salutyd hym / the pope behelde him, and demaundyd what he was / 'syr,' quod he, 'my fater was Duke Seuyne of bourdeux, who is decessyd.' than 8 the pope stept to hym & embrasyd hym, and sayd, 'fayr nephew, ye are welcome / I praye you shewe me how dothe my syster the Duches, your mother, and what aduenture hath brought you hether' / 'syr,' 12 quod he, 'I requyre your holynes that ye wyll here my confessyon a parte / for I haue grete nede therof.' 'fayr nephew,' quod the pope, 'it pleasyth me ryght well to here you.' than the pope toke hym by the 16 hande and went with hym in to his oretory, and ther Huon shewyd hym all the aduenture that he had syns he cam fro bourdeux, and of the vyage that Charlemyne had set hym to do and to saye to the admirall Gaudyse / 20 ⁴whan he had all shewyd⁴ / he requyrd pardon and penaunce for his synnes / the pope sayd he wolde gyue⁵ hym none other⁶ penaunce but⁷ that kyng⁸ Charles had gyuyne hym⁹ / the which was so grete 24 that none humayn body coude suffer it, nor durst thynke¹⁰ to do it / than the pope gaue hym absolucyon of all his synnes / ¹¹than the pope¹¹ lede hym in to his palayes, where he was honorable receyued with grete 28 ioy / after they had dnynd and deuysyd too gether a grete space, the pope sayde to Huon / 'fayr nephew, the way that ye muste go is to go to the porte of brandys, there shall ye fynde my brother Garyn of 32

¹ Fol. xiiii. col. 2. ² service. ³ service.

⁴⁻⁴ all which being declared and done. ⁵ assigne.

⁶ no. ⁷ for. ⁸ the Emperour. ⁹ done that alreadie.

¹⁰ vndertake. ¹¹⁻¹¹ and louingly.

- saynt Omers, who is your vnclē / to whome I shall
 wryte a letter to the entent that he shall haue knowlege
 of you, for I knowe well he shall haue grete ioy of
 4 you / he hathē the keyynge of the Oryentall see / he
 shall adresse you, and delyuer you shype or galee suche
 as shall be nesses¹sary for you' / ²'holy father,' quod
 Huon,³ 'of this I thanke you' / 'well,' quod the pope,
 8 'this nyght ye shall abyde here with me.' 'syr,' quod
 he, 'I requyre you let me departe / for gretely I desyre
 to se myn vnclē Garyn' / whan the pope sawe that he
 wolde nedys departe, he delyueryd hym his letter, and
 12 sayd, 'fayr nephew, salute fro me my brother Garyn
 your vnclē' / 'syr,' quod he, 'I shall do your com-
 maundement' / than the pope gaue to Huon grete and
 ryche presentes, and to all them that were with hym /
 16 than he kyssyd his nephew at his departyng / Huon
 toke leue of hym all wepyng / and so departyd, and
 enteryd in to the Ryuer of Tybre in a ryche shype, the
 whiche the pope had well garnysshyd for hym. Huon passes
down the Tiber.
- 20 ¶ Thus he had good wynde / so that anon they
 aryuyd at brandys / but whyles he was on the water he
 wepte sore, and pyteously compleynyd in that he was
 so departyd out of his countre / than his men comfortyd
 24 hym, and shewed hym many fayre ensamples to confort
 hym / 'syr,' quod Guychard, 'leue your sorow / for
 makyng of sorow⁴ can not auayle you / ye must put
 all to the mercy of our lorde god, who neuer forgettyh
 28 them that louyth hym / shew your selfe a man and no
 chylde / to the entent that we that be with you may be
 reioysyd / for the sorowe that we se you in dothe sore
 trouble vs' / 'syr,' quod Huon / 'syn it is so I shall
 32 folowe your wyll' / thus they aryuyd at the porte of
 Brandys. Than they issuyd out of ther shyppe /
 and toke out ther horses, & theyre thy sawe Garyn They arrive at
the port of
Brandys.

¹ Fol. xiiii, back, col. 1. ² Most. ³ Hunn *in orig.*⁴ greefe and sadness.

They meet
Garyn.

syttynge before the porte in a loge, well and rychely
hangyd in a ryche¹ chayre / whan Huon sawe hym
syttynge he salutyd hym / thynkyng that he was
lorde of that countre / than Garyn behelde Huon and ⁴
began to wepe, and sayd / 'syr, it *pertey*²nyth not to
me *that* ye sholde do me so greate honcur as ye do /
for by that I se in you I am *constreynyd* to wepe /
bycause ye resemble so myche to a prynce of the realme ⁸
of Fraunce called duke Seuyn, who was lord of the
cyte of Burdeux / the grete loue that ³I haue hade to³
hym causyd me to wepe / I requyre you tell me where
ye were borne, and who be your parentes and frendes / ¹²
for duke Seuyn hade⁴ weddyd my syster, y^e duches
Aclis.' 'Syr,' quod Huon / 'sen ye wyll knowe what
I am, I may well sheu it to you, for the duke was my
father / and y^e duches Aclis was⁵ my mother / we be⁶ ¹⁶
two bretherne. I am the eldest, and the younger y^s
styll at Burdeux to kepe the⁷ londe' / whan Guaryn
vnderstode that Huon was sone to duke Seuyn of
Burdeux / the ioy that he had ⁸can not be estemyd⁸ / ²⁰
than he embrassyd Huon all wepyng, & sayde, 'ryght
dere neuwe, your *commyge* is to me the greatest ioy
in thys worlde.' he knelyd downe and wolde haue
kyssyd Huons fete, But Huon releuyd hym incon- ²⁴
tynent. The ioy *that* was betwene them two was so
greate that all that sawe it hade meruayll therof.
Than Guaryn demaundyd of Huon and sayde, 'fayre
neuwe, what aduenture hath brought you in to these ²⁸
partes?' Than Huon / shewyd hym fro poynt to poynt
all his besynes / & the cause why he was entergyde in
to that enterpryse. whan Guaryn had harde all he
begane to wepe / and yet, to comfort hys neuwe, he ³²
sayd / 'fayre neuwe, where as lyeth grete parelles /

Huon's face
recalls to Garyn
memories of
Duke Sevin his
father.

Garyn is greatly
pleased at Huon's
arrival,

and asks the
reason of his
journey,

which Huon tells
him.

¹ goodly. ² Fol. xiiii. back, col. 2. ³⁻³ euer I bare vnto.
⁴ hade *omitted*. ⁵ ia. ⁶ are. ⁷ our.
⁸ could not be expressed.

there lieth grete honour. god ayde you to eschew & to
 fornysh thys greate besynes / all is possyble to god
 and to man by meanes of hys grace. A man ought
 4 neuer to be abasshyd / for worldely maters.' Than
 Huon delyueryd his letters to hys vnclé Guaryn / who
 gladelé reseuyd them / and red the contynew therof
 at length. Than he sayde, 'fayre neuew / there ¹nede
 8 none other recommendasion but y^e syglit of your
 presence / for it aperyth wel by your chere² that ye be
 the same person that oure holy father maketh mensyon
 of / suerly your commynge semyth to me fayre and
 12 good / & ye be aryuyd at a good port / for I promyse
 you faythfully I loue well my wyfe and my chyldrene.
 But the grete loue that I haue to you for the loue of
 your father duke Seuyn and the duches your mother,
 16 who was myne owne dere syster / I abandon all that I
 haue to serue you and kepe you company, both with
 my body and all that I haue. know for trouht I
 haue thre good galees & thre grete slyppes well
 20 furnyshyd of euery thyng for the warre, y^e whiche I
 shall lede with you / for as longe as lyfe abydeyth in my
 body I shall not abandon you, But I shall ayde you
 in all your enterpryses.' 'Fayre vnclé,' quod Huon,
 24 'of the grete courtesye that ye offer me I ³ thanke
 you' / than Guaryn toke Huon by the hand and lede
 hym in to his castell / where as he was rychely
 reseuyd / Gauryns wyfe and .iiii. of hyr sonnes /
 28 came to Huon, and he full courteously kyssyd the lady
 and hyr .iiii. chyldrene, hys cosyns. greate ioy was
 made there in the hall, and the tabyles sette to suppar.
 than Gauryn called the lady his wyfe and sayde /
 32 'dame,⁴ thys yonge man⁵ that ye se here is my neuew,
 and cosyn to your chyldren, who is come hether for
 refuge to haue counsell and ayde of me in a vyage &

Huon presents the
 Pope's letters.

Garyn promises
 he will give all
 aid to Huon.

He leads Huon
 home to his
 castle,

and introduces
 him to his wife.

¹ Fol. xv. col. 1. ² countenance. ³ can but.

⁴ Madame. ⁵ knight.

Garyn resolves
to accompany
Huon,

enterpryse that he hathe to do / and by the grace
of god I shall go with hym to ayde and to condute
hym, wherfore I pray and commaund that ye take in
rule all my affayres and kepe your chyldren.' 'Syr,' 4
quod she, 'sen it is your pleasure thus to do, & that
ye wyll go with hym / your ¹pleasure shalbe now,¹
howbeit I had rather ye abode then went.' this she
spake sore wepyng / the next day in the mornyng 8
Guaryn, who hade grete wyll to serue and to please hys
neuw / he ordened a grete shyppe to be made redy,
wel furnyshyd with bysket / wynes and flesshe, and all
other maner of vytaylles / and with monysyons of 12
warre as it apertaynyd, and put therin theyr horses
and armure / golde and syluer / and other ryches
necessary for them / then they toke leue of the lady,
and so left hyr sore wepyng / thus Garyn & Huon 16
enteryd in to theyr shype, and all theyr company /
they were .xiii. knyghtes and .ii. varlettes / to serue
them / they wolde haue no greter nombre.

and has a ship
made ready.

They embark,

¶ How Huon of Burdeux departyd fro 20
Brandys, and garyn hys vncler with hym,
and how he cam to Jerusalem, and fro
thase in to the desertes, where as he found
Gerames, and of theyr deuyses.³ 24

Capitulo .xxi.

and set sail.



They land at
Jaffe.

Han Huon & Garyn were enteryd in
to theyr shyppe, they lyft vp theyr
sailes & sayled nyght and day, so that 28
they aryuyd sauely at the port of
Jaffe; than they tooke lond⁴ and drew
out theyr horses, and rode forth; so the same day
they came to Rames / & the nexte day to y^e Cyte

¹⁻¹ will let be fulfilled.

³ conference.

³ Fol. xv. col. 2.

⁴ lauding.

of Ierusalem / that nyght they restyd / and the
 nexte day they dyd theyr pylgrymage to the holy
 sepulcure / and there deuotly hard masse¹ and offeryd
 4 accordynge to theyr deuosyon / whan Huon came
 before the holy sepulcure he knelyde downe on hys
 bare knees, & all wepynge made hys prayers to our
 lorde god, requyrynge hym to ayde and comfort hym in
 8 hys vyage / so that he might retourne agayne in to
 fraunce, and to haue peace with kynge Charlemayne.
 And when they al had made there prayers and offeryd /
 Huon and Garyn went into a lytyll chapell vpon the
 12 mount of Caluery, where as now lyeth Godfrey of
 Boillon / and Baudwyn hys brother. Than Huon
 called to hym al those that came with hym out of
 Fraunce, and sayd, 'syr, ye that for the loue of me
 16 haue left fathers & mothers, wyues / and chyldren /
 and londes / & syngnoryes, of² thys courtosy that ye
 haue shewyd me I thanke you. Now ye may retourne
 in to Fraunce,³ and ⁴ recommaunde me to y^e kynges
 20 good grace, and to all the other barons / and when
 ye come to Burdeux, recommaunde me to the duches
 my mother, & to Gerarde my brother, and to the
 lordes of my countre.' Than Guicharde and all the
 24 other knyghtes answeryd Huon & sayde, 'Sir, as yet
 we wyll nor leue you, nother for deth nor lyfe, tyll we
 haue brought you to the red see.' 'Syr,'⁵ quod
 Huon, 'of⁶ the greate seruys & courtosy that ye offer
 28 me I thanke you' / than Garyn called two of his
 seruantes, and commaundyd them to retourne to ⁷his
 wyfe, and to desyre her to be of good chere, and that
 shortely he wolde retourne / the whiche thyng they
 32 dyd, and retournyd and dyd there message / whan
 Huon vnderstode that his vncler garyn was dyssposyd
 to abyde with him, he sayd / 'fayre vncler, ye shal not

They travel to
Jerusalem,

and worship at
the Holy
Sepulchre.

Huon thanks his
companions for
their devotion to
him,

and bids them
return.

They protest they
will not leave him
till they reach the
Red Sea.

¹ seruice. ² for. ³ againe. ⁴ humbly.
⁵ why then. ⁶ for. ⁷ Fol. xv. back, col. 1.

nede to trauayll so myche / I wo'd counsell you to
 retourne to your wyfe and chylderne.' 'Syr,' quod
 garyn, 'and god wyll, I shall not leue you no day
 tyll ye retourne your selfe' / 'vncke,' quod Huon, 4
 'I thanke you of your courtesy.' Thus they went to
 theyr lodgyng and dyned / & after dyner tooke there
 horses / and so rode by hylles and dales / so that yf I
 sholde recounte all the aduentures that they founde in 8
 theyr way, it sholde be to longe a processe to show it./
 but as the trew story¹ wytnessyth / they sufferyd
 myche payne and trauayl / for they passyd suche
 desertes / where as they founde but small sustenance / 12
 whereof Huon was ryght sorowfull for the loue of them
that were with hym / and began to wepe & to
 remembre his owne countre, sayynge, 'Alas, noble
 kynge of Fraunce, grete wronge and grete syne ye haue 16
 done, thus to dryue me out of my countre & to sende
 me in to² strange countres,³ to thentent to short my
 dayes. I pray to god pardon you therof'⁴ / *than* garyn
 and the other knyghtes comforyd hym & sayd, 'A, 20
 syr, dysmay you not for vs / god is puyssant ynough
 to ayde vs / he neuer fayllyth them *that* louyth hym' /
 thus they rode forth in the deserte so longe tyll at last
 they sawe a lytyll cotage, before the whiche sat an olde 24
 aunsyent man with a longe whyte berde, and hys heyre
 hangynge ouer hys shulders / whan Huon parseyuyd
 hym he drew thedyr & salutyd y^e olde man in y^e
 name of god & of y^e blyssyd wyrgyn saynt⁵ mary / 28
than the aunsyent man lyft vp his eyes & behelde
 Huon, & had grete meruayll, for of a greate⁶ season
 before he had sene no man / *that* spake⁷ of god / *than*
 he behelde Huon in the vysage / & began sore to wepe ; 32
⁸*than* he stept⁸ to Huon & tooke hym by the legge &

Nor will Garyn
depart from him.

They pass
through deserts,
and suffer much.

Huon weeps and
complains of the
Emperor's
injustice.

His companions
bid him have
faith in God's
power.

They ride on to a
small cottage,
where an old man
is found to dwell.

The old man
weeps on seeing
Huon.

¹ history. ² a. ³ Land. ⁴ therefore.
⁵ saynt omitted. ⁶ long. ⁷ Fol. xv. back, col. 2.
⁸⁻⁸ and stepping vnto Huon.

kyssyd it mo then .xx. tymys / 'frend,' quod Huon,
 'I requyre you shew me why ye make this sorow.'
 'Syr,' quod he, 'a¹.xxx. yere passyd I cam hether / &
 4 sen *that* tyme I neuer saw man beleuyng on the
 crysten fayth / & by² the regardyng of your vysage
 causyth me to remembre a noble prynce *that* I haue
 sene in Fraunce, who was called duke Seuyne of
 8 Burdeux / therfore I requyre you shew me yf euer ye
 saw hym, I pray you hyde it not fro me' / 'frende,'
 quod Huon / 'I pray you shew me where ye were
 borne, & of what lynage & countre ye be of.' 'Nay,
 12 *sir*,' quod he, '*that* wyll I not do fyrst; ye shall shew
 me what ye be, and where ye were borne, & why
 ye come heder' / 'frende,' quod Huon / 'sene it please
 you to knowe, I shall shewe you' / then Huon & all
 16 his company alyghtyde & tyed theyr horses to trees.

He tells Huon he
 has seen no
 Christian man for
 thirty years,
 and his face
 reminds him of
 Duke Sevin.

WHan Huon was alyghtyde, he sat downe by the
 olde man & sayd, 'frend, sen ye wyll know
 my bysenes, I shall shew you. know for trouthe /
 20 I was borne in the cyte of Burdeux, and am sonne
 to duke Seuyne' / then Huon shewyd hym all his hole
 case & enterpryse, & of y^o deth of Charlot, & how he
 dyscomfytyd erle Amaury, & how *that* Charlemayn
 24 had chasyd hym out of Fraunce / & of the message
that he was chargyd to say to the admyrall Gaudyse /
 'this *that* I haue shewyd you is of trouthe.'³ whan y^o
 old man had well harde Huon, he began sore to wepe.
 28 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'sen it please you to know of
 my sorow / duke Seuyne my father is deed .vii. yere
 past / my mother I trust be a lyue, & a brother of
 myn whom I haue left *with* her. And now, *sir*, sen⁴
 32 ye haue harde of myn affayres, I requyre you gyue
 me your counsell & aduyse / & also, yf it please you, to
 shew me what ye be, & of what countre / & how ye⁵ came

At the old man's
 request Huon
 tells his history.

¹ about. ² now. ³⁻³ affirming all to be for certainty.
⁴ seeing. ⁵ Fol. xvi. col. 1.

The old man tells in return how he was born at Geronville, and was brother to the provost Guyer;

and how he was sent for slaying a noble knight on a pilgrimage to the Holy Sepulchre;

and how when setting out again for France

he was seized by the Saracens, who imprisoned him at Babylon;

and how he escaped thence to this forest, where he has since lived for thirty years.

in to these partyes.' 'Syr,' quod the old man / 'know
for trouthe I was borne in Geronnill / & brother to y^o
good prouost Guyer / whan I departyd thense I was a
yonge knyght / & hauntyd the iustes & tornoyes; so that 4
on a day it fortunyd at a tornay that was made at
Poieters, I slew a knyght of a noble blode, wherfore I
was banyshyd out of the realme of Fraunce. But my
brother y^o prouost made suche a request to duke Seun 8
your fater / that by his meanes my peace was made
with the kyng / & my londe sauyd / on the¹
condycyon that I shulde goo ²a pylgrymage³ to the
holy sepulchre to ³pray for y^o soull³ of y^o knyght that 12
I slew, & to forgyue my synnes⁴ / thus I departyd out
of my countre / and when I had done my vyage I
thought to haue retournyd / but as I departyd out of
y^o cyte of Jerusalem / to take the way to Acre / 16
passynge by a wood betwene Jerusalem and Naplese /
ther cam apon me a .x. sarasyns, who tooke me and
brought me to the cyte of Babylon, where as I was in
pryson .ii. yere complete, where as I sufferyd myche 20
pouerte & mysere / but our lorde god, who neuer
faylyth them that seruyth hym & haue in hym
full affyaunce, he sende me the grace that by the
meanes of a ryght noble ladi I was brought out of 24
pryson in an nyghte, and so I flede in to this forest,
where as I haue bene this .xxx. yere, and in all this
space I neuer saw nor harde man beleuyng on Jhesu
Cryst / thus I haue shewyd you all myn affayre' / 28
when Huon had harde the knyghtys tale he had grete
ioy / and embrassyd hym & sayde how often tymys
he had sene Guyer, his brother the prouost, wepe for
you⁵ / 'and whan I departyd fro Burdeux ⁶I delyueryd 32
to⁷ hym all my londes to gouerne / wherfore I requyre

¹ upon. ²⁻³ omitted.

³⁻³ to punish my body. ⁴ faults. ⁵ him.

⁶ quoth he added. ⁷ vnto.

- you shew me your name.' 'Syr,' quod he, 'I am called Gerames / and now I pray you shew me your name.' His name is Gerames,
- 'Syr,' quod he, 'I am namyd Huon, & my yonger
4 brother is called Gerarde. But, syr, I pray you shew me how ye haue so longe lyued here, and what sustenance ye haue.'² 'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'I haue eten none other thyng but rootes & frutes that I haue
8 founde in the wood' / then Huon demaundyd of hym yf he coude speke the langage sarasyn. 'Ye, syr,' quod and he can speak the language of the country.
- he, 'as well or better then any sarasyn in the countre, nor there is no way but that I know it.'
- 12 **W**Han Huon had harde Gerames / than he demaundyd forther of hym yf he coude go to Babylon / 'ye, syr,' quod Gerames, 'I can go There are, he says, two roads to Babylon.
- 16 a .xl. iurneys,³ & the other is but .xv. iurneys.³ But I counsell you to take the long way / for yf ye take the shorter way ye most passe throwout a wood a .xvi. leges of lenght; but the way is so full of y^e fayrey & But the shorter is beset by Oberon and his fairies.
- 20 straunge thynges, that suche as passe that way are lost, for in that wood abydyth a kynge of y^e fayrey namyd Oberon / he is of heygth but of .iii. fote, and crokyd Oberon is a dwarf,
- shulderyd, but yet he hathe an aungelyke vysage, so
24 that there is no mortall man that sethe hym but that taketh grete pleasure to beholde his fase / and ye shall no soner be enteryd in to that wood, yf ye go that way / ⁴he wyll fynde the maner⁵ to speke with you /
- 28 and yf ye speke to⁶ hym ye are lost for euer / and ye shall euer fynde hym before you / so that it shalbe in maner impossyble that ye can skape fro hym without spekyng to hym / for his wordes be so pleasant to
32 here that there is no mortall man that can well skape without spekyng to⁶ hym / and yf he se that ye wyll not speke a worde to⁶ hym, Than he wyll be sore dys-

¹ Fol. xvi. col. 2.² had.³ dayes journey.⁴ but.⁵ meanes.⁶ vnto.

Yet if a man
is silent when
addressed by him
he will cause
storms to arise,
and mock him
with magic,

but he can work
him no serious
evil.

Gerames begs
Huon to avoid
Oberon,

but Huon longs to
see him,

and determines to
take the shorter
path.

Gerames reluc-
tantly assents to
Huon's plan, and
offers his
guidance.


He has often seen
Gaudyse and his
fair daughter.

pleasyd with you, and or¹ ye can gete out of the wood
he wyll cause / reyne and wynde / hayle / and snowe /
and wyll make ²meruelous tempestes / with thonder and
lyghtenynges / so that it shall seme to you that all the 4
worlde sholde pereshe, & he shall³ make to seme before
you a grete rynnynge riuer, blacke and depe. But ye
may passe it at your ease, and it shall not wete the fete
of your horse / for all is but fantesey and enchaunt- 8
mentes / that the dwarfe shall make / to thentent to
haue you with hym / and yf ye can kepe your selfe
without spekyng to hym / ye maye than well skape.
But, syr, to eschew all perelles, I counsell you take the 12
lenger way, for I thynke ye can not skape fro hym /
and than be ye lost for euer.' Whan Huon had well
harde Gerames he had grete meruayll, and he had grete
desyre in hym selfe to se that dwarfe kyng of the 16
fayrey, and the straunge aduentures *that* were in that
wood. than he sayde to Gerames, that for fere of any
deth he wolde not leue to passe that way, sen⁴ he
myght come to Babylon in .xv. dayes / for in takynge 20
the lenger way he myght paraduenture⁵ fynde mo ad-
uentures / and sens he was aduertesyd / that with kepyng
his tonge fro spekyng he myght abrege hys iorney,
and⁶ he sayde that surely he wolde that way what so 24
euer chaunce fell.⁷ 'Syr,' quod Gerames / 'ye shall do
your⁸ pleasure / for whiche so euer way⁹ ye take, it shall
not be without me / I shall bryng you to Babylone to
the admirall Gaudyse ; I knowe hym ryght well / and 28
when ye be come thether ye shall se there a damesell,
as I haue harde say, the most fayrest creature in all
Inde, and the grete¹⁰ and most swetest and most courtes-
sest that euer was borne / & it is she that ye seke, 32
for she is daughter to the admirall Gaudyse.'

¹ before. ² Fol. xvi. back, col. 1. ³ will. ⁴ seeing.
⁵ perchaunce. ⁶ and omitted. ⁷ befell. ⁸ own.
⁹ way soeuer. ¹⁰ onely.

¶ Howe Gerames went with Huon and his
company, and so came in to the wood, wher
as they found ¹kynge Oberon, who coun-
4 iuryde them to speke to ² hym.

Capitulo .xxii.

8  Han Huon had well hard Gerames howe
he was myndyd to go³ with hym, he
was ther of ryght ioyfull, and thankyd
hym of hys courtesy and seruys / and
gaue hym a goodely horse whereon he
mountyd / and so rode forth to gether / so longe that they
12 came in to the wood where as kynge Oberon hauntyd
most. Than Huon⁴ was very of trauyll, and what for
famyn and for hete, the whiche he and his company had
enduryd two dayes *without* brede or mete, so that he
16 was so febyll that he coude ryde no forther / & then he
began petuosly to wepe, and complaynyd of the grete
wronge that kynge Charlemayn hade done to² hym /
and than Guaryn and Gerames comforyd hym and had
20 greate pety of hym, and they knewe well by the reason
of his yought hunger opressyd hym ⁵more then it dyde
to them of gretter age / than they alyghtyd vnder a
grete oke, to y⁶ entent to serche for sum frute to ete /
24 they⁶ lette theyr horses go to pasture. whan they were
thus alyghtyd / the dwarfe of the fayre / kynge Oberon,
came rydyng by, and had on a gowne so ryche that it
were meruayll to recount the ryches and fayssyon ther-
28 of / and it was so garnyshyd *with* precyous stones that
the clerenes of them shone lyke the sone. Also he had
a goodly bow in hys hande so ryche *that* it coude not
be estemyde, and hys arrous after the same sort / and
32 they ⁷had suche proparte⁷ / that any beest in the

Huon and
Gerames set out
together,

and reach the
wood that Oberon
haunts.

Huon is sore
distressed by
hunger and
fatigue,

and while he
and his com-
pany are alighting
to seek for food

Oberon rides by.

His dress shines
with precious
stones,

and in his hand
is a bow of great
value.

¹ Fol. xvi. back, col. 2. ² vnto. ³ along.

⁴ whe. ⁵ Fol. xvii. col. 1. ⁶ glad therof.

⁷⁻⁷ were of such a nature or qualitie.

A horn, the gift
of four fairies,
hangs about his
neck.

One fairy had
endowed it with
the power of
curing by its
blast all manner
of sickness;

another with that
of satisfying
hunger and
thirst;

a third with that
of lightening
every heavy
heart;

and a fourth with
that of forcing
whosoever heard
it to come at the
pleasure of him
that blew it.

At the sound of
the horn Huon
and his com-
panions are filled
with joy.

Huon is no
longer thirsty or
hungry.

worlde that he wolde wyshe for / the arow sholde¹
 areste hym / Also he hade about hys necke a ryche
 horne hangyng by two lases of golde / the horne was
 so ryche and fayre / that there was neuer sene none² 4
 suche; it was made by .iiii. ladyes of the fayre in the
 yle of Chafalone / on of them gaued to the horne suche
 a proparte / that who so euer hard the sownde therof,
 yf he were in the gretest syknes in the worlde / he 8
 sholde incontynent be hole and sownde; the lady that
 gaued thys gyft to this horne was namyd G^loriande / the
 secounde lady was namyd Translyne; he³ gaued to this
 horne a nother properte, and that was, who so euer 12
 harde this horne, yf he were in the gretest famyn of
 the worlde, he sholde be satsyfyed as well as though he
 had eten al that he wolde wysshe for, and in lyk wyse
 for drynk as well as though he had dronken his fylle 16
 of the best wyne in all the worlde. the thyrd lady,
 namyd Margale, gaued to this horne yet a greter gyft /
 and that was, who so euer harde this horne / though he
 were neuer so poore or febyll by syknes, he sholde haue 20
 suche ioy in his herte that he sholde syng and daunce /
 the forth lady, namyd Lempatrix, gaued to this horne
 suche a gyft, that who so euer harde it, yf he were a⁴.C.
 iorneyes⁵ of, he sholde come at the pleasure of hym that 24
 blew it, farre or nere. Than kynge Oberon, who knew
 well and hade sen the .xiiii. compaynyons, he set hys
 horne to hys mouth and blewe so melodyous a blast /
 that the .xiiii. compaynyons, beyng vnder the tre, had 28
 so parfayte a ioy at there hertes that they al rose vp
 and begane to syng and daunse. 'A, good lorde,' quod
 Huon, 'what fortune is come to vs? / me thynke we be
 in paradyse / ryght now I coude not susteyn my selfe 32
 for lake of mete & drynke, and now I fele my selfe
 nother hungry nor thrusty. fro whense may this come?'

¹ would. ² any. ³ she. ⁴ Fol. xvii. col. 2.
⁵ dayes iorneyes.

'Syr,' quod Gerames / 'know for trowth thys is done
by the dwarfe of the fayry / whom ye shall sone se
passe by you. But, syr, I require you in¹ iupardy in²
4 lesyng of your lyfe that ye speke to hym no worde,
without ye purpose to byde euer with hym.' 'Syr,'
quod Huon, 'haue no dought of me, sen I knowe the
iupardy.' Therwith y^e dwarfe began to crye alowde,
8 and sayde, 'Ye .xiiii. men *that* passyth by my wood,
god kepe you all / and I desyre you speke with me,
and I coniure you ther to by god almyghty, and by
y^e crysteudome that ye haue receyuyd, and by all that
12 god hath made, answer me.'

Gerames warns
Huon to speak no
word to Oberon.

Oberon calls to
the knights to
speak to him.

¶ Howe kynge Oberon was ryght sorowfull
and sore dyspleasyd in that Huon wold
not speke / and of the grete fere that
16 he put Huon and hys company in.

Capitulo .xxiii.

20 **W**Han that Huon and hys company harde
the dwarfe speke, they montyd on
there horses & rode away as faste as
they mygh *without* spekyng of any
worde / and the dwarfe, seyng he
that ³they rode away & wolde not speke, he was
24 sorowfull and angry / than he sette one of his fyngers
on his horne / out of y^e whiche issuyd out⁴ suche
wynde a⁵ and tempest so horryble to here that it bare
downe trees, and therwith came suche a rayne & hayl
28 that⁶ semyd that heuen and the erthe hade fought
together, and that y^e worlde shulde haue ended / the
beestys in the wodes brayed and cryed / and *thou*
foules of the eyre fell doune deed for⁷ feer that they
32 were in / ther was no creature but he wolde haue bene

Huon and his
company ride
away.

Oberon in anger
raises a tempest
about them,

¹ on. ² of. ³ Fol. xvii. back, col. 1.
⁴ out omitted. ⁵ a winde. ⁶ it. ⁷ the.

and causes a
perilous river to
appear in the
path before them.

Huon is stricken
with fear.

A fair castle rises
upon the opposite
side of the river,

but soon vanishes.

Gerames shows
that all this is the
work of the
dwarf king of
Fairy-land, who is
wrathful because
Huon has spoken
no word with
him.

afrayed of that tempeest / than sodenly aperyd before
them a grete ryuer / that ran swyfter than the byrdes
dyde flye / and the water was so blacke and so *perre-*
lous, & made suche a noyse that it myght be herde .x. 4
leges of / 'Alas,' quod Huon, 'I se well now we all¹ be
all loste ; we shall here be oppressyd without god haue
pyte of vs / I repent me that euer I enteryd in to
this wode ; I had ben better a² traueylyd a hole here³ 8
than to haue come hether' / 'Syr,' quod Gerames,
'dysmay you not / for all this is done by the dwerfe of
the Fayrey' / 'well,' quod Huon, 'I thynke it beste
to alyght fro our horse, for I thynke we shall neuer 12
skape fro hense, but that we shall be all oppressyd'
than Garyn and the other companyons had grete
meruayll, and wher in grete feer / 'a, Gerames,' quod
Huon, 'ye shewyd me well that it was grete perell 16
to passe this wode / I repent me⁴ that I hadde not
beleuyd you' / than they sawe on y^e other syde of the
ryuer a fayre castell enuyronyd with .xiii. grete
tours, and on euery toure a clocher of fyne golde be 20
semynge / the whiche they long regardyd / & by *that*
tyme they had gone a lytyll by y^e ryuer syde they
loste y^e syght of y^e castell, it was clene vanysshyd
a way / wher of Huon & his company were sore 24
abasshyd / 'Huon,' quod Gerames, 'of all this *that*
ye se dysmay you not / for all this is done⁵ by the
crokyd dwerfe of y^e Fayrey, & all too begyle you / but
he can not greue you so ye speke no worde / how be it, 28
or⁶ we departe fro hym he wyll make vs all abasshyd,
for anone he wyll come after vs lyke a madd man by
cause ye will not speke to⁷ hym ; but, syr, I requyre
you as in goddys name / be nothyng afreyde, but 32
ryde forth surely, & euer be ware *that* ye speke to⁷
hym no worde' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'haue no dought


¹ all omitted. ² to haue. ³ yeere. ⁴ now.
⁵ Fol. xvii. back, col. 2. ⁶ ere. ⁷ vnto.

therof / for I had rather he were bresten¹ than I
 shulde speke one worde to hym' / than they rode to
 pass y^e ryuer, and than they founde there no thyng to
 4 let them, & so rode a² .v. legges / 'syr,' quod Huon,
 'we may well thanke god *that* we be *thus* skapyd thes
 dwarfe, who thought to haue dysceyuyd vs / I was
 neuer in such feer duryng my lyfe, god confounde
 8 hym' / *thus* they rode deusyng of y^e lytyll dwarfe
 who had done them so myche trouble.

Huon vainly
 imagines he has
 now escaped
 Oberon's toils.

¶ How kynge Oberon, dwarfe of the Fayrey,
 pursuyd soo moche Huon that he con-
 12 straynyd hym to speke to hym at laste.

Capitulo .xxiiii.

16  Han Gerames vnderstode y^e companye
 how they thought they were³ skapyd
 fro the dwarfe, he began too smyle, &
 sayd / 'syr, make none a vance⁴ that
 ye be out of his⁵ daunger / for I
 belyue ye shall soone se hym agayne' / & as sone
 20 as Gerame had spoke the same wordys / they sawe
 before them a bryge, y^e which they must passe, &
 they sawe y^e dwarfe on y^e other parte. Huon sawe
 him fyrst, & sayd, 'I se y^e deuyll who hath done vs
 24 so myche trouble' / Oberon herde hym, and sayde,
 'frende, thou doest me iniurey⁶ without cause, for I
 was neuer deuyll nor yll creature / I am⁷ a man⁷ as
 other be / but I coniure the by the deuyne puisance to
 28 speke to⁸ me.' than Gerames sayd, 'syr, for goddes sake
 let hym alone / nor speke no word to hym / for by hys
 fayr langage he may dyssayue vs all / as he hath done
 many other ; it is pyte that he hath leuyd so longe.'

Gerames warns
 him not to be too
 certain that his
 dangers are yet
 over:col.e,

and straightway
 Oberon is seen on
 a bridge before
 them,

conjuring Huon
 to speak with
 him.
 Gerames
 dissuades him
 once more.

¹ destroyed. ³ about. ⁵ whree in orig.
⁴ bragging. ⁶ this. ⁷ Fol. xviii. col. 1.
 7-7 omitted. ⁸ vnto.

than they rode forthe a good pase, and left the dwerfe
 alone sore dyspleysyd / in that they wolde not speke to
 hym / than he toke his horne, and sette it to his
 mouthe and blewe it / whan Huon and his companye **4**
 herde it they hadde no power to ryde any ferther / but
 they began all to synge / than Oberon the dwarfe
 sayde, 'yonder company are fooles, and proude / that
 for any salutacyon that I can gyue them they dysdayne **8**
 to answeere me / but by the god that made me, or¹
 they escape me the refuse² of my wordes shall be dere
 bought.' than he tooke agayne his horne, and strake it
 .iii. tymes on his bowe / and cryed out aloude and **12**
 sayde, 'ye my men, come and apere before me' / than
 there came to hym a³ foure hondred men of armes,
 and demaundyd of Oberon what was his pleasure, and
 who had dyspleasyd hym / 'Syr,' quod Oberon, **16**
 'I shall shewe you / how be it I am greuyd to shewe
 it / here in this wode there passyd .xiii. knyghtes /
 who dysdaynyth to speke to⁴ me / but to the entent
 that they shall not mocke me / they shal derely by the **20**
 refusynge of theyr answeere / wherefore I wyll ye
 go after them and slee them all, let none escape' /
 than one of his knyghtes sayd, 'syr, for goddes sake
 haue pyte of them' / 'sertenly,' quod Oberon, myne **24**
 honour sauyd, I can not spare them syn they dysdayne
 to speke to⁴ me' / 'syr,' quod Gloriand, 'for goddes
 sake do not as ye say / but, syr, worke by my counsell,
 and after do as it please you / syr, I counsell you yet **28**
 ones agayne goo after them / for⁵ yf they do not⁶ speke
 we shall slee them all ; for surely, syr, yf they see you
 retourne agayne to them, so shortly they shall' be in
 grete feer' / 'frend,' quod Oberon, 'I shall do as ye **32**
 haue counsellid me' / thus Huon & his companye rode
 forth a grete pace / and Huon sayd, 'syrs, we are now

Oberon blows his
 horn, and Huon
 and his company
 can ride no
 further, but stop
 and sing.

Another blast of
 the fairy's horn
 summons four
 hundred armed
 men.

Oberon bids the
 warriors slay the
 knights.

Gloriande begs
 the dwarf to give
 them some
 respite.

Huon and his
 company ride on
 space.

¹ before. ² refusal. ³ about. ⁴ vnto.
⁵ Fol. xviii. col. 2. ⁶ then. ⁷ will.

- fro the dwerfe a¹ .v. leges; I neuer sawe in my lyfe
 soo fayre a creature in y^e visage / I haue grete meruayle
 how he can speke of god almyghty² / for I thinke he
 4 be a deuyll of hell / & sennys he spekyth of god, me
 thynke we ought to speke to hym / for I thynke suche
 a creature can haue no power to do vs any yll³ / I
 thinke he be not past of y^e age of .v. yeres / 'syr,' quod
 8 Gerames, 'as lytel as he semyth, & that ye take him
 for a chylde / he was borne .xl. yere afore y^e Natyuyte
 of our lord Jhesu Cryst' / 'surely,' quod Huon, 'I care
 not what age he be of / but yf he com agayne, yll hape
 12 come to me yf I kepe my wordes & spech fro him / I
 pray you be not dyspleasid.' & thus as they rode
 dyuysynge .xv. dayes / sodenly Oberon aperyd to⁴ them
 & sayd, 'syrs, are ye not yet aduysyd to speke to⁴ me? /
 16 yet agayne I am com to salute you in y^e name of y^e
 god that made & formyd vs, & I coniure you by
 y^e puysaunce that he hath geuin me / that ye speke to
 me, for I repute you for fooles to thinke thus to passe
 20 thorow my wod & dysdayne to speke to me / a, Huon,
 I knowe thee well ynough, & wether thou woldest go /
 I know all thy dedes, &⁵ thou slewest Charlot, and
 after dyscomfyted Amaury / and I knowe y^e message
 24 that Charlemayn hath chargyd the to say to the
 admirall Gaudys, y^e which thyng is impossyble to be
 done without myne ayed / for without me thou shalt
 neuer acomplyshe this entrepryce / speke to me / & I
 28 shall do the that courtesy that I shall cause y^e to
 acheue thyne entrepryce, y^e which is⁶ impossyble
 without me / & whan thou hast acheuyd thy message I
 shal bringe thee agayne in to france in sauegard / &⁷
 32 I know y^e cause that thou⁸ wylt not speke to me /
 hath ben⁹ by reason of olde Gerames who is there with
 the. Therefore, Huon, beware of thy selfe; go no

He marvels at
Oberon's beauty,
and desires to
speak with him.

After fifteen days
Oberon re-
appears to them,
and salutes Huon
in the name of
God.

He recites Huon's
history,

and shows him
that without
fairy aid he will
never fulfil his
mission.

¹ about. ² almighty God. ³ euill. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ how.
⁶ else. ⁷ and omitted. ⁸ Fol. xviii. back, col. 1. ⁹ it is.

Oberon once more
begs Huon to
speak with him,

and Huon bids
him welcome.
The dwarf
promises him rich
reward for this
salutation.

forther / for I knowe well it is thre dayes passyd sene
thou dydyst ete any mete to profyt the / yf thou wylt
beleue me / thou shalt haue ynough / of suche
sustenance as thou wylt wysse fore. And as soone as 4
thou hast dynyd I wylt giue the leue to departe / yf it
be thy pleasure / of this haue no dought.' 'Syr,' quod
Huon, 'ye be welcom.' 'A,' quod Oberon, 'thy
salutasyon shalbe well rewardyd. know for trouthe 8
thou neuer dyddest salutasyon so profytable for thy
selfe / thou mayst thanke god / that he hathe sent the
that grace.'

¶ Of the grete meruaylles that Oberon 12
shewyd to¹ Huon / & of the aduentures
that fell. Capitulo .xxv.



Huon asks
wherefore Oberon
has persued him.

Oberon tells how
he loves Huon,

and who he is.

His father was
Julius Cesar, and
his mother the
lady of the Secret
Isle, once loved by
the fair
Florimont.

Han Huon had well herd Oberon he
had grete merueyll, and demaundyd yf 16
it were trew that he hade sayd. 'ye
trewly,' quod Oberon, 'of *that* make
no dought.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I
haue greate merueyll for what cause ye haue alwayes 20
pursuyd vs' / 'Huon,' quod Oberon, 'know well / I
loue *thee* well by cause of the trouthe that is in the /
and therefore naturally I loue the / and yf thou wylt
knowe who I am, I shall shew the / trew it is Julius 24
cesar engenderyd me on the lady of the pryuey² Isle /
who was sumtyme welbelouyde of the fayre Florimont
of albaney. But by cause that Florimont who as than
was yonge / & he had a mother who dyd so myche / 28
that she sawe my mother and Florimont to gether in
a soletary place on y^e see syde / whan my mo³ther
parseyud / that she was spyed by Florimontes mother /
she departyd and left Florimont hyr louer in grete 32

¹ vnto.

² secret.

³ Fol. xviii. back, col. 2.

- wepynges and lamentasyons / and neuer saw hym after /
 & than she retournyd in to hyr¹ countre of y^e priuey² His mother's
 Isle / the which now is namyd Chyfalonne, wher as now known as
 4 she maryed after, & hade a sonne who in his tyme after Chyfalonne.
 was kynge of Egypt / namyd Neptanabus / it was he By one marriage
 as it is sayde that engenderyd Alexander y^e grete, who she was mother of
 aft causyd hym to dye / than after a .vii. yere Sezar Neptanabus, the
 8 passyd by the see as he went in³ to thesalee⁴ wher as father of
 he fought *with pompee* / in his way he passyd by Alexander the
 Chyfalonne / wher my mother fetchyd hym / and he Great.
 fell in loue with her bycause she shewyd hym that he
 12 sholde dyscomfyt Pompee / as he dyde / thus I haue
 shewyd you who was my father / at my byrthe there
 was many a prynce⁵ and barons of the fayrre / and
 many a noble lady that came to se my mother whyles
 16 she traunayld of me. & among them theyr was one was
 not content / by cause she was not sent for as wel as
 y^e other, & whan I was borne / she gaue me a gyft, y^e who in anger
 whiche was, that whan I sholde passe .iii. yere of age I caused him to
 20 sholde growe no more / but thus as ye se my now / cease growing
 and whan she had thus done / and sawe that she had when three years
 thus seruyd my by heyr wordis / she repentyd heyr old.
 selfe / and wolde recompense me a nother waye. Than
 24 she gaue my⁶ another gyfte / and that was, that I
 sholde be the fayreste creature that euer nature formyd /
 as thou mayst se my now / and another lady of the
 Fayrrey namyd Transline / gaue me a nother gyft, & A second fairy
 28 that was, all that euer any man can knowe or thynke, gave him the
 good or yll, I do⁷ know it / the thyrde lady, to do power of seeing
 more for me / and to please my mother y^e better / she into all men's
 gaue my / that there is not so fayre⁸ a contray / but minds ;
 32 that yf I wyll wysse me selfe theyr, I shall be there a third that of
 incontynent with⁹ what nombre of men as I lyste / and going whither he
 would by merely
 wishing.

¹ owne. ² secret. ³ vnto. ⁴ place. ⁵ many Princes.⁶ me. ⁷ should. ⁸ farre.⁹ Fol. xix. col. 1.

Everything indeed that he requires he can procure by merely wishing for it.

He is king of Momur.

Oberon offers Huon sustenance.

No bird nor beast is there that keeps its wildness in presence of Oberon. He will never seem older, and when he leaves the world he will find a place ready for him in paradise.

Huon accepts the fairy's offer of food and drink.

He and his company sit down at Oberon's bidding.

more ouer, yf I wyll haue a castell or a palays at myne owne deuysel, incontenent it shall be made / and as sone gone agayne and¹ I lyste; and what mete or wyne that I wyll² wysshe for it,³ I shall⁴ haue it 4 incontenent; & also I am kynge of Momur, the whiche is a⁵ .iiii. C. leges fro hense / and yf I lyste incontenent I can be there / know for trouthe that thou art aryuyd at a good porte / I know well thou haste grete nede of 8 mete / for this .iii. dayes thou hast had but small sustenance / but I shall cause the to haue ynough / I demaunde of the wether thou wylt haue mete and drynke here in this medow, or in a palayes, or in a 12 hall; commaund where as thou wylt, & thou shalt haue it for the and thy company' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I wyll folowe your pleasour, and neuer do nor thynke the contrary' / 'Huon,' quod he, 'as yet I haue not 16 shewyd all the gyftes that were gyuen me at my byrthe / the .iiii. lady gaue me / that there is no byrde nor beest, be they neuer so cruell / but yf I wyll haue them I may take them with my hand, and also I shall 20 neuer seme⁶ elder than thou seest me now / and whan I shall departe out of this worlde, my place is aperrelyd⁷ in paradyce / for I knowe that all thynges creatyd in this mortall world must nedys haue an ende' / 'syr,' 24 quod Huon, 'such a gyft ought to be well kept' / 'Huon,' quod Oberon, 'well ye were counselyd when ye spake to me / ye had neuer before so fayre aduenture / shewe me by thy faythe / yf thou wylt 28 ete / & what mete thou wylt haue and what wyne thou wylt drynke' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'so that I had mete and drinke I care not what it were, so that I and my company were fyllyd and ryd fro our famyn' / 32 than Oberon laughyd at hym and sayde / 'syrs, all ye syte downe here in this medow / and haue no dought

¹ when. ² would. ³ it omitted. ⁴ should.
⁵ about. ⁶ besecme. ⁷ appointed.

but all that I wyll do is done by the pyns'sauce of our
 lorde god' / than Oberon began to wysshe / and sayd
 to² Huon and his company, and sayd, 'syr, aryse vp
 4 quykly,' the whiche they dyd / than they regardyd³ and when they
 before them and sawe a fayre and a ryche palayes rise up they see a
 richly-built
 palace before
 them.
 garnysshyd with chambers and halles / hangyd and
 beddyd with ryche clothes of sylke beten with golde,
 8 and tablys redy set full of mete / whan Huon and his
 company sawe the ryche palayes before them they had
 grete meruayll / than⁴ Oberon toke Huon by the hande /
 & with hym mountyd vp in to the palayes / whan
 12 they came there they founde seruauntes there redy /
 bryngynge to² them basyns of golde garnysshyd *with*
 precyous stones / they gaue water to Huon. than⁵
 he sat downe at the tabull, the whiche was furnysshyd
 16 with all maner of mete and drynke that man coude
 wysshe / Oberon satte at the tables ende on a banke⁶
 of Iuorey rychely garnysshyd with golde and precyous
 stones, the which sete had suche vertu geuyn to it by
 20 the fayrey / that who so euer by any suttyll meanes
 wolde poyson hym that shulde syte there on, as soone
 as he shulde aproche nere to y^e sete he shuld fal down
 starke deed / king Oberon sat theron rychely aparelyd /
 24 and Huon, who sat nere to² hym, began to ete a grete
 pace / but Gerames had small apetyte to ete / for he
 beleuyd that they shulde neuer departe thense / whan
 Oberon sawe hym he sayd / 'Gerames, ete thy mete
 28 and drynke / for as soone as thou haste eeten thou
 shalt haue leue to go when thou lyste' / whan Gerames
 herde that he was ioyfull / than he began to ete &
 drynke / for he knewe well that Oberon would not do
 32 agaynst his assurance / all the company dyd well ete
 and drynke / they were seruyd with all thynges that
 they coud wysh fore / whan Huon sawe how they were

Oberon leads
 Huon within,
 where servants
 bring them
 golden basins.

A table is set
 with all manner of
 food and drink.

At one end, on an
 Ivory throne,
 Oberon takes his
 seat.

Near him is Huon
 [with his
 company].
 Gerames, in fear
 that they shall
 not depart again,
 leaves all
 untasted, till
 Oberon assures
 him that they
 may go thence
 when the meal is
 over.

¹ Fol. xix. col. 2. ² vnto. ³ looked. ⁴ and.
⁵ and. ⁶ bench.

When all are satisfied, Huon asks Oberon's leave to depart.

Oberon sends for a cup, and shows it to Huon.

The dwarf makes the sign of the cross over it and it fills with wine.

All guiltless men, says Oberon, will find the cup full when raising it to their lips.

Oberon bids Huon drink of it, but he fears that he has sinned, and is unworthy of it.

all satsfyed and replete, and had well dynyd, ¹he sayd to kynge Oberon / 'syr, whan it shall be your pleasour I wolde ye shulde gyue vs leue to departe' / 'Huon,' quod Oberon, 'I am ryght well content so to do / but ⁴fyrste I wyll shewe you my iuelles' / than he callyd Clariand, a knyght of the fayrey, and sayd, 'frende, go and fetch to me my cuppe.' he dyd his commaundement. and whan Oberon had the cuppe in his hande / ⁸he sayd to² Huon / 'syr, behold wel ye se well³ this cuppe is⁴ voyde and empty' / 'that is trewe, syr,' quod Huon / than Oberon sete the cuppe on the table, and sayde to² Huon / 'syr, beholde the grete ¹²power that god hath gyuen me, and how that in the fayrey I may do my pleasour.' than he made ouer the cuppe the signe of a crosse .iii. tymes / than⁵ incontentent the cuppe was full of wyne / and than he sayde, 'lo,⁶ ¹⁶16 syrs, ye may well se that this is done by the grace of god / yet I shall shewe you the grete vertu that is in this cuppe, for yf all the men in the worlde were here assemblid to gether, and that the cuppe were in the ²⁰20 handes of any man beyng out of deedly synne, he myght drinke therof his fyll / but who so euer offer his hande to take it beyng in deedly synne, the cuppe shulde lese his vertu / and yf thou mayst drynke therof, I ²⁴24 offer to giue the the cuppe' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I thanke you, but I am in dought *that* I am not worthy nor of valoure to drynke ther of nor to touch the cuppe / I neuer herd of suche a dyngnyte as this ²⁸28 cuppe is of / but, syr, knowe for trouthe I haue ben confessyd of all my synnes, and I am repentant and sorowfull for *that* I haue done / and I do perdon and forgyue all the men in the worlde what so euer iniury ³²32 hath bene done to² me / and I knowe not that I haue done wronge to any creature, nor I hate no man.' and

¹ Fol. xix. back, col. 1. ² vnto. ³ that. ⁴ now.
⁵ and. ⁶ Behold.

so he toke the cuppe in bothe his handes and set it to
his mouth, and dranke of the good wyne that was
¹therein at his pleasour.

Huon however
seizes the cup,
and it fills in his
hands.

4 ¶ Of the grete giftes that Oberon gaue to²
Huon, as his horne of Iuorey & his cuppe,
the whiche were of grete vertues / and
Huon after thought to proue the vertu of
8 the^m, whereby he was in grete perell of
dethe. Capitulo .xxvi.



12 **W**Han Oberon sawe that, he was ryght
glad, and came and enbrasyd Huon,
seyng he³ was a noble man /
4 'I gyue the⁵ this cuppe as it is in the
maner as I shall shewe *thee* in any
wyse for any thyng ; for y^o dyngnyte of the cuppe be
16 thou euer trewe and faythfull / for yf thou wylt worke
by my counsell I shall ayed *thee* and gyue the socour
in all thyne affayres / but as soone as thou makyst any
lye the vertu of the cuppe wyl be lost and lese his
20 bounte, and besyde that thou shalt lese my loue and
ayed' / 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I shall ryght well be
ware ther of / and now, syr, I requyre you suffer vs to
departe.' 'abyde yet,' quod Oberon⁶; 'yet I haue
24 another iuell the which I wyl gyue *thee* / by cause I
thynke there be trouthe and nobles in the. I wyl
gyue the a ryche horne of iuorey, the whiche is full of
grete vertu / the⁷ whiche thou shalt bere with the / it is
28 of so grete vertu / *that* yf thou be neuer so farre fro me,
as soone as thou blowest the horne / I shal here the /
& shall be incontenent with the with a .C. thousaunde
men of⁸ armes for to socoure and ayed the / but one
32 thyng I commaunde *thee*, on the payne of lesinge of

Oberon is
gladdened by this
proof of Huon's
innocence, and
entrusts the cup
to his keeping.

Huon desires to
set forth,

but Oberon delays
him to giue him
his ivory horn,

one blast of which
will bring the
dwarf to his side
with a hundred
thousand men.

¹ Fol. xix. back, col. 2.

² vnto.

³ saying that.

⁴ and.

⁵ (quoth he).

⁶ Huon *misread in orig.*

⁷ and.

⁸ at.

But it is only to
be blown when
Huon is in great
peril.

Huon takes leave
of King Oberon.

Oberon weeps on
parting with his
cup and horn.

The knights
reach a deep,
fordless river,

but a servant of
the fairy king
appears,

and by striking
the water makes
a path through it.

Huon and his
company pass
along it, and the
river closes in
behind them.

my loue and on iuberdy of thy lyfe / *that* thou be not
so hardy ¹to sowne thy² horne / without thou haste
grete nede ther of ; for yf thou do other wyse I auow to
god *that* creatyd me, I shall leue *thee* in as grete ⁴
pouerte & mysere as euer man was / so that who so
euer shulde se the in that case shulde haue pyte of
the' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I shall ryght well be ware
therof / now I desyre you let me departe' / 'I am ⁸
content,' quod Oberon, 'and god be thy gyde.' Than
Huon toke leue of kynge Oberon / and trussyd vp all
his baggage / and dyde put his cuppe in³ his bosome /
& the horne about his necke / thus they all tooke there ¹²
leue of [the] kynge. Oberon⁴ all wepyng enbrasyd
Huon / who had merueyll why he wept, and sayd,
'syr, why do you wepe?' / 'frend,' quod Oberon, 'ye
may well knowe / ye haue with you .ii. thynges that I ¹⁶
loue derely. god ayde you ; more I can not speke
to you' / thus the .xiiii. knyghtes departyd, and so
they rode forthe a⁵ .xv. leges or more / *than* they sawe
before them a grete depe ryuer / and they coude fynde ²⁰
no gyde nor passage to pass ouer, and so they wyste
not what to do / *than* sodenly they sawe passe by
them a seruaunt of kynge Oberon berynge a rodde of
gold in his hande, and so without spekyng of any ²⁴
worde he enteryd in to y^e ryuer, and toke his rodde
and strake y^e water therwith .iii. tymes / *than* incon-
tynent the water withdrew a bothe sydes in suche wyse
that thir was a pathe that .iii. men myght ryde a ²⁸
frount / and that done he departyd agayne without
spekyng of any worde. *than* Huon and his company
entryd in to the water, and so passyd thorow without
any daunger / ⁶whan they were past they behelde⁷ ³²
behynde them, and sawe the ryuer close agayne and ran
after his olde course / 'by my faythe,' quod Huon /

¹ Fol. xx. col. l. ² they *in orig.* ³ into.
⁴ and. ⁵ about. ⁶ and. ⁷ looked.

- 'I thynke we be inchantyd. I beleue surely kynge
Oberon hath done this / but sene¹ we be thus skapyd
out of perel, I truste fro² hense forth we shall haue no
4 dought' / thus they rode forthe to gether synggyng,
and often tymes spake of the grete meruayles that they
had sene kynge Oberon doone³ / and as they rode
Huon beheld on his ryght hande & sawe a fayre
8 medow well garnysshyd with herbes and floures, and
in the myddes therof a fayre clere fountayne. than
Huon rode thether / and alyghtyd and let there horses
4 to pasture / than they sprede a clothe on the grene
12 grase / and set there vp⁵ suche mete as kynge Oberon
had gyuen them at there departyng / and there they
dyde ete and drynke suche drynke as they founde in
the cuppe / 'by my faythe,' quod Huon, 'it was a
16 fayre aduenture for vs whan we met Oberon, and that
I spake to hym / he hath shewyd me grete tokens of
loue whan he gaued me suche a cuppe / yf I may
retourne in to fraunce in saue garde, I shall gyue it to
20 Charlemayne / who shall make grete feest⁶ therewith /
& yf he can not drynke therof the barons of fraunce
wyll haue grete ioy⁷ therof' / than agayne he re-
pentyd hym of his owne wordes, and sayde, 'I am a
24 fole to thynke or say thus / for as yet I can not
tell what ende I shall come to / the cuppe that I haue
is better worth than .ii. cytyes / but as yet I can not
beleue the vertu to be in the horne as Oberon hath
28 shewyd / nor that he may here it so farre of / but what
so euer fortune fall, I wyll assay it yf it hath suche
vertu or not' / 'A,⁸ syr,' quod Gerames, 'be ware
what ye do / ye knowe well whan we departyd what
32 charge he gaued you / sertenly you and we bothe are
loste yf ye trespas his commaundement' / 'surely,'
quod Huon, 'what so euer fortune fall, I shall⁹ assay it' /

They ride to a
fair meadow, in
the midst of
which was a
clear fountain.

There they alight,

and eat and
drink of the
store Oberon had
given them.

Huon declares
that if ever he
return to France
he will give the
cup to the
Emperor.

But he mistrusts
its magic power,
or that of the
horn.

Gerames warns
Huon not to
make heedless
trial of them,

¹ seeing. ² Fol. xx. back, col. 2. ³ doe. ⁴ goe.
⁵ on. ⁶ ioy. ⁷ sport. ⁸ alas. ⁹ will.

but Huon blows
the horn.

& so toke y^e horne & set it to his mouthe / and blew it
so loude that the woode rang / than Gerames and all
the other began to synge and to make grete ioy / than
Garyn sayd, 'fayre newew, blow styll' ¹ / and so Huon ⁴
blewe styll with suche force *that* Oberon, who was in

Oberon hears the
blast, and fears
his knight is
in peril.

his woode a ².xv. leges of, herde hym clerely, and sayde,
³' a, very god,³ I here my frende blowe whom I loue
best of all the world / alas, what man is so hardy to do ⁸
hym any yll? / I wysse my selfe *with* him with a

With a hundred
thousand men he
approaches Huon.

.C.M. men of ⁴ armes' / incontynent he was nere to
Huon with a .C.M. men of ⁴ armes / whan Huon & his
company herde y^e hoste comynge, and sawe Oberon ¹²
com rydyng on before,⁵ then they were afreyd; ⁶ it was
no merueyll / seyng the commaundement that Oberon

Huon fears he
has done
foolishly.

had geuen them before / than Huon sayd, 'a,⁷ syrs, I
haue done yll; now I se well we can not escape, but ¹⁶
that we be ⁸ lykely⁹ to dye' / 'sertenly,' *quod*
Gerames, 'ye haue well deseruyd it' / 'holde your
peace,' *quod* Huon, 'dysmay you not / let me speke to
hym' / ther with Oberon cam to them and sayd / ²⁰

Oberon curses
Huon when
he perceives
his folly.

'Huon, ¹⁰ of god be thou curssyd,¹⁰ where are they *that*
wyll do the any yll? why haste *thou* broken my
commaundement?' / 'a,¹¹ syr,' *quod* Huon, 'I shall
shewe you y^e trouthe / we were syttyng ryght now in ²⁴
y^e¹² medow, & dyd ete of that ye gaue vs / I belyue

Huon pleads that
the virtue of the
draught from the
cup has led him
into error, and
asks for pardon.

I tooke to mych drynke out of the cuppe that ye gaue
me / the vertu of the whiche we well assayed / than
I thought to assay¹³ also the vertu of y^e ryche horne / to ²⁸
the entent that yf I shulde haue any nede / *that* I
myght be sure therof / now I know for trouthe that all
is trew *that* ye haue shewyd me / wherfore, syr, in y^e
honour of god I requyre you to pardon my trespas / ³²
¹⁴syr, here is my sword, stryke of my hede at your

¹ Fol. xxi. col 1. ² about. ³⁻³ Alas, my friends.

⁴ at. ⁵ them. ⁶ and. ⁷ alas. ⁸ are. ⁹ all.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ Alas. ¹² this. ¹³ trye. ¹⁴ else.

- pleasour / for I knowe well without your ayde I shall
 neuer come to acheue myne enterpryse' / 'Huon,' *quod*
 Oberon, 'the bounte and grete trouthe that is in the
 4 constreynth me to gyue the pardon / but beware fro
 hense forth be not so hardy¹ to breke my *commaunde-*
ment.' 'syr,' *quod* Huon, 'I thanke you' / 'well,'
quod Oberon, 'I knowe surely that thou hast as yet
 8 moche to suffer / for ²*thou* must passe by a cyte namyd
 Tormont, wherin there is a tyrant callyd Macayr, &
 yet he is thyne owne vnclé / brother to thy father,
 Duke Seuin / whan he was in fraunce he had thought
 12 to haue murderyd kynge Charlemayn, but his treason
 was knowyn / & he had ben slayne, and³ thy father
 Duke Seyn had not ben / so he was sent to y^o holy
 sepulcure to do his penaunce for the yll *that* he had
 16 done / & so after warde there he reuynsyd⁴ the feythe
 of our lord god / and tooke on⁵ hym the paynmys law /
 y^o whiche he hath kept euer syns so sore⁶ / *that* yf he
 here any man speke of our lord god, he wyl persuaunt
 20 him to the dethe / &⁷ what promys *that* he makyth, he
 keypyth none / therefore I aduyse *thee* trust not on
 hym / for surely he wyll put *thee* to dethe yf he may /
 & thou canst not skape yf *thou* go by that cyte /
 24 therefore I counsell the take not *that* way yf thou
 be wyse' / 'syr,' *quod* Huon / 'of your courtesy, loue,
 & good consell I thanke you / but what so euer fortune
 fal to me, I wyl go to mine vnclé / & if he be suche one
 28 as ye say / I shall make hym to dye an yll dethe ;
 yf nede be I shall sowne my horne, & I am sure at my
 nede ye wyll ayde me' / 'of *that* ye may be sure,'
quod Oberon / 'but of one thyng I defende⁸ the, be
 32 not so hardy to sowne the horne without thou be
 hurte, for yf thou do the contrary I shall so marter
thee that thy body shall not endure it' / 'syr,' *quod*

Oberon forgives
him.

Huon has much
to suffer yet.
He has to pass
by Tormont,
where lives the
tyrant Macaire.
He was brother
to Duke Seuin,

but has now
become a pagan.

If Huon go
near his city
he will surely
meet his death.

Huon asserts that
he will confront
his unclé.

Oberon bids
Huon obey his
commands in the
future.

¹ as. ² Fol. xxi, col. 2. ³ if. ⁴ renounced.
⁵ vppon. ⁶ strongly. ⁷ looke. ⁸ forbid.

Oberon bids farewell, and weeps for love of Huon, who will suffer much misfortune through his own folly.

Huon, 'be assuryd your commaundement I wyl not breke' / than Huon toke leue of kynge Oberon, who was sory whan Huon departyd / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I haue meruayll why ye wepe; I pray you shewe me y^e 4 cause why ye do it' / 'Huon,' quod Oberon, 'the grete loue that I haue in¹ thee causyth me to do it, for as yet herafteer thou shalt suffer so myche yll & traueyll / that no humayn tounge can tell it' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 8 'ye shewe me many thynges not gretely to my profyte' / 'sure,' quod Oberon, 'and yet thou shalt suffer more than I haue ²spoken of, and all by thyne owne folly.'

¶ How Huon aryued at Tormont, and found 12 a man at the gate who brought him to lodge to the prouostes house in the towne.

Ca. .xxvii.

Huon and his knights arrive at Tormont.

¶ After that Oberon had shewed huon 16 parte of that shuld fall to him, & was departed, Huon & his company then mounted on ther horses, & so rode fourth so longe tyll they cam to y^e 20 cytye of tormount. gerames, who had ben theyr before, when he saw y^e cytye he sayd to huon, 'a,³ syr, we be yll aryued here⁴ / behold here we be in y^e way to suffre muche troble.' 'syr,' quod Huon, 'be 24 not dysmayd, for by y^e grace of god we shall ryght well skape / for who that god wyll ayde no man can hurt.' then they entred into y^e cytye, &⁵ as they cam to y^e gate they met a man with a bow in his hand, who 28 had bene a sportinge with out y^e cytye / huon ryd fornest & salutid him in y^e name of god.⁶ 'frende, what cal ye this cytye?' / y^e man stode styll & had meruel what men they were that spake of god. he 32

Huon salutes a man at the gate in the name of God.



¹ to. ² Fol. xxi. back, col. 1. ³ Alas. ⁴ here omitted.
⁵ and. ⁶ saying.

- behelde them & sayd, 'syr, y^e god in whose name I ye
 haue salutyd me kepe & defend *thou* frome in-
 combraunce / how be it I desyre you, in as myche as ye
 4 loue your lyues, speke softly *that* ye be not herd
 for yf y^e lord of this citie know *that* ye be crysten men
 he wyll sle you all / syres, ye may truste me / for I am
 crystenened, but I dare not be knowen therof / I haue
 8 such fere of y^e duke.' 'frende,' quod Huon, 'I pray
thou shew me who is lorde of this cytye, & what ys his
 name' / 'syr,' quod he, 'he ys a false tyrant. when
 he was crystenened he was named Macaire, but he hath
 12 renounsed god, & he ys so feres & prowde *that* as now
 he hath² nothyng so moche as they³ *that* beleue in
 Ihesu cryst; but, *syr*, I pray you shewe me whether
 ye wyll go.' 'frende,' quod Huon, 'I wolde gladly go
 16 to y^e red see, & from thens to Babylone / I wold tary
 this daye in this cytye, for I & my company are sore
 wery.' 'syr,' quod he, '&⁴ ye wyll beleue me ye
 shall not entre in to this cytye to lodge / for yf y^e
 20 duke know⁵ it none could saue your lyues / therfore yf
 it be your pleasure I shall lede you a nother waye
 besyde y^e towne.' 'syr,' quod gerames, 'for goddes
 sake beleue hym *that* counseleth you so truly' / 'know
 24 for trouthe,' quod huon, 'I wyll not do thus. I see
 well it is almost nyght, the *sonne* goth low / therfore I
 wyll lodge this nyght here in this towne, what so euer
 fall;⁶ for a good towne wolde⁷ neuer be forsaken.'
 28 'syr,' quod y^e straunge man, 'sen⁸ it is so, for the loue
 of god I shall brynge you to a lodgyng where as ye
 shall be well & honestly lodgyd in a good mannes
 house that bileueth in god, named Gonder; he is
 32 prowost of the cytye, & well beloued with the duke.'
 'frende,' quod huon, 'god rewarde *thou*.' soo this man
 wente on before⁹ through the towne tyl he cam at y^e

The man—himself
a Christian—
warns Huon
against mention-
ing the name of
God in that land.

Macaire, who has
renounced the
Christian faith, is
lord of the city.

Huon is advised
by the stranger to
depart straight-
way.

but he refuses.

The stranger
promises to bring
him to a safe
lodging.

The knights
advance,

1 Fol. xxi. back, col. 2. 2 so in text. 3 them. 4 if.
5 knewe. 6 befall. 7 should. 8 seeing. 9 before omitted.

and see the provost at his gate. Huon salutes him in the name of God.

The provost repeats the first stranger's warning,

but offers Huon and his company shelter in his house.

They alight,

and tables are set before them.

After they have feasted Huon bids Gerames have proclamation made that all who will may sup freely at the provost's house that night.

prouostis house, whome they founde syttinge at his gate. Huon, that was a fayre speker, saluted hym in the name of god and ¹of the vyrgyn mary.¹ the prouost rose vp and beheld Huon & his company, &² ⁴ had³ *meruill* What they Were, sen⁴ they saluted hym in y^e name of god; then ⁵he sayd, 'syrs, ye be Welcome, but a goddes name I desyre you speke softlye that ye be not herde / for yf y^e duke of this cytye knew *thou*,⁶ ⁸ ye shuld vtterly be lost; but yf it please *thou*⁷ to tary this nyght here in my house / for y^e loue of god / all *that* I haue in my house shall be yours to do ther with at your pleasure. I abandon all to you / and, *syr*,¹² I thanke god I haue⁸ in my house that, &⁹ yf ye byde here this too yere, ye shall not nede to bye eny thyng without' / '*syr*,' quod Huon, 'of this frayre proffer I thanke you;' and soo he & his company alyghted, and ¹⁶ there were seruauantes ynow to take ther horses and to set *them* vp. then the host toke Huon & Gerames and y^e other and brought *them* to *chambres* to dresse. then¹⁰ / *theyr*¹¹ they came in to the hall, where as they ²⁰ founde the tables set and couered, and soo sate downe & were rychely seruyd with dyuers metys. when they had done & were rysen, Huon callyd Gerames & sayd, '*syr*, go in hast in to the towne & get a cryer / & ²⁴ make¹² to be cryed in euery merket place & strete, that who so euer wolde¹³ cum & suppe at the prouostes house, as well noble as vn noble men, women & chyldezen, ryche & poure, and all maner of people, ²⁸ of what estate or degre¹⁴ they be of,¹⁵ shulde¹⁶ come merely & frely, and nothyng pay, nother for mete nor drynke, wherof they shuld haue as they wysshyd' / and also he commaunded gerames *that* all the mete that he ³² could get in the towne, he shuld by it & pay redy

¹⁻¹ omitted. ² he. ³ great. ⁴ seeing.

⁵ Fol. xxii. col. 1. ⁶ this. ⁷ you. ⁸ that.

⁹ & omitted. ¹⁰ them. ¹¹ then. ¹² cause. ¹³ will.

¹⁴ so ever. ¹⁵ of omitted. ¹⁶ shall.

money for y^e same. 'syr,' quod Gerames, 'your pleasure shalbe done.' 'syr,' quod the host, 'ye know well all that ys in my house I haue abandoned to you /
 4 therefore, syr, ye shall not nede to seke for any thing
 farther; take of my goodes at your plesure.' 'syr,'
 quod Huon, 'I thanke you. I haue money ynough to
 furnysse¹ that we² nede of² / & also, syr, I haue a
 8 cuppe of greate vertu; for yf all y^e people that be
 within this cytye were here present, they shulde haue
 drynke ynough by reason of my cuppe, y^e which was
 made³ in 'the Fayry⁴' / when the host herde Huon he
 12 began to smyle, & beleuyd that those wordes had bene
 spoken⁵ in iapery⁵ / then Huon, not well aduysel,
 toke the horne of Iuorey from his necke & toke it to
 his host to kepe, sayenge,⁶ 'host, I take you this to
 16 kepe / for it is a precyous thyng, therefore kepe it surely /
 that I may haue it agayne when I demaund it.' 'syr,'
 quod he, 'I shall surely kepe it, & when it please you
 it shall be redy,' & so toke y^e horne & layed it vp in a
 20 coffer / but after fell suche an owre that Huon wolde
 haue had it rather then all the good in the worlde, as
 ye shall here more here after.

His host will not allow Huon to buy food for the supper, and offers his own stores;

but Huon says his cup will supply all that is needful.

Huon gives the provost his horn to keep for him.

¶ How Huon gaue a supper to all the pore
 24 men of the cytye, and how the duke was
 vnclē to Huon, and how the duke had
 Huon in to his Castell. Capitulo .xxviii.

7 Hus when Gerames had this com-
 28 maundement of Huon, he went in to
 the cyte / and made to be cryed in
 dyuers places as he was commaundid
 to do. when this crye was made there
 32 was no begger, vacabonde, nor rybault



Gerames does Huon's bidding.

¹ all. ² we and of omitted. ³ Fol. xxii. col. 2.

⁴⁻⁴ Fayry Land. ⁵⁻⁵ but in iest. ⁶ mine.

⁷ Fol. xxii. back, col. 1.

iogeler, mynstrell, olde nor yonge / but by grete flockys
 they came all to the prouostes house / in nombre moo
 then .CCCC. & Gerames bought vp bred, mete,
 flesshe, & other vyteles, all that he could fynde in the 4
 cytye, & payed for it / thus the supper was dressyd, &
 euery man set at the tables. Huon serued them with
 his cuppe in his hande, & made euery man to drynke
 of that he put out of his cuppe into other pottes, & yet 8
 euer the cuppe was full / When y^e people had well
 eten & drunken the good wyne and were well chafed
 in ther braynes, sum began to synge & some to slepe at
 the table, & sum bet¹ ther fystes on the bourdes *that* 12
 it was meruell to se y^e lyfe that they led, ²wher of
 Huon had grete ioye / the same tyme the dukes
 stewarde cam in to y^e towne to by hys maysters
 supper / but he coulde nother fynde bred nor flesshe, 16
 nor no other vytelles, wherof he was sore dyspleasyd /
 & then he demaundyd the cause why he found no
 vytelles as he was accustomed to do / 'syr,' *quod* the
 bochers & bakers, 'in y^e house of Gonder the prouost 20
 is lodged a yonge man who hath made to be cryed in
 all the cytye, that all beggers & rybauldes shulde com
 to supp at his lodgyng / & he hath bought vp all y^e
 vytelles *that* he culde gete in the towne.' than the 24
 paynem in greate dyspyte went to the palayes to the
 duke, and sayd / 'syr, I can gete nothyng in y^e towne
 for your supper; ther is a yonge man lodged in the
 prouostes house that hath bought vp all the vytelles to 28
 gyue a supper to all the beggers, vacabondes, & rybaudes
 that can be found in y^e towne.' When the duke
 vnderstode that he was sore dyspleasyd, & sware by
 mahunde that he wolde goo see that supper / then he 32
 commaunded all his men to be redy in harnes to goo
 with hym / & as he was goyng out of his palayes
 a traytour who had stolen priuely out of the prouostes

Four thousand
 poor men come to
 the provost's
 house.
 Gerames buys
 such food as is
 required.

Huon's cup
 provides sufficient
 wine.

Macaire's steward
 comes into the
 town to buy food
 for his master's
 supper,

but all has been
 sold to Gerames.

The Duke is told
 of Huon's supper.

In anger Macaire
 swears he will
 visit the provost's
 house.

¹ did beat.

² Fol. xxii. back, col. 2.

- house, where as he had ben at supper *with* other / he¹ sayd to the duke, 'syr, know for trouthe ther is in your prouostes house a knyght who hath gyuen a 4 supper to all people that wolde cum thether, & soo ther is no begger, no rybaulde, nor other *that* woll² supe, but are come thether; and, *syr*, this knyght hath a cuppe better worth then all this cytye / for yf all the 8 people betwene est and west shulde dye for lacke of drynke / they shuld haue al ynough, for as often as ye will empty the cuppe it wylbe full agayne incontynent.' when the duke herd that he had greate meruell, & sayd / 12 suche a cuppe were good for hym, & sware by mahound that he wolde haue that cuppe / 'let vs goo thether, for my wyll is to haue that cuppe. ³all those knyghtes shall lose ther horses & baggage; ⁴I wyll leue them 16 nothings.' so⁵ he went fourthe *with* .xxx. knyghtes, & restyd not tyll he came to the prouostes house & founde the gates open. when y⁶ prouost perseyued him he cam to Huon, ⁷sayd, 'a,⁷ *syr*, ye haue done yll; 20 here is come the duke in grete dyspleasure. yf god haue not pytye of *thou*⁸ I can not se how ye can escape without dethe.' '*syr*,' quod Huon, 'dysmaye ye not, for I shall speke so fayre *that* he shall be content.' 24 then Huon *with* a mery chere cam to y⁹ duke & sayd, '*syr*, ye be welcom.' 'beware,' quod the duke, 'cum not nere me / for no crysten man may com in to my cytye *without* my lycence, wherfore I wyll thou 28 knowest that ye shall all lose your hedes, and all *that* ye brought hether' / '*syr*,' quod Huon, 'now⁹ ye haue slayne vs ye shal wyn therby but lytell; ¹⁰it were grete wrong for you so to do.' 'I shall tell the,' quod y¹⁰ 32 duke, 'why I wyll so do; *that* is bycause ye be crysten men, therfor *thou* shalte be the fyrst / shew by¹¹ thy
- A traitor comes to tell him of the marvels of Huon's cup.
- Macaire resolves to obtain it from him.
- The provost sees the Duke approach.
- Huon welcomes him.
- Macaire answers that he will slay him and his knyghts,
- because they are Christians.

¹ he omitted.² would.³ and.⁴ Fol. xxiii. col. l.⁵ so omitted.⁶ and.⁷ alas.⁸ you.⁹ when.¹⁰ and.¹¹ me on.

Huon tells
Macaire that he
has brought the
poor men together
that they may
pray for him
hereafter

and invites the
Duke and his
escort to eat and
drink.

He apparently
conciliates him,
and Macaire
consents to sup.

Huon serves him
with fitting
honour.

He offers the
Duke his cup
filled with wine,
but it grows
empty when he
touches it.

Huon angers
Macaire by telling
him that this is
proof that he has
sinned.

faythe why haste thou assembled all this company here
to supper' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I haue done it by
cause I am goynge to y^e red see / & bycause these
pore men wyll pray to god for me *that* I may sauely 4
returne / syr, this is the cause that I haue made them
to suppe with me' / 'a,'¹ quod the duke, 'grete foly
hast thou spoken / for *thou* shalte neuer see fayre daye,
ye shall all lose your hedes' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'leue 8
all this; I pray you & your company syt downe & ete
& drynke at your pleasure, & I shall serue you as well
as I can; & then, syr, yf I haue done eny wronge,
I wyll make you a mendys in suche wyse *that* ye shall 12
be contente, for yf ye do me eny hurt it shall be to you
but a smale conquest. syr, me thynke yf ye wyll do
noblye ye shulde sumwhat forbere vs, for as I haue
harde say ye were ones crystenyd.' then the duke 16
sayd to Huon, 'thou hast sayd well; I am content to
suppe, for as yet I haue not supped.' then the duke
commaundyd euery man to be dysarmyd & to syt
downe at the tabyll / the whiche they dyd / than 20
Huon and Gerames seruyd them, and they were well
seruyd at that supper / ² then Huon tooke his cuppe and
came to y^e Duke, & sayd, 'syr, se you not here this
cuppe, the whiche is voyde and empty?' 'I se well.' 24
quod the duke, 'there is no thyng therin.' than Huon
made the sygne of the crosse ouer the cuppe, and
incontyent it was full of wyne / he toke y^e cuppe to
the duke, who had grete meruayll therof, and as sone 28
as the cuppe was in his handes it was voyde agayne.
'what!' quod the duke, '*thou* hast enchanted me.'
'syr,' quod Huon, 'I am none enchanter / but it is
for the synne that ye be in / set it downe, for ye are 32
not worthy to holde it; ye were borne in an yll^s hour' /
'how art thou so hardy,' quod the duke, 'to speke thus
to me? / I repute the for a proude fole / thou knowyst

¹ Well.

² Fol. xxiii. col. 2.

³ euill.

well it lyeth in my power to dystroy the / there is no man dare say the contrary ; yet I pray the tell me thyn name, & where thou were borne, and wether thou goest, 4 & of what kynne thou art of.' 'syr,' quod Huon, 'for any thyng that shall¹ fall to me I wyll not hyde my name nor kinrede / ²syr, knowe for trouthe I was borne at Burdeux vpon Geron, and am sonne to duko seuyn 8 who ys deed .vii. yere passyd.' when y^e duke herd how huon was his nepheu, he sayd, 'a,³ the son of my brother / nepheu, why haste thou taken in this cyte eny other lodginge but myne? / shew me whether thou 12 wylte goo' / 'syr,' quod huon, 'I am goyng to Babylon to y^e admirall Gaudys, to do to hym a message fro kyng Charlemayne of fraunce / by cause I slew his sonne there.' 'he shewed his vnclē all his ad- 16 uenture / & how the kyng had taken awaye his londe, nor shulde not⁴ haue it agayne tyll he had done his message to the admyrall. 'fayre nephew,' quod y^e duke, 'in lyke wyse I was hanysshed the realme of 20 Fraunce, & syns I haue renyed⁶ y^e faythe of Jhesu cryst, & syns I maryed here in this countrie a grete lady / by whome I haue grete landes to gouerne, wherof I am lord. ⁷nepheu, I wyll⁸ ye shall go & lodge with me in 24 my castell, and to morow ye shall haue of my barons to condute you tyll ye come too babylone' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I thanke you ; syn it is your pleasure I wyll goo with you to your palayes.' then Gerames preuely sayd 28 to hym / 'syr, yf ye goo thether ye may hap⁹ repent your self.' 'it may wel be,' quod Gonder the prouost. then huon commaunded to trusse all ther gere & to make redy ther horses / & toke with hym his cuppe / 32 but he lefte styll his horne with the prouost. thus huon went with his vnclē to his castell, & lay there all nyght / the nexte mornyng Huon cam to his vnclē to

Huon tells his name and parentage.

The Duke recognizes his nephew.

Huon declares his mission.

Macaire invites him to his castle.

Gerames advises Huon to stay with the provost,

but Huon goes with his uncle that night,

¹ may. ² therefore. ³ a omitted. ⁴ so. ⁵ he.
⁶ denied. ⁷ Fol. xxiii. back, col. 1. ⁸ that. ⁹ perhaps.

and he is induced
next day
to delay his
departure.

take his leue / 'fayre nepheu,' quod the duke, 'I requyre
you tary tyll my barons come *that* shall condute you in
your iourney.' 'syr,' quod huon, 'syn' it please you I
am content to abyde' / then² they sat³ downe to dyner. 4

¶ How the duke thought to haue murdryd
Huon, his owne nepheu, whyles he sat at
the table. Capitulo .xxix.⁴



Hen this traytor duke saw his nepheu 8
sit at y^o table, he called to him a
knight borne in fraunce callyd Geffrey,
who came out of fraunce with y^o duke,
& had in lyke wyse renyed⁵ y^o law of 12

Maodre plots the
death of his
nepheu,

cryst, & he was secret with y^o duke / then y^o duke
priuely sayde to him, 'frend, goo & arme .c. or .vi.
score paynems, & cause them to cum hether / let them
sle my nepheu & all *that* are cum with him, for if one 16
skape ye shal lese my fauer' / 'syr,' quod Geffrey,
'your wyll shalbe done' / then Geffrey went into a
chambre / where as ther was .cc. harnes⁶ hangynge ;
when he cam there⁷ he sayd to⁸ him self, 'alas, good 20
lord, this velayne traytour wolde slee y^o sonne of his
brother / who when I was in Fraunce dyd me ones a
greate curtesye, for I had bene deed & slayne if duke
seuyn his father⁹ had not socouryd me / it is reason for 24
that he dyd¹⁰ to me to rendre agayne sum rewarde to

and he bids his
officer Geffrey,
a knight from
France,
arm many pagans
to kill Huon.
But Geffrey
revalls Duke
Sevin's kindness
to himself,

and resolves to
protect Huon.

y^o¹¹ sonne / god confounde me yf he haue any yll for
me / but I shall rather cause the false duke to bye
derely y^o treason *that* he wolde do to his newew' / y^o 28
same season there was in y^o castell a¹² .vii. score prisoners
of¹³ Frenchemen who were taken vpon y^o see, & the
duke kept them in prison to y^o entent to put them to

In the castle
prison are seven
score Frenchmen
taken upon the
sea.

¹ seeing. ² then omitted. ³ them.

⁴ Chap. xxviii. *misprinted in orig.* ⁵ denied.

⁶ armours. ⁷ thether. ⁸ within. ⁹ Fol. xxiii. back, col. 2.

¹⁰ then. ¹¹ his. ¹² about. ¹³ all.

dethe; he was so cruell agaynst all crysten men / but
 god, who neuer forgettyth his frendes,¹ socouryd them /
 this Geffrey went to the presoners² / & sayd to the
 4 prysoners, 'syr,³ yf ye wyll saue your lyues, com out &
 folow me' / than y^e prisoners incontynent issuyd out
 of y^e pryson & folowyd Geffrey / & he brought them in
 to the chambre wher as all the harnes hangyd; he
 8 causyd them all to be armyd / & sayde, 'syr, yf ye
 haue corage & wyll to issue hense, it is tyme now ye
 shewe your vertu' / 'syr,' quod they, 'to dye in the
 quarell we shall do your commaundement / to com out
 12 of boundage in to fredom' / whan Geffrey hard them
 he was ryght ioyouse, & sayd, 'syr, knowe surely that
 there is here in this palayes at dyner / y^e son of duke
 Seuin of Bourdeaux, & he is neuwe to y^e duke lord of
 16 this hous / who was ones crystenyd, & hath renyed⁴ y^e
 feythe of oure lord god ⁵Jhesu Cryst,⁵ & he hathe
 commaundyd me to cause .vii. score paynems to be
 armyd to com & to sle his neuwe & all his company.'
 20 thus whan they were all armyd & swordes by there
 sydes, they folowyd Geffrey to the palayes / & whan
 they enteryd / Huon sayd to y^e duke his vncler / 'syr,
 these men in hernes that enteryd in to this hall, be
 24 they suche as ye haue commaundyd to com hether to
 condute me in my iourney?' 'a,⁶ Huon,' quod y^e duke /
 'it is other wyse than thou thynkest / thinke surely to
 dye, there is no remedy / thou shalt neuer se fayre day
 28 more' / than he sayde, 'syr, steppe forthe, loke that no
 crysten man skape you, but let them all be slayne.'

Geffrey arms the
prisoners,

and tells them of
Huon's visit to
the traitorous
Macaire.

They approach
Macaire and
Huon,

and the Duke,
mistaking them
for his pagan
soldiers, bids his
nephew prepare
to die.

¶ How by the ayde of Geffrey & of the
 prisoners Huon was socouryd, and slewe
 32 all the paynems, and the duke fledde / and
 after besegyd the castell. Ca. .xxx.

¹ seruants. ² Prison. ³ sirs. ⁴ denied.
⁵⁻⁶ omitted. ⁶ No. ⁷ Fol. xxiii. col. 1.

Huon makes
ready for
resistance.



At Geoffrey's
bidding the
Frenchmen kill
all the pagans in
the palace.

Huon turns upon
his uncle, who
flees,

and leaping from
a window, runs
from the castle.

The Frenchmen
close the gates
and raise the
drawbridges.

The Duke collects
more than ten
thousand men to
attack the castle.

Han Huon sawe y^e malyse of his vnclē
 & his false treason he was sore
 abasshyd / & rose vp sodenly & set
 his helme on his heed, & toke his 4
 sword in his hande / than Geffrey cam
 in and cryed, 'saynt Denys, ye noble frenchemen, take
 hede *that* no paynym skape alyue, but slee them all
 with sorowe' / than¹ the frenchemen drewe out there 8
 swordys & fought with the paynyms on all partes, so
that within a short tyme they were all slayne / & whan
 the duke sawe how they were no paynymis *that* slew his
 men / he was in grete fere of his lyfe / & so fledde away 12
 in to a secrete chambre / whan Huon perceyuyd that
 they were frenchemen *that* ²socouryd hym, he per-
 ceuyuyd³ the Duke with his sworde in his hande all
 bldy with the blode of the paynyms that he had 16
 slayne / whan the traytour⁴ Duke sawe that his neuwe
 so folowyd hym, he fledde fro chambre to ⁵chambre tyll
 he came to a window openyng vpon the garden syde /
 & so lept out there at and ran away, wherof Huon and 20
 Geffray and the other frenchemen were ryght sorowfull.
 than they cloyd the gates and lyft vp the brygges, to
 the entent that they shulde not be taken within /
 than they came in to y^e halle where as one toke 24
 queyntance of an other, where of they had gret ioy /
 but yf god had not socouryd them ther ioy had ben
 tornyd to sorowe / for y^e Duke who was skapyd / whan
 he cam in to the towne / he made a crye that as many 28
 as were able to bere harnes⁶ shulde come to hym / so
 that he and all that he coude make came with hym
 before the palayes, ⁷more than .x. M. persons / and
 they all sware the deth of the crysten men within the 32
 palayes / whan the Duke sawe ⁸he had suche⁹ nombre

¹ than omitted. ² had thus. ³ pursued. ⁴ trayterous.

⁵ Fol. xxiii. col. 2.

⁶ armour.

⁷ being.

⁸ that.

⁹ a.

- he was ioyfull / ¹than he commaundyd his engyns to
 be reysyd vp & ladders on euery parte / & ther with
 pykes & mattsokes they brake downe a corner toure /
 4 and the crysten men within defendyd them² valyauntly /
 But there defence shulde³ lytyll auayllyd them, and⁴
 our lorde god had not⁵ socoured them / whan Huon
 knew the daunger that they were in he was sore
 8 dyspleysyd, and sayde, 'a, good lord, I ought to be sore
 anoyed⁶ whan I se that we be thus kept in by myne
 vncler / I fere me we shall neuer se more dayes' / than
 Gerames sayd, 'syr, for the loue of god blowe now your
 12 horne' / 'syr,'⁷ quod Huon, 'it is not in my power to
 do it / for y^e prouost Gonder hath it in keypyng' / 'ha,
 Huon,' quod Gerames, 'in an yll oure we were aqueyntyd
 with you / for now by your foly and pryde we are in
 16 the way of destructyon' / thus as they were deuysyng /
 Gonder the prouost cam to the Duke, and sayde, 'syr,
 I haue grete merueyll that ye wyll thus dysstroy your
 owne palayes, grete foly ye do therin / syr,⁸ I wolde
 20 counsell you⁹ leue this assault,¹⁰ & lete there be a pease
 made betwene you and your neuw on the condycion to
 let hym and his company go sauely away' / 'prouost,'
 quod the Duke, 'I praye the go & do the beste *that*
 24 *thou* kanst. I wyll do as *thou* doest counsell me' /
 than y^e prouost cam to y^e palayes & sayde to Huon /
 'syr, for goddes sake speke with¹¹ me' / 'what art *thou*?'
 quod Huon / 'I am your host y^e prouoste / and I
 28 requyre you, in as moche as ye loue your lyues, kepe
 well this palayes' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'of¹² your good
 counsell I thanke you / & I desyre you, for y^e loue *that*
 ye bere me, & in *that* we wolde helpe to saue my lyfe /
 32 and¹³ to delyuer me agayne y^e horne of Iuorey *that*
 I toke you to kepe / for *without that* I can not scape

The Frenchmen
make a gallant
resistance,
but the chances
are against them.

Huon remembers
how he gave his
horn to the
provost,
and therefore
cannot call on
Oberon for aid.

The provost urges
Macaire to make
peace with Huon,

and the Duke,
accepting his
counsel, sends
him to negotiate
with his nephew.

On his arrival
before the castle
Huon begs him to
restore the horn,

¹ and. ² themselues. ³ had. ⁴ if. ⁵ mightily.

⁶ agreedued. ⁷ Alas. ⁸ rather. ⁹ to.

¹⁰ Fol. xxiiii. back, col. 1. ¹¹ to. ¹² for. ¹³ as.

which he does
straightway.

dethe' / 'syr,' quod y^e prouoste, 'it is not fare fro me' /
and so toke it out of his bosome & delyueryd it to
Huon in at a wyndow on the garden syde.

¶ How kyng Oberon cam and socouryd 4
Huon, & slew al the paynymes except
suche as wolde be crystenyd / and how
Huon slewe the duke his vncl. Ca. xxxi.

Huon begins to
sound the horn.



Gerames reproves
Huon for having
parted with it to
the provost,

and warns him
against blowing
it now,

but Huon will not
listen to him.

Oberon hears the
horn,

and comes to
Tormont with his
armed men.

Han Huon sawe that he was sessyd² of 8
his horne of Iuorey he was ioyfull, the
whiche was no meruayll / for it was
y^e ³suerte of his lyfe / than he set it
to his mouthe & began to blowe it / 12
than Gerames sayde / 'A, syr, ye shulde neuer be so
lyght to dyscouer your secretes / for yf this prouoste
had ben vntrew, he myght haue dyscoueryd all your
secretes to the Duke, wherby ye had ben loste and 16
deed / therefore neuer dyscouer your secretes⁴ / & also,
syr, I requyre you as yet blowe not your horne / for ye
be not as yet hurte / kyng Oberon commaundyd you
so at his departyng' / 'why,' quod Huon, 'wyll ye 20
than that I tarry tyll I be slayne? surely I wyll blowe
it without any lenger tarryng' / and so he blewe it so
sore that the blode came out of his mouth / so that all
that were in the palayes began to synge and to daunse, 24
and the Duke and all suche as were at the sege about
the palayes coude not reaste but to synge and to daunse /
than⁵ kyng Oberon, who as than was in his cyte of
Mommure / sayd, 'a⁶ hygh a I here my frend Huons 28
horne blow, wherby I knowe well he hath some besynes
in hande, wherfore I wysse myselfe there as the
horne was blowyn with a .C. thousaunde men well
armyd' / he had made no soner his wysse but he was 32
in y^e cyte of Tormont / where as he and his men

¹ Fol. xxiii. back, col. 2. ² possessed. ³ only. ⁴ more.
⁵ than omitted. ⁶ on.

slewe downe the paynymys that it was meruayll to se
 the blode ron downe the stretes lyke a ryuer / kynge
 Oberon made it to be cryed that as many as wolde
 4 receyue baptyme theyr lyues shulde be sau'd / so that
 therby there were many *that* were crysteny'd / than
 kyng Oberon came to the palayes / whan Huon saw
 hym he went and thankyd hym of his socour at that
 8 tyme of nede / 'frende,' quod Oberon, 'as longe as ye
 beleue and do my¹ commaundementes I shall neuer fayle
 to socoure you in all your affayres' / thus all that were
 in the towne and wolde not beleue on² god were slayne /
 12 than the Duke was taken and brought to the palayes to³
 Huon / whan he sawe his vncler taken he was ioyfull,
 and than the Duke sayde / 'fayre nephew, I requyre
 you haue pyte of me' / 'a, vntrew traytour,' quod
 16 Huon / 'thou shalt neuer departe hense alyue, I shall
 neuer respygnt thy dethe' / than with his sworde he
 strake of his vncler hede / than he made his body to be
 hangyd ouer the walles of the towne / that his ylnes
 20 myght alwayes be had in memory, and to be an ensample
 to all other / thus that countre was delyueryd fro that
 traytoure.

Oberon and his men slay all the pagans who refuse to be baptised.

The Duke is delivered into Huon's hands,

who straightway kills him.



¶ How kynge Oberon defendyd⁴ Huon /
 24 that he shulde not go by the toure of the
 gyaunt / to the whiche Huon wolde not
 accorde, but went thether / wherby he was
 in grete daunger of dethe / and of the
 28 damesell that he founde there who was his
 owne cosyn borne in fraunce.

Capitulo .xxxii.

¹ Fol. xxiiii. col. 2. ² in.
³ vnto. ⁴ forbad.



Oberon takes
leave of Huon,

and foretells
misfortune which
his own folly will
bring upon him.

The fairy bids
him avoid the
tower of
Dunother.

For its entrance
is kept by two
men of brass,
always
brandishing iron
sails;

within dwells the
giant Angolafer,
whom none can
resist.

1 E haue well² herd how kyng Oberon
cam and socouryd Huon, & whan all
was done than he sayde to³ Huon, 'my
dere frende, I wyll take my leue of 4
the / for I shall neuer se the agayne
tyll⁴ thou hast sufferyd as moche payne & yll and
pouerte and dyseese that it well be herde to declare it,
and all through thyne owne foly' / whan Huon herde 8
that all⁵ a frayde &⁶ sayde / 'syr, me thynke ye say
grete wronge, for in all thynges to my power I wyll
obserue your commaundement' / 'frende,' quod Oberon,
'sene⁷ thou wylt do so, remembre than thy promes / and 12
I charge the, on⁸ payne of thy lyfe and lesyngre for euer
my loue / that thou be not so hardy⁹ to take the way to
the toure of Dunother / the whiche is a meruelous grete
toure standyng on the see syde / Iulius Cesar causyd 16
it to be made / and there in I was longe¹⁰ norryssyd ;
thou neuer sawest so fayr a toure nor better garnysshyd
with chambers and glase windouse / and with in
hangyd with ryche ¹¹tapestrey / at the entre of the gate 20
there are .ii. men of brasse, eche of them holdyngre in
there handys a flayll of Iren, wher with without sesse
daye and nyght they bete by such a mesure / that
whan the one stryketh with his flayll the other is lyft 24
vp redy to stryke / and they bete¹² so quyckely¹³ / that
a swallow flyyngre can not passe by vnslayn / and with in
this toure there is a Gyaunt namyd Angolafer; he toke
fro me y^o toure and a ¹⁴wyght harnes¹⁴ / of suche vertu 28
that who so euer hath it on his body / can not be hurt
nor wery / nor he can not be drownyd in no water nor
burnyd with fyre / therfore, Huon, my frende, I charge
the go not *that* way as myche as thou feeryst my 32
dyspleysour / for agaynst that Gyaunt *thou* canst make

¹ Fol. xxiii. back, col. 1. ² all. ³ vnto. ⁴ vntill.

⁵ being. ⁶ he. ⁷ seeing. ⁸ vpon. ⁹ as.

¹⁰ time. ¹¹ Fol. xxiii. back, col. 2. ¹² amita.

¹³ suddainly. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ stronge armour.

no resyſtence' / 'ſyr,' quod Huon, 'knowe for trougt
the day that I departyd out of fraunce I toke on¹ me /
that any aduerture that² I myght here² of, though it
4 were neuer so perelous / that I ſhulde³ neuer eſchew it
for any fere of deth / and,⁴ ſyr, I had rather dye than
to for ſake to fyght with that Gyaunt / there is no man
ſhall let me / &, ſyr, I promyſe you or⁵ I retourne
8 agayne to conquere your ſayd⁶ wyght hernes⁶ / it ſhall
do me good ſeruyce here after ; it is a thyng not to
be forſaken ; and yf I nede of your ayed I ſhall blowe
my horne, and ye wyll come and ſocoure me' / 'Huon,'
12 quod Oberon / 'by the lorde that ſauyd me, yf thou
brekeſt the horne in the blowyng thou ſhalt haue noo
ſocoure nor ayed of me' / 'ſyr,' quod Huon, 'ye may
do your pleaſure & I ſhall do myne' / than Oberon
16 departyd without more ſpekyng / and Huon abode in
y^e Cyte, y^e whiche he gauē to Geffrey and to the
prouoſte his hoſte, and all the lond that his vncl
helde / than he made hym redy, and toke gold and
20 ſyluer plente, and tooke his leue of Geffrey & of his
hoſte, and of all other / & ſo he and his company
⁷departyd / and ſo rode ouer hylles & dales nyght and
day a certen ſpace without fyndyng of any aduerture
24 worthy to be had in memory / at laſt he came nere to
the ſee ſyde where as the toure of y^e Gyaunt was ;
whan Huon ſaw it he ſayde to⁸ his company, 'Syr,
yonder I ſe a toure / the whiche was defendyd⁹ me by
28 Oberon / but as god helpe me / or it be nyght I wyll ſe
what ys within it / what ſo euer come therof' / than
Gerames behelde the toure and began to wepe,¹⁰ & ſayd,
'a, Huon, he is a fole *that* agreeth to y^e counsell of a
32 chyld. *ſyr*, for godes ſake beware that ye breke not
the commaundement of kyng Oberon, for &¹¹ ye do

Huon entreates
permission to
approach the
tower and fight
with the giant;

but Oberon
refuſes it,
and angers Huon.

Huon leaves
Tormont,

and after a long
journey ſees the
tower of the giant
by the ſeaſhore.

Huon declares he
will enter it.

His companions
deplore his folly.

¹ vpon. ²⁻² might be heard. ³ would. ⁴ therefore *added*.
⁵ ere. ⁶⁻⁶ ſtrong armour. ⁷ Fol. xxv. col. 1. ⁸ vnto.
⁹ forbidden. ¹⁰ ſorow. ¹¹ if.

But the knight
replies that he has
come to seek
adventures.

Huon takes leave
of his company,

and alone on foot,
carrying his cup
and horn,

he reaches the
castle of
Dunother.

He seeks to avoid
the two men of
brass with their
sails of iron,

and sees a golden
basin tied to a
marble pillar.

Thrice he strikes
it with his sword,
and the sound of
the blows reaches
Sebylle, a damsel
imprisoned in the
fortress.

grete yll is lyke to come to¹ you' / 'syr,' quod Huon,
'yf al the men now lyuyng shulde deffend² me to go
thether, I wolde not obey them / for ye knowe well I
departyd out of Fraunce for none other thyng but to 4
serche the straunge³ aduentures. ⁴I demaunde no thyng
elles but to fynd aduentures / therefore speke no more to
the contrary / for or⁵ I slepe I wyll fyght with the
Gyaunt / for though he be more harder then Iren, 8
⁶I shall sle hym or he me, and you Gerames, and all the
other / abyde you here in this medow tyll⁷ I retourne
agayne.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames, all⁸ wepyng / 'it sore
dyspleasyth me that it wyl be no better, therefore I 12
recommunde you to¹ the sauegard of god' / thus Huon
departyd and left his company / petuosity⁹ complaynyng/
Huon armyd hym¹⁰ and so tooke his way / and kyst all
hys men one after another / & toke with hym his horne 16
and cuppe / so al alone an fote he went forth, and
restyd not tyll⁷ he came to the gate of the castell of
Dunoster. than¹¹ he saw .ii. men of brass that without
seasyng bet with there flaylles / he behelde theym well, 20
and thought it was in a maner impossyble to enter
without deth / ¹²than he had grete meruayll, and sayde
to hym selfe¹² / howe kynge Oberon had shewyd hym
¹³the trouthe, and thought without y^e ayde of the grace 24
of god it were impossyble to enter / than¹⁴ he behelde
all about yf there were any other entre¹⁵ / at last he saw
nere to a pyller of marbell a basyn of gold fast tyed
with a cheyne / than he aprochyd nere ther to and 28
drew out his sworde, wher with he strake thre grete
strokes on the basyn / so that the sounde ther of myght
well be harde in to the castell / within the toure there
was a damesell called Sebylle / whan she harde the 32

¹ vnto. ² forbid. ³ strangest. ⁴ and. ⁵ ere.
⁶ yet. ⁷ vntill. ⁸ in. ⁹ heuilly. ¹⁰ himself. ¹¹ there.
¹²⁻¹³ Then he began to consider hereon with himselfe.
¹³ Fol. xxv. col. 2. ¹⁴ whereuppon.
¹⁵ place to enter.

basyn sowne / she had grete meruayll¹ / than she went to
 a wyndowe / and lokyd out and saw Huon that wolde
 enter. than² she went bake agayne & sayde, 'a, good
 4 lorde, what knyght is yonder without that wold enter ? /
 for yf the Gyaunt awake anone he wylbe slayne / for yf
 there were a .M. knyghtes to gether they shulde³ sone
 be dystroyed suerly. I haue grete desyre for⁴ to knowe
 8 what he is and where he was borne / for as me semyth
 he shulde be of Fraunce to / know the trouthe I wyll
 go to y^e wyndow⁵ to se yf I may haue of hym any
 knowlege' / than she went out of her chambre, and
 12 went to a wyndow nere to the gate / and lokyd out
 and sawe Huon all armyd abydyng at the gate / than
 she behelde the blasure of his shyld, wherin was
 purtruyed .iii. crosses gowlls⁶ / wherby she knew wel
 16 he was of Fraunce. 'Alas,' quod she, 'I am but lost
 yf the Gyaunt knawe that I haue ben here' / than she
 retournyd agayne in hast, & went to the chambre dore
 where as the Gyaunt lay and slept, and she parseyuyd
 20 he was⁷ a slepe, for he rowtyd that it was meuayl to
 here / than she retournyd agayne quykely to the gate ;
 than⁸ she⁹ openyd a wycket, out of the whiche there
 issuyd suche a wynde that it causeth y^e two men with
 24 there flaylles to stonde styll in rest / whan she had
 openyd the wyket hastely she retournyd in to her
 chambre /⁸ whan Huon sawe the lytyll¹⁰ wyket open he
 auaunsyd hymselfe & enteryd, for the two men with
 28 theyr flaylles were in rest / than he went forthe,¹¹
 thynkyng to fynd them that had openyd the wyket,
 but he was sore abasshed when he coude fynde no
 creature / there were so many chambres that he wyst
 32 not wheder to goo to fynde *that* he sought for / thus he
 serched all about /⁸ at last he sawe aboute a pylier

Sebylle sees Huon
 from a window,
 and fears that the
 giant will slay
 him.

She goes to a
 window near
 the gate,
 and perceives
 from his shield
 that the stranger
 is from France.

She finds that
 the giant is
 asleep,

and therefore
 ventures to open a
 wicket which
 causes the men of
 brass to stand at
 rest, and
 repairs again to
 her chamber.

Huon enters
 through the
 wicket,

but marvels to see
 no living creature
 within.

¹ thereat. ² whereuppon. ³ all. ⁴ for omitted.

⁵ againe. ⁶ of gould. ⁷ yet. ⁸ and.

⁹ she omitted. ¹⁰ Fol. xxv. back, col. 1. ¹¹ further.

But he notices the
dead bodies of
fourteen men.
Huon desires
to return,

but finds the
wicket closed and
the men of brass
again in motion.

Sadly he walks
through the
castle,
when he hears the
voice of a damsel
weeping,
and goes to her.

He meets her,
and she tells him
of his danger.

She is, she says,
a niece to Duke
Sevin.

She had
accompanied her
father to the Holy
Sepulchre,

and on their
return they were
shipwrecked on
the coast near the
castle.

The giant had
seen them,
and had slain all
her companions,
but had spared
herself.

.xiii. men lye deed / wher of he had grete meruayll /
and sayd that he wolde retourne backe agayne. than
he went out of the hall and came to the gate, wenyng
to haue founde it open. But it was closyd by it selfe, ⁴
and the men agayne¹ bet with there flaylles. 'Alas,'
quod Huon, 'now I se well I can not skappe fro
hense' / than he retournyd in to the castell & harkenyd,²
and as he went serchyng aboute³ he harde the voyce of ⁸
a damesell peteously wepyng / he came there as she
was, & humbly salutyd her, and sayd / 'fayre damesell,
I can not tell yf ye can vnderstonde my langage or not /
know of you I wolde why⁴ ye make this grete sorow.' ¹²
'Syr,' quod she, 'I wepe by cause I haue of you grete
petye / for yf the Gyaunt here within, who is⁵ a slepe,
hap⁶ go to wake,⁶ ye are but deed and lost.' 'Fayre
lady,' quod Huon, 'I pray you shew me what ye be, ¹⁶
and where ye were borne.' 'Syr,' quod she, 'I am
doughter to Guynemer, who in his tyme was erle of
saynt Omers, & am nese to duke Seun of Burdeux' /
whan Huon harde that ryght humbly he kyssyd her, ²⁰
and sayde / 'dame,⁷ know for trouthe⁸ ye are my nere
kynse woman / for I am sonne to duke Seun; I pray
you shew me what aduenture hath brought you in to
this castell.' 'Syr,' quod she, 'my father had deuocyon ²⁴
to se the holy sepulchre / & he louyd me so well that
he wolde not leue me behynd hym / & as we were on
the see nere to the Cyte of Escalonnee in Surrey, there
rose a grete tempest in⁹ the see / so that y^e wynde ²⁸
brought vs ¹⁰nere to¹¹ this castell / and the Gyaunt beyng
in his toure, sawe vs in greate daunger of drownyng,
and that we were dryuyn in to this porte / he came
downe out of his palayes and slew my father and all ³²
them that were with hym except my selfe, & so

¹ did. ² aboute. ³ carefully. ⁴ wherefore.
⁵ yet. ⁶⁻⁶ to awake. ⁷ Madame. ⁸ that.
⁹ vpon. ¹⁰ Fol. xxv. back, col. 2. ¹¹ vnto.

brought me in to this toure, where as I haue bene this
 .vii. yere ¹and neuer harde one masse¹; & now, cosyn,
 I pray you what aduerture hath brought you hether in
 4 to this straunge countre?' 'Cosyn,' quod he, 'sen² ye
 wyll knowe of myne aduerture / I shall shew you the
 trouthe / kynge Charlemayn hath sent me in message
 to the admyral Gaudyse in Babylon / I bere hym a
 8 message by mouthe & by letters / and as my way lay I
 am come by this toure / and I demaundyd of a paynym
 who was within this toure, and he answeryd me and
 sayd how here shulde be a grete and an orryble Gyaunt
 12 who hath done myche yll³ to them that hath passyd
 this way, and I thought to passe this way to fyght
 with hym and to⁴ dystroy hym, and to delyuer the
 countre of hym / & I haue lefte my company hereby in
 16 a valye to tary for me' / 'dere cosyn,' quod she, 'I
 haue grete meruayll that ye wolde take on you suche a
 foly / for yf ye were .v.C. men to gether well armyd, ye
 durst not all abyde hym yf he were armyd with his
 20 armure / for none can endure agaynst hym / therefore,
 cosyn, I counsell you to retourne backe agayne or he do
 wake, and I shall open you the wyket so *that* ye shall
 passe out without⁵ daunger.'

He had kept her
 captive for seven
 years.

Huon tells
 Sebylle how he is
 on his way to
 Babylon.

but will now fight
 and slay the
 giant.

His cousin warns
 him that five
 hundred men
 could not conquer
 her cruel master,

and bids him
 return whence he
 came.

24 ¶ How the damesell, cosyn to Huon, shewed
 hym the chambre where as the Gyaunt
 slept / and how he went and wakyd hym /
 and of the good armure that the Gyaunt
 28 delyueryd to Huon. Capitulo .xxxiii.

6 **W** Han Huon had well vnderstonde y^e
 damesell, he sayd, 'cosyn, know for
 trouthe, or⁷ I departe hense I wyll se
 32 what man he is / it shall neuer be
 sayd to my reproche in y^e courte of

Huon begs
 permission to see
 the giant.

¹⁻¹ in great distresse and miserie. ² seeing. ³ euill.
⁴ to omitted. ⁵ any. ⁶ Fol. xxvi. col. 1. ⁷ ere.

any prynce / that for fere of a¹ myscreaunt I shulde be
of so faynt a courage that I durst not abyd hym /
certainly I had rather dye than such a faulte shuld
come to me.' 'A, cousyn,' quod she, 'then I se 4
wel both you and I are dystroyed / but sen² it ys
thus, I shall shew you the chambre where as he
slepeth / and whan ye haue sene hym yet³ ye may
retourne / fyrst go in to this chambre that y^e se here 8
before you, wherin ye shall fynde bred and wyne
and other vytayll / & in the nexte ye shall fynde
clothes of sylke and many ryche iuelles / than in the
thyrd chambre ye shall fynde the .iiii. goddes of y^e 12
paynyms, they be all of fyne massye gold ; and in the
fourth ye shall fynde the Gyaunt lyeynge a slepe on a
ryche bed ; than, syr, yf ye ⁴beleue me,⁴ I wolde counsel
you to stryke of his hede slepynge / for yf he awake ye 16
can not skape without deth.' 'Dame,'⁵ quod Huon,
'and god wyll it shall neuer be ⁶layde to my reproche⁶ /
that I shulde stryke any man with out defyaunce.'⁷
Than Huon departyd fro the lady, his sword⁸ in his 20
hande and⁹ helme on his hede, and his shyld aboute
his neke, and so enteryd in to the fyrst chambre, & so³
in to the secounde & thyrd, where as he saw the .iiii.
goddes. When he had wel regardyd them he gauē 24
eche of them a stroke with his sworde / & than he
enteryd in to y^e chambre where as the Gyaunt lay
slepynge / Huon ¹⁰regardyd hym myche¹⁰ / and the bed
that he lay on, the whiche was so ryche / that y^e valew 28
therof coud not be prysyd / y^e curteyns, couerynge / &
pelous were of suche ryches that it was grete beaute to
beholde them. Also the chambre was hangyd with
ryche clothes ¹¹and the flowre coueryd with carpettes / 32
whan Huon had well regardyd all this, & well aduysyd ¹²

Sebylle directs
him to the giant's
chamber,

and advises him
to kill the
monster while
asleep.

Huon declares
he will not be
guilty of such
treachery.

Huon finds
the giant lying
on a richly
furnished bed.

¹ any. ² seeing. ³ then. ⁴⁻⁴ were of my mind.

⁵ Ladie. ⁶⁻⁶ said to my disgrace. ⁷ his knowledge.

⁸ being. ⁹ his. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ noted him aduisedly.

¹¹ Fol. xxvi. col. 2.

¹² considered of.

the Gyaunt, who was .xvii. fote of lengthe, & his body
 furnisshyd thereafter, & al his other membres; but a
 more fouler and hydeous creature was neuer sene / with
 4 a grete hede, &¹ grete eeres, & a comesyd nose / and
 eyen brynyng² lyke a candell. 'A, good lorde,' quod
 Huon / 'I wolde kyng Charlemayn were here to se vs
 two fyght / for I am sure than or³ he departyd my
 8 peace shulde be made with hym. 'A, swete vyrgyn
 mary, I humbly requyre the to be⁴ medyatrix to thy
 swete sonne / to be⁵ my socoure agaynst this ennemye /
 for yf it be not his⁶ pleasure agaynst hym I can not⁷
 12 endure.' Than Huon ferslye auansyd forth & made y⁸
 sygne of the crosse / castynge in his mynde what he
 myght do / for he thought that⁹ yf he slew hym slepyng
 it shulde be a grete reproche to hym, & shulde¹⁰ be sayd
 16 that he had slayne a man deed / and than¹¹ he sayd to
 hym selfe, 'shame haue I yf I touche hym or I haue
 defyed hym' / than Huon cryed out alowde & sayd,
 'aryse, thou hethen hounde, or¹² I shall stryke of thy
 20 hede' / whan the Gyaunt hard Huon speke / he awoke
 fersly, & behelde Huon, & so¹³ rose vp so quykely *that*
 in the rysynge he brast¹⁴ the bedstede that he lay on¹⁵ /
 than he sayd to Huon / 'frende, they that sent the
 24 hether louyd the but lytyll nor doughtyd not me.' And
 whan Huon harde the Gyaunt speke frenche he had
 grete meruayll / and sayd, 'I am come hether to se
 thee / & it may be so that I haue done foly'¹⁶ / than
 28 the Gyaunt sayd / 'thou sayest trouthe / for yf I were
 armyd as thou art .v C. men suche as thou art coude
 not endure¹⁷ / but that ye¹⁸ shulde all dye. But thou
 seest I am nakyd, without sworde or wepyn, yet for all
 32 that I dought the not' / Than Huon thought in hym

He was seventeen
 feet long and of
 hideous aspect.

Huon appeals
 to the Virgin for
 aid,

and then shouts
 to the giant to
 arise,

who awakes in
 wrath, and
 addresses Huon
 in French.

Naked as he is,
 he will slay the
 knight.

1 and omitted. 2 burning. 3 ere. 4-4 Lord god.
 5-5 omitted. 6 thy good. 7 no while. 8 that omitted.
 9 it would. 10 whereupon. 11 else. 12 so omitted.
 13 brake. 14 vpon. 15 it unadulsedly.
 16 me. 17 they.

selfe *that* it shulde¹ be² grete shame to hym to assaile
 a man without armure or wepyn / ³than⁴ he sayd, ' go
 and arme the, or incontynent I shall slee the' / 'frende,'
 quod the Gyaunt, 'this that thou sayest procedeth of a 4
 good courage and of courtesaye.' Than he armyd hym
 and tooke in his hande a greate fauchon, & Huon was
 withdrawen in to the palayes abydyngge for the Gyaunt /
 who taryed not longe, but came to Huon / and sayde, 8
 ' what art thou ? / beholde me here redy to dystroye the
 without thou make good defence / yet I desyre the tell
 me what thou art, to thentent that I may, when I haue
 slayne *thee*, tell how I haue slayne suche⁵ one that by 12
 his foly cam to assayll me in myne owne palays / greate
 pryde it was in *thee* that thou woldest not stryke me or⁶
 I was armyd, ⁷who so euer thou art thou semyst son to a
 noble man. I pray the shew me whether thou woldest 16
 go, and what mouyd the to come hether, to thentent
 that I myght knowe the trouthe of thyn enterpryse,
 that whan I haue slayne the I may make myne auaunt
 to my men that I haue slayne suche a man / that 20
 thought scorne and dysdayne to stryke me or⁶ I was
 armyd.' 'Paynym,' quod Huon / 'thou art in a grete
 foly whan thou⁸ reputyst me but⁹ deed. But sen¹⁰
 thou wylt¹¹ knowe y^e trouthe / I ¹²shewe to the I¹² am 24
 a poore knyght / fro whom kyng Charlemayne hath
 taken his¹³ londes and banyshyd me out of the realme
 of Fraunce / and hath sent me¹⁴ to do a message to the
 Admyrall Gaudys at Babylon / & my name is Huon, 28
 sonne to duke Seun of Burdeux / now I haue shewed
 all y^e trouthe of myne enterpryse / & nowe I pray the
 tell me where thou wert borne, and who engenderyd
 the, to thentent that whan I haue slayne the I may 32
 make myn auaunt in kyng Charles courte and before all

Huon courteously
asks the giant to
arm for fight

The monster rises
and comes to
Huon armed.

He asks him who
he is,

and is somewhat
moved by Huon's
gentle behaviour.

Huon tells his
story,

and inquires
the name of his
adversary.

¹ would. ² a. ³ Fol. xxvi. back, col. 1. ⁴ wherefore.
⁵ a. ⁶ ere. ⁷ but. ⁸ so rashly. ⁹ for.
¹⁰ seeing. ¹¹ wouldst. ¹²⁻¹³ omitted.
¹³ my. ¹⁴ for.

- my frendes that I haue slayne such a greate meruelous¹
 Gyaunt as thou art.' Than the Gyaunt sayd, 'if thou
 slee me thou mayest well make thyn auaunt that² thou
 4 hast slayne Galafer³ the Gyaunt, who hath .xvii. The giant says he
is called Galafer,
and all the land
about is tributary
to him.
 bretherne, of whome I am the yongest. Also thou
 mayest say that vnto y^e drye tree and to the red see /
 there is no man but is trybutayr to me / I haue
 8 chasyd the admiral Gaudis, 'whether as thou woldest
 go,⁴ and haue taken fro hym by puyssaunce dyuers of He has robbed
the Admiral
Gaudysse of many
cities,
 his Cytyes / and he doth me yerely seruage by the
 seruyce⁵ of a ryng of gold to by his hede with all.
 12 Also I toke fro Oberon⁶ this puyssaunt toure, that for and Oberon of the
tower in which he
now lives,
 all his enchauntyng and fayrye coude not resyst me /
 and also I tooke fro hym a ryche harnes⁷; thou neuer and of a suit of
rich armour,
 hardest of suche an nother, for it hath suche vertue that
 16 who so euer can put it on hym⁸ / can neuer be wery nor which renders its
wearer, if he and
his parents have
never sinned,
invulnerable.
 dyscomfytyd. But there is therin⁹ another¹⁰ vertue /
 for he that must were that harnes must be without spot
 of deedly synne, and also his mother must be without
 20 carnall copulasyon with any man except. with her¹¹
 husbonde / I beleue there can not be found any man
 that may were this harnes.⁷ Also it is of suche vertue
 that who so euer hath it on his body can not be greuyd
 24 nother with fyer nor water. By mahound I haue
 prouyd it / and bycause I haue founde such courtesye
 in the that thou gauest me leue to arme me / I¹² gyue He permits Huon,
because of his
courtesy, to
attempt to put
it on.
 the leue to assaye yf thou canst put on that harnes.⁷
 28 ¹³ Than y^e Gyaunt went to a coffer and tooke out
 the harnes,⁷ and came to Huon and sayd / 'lo,¹⁴ here
 is the good harnes,⁷ I gyue the leue to assaye to put
 it on thy body.' Than Huon tooke the harnes⁷ and

¹ maruylous greate. ² Fol. xxvi. back, col. 2.³ Angolofer. ⁴⁻⁴ to whome thou saiest thou goest.⁵ tender. ⁶ the Fayrie King. ⁷ armour. ⁸ omitted.⁹ in it. ¹⁰ especiall. ¹¹ owne. ¹² will.¹³ in regard I know that neither thou nor any knight else
can be able to doe it. ¹⁴ see.

went backe a lytell / and dyd¹ of his owne armure /
 and tooke ²the sayd harnes² and incontinent dyd
 it on his body / than hastily he dyd¹ on his
 helme, and tooke hys shelde and his³ sworde in his⁴
 hande / and deuotely thanked our lorde god of his⁴
 grace. Than the Gyaunt sayd / 'by mahounde / I had
 lytell thought thou hadest ben suche a man / that
 harnes⁵ becomyth the⁶ well ; now⁷ I haue quytt the thy⁸ 8
 courtesye that thou shewydst me / therefore I pray the
 put of y^e harnes,⁵ and delyuer it me agayne' / ⁹'holde
 thy tounge,' quod Huon ; 'god confounde the, it is nede
 for me to haue suche armure⁹ / knowe for trouthe I 12
 but Huon refuses. wyll not render yt agayne for .xiiii. of the best cytyes
 betwene thys and Parys' / 'frende,' quod the Gyaunt,
 'sen¹⁰ thou wylt not render me agayne the armure, I am
 content to let *thee* departe quyte¹¹ without¹² hurte or 16
 damage / and also I wyll gyue the my ryng of golde,
 the whiche the admyrall Gaudys gaue me / for I knowe
 well it shal¹³ stonde the in good stede yf thou thynkest
 to furnyshe thy message / for whan thou comyst to the 20
 gate of his palays, and say how thou art a messenger
 sent fro kinge Charles / thou shalt fynde .iiii. gates, and
 at euery gate .iiii. porters / so *that* at the fyrst gate, yf
 it be knowen thou be a frenche man, one of thy handes 24
 shalbe cut of / and at the seconde gate thy other
 hande / and at the thyrde gate one of thy fete / and at
 y^e fourth the other fote / and than shalt *thou* be
 brought before the admyrall, and there thy hede stryken 28
 of / and therefore, to scape these parelles and to
 furnyshe thy message, and to thentent that thou
 mayest surely retourne / gyue me agayne my harnes,⁵
¹ put. ²⁻² that belonging to the Gyant.
³ his *omitted*. ⁴ this great. ⁵ armour. ⁶ exceeding.
⁷ Fol. xxvii. col. 1. ⁸ thy *omitted*.
⁹⁻⁹ 'Not so, sir, by your leaue,' answered Huon ; 'this
 armure is meeter for me than such a Helhound as thou art,
 therefore.'
¹⁰ seeing. ¹¹ hence. ¹² any. ¹³ will.

Huon finds he is able to wear the armour.

The giant begs him to return it again,

but Huon refuses.


Gafré is discomfited, and bids Huon depart. He promises him also a golden ring,

which can alone give him a safe entry to the Admiral's palace at Babylon;

and I shal gyue the my rynge of golde / the whiche
 whan thou shewyst it thou shalt be reseuyd *with*
 grete honour at euery gate, and than thou mayest goo
 4 and retourne surely in¹ the palays at thy pleasure, and
 no man to let the / for yf thou haddest slayne .v .C.
 men there shalbe none so hardy² to touche the nor to
 do the any yll yf thou hast this rynge vpon³ the / for
 8 whan I haue nede of men or mony I can not lacke yf
 I sende this ryng for a token / therfore I pray the let
 me haue agayne my harnes.⁴

but before he give
 it him he once
 more begs Huon
 to take off the
 armour.

¶ How Huon slew the grete Gyaunt / and
 12 how he called Gerames & his company to
 hym, & of y^e ioy *that* they made for the
 deth of ⁵the Gyaunt. Ca. xxxiiii.

16  Han Huon vnderstode y^e paynym he
 said, 'A, thou fel & false deseyuer,
 know for trouthe yf all y^e prechers
 betwene y^e Est & the west preched
 to me a hole yere, & *that* thou woldest
 20 gyue me al that thou hast, & thy rynge ther with, I wolde
 not render agayne the good harnes⁴ *that* is now on my
 body / fyrst I shall⁶ sle the, & than as for thy rynge *that*
 thou praysest so ⁷sore, than⁷ I wyl⁸ haue it, whether thou
 24 wylt or not' / whan y^e Gyaunt had well harde Huon,
 & sawe *that* he⁹ in no wyse coude gette agayne his
 harnes,⁴ he was than sorowfull / and also¹⁰ he sawe how
 Huon reprayd hym / therwith he was so sore dys-
 28 pleasyd *that* his eyen semyd like .ii. candelles byrn-
 ynge¹¹ / than he yet demaundyd of Huon yf he wold
 do none other wyse. 'no, trewly,' quod Huon, 'though
 thou be greate & stronge / I haue no fere of y^e, sen¹²
 32 I haue on this good harnes,⁴ therefore in the name of

Huon reproaches
 the giant with
 treachery,
 and challenges
 him.

The giant grows
 angry.

¹ to. ² as. ³ about. ⁴ armour. ⁵ Fol. xxvii. col. 2.
⁶ omitted. ⁷⁻⁷ much. ⁸ likewise. ⁹ he after wyse.
¹⁰ because. ¹¹ burning candelles. ¹² seeing.

god & of his deuyne puissaunce I defye *the* / ' & I
 the, ¹quod¹ Gyaunt / ' for al ²thy harnes² *thou* canst not
 endure astaynst me' / than y^e Gyaunt aprochyd to
 Huon & lyft vp his fauchon, thynkinge to haue stryken ⁴
 Huon³ / but he fayled ; ⁴y^e stroke glent, & the fauchon
 lyght vpon a pyller & enteryd in to it more than .ii.
 fote / than Huon, who was quycke & lyght, behelde⁵ y^e
 meruelous stroke, quyckly he⁶ stept forth with his ⁸
 good sword in his handes, regardyng how the Gyaunt
 had his fauchon stycking fast in the pyller / he strake
 y^e Gyaunt on both y^e armes nere to his handes in such
 wyse *that* he strake of both his handes, so *that* they ¹²
 with y^e fauchon fell downe to the erth / whan y^e
 Gyaunt felt hys selfe so sore hurte, for⁷ payne therof
 he gaue a meruelous crye, so horryble as though all y^e
 toure had fallen to y^e erth, werof y^e damesell Sebyll, ¹⁶
 beyuge in her chambre, was sore abasshyd / she went
 out of her chambre & founde a staffe by the way. She
 toke it vp in her handes, & came to the palays where
 as she harde y^e ⁸crye, & met y^e Gyaunt fleying away ²⁰
 to saue hyselife / but y^e damesell well adusyd whan
 she sawe *that* he fled / she caste y^e staffe betwene his
 leges, so *that* therby he fell to y^e erth / & Huon, who
 came *after* hym with his sworde in his hande / he hastyd ²⁴
 hym, & gaue y^e Gyaunt many a grete stroke / & the
 Gyaunt cryed out so hys *that* it was ⁹grete meruayle⁹ to
 here hym / than Huon lyft vp his sworde & gaue hym
 suche a stroke in the necke *that* his hede flew to the ²⁸
 erth ; than Huon wpyyd his sworde and put it vp in¹⁰
 the sheth ; than¹¹ he cam to y^e hede, thynkyng to haue
 taken it vp ¹¹to haue set it on the heyght of y^e
 toure / but the hede was so grete & heuy *that* he ³²
 coude not remoue it nor tourne his¹² body ; than

and the fight
begins.

Galafre's first
stroke misses its
aim, and his
weapon is fixed
fast in a pillar.

While he tries
to release it,
Huon strikes off
his hands.

The giant cries
aloud and flees
before the knight.

Sebylle, roused
from her chamber
by the shouting,

meets Galafre
running, and
flings a staff
between his legs,
so that he falls.

Huon comes up
with him

and strikes off
his head,

which is so
heavy that he
cannot lift it up.

¹ the. ²⁻² the armour. ³ him. ⁴ for.
⁵ beholding. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ with. ⁸ Fol. xxvii. back, col. 1.
⁹⁻⁹ very terrible. ¹⁰ to. ¹¹ and. ¹² the.

- he smyled & sayd, 'A, good lorde, I thanke y^e of thy grace ¹to haue¹ gyuen me y^e puyssaunce to sle such a creature; wold to god *that* this body & hede were
- 4 now in the palays of Parys before Charlemayne, kinge of fraunce, so *that* he knewe *that* I haue slayn hym' / than Huon went to a wyndow & lokyd out & saw where his company were / than he sayd to them, a²
- 8 hye, 'syr, come vp heder; ye may do it surely, for this palays is wozne / and y^e Gyaunt slayne' / whan Gerames & ³Garyn & the other harde *that* they were ioyfull & thanked our lorde god / than they cam to y^e gate / &
- 12 sebyll, y^e damesell, went thyder & openyd y^e wycket, wherby the enchauntement faylled / than they enteryd & foolowyd y^e damesell, who brought them in to y^e palais to Huon. ⁴whan they saw hym they all wept for
- 16 ioy / & enbrasyd & kyssyd hym, & demaundyd yf he had any hurt / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I thanke god I fele no hurt;' & than he brought them there⁵ as y^e gyaunt lay deed / whan they saw hym they had
- 20 meruayle how he coude be slayne by Huon; they were afrayed to se hym lye deed / than Gerames demaundyd of Huon what was the damesell *that* was there / than⁴ Huon shewyd how she was his cosyne, & shewyd them
- 24 all y^e maner how she cam theder, wherof they had greate ioy & enbrasyd her / than they all vnarmyd them⁶ & went to supper, & ete & dranke at there⁷ pleasure / but there ioy enduryd not longe, as ye shall
- 28 here⁸ after.

From a window
Huon calls to his
company.

Sebylle opens
the wicket for
them to enter.

Huon tells his
friends how he is
unhurt

and they sup
together merrily.

¶ How Huon departyd fro the castell of the Gyaunt, & toke leue of his company & went alone a fote to y^e see syde, where as he

32 founde Malabron of *that*⁹ fayre, on whom he mountyd to passe the see. Ca. xxxv.

¹⁻¹ that thou hast. ² on. ³ & omitted. ⁴ and. ⁵ where. ⁶ selues. ⁷ Fol. xxvii. back, col. 2. ⁸ heare. ⁹ the.



Huon bids his company remain with the damsel in the castle while he proceeds to Babylon. If he comes not back in fifteen days they are all to return to France.

They declare they will tarry for him a whole year.

Huon takes leave of them, and goes to the seashore.

E haue hard here before how Huon conqueryd y° Gyaunt, the which was grete ioy to al his company / than the next day Huon called ¹al his company¹ 4 & said, 'syrs, ye know well y° enterpryse that I haue taken on me to do touchinge y° admyrall Gaudys / therfore it is conuenient that as shortly as I can to do my message that I am chargyd 8 by kinge Charles to do to y° admyrall Gaudys, wherfore I desyre you al to kepe good and trew company with this noble damesell / & also I requyre you to tary me here .xv. dayes, & than yf I retourne not go 12 you al in to fraunce, & take this noble damesell with you, & salute fro me kinge Charlemayn & all the peres of fraunce, & shew them the hard aduentures that I haue had, & how I am gone to performe hys message' / 16 whan his company vnderstode that he wolde departe they were sorowfull, & sayd / 'syr, ye desyre vs to tary you here a .xv. dayes / knowe for trouthe we shal tary here fore you an hole yere.' 'syrs,' quod he, 'I 20 thanke you' / than he made hym redy to departe, & armyd hym, & tooke his cuppe & horne, & also y° Gyauntes ringe, the whiche he dyd² put aboute his arme / & than he kyst his cosyn & al y° other / and 24 they all made gret lamentaayon for his departyng / than they went vp in to y° palais & lokyd out at y° wyndowes after Huon as long as they myght se hym / Huon went forth tyll he cam to the se syde, y° whiche 28 was not farre fro y° castel, & there was a lytell hauen where as al wayes³ lay sum maner of shyppe or wessell to passe ouer y° see / & whan Huon cam thether ⁴he had grete meruayle, & sayd,⁴ 'A, good 32

¹⁻¹ them all together. ² did.

³ was wont to.

⁴⁻⁴ though nowe at this instant there was none at all. Finding no means for passage, he said.

lorde, what shal I do *that* I can fynd here no bote
 nor¹ vessell to passe in ? / alas, in an yll owre I slewe
²Charlot, wherby I am³ in daunger ; howbeit I dyd it in
 4 'my⁴ defence : grete wronge⁵ kinge Charles hathe done
 to banyshe me out of myne owne countre' / grete⁶ com-
 pleyntes made Huon there, beynge alone, & began sore
 to wepe / &⁷ sodenly on his ryght hande he saw a grete
 8 beast come swymmyng towardes hym / lyke a beer /
 Huon behelde hym & made on his hed⁸ a sygne of y⁹
 crosse / & drew out his sword to defende hym selfe,⁹
 thynkyng y⁹ beast wolde haue assayled hym / but he
 12 dyd not / but went a lytell of fro Huon, & shoke hym
 selfe in such wyse *that* his skyn fell of, and than he
 was as fayre a man & as well fourmyd as coude be
 seen / than Huon had grete fere & meruayle / whan he
 16 saw *that* this beast was become a man,¹⁰ he aprochyd
 nere to hym, and demaundyd what he was, & whether he
 were an humaine creature or elles an yll speryt *that* was
 come theder to tempt hym / & sayd, ' ryght nowe thou
 20 dydest swym in y⁹ see, & trauesyd y⁹ grete waues in
 gyse of a meruelous beast ; I charge *thee* in y⁹ name of
 god¹¹ do me no hurt / and⁷ shew me what *thou* art / ¹²I
 beleue *thou* art of kynges Oberons company' / ' Huon,'
 24 quod he, 'dysmay *thou* not, I knowe the ryght well ;
thou art sonne to ¹³y⁹ noble¹³ duke seyn of Burdeux /
 noble¹⁴ kynges Oberon hathe sent me to *thee* / ones
¹⁵I¹⁵ brake his commaundement, wherfore he hath con-
 28 dempynd me to be this .xxx. yere lyke a best in y⁹
 see.' 'frend,' quod huon, 'by y⁹ lorde *that* fourmyd me
 I wyll trust *thee* tyll I be passyd y⁹ red see' / ' Huon,'
 quod Mallabron, 'knowe for trouthe / I am sent hether
 32 for none¹⁶ other thyng¹⁷ / but to bere the wheder as¹³
thou wylt / therfore make y⁹ redye / & recommaunde

He sees no vessel
to take him across
the sea,

and laments his
hard fate,

when he sees an
animal like a bear
swimming
towards him,

whose skin falls
off and reveals a
handsome man.

Huon is stricken
with wonder, and
asks him who
he is.

The man replies
that Oberon has
sent him, and
that because of
his sin he has
been condemned
to be for thirty
yeres a beast of
the sea.

He is to bear
Huon whither
he will.

¹ or. ² Fol. xxviii. col. 1. ³ thus still. ⁴⁻⁴ mine owne.

⁶ therefore. ⁶ These and the like. ⁷ but. ⁸ himselfe.

⁹ as. ¹⁰ yet. ¹¹ thou. ¹² for. ¹³⁻¹³ omitted.

¹⁴ Royall. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ it happened me to. ¹⁶ no. ¹⁷ cause.

His name is
Malabron.

thy selfe to y^e saue garde of oure lorde Ihesu Cryst, & than let me alone' / than Mallabron enteryd agayne in to y^e beestys skyn / & said to huon / 'sir, mount on¹ my backe.'

4

¶ How Huon passyd y^e see vpon Mallabron, who bare hym to Babylon / & how Huon cam to y^e fyrst gate, & so to y^e .ii.

Ca. .xxxvi. 8

He enters the sea
and assumes
again an animal's
form.



Huon leaps on his
back and travels
swiftly up the
Nile.

At length he
reaches land.

Malabron says
that to serve him
he will have to
remain a sea-
monster for ten
years longer.

How Huon saw y^e beest enter agayne in to his skyn, & that he taryed for² / he made y^e signe of the ³crosse. And prayed god to saue & condute hym, & 12 so lept vp on hym ; & y^e beest enteryd in to y^e see, & swamme as fast as though a byrd had flowyn, so that with in a shorte spase he trauessyd y^e grete ryuer of Nile, the whiche commyth fro paradyce, 16 the⁴ whiche is a daungerous ryuer for the grete⁵ multitude of serpentes & cocodrylles that be ther in / how be it there were none that dyd hym any trouble / than whan they cam to lond, Huon was joyfull / than⁴ 20 Mallabron sayd / 'ryght derely shall I abyge the tyme that thou wert borne, or that euer I knewe the ; for thentent to do the pleasure I shal endure yet .x. yere lyke a beest in the see, & .xxx. yere I haue⁶ so all 24 redy, so that⁷ is in al .xl.⁸ I haue grete pyte of thee / for there is no man borne of a woman that knoweth y^e yll & pouerte that shall fall here after to thee / & I shall suffer myche for the loue that I haue to thee ; howbe it 28 I shal take it in pasyence / yonder thou mayst se y^e cyte whether thou woldest go, morouer, thou knowyst what hath ben commaundyd thee / & what thou hast to do, & yet what so euer fall, breke not y^e commaunde- 32

¹ vpon. ³ him. ³ Fol. xxviii, col. 2. ⁴ and.
⁵ omitted. ⁶ been. ⁷ my time. ⁸ yeeres.

ment of kinge Oberon / & alwayes be trew & say y^e trouthe, for as sone as *thou* makest any ly *thou* shalt lese¹ the loue of kinge Oberon / thus god be *with* the, for
 4 I may no lenger tary' / thus² he went agayne *in* to the see, & Huon taryed there alone, recommaundyng hymselfe to our lord god, & so toke the way to the cytye / & so³ enteryd *in without* let of any man : as² sone as
 8 he was enteryd, he met a .M. paynems goynge a hawkynge / & a nother .M. cominge homwarde / & a .M. horses let to be new shode / & a .M. comynge fro shoynge / than he sawe a .M. men plaing at the chesse,
 12 & a nother .M. *that* had played & been matyd / & a nother .M. talkinge & deusinge *with* the⁴ dameselles / & a nother .M. cominge fro drinking of the admyralles wyne, & a nother .M. going thether / whan
 16 huon al armyd had gone a grete spase *in* the cyte he had grete meruayle of *that* he had seen &⁵ met ⁶so myche⁶ people / ⁷he studyed theron so mych *that* he forgot the gyautes ryng on his arme / & the men *that*
 20 he mett had grete meruayle ⁸of hym to se hym go al armyd a fote / ⁹he went styll forth.¹⁰ Alas, y^e¹¹ vnhappy Huon, *that* coulde not remembre the Gyautes ryng aboute hys arme, for lake of remembraunce therof /
 24 he sufferyd after so myche trouble *that* ther is no humayne tounge can tell it, as ye shall here¹² after. At last he *cam in* to a grete plase before y^e fyrst gate of the palays, where as there stode a grete vyne tree set
 28 vpon brycke pyllers of dyuers coulours, vnder y^e whiche y^e admyrall Gaudys one day *in* the weke wolde come thether, & wold gyue audyence to al sewters. whan Huon had regardyd al this / he *cam* to y^e fyrst
 32 gate of y^e palays ; than¹³ he cryed to y^e porter & sayd /

He warns Huon to obey Oberon's command, and never tell a lie.

Huon goes toward the city of Babylon,

and meets many men of the country on their several errands.

The knight studies the strangers' aspect, and forgets the giant's ring.

The first gate of the palace is reached,

and Huon calls to the porter to open it.

¹ loose. ² So. ³ there. ⁴ omitted. ⁵ that he had.
⁶⁻⁸ such multitude of. ⁷ And. ⁸ Fol. xxviii. back, col. 1.
⁹ and yet. ¹⁰ forward. ¹¹ poore. ¹² here.
¹³ and there.

'frende, I pray the open the gate.' than¹ the porter sayd with a good wyll / 'yf thou be a sarazyn *thou shalt enter.*' Than Huon as vnaduysyd,² without² thinkynge on kynge Oberons commaundement, or of y^e gyauntes⁴ ringe about his arme, the whiche yf he had shewyd forth he shold not haue nedid to haue made any ly.

In answer to the man, Huon says he is a Saracen, and thus gains admission.



Han huon³ harde the paynym demande whether he were a sarasyn,⁴ he sayd, 8 'ye' / than the porter sayd, 'than may ye surely enter' / so Huon passyd the fyrst brydge & gate /

When he comes to the second gate, the knight bethinks him of the lie he has told, and how he has broken Oberon's command.

and whan he came to the seconde he remembred hym¹² selfe how he had broken kynge Oberons commaundement / wher *witli* he was so sorowfull at his herte *that* he wyst not what to do, and sware than *that* he wolde neuer lye more / than he toke the rynge in his hande¹⁶ and came to the secounde gate, and sayd / to the porter, 'thou vylayne, he *that* on the crosse dyed⁵ confounde the / open this gate / for I must enter' / whan y^e porter harde hym speke so fersly, he sayd / 20 'how is it that the fyrst porter was so hardy to suffer the⁶ to enter in at the fyrst gate?' 'I shall shew the,' quod Huon / 'seest not thou this rynge, the whiche is a token that I may passe and go where as me lyst?' / 24 whan the porter harde hym and saw the rynge, he knewe it well, & sayd, 'syr, ye be welcome / how fayreth y^e lord⁷ that ye come fro?' Huon, who wolde not lye, passid the brydge and gawe no answer, & so 28 cam to y^e thyrd gate / ⁸the porter came to hym, and Huon shewyd hym the rynge / than y^e porter lette downe the brydge and openyd the gate, and with greate reuerence salutyd Huon and sufferyd hym to passe / 32 whan Huon was thus passyd the thre br[y]dges, than he

To the second porter he shows the giant's ring,

and is at once admitted,

and to the keeper of the third gate he does the same, and passes on.

¹ And. ²⁻² and forgetting himselfe, and not once.
³ hee had. ⁴ or no. ⁵ died after that. ⁶ omitted.
⁷ Fol. xxviii. back, col. 2. ⁸ where.

remembered how he had made a lye at the fyrst bridge /
 and sayd to hymselfe, 'Alas! what shall become of
 me, sen¹ I haue so lyghtly broken my promys to hym
 4 that hathe done so myche for me? / alas! I forgat y^e
 ring that was aboute myne arme. how be it, I trust
 that Oberon wyll not be dyspleasyd for it, sen¹ I dyd it
 not wyfully, but that I forgat it / I trust he wyll take
 8 no more regarde to this dede then he dyd whan I blew
 the horne without any cause' / thus Huon passyd the
 thre gates of the palys.

Huon fears
Oberon's wrath.

¶ How Huon passyd y^e fourth gate, & how
 12 he cam in to the garden, where as was y^e
 founteyne, & of *that*² he dyd there.

Ca. xxxvii.

16 **W**han Huon saw³ he was⁴ passyd the .iii.
 gates, he passyd⁵ y^e fourth gate with
 y^e ryng in his hande / for he mette
 with no man but *that*⁶ dyd hym
 honour whan they saw y^e ryng / than
 20 he sayd to y^e fourth porter, 'thou vylayne porter, ⁷god
 curse *thee*,⁷ open the gate' / when y^e porter harde hym
 he had grete meruayll / & sayd, 'what art thou *that*
 art armyd & spekest so fersly to me? Lay away thyne
 24 armure, & than shew me what thou art, & whether
 thou wylt go / for, armyd as *thou* art, it is not possyble
 for *thee*⁸ to enter / shew me by thy fayth how hast
 thou passyd y^e .iii. other brydges' / than Huon sayd,
 28 'holde thy peace, paynym. I am a messenger sent fro
 noble kynge Charlemayne / & whether thou wylt or
 not, I wyl passe this way & go to y^e palays to y^e
 admyrall Gaudys / there is nother *thou* nor none
 32 other can⁹ let me. beholde this token *that* I shew
thee.' the paynym knew it anone, and lete down

Huon reaches the
fourth gate.

He tells how he
has come from
Charlemagne,

¹ seeing. ² which. ³ that. ⁴ had. ⁵ went on to.
⁶ still. ⁷⁻⁷ I charge thee fourthwith. ⁸ omitted. ⁹ shall.

and at the sight
of the ring the
porter opens
the gate.

The man says
that the Admiral
will receive Huon
right royally
when he sees
that token.

Huon goes
onwards,

reproaching
himself with the
lie he told at the
first gate.

He enters the
Admiral's garden.

In its midst was
a fountain which

cured the sick

and made the old
young again.

¹the bryge, and openyd the gate, and kuelede doune
& kyssyd & enbrassyd Huons² legge / desyrynge
hym of³ pardon in that he had causyd hym to tary so
long / 'paynym,' quod Huon, 'good day mayst thou ⁴
haue.' 'Syr,' quod the porter, 'ye may go to the
admyrall, who wyll make you good chere & grete
honour, nor⁴ there is no thynges *that* ye can desyre but
it shalbe grauntyd to⁵ you / ye, &⁶ it be his all onely ⁸
doughter, for loue of y^e lorde fro whom ye brynge this
rynge to⁴ a token; and, syr, I requyre you how doth
the lord Angalaffer? comyth he hether or not?'
'porter,' quod Huon, 'yf he come hether, all y^e deuyles ¹²
of hell must brynge hym hether;' & therwith he passeth
forth without any mo wordes / but he sayd to hym
selfe, 'a, good lorde Ihesu Cryst, helpe & ayde me in all
my besynes / I was temptyd *with* an yll⁷ spryte whan ¹⁶
I made a⁸ lee at y^e fyrst gate / I dyd it by lyghtnes of
courage and⁴ lake of remembraunce, wherof I am now⁹
ryght sorye' / Huon thus beyng in dyspleasure *with*
hym selfe for the lye *that* he¹⁰ made, went forth tyll ²⁰
he came to the palays, and enteryd in to a fayre garden
wherin the admyrall tooke often tymys his pastaunce,¹¹
for there coude no tree nor freute nor flower be wyshed
for but ther they myght be found, both in somer & ²⁴
wynter / & in the myddes of this garden there was a
fayre founteyne *commynge* out of y^e ryuer Nile *that*
commyth from paradyce, the whiche founteyne as than
was of such vertue / *that* yf any sycke man dyd drynke ²⁸
therof, or wasshyd his handes & face,¹² incontynent¹³
shulde be hole / & also yf a man had bene of grete age
he shulde retourne agayne to the age of .xxx. yere /
and ¹⁴a woman¹⁴ to become as freshe & lusty as a mayde ³²
of .xv. yere / this founteyne had *that* vertue¹⁵ y^e spase

¹ Fol. xxix. col. 1. ² his. ³ of him *after* pardon. ⁴ for.
⁵ vnto. ⁶ if. ⁷ euill. ⁸ the. ⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ had.
¹¹ pastime. ¹² therin. ¹³ he. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ old women. ¹⁵ by.

of .lx. yere / but .x. yere after *that* Huon had ben there *that*¹ was dystroyed and broken by y^e Egypsyence, who made warre to² the admyrall *that* was as than in

4 Babylon. ³And whan Huon had wasshyd his handes & face in y^e founteyne, & dronke of y^e water / he behelde the palays, & thought it meruellously fayre / & whan he had well regardyd it, he saw a lytell besyde

8 the founteyne a grete serpent, who kept the founteyne, to the entent *that* none shulde be so hardy to drynke nor⁴ touche the founteyne / for yf a traytore or any man *that* hath falsyd his fayth dyd touche it he coude not

12 scape without deth / but whan the serpent saw Huon, he inclynyd hymselfe without makynge of semblant to do hym any yll / than⁵ Huon sat downe by the founteyne & began ⁶peteously to wepe,⁶ & sayd, 'a, good

16 lorde, without thy socoure it is impossyble for me to departe hense alyue. A, noble kynge Oberon, forsake me not now in this nede / for the trespas *that* I haue done ought to be forgyuen me, sen⁷ I dyd it neclygenly

20 for lake of remembraunce / certainly I wyll knowe yf for so small a cause ye wyll leue me / wherfore, what so euer fall, I shall proue & assay to know y^e trouthe / than he toke his horne & blewe it so fersly / *that* kynge

24 Oberon harde it, beynge in his forest / & whan he hard it he sayd / 'A, good lorde,' ⁸quod he,⁵ 'I here the false knyght blow his horne, who settyth so lytell by me / for at the fyrst gate *that* he passyd⁸ he made a false

28 lye / by y^e lorde *that* formyd me, yf he blowe tyll y^e waynes in his neke ⁹breast a⁹ sonder, he shall not be socouryd for me / nor for no¹⁰ maner of myschyeffe *that* may fall to hym.' Than Huon, beynge in y^e garden,

32 blew so sore¹¹ / *that* y^e admyrall, who was set at his dyner, rose fro y^e borde with all his lordes / & al

Huon washes his hands and drinks of the fountain,

which is kept by a serpent that destroys all false men.

But it does not touch the knight.

Huon prays to Oberon for help,

and blows his horn. The fairy hears it, and declares he will not succour him because he has lied.

The Admiral and his attendants hear the blast

¹ it. ² on. ³ Fol. xxix. col. 2. ⁴ or.
⁵ omitted. ⁶⁻⁶ greuouslye to lament. ⁷ seeing.
⁸ by. ⁹⁻⁹ burst in. ¹⁰ any. ¹¹ lowde.

while at dinner
within the palace,
and begin to
dance and sing.

The Admiral
asserts that some
enchanter has
found his way
into the garden,
and bids his
servants find him
and bring him
into his presence.

Meanwhile Huon,
perceiving Oberon
will not listen to
him, bitterly
grieves over his
desertion.

other ladyes & dameselles, knyghtes & squyers / boyes
& squylyons of y^e kechyn / & all other came in to y^e
palays to y^e admyral, & began to daunse & synge &
made grete ioy. the sorer¹ *that* Huon blew his horne, 4
y^e more they daunsyd & sange. And whan Huon left
blowyng, than y^e admyrall called his barons & com-
maundyd them to be armyd / and sayd, ² 'syrs, go in
to this gardyne, for suerly there is sum enchaunter / 8
therefore take hede that he scape not, and bryng hym
alyue to me, for I wyll know of hym the cause why he
hath done this dede / for yf *that* he eskape he shall³ do
vs more yll' / whan Huon had blowyn a longe spase 12
and saw no body come to hym, he was sore abasshyd.⁴
than he began to wepe,⁵ and sayd, 'A, good lorde god,
now I se well myn ende aprocheth, when kynge
Oberon fayleth me, in whom I haue all my trust in lyfe 16
and deth. A, dere lady mother, & brother Gerardyn, I
shall neuer se you more. A, noble kynge Charle-
mayne, grete wrong ye haue done to me thus to
banyshe me *with* out deserte / for that / *that* I dyd, 20
was in my defence / god forgyue it you. A, kynge
Oberon, well *thou* mayest be reputyd for an vnkynde
creature, thus to leue me for on smal faulte. certesly
yf thou be a noble man I hope *thou* wyll pardon me / 24
at leste I put all to god, & to hym I submytte me ⁶&
to the blyssyd vyrgyn mary his mother.⁶ And what so
euer fall, I wyll enter in to the palayes and do my
message that kynge Charlemayn hath commaundyd me 28
to do' / so he made hym redye and departyd fro the
founteyne / thynkynge he shulde fynde the admyrall
at dyner at that owre.⁷

¹ more. ² Fol. xxix. back, col. 1. ³ will. ⁴ and.
⁵ lament. ⁶⁻⁶ omitted ⁷ time.

¶ How Huon came in to the palayes and dyd
 his message to the admyrall / & how he
 slew many paynyns / and¹ after² taken
 4 and set³ in pryson. Ca. xxxviii.



8 Han Huon had ben a certen spase at
 the founteyne / he departyd all armyd
 & mountyd vpe the grese⁴ of the
 palayes the same tyme the admyrall
 had causyd .ii. of his princypall
 goddes to be set in y^e myddes⁵ of the palayes, rychely
 besene,⁶ & before them two grete torches byrnyngs⁷ / so
 12 that no sarasyn passyd by them but made to them
 grete reuerence / and⁸ Huon passyd by them and wolde
 not ones loke on them, nor speke to no man *that* he
 mette / wherof they had⁹ grete meruayll, & sayd
 16 one to another, so *that* Huon¹⁰ harde them / ¹¹one of
 them sayd,¹¹ ' I beleue this man *that*¹² thus enteryd in
 to y^e palayes all armyd is sum messenger sent fro sum
 greate prynce to y^e admyrall ' / & than Huon sawe a
 20 paynym kyng^e spekyng to y^e admyrall / &¹² was
 newly come to y^e admyrall, by cause *that* same day y^e
 admyrall Gaudys shulde haue delyueryd to hym his
 doughter, y^e fayre Esclaramonde, in maryage / & Huon
 24 saw wel how he was y^e gretest prynce *that* as than was
 there *with* y^e admyrall / *than* Huon sayd to hymselfe,
 ' A, good lorde, yf I acqyutte my selfe trewly to kinge
 Charlemayn / I must slee this paynyn kyng^e / I
 28 thynke it be he *that* I loke for, sen¹³ he syteth so nere
 to y^e admyrall / god confound me but incontynent I
¹⁴stryke of his hede / ¹⁵than let our lorde Ihesu Cryst
 do *with* me at his pleasure ' / than Huon came nere to
 32 y^e table / & drew out his sword, & there *with* gau^e ¹⁶the

Huon at length
 mounts the steps
 leading into the
 palace.

He speaks to no
 man as he walks
 in.

Beside the
 Admiral sits a
 paynym king,

who has come to
 woo the fair
 Esclaramonde.

¹ was. ² afterward. ³ put. ⁴ degrees.
⁵ Fol. xxix. back, col. 2. ⁶ adorned. ⁷ burning.
⁸ but. ⁹ all. ¹⁰ easily. ¹¹⁻¹¹ omitted. ¹² who.
¹³ seeing. ¹⁴ will. ¹⁵ and. ¹⁶ Fol. xxx. col. 1.

Huon draws his sword and strikes off the monarch's head.

The Admiral orders Huon's arrest.

He is attacked on all sides, but his armour protects him.

He shows the ring to the Admiral,

who, on seeing it, bids no man lay hand on the knight,

and tells him he may do in his palace what he will.

Huon kisses Esclarmonde thrice,

sayd kynge suche a stroke that his hede fell on the table, so that the admyrall was therwith all bloody. Than Huon with a hye voyce sayde, 'A, good lorde, what a good begynnyng is this / the rest I remyt to 4 our lorde Ihesu Cryst, whom I requyre to ayde me to performe y^e reste of myne enterpryse / in this poynt I haue nere quytte my selfe agaynst kynge Charlemayne.' Than the admyrall sayd to his barons / 'take this man 8 that hath done me this offence as to murder this kynge syttinge at my table / yf he escape, loke me neuer in the face' / than the paynyms assayllyd Huon on all sydes, and cast at hym dartes & swordes to haue slayne 12 hym. But his good hernes¹ sau'd hym fro the deth / & with his sworde he slew many a fell² paynym, so that none durst aproche nere hym / whan he saw *that* he was sore oppressyd, he tooke his rynge³ of his arme 16 & cast it on the table before the admyrall, & sayd / 'syr admyrall, be ware on payne of thy lyfe of doynge to me any hurt or damage, by this token that I shew the' / whan the admyrall saw the rynge, he knew it 20 well / than he began to crye / that no man shulde be so hardy as to touche hym *that* hath slayne the paynym kynge / than⁴ euery man let Huon in rest / wher of he was ryght ioyfull / than he sayd to y^e admyrall, 'Syr, 24 I wyll fro hense forth⁵ thou do as I commaunde *thee*' / 'frende,' quod the admyrall, 'thou mayst do in my palayes what thou wylt / what soeuer thou commaunde shalbe done, no man shall say the contrary.' Than 28 Huon saw where his daughter, y^e fayre Esclaramonde, sat by her father ; than⁴ Huon went to her / & kyst her .iii. tymys before her father, wher of⁶ the damesell was sore abasshyd ; but she saw hym so fayre, & felte his 32 mouth so swete / that she thought, without she myght haue hym to her loue, she sholde dye for sorow / so *that* she chaunged couloure & blusshyd as ruddye as a

¹ armor. ² bolde. ³ from. ⁴ and. ⁵ that. ⁶ at.

rose / ¹whan Huon had kyssyd y^e lady / than he went
to the admyrall, & sayd / 'syr admyrall, know for
trouthe² I am crystenyd / & am a messenger sent fro
4 noble kynge Charlemayne to the / by cause there is no
prynce, crysten nor hethen / but *that* obeyeth his
commaundementes, except thy selfe, therefore by me he
sendeth *thee* worde / that sen³ the dolowrous day of
8 batayll at Ronceuall,⁴ where as he lost his .ii. neuewe /
Rowlaunde & Olyuer, he neuer sens assembled so
myche people as he wyll do this next somer to come
vpon *thee*, both by water and by londe, without thou
12 wylt beleue in y^e law of Jhesu Cryst; therefore, yf thou
wylt beleue me, be cristened or⁵ this myschiefe⁶ fall
vpon the.' 'Speke no more of *that*,' quod y^e admyrall /
'for I had rather be hewen and slayne than to leue
16 my law to⁷ beleue vpon thy god.' 'Syr admyrall,'
quod Huon, 'more ouer kyng Charles commaundeth
y^e to sende hym an .M. sparhawkes, ⁸M. goshawkes,
⁸M. beeres, & a .M. wayters enchainyd together; ⁸M.
20 yonge varlettes, ⁸M. fayre dameselles / and also a
handfull of thy berde, & .iiii. of thy grete teth.' 'A,'
quod y^e admyrall / 'I se *thou* arte hardy & outragious
to demaund of me this *that* thou hast sayd. And also
24 I haue grete meruayll of thy mayster *that* he is so
foolysse⁹ to commaunde me by *thee* to send hym my
berde & grete teth / or¹⁰ this tyme he hath sent me mo
than .xv. messengers, & hath demaundyd parte of this¹¹
28 thou spekest of / but all .xv. hath ben hangyd, &¹²
thou art come by thy folly, ¹³shalt make¹³ the .xvi. But
by reason of the ryng *that thou* berest we dare not
touch *thee*. But I pray the,¹⁴ by the fayth & law *that*
32 *thou* art of, shew me what deuell hath gyuen *thee* that
rynge' / than Huon, sore abasshyd as he that dorst not

and, addressing
the Admiral, says
that Charlemagne
has sent him,

and unless the
monarch promises
him fealty and
will be converted,
the Emperor will
make war upon
him with a
mighty host.

The Admiral
refuses to become
a Christian.

Huon tells him
all else that
Charlemagne
demands of him.

The Admiral
warns Huon that
fifteen envoys
have come to him
making the like
demand, and have
all met their
death at his
hands.

¹ Fol. xxx. col. 2. ² that. ³ since. ⁴ Ronceaux.
⁵ else. ⁶ will. ⁷ and. ⁸ a. ⁹ as. ¹⁰ before.
¹¹ that. ¹² nowe. ¹³⁻¹³ to make up. ¹⁴ therefore.

Huon tells how
he obtained the
magic ring.

The Admiral
orders his men to
seize Huon.

A fierce fight
takes place.

Huon sets his
back to an arch
in the wall and
defends himself
like a wild boar.

make a lye, for fere of kynge Oberon, sayd / 'sir,¹ for
dought of the, nor² of no³ paynem here, I wyl not
spare to shew the y^e trouth. know well⁴ *that with*
this good sworde I haue slayn y^e lord Angolaffer y^e 4
gyaunt' / whan⁵ the admyrall harde that, he sayde to
his lordes, 'Syr, loke that this ribauld⁶ skape not,
for by al the goddes that I beleue on, I shal neuer haue
ioy in my herte tyll⁷ I se hym taken.' Than paymym⁸ 8
and sarasyns on all partes assaylled Huon / whan he
saw *that*, he recommaundyd hym selfe to our lord god ;
he⁸ thought he shulde neuer se fayre daye more / and
so with his sworde in both hys handes he defendyd 12
hym selfe nobly in sleynge and cuttynge of handes /
armes / and fete / of the sarasyns, & of maney he made
the braynes to fly abrode on the payment. Grete orroure⁹
it was to behold / for by reason of his good harnes¹⁰ 16
there was no paynym coude do hym any damage / but
they gaue hym way, nor durst aproche nere hym.
Huon beynge full of yre, as he fought, he sawe on the
one syde of the palayes an arche in the wall, & so, euer 20
styll fyghtyng, he drew thether, & set his backe to the
arche, to thentent that none shulde come behynd hym /
there he faryd lyke a wyld bore in y^e wood, & de-
fendyd hymselfe in suche wyse, *that* whom so euer he 24
towchyde *with* a full stroke, had no nede after of any
surgyon / thus along spase Huon enduryd, & had no
grete damage.¹¹ But the force of y^e paynymes was so
grete that it was not possyble for hym to susteyn 28
longe / &¹² he waxyd so wery that his strokes fleblyde /
often tymes he called apon god¹³ & on the vyrgyn
mary¹³ / & on the other parte the admyrall cryed to his
men & sayde, 'a, ye feynt hertyd knaues,¹⁴ greate shame 32
it is to you all that one man shall so longe endure

¹ not. ² or. ³ any. ⁴ then. ⁵ Fol. xxx. back, col. 1.
⁶ villaine. ⁷ vntill. ⁸ and. ⁹ terrour. ¹⁰ armour.
¹¹ harme. ¹² for. ¹³⁻¹³ omitted. ¹⁴ slaues.


agaynst you all,¹ that ye can nother take hym nor sle
 hym / than the paynymes, whan they harde the
 admyrall so dysprayse them / they came in a grete rage
 4 all at ones vpon Huon, where as he was alone vnder
 the arche. than a paynym who was neuw to the
 admyrall, cam vpon Huon ; ²whan Huon saw hym
 aproche, he lyft vp his sworde & gaue ³the paynym ⁴on
 8 the helme⁴ suche a stroke *that* he claue his hede to the
 brest, and ther with his sworde fell out of his handes /
 and another sarasyn tooke it vp / than all the sarasins
 at ones ran vpon Huon, & tooke hym, and so⁵ tooke
 12 fro hym his horne and cuppe, and dyd⁶ of his harnes⁷ /
 whan he was vnarmyd, the sarasyns behelde hym well,
 and many sayde how they neuer saw so fayre a man
 before, affermyng that yf al frenche men were such as
 16 he is,¹ there were no kinge able to resyste them.

He slays the
 Admiral's
 nephew.

Huon is at length
 overcome by
 weariness, and is
 disarmed.

¶ Of the grete compleyntes that Huon made
 beyng in pryson / and how the admyralles
 daughter cam to comforte hym / & how she
 20 departyd not well content with Huon.

Capitulo .xxxix.

24  Han Huon was dysarmyd, y^e paynems
 tooke & brought hym before the
 admyrall, who was ryght ioyfull whan
 he sawe Huon, and called his barons,
⁸and demaunded of them what dethe
 the caytyff shuld dy that had done them suche damage
 28 as to sle one of his moste puyssauzt kynges, and also
 his nepheu, besyde many other. then they all answered
 with one voyce, that he shulde be slayne all quycke⁹
 incontynent / then stept fourth an olde auncyent

He is brought
 before the
 Admiral, who asks
 his barons what
 punishment he
 should suffer.

All are in favour
 of immediate
 death,

¹ omitted. ² but. ³ Fol. xxx. back, col. 2.

⁴⁻⁴ after stroke. ⁵ then. ⁶ put. ⁷ armour.

⁸ Fol. xxxi. col. 1. ⁹ aliuie.

except an aged councillor, who reminds the Admiral that on this day, according to their law, none ought to die at their hands, and advises that Huon should be respited for a year.

The old man asks whether Huon ought not to be thanked for the death of the giant Angolaffer (Galafré).

Huon is led off to prison.

He reproaches Oberon.

admyrall of .vi. score yeres of age, and¹ was of the admyralles preuy councell, and² sayd, 'sir admyrall, ye may not do thus for the loue of this good day, the whiche is of y^e fest of saynte Iohnn / accordyng to our 4 law, ther ys none ought to dye on that day / but, syr, respyhgt his lyfe for a hole yere, the which³ shalbe the fest of your goddes : on that day ye ought to de-lyuer .ii.⁴ Champyons to do with them your sacrefyce ; 8 lett this man be one / and another shall⁵ come be that tyme ; and whiche of tho .ii. champyons be ouer come, ye shall make your sacrefyce to your goddes of hym ; thus ye promysed your goddes to do the fyrst 12 day that ye toke on you the sygnyory of Babylone / and, syr, yf it were not for that this man hath slayne one of your kinges & your nephew, ye ought not to slee hym, but rather to thanke hym / for by hym the man 16 ⁶in the worlde⁶ that ye ought moste to hate is slayne, that ⁷was the gyant⁷ Angolaffer, for⁸ now by his deth ye are out of all seruytude and bondage, and by hym⁹ sett at lyberte' / when the Admyrall gaudis had well 20 herde the paynem, he sayd, 'sen¹⁰ it is so that ye gyue me this counsell / and that of ryght myne aunseters hath¹¹ acustomyd the same, I wyll not do the contrary, but it shall be as ye haue sayd.' then was Huon led 24 with .iiii. paynems to a darke preson, & the Jayler was commaunded to gyue hym mete & drinke suffycyent / when Huon saw how he was in preson, he was ryght sorowfull, and began to remembre the noble duches lys 28 mother, and Gererde his brother / and sayd, 'a, Oberon, how is it that¹² thou art soo vnkynd & outragious to me / for so lytell¹³ ¹⁴offence to suffer me¹⁵ endure this greate mysery, for I knowe well it is not vnknowen to 32 thee that the offence that I haue done was but alonly¹⁶

¹ who. ² he. ³ and then. ⁴ .xi. ⁵ may.
⁶⁻⁸ after hate. ⁷⁻⁷ is. ⁸ and. ⁹ this man.
¹⁰ seeing. ¹¹ haue euer. ¹² omitted. ¹³ an.
¹⁴ Fol. xxxi. col. 2. ¹⁵ to. ¹⁶ only.

by forgetfulnes.' Now lett vs leue spekyng of Huon,
 and speke¹ of the fayre Esclaramonde, doughter to
 the admyrall. when she saw it was nyght, & she all
 4 a lone in her bedde / she remembered the frenche
 knyght who had kyssyd her .iiii. tymes in y^e presence
 of her father, and she was in greate sorow by cause he
 was sett² in presone, and sayd to her selfe, 'without he
 8 were a knyght of grete enterpryse he wolde neuer haue
 ben so hardy to haue done as he hath done this day
 in dyuers maners' / wherfore she sayd he was well
 worthy to be belouyd & socoured / then incontynent
 12 she rose & made her redy / and preuely she toke a
 torche of wax in her hand and lyghted it, & yssuyd
 out of her chaumbre as preuely as she coule: it was
 about mydnyght, and euery man was aslepe in the
 16 palayas. she went straye to the prison, and came
 at so good a tyme that she found the Jayler³ aslepe /
 then she stole awaye the kayes, and wente & openyd the
 prison dore; and⁴ when Huon saw the candel⁵ lyght
 20 & y^e dore of the prison open, he was in grete fere leest
 they wold take hym out to put hym to dethe, or to
 do hym sum⁶ dyspleasure / then⁷ he began to make
 pytyfull complayntes / the lady, who could well speke
 24 frenche, vnderstode all Huons complantes, and re-
 memberyd his name, bycause the day before she had
 harde hymselfe shew her father hys name. then she
 sayd, 'Huon, dysmay the⁸ not; I am Esclaramond,
 28 doughter to y^e Admyrall, whom, this day passed, thou
 dyd kys .iiii. tymes in the presence of my father; if it
 be so that thou wylt fullfyll my wyll, I shall put to my
 payne⁹ to delyuer the out of prison / for I am so
 32 ¹⁰amourouse of ¹⁰thee that euer sen¹¹ thou dedest kys me
 I haue had none other thought nor ymagynacyon but

Esclaramonde
 laments Huon's
 imprisonment,

and secretly at
 midnight goes
 towards the
 prison.

She confesses to
 Huon her love
 for him.

¹ say somewhat. ² put. ³ fast. ⁴ But. ⁵ torch.
⁶ other. ⁷ whereupon. ⁸ omitted. ⁹ endeavour.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ affectionate towards. ¹¹ since.

onely on the and¹ to brynge the out of y^e daunger
²that thou art in.' 'Dame,'³ quod Huon, 'god rewarde
 you ⁴of the⁴ greate curtesaye that ye wold do to⁵ me ;
 but, fayre lady Esclaramond, ye be⁶ a sarazyn, and I am ⁴
 crystened. trew it is, in that I dyd kys you,⁷ was by
 the *commaundement* of kyng Charlemayne, who sent
 me hether,⁸ but or⁹ elles I had rather to haue bene here
 in *perpetuall pryson* / then to haue touched eny *parte* ⁸
 of your flesh¹⁰ or mouthe as long as ye be a saryzyn.'
 'Huon,' quod the lady, 'sen¹¹ thou art of that mynd,
*thou shalt end thy dayes here in preson myserably, nor*¹²
*neuer trust me, for*¹³ yf I can, I shall cause y^e derely to ¹²
 aby the *refuce*¹⁴ *that thou haste made me.'* Then the
 lady Esclaramonde departed fro the pryson and came
 to the Jayler, and awoke hym, & sayed, 'frend, I charge
 the on payne of thy lyfe / that to this *frenche prisoner* ¹⁶
 within thy *kepyng*, that¹⁵ these iii dayes and .iii.
 nyghtes thou gyue hym nother mete nor drynke.'
 'Dame,'³ quod the Jayler, 'your *commaundement*
 shall be fulfilled.' then y^e lady for dysplasure wente ²⁰
 agayne to her bed ryght pensyue and full of fantasieses /
 & Huon was .iii. dayes & .iii. nyghtes without mete or
 drynke, & on the .iiii. day he sayd, all wepyng,¹⁶ 'A,
 good lorde, I see well I muste¹⁷ dye for hungre; I ²⁴
 humbly require the to ayde & socoure me, and graunt
 me the grace *that* I¹⁸ consent nor do eny thyng that
 shuld¹⁹ be ayenst thy pleasure, or ayenst thy holy law,
 for ony trybulacyon that can cum to me' / Thus this⁹ ²⁸
 noble Huon *complayned* all wepyng¹⁶; ¹²there is²⁰ no
 creature that had harde hym but ²¹that shuld²¹ haue
 ben *parte takers* of his greate sorowes.

Huon reminds
 Esclaramonde that
 she is a Saracen,

and he ought
 never to have
 approached her.


Esclaramonde
 departs in wrath,
 and bids the
 gaoler keep his
 prisoner three
 days without food
 or drink.

The request is
 obeyed, and Huon
 fears he will die
 for lack of
 sustenance.

¹ how. ² Fol. xxxi. back, col. 1. ³ Madame. ⁴⁻⁴ for your.
⁵ vnto. ⁶ are. ⁷ but that. ⁸ so to doe. ⁹ omitted.
¹⁰ bodie. ¹¹ seing. ¹² and. ¹³ but. ¹⁴ refusall.
¹⁵ for. ¹⁶ sorowing. ¹⁷ heere. ¹⁸ neither.
¹⁹ shall. ²⁰ was. ²¹⁻²¹ he would.

¶ How Huon made grete complaints for the
 famye that he endured, and how the fayre
 Esclaramonde came¹ to comferte hym so²
 4 that Huon wolde fulfyll her desyre.

Capitulo .xxxix[a].³

4  Hus, as ye haue herd before, Huon
 8 complayned peteusly, for he had ben
 .iii. dayes and .iii. nyghtes without
 sustenance. ⁵y^e lady Esclaramonde,
 who caused it, euery mornynge &
 euery euenynge came⁶ to the prison to here what
 12 Huon wold say, and euer she would demaunde ⁷Huon
 yf he were any other wyse aduysed to answeere her
 or not, & euer she founde hym at one poynte / and⁸
 at the last, when she saw *that*,⁹ then she demaundyd of
 16 hym / ¹⁰yf she delyueryd hym out of preson yf¹¹ he would
 then promyse her to lede her with hym into Fraunce, & to
 take hyr to his wyf when he cam ther. 'yf thou wyll
 promyse me this,' quod she, 'thou shalte haue mete &
 20 drynke suffycient at thy pleasure.' 'Dame,'¹² quod
 Huon, 'I promyse you faythfully, ¹³though I shulde be
 for euer dampned in hell,¹³ I shall do your pleasure,
 what so euer fall¹⁴ to me therby' / 'then know for
 24 trouthe,' quod the lady, ¹⁰'for the loue of the I wyll
 become crystened & beleue in the law of our¹⁵ lord
 Ihesu / Cryst as sone as we come in¹⁶ eny place where as
 it may be.'¹⁷ Huon thanked her / ⁵then she causyd
 28 hym to haue mete & drynke, wherof he was ioyfull /

Esclaramonde
 visits the prison
 day by day,

and promises to
 set him free,
 if he will take
 her with him
 to France,
 and make her his
 wife.

She is willing to
 become a
 Christian.

Huon thanks her,
 and agrees to all
 her plans.

¹ againe.

² conditionally.

³ The original has two chapters numbered xxxix.

⁴ Fol. xxxi. back, col. 2. ⁵ and.

⁶ before first euery; second euery omitted. ⁷ of.

⁸ But. ⁹ he still continued in that minde.

¹⁰ that. ¹¹ whether. ¹² Madame.

¹³⁻¹³ that upon your forsaking Paganisme, and conuersion
 to our christian faith.

¹⁴ happen. ¹⁵ the. ¹⁶ to. ¹⁷ done.

Esclarmonde tells
the gaoler to go
to her father,
and say that
Huon is dead.

The gaoler serves
Huon faithfully,
and keeps the
secret.

then¹ she callyd y^e Jayler & sayd, 'go thy way in haste to the Admyrall my father, and shew² hym how³ the frenche knyght is deed .iii. dayes past for⁴ feblenes and hungre' / 'Dame,'⁵ quod the Jayler, 'I am redy to do ⁴ your commaundement,' & so he wente to the Admyrall & sayd, 'sir, the frenche knyght that was in my kepinge ys deed for⁶ famyn .iii. dayes past.' 'a,'⁷ quod the Admyrall, 'I am sory therfor; but sen⁸ it wyll be⁹ ⁸ none other wyse I must ouer¹⁰ passe it, but I had rather *that* he were aliue.' & thus, as ye haue harde, Huon was respyted¹¹ from the¹² deth / ¹³it is a commen¹⁴ sayeng,³ one day of respyte¹⁵ is worth¹⁶ .c. yere.¹⁷ then ¹² the Jayler returned to the preson vnto the lady, and shewed her what he had saed to the Admyrall / 'well, frend,' quod the lady, 'if thou wylt be secrete I shall make *thee*¹⁸ ryche for euer as¹⁹ to ayde me in such thinges ¹⁶ as I wolde haue'²⁰ / 'Dame,'²¹ quod he, 'to dye in the quarell I shall do you seruyse suche as ye commaunde me, the fere of deth shall not lett me to do it.' Now lett vs leue spekyng of Huon, who was often tymes ²⁰ vysyted *with* the Jayler, and had all thynges as he desyred, and was well lodged at his pleasure / ¹Lett vs now speke of Gerames & of them *that* were *with* hym in the castell of the gyant. 24

¶ How Gerames & his company departed from the towre, & the damesell with them, and cam to babylon, & of the maner that Gerames held²² to know sum newes of 28
Huon. Capitulo .xl.

¹ and. ² tall. ³ that. ⁴ through. ⁵ Ladie. ⁶ by.
⁷ Alas. ⁸ seeing. ⁹ be *after* otherwyse.
¹⁰ ouer *after* it. ¹¹ deliuered. ¹² omitted.
¹³ for. ¹⁴ but a very true. ¹⁵ deliuerance.
¹⁶ a. ¹⁷ of endurance. ¹⁸ Fol. xxxii. col. 1.
¹⁹ helping. ²⁰ thee. ²¹ Madame.
²² vsed.



4 **W**E haue herd here before how Huon
 departed fro the towre of the Gyant,
 and lefte there Gerames & all his
 company, with the damesell his
 cousyn. they taryed theyr .iii.
 monethes, and neuer herd eny thyng of Huon, wherof
 they were sorowfull / and¹ went fourthe ²in a² moren-
 8 ynge & came to the sees syde, to se yf they myght here
 eny worde³ of ther lorde Huon ; and as they lokyd in
 to⁴ the see they spyed a shyppe charged with .xxx.
 paynemes and grete ryches / then⁵ Gerames saw how
 12 the shipp was commynge to that porte / then⁶ he sayd
 to his company, 'syrs, lett vs go and se yf we can
 know eny tydynges of Huon by them' / then they
 went to the port, & by that tyme ⁷the maryners had
 16 caste ther ancre / then Gerames demaunded of them
 whense they were, & whether they wold go. 'sir,'
 quod they, 'we wolde go to the Mesque to paye to
 Angolafer, the grete gyant, a trybute that we are
 20 bound euery yere to paye / and,⁸ syr, we desyre you to
 shew vs wher we myght ⁹fynde hym' / and when
 Gerames saw how⁷ thy were all alonde out of the shyp,
 he sayd, 'a, ye vnhappy paynemes, ye shall neuer
 24 departe hens, for he that ye demaunde for is deed /
 and all ye shall bere hym good¹⁰ company.'

¶ Then Gerames sayd to his company, 'syrs, let all
 these paynemes be slayne' / & then incontynent they
 28 sett vppon them, so that all the paynemes were slayne,
 not one that¹⁰ scaped a lyue / for the crysten men were
 armyd, and the paynemes without harnes¹¹ or eny wepyn /
 for other wyse they durste not cum alond for fere of
 32 the gyant. then Gerames entred in to the shyp and
 toke all that they founde theyr, and bare it into the

For three months
 Gerames and his
 company tarry
 for Huon in the
 giant's tower.

They go to the
 sea-shore to seek
 news of him,
 when a ship filled
 with Saracens
 sails up.

The voyagers are
 come to pay their
 yearly tribute to
 the giant,
 and ask Gerames
 where they may
 find him.

Gerames replies
 that he is dead,
 and that his
 questioners shall
 share his fate.

All the paynims
 are slain,
 although they
 are unarmed.

¹ They. ²⁻² one. ³ newes. ⁴ vpon.
⁵ and. ⁶ wherfore. ⁷ that. ⁸ therefore.
⁹ Fol. xxxii. col. 2. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ armour.

towre / & then they wente to dyner, and made grete ¹of¹
 that aduventure, and after dyner Gerames sayd, ' syrs, yf
 we were now in Fraunce, and² kynge Charlemayne dyd³
 demaunde of vs what is become of Huon, ye know well ⁴
 ther is none of vs can tell whether he be alyue or
 deed / for yf we shulde say² he is deed / &⁴ after warde
 returne home, then we shulde be reputed for false men
 euer after, bothe we and our chyldren / ⁵a man may be ⁸
 a presoner .xiii. or .xv. yere, and yet come home agayne
 at the last safe and sounde / But, syrs, and ye wyll
 beleue me, we shall do lyke trew men / we haue as
 now in this port a good shyppe, well furnesshyd with ¹²
 euery thyng / and we haue here gold and syluer
 plenty / and we shall sone vytall our shype / and then
 lett vs take the see, & neuer rest saylyng tyll⁶ we here
 sum newes of our lord Huon / and yf we do thus, then ¹⁶
 we do as trew men ought to do / and I desyre you all
 euery man shew his aduys⁷ / then, without takyng of
 any longer respyt, they answeyrd all *with* one voyce
 that they were redy to accomple⁸ all that he had ²⁰
 deuysed : then⁸ they tooke gold and syluer, and all ther
 ryches, and bare it in to the shyppe, & furnysshed it
with wyne, bysket, salt flesshe, ⁹and artelery / and
 when ther shyppe was garnysshed, they put in theyr ²⁴
 horses & ther armure / & they all .xiii. companyons
 entred in to the shype, and the damsell with them. then
 they wayed vp ther ancrs & hawsed vp ther sayle,
 and so lefte the towre of the Gyant all voyd, and no ²⁸
 man therin, & thus they sayled alonge the cost tyll⁶
 they came into the hye see, and so long they sayled tyl
 they came to Damyete / & there they entred into the
 ryuer of Nyle / and so longe they sayled therin / that ³²
 they aryued at Babylon, and came to the port, and

Gerames advises
 the knights to
 sail with him in
 the Saracens' ship,

and seek out
 Huon.

All agree to follow
 his counsel.

They fit out the
 ship for the
 voyage,

and sail into the
 high sea till they
 reach Damietta.

Passing up the
 Nile,
 they arrive at
 Babylon.

¹⁻¹ ioy for. ² that. ³ should. ⁴ he.

⁵ for. ⁶ vntill. ⁷ herein. ⁸ So.

⁹ Fol. xxxii. back, col. 1.

tooke out theyr horses. Gerames, that knew well the langage and the maner of the enterynge in to¹ y^e .iiii. gates, sayd to his company / 'syr, lett vs lepe² on our
 4 horses, & let vs enter into y^e cyte to se yf we may here eny newes of our master Huon.' thus they rode fourthe & entred in to the cytye / ³then gerames sayd, 'syr, we wyll go to the palayes, but when we come
 8 there holde you all your pease, & suffer me to speke, wherfore it is conuenyent that ye all agre to my wordes, and say not the contrary' / they answeyrd and sayd they were contente so to do / ³thus they rode
 12 togyther through the towne. 'A, good lord,' quod Gerames, 'I beseche the of thy grace to graunt vs that we may here sum good tydynges of our mayster, Huon of Burdeux, for whom we be in iuberdy of dethe' / so
 16 they passyd all the .iiii. brydges and gates, by reason that Gerames shewed fourth suche reasons that the porters were content / then they came before the greate hall, and theyr they alyghted, and mounted vp all
 20 .xiii., and the damsell with them; and when they were in the hall they saw the Admyrall gaudys syttyng on a ryche chayre, garmysshed with gold and presyous stones / and Gerames that coulde well speke the langage
 24 sarazin,⁴ cam before y^e Admyrall and sayd / 'the same Mahounde⁵ that causeth ⁶to grow⁶ y^e wine and y^e⁷ corne saue and kepe ye Admyrall gaudys, whom ⁸I se theyr syttyng amonge his barons' / 'Frende,' quod the
 28 admyrall, 'thou art welcom. I pray the shew me what thou art, & whether thou wouldest go' / 'syr,' quod Gerames, ⁹'I shew⁹ you playnely I am come from the good cytye of mombraunte, and am sonne to kyng
 32 yuoryn.' when the Admyrall hard that / he rose vp on his fete and sayd, 'thou art welcome, the sonne of my brother / fayre nepheu, I pray you shew me how dothe

They disembark, and mounting their horses, ride through the city.

Gerames, although he knows of the four gates, promises to lead them to the palace.

He induces the porters to let them through the gates, and they come to the great hall, and having dismounted,

together enter the presence of the Admiral.

Gerames salutes him in the Saracen tongue.

He feigns himself to be son to king Ivoryn, and to have come from the city of Mombraunt,

whereupon the Admiral bids him welcome,

¹ all. ² mount. ³ &. ⁴ after langage. ⁵ god. ⁶⁻⁶ after corne.
⁷ omitted. ⁸ Fol. xxxii. back, col. 2. ⁹⁻⁹ to tell.

believing
Gerames to be
his nephew.

Gerames pretenda
that the twelve
Frenchmen with
him have been
sent by Ivoryn

to be imprisoned
by the Admiral
his brother.

Gerames is given
command of
everything in the
Admiral's house,

and is named
his chief
chamberlain.

Gerames thus
takes charge of
his companions.

The Admiral
warns him not
to starve them,
as Huon of
Burdeux,
a recent prisoner,
was starved to
death.

Gerames is angry
and grieved at the
Admiral's words
concerning
Huon's sad end,

mi brother yuoryn' / 'syr,' quod Gerames, 'when I
departyd fro hym I lefte hym in good helth, and he
saluted you by me / and hath sent here to you .xii.
frenchemen by me, the which were taken vppon the 4
see as they were goynge a pylgrymage to the holy
sepulcre of god¹ in Jeruzalem / and he desyreth you to
put them in preson vnto² the day of saynt Johnn the
Baptyst, at whyche day ye must make the fest of your 8
goddess / and then to brynge them into the medow here
without, and to³ tye & bynde them to stakes, and lett
your archers shote at them, to the entent to know who
shoteth best / and⁴ this damsell that is here with me / 12
she to be put to your doughter to teche hyr to speake
perfeyghtly the ⁵language of frenche⁵ / 'fayre
nepheu,' quod the Admyrall, 'as ⁶ye haue deuysed⁶ yt
shalbe done / and I giue you powre to commaund eury 16
thyng in thys house at your pleasure, and I pray you
shew me what ys your name' / 'syr,' quod he, 'I am
callyd Jeracle' / 'well,' quod the Admyrall, 'fro hense
furthe I retayne you to be as my chefe chamberlayne, 20
and I wyll that ye haue the kaye of the preson in your
keyynge, and therin to put these caytyues⁷ and to do
with them at your pleasure. ⁸I wyll ye loue them but
a lytell⁸ / but let them haue mete & drynke suffycient 24
that they dye not for⁹ famyn / as but late¹⁰ dyed a
frencheman that was sent to me by kynge Charles of
Fraunce, who was callyd Huon of burdeux, the whiche
was a ryght fayre yonge man.' 28

¹¹ **W**Han Gerames herd that, he had before¹² neuer
¹³so grete¹³ sorowe at his herte / for¹⁴ his dyspleasure and

¹ Christ. ² vntill. ³ there. ⁴ as for.
⁵⁻⁶ french language. ⁶⁻⁸ he hathe appointed. ⁷ captiues.
⁸⁻⁹ extend vnto them what kindnesse you please.
⁹ with. ¹⁰ lately. ¹¹ Fol. xxxiii. col. 1.
¹² after neuer. ¹³⁻¹³ greater.
¹⁴ then (hearing of the death of Huon).

yre¹ was so gret that he hadde nere hande rynne vpon
 y^e Admyrall / and he was so angry² in his herte³ that
 he toke vp a staffe that laye by hym, & gaue eche of
 4 the frensshe men such strokes on theyr hedes that the
 blode ranne downe, but they suffred it, and durst not
 styre, they were in such fere of the Admyrall / but
 then⁴ cursed Gerames for his strokes / who dyd it for
 8 the nones.⁵ And when the Admyrall saw how he had
 well beten y^e frensshemen he sayd, 'fayre nephew, it
 semyth wel by you that ye loue⁶ but lytell⁶ these crysten
 men.' 'Syr,' quod he, 'I hate these crysten men more
 12 than ony men in the worlde / for, syr, all the way that
 I haue come I haue thus betten them thre tymes in
 euery day in the honor of my god Mahounde, and in the
 dyspyte of the⁷ lawe⁸ of Jesu chryste,⁸ on whome they
 16 beleue.' thus then Gerames departed fro y^e Admyrall /
 & lede with them the .xii. Frenche prysoners / betynge
 them tyll he came to y^e pryson / and none of them
 durste speke one worde / but to them selfe they cursel
 20 Gerames. And as they went to⁹ y^e pryson warde¹⁰ they
 met with the lady Esclaramond / and she sayd,
 'cosyn / I am ryght ioyous of your comyng / but yf I
 durst trust in you / I wolde shewe you a secrete mater /
 24 so that ye promyse not to dyscouer me' / 'cosyn,'
 quod Gerames / 'by my faythe that I owe to my god
 Mahounde, ye maye well shewe me youre wyll &
 plesure / for¹¹ myn eyen¹² to be drawn out I shall neuer
 28 dyscouer you.' & when the damsell herd that promys /
 she sayd / 'fayre¹³ cosyn, it is a .v. monthes passed¹⁴ /
 theyr cam to my fader the Admyrall a Frensshe
 knyght with a message fro kyng Charlemyan, who
 32 called hymselfe Huon of Burdeux /¹⁵ who, when he had

but not to excite
suspicion,
he cudgels the
Frenchmen.

Esclaramonde
meets Gerames
leading his
companions to
prison.

She tells Gerames
how, although
the Admyrall
believes Huon
dead, he is still
alive.

1 anger. 2 vexed. 3 mind. 4 they. 5 nonst.
 6-6 after men. 7 their. 8-8 and God.
 9 towards. 10 omitted. 11 if. 12 were.
 13 Deare. 14 since. 15 Fol. xxxiii. col. 2.

done his message / he slew a paynym kynge as he sate
at the table by my fader / & after came and kyst me
.iii. tymes¹ / & after² slew many sarazins / wherfor at
last he was taken prysoner & set³ in pryson, where as 4
he is yet / howe be it, I made my fader byleue that he
is deed for⁴ famyn ; ⁵how be it,⁵ cosyne, he is as yet
⁶on lyue,⁶ as wel serued of mete & drynke as my
fader is.' 8

Gerames fears she
has deceived him,

and says nothing
to her.

He sets the
Frenchmen in
prison.

Huon could not
see them through
the darkness of
the prison,
but he hears one
of them making
complaint of his
hard fate.

Huon knows
from their speech
that they are
Frenchmen,

When Gerames vnderstode y^e damsell Esclara-
mond / he was bothe sorowfull & angry / for
he thought the damsell dyd it to dysceyue him, & to
cause hym to shew forth the secretnes of hys mynde / 12
& by cause ⁷of *that*⁷ doute⁸ he passed forth & made no
maner of answere to the damsell / but came to y^e
pryson, & put in the prysoners rudely ; & the damsell
returned ryght sorowfull in that she had shewed so 16
muche of her mynd to Gerames, whom she toke for her
cosyne / when Gerames had set³ the .xii. frensshemen in
pryson, he returned ryght sorowful / & Huon, beyng
in the pryson, had grete meruayle what prysoners they 20
were that were let downe in to the pryson / ⁹he coude
not se *them*, the pryson was so derke / then he drew
nere to *them* to here them speke / so¹⁰ at laste one of *them*
began to make his complaynt, & sayd / ' a, good lorde 24
Jesu cryst, socour vs, for thou knowest wel this that we
suffre we haue not deserued it,¹¹ but it is for y^e loue of
our yong lord, Huon of Burdeux / we haue loued hym
so well *that* nowe we be loste for euer / ¹²dere lorde 28
Jesu cryst, haue pyte on our soules¹²' / when Huon
herde what they sayd / then he knewe well² they were
crystened & frensshe men / ⁹then he coueyted moche to
know what they were, & so aprouched nere to them & 32

¹ before my Fathers face. ² that. ³ put. ⁴ with.
⁵⁻⁵ yet, deere. ⁶⁻⁶ aloue and. ⁷⁻⁷ he was in.
⁸ thereof. ⁹ for. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹ omitted.
¹²⁻¹² except, deere Lord, thou haue mercie vpon vs.

sayd / 'syrs, ye that be here, I pray you shewe me
 what ye be, & how ye be come hyder' / 'syr,' quod
 one of them, 'trewe it is a¹ fyue monthes passed theyr
 4 departed from vs a yong knyght, with whom ²we
 departed³ out of the realme of Fraunce / and he was
 borne in Fraunce, and sone to a noble Duke / called
 duke Seuyne of Burdeux / this knyght slewe Charlet,
 8 sone to the⁴ kynge Charlemayne, by a mysaduenture,
 wherfore he was banysshed out of y^e realme of
 Fraunce / & sent by kynge Charlemayne to doo a
 message to the Admyrall Gaudys, who⁵ is deed in
 12 pryson, as it is shewed vs / &, syr, we went³ to seke for
 him, and are betrayed by one of our owne company.'
 &⁴ when Huon herde hym speke / he knewe hym well,
 & sayd / 'syrs, be of good comforte & make good chere,
 16 for I am here,⁴ Huon, safe & in good helth, thanked
 be god & the Admyralles doughter / who is so amorous⁶
 of me that she hath sau'd my lyfe / ye shall see soone
 how she wyll come & vysyt vs.⁷ But I pray you, syrs,
 20 what is become of the⁴ old Gerames / whyther he be
 lefte behynde to kepe the toure with the damsell my
 cosyn, who I lefte in your keypyng' / 'syr,' quod
 they, 'a wors creature, ⁸more vntrue⁸ traytour was
 24 neuer borne / for he hath betrayed vs & hath beten
 & put vs in this⁴ pryson / & as for y^e damsell, she
 is with the Admyralles doughter' / when Huon par-
 ceuyed that all they were of his company / he went &
 28 kyssed⁹ them, & sayd, 'syrs, knowe of a surety that all
 that Gerames hath done is¹⁰ to the entent to delyuer vs
 all / ¹¹I knowe so well¹¹ the trouthe of Gerames. Syrs,
 make good chere / for as soone as nyght cometh we
 32 shal be vysyted with grete ioye' / 'syr,' quod they,

and asks them
 how they came
 thither.

They tell their
 story.

and Huon reveals
 himself.

They bitterly
 complain of
 Gerames'
 apparent
 treachery.

but Huon tells
 them that
 Gerames is
 seeking by such
 devices to save
 them.

¹ that. ² Fol. xxxiii. back, col. 1. ³ came. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ and he. ⁶ enamoured. ⁷ me. ⁸⁻⁸ or more false.

⁹ embraced. ¹⁰ done.

¹¹⁻¹¹ out of prison. I doe so well know.

'surely we byleued that Gerames had forsaken the faythe of Iesu¹ Cryst &² become a sarazyn / for he hath made the Admyrall byleue that he is sone to his brother, kyng yuoryn of Montbrant.' when Huon⁴ herd that, he had grete ioye at his herte, & sayd / ' a, good lorde, the trowth of Gerames and loue that he hath³ all wheres³ shewed to me / shall be to vs ryght profytable in y^e spyte of⁴ Oberon, who hath forsaken⁸ me for a small offence / by Gerames we shal be delyuered out of this pouerte & daunger.' Now leueth thystory⁶ to speke of Huon / & his company, beyng in pryson, & ⁷speketh of⁷ the olde Gerames, who ¹²studyed⁸ for the delyueraunce of Huon & his company.

¶ How Gerames and the fayre Esclaramonde wente to the pryson to comforte Huon & the other prysoners. Cap. .xli. 16



Owe sheweth thystory⁶ when *that*⁹ Gerames was returned to the Admyrall he sayd / ' syr, y^e frensshemmen that I brought are faste in ²⁰ pryson and well beten' / ' fayre nephew,' quod the Admyral, ' they haue had but an euyll neyghboure of you.' Then Gerames wente in to his chambre and studyed how he myght furnysshe ²⁴ these¹⁰ prysoners with vytaile / & dyde so moche that he had suffycyent / and when nyght came he went with his vytaile to the pryson / for he myght do there what he lyst, for euery man was redy to do hym ²⁸ ¹¹seruyce / when he came to the pryson dore / he sent euery man away and taryed there alone / and he had not ben there longe but *that* ¹²thyther came¹² the

Gerames studies how he may send food to his prisoners, and at length goes with it himself to the prison.


¹ omitted. ² was. ³⁻³ alwaies. ⁴ king.

⁵ Fol. xxxiii. back, col. 2. ⁶ the Historie.

⁷⁻⁷ returneth to. ⁸ and practised. ⁹ before when.

¹⁰ the. ¹¹ any. ¹²⁻¹² came thether after daughter.

Admyralles doughter / when Gerames saw her he wyst
 not what to thynke / and¹ sayde, 'fayre cosyn, I praye
 you shewe me what doo ye here at this houre' / 'dere
 4 cosyn,' quod she / 'the grete truste that I haue in
 you / hathe made me to come hyther / by cause to
 daye I dyscouered to you al my secretes, and ²that I
 am in wyll to do / & that is,² that ye wolde leue the
 8 law of Mahounde & receyue the crysten fayth / & I³ to
 go⁴ in to fraunce⁵ with these prisoners, & we shal well
 fynd y^o maner how to departe, & we ⁶shall haue⁶ with
 vs all the prysoners that ye haue put in pryson.'

12  Hen Gerames vnderstode⁸ y^e lady he
 was ⁹ioyfull / for then he knewe well¹⁰
 she wente not aboute to dysceyue¹¹.
 hym / but that she dyd it of good
 16 corage¹² & good wyll that she bare to
 Huon / how be it, he thought¹⁰ he wolde not dyscouer
 hymselfe to her vnto¹³ y^e tyme he knewe y^e trowth of
 Huon / then¹⁴ he answered fyersly¹⁵ the damsell,¹⁶ &
 20 sayde, 'O thou fals & vntrue wenche,¹⁷ how arte thou
 so hardy ¹⁸to speke or thynke thus? / surely the Admy-
 rall thy father shall knowe it as soone as he cometh
 out of his chambre, & then shalt thou be brint,¹⁹
 24 and the frensshemen hanged' / 'a,²⁰ syr,' quod she,
 'yet I pray you let me go in to the pryson with you,
 to the entent that I may se Huon ones yet or²¹ I dye /
 for the loue of whom I am content to dye; if he dye
 28 I wyl not lyue one day after / therefore let me ones
 take ²²leue of him.' 'Dame,'²³ quod Gerames, 'for this
 tyme I am content that ye go with me' / then Gerames

Esclarmonde
meets him at
the door,

and begs that he
will arrange for
the release of
his prisoners,
so that she and
they may return
to France
together.

Gerames affects
anger at
Esclarmonde's
treachery against
her father.

But she begs
permission to pay
one visit to Huon,

and, Gerames
consenting,

¹ but.

²⁻² what I am intended to doe. Therefore let me intreat you.

³ then. ⁴ with me. ⁵ together. ⁶⁻⁶ will take.

⁷ Fol. xxxiii. col. 1. ⁸ had heard. ⁹ right.

¹⁰ that. ¹¹ descrie. ¹² heart. ¹³ vntill.

¹⁴ wherefore. ¹⁵ angerly. ¹⁶ after answered.

¹⁷ maide. ¹⁸ as. ¹⁹ burned. ²⁰ alas.

²¹ before. ²² my. ²³ Well.

they enter
together.
Huon recognizes
his old friend,

and Esclarmonde
learns the truth.

Huon and his
company thank
Esclarmonde for
her assistance.

toke a torche in his handes, and opened the dore & entred / he was no soner entred but Huon knew hym, & went & embrased hym, & sayd, 'a, my true louer, blessyd be the houre that I founde you' / then they all 4 cleped & kyssed¹ him. when the lady sawe theyr maner² she was ioyfull / for then she saw well that her dede³ shold⁴ the surelyer be conuayed⁴ / then she cam to Huon & demaunded yf they were his sertes⁵ that 8 made so gret chere⁶ togyther. 'dame,'⁷ quod Huon / 'surely al these that be here be my men / surely⁸ ye may trust them / for there is none of them but *that* they shal do your commaundement.' 'Huon,' quod 12 the damsell, 'there comynge pleaseth me ryght wel' / then Huon sayd to his company / ⁹'syr, I pray you make me no more chere, but to⁹ this noble lady, for by her we shal be delyuered / for¹⁰ it is she that hath 16 sauwyd my lyfe' / then they all togyther¹¹ thanked her / 'syr,' quod she, 'yf ye wyll worke by my counsell / I shal shew you how ¹²I maye ayde you to delyuer you¹³ hense / ¹⁴I wyll that ye all byleue surely how¹⁴ I do 20 fermely byleue in Iesu cryst, and at this daye there is no man that I more hate then the Admyrall Gaudys my father, by cause he beleueth not in our lorde Jesu cryst / for he hateth so the crysten men / he can not 24 abyde to here¹⁵ spekyng of theym / for he byleueth but vpon Mahounde & vpon¹⁶ his ydolles, therefore my herte can not loue hym / yf he dyde other wyse I wolde purchase to hym none yll / for all the good in the world / 28 but I shall shewe you what ye muste do / when it is the houre of mydnyght I shall bryng you all in to my

¹ embraced. ² of saluting. ³ intent.

⁴⁻⁴ be more surely compassed, &. ⁵ seruantes.

⁶ loue. ⁷ Madame. ⁸ boldly.

⁹⁻⁹ gentlemen and my deare friends, forbear this extremite of kindnesse to me and bestow it vpon

¹⁰ and. ¹¹ humbly. ¹² Fol. xxxiiii. col. 2.

¹³ from. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ First let me unfainedly perswade ye that

¹⁵ any. ¹⁶ omitted.

chambre, where as I shall¹ prouyde harneys² for you all /
 and there ye shall all be armed / then I shall brynge you
 in to y^e Admyral my faders chambre / whom ye shall
 4 fynde slepyng / and then³ ye maye slee hym / and as for
 me, I shall¹ be the fyrst that shal stryke hym / and when
 he is slayne then shall we departe surely' / when Huon
 4 vnderstode her, he sayde / 'dame,⁵ & god wyll your
 8 fader shal not so be slayne / y^e day shal come that ye
 shall other wyse delyuere vs / we thanke you that ye
 desyre so moche our delyueraunce / ⁶I thynke it good
 that ye and Gerames departe hense / for this tyme, for
 12 it is nere hand day, to the entent that our besynes be
 not perceyued' / then the lady & Gerames departed &
 closed agayne the pryson dore, & wente⁷ in to the palayes,
 & / ⁸when it was day / & also⁸ euery day Gerames
 16 & y^e lady went to vysyt y^e prysoners, & bare them
 euery thyng that was nedefull for them / Gerames
 was all wayes with the Admyrall / and dyd what he
 wold / for theyr was no paynym that durste do con-
 20 trary to his commaundement. Now leue we to speke
 of the Admyral / of Gerames, and of Huon, & of all
 them that were in the⁹ pryson / ¹⁰vnto the tyme we¹⁰
 returne to them agayne.

24 ¶ ¹¹How the gret gyant Agrapart, eldest broder
 to Angolaffer, whom Huon slewe / as-
 sembled his people and came to Babylon
 to haue the trybute of the Admyral as his
 28 broder had / and of the batayll hande
 for¹² hande that he desyred of the Ad-
 myrall Gaudys / the whiche was agrede.¹³

She promises
to lead them that
night to her own
room,
and thence will
take them to her
father's chamber
that they may
slay him while
asleep.
Huon rejects her
unfilial plan.

Every day
Esclarmonde and
Gerames visit
the prison.

Capitulo .xlii.

¹ will. ² armour. ³ there. ⁴ had. ⁵ Madame. ⁶ but.
⁷ vp. ⁸⁻⁸ as if they had not beene there at all and thus.
⁹ omitted. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ vntill such time as we may.
¹¹ Fol. xxxiiii. back, col. 1. ¹² to. ¹³ vnto.

Agrapart grieves
for the death of
his brother
Angolaffer
[Galafre], whom
Huon had slain.
He was as gigantic
and hideous to
look upon as his
brother.



He gathers
together the men
of the neighbour-
ing country,

and bids them
follow him to
Babylon to obtain
from the Admiral
the land and
tribute which
belonged to his
brother.

A ye haue herd¹ her before how Huon
slewe the gyant Angolaffer / the
whiche gyant had .xvii. bretherne
all elder than hym selfe / ²& anone ⁴
after *that* the deth of Angolaffer was
knowen, then *when* his elder brother
named Agrapart was aduertysed of the deth of his
brother, he toke therof grete sorow / he was as grete as ⁸
his brother was ² / he was .xvii. fote of length, & of ³
bygnes he was ⁴ thereafter / he was a fote bytwene the
browes / & his eyen more redder & brynnynge⁵ then a
broude of fyre, & y^e grystell of his nose as grete as the ¹²
mossell⁶ ⁷of an oxe / & he had two teth yssuyng out of
his mouth more then a fote longe eche of them / ⁸yf I
shold dyscryue his foule fygure at length,⁹ it shold¹⁰
anoye all the herers therof / ¹¹ye may well byleue; when ¹⁶
he was in dyspleasure he had a fearfull chere¹² / for then
his two eyen semed¹³ .ii. brynnynge⁵ torches; when
he was surely¹⁴ aduertysed of the deth of his brother he
sent ouer all his countre *that* euery man shold come to ²⁰
hym in harneys; ¹⁵& so they dyde / & whan they were
come, he declared to them the dethe of his brother
Angolaffer, & sayde howe it was his mynde to goo to
Babylone to the Admyrall Gaudys / and to take ²⁴
possessyon of the londes and seygnories that were his
brothers, and also to haue the trybute that was dewe by
the Admyrall / then all his lordes sayde, 'syr, com-
maunde at youre plesure, & we shall obey it' / 'well, ²⁸
syr,' quod he, 'then I wyll that euery man lepe¹⁶ on

¹⁻¹ It hath beene sufficiently declared.

²⁻² who liued distant from him in diuers seuerall places.
It was no longe while after but that his elder brother named
Agrapart was aduertised of the death of his Brother which he
tooke to his hart exceeding heauile. Now you must vnderstand
that he was in all respects of as huge stature as his brother, for

³ in. ⁴ made. ⁵ burning. ⁶ nostril.

⁷ Fol. xxxiiii. back, col. 2. ⁸ but. ⁹ the full.

¹⁰ would. ¹¹ therefore. ¹² countenance to looke vpon.

¹³ like. ¹⁴ certainly. ¹⁵ armour. ¹⁶ mount.

theyr horses / to go toward Babylone' / & so they all obayed, & lept¹ on theyr horses & departed, & rod so long *that* they cam in to a playne / nere to the cite
 4 of Babylon; they were a² .x.M. men togyder: then³ Agrapart sayde, 'syrs, tary ye all here tyll I come agayne, for I wyll go all alone & speke with the Admyrall Gaudys' / then he armyd hym,⁴ & toke a
 8 grete fawchon in his handes / & departed al alone / & so went & entred in to the cyte of Babylon / & so past the .iiii. gates; theyr was no paynym *that* duret say him nay / he rested not tyll⁵ he cam to the palays;
 12 the same tyme the Admyrall was syttyng at dyner, & Gerames⁶ before hym syttyng;⁶ then the Gyaunt came to the table / and sayde, 'The same god Mahounde vnder whome we lyue,⁷ and causeth the wyne & corne to growe,
 16 may⁷ confounde y^e Admyrall⁸ Gaudys as an yll caytyfe and an vntrew⁹ traytour' / when the Admyrall¹⁰ saw how he was so dysprayed¹⁰ / sayd,¹¹ 'Agrapart, of¹² this that thou hast sayd thou lyst falsely / thus shamfully
 20 to rebuke me in myn owne court before all my lordes; but¹³ shew me y^e cause why¹⁴ ye do¹⁴ me this iniury' / 'Admyrall,' quod he / 'it is by cause ther is come in to thy court he that hath slayne my brother / whom
 24 incontynente thou oughtest to haue slayne¹⁵ hym quycke¹⁵ / wherfore yf it were not for myne¹⁶ honor with my fyst, I wolde stryke the on the nose¹⁷ / thou hast sett¹⁸ hym in prison without any more hurte doynge to¹⁹
 28 hym / therfor, thou traytour thefe, by Mahunde be thou cursed; thou art not worthy to sytt in a sete royall¹⁸ / aryse vp! it is not mete for the to syt there' / and therwith he drew the Admyrall so rudely out of his
 32 chayre / that his hatt and crowne fell downe to y^e

Ten thousand men assemble before Babylon.

Agrapart well-armed enters the city alone, and arrives at the palace.

He finds the Admiral at dinner;

insults him in a loud tone,

because he is harbouring the murderer of his brother.

When he has finished speaking he pulls the Admiral from his throne,

¹ got. ² about. ³ and. ⁴ himselfe. ⁵ vntill.
⁶⁻⁶ with him. ⁷⁻⁷ omitted. ⁸ Fol. xxxv. col. 1.
⁹ false. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ heard himselfe so highly abused he.
¹¹ to. ¹² in. ¹³ therefore. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ thou doest.
¹⁵⁻¹⁵ likewise. ¹⁶ owne. ¹⁷ face. ¹⁸ put. ¹⁹ vnto.

and seats himself there.

He demands the land and tribute that was due from the Admiral to his brother,

but offers to free him of all obligation if he can send into the field against him two champions who are able to overcome him.

The Admiral accepts the challenge,

erthe. then¹ y^e Admyrall was sore abashed; then Agraparte satt downe in his chayer, and sayd, 'thou false traytor, my brother is deed, therfor from hens fourth thou shalt be my subgett / for it appertayneth⁴ to me to haue the landes that my brother had, and y^e trybute that thou were wonte to paye to² my brother, or elles I shall stryke of thy hede. how be it, I wyl not do ayenst ryght / for yf thou wylte proue the contrary,⁸ or to³ fynde .ii. champyons to be so hardy that for thy loue⁴ wyll fyght with me in playne batayle, I shall fyght with them; or mo, yf thou wylte sende them to me / and yf it be so that I be ouercome and dyscomfyted by¹² .ii.⁵ of them, I am content⁶ from hense fourth thou shalt holde thy landes franke and free without eny trybute payenge / and⁷ yf it be⁸ so that I conqyre them bothe / then thou to be my subgett, and to pay me trybute for 16 euer, & also to pay me for a knowlege⁹ euery yere .iiii. drams¹⁰ of gold for¹¹ thy hed money' / 'Agraparte,' quod the Admyrall, 'I am content thus to do, & to sett¹² .ii. of my men to fyght with the.' 20

¹³¶ How the Admyrall gaudys toke Huon out of preson and armyd hym to fyght with the gyant Agraparte. Capitulo .xliiii.

and proclaims that he will give his daughter in marriage to any man who will fight against the giant.



Han the Admyrall had herde the grete²⁴ gyant he cryed¹⁴ aloude, 'where be y^e two gentyll knyghtes that wyll be¹⁵ euer my frendes / now is the tyme come that all the goodness and greate gyftes²⁸ that I haue gyuen among you be¹⁶ now¹⁷ rewardyd; yf there be ony of you that wyll fyght ayenst this gyant, I shall gyue hym my doughter¹⁸ Esclaramonde in maryage,

¹ whereat. ² vnto. ³ omitted. ⁴ dare or. ⁵ any.
⁶ that. ⁷ But. ⁸ fall out. ⁹ due taxe. ¹⁰ Ducates.
¹¹ as. ¹² appoint. ¹³ Fol. xxxv. col. 2. ¹⁴ said.
¹⁵ for. ¹⁶ is. ¹⁷ to be. ¹⁸ Fol. xxxv. back, col. 1.

and after my dethe to haue all¹ my erytage; no man shall ²say nay therto' / but for eny fayer wordes or promyse that the Admyrall coude do,³ there was no
 4 paynem so hardy to do⁴ it, wher with⁵ y^e admyrall made gret sorow, & began to wepe;⁶ & when the gyant Agraparte saw him, he sayd, 'thy wepyng⁷ cannot auayle the, for whether thou wylt or not it must
 8 behoue thee to pay these .iiii. peses of golde yerly / for I am sure ther is no paynem that dare fyght ayenst me.' when ye fayre lady Esclaramond saw her father wepe it sore greued her hert, & ⁸sayd / 'o, my father, yf I knew
 12 it shuld not dysplease you, I wolde shewe you one thing the whiche shulde brynge you out of this dought' / 'doughter,' quod he, 'I swere by Mahounde I woll not be dyspleased what so euer thou sayest' / 'sir,' quod
 16 she, 'I ⁹haue shewed you or this⁹ that the frencheman that brought you the message fro kyng Charlemayne was deed in pryson; but, syr, surely¹⁰ he is as yet alyue. yf it plesse you I shall fetche hym to you / and,
 20 sir, without dought I ¹¹waraunt you he wyll take on hym this bateyll ayenst the gyant, for he shewed you how he slewe the other gyaunt Angolaffer; ¹²I haue hope by the ayde of Mahounde / in lyke wyse he shall sle
 24 his brother this gyant Agraperte.' 'doughter,' quod the Admyrall, 'it is my pleasure that ye shall fetche the presoner to me; for yf he may¹³ dyscomfyte this gyant, I am content that he and all his company shall
 28 deperte franke and free at there pleasure' / then the lady and Gerames wente to the preson / and toke out Huon and all his company, & brought them before the Admyrall. Then the Admyrall soore¹⁴ behelde Huon, &
 32 had ¹⁵meruell that he was in so good case / ¹⁶his coloure

No paynim ventures forth.

Agrapart defies the Admiral to find any to conquer him.

Esclaramonde tells her father that Huon still lives,

and promises that he will accept Agrapart's challenge.

Huon is led before the Admiral.

¹ omitted. ² be so bold as to. ³ make. ⁴ vndertake.

⁵ whervppon. ⁶ lament. ⁷ lamenting. ⁸ she.

⁹⁻⁹ I did once delude you in telling you. ¹⁰ credite me.

¹¹ dare. ¹² therefore. ¹³ can. ¹⁴ earnestly.

¹⁵ great. ¹⁶ yet.

was sum what pale by reason of lyenge so longe in
 preson / then the Admyrall sayd, 'frende, yt semeth
 by thy chere¹ that thou hast had ²a good preson'² /
 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I thanke your doughter therof,³ and⁴ 4
⁵I pray you shew me for what cause ye haue as now
 sent for me' / 'frend,' quod the Admyrall, 'I shall
 shew the / beholde yender sarasyn that is armed, who
 hath challenged to fyght with me hand to hande 8
 or ayenst two of the best men ⁶I haue / & I can fynde
 none so hardy that dare fight agaynst this paynem / and
 yf it be so that thou wylt take on⁷ the this enterpryse
 for me / I shall⁸ delyuer the & all thy company quyte 12
 to go in to thy countre at thy pleasure / and surely to
 condute the to the cyte of Acre. And also to⁹ gyue the
 a somer chargyd¹⁰ with gold / the whiche thou shalt
 present fro me to kynge Charlemayne / & euery yere 16
 fro hense forth to sende hym lyke present¹¹ for my hede
 mony / and ¹²therof to make suche wrytyng¹² as his
 counsell can deuise / and¹³ yf he haue any warre I shall
 sende hym two .M. men of arnes payed for a¹⁴ yere¹⁵ / and 20
 yf it be so that he desyre myne owne person / I shall¹⁶
 passe the see with a .C.M. paynymys to serue hym ; for I
 had rather to be in to¹⁰ seruitude there than to pay .iiii.
 drams to this Gyaunt ; and, more ouer, yf thou wylt 24
 abyde¹⁷ with me I shal gyue the my doughter Esclara-
 monde in maryage / and the halfe of my realme to
 mainteyne thyne estate.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I am
 content this to do / so that I may haue myn owne 28
 harnes¹⁸ & my ryche horne of yuorye and my cuppe,
 the whiche were taken fro me whan I was taken¹⁹
 prysoner.' 'Frende,' quod the admyrall, 'all shalbe

The Admiral
 invites him to
 accept the
 giant's challenge.

If Huon is suc-
 cessful in the
 fight,
 and he desires to
 return to France,
 he shall be freed
 and led to Acre,
 with presents for
 Charlemagne.

But if after his
 success he will
 stay with the
 Admiral,
 he shall wed
 Esclaramonde
 and possess half
 his realm.

¹ lookes. ²⁻³ no ill imprisonment. ³ therefore.
⁴ but. ⁵ Fol. xxxv. back, col. 2. ⁶ that. ⁷ vpon.
⁸ then. ⁹ I will. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ as.
¹²⁻¹³ to make such assurance. ¹³ also. ¹⁴ whole.
¹⁵ beforehand. ¹⁶ will then. ¹⁷ heere. ¹⁸ armour.
¹⁹ yielded.

delueryd to the : thou shalt not lese the valew of one
 peny' / than the admyrall sent for the horne &¹ harnes² /
 and cuppe / and deliueryd them to Huon, wher of
 4 he had grete ioy / ³whan Agraparte saw and knew
 that the admyrall had founde a champyon to fyght
 with hym, he sayd to the admyrall, ' syr, I wyll go out
 and speke with my knyghtes / and in y^e meane tyme
 8 let thy champyon be redy aparelyd / for I shall not
 tary longe / for⁴ I shall neuer haue ioy at my herte tyll
⁵I haue rased⁶ his herte out of his body.' ther with
 he deperted and wente to his men, & Huon dyd⁷ on his
 12 cote of mayle, and than he toke Gerames his horne of
 yuoray, & sayd, ' frende, I pray you kepe my horne tyll
 I returne agayne' / then he ⁸prayed ⁹our lorde to
 forgyue hym his synnes, to socoure and to ayed hym to
 16 dyscomfayt that foull fende the Gyaunt / ¹⁰when he had
 made his prayers to god he dyd⁷ on his harnes² as
 quickly as though he had neuer ben in preson, wherby
 he knew well that god was pleasyd *with* hym. ¹⁰than he
 20 sayd / ' o, noble kyng Oberon, I pray the sen¹¹ god is
 pleasyd with me, put away thy dyspleasure and perdon
 me / for the brekyng of thy commaundement I haue
 been sore punysshed, and I pray the be not dyspleasyd
 24 yf I spake eny hasty worde beyng in preson / ¹²famyn
 causyd me to do it / in the brekyng of thy com-
 maundement I confesse I dyd yll therin, yet 'it was
 but by neclygence and forgettyng / ¹³a, syr,¹³ what
 28 curtesey ye shewed me when ye founde me in the
 wod & gaue me your ryche horne and cuppe, by the
 whiche often tymes I haue ben succoured / therefore,
 syr, now I requyre the to perdon me all my trespasses
 32 and helpe me at my nede, for I see well without it be
 by the grace of god and your helpe ther is no thyng

The Admiral
 further promises
 to restore his
 cup, horn, and
 harnes,
 which he does
 straightway.

Agrapart is
 anxious for the
 fight.

Huon arms
 himself,
 and gives into
 Gerames' keeping
 the ivory horn.

Huon prays to
 Oberon that he
 may be received
 again into his
 favour.

¹ omitted. ² armour. ³ but. ⁴ beside.

⁶ Fol. xxxvi. col. 1. ⁶ torne. ⁷ put. ⁸ went and. ⁹ to.

¹⁰ and. ¹¹ seeing. ¹² for. ¹³⁻¹³ Alas, Sir, remember but.

A Saracen restores
his sword to him,

and a good horse
is given him.

The Admiral
admires Huon's
fair appearance
when he is
mounted and fully
armed.

can saue my lyfe' / thus he besought god of perdon
and to gyue hym grace to dystroy his enemy, who
is¹ orryble to beholde / and whan he had made his
oreson² ther cam a sarazyn to Huon, and sayd, 'syr, ⁴
here is your owne sworde that ye loste when ye were
taken.' 'frende,' quod huon, 'ye do ³to³ me grete
curtesy; god gyue me grace to rewarde the' / then he
dyd on his helme and gyrte on his sword / then⁴ the ⁸
Admyrall sent hym a good horse, the best in all his
courte, for he was not so fayre but he was ⁵of bountye⁵
aboue all other / when Huon saw hym he was ryght
ioyfull, and thankyd the Admyrall / as for his ryche ¹²
apparell,⁶ I make no men⁷cyon therof / the sadell, harnes,
and brydell were so ryche that the vales ther of coulde
not be estemed; then Huon made the sygne of the
crosse and mounted on his horse armed at all peces,⁸ ¹⁶
and so rode out of the palayes in to a fayre medow, and
there made a course to asay his horse / and then he
restyd hym before the Admyrall, who lened in a
wyndow in his palaes, and⁹ he beheld Huon, and¹⁰ sayed ²⁰
to his lordes / 'syr,¹¹ these frenchemen are to be
doughted and feryd, for Huon is a goodly yonge man,
and gret damage¹² it had been yf he had been slayne' /
the Admyrall commaundyd the felde to be kept with a ²⁴
thousand sarazyns, to thetent that no treason shulde be
done ¹³& then the Admyrall sayd, 'Mahound be thy
gyde.'¹³

¶ How Huon fought¹⁴ with Agrapart the ²⁸
gyant, and dyscomfyted hym, & delyuered
hym to the Admyrall, who had gret ioie
therof. Capitulo .xliiii.

¹ was so. ² prayer. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ and.
⁵⁻⁵ in goodness. ⁶ fourniture. ⁷ Fol. xxxvi. col. 2.
⁸ points. ⁹ when. ¹⁰ he. ¹¹ Trust me. ¹² wrong.
¹²⁻¹³ or any iniurie offered to his faire seeming Champion.
¹⁴ ofught in text.

- 1 **W**hen Huon had made his course he cam²
 to the felde Where as his enmy was
 redy.³ when Agraparte saw Huon he
 4 sayd / 'thou *that* art of so greate
 courage as to fyght ayenst me / how
 nere akyn art thou to the admyrall, sen⁴ for y^e loue of
 hym thou wylte put thy selfe in aduenture of dethe.
 8 'Paynem,' quod Huon, 'know for trouthe⁵ I am
 nothyng a⁶ kynne to the admyrall, but I was borne
 in the realme of Fraunce / & yf thou desyre to knowe
 what I am, I saye vnto the⁵ I am he that slew thy
 12 brother.' 'for that,' quod the paynem, 'I am the
 more sorowfull / and yet agayne⁷ ioyouse, when⁷ mahond
 hath done me that grace to haue poure to reuenge his
 dethe; but yf thou wylte beleue and worshyp my god
 16 Mahound, & forsake thy beleue, and go with me into
 my country, I shall make the so greate a lorde that⁶
 all thy kynne⁸ was neuer none⁹ suche / & I shall gyue
 the my syster in maryage, whiche¹⁰ ys a fote gretter
 20 than I am, and¹¹ as blacke as a cole' / 'paynem,' quod
 Huon, 'I care nother for thy lond, nor for thy syster,
 but all the deuylls in hell kepe them both; beware
 thou of me / for I shall neuer ioy in my herte vnto¹² the
 24 tyme⁵ I haue slayne the, as I haue done thy brother. I
 defy the in y^e name of god¹³ and of the vrygyn Mary¹³ /
 '& I the,' quod the Gyaunt, 'in the name of mahounde' /
 then they wente a sunder to take ther courses / then³
 28 they ran eche at other, & mett so fersly that ther speres
 brake in peces; ³ y^e encounter was so rude *that* by force
 of the horses¹⁴ bothe the horses fell to the yerth, and¹⁵
 y^e champyons quyckely releuyd,¹⁶ and so came eche
 32 vppon other / Agraparte toke vp his fauchyon to
 haue stryken Huon, but he stept a lytell on the one
- Agrapart asks
 Huon what
 relationship he
 bears to the
 Admiral.
 Huon replies that
 he is a French-
 man,
 and the slayer of
 Galafr.
 Agrapart offers
 him peace and
 himster in marriage
 if he will forsake
 his religion for
 that of Mahomet.
 Huon defies him
 in the name of
 God and of the
 Virgin.
 The fight begins
 and their horses
 fall.
- ¹ Fol. xxxvi. back, col. 1. ² in. ³ and. ⁴ seeing that.
⁵ that. ⁶ of. ⁷⁻⁷ ioyfull in that. ⁸ there.
⁹ any. ¹⁰ who. ¹¹ ia. ¹² vntill. ¹³⁻¹³ omitted.
¹⁴ shooke. ¹⁵ but. ¹⁶ recouered.

syde, wherby the paynem myst his stroke / and Huon
 lyfte vp his swerde, and strake the gyaunt on the helme
 so meruelus ¹a stroke, that he strake of a quarter ther
 of and Wounded hym sore, and the stroke descended ⁴
 downe, & dyd cut of his ere, so that y^e clere² blode ran
 downe to the ground. then Huon sayd, 'paynem,
 thou art³ vnhappy; when thou cammest hether thou
 myghtest haue ben contente with the dethe of thy ⁸
 brother, and not to cum hether to haue as moch,⁴ for
 thou shalt neuer see fayre day more' / when the
 gyant saw hymself hurt he had grete fere, and sayd,
 'cursyd be he of Mahunde *that* forgyd thy sword / I ¹²
 had rather I had ben bounde to haue payd a greater⁵
 sum of money to haue saued my lyf, then to be slayne
 here / therefore I yeld me⁶ to *thee*; take here my sworde;
 I pray the do me no hurt' / 'Paynym,' quod Huon, ¹⁶
 'haue no dought sen⁷ thou doest yelde the to me ther
 is non so hardy that shall do the eny dysplesure' / then
 Huon toke y^e paynem by the arme, and brought hym
 into y^e cytye, wher of the admyrall & all his lordes had ²⁰
 grete ioye; but the grete ⁸ioy⁸ that Esclaramund had
 passed all other / when Gerames saw how the gyant
 was ouer come, he came to y^e admyrall & sayd, '*sir*
 Admyrall, know for trouthe⁹ I am crystenyd, & I am ²⁴
 not your nephew; I cam hether but alonely¹⁰ to serche
 for my lorde Huon, and the better to know the trouthe
 I sayd I was sonne to yewryn of mount brake,¹¹ your
 brother, therby to know the sertente what was become ²⁸
 of Huon / for I knowe¹² well he was sent to you from
 kynge Charlemayne on ³²message.'

Huon deals
 Agrapart a fierce
 blow on his helm.

The giant is
 wounded,

and in fear for his
 life yields to
 Huon.

The Admiral is
 pleased at Huon's
 victory.

Gerames reveals
 himself to the
 Admiral.

¶ How Agraparte the gyant cryed mercy to
 the Admyrall / & how Huon desyryd the ³²

¹ Fol. xxxvi. back, col. 2. ² black. ³ wert. ⁴ thysself.
⁵ great. ⁶ myself. ⁷ seeing. ⁸⁻⁸ inward content.
⁹ that. ¹⁰ only. ¹¹ Mombrance. ¹² knew. ¹³ a.

Admyrall Gaudys to leue his law and to be
crystenyd. Capitulo .xlv.

1 **W** Han the admyrall herde Gerames he had
4 grete meruayle, and sayd / 'it is herde
for any man to be ware of the craft &
suttylte that is in a frencheman.' than
the admyrall saw where Huon was
8 comynge vp the grese,² and brought³ with hym the
Giaunt / than⁴ the admyrall and all other⁵ cam and
met hym, and Gerames and his company with them,⁶
who were ryght ioyfull whan they saw hym come / whan
12 Huon saw the admyrall he tooke Agrapart by y^e hand
and sayd to the admyrall, 'Syr, I delyuer hym into
your handes, that this day dyd you so grete iniurye
7 that he⁷ drewe you out of your chayr; I delyuer
16 hym⁸ to you to do with hym at your pleasure' / whan
Agrapart saw that he knelyd downe⁸ and sayd, 'syr
admyrall / he hath mych to do that foolyshely
thynketh / I say this by my selfe / for to day whan I
20 cam to you I thought my selfe the moost pyssaunt
man that reyned on the erth / and thought that ye were
not suffycyent nor worthy to *se*rsue me / but often
tymis⁹ beleuyng desseyueth hys mayster / for I thought
24 that for x men I wolde not ones¹⁰ a tournyd¹⁰ my chere
to haue regardyd them / but other wyse is fallen to me /
for I am discomfytyd alonely by one man, and am
taken and brought in to your handes, therfor ye may
28 do with me at your pleasure / therfore,¹¹ syr, I requyre
you haue pytye of¹² me, & pardon the outrage that I
haue done to¹³ you.' Than the admyrall answeryd and
sayd / how he wolde pardon hym on the condycyon
32 that he shulde neuer after trespas hym, nor no¹⁴ man in

Huon delivers
Agrapart to the
Admiral.

The giant repents
of his vain
boasting before
the fight.

The Admiral
pardons him on
condition of his

¹ Fol. xxxvii. col. 1. ² steps. ³ bringing. ⁴ whereon.
⁵ his Lordea. ⁶ him. ⁷⁻⁷ euen he that. ⁸ omitted.
⁹ rash. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ turne. ¹¹ yet. ¹² on. ¹³ vnto. ¹⁴ any.

becoming his man.

Agrapart does homage to the Admiral,

and they and the Frenchmen dine together.

Huon shows the Admiral how his cup fills with wine when the sign of the cross is made above it.

It is handed to the Admiral, but it remains empty while he holds it.

his countre / and be syde *that*, to become my¹ man, and to do me² homage before all them that³ be here³ present. ‘Syr,’ quod Agrapart, ‘I am redy to fulfyll your pleasure’ / ⁴than he dyd homage to the admyrall in the presence of all them *that* were there / than⁴ in grete ioye they sat all downe to dyner / y^e ⁵admyrall made greate honour to Huon / & made⁶ hym⁷ syt by hym / than Agrapart and Gerames, and all the other frenche men.⁸ 8 As for there seruys, and many dyshes of sundry sortes of mettes, I leue spekyng of them. Huon, who had grete deayre to accomplyshe his enterpryse, drew out his cuppe / the whiche Gerames hade⁹ delyueryd to 12 hym with his horne of yuory / & ¹⁰said to y^e admyrall / ‘*sir*, ye may se here this ryche cuppe in my hand, y^e which y^e se¹¹ all empty’ / ‘syr,’ quod y^e admyrall, ‘I se wel ther is no thinge therin.’¹² ‘*sir*,’ quod Huon, 16 ‘I shall shew you how our law is holy and deuyne.’ than Huon made the sygne of the crosse thre tymes ouer the cuppe / the which incontynent was full of wyne, wher of¹³ the admyrall had grete meruayle. ‘Syr,’ 20 quod Huon, ‘I present you this cuppe, that ye shulde¹⁴ drynke therof / ⁴than shall ye se¹⁵ the goodnes of the wyne.’ the admyrall tooke it in his hande / and incontynent the cuppe was voyde, & y^e wyne vanysshyd 24 away / than¹³ the admyrall had grete meruayle, and sayde / ‘Huon, ye haue enchauntyd me.’¹⁶ ‘Syr,’ quod Huon, ‘I am none enchaunter / but it is by cause ye be full of synne. for the lawe that ye holde is of no 28 valure¹⁷ / the grete vertue that god hath put in this cuppe, by reason of the sygne of the crosse that I made¹⁸ ye may parseyue that my saynge is trew /

¹ his. ² him. ³⁻³ were there. ⁴ and.

⁵ Fol. xxxvii. col. 2. ⁶ caused. ⁷ to. ⁸ sat downe.

⁹ before. ¹⁰ then. ¹¹ is. ¹² Now.

¹³ wherewith. ¹⁴ may. ¹⁵ tast. ¹⁶ Not so.

¹⁷ wroth. ¹⁸ whereby.

'Huon, quod the admyrall, 'ye nede ¹to haue no besynes¹ to spe to me to forsake my beleue² to take yours / but I wolde knowe of you whether ye wyll

4 abyde here with me, or elles to³ go in to Fraunce / for that I haue promyshyd you I shall fulfyll it.' 'A, sir admyrall,' quod Huon, 'I know⁴ you wyll kepe couenaut with me in that ye haue promysyd me.

8 But, syr, aboue all other matters I pray you haue pyte of your owne soule, the whiche shal be dampnyd in hell without ye leue your beleue, ⁵the whiche is⁵ nother good nor iust / for⁶ without ye do thus, I swer

12 by ⁶my fayth that I shall ⁷cause so⁷ many men of armes that al the houses in your palays and cyte shalbe full' / whan y⁸ admyrall herd Huon say so he behelde his owne men and sayd, 'Syr, here ye may wel here the

16 pryde that is in this frencheman, who hath been more than halfe a yere in my pryson, and now he thretenethe to slee me by cause I wyll not take on me his law, and leue myn owne / I haue grete meruayle where he

20 shulde fynde⁸ men as he hath sayd / or ⁹to let⁹ me to slee hym at my pleasure. 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'yet I demaunde¹⁰ of you yf ye wyll do as I haue sayd.'

'Huon,' quod the admyrall, 'beware on payn of your 24 eyen, and as myche as ye loue your lyfe, *that* ye speke no more to me of this mater, for by the fayth that I owe to mahound / yf al kyng Charlemayn's host were here assembled,¹¹ shulde not lye in there power to saue

28 your lyfe.' 'Admyrall,' quod Huon, 'I am in dought that to late ye shall¹² repent you.

Huon tries to persuade the Admiral to become Christian,

and threatens to overrun his city with armed men if he refuse.

The Admiral angrily protests against Huon's threat.

¶ How Huon, seyng that the admyrall wolde not forsake his beleue, blew his horne /

1-1 not to trouble yourself. 2 and. 3 omitted.
 4 well. 5-5 in that it is. 6 Fol. xxxvii. back, col. 1.
 7-7 call hether. 8 such store of. 9-9 what lets.
 10 once more. 11 it. 12 will.

wherby Oberon cam to hym / and ¹the
 admyrall² slayne and all his men / and how
 Huon and the fayre Esclaramoude were
 in perell of drownynge by reason that he ⁴
 brake the commaundement of kinge
 Oberon. Ca. .xlvi.



Huon blows his
 horn,

and the Admiral
 and his company
 rise and dance.

Oberon hears the
 blast,

and declares he
 will lead an army
 to Huon's aid.

With his men he
 straightway
 appears at
 Babylon,
 and slays all who
 will not become
 Christians.

Han Huon saw that y^e admyrall wolde
 not leue his law to receyue crysten- ⁸
 dome / he sette his horne to his
 mouthe / and blewe it ³by suche
 force³ that the blud brast⁴ out of his
 mouthe / so that the admyrall & all other that were ¹²
 there put the tabylles fro them and rose, and all that
 were in the ⁵palays began to synge & daunce / the same
 tyme kyng Oberon was in his wood, and herd ⁶the
 horne blowe, sayd, 'A, good lorde, I know surely that ¹⁶
 my frende Huon hathe greate nede of me / I pardon
 hym of all his trespas, for he hath ben suffycyentely
 ponyshyd / ⁷I wishe my selfe with hym with an
 .C.M. men well armyd / there is not in all y^e worlde so ²⁰
 noble a man as Huon is / it is⁸ pytye that his herte is
 so lyght and mutable' / than incontynent he with all
 his company were in y^e cyte of Babylon, where as they
 began to slee all suche as wolde not beleue of ⁹Ihesu ²⁴
 Cryst / ¹⁰than Oberon went to the palays with all his
 cheualrye, and euey man *wit*h his sword naked in
¹¹there handes¹¹ / when Huon saw Oberon / he embrasyd
 hym & sayd, 'I ought greatly to thank god and you ²⁸
 that ye become so far of to ayde me in all my besynes.'
 'Huon,' quod Oberon, 'as ye beleue me and worke by
 my counsell, I shall not fayle you' / than on all sydes
 they slew paynyns, men & ¹²wemen & chyldren / except ³²

¹ how. ² was. ³⁻³ with such violence. ⁴ issued.

⁵ Fol. xxxvii. back. col. 2. ⁶ hearing. ⁷ and now.

⁸ great. ⁹ on. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹⁻¹¹ his hand. ¹² omitted.

suche as wolde become¹ crystenyd. Oberon came to the admyrall & toke hym and delyueryd hym into the handys of Huon, who had there of greate ioy / ²than
 4 Huon demaundyd of the admyrall what he was myndyd to do ³to³ leue y^e lawe of Mahounde and to⁴ take cryst-endome. 'Huon,' quod the admyrall, 'I had rather be hewyn al to peaces than to take your law and to⁴ for-
 8 sake myne owne' / Oberon than sayd to Huon, 'why do ye tary to put hym to deth?' / than⁵ Huon lyft vp his sworde and strake⁶ ther with the admyrall, that his hede flewe fro hys sholders / than² Oberon sayd to
 12 Huon, 'Now it lyeth well in thy power to be quyte with⁷ Charlemayne' / than Huon tooke y^e admyralles hede and openyd his mouthe, and tooke out hys .iiii. grete teth / and than cut of hys berde and tooke therof as
 16 myche as pleasyd hym / than Oberon sayd, 'Now ⁸thou hast in thy handes the admyralles teth and berde / looke, as well as thou louest thy lyfe, kepe them well.' Oberon bids Huon take good care of these trophies,
 'A, syr,' quod Huon, 'I requyre you⁹ put theym in
 20 suche a plase that¹⁰ they may be well kept / ²so that I may haue them¹¹ in tyme of nede / for I fele my selfe that my herte is so lyght / that¹² other I shall forgete them or elles lese them' / 'of this¹³ thou sayest,' quod
 24 Oberon, 'I thynke thou spekest wyslye / ¹⁴I do wyssh them in Gerames syde in suche maner that they shall do hym no hurte' / he had no soner spoken the worde / but by the wyll of god and the power that he had in¹⁵
 28 the fayrye / they were closyd in Gerames syde in suche wyse that no man coude se them / than he sayde to Huon / 'frende, I must go to my castell of Momure / I desyre you to do well / ye shall take with you Esclara-
 32 monde, doughter to the admyrall. But I charge you on payne of your lyfe, and in as myche as ye fere to

Oberon gives the Admiral into Huon's hands.

Huon slays him because he refuses to be converted,

and takes out his four great teeth, and cuts off his beard.

Oberon bids Huon take good care of these trophies,

and by his power of enchantment causes them to be placed in Gerames' side so that none could see them, nor did Gerames feel any hurt from them. Oberon takes leave of Huon, and bids him take Esclaramonde with him to France,

¹ be. ² and. ³⁻³ if he would. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ whereuppon. ⁶ after therwith. ⁷ king.

⁸ Fol. xxxviii. col. 1. ⁹ to. ¹⁰ where. ¹¹ again.

¹² as. ¹³ that. ¹⁴ therefore. ¹⁵ by.

but avoid all
intercourse with
her till they are
married at Rome.

Huon promises to
obey Oberon.

A beautiful ship
is made ready by
Oberon for
Huon's journey.

Oberon foretells
great misery for
Huon.

Esclaramonde is
made a Christian,
and Huon's
cousin is wedded
to a converted
Admiral,

displease me / that ye be not so hardy¹ to company
with her bodely tyll² ye be maryed together in y^e cyte
of Rome / and³ yf thou dost the contrary / thou shalt
fynde suche pouerte and mysery, that though thou 4
haddest doble y^e myschyefe that thou hast had sens
thou camyst out of Fraunce, ⁴it shulde⁴ be no thyng
in regarde to⁵ that / that shall fall to the here after yf
thou breke my commaundement.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 8
'by y^e pleasure of our lord Ihesu Cryst I shall ⁶be well
ware⁶ of doynge of any thyng agaynst your pleasure.'
Then Oberon aparelyd a ryche shyppe, well garnyshyd
with chambers, and hangyd so rychely that it was 12
incredible to be her-1 or sene / there was no cord / but
it was of gold and sylke / yf I shulde shew you the
beaute and ryches of this shyppe, it shulde⁷ be ouer
longe to resyte it / whan the shyppe was fournyshyd 16
with vytaylles / than he put therin his horses / than
Oberon took leue of Huon, and kyssyd and embrasyd
hym, ⁸sore wepyng⁹ / whan Huon saw hym wepe he
had greate meruayle, and sayd, 'Dere sir, for what 20
cause do you wepe?' 'Huon,' quod he, 'the thyng
that mouyth me thus to do / is by cause I haue ¹⁰of the¹⁰
grete petye / for yf thou knewest the pouerte and
mysery that thou shalt endure / there is no membre¹¹ 24
thou hast but that¹² shulde⁷ trymble for fere / for I know
for certen / that thou hast so myche to suffer / that
¹³therein is¹³ none humayne tonge can reherse it' / and
then Oberon departyd without more spekyng / whan 28
Huon saw Oberon departe he was ryght pensyue / but
his ¹⁴grete¹⁴ youthe put hym out of his sorow / and¹⁵
made his ordynaunce in the cyte, and crystenyd y^e
fayre lady Esclaramonde, and after dyd marye his 32
Cosyn Heylye¹⁶ to an admirall of the cowntre who was

¹ as. ² vntill. ³ for. ⁴⁻⁴ yet can it. ⁵ of. ⁶⁻⁶ well beware.

⁷ would. ⁸ Fol. xxxviii. col. 2. ⁹⁻⁹ greatly lamenting.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ after petye. ¹¹ that. ¹² it. ¹³⁻¹³ omitted.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ sweetness of. ¹⁵ Then hee. ¹⁶ Sibilla.

newly crystenyd / and Huon gauē to theym the cyte of Babylon and all that longed therto. Than he made & ordeyned a lytell shyppe to go with his owne shyppe, 4 to thentent to send a lond for vytaylles whan nede¹ requyred¹ / than he and his company went in to his grete shyp, & so toke leue of his cosyn that was newly maryed, who was ryght sorowfull for his departyngē.

8 Than they lyft² vp theyr saylles / and had a good freshe³ wynde, and so saylled tyll they were out of the ryuer of Nile / & so passyd by Damiet and came in to the hye see and had wynde at wyll / and on a day⁴ they⁵ 12 sat at dyner and made good chere / for by reason of his cup they had wyne at theyr pleasure. 'A, good lorde,' quod Huon, 'greatly I am bounde to thanke you⁵ / that I haue such a cuppe and horne and harnes⁶ / for 16 whan so cuer I wyl⁷ blowe my horne I can haue men ynōw to come to ayde me / and also I haue the admyralles berde and grete teth / and⁸ specyally the fayre lady Esclaramonde, whom I loue so parfyghtly⁹ that I⁹ 20 am so¹⁰ in amoures¹⁰ with her fayre body / that I can no lenger end¹¹ure it / how be it, the dwarfe Oberon to mocke me hath¹² deffendyd me in any wyse¹² that I sholde not touche her in no¹³ wyse. But I wyll well¹⁴ 24 that he knowe / that in this case I wyll not obey hym / for she is myn owne, therefore I wyll do with her at my pleasure.' whan Gerames herde hym, he sayd, 'A,¹⁵ syr, what wyll ye do? Ye knowe well Oberon 28 neuer as yet made any lye¹⁶ to you¹⁶ / but alwayes ye haue founde hym trew / for yf he had not been,¹⁷ both you and we all had ben lost or¹⁸ this tyme. And now¹⁹ ye wolde breke his commaundement / yf ye touche this 32 lady or²⁰ the tyme come that he hath sette you, greate

who becomē the ruler of Babylon.

Huon and his company pass the river.

Huon cannot resist his love for Esclaramonde.

Gerames warns Huon to remember Oberon's latest command.

1-1 should require. 2 set. 3 faire. 4 as.
 5 kinge Oberon. 6 armour. 7 shall. 8 but. 9-9 and.
 10-10 enamoured. 11 Fol. xxxviii. back, col. 1.
 12-12 forbidden me strictly. 13 any. 14 after that he.
 15 Alas. 16-16 omitted. 17 so. 18 before. 19 againe. 20 ere.

But Huon will not
listen to him.

Gerames declares
he will leave the
ship,

and with thirteen
men enters a
little boat and
goes away.

Huon and
Esclaramonde
take their
pleasure together.

Soon after a
terrible storm
arises,

and the ship is
broken to pieces.

Huon and
Esclaramonde are
driven on to an
island.


mysfor:une shall fall therby' / 'Gerames,' quod Huon /
'for you / nor for none¹ other² I shall not leue³ / but
or³ I departe I wyll haue of her my pleasure; and yf
any of you be afrayed, I am contente he shall departe 4
in this lytell shyppe and goo where as⁴ he lyst / and
take vytayle in to it for there⁵ prouysyon.' 'Syr,'
quod Gerames, 'sen⁶ ye wyll do none other wyse, I am
ryght sorowfull / and I wyll departe, and so wyll do⁴ 8
all oure other company.' Than Gerames departyd out
of the grete shyppe and enteryd in to y^e lytell shyppe,
and .xiii. in his company / & Huon taryed styll with
the lady. and whan he sawe that all his company 12
was departyd, he went & made redye a bed, & sayd to
the lady / 'dame,⁷ surely I must⁸ haue my pleasure of
you' / whan she herde Huon / she fell downe sore
wepyng, and humbly desyred Huon that he wolde for- 16
bere her company vnto⁹ the tyme¹⁰ they were¹¹ maryede
together / accordyng to the promyse that he had made
to kyng Oberon / 'fayre lady,' quod Huon, 'none
excuse can auayle / for it must be thus' / than he 20
tooke the lady and made her goo to bed / and there
they took together theyr pleasures / he had no sonner
accomplyshyd his wyll / but there rose suche a meruel-
ous tempest / that the wawes of ¹²the see semyd so greate 24
and hye as mounteyns / and therwith it blew and thon-
deryd and lyghtenyd that it was¹³ ferefull to beholde
the see / and the shyppe was so sore tormentyd / that
¹⁴the shyppe brast¹⁴ all to peces, so that there abode¹⁵ 28
but one pece of tymbre where apon Huon and the
lady was / and it happyd so well for them that they
were nere to an yle, and thether the wynde draue
them / & whan they sawe¹⁰ they were there aryuyd, 32

¹ any. ²⁻³ will I not forbear. ³ ere. ⁴ omitted.
⁵ his. ⁶ seeing. ⁷ Madame. ⁸ now.
⁹ vntill. ¹⁰ that. ¹¹ should be.
¹² Fol. xxxviii. back, col. 2. ¹³ very. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ it burst.
¹⁵ remained.

and that they were on the londe, they both kneled
 downe & thankyd our lord Iesu Cryst that they
 were¹ scapyd the parell of drownynge / the other
 4 company that were in the lytell shyppe / draue at
 aenture in the see, and they cryed to oure lorde Iesu
 Cryst to saue them fro drownynge / ²they had sene well
 howe the shyppe with Huon and the lady was broken
 8 in the see, wherfore they thought surely that Huon
 and the lady was pereshyd. Now lette vs leue spekn-
 ynge of³ Huon of Burdeux & of⁴ y^e fayre Esclaramonde.

The litle ship in
 which are
 Gerames and his
 company is
 greatly distressed.
 The knights see
 Huon's ship
 wrecked,
 and fear he and
 his Esclaramonde
 have perished.

¶ How Huon and Esclaramonde aryued in
 12 an yle all naked, & howe the pyrates of
 the see tooke Esclaramonde and left Huon
 alone, and bounde his handes and fete and
 iyen. Capitulo .xlviij.

16  Han Huon and Esclaramonde sawe
 howe they were dryuen a londe all
 naked, peteously wepyng they enteryd
 in to the yle, where as theyr dwelt
 20 nother man nor woman / but the
 erthe was so fayre and grene that⁵ ioy it was to se it /
 it ⁶ was happy for them that the wether was so fayre
 and hote / so⁷ they hidde them⁸ in the grene herbes,⁹
 24 to thentent they shold not be parseyued / ¹⁰the lady
 wept peteously / than¹¹ Huon sayd,¹² 'fayre⁴ lady, be
 not abasshyd / for if we dye for loue we shall not be the
 fyrst / for trystram dyed for the loue of the fayre Isoude,¹³
 28 and she for hym' / and so al wepyng they clyppyd
 and kyssyd eche other. and as they lay wrappyd in
 the grene grasse / ther arueyd .x. sarazyns in a lytell

The island which
 Huon and
 Esclaramonde are
 on is without
 inhabitants.

They seek to
 comfort each
 other.

¹ so well. ² for. ³ of them, returning again to.
⁴ omitted. ⁵ great. ⁶ Fol. xxxix. col. l.
⁷⁻⁷ it was likewise so faire & hot that. ⁸ selues.
⁹ grasse. ¹⁰ still. ¹¹ and. ¹² vnto her.
¹³ Isoluda.

A little vessel
brings
ten Saracen
pirates to the
place.

Huon hears them
coming to
where he and
Esclaramonde
lay,
and rises.

Approaching
them he begs
them for some
bread.

The pirates learn
his sad story,

and give him two
loaves,

vessell, and¹ enteryd in to the yle, ²& toke² freshe water & other thynges that they nedyd / than they sayd eche to other, 'lette vs goo forth in to this yle and se yf we can fynde any aduventure' / they³ were pyrates of the 4 see, and had seruyd before the admyrall Gaudys, father to 'the fayre⁴ Esclaramonde. Huon, who was with his loue in the grene herbes⁵ / herd how nere to them was people comyng / he thought to go to them to 8 se yf he myght get any mete. 'Dere loue,' quod Huon, 'I praye you goo not hense / tyll I retourne.' 'Syr,' quod she, 'god be your gyde / but I requyre you re⁶tourne agayne shortely' / than he departyd ⁷as 12 so⁷ naked as he was borne / and so came to them or⁸ they had dyned / ⁹he salutyd them & desyryd them humblye for the loue of god to gyue hym sum brede / one of them answeyrd & sayd / 'frende, thou shalt 16 haue ynough / but we praye the shew vs what aduventure hath brought the hether.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'the tempest of the see hathe brought me hether, for the shyppes that I was in pereshyd, and all my company.' 20

WHan they herd hym they had grete petye, and gaue hym .ii. loues of brede / Huon toke them and departyd & thanked¹⁰ them, and⁴ went¹¹ to his loue,¹² and gaue her parte of y^o brede, wherof she was¹³ 24 glade. then the pyrates that had gyuen Huon the brede sayd one to an other, 'this man that is thus gone for vs¹⁴ can not be but that he hath sum¹⁵ company / therefore lette vs goo preuely¹⁶ after hym, and peradventure we 28 shall fynde out his company, for ¹⁷we thynk¹⁷ yf he were alone he wolde not¹⁸ haue come to vs' / 'lette vs go and se,' quod all the other, 'and not retourne tyll we knowe y^o trouthe.' than they went all together and 32

¹ who. ²⁻² to take. ³ those men. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted.
⁵ grasse. ⁶ Fol. xxxix. col. 2. ⁷⁻⁷ all as. ⁸ before.
⁹ where. ¹⁰ thanking. ¹¹ backe. ¹² Loue.
¹³ not a little. ¹⁴ surely it. ¹⁵ other. ¹⁶ presently.
¹⁷⁻¹⁷ mee thinkes. ¹⁸ so.

foolowed Huon as preuely as they coude / and when they came nere where as he was they saw hym and the lady nere¹ by hym etynge of y^e brede that they had
 4 gyuen hym / than² they stode styll and aduysyd them to se yf they coude haue any knolege of hym or of the lady. And³ amonge them there was one *that* sayd,
 ‘Syr, neuer beleue me, but this lady is the fayre
 8 Esclaramonde, doughter to the admyrall Gaudys / and he that is with her is the same frencheman that fought with Gallaffer⁴ and slew hym / and also y^e admy⁵rall. It is happy *that* we haue founde them, and specyally
 12 that he is naked, without armure, for yf *that* he were armed, oure lyues were but short’ / whan they knew surely⁶ that it was Esclaramonde, doughter to the admyrall Gaudys / they than approchyd nere to them /
 16 and cryed alowde, and sayd, ⁷‘ A, dame⁷ Esclaramonde, your flyenge away auayleth you nothyng, for by you & your meanes your father hath been slayne by y^e thefe that sytteth there by you / certainly⁸ we shall brynge
 20 you to your vnclc Iuorym of mombrant / who shall take of you suche correccyon that ye shalbe an ensample to all other, and y^e lechour that is by you shalbe² flayne ⁹all quycke⁹’ / whan the lady sawe
 24 these paynmys, she was ryght sorowfull and sore dyscomforyd / than she kneled downe and helde up her handes and prayed them humbly / that they wolde
 haue petye on y^e frencheman / and as for her owne lyfe,
 28 she dyd put it to there¹⁰ pleasures, other to slee her or to drowne her or to bryng her to her vnclc. ‘And, syrs,¹¹ I swere by Mahounde that if ye wyll graunt my request / yf I can be agreed with myne vnclc Iuorym /
 32 I shall do you all suche pleasurs that ye & all yours shall be ryche for euer after. And¹² lytell shall ye

but they follow him when he returns to Esclaramonde, and see the two eating the bread together.

The Saracens recognize Esclaramonde and Huon, because they had been at the Admiral's court.

They reproach Esclaramonde with the death of her father,

and threaten to take her to her uncle Ivoryn,

and to kill Huon.

Esclaramonde pleads for Huon's life,

¹ hard. ² there. ³ Now. ⁴ Agrapart.

⁵ Fol. xxxix. back, col. l. ⁶ certainly. ⁷⁻⁷ Madame.

⁸ therefore. ⁹⁻⁹ before your face. ¹⁰ owne.

¹¹ (quoth shee.) ¹² for.

wynne by the deth of one poore man.' 'Dame,'¹ quod they / 'we are well content to leue hym here; but we shall do hym all the shame and rebuke that we can, that he shall² remembre it³ euer after' / than they toke **4** Huon / and layd hym on the grene grasse / and than dyd bynd⁴ his iyen / ⁵handes and fete / so *that* the blode brast⁶ out at the⁷ nayles, wherby he was in suche dystres that he sownyd thre tymes and peteously called **8** on oure lorde god to haue petye of hym and to forgyue⁸ his synnes / whan the swete Esclaramonde sawe her louer Huon so handelyd / and that she sholde departe fro hym / to shew the petyefull compleyntes that she **12** made it ⁹were impossyble. Also Huon made peteous compleyntes whan his louer¹⁰ Esclaramond departyd, the which greuyd hym more than his owne payne that he sufferyd. Now we shall leue spekyng of hym and **16** ¹¹speke of¹¹ the fayre Esclaramonde.

which they agree to spare,

but they bind his eyes, hands, and feet, and torture him.

Esclaramonde is led away by the pirates.

¶ How the fayre Esclaramonde was led a way with the pyrates of the see / and how the admyrall Galaffer of Ansalerne delyueryd **20** her out of there handes. Ca. .xlviij.



Huon is left alone on the island.

Owe sheweth the hystory¹² whan these theues had taken & bound Huon, handes / fete & iyen / they **2** left hym about¹³ in the yle, & toke the fayre Esclaramonde & brought her in to theyr shyppe / than they gaue her a gowne and a mantell furryd with ermyns / for they were **28** robbers of the see, and had myche good in theyr shyppe / than they sayled forth nyght and day / at

¹ Ladie. ² may. ³ for. ⁴ blind. ⁵ and binde his.
⁶ burst. ⁷ his. ⁸ him. ⁹ Fol. xxxix. back, col. 2
¹⁰ Loue. ¹¹⁻¹¹ say what happened afterward to.
¹² how that. ¹³ alone.

last a wynd ¹toke them whether they wolde or not / they aryued at the port of Anfalerne; & the same tyme the admyrall there was newly rysyn fro his dyner, and
 4 stode lenynge out at a windowe in his palays / and then² he parseyuyd y^e shyppe *that* lay at ancre in y^e hauen / & saw the baners & stremers wauinge with the wynde / wherby³ he wel parseyuyd that y^e shyppe per-
 8 teynyd to kyng Iuoryn of Mombrant / than⁴ he with his lordes went downe to the hauen. Than he cryed out alowde / and sayd, 'Syr, what marchaundys haue ye brought?' / 'syr,' quod they, 'we haue brought
 12 sendalles & clothes of sylke / wherfore, *sir*, yf we shal pay any tribut or custome, we are redy to pay it at your pleasure' / than Galaffer, y^e admirall, sayd / 'I know well ynough yf ye sholde pay any trybute ye
 16 sholde not chose but ⁵to⁵ do it. But, syrs, I pray you tell me what damesell is *that*⁶ I se in your shyppe sore wepyng?' 'Syr,' quod they, 'it is a sclau, a crysten woman, whom we bought at Damiet.' The lady herd
 20 well how the admyral demaundyd for her, &⁷ what answer y^e maryners had made / than she cryed out alowd and sayd, 'A, syr admyrall, for y^e loue & honour of Mahounde I pray you haue petye on me, for I am
 24 no sclau, for⁸ I am doughter to the admyrall Gaudys of Babylone / who is deed & slayne by a frencheman / these⁹ maryners here hath taken me / & wolde carye me to myne vncl, kyng Iuoryn of Mombrant / and I
 28 know surely, yf he had me, he wolde byrne me ⁵in a fyer.'⁵ 'Fayre ladye,' quod the admyrall, 'dysmay you not / for ye shall abyde *wit*h me whether they wyll or not' / than he commaundyd y^e maryners to
 32 bryng y^e lady to hym / &⁸ they answeyrd¹⁰ they wolde not so do / than y^e admirall commaundyd to take her

Esclaramonde sails away with the Saracens. They arrive at the port of Anfalerne,

and the Admiral, seeing them from his palace,

perceives from their ship that they are subjects of King Ivoryn.

The Admiral inquires what merchandise the ship carries

and who is the damsel with them.

They reply falsely

but Esclaramonde declares her parentage.

The Admiral promises to release her,

¹ Fol. xl. col. 1. ² when. ³ thereby. ⁴ wheruypon.
⁵⁻⁵ omitted. ⁶ which. ⁷ likewise. ⁸ but.
⁹ the. ¹⁰ that.

and fights for her
with the pirates
whom he over-
comes.

The Admiral
falls in love with
Esclaramonde.

Esclaramonde
begs him to tarry
a while before
making her his
wife.


She prays to
Christ to give her
strength to
remain faithful to
Huon.

fro them perforce / ¹than they of the shyppe began to
make defence. But anone they were all slayne, & the
lady taken, & brought to the admyrall / and² had grete
ioy therof / how be³ it, he was sory by cause one of them ⁴
that were in y^e shyppe skapyd away & fled to Mom-
brant / how be it,⁴ y^e admyrall caryd not gretely for
it / syn⁵ he had y^e lady, whom he brought in to his
palays / whan y^e admirall saw her so exceeding fayre / ⁸
he was taken in⁶ loue, so *that* incontynent he wolde
haue maryed her after the sarazyns lawe / wherof she
was ryght sorowfull, & sayd, 'Syr, reason it is *that* I do
your pleasure, syn⁵ ye haue ryd me out of y^e handes of ¹²
these pyrates of the see. But, syr, I requyre you for
the loue *that* ye bere me that ye wyll forbere your
pleasure at this present tyme / for, *sir*, I haue made a
faythfull vow & promyse / *that* for a yere & a day fro ¹⁶
hense forth I wyll not lye⁷ nor touch any man bodely⁸ /
of⁹ the whiche auow, syr, I am nowe sory ¹⁰of for y^e
loue of you / for,¹⁰ syr, I am ryght ioyfull *that* ye wolde¹¹
me so myche honour as to haue me to your wyfe / oure ²⁰
greate god Mahounde rewarde you / and,¹² syr, for y^e
loue of hym I pray you be content tyll¹³ myn auow
be acumplyshyd' / 'fayre lady,' quod he, 'know for
trouthe / that for the honoure of my god Mahounde, & ²⁴
for the loue of you, I am content to tary this yere / ye,
& yf it were .xx. yere / than¹⁴ to be sure of your loue.'
'Syr,' quod she, 'Mahounde rewarde you' / than¹⁵ she
sayd to her selfe, 'A, dere lord god Jesu Cryst, humbly ²⁸
I requyre *thee* to gyue me *that* grace to kepe my trouthe
to my louer Huon, for or¹⁶ I shall do the contrary I
shall suffer as myche payne & dolowre¹⁷ as euer woman

¹ and. ² who. ³ Fol. xl. col. 2. ⁴ notwithstanding.
⁵ seeing. ⁶ her. ⁷ with. ⁸ boldly. ⁹ for.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ euen for the loue that I beare to you, but ¹¹ will doe.
¹² now. ¹³ vntill. ¹⁴ then *after* loue. ¹⁵ but.
¹⁶ ere. ¹⁷ greefe.

dyd / nor ¹for fere of deth I shal neuer breke my
trouthe.¹ Now leue we to speke of her, & speke ²of
the thefe that scapyd out of the shyppe.

4 ¶ How the pyrat fled to Mombrant to Iuoryn /
& how he sent to defy the Admyrall
Galaffer of Anfalerne, and of the answer
that he had.³ Capitulo .xlix.

8 4  E haue herd here before how the fayre
Esclaramonde was rescued⁵ by the
Admyrall Gallaffer / and of the maner
that she founde to kepe her selfe trew
to Huon, & how one of the maryners

12 scapyd away and fled by londe, and at last⁶ came to the
cyte of Mombrant, where as he founde Iuoryn, to whom
he shewed all the hole mater as ye haue herde / and

16 howe his brother y^e admyral Gaudys was slayn by a
yong frenche knyght / and howe he & his company
founde the sayd knyght 'and your⁷ nece the fayre
Esclaramonde / whom we⁸ had thought to haue brought

20 to you.⁹ But¹⁰ y^e Admyrall Gallaffer hathe taken *them*
fro vs by force, and hath taken our shyppe and slayn
all your men that were within,¹¹ so that none scapyd but
I alonely.¹² whan kynge Iuoryn vnderstode y^e maryner

24 he sayd, 'A, syr¹³ Mahounde, how haue you sufferyd
that my brother Gaudys hathe thus pteously be
slayne / and also my nece hys daughter to consent
therto / certenly the doloure¹⁴ that I fele at my herte

28 constrayneth me rather to desyre ¹⁵the¹⁶ deth than lyfe.
And also, moreouer, to se *hym that* is myn owne
subget, and ¹⁵he that¹⁶ holdeth his londes of me / to
kepe my nece and thus to slee my men. Alas, I can not

News of
Esclaramonde's
fortune and of the
murder of
Gaudise is
brought to his
brother Ivoryn,
of the city of
Mombrant.

Ivoryn is
indignant that the
Admiral, who is
his subject,
should hold his
niece
Esclaramonde.

¹⁻¹ and I will neuer breake my troth for fere of deth.

² say somewhat. ³ there. ⁴ Fol. xl. back, col. 1.

⁵ receiued. ⁶ he. ⁷ his. ⁸ they. ⁹ him.

¹⁰ quoth he. ¹¹ it. ¹² alone. ¹³ mightle.

¹⁴ greefe. ¹⁵⁻¹⁶ omitted.

His lords advise that a message be sent to the Admiral, bidding him give Esclaramonde up to Ivoryn, and make reparation for the death of his sailors.

An envoy is sent, and arrives at Anfalerne.

The Admiral will not obey Ivoryn's command.

well saye what I sholde do therin / a lytell thyng wolde cause me to slee myselfe.' Than in great dyspleasure he called his lordes, & causyd the maryner to come before them / & there he made hym to shew agayne all ⁴ the mater before them all:¹ how his brother y^e admirall Gaudys was slayne, & also how the admyrall Gallaffer / helde by force his nece, & how he had slayne his men / ²whan the lordes had herd ³all this,³ they sayd⁴ ⁸ to Ivoryn, 'Syr, our aduyce is *that* ye sholde sende one of your secrete messengers to the admyrall Gallaffer / & commaund hym incontynent to sende you your nece / ⁵and to make amendes in *that* he hath slayne ¹² your men / and that he sende you worde by wrytyng what cause hath moued hym thus to do / and yf it be so that pryde doth so surmont⁶ hym that he wyll not obey your commaundementes / than by a iust quarell ¹⁶ ye may go and make warre vpon hym, and take fro hym all hys londes *that* he holdeth of you' / whan Ivoryn vnderstode his lordes / he sayd, 'syrs, I parseyue well your opynyon is good' / ⁷than a messenger was ²⁰ appoyntyd and his charge gyuen hym, & so⁸ departyd, and rode so longe *that*⁹ he came to Anfalerne, where as⁸ he founde y^e admyrall Gallaffer / whom he salutyd in y^e name of Mahounde / & than he declared his message ²⁴ at lenth / ¹⁰whan¹⁰ Gallaffer herd his message, he sayd, 'frende, go & saye to kinge Ivoryn, *that* as for y^e delyueraunce of his nece, I wyll not so³ do¹¹ / & as for his men *that* be¹² slayne, it was¹³ theyr owne foly, & ²⁸ as touchynge *that* I sholde come to hym / I wyll not come at hym / lette him do what he can / ¹⁴yf he come &¹⁵ assayle me I shall defende as well as I can' / whan y^e messenger herd *that* he sayd / 'sir admyrall, sen¹⁶ ³²

¹ both. ² which. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ thus.
⁶ Fol. xl. back, col. 2. ⁶ in. ⁷ and. ⁸ he. ⁹ till.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ but assoone as. ¹¹ it. ¹² are. ¹³ through.
¹⁴ but. ¹⁵ to. ¹⁶ seeing.

- ye wyll do none other wyse / *in* the name of our god
 Mahound, & in y^e name of y^e ¹admyrall Gallaffer, I
 desyre you¹ / & he sendeth you worde by me *that* he
 4 wyll leue you nother cyte / towne, nor castell / but he
 wyll put *them* all to flame & fyer / nor leue you one
 fote of londe / &² also yf he may take you ye shall dye
 a shamfull deth.³ The messenger threatens his lands with fire and sword, and himself with a shameful death.
- 8 ¶ Whan the admyrall saw howe he was defyed /
 he was more inflamed than a byrnyng fyer
 brond, & sayd to y^e messenger / 'go & say to thy lord
that I set no thinge by his thretenyng / &, yf I
 12 may know when he comyth, I shal do hym *that* honour
that I wyll not abyd tyll he enter *in* to my countre /
 but I shal³ mete *with* him before / & say vnto hym fro
 me / *that* yf I can take hym I shal sone ryd his soule
 16 out of his body.' so y^e messenger departyd / & cam
 to mombrant / ⁴whan Iuoryn saw hym he sayd / 'frend,
 what sayth ⁵Galaffer? wyll he sende me my nece?'
 'Syr,' quod the messenger / 'he wyll not do it / he
 20 sayth he doughtyth you no thyng / and, yf ye be so
 hardy to come & assayle hym, he wyll mete with you
 before & fyght *with* you, & I herd hym swere *that* yf
 he may take you he wyll slee you without mercy' /
 24 whan Iuoryn herd that / he swet for anger, & was in
 that case⁶ he coude ⁷speke no⁷ worde of a longe space /
 &² whan he had sum what asswayd his yre, he sware by
 his god Mahounde *that* he shold neuer haue ioy nor
 28 myrthe at his herte / tyll he had destroyed the towne
 of Anfalerne, & slayn the admyrall Galaffer / than in
 hast he sente for all his lordes / & *with* them concludyd
 to send for all his men of warre, & gaue them day to be
 32 *with* him within .xv. dayes before Mombrant / the
 whiche thyng was done / for at that day they were all

¹⁻¹ great king Iuoryn heere I defie you. ² but.
³ will. ⁴ where. ⁵ Fol. xli. col. 1. ⁶ that.
⁷⁻⁷ not speke oue.

His army is assembled.

assembled / as ye shall here¹ after. Now ²leue thystorye² to speke of them & ³retourne³ to speke of kinge Oberon.

¶ How kynge Oberon, at the request of .ii. ⁴knyghtes of the fayry called Gloryant & Mallebron the monster of the see, went & socouryd Huon, & carryed hym out of the yle Noysaunt. Ca. I. 8



Oberon deploues the misfortunes of Huon,

and laments that he has disobeyed his commandment.

Owe ⁴sheweth thystory,⁴ that Kynge Oberon the same tyme that Huon was in the yle Noysaunt / was in his wood where as he was accus- ¹²tomyd ⁵moost parte for⁵ to be conuersaunt, by cause the place was ⁶myche delectable & farre fro people / ⁷he sat hym down vnder a fayre oke / than⁸ he began to wepe & compleyned / whan ¹⁶Gloryant, a knyght of y^e fayry / saw hym / he had grete meruayle, & demaundyd of hym why he ⁹made so gret doloure⁹ / 'Gloryant,' quod y^e ¹⁰kinge Oberon / 'the periuryd Huon of Burdeux causeth me thus to do / ²⁰whom I haue¹¹ perfyghtly lound, & yet he hath¹² trespassyd my commaundementes / for whan ¹³I departyd fro hym I causyd hym to haue the admyrall Gaudys at his pleasure / & also I made hym to haue the fayre ²⁴Esclaramonde, y^e admyralles doughter / & also I haue gyuen hym my ryche horne of yuory & my good cuppe / the whiche he hath lost by his pryde & foly / & therefore he hath ben ponyshyd, & ¹⁴lyeth all naked, ²⁸bounde handes & fete, & his iyen stoppyd,¹⁵ in an yle / in y^e whiche place I shall ¹⁶suffre hym to dye¹⁷ myserably.'

¹ here. ²⁻² leaueth the Historie. ³⁻³ returneth againe.
⁴⁻⁴ the history sheweth. ⁵⁻⁵ after where. ⁶ very.
⁷ there. ⁸ and. ⁹⁻⁹ lamented so much. ¹⁰ omitted.
¹¹ alwayes. ¹² still. ¹³ Fol. xli. col. 2. ¹⁴ now he.
¹⁵ blindfolded. ¹⁶ will. ¹⁷ most.

- 'A,¹ syr,' quod Gloryant / 'for y^e honoure of our lord
 Jesu Cryst / call to your remembraunce how *that* by
 goddes own mouth Adam & Eue ²was dyffendyd² fro
 4 y^e etynge of ³fruyte *that* was in paradyce / 'the whiche'⁴
 by theyr fragylyte brake goddes commaundement; how
 be it, our lord god had grete petye of them, & therefore,
 sir, I praye you haue pyte of Huon' / than Mallebron
 8 stept forth & sayd, 'A,⁵ sir, for y^e honour & reuerence
 of our lord god I desyre you to graunt me this one
 tyme *that* I may go & ayde hym' / whan Oberon saw
 how he was sore⁶ desyryd of Gloryant & Mallebron, he
 12 was sore dyspleasyd; ⁷he answeryd & ⁷sayd / 'Malle-
 bron, it pleaseth me ⁸well *that* this caytyue Huon, who
 endureth⁸ myche payne, be vysytyd by *thee*, ⁹for y^e
 which⁹ I condempne *thee* to be .xxviii. yeres a monster
 16 in y^e see, beside .xxx. yere *that* thou art inioynyd to all
 redy / but ¹⁰I wyll¹¹ thou gyue hym none other counsell
 nor ayde / but alonely to bere hym out of y^e yle *that*
 he is in, & to set hym on y^e mayne londe / than let
 20 hym go whether *that*¹² he wyl, for I desyre neuer more
 to se hym. Also I wyll¹¹ thou brynge agayne to ¹³me
 my ryche horne of yuory and my ryche cuppe and my
 harnes¹⁴ / feche them theyr, as he¹⁵ lost them.' 'A,⁵
 24 sir,' quod Gloryaunt,¹⁶ 'greate payne ye put hym vnto,
 whan for so small¹⁷ offence ye are so sore displeasyd with
 Huon / & as for the harnes¹⁴ *that* ye wolde haue agayne,
 ye know well howe Huon of Burdeux dyd conquere
 28 it / he had ben lost yf it had not bene / grete yll
 ye shall do yf ye cause hym not to haue it agayne.
¹⁸But, syr, sen¹⁹ I haue lycence to brynge hym out of the
 yle, I pray you shew me in what plase is the yle where

Gloryant begs
Oberon have
mercy upon the
knight.

Malabron begs
permission to go
to his aid.

Oberon grants
Malabron's
request under
very hard
conditions.

He is to pluce
Huon on the
main land,

and to bring back
to Oberon his cup,
horn and armour.

¹ Not so. ²⁻³ were forbidden. ³ the. ⁴⁻⁴ yet they.
⁵ alas. ⁶ so earnestly. ⁷⁻⁷ and answering.
⁸ so. ⁹⁻⁹ therefore. ¹⁰ now. ¹¹ that.
¹² omitted. ¹³ vnto. ¹⁴ armour. ¹⁵ hath.
¹⁶ Malabron. ¹⁷ an. ¹⁸ Fol. xii. back, col. 1.
¹⁹ since.

as he is.' Than Gloryant sayd / ' brother Mallebrone /
 this yle is nere to¹ helle, & is callyd the yle Noysant' /
 ' well,' quod Mallebron, ' than I commend you all to
 our lorde Ihesu cryst' / and so² departyd and came to ⁴
 the see syde / ³whan he cam there he lept in to the see
 and began to swym as fast as the byrde flyeth in the
 eyer / and so aryuyd in y^e yle Noysaunt / and so came
 to¹ Huon / whom he founde sore wepynge, and sayd / ⁸
 ' syr Huon, I pray our lorde Ihesu Cryst to socoure &
 ayde thee.' ' A, very⁴ god,' quod Huon, ' who is it⁵ that
 speketh to¹ me?' / ' Huon,' quod he, ' I am a man
 who loueth the, and am called Mallebron, & am a 12
 best of the see who hathe or⁶ this tyme borne the ouer
 the salt water to Babylon.' ' A, Mallebron, dere
 brother,' quod Huon, ' I requyre the vnbynd me &
 brynge me out of this dolouros payne' / ' with a ryght 16
 good wyll,' quod Mallebron / than he dyd vnbynde
 hym and openyd his iyes / whan Huon saw that he was
 ryght ioyfull / & demaundyd who sent hym thether /
 ' Huon,' quod he, ' know for trouthe⁵ / it was kinge 20
 Oberon, & where as I was condemnyd before to be a
 best of the see xxx yere, nowe for thy sake I must
 endure so .xxviii. yere more / yet I care not for the
 payne / for y^e loue that I bere to¹ the; there is no payne 24
 impossyble to¹ me to bere / but I must bere⁷ agayne to¹
 Oberon the ryche horne & cuppe & harnes⁸ / for so I
 haue promysyd kyng Oberon to do.' ' A,' quod Huon,
 ' I pray to our lorde Ihesu Cryst to confounde y^e 28
 dwarfe who hath causyd me to endure all these paynes /
 for so small an occasyon' / ' Huon,' quod Mallebron,
 ' ye do yll to say soo / for ye haue no soner spoken it /
 but *that* kyng Oberon doth know it' / ' certainly,' quod 32
 Huon, ' I care not what he can do; he bath done me
 so myche yll *that* I can neuer loue hym / but, *sir*, I

The island where
Huon lies is
called Noysant.

Malabron finds
Huon there,

and unbinds him.

Malabron tells
him Oberon's
message.

Huon complains
of Oberon's
hardness of
heart.

¹ vnto. ² he. ³ and. ⁴ deare. ⁵ that.
⁶ before. ⁷ carie. ⁸ armour.

- pray the tell me yf *thou* ¹wylt bere me hense, or elles whether that I shall ²byde here for euer / 'frend,' quod Mallebron, 'I shall ³bere *thee* out of this yle & sette the ⁴on y^e mayne londe / other ayde may I not do the' / than Mallebron tooke on ⁵hym agayne his bestes skyn, & sayd, 'sir, lepe vp upon me' / than Huon lept vp on his crope ⁶as naked as euer he was borne / than ⁴ /
- ⁸ Mallebron lept in to y^e ⁷& began to swym, & came to the mayne londe / & sayd / 'frend Huon, more seruyce can I not do to ⁸*thee* at this tyme / but I recommaunde *thee* to y^e kepinge of our lorde god, who sende thee ¹²comforte / I⁹ must go & seke for the horne / cuppe & harnes ¹⁰/ y^e which *thou* wert wont to haue & enioy / & I to ¹¹bere them to ⁸kinge Oberon, ¹²thus haue I promysyd to do' / & ⁹/ Huon was there all alone & ¹⁶naked / & ¹³peteously compleynynd, ¹⁴& sayd, 'A, good lorde, I requyre *thee* to ayde me / I know not where I am, nor whether I may go, yet yf I had clothes to couer my naked skyn I shuld haue sum comforte, ¹⁵& ²⁰to ¹⁵go & seke sum aduenture / greatly I ought to hate y^e croked dwarfe Oberon, who hath brought me in ¹⁶all this payne / but by y^e fayth *that* I owe to ⁸god, sen ¹⁷he hath left me thus / from hense forth to do hym the ²⁴more spyte I shall make lyes ynowe / I shall not leue for hym / *that* ¹⁸I recommaunde hym ⁹/ to a.C.M. deuelles' / whan he had ben there a certen spase all alone / he arose & lokyd al about hym, to se if he myght perseyue ²⁸any man passe by / by ¹⁹whom he myght haue any socoure / ¹²he was nere famyshyd for lake of sustenance, how be it, he thought to departe thense to seke sum aduenture / he went on his way ; he went so farre *that*
- Malabron swims with Huon to the main land, and there leaues him to go in search of the horn, cup and armour.
Huon prays to God to succour him in his helplessness,
and declares he will avenge the wrongs that Oberon has done him.
Huon journeys on

¹ Fol. xli. back, col. 2. ² must. ³ will. ⁴ and.
⁵ vpon. ⁶ backe. ⁷ Sea (*omitted* in Crawford MS.).
⁸ vnto. ⁹ now. ¹⁰ armour. ¹¹ am. ¹² for.
¹³ *omitted*. ¹⁴ complaying. ¹⁵⁻¹⁶ for then I might.
¹⁶ to. ¹⁷ seeing. ¹⁸ whom.
¹⁹ from.

in hope of some
fortunate
adventure.

he founde an aduventure / such as ye shall here / for
our lord Jhesu cryst neuer forgetteth his frendes.¹

¶ How Huon founde a minstrell, who gaue
hym clothinge & mete, & toke Huon with 4
hym as his varlette, & went to Mombrant.

Ca. .li.

He sees an old
man sitting
under an oak tree
in a fair meadow.



Han Huon had gone a greate way he
behelde on his ryght hande / and sawe 8
nere hym a lytyll wood by a fayre
meadow side, and therin was stondyng
a grete oke full of leues / & there
beside was a clere founteyne, and there he saw an 12
aunsyent man with whyte heres syttyng vnder the oke /
& before hym he had a lytel cloth sprede a brode on
the grasse / & theron flessh & brede & wyne in a botell /
whan Huon saw the old man / he came to³ hym / & y^e 16
aunsyent man sayd, 'A, *thou* wylde man, I pray the
for y^e loue of mahounde do me no hurt / but take
mete & drynke at thy pleasure' / whan Huon saw
hym / he spyed lyeng beside hym an harp and a vyall 20
wheron he coude well play, for in all pagany there was
no mynstrell lyke him / 'frende,' quod Huon, 'thou
hast namyd me ryght / for a more vnhappy⁴ than I am
ther is none lyuyng' / 'frende,' quod y^e mynstrell, 24
'go to yonder male & open it, & take what *thou* lykest
best to couer thy naked skyn / than come to me & ete
at thy pleasure' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'good aduventure
is come to³ me thus to fynde you / mahounde rewarde 28
you' / 'syr,' quod the mynstrell, 'I pray the come &
ete *with* me, & kepe me company / for thou shalt not
fynde a more sorowfull⁴ than I am.' 'By my fayth,'
quod Huon, 'a companyon of your owne sort haue y^e 32

Food and wine
are spread out
before him.

At his side lie a
harp and a viol.

The minstrel
offers Huon
clothing and
food.

The minstrel
is a man of
sorrow,

¹ seruantes.

² Fol. xlii. col. 1.

³ vnto.

⁴ man.

- founde / for there was neuer man that hath sufferyd so
 myche pouerte as I laude¹ be to² hym *that* fourmyd
 me / but sen³ I haue founde mete to ete, blyssyd by y^e
 4 owre that I haue founde you / for ye seme to be a good
 man / than Huon went to y^e male and tooke clothes,
 & than came to² the mynstrell & sat downe, & dyd ete
 & drynke as myche as pleasyd hym / the mynstrell
 8 behelde Huon, & saw how he was a fayre yong man
 &⁴ courteys / & than he demaundyd of hym where he
 was borne, & by what aduenture he was aryued there
 in *that case that he was in* / whan⁵ Huon herde how the
 12 mynstrell demaundyd of his estate / he began to study
 in hymselfe whether he shulde shewe the trouthe or
 eles to lye / than he callyd on⁶ our lord god & sayd,
 ‘a, good lorde, yf I shew this man the trouthe of
 16 myne aduenture I am but deed. A,⁷ Oberon, for a
 small offence thou hast left me in thys case, for⁸ yf I
 shew the trouthe of my lyfe to this man I am but deed ;
 I shall neuer trust the more / but I wyll⁸ put al my
 20 dedes⁹ in god / for the loue that I haue to my louer¹⁰
 thou hast me in hate / but sen³ it is so, as often as I
 haue nede I shall lye, nor I shall not leue it for fere of
 the / but rather do it in dyspyght of the’ / than Huon
 24 sayd to the mynstrell, ‘Syr, ye haue demaundyd of
 myne estate, and as yet I haue made you none answer /
 the trouthe is, I fynde my self so wel at myn ease that
 I forgat to answer you / but I shal⁸ shew you, sen³
 28 ye wold know it / syr, of certen I am¹¹ borne of¹² the
 countre of aufryke / and fell in company with dyuers
 merchauntes by the see in a shyppe, thynkyng to haue
 sayled to Damiet / but a grete mysfortune fell upon vs ;
 32 there rose suche an orryble tempest that our shyppe
 pereshyd, and all that¹³ with in it none scapyd but I, and

and Huon thanks
him for his
welcome.

The minstrel
inquires his birth-
place and
adventures.

Huon resolves to
tell a lie in
defiance of
Oberon's
warning.

He declares that
he was born in
Africa,

and was
shipwrecked on
his way to
Damietta.

¹ praise. ² vnto. ³ seeing. ⁴ a. ⁵ Fol. xlii. col. 2.
⁶ to. ⁷ and king. ⁸ now. ⁹ trust. ¹⁰ Loue.
¹¹ was. ¹² in. ¹³ were.

The minstrel
tells how his
name is Mouffet,

and how his
master was the
Admiral
Gaudisee,
whom a
Frenchman
basely slew.

Huon says his
name is Salater.

The minstrel
laments his
desolate
condition,

and longs to
revenge himself
on his master's
murderer.

But he invites
Salater to follow
him to the
court of King
Ivoryn, the
brother of
Gaudisee.

I thanke mahounde that I am scapide alyue, therefore I
desyre you now to shew me your aduenture as I haue
shewyd you myne' / 'frende,' quod the mynstrell,
'sen¹ ye wyll know it / know for trouthe I am namyd 4
Mouffet / I am a mynstrell, as thou seest here by myne
instrumentes / and I say to² the that fro hense to the
red see there is none so connyng in all instrumentes as
I am / and I can do many other thynges / and the 8
doloure that thou seest me make is by cause of late I
haue lost my good lorde and mayster, the admyrall
Gaudys / who was slayne myserablye by a vacabounde
of Fraunce callyd Huon / that mahounde shame hym / 12
and brenge hym to an yll deth, ³for by hym I am fallen
in to pouerte and mysery. I pray the tell me thy
name' / 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'my name is Salater.'
'Well,' quod the mynstrell, 'Salater, dysmay the not 16
for the grete pouertes that thou hast sufferyd / thou
seest what aduenture Mahounde hath sent the / thou
art nowe better arayed than thou wert / yf thou wylt
folowe my counsell thou shalt haue no nede / thou 20
arte fayre & yonge / thou oughtest not to be dys-
mayed / but I that am old and aunsyent haue cause to
be dyscomfortyd / sen¹ in myne old dayes I haue lost
my lord and mayster, the admyrall Gaudys, who dyd 24
me so mych good and profyte / I wold it pleasyd
mahounde that he that slew hym were in my power' /
whan Huon herde that he spake no worde, but cast
downe his hede. 'Salater,' quod the mynstrell, 'sen¹ 28
my lord is deed, I wyll goo to Mombrant to kyng
Iuoryn / to shewe hym the deth of his brother, the
admyrall Gaudys / and yf thou wylt abyde with me so
that thou wylt bere my fardell and harp a fote / or⁴ it be 32
halfe a yere past I waraunt⁵ thou shalt haue a horse /
for whan so euer thou shalt here me play vpon my

¹ seeing.

² vnto.
⁴ ere.

³ Fol. xlii. back, col. 1.
⁵ thee.

instrumentes / all the herers shall take therin suche
 pleasure / that they shall gyue me bothe gownes &
 mantelles, so that thou shalt haue myche a do to truss
 4 them in my male,' ¹'A,' after¹ quod Huon, 'I am
 content to serue you and to do all your commaunde-
 mentes.' Than Huon tooke the male in² his necke &
 the harpe in his hande / and Mouflet, his mayster, bare
 8 the vyall / & thus the mayster and the seruauant went
 on there way to go to Mombrant. 'A, good lord,'
 quod Huon, 'my herte ought to be sorowfull when I
 se myselfe in this case / that now I must become a
 12 mynstrelles varlet. goddes curse haue Oberon the
 dwarfe, who hath done me all this anoyauce.³ Alas,
 yf I had nowe my good hernes⁴ / my horne / and my
 cuppe ⁵I wold reken all the sorow that I haue enduryd
 16 at⁶ no thyng. A,⁷ whan I had .xiii. knyghtes to serue
 me, how is the⁸ chaunse now tournyd that I⁹ must serue
 a pore mynstrell.' whan Mouflet herd Huon make
 suche sorow within hymselfe he sayd / 'dere brother
 20 Salater, take good comfort / for ¹⁰or it be¹⁰ to morow at
 nyght, thou shalt se y^e good chere that shalbe made to
 me / wherof thou shalt haue parte / & of all y^e goodes
 that I can gette.' 'Mayster,' quod Huon, 'mahounde
 24 rewarde you for the goodnes that ye haue shewyd me /
 & shall do' / thus the mayster & the seruauant went
 forth to gether deuysynge. at last Huon spied be-
 hynde them comyng certen men of armes holdyng
 28 the way to Mombrant. 'Mayster,' quod Huon / 'here
 behynde vs are commynge men in armure, I know not
 yf¹¹ they wyll do vs any hurt or not' 'Salater,' quod
 Mouflet / 'be not abashyd / we wyl abyde here &
 32 know whether they wyll go' / & with in a while the
 men of warre came to them / who were in nombre a¹²

Huon follows
 Mouflet as his
 seruant.

Mouflet consoles
 Huon,
 who weeps
 because of his
 miserable estate.

Five hundred
 soldiers meet
 them on their
 journey,

¹⁻¹ 'Well, Sir.' ² on. ³ trouble. ⁴ armour.
⁵ Fol. xlii, back, col. 2. ⁶ as. ⁷ But. ⁸ this.
⁹ myself. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ before. ¹¹ whether. ¹² omitted.

who are also
proceeding to
Mombrant.

They tell Huon
how they are
going to join
King Ivoryn's
army,
which he is
assembling to do
battle with the
Admiral who
holds
Esclaramonde at
Anfalerne.

.v.c. persons / the mynstrell salutyd them and sayd,
'Syr, I pray you shew me wheder ye wyll go' /
'frend,' quod one of them / 'by cause we se *that* ye be
a ientyll mynstrell I shall shewe you / we are goynge 4
to kyng Iuoryn of Mombrant / who wyll¹ go and
make ware vpon y^e admyrall Gallaffer / by cause *that*
now of late / the damesell Esclaramonde, doughter to
the admyrall Gaudys, passyd by Anfalerne / who sholde 8
haue ben brought to her vncl, kyng Iuoryn of Mom-
brant / but the admyrall Gallaffer toke her by force /
& slew all them that lede her / & hath maryed the
fayre Esclaramonde / wherof kyng Iuoryn is as sorow- 12
full as may be / & for *that* cause we be sent for by
kyng Iuoryn / who is ²in mynde² to assemble all his
power / to go & dystroy y^e admyrall Galaffer. Now I
haue shewyd you the cause of our goynge to the cyte 16
of Mombrant.'

¶ ³Howe Huon and his mayster Mouflet
aryued at Mombrant, and how Huon spake
with kyng yuoryn. Cap. .lii. 20



Huon proposes to
Mouflet that they
should go to the
war.

The minstrel
refuses,

and arrives at
King Ivoryn's
court.

Hen Huon of Burdeux vnderstode the
paynmys how they were goynge where
as⁴ the lady Esclaramonde was / he was
surprysed,⁵ and sayde to his mayster / 24
'syr, I requyre you let vs go to the
warre with them' / 'salater,' quod Mouflet, 'beware
what thou sayest / for there⁶ as warre is I wolde not
come there for ony thyng.' Thus they wente forthe 28
tyll⁷ they came to Mombrant / and wente strayte to the
palayes, where as he⁸ founde kyng yuoryn & all his
barons / when the mynstrell sawe hym / he saluted hym
in the name of Mahounde / and sayd, 'syr, I am ryght 32
dolorous for the newes *that* I brynge you / for, syr,

¹ needs. ²⁻³ minded. ³ Fol. xliiii. col. 1. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ with ioye. ⁶ where. ⁷ vntill. ⁸ they.

your brother, my lorde & mayster, the Admyrall
 Gaudys / is pyteously slayne.' 'Mouflet,' quod
 yuoryn, 'these newes hathe ben broughte to¹ me be-
 4 fore this tyme, wherof I am sory² / & also I am sory
 for my nece, the fayre Esclaramonde / who is kept
 fro me / by y^e Admyrall Galafer / & for ony message
 that I can sende to hym / he wyll not sende her³ to
 8 me. But by the faythe that I owe to my god
 Mahounde, I shall make hym suche warre that the
 memory therof shall be had a hondred yere hereafter /
 for I shall leue hym neuer a fote of lande, but I shall
 12 brynge all *in* to fyre and flame / and clene dystroy hym;
 and in the dyspyte of his teth I wyll se my nece
 Esclaramond / and yf I may gete her I shall cause her
 to be stryken all to peces, and brynne⁴ her in to ashes /
 16 for my broder is deed by a vyllayne of Fraunce on⁵ whom
 she was amorous.' whan Huon herde him ⁶speke of his
 lady / his herte rose, and made promyse in hymselfe /
 that or⁷ the moneth were past he wolde go & se her or⁸
 20 fynde the maner⁹ to speake with her / then kyng
 yuoryn called Mouflet the mynstrell, & sayd, 'frend, I
 pray *thee* do some thyng to make me mery, for by
 reason of the dyspleasure that I haue had my ioye is
 24 lost / therfore it were better for me to take some myrth
 then to be long in sorow' / 'syr,' quod Mouflet, 'I am
 redy to do your pleasure' / then he toke his vyall &
 playde therof in suche wyse that it was grete melody
 28 to here it / for all the paynyms that were there had
 grete ioye & myrth, & made grete feest¹⁰ / when Huon
 herde it he sayde, 'good lord, I re quyre the that this
 grete ioy may turne to me, as to here some good newes
 32 of her whom I desyre¹¹ sore to se.' when the mynstrell
 had fynysshed his songe / the paynyms dyde of theyr

The King
declares his
intention of
killing the
Admiral and
Esclaramonde,

whose father fell
at the hands of
her French lover.

King Ivoryn asks
Mouflet to make
him merry.

The minstrel
plays on his viol,

and the music so
charms the
Paynim hearers

¹ vnto. ² much agreeded. ³ backe. ⁴ burne.
⁵ vpon. ⁶ Fol. xliiii. col. 2. ⁷ ere. ⁸ and.
⁹ meanes how. ¹⁰ feasting. ¹¹ so.

that they give
Mouflet many
presents of
clothing.

Ivoryn says that
Huon is too fair
to serve a
minstrel.

Mouflet tells
how he succoured
him.

Ivoryn warns
Mouflet that Huon
will rob him of
his property,
and kill him
when he is rich.

clothes / and some gaue hym ther gownes / and some
theyr mantelles / he thought hymselfe ryght wel happy
that coude gyue the mynstrell ony thyng. Huon had
ynough to do to gather togyther the clothes that were 4
gyuen hym, and he put them in to his male / wher of
Huon was ioyfull bycause he sholde haue the one halfe.
Kynge yuoryn behelde Huon, & sayd to¹ them that were
about hym / 'grete damage it is that so fayre a yonge 8
man sholde serue a mynstrel' / 'syr kyng,'² quod
Mouflet, 'be not abashed though this yonge man do
serue me, he hathe cause so to do / for when youre
broder was dede I departed fro thens to come hyther, 12
and by the way I founde a grete oke, vnder the whiche
I sate downe to rest me, and therby was a fayre³
fountayne / fayre and clere / there I spred abrode a
towel on the grene² grasse / and set theron brede and 16
suche meate as I had, and drynke⁴ / and the same
tyme / this yonge man aryued & cam to¹ me al naked /
& prayed me for the loue of Mahound to gyue hym
some of my brede, ⁵and so I dyde, and clothed hym as 20
ye se / & I dyde so moche for hym that he promysed
to serue me and to bere my fardel and my harpe / and
more ouer, when I cam to ony passage of water he
wolde caste me in his necke as lyght as though I had 24
ben nothyng / he is so stronge, & bere me ouer' / 'a,
poore caytife,' quod kyng yuoryn, 'hast thou lyued so
long & can not perceyue why he doth it? / he abydeh
tyll⁶ thou haste gotten some ryches, and then he wyl 28
cut thy throte and cast thee in⁷ the ryuer, and then go
away with all thy ryches / cause hym to come & speke
with me' / 'syr,' quod Mouflet, 'he shal come to you,'
and so⁸ called Huon, and broughte hym to kynge 32
yuoryn. 'A, frende,' quod the kyng, 'I pray thee
shew me where thou were borne / for I haue pyte of the


¹ vnto. ² omitted. ³ greata. ⁴ as I had.
⁵ Fol. xliiii. back, col. 1. ⁶ vntill. ⁷ to. ⁸ he.

to se the in so low estate as to be varlet to a mynstrell /
 it were better for the to serue some prynce / or helpe
 to kepe a towne / or a castell, rather then thus to lese
 4 thy tyme / I wote not what I shold thinke therin. But
 that it semeth to be¹ / for² that thou arte of a faynte
 corage. what hathe moued the thus to do ? / thou seest
 thy mayster hath nothyng but that he geteth with his
 8 vyal ; canst thou fynde none other crafte³ to lyue by
 more honestly ? 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I can craftes
 ynow / the whiche I shall name to⁴ you yf ye wyl here
 me' / 'say on,' quod yuoryn, 'for I haue gret desyre
 12 to know what thou canste do / but of one thyng I
 aduise the: make no vaunt of ony thyng without *thou*
 canst do it in dede / for in euery thyng I wyll proue
thee.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I can mew a sparhawk /
 16 and I can chase the herte / & the wyld bore, and blowe
 the pryce, and serue the houndes of theyr ryghtes, and
 I can serue at the table before a grete prynce, and I can
 playe at chesse and tables as well as ony other can do /
 20 nor I neuer founde man coulde wynne of me yf I lyst.

The King calls
Huon and asks
him why he is
holding so mean a
post.

Huon tells the
crafts he knows.

¶ ⁵How kynge Iuoryn caused his daughter
⁶play at the chesse with Huon, ⁷on the⁷
 condycyon that yf he were mated he shold
 24 lese his heed, & yf she were mated / Huon
 shold ⁸lye with her all nyght⁸ / and how
 Huon wan the game. Cap. .liiii.

28  Hen kyng yuoryn herd Huon he sayd, Ivoryn cannot
 'holde the to this, for I shall proue believe that Huon
 whether it be true that thou sayest or has so many
 not' / 'yet, syr,⁹ I pray you let me accomplishments.
 shew forther what I can do / & then

¹ mee. ² omitted. ³ meanes. ⁴ vnto.
⁵ Fol. xliiii. back, col. 2. ⁶ to. ⁷⁻⁷ vpon.
⁸⁻⁸ haue her loue. ⁹ (quoth Huon).

assaye me at youre pleasure.' 'By Mahounde,' quod the kynge, 'I am content ¹thou shewest¹ al that thou canst do.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I can ryght wel arme me / & set the helme on my hede / & bere a shelde & 4 spere / & rynne & galop a hors / & when it cometh to the poynt ²ther as² strokes shold be gyuen, ye may well sende forth a worse then I. Also, syr, I can ryght wel entre in to ladyes chambres to embrace & to³ kys them, & to 8 do ⁴the rest yf nede were⁴ / 'frende,' quod yuoryn, 'by *that*⁵ I here by *thee* thou canst do mo thynges then shold torne to good / but to proue the I shall cause thee to be assayed at y^e playe of the chesse. I haue a 12 fayre doughter *with* whom I wyll thou shalt play, ⁶on y^e ⁶condycion *that* yf she wyne⁷ thou shalt lese thy hede / & yf *thou* canst mate her⁷ I promyse⁸ *that* thou shalt haue her ⁹one nyght in thy bed / to do⁹ *with* her 16 at thy pleasure, & a .C. marke of money there *with*.' 'syr,' quod Huon, 'yf it were your pleasure I wolde be glad to forbere *that* enterpryce' / 'by Mahound,' quod y^e kyng, 'it shall be none other wyse, com ther of 20 what wyll' / in y^e mene seson *that* this bargaen was makynge / a paynym went in to y^e ladyes chamber & shewed her howe there was *with* the kynge her fader a yonge man, & ¹⁰had made promyse how he shold play at 24 y^e chesse *with* her, ⁶on y^e ⁶condycyon *that* yf he lese¹¹ y^e game / ¹²he shall ¹³lese his hede / & yf he¹⁴ wyne, then ¹⁵to haue her all nyght in his bed to do his pleasure¹⁵ / & a C. marke of money / ¹⁶& dame,¹⁶ quod he, 'I ensure 28 you he *that* shall play agaynst you is the moost³ fayrest man *that* euer I sawe / pyte it is *that* he shold be a verlet to a mynstrel as he is' / 'by Mahounde,' quod

He will make trial of his knowledge of chess. He shall play with his daughter.

If he win he shall lie with her, and if he lose he shall surely die.

The maiden is summoned.


She learns how fair Huon is.

1-1 that thou shalt shew. 2-3 where. 3 omitted.
 4-4 them any seruice. 5 which. 6-6 vpon. 7 then.
 8 thee. 9-9 to thy wife, to repose. 10 who. 11 lost.
 12 Fol. xliiii. col. l. 13 should then. 14 chanced to.
 15-15 he to haue you to his wedded wife.
 16-16 But, Madam.

y^e lady, 'I holde my father a fole when he thynketh that I shold suffre a man to dye for wynnynge of a game at chesse.' Then yuoryn sent for his daughter 4 by .ii. kynges, who brought her to y^e kynge her father / then yuoryn sayd, 'Doughter / thou must play at chesse with this yong varlet that thou seest here / so that yf thou wyne¹ he shall lese his heed / & yf he 8 wyne¹ I wyll that he shall² lye with thee one nyght² to do with thee at his pleasure.' 'Father,' quod y^e lady, 'syn³ this is your pleasure, it is reason that I do it whether I wyll or not' / then she behelde Huon, whom 12 she saw⁴ ryght fayre, & sayd to her selfe, 'By Mahounde, for the grete beaute that I se in this yonge man, I wolde this game were at an ende, so that I were⁵ a bed with hym all nyght.'⁵

King Ivoryn tells her the condition of the game,

and at sight of Huon she loves him madly.

16  Hen the lady was come theyr places were made redy / then she & Huon sate downe, & the⁶ kynge yuoryn & all the⁷ barons sat downe aboute them to se them play / then Huon sayd to the kynge / 'sir, I requyre you / that you nor none other do speke in our game / nother for y^e one party nor for y^e other' / 'frende,' quod the kynge / 'haue no doute 24 therof' / & for more suerte the kynge caused to be cryed⁸ thorow⁹ all y^e palays that none sholde be so hardy¹⁰ to speke one worde on¹¹ payn of deth / then y^e chesse were made redy ; then¹² Huon sayd, 'lady, what 28 game wyl ye play at?' 'frende,' quod she, 'at y^e game accustomed, that is, to be mated in y^e corner' / then they both began to study for y^e fyrst draught / ther were paynyms that beheld Huon / but he cared not for 32 any of them / but studyed on his game, y^e whiche they had begon, so that Huon had lost parte¹³ of his pawnes,

Huon and the lady sit down to play.

Silence is enjoined on the spectators.

Huon loses some pawns.

¹ then. ²⁻² be thy husband. ³ seeing. ⁴ to be.
⁵⁻⁵ his wedded wife. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ his. ⁸ proclaymed.
⁹ out. ¹⁰ as. ¹¹ vpon. ¹² and. ¹³ Fol. xliiii. col. 2.

wher *wit* he chaunged coloure & blushed as rede as
a rose / the damsell perceyued him, & sayd, 'frende,
wheron do ye thynke ye are nye¹ mated / anone my
fader wyl stryke of your hede' / 'dame,'² *quod* he, 'as⁴
yet y^o game is not done / grete shame shall your father
haue, when ye shall lye all nyghte in myn armes, & I
beyng but a varlet³ to a pore mynstrell' / when the
barons herde Huon say so they began all to laugh. 8

The maiden
neglects the game
for love of Huon,

And the lady who was⁴ surprysed with the loue of
Huon for⁵ y^o grete beaute *that* she sawe in hym, so⁶
that she nye forgate all her play to thynke of Huon,⁷

and is at length
checkmated.

⁸so that⁸ she lost y^o game / wherof Huon was⁹ ioyfull / 12
& called y^o king, & sayd, 'sir, now may ye se how I can
play / for¹⁰ yf I wyll¹¹ a lytell more study¹² / I wolde¹³

Ivoryn is angry
with his
daughter.

mate your doughter where as I lyst / when the kyng
sawe that he sayd to his daughter / 'a ryse, cursed be 16
y^o houre that euer⁶ I gate the / for grete dyshonour
thou hast¹⁴ done to me, ¹⁵when so many grete men
thou hast mated,¹⁵ & now I se here before me¹⁶ that

a mynstrelles varlet hathe mated the' / 'sir,' *quod* 20
Huon, 'trouble not your self for that cause / as for the
wager *that* I sholde wyn therby, I am content to
relese it quyte ; let youre doughter go in to her chambre

Huon releases her
from the wager
he had made
with the King.

& sports her with her damselles at her pleasure, & 24
I shall go & serue my mayster y^o mynstrel.' 'frende,'
quod the kyng, 'yf *thou* wylt shewe me this curteyse,
I shall gyue the a .C. marke in money' / 'sir,' *quod*
Huon, 'I am content with youre pleasure' / & y^o lady 28


The maiden
reproaches her-
self because of
her love for
Huon.

went her way sorowfull, & sayd to her selfe / 'a, false
faynted hert, Mahounde confounde the / for yf I had
knowe *that* thou woldest thus a¹⁷ refused my company

¹ almost. ² Madame. ³ seruant. ⁴ so.
⁵ in regard of. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ him. ⁸⁻⁹ wherby.
⁹ right. ¹⁰ but. ¹¹ would.
¹² studie but *before* a lytell more. ¹³ could. ¹⁴ now.
¹⁵⁻¹⁶ that heretofore hast mated so many great men.
¹⁶ my face. ¹⁷ haue.

I wold haue mated the / & then thou haddest lost thy
 hed' / thus y^e mater passyd tyl y^e next daye / than kyng
 yuorin made ¹a crye¹ thorow² all the cyte that euery
 4 man sholde be armed & mounted on theyr horses, & Ivoryn orders his
 army to prepare
 for battle.
 that it was his mynd to set forward toward his enemyes.
 then euery man armed them & mounted on ³theyr
 horses; many helmes gletred agaynst the sonne / &
 8 many trompettes & taboures began to sowne / suche
 brute was made in the cyte that it was meruayle to
 here it.

¶ How that⁴ Huon was aryued⁵ & mounted
 12 on a poore horse, and went after the army
 to anferlerne. Ca. liiii.

16  Hen Huon sawe howe he had not wher-
 with to arme him his hert mourned
 ryght sore / for gladly he wolde a⁶ gone
 forth with other yf he myght haue⁷
 ony hors to ryde⁸ on / ⁹he came to kyng
 yuorin, & sayd, 'syr, I requyre you let me haue a hors
 20 & harnes¹⁰ / that I may go with you to y^e batayle / &
 then shall ye se how I can ayde you' / 'frende,' quod
 yuorin, 'I am content¹¹ ye come¹² with me' / then the
 kyng commaunded one of his chamberlaynes to delyuer
 24 him¹³ hors & harneys,¹⁰ & y^e chamberlayn sayd / 'sir,
 beware what ye do / for often tymes suche fleyng
 vacabondes are of ¹³lyght corage / yf he haue¹³ hors &
 harneys¹⁰ / he may as sone go to your enemyes parte as
 28 to kepe with you / sir,¹⁴ neuer trust me but he is some
 counterfeyt varlet' / when the kynge herde him¹⁵ / he
 sayd, 'it may well be / yet let him haue a good harnes¹⁰

Huon begs for a
 horse and
 armour in order
 to enter the
 battle.

The King's
 chamberlain
 doubts Huon, and
 fears he may play
 the traitor.

1-1 proclamation.

2 out.

3 Fol. xliiii. back, col. 1.

4 omitted.

5 armyd.

6 haue.

7 had.

8 haue ridden.

9 wherefore.

10 armour.

11 that.

12 goe.

13 a.

14 and.

15 say so.

Ivoryn orders
that a poor horse
be given him.

A paynym offers
Huon a rusty old
sword,

which the
knight finds to
have come from
the same forge
as Roland's
sword.

Huon thanks the
paynim for the
sword.

He is given a
lean and feeble
horse,

and the paynims
mock at him
when he
mounts it.

& helme / & shelde / & let his hors be but of a small
valew, to the entent¹ he shall not go ferre of though he
wold' / the same tyme there was a paynym that herde
the kyng graunt how Huon shold haue harneys² / he 4
went to his howse & toke out of his cofer an olde
rusty swerde, & brought it to Huon / & sayd, ' frend, I
se wel ye haue no swerde to ayde yourself *with* all, &
therefore I gyue you this swerde, the whiche I haue 8
long kept *in* my cofer' / y^e paynym dyd gyue it to
Huon *in* a mockery / for he thought y^e swerde but of
a small valew. Huon toke y^e swerde & drew it out of
y^e sheth, & saw letters wrytten *theron in frenche* / 12
seyng³ how *thes* swerd was forged by galans, who in bis
daies forged .iii. swerdes / & the¹ same swerd was one of
the thre / ⁴one was⁴ durandell, ⁵the which Rowlande
had⁵ / ⁶the .ii. was⁶ courtayn / when Huon had rede y^e 16
letters he was ryght ioyful, & sayd to y^e paynim /
' frende, for this good swerde *that* ye haue gyuen me I
thanke you / & I *promys* you yf I may lyue longe
I shall rewarde you with the double valewe therof. 20
after¹ Huon hadde this swerde there was brought⁷ *him* a
good harneis² / helme / sheld, & spere with a rusty hed.
Huon cared lytell for it by reason of y^e gret desyre *that*
he had to come to the place where as he myght shewe 24
his strength & vertue / *then* ther was brought to *him* a
lene hors, pyllled with a long necke & a grete hede /
when Huon saw *that* hors he toke *him* by y^e brydell &
lept vpon *him* without ony fote in y^e styrop, *in* the 28
syght of a .M. paynims *that* were there present / &
some said it was not wel done to geue *him* a hors
the which coude not serue nor ayde *him* in tyme of
nede / when Huon was mounted on his lene feble horse / 32
he was sorowfull / for well he *perceyued* how they

¹ that. ² armour. ² Fol. xliiii. back, col. 2.

⁴⁻⁴ and the second was called. ⁵⁻⁵ omitted.

⁶⁻⁶ and the third. ⁷ vnto.

mocked him, & sayd softly to himselfe / 'a, ye fals
 paynmys, yf I may lyue a yere / I shall quyte your
 mockes' / then Huon rode forth with other / but for all
 4 that he coude do with his spurres, the hors wolde
 go / but his owne softe pace / wherof¹ dyuers paynmys
 mocked him. thus kyng yuoryn departed fro Mombrant
 with his grete army, & taryed in y^e felde for his men /
 8 & when they were all assembled togyder, then he
 departed & toke y^e way to Anfalerne / the which was²
 of / but .iiii. legges of³ / & whan they came there they
 ran before the cyte & draue away al the bestes,
 12 beofes and motons, & sent them to mombrant / then
 when y^e admyral galaffer saw kyng yuoryn before his
 cyte, & had dryuen away all the praye aboute the
 towne / he was so sorowfull that he was nere hande out
 16 of his wyt / & then he saw the fayre Esclaramonde
 before him, & sayd / 'dame,⁵ the grete loue that I haue
 set on you is this day derely bought / for by your
 occacion I se my countre destroyed & my men slayne &
 20 led in seruytude' / 'sir,' quod she, 'I am sory therof /
 it lyeth in you to amende it / syn⁶ this yll is come to
 you by me / then it is in you to render me to kyng
 yuoryn / & therby ye & your countre shall be in rest &
 24 peace' / 'fayre lady,' quod Galaffer / 'by y^e grace of
 Mahound / for ony fere that I haue of yuoryn your
 vncler I wyll not render you in to his handes tyll⁷ I haue
 had of you my pleasir' / 'sir,' quod she, 'ye may do
 28 with me as it shall please you after that the .ii. yeres
 be past for y^e accomplysshynge of myn auow.' 'dame,⁸
 quod Galaffer / 'or I⁸ render you to your vncler yuoryn
 I shall haue neuer a foote of lande,⁹ fyrst it shall be
 32 clene dystroyed.'

Ivoryn leads his
 army to
 Anfalerne,
 and captures all
 the cattle before
 the city.

The Admiral is in
 fear for himself
 and country,
 and tells
 Esclaramonde she
 has caused his
 misery.
 She asks to be
 surrendered to
 King Ivoryn,

but the Admiral
 refuses to follow
 her advice.

1 wherat.

2 distant.

3 omitted.

4 Fol. xlv. col. 1.

5 Madame.

6 seeing.

7 vntill.

8-8 before I will.

9 for.

¶ Howe Huon fought with Sorbryn & slewe hym, & wan the good horse Blanchardyn, wheron he mounted, & wan the batayle / & was brought with grete tryumpe to 4 Mombrant. Cap. .lv.

Sorbryn, the Admiral's nephew, offers to challenge the boldest of Ivoryn's soldiers,



on the condition that if he is conquered, Esclaramonde shall be restored,

and if he is victorious, Ivoryn shall return after paying twice the value of the damage he has already done.

Sorbryn arms himself, and his good horse Blanchardin is brought him.

¶ Hen Sorbryn, nephew to y^e admyrall Galaffer, herde his vncler make suche sorow, he sayd to him / 'fayre vncler, 8 be not dysnayed, though yuoryn hath taken & slayne some of your men, & dryuen away your bestes. for eche¹ of yours, yf I lyue, I shall render agayn to you .iiii. I shal tell you 12 how I shal² go & arme me, & yssu out & shew to yuoryn that³ he² set one or .ii. of y^e moost⁴ hardyest⁵ of all his hoost to fyght with me / &⁶ yf it be so that I be ouercome / then⁷ rendre his⁸ nece Esclaramond to him 16 to do with her at his pleasir; & yf that I dyscomfyte his men / then let him departe, so that⁹ all y^e damage that he hath¹⁰ to you in this warre he to¹¹ render agayne to you y^e double therof / for better it were that this 20 warre shold ende by .ii. ¹²men rather then so moche people shold be dystroyed' / 'fayre nephew,' quod Galaffer, 'I herde neuer a better worde / I am well content yf ye wyll haue it thus' / then Sorbryn went 24 & armed him¹³ / he was a goodly knyght / for in all y^e paynmys landes there was not his pere, nor none that a proched nere to his valyauntnes / when he was armed, then blanchardin, his good hors, was brought to him / 28 y^e bounte¹⁴ of this hors exceded al other, & of beaute ther was none lyke him / he was as whyte as snow / y^e fresshenes of his aparyll, it was so ryche & goodly that

¹ one. ² will. ³ if. ⁴ omitted. ⁵ men. ⁶ that.
⁷ you to. ⁸ faire. ⁹ for. ¹⁰ done. ¹¹ will.
¹² Fol. xlv. col. 2. ¹³ himself. ¹⁴ goodness.

I can not make no¹ mencyon therof; but² no man
 coude esteme the valew of y^e ryches of y^e brydel, sadel
 & harneis / then sorbrin lept vpon his hors with out
 4 oni styrop / ³then he³ toke a grete spere, & so rode out He rides to King
Ivoryn and tells
him his purpose.
 of y^e cyte / & when he saw kyng yuoryn a ferre of, he
 cryed a loude & said / 'a, thou yuorin of mombrant, y^e
 admirall Galaffer hath sent me to the, & wyl that thou
 8 do arme on of ⁴y^e most⁴ valyauntest men of thy court,
 & let him come agaynst me / & yf he can vanquysse
 me / then he shal delyuer to thee thy nece Esclaramond /
 & ⁵yf I ouercome thy man, then thou to returne to thy
 12 cite & suffer thy nece⁶ styll with him / & also thou to
 restore all y^e domages that thou hast done⁷ him & his in
 this warre' / when yuoryn herd the paynym / he loked
 aboute him to se yf ony of his men wold take on him
 16 this enterpryce to fyghte with Sorbryn / but there was
 no paynym that durste speke one worde / for they fered
 Sorbryn for y^e fyersnes that was in him / & they said
 amonge them selfe that who so euer dyd fyght agaynst
 20 him were lyke myserably to fynysse his days / y^e same
 tyme that yuorin spake with Sorbryn / Huon was amonge
 y^e other paynyms, & herd what sorbryn had sayd / Huon hears
Sorbryn's words
 & also he sawe⁸ no man durst go agaynst Sorbryn /
 24 then as wel as he myght he gate himselfe out of the prese
 vpon his lene horse. ³he³ strake him with his sporres / and rides forward
on his poor steed.
 but for all that he coude do the horse wold nother trot nor
 galop / but go styll his owne pase. y^e ⁹olde mynstrell
 28 beheld Huon his varlet, who made hym redy to fight
 agaynst the paynym / and saw that he was so yll
 horsed, he ¹⁰escryed a ¹⁰hye, & sayd / 'syr kyng
 yuoryn / it shal be to ¹¹you grete velany¹² when suche a
 32 horse that is no thyng worth ye haue delyuerd to ¹¹my
 varlet / who goeth for your sake to fyght with Sorbryn,

¹ due. ² for. ³⁻³ and. ⁴⁻⁴ thy. ⁵ but.
⁶ to remaine. ⁷ to. ⁸ that. ⁹ Fol. xlv. back, col. 1.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ cryed on. ¹¹ vnto. ¹² dishonour.

Huon tells
Sorbryn that he
is a Christian.

Sorbryn counsels
him not to accept
the challenge.

Huon, however,
will not change
his purpose,
and prepares for
the duel.

His horse will
hardly bear him,

and Sorbryn
rushes at him,

striking a heavy
blow.

But Huon
withstands its
force,

with whom none of your¹ men dare fyghte / grete synne
it is that he hath not a better horse' / then Huon sayd
to² Sorbryn, 'Sarazyn, I pray the speke with me' /
'Frende,' quod Sorbryn, 'what wylte thou with me?' / 4
'paynym,' quod Huon, 'I requyre *thee*³ proue thy
vertue agaynst me.' 'Then,' quod Sorbryn, 'tell me,
art thou a paynyme or a sarazyn?' 'Frende,' quod
Huon, 'I am nother paynym nor sarazyn / but I am 8
crystened / byleuyng in the lawe of Jesu cryste / &
thoughe thou seest me but poorely apparelled / dyspyse
me not / for I am com of a noble extraccyon / wherfore
I requyre the on thy lawe that thou beleuest on, lette 12
me not go without batayle.' 'Frende,' quod Sorbryn,
'in this request thou doest gret foly / for thou desyrest
thy deth. I haue pyte of the / and therefore I counsell
the to returne backe.' 'Paynym,' quod Huon, 'I had 16
rather dye then to returne or⁴ I haue iusted with *thee*.'
then they went eche fro other to take theyr course, but
for all that euer Huon coude do, his horse wolde not
aauance forth / wherof Huon was sore dyspleased, and 20
sayd, 'A, very god and man / I desyre the to gyue
me y^o grace that I myght wyune this horse that this
paynyme doth ryde on.'⁵ When Huon saw that his
horse wolde nother⁶ forwarde nor backe warde / he set 24
his shelde agaynst his enemy / and Sorbryn came ryn-
nyng lyke the tempest, and with his spere strake in
Huons shelde such a stroke that the buckles nor any
thyng elles coude resyste the stroke / but the shelde 28
was perced through out / but the good harneys⁷ saued
Huon fro ⁸all hurtes, and he remoued no more for the
stroke then⁹ it had ben a strong walle / wherof yuoriz
and all other had grete meruayle, & said one to another / 32
how they had neuer sene before so grete a stroke nor a
goodlyer reseyt therof without fallynge to the erthe.

¹ other. ² vnto. ³ to. ⁴ ere. ⁵ vppon.
⁶ go. ⁷ armour. ⁸ Fol. xlv. back, col. 2. ⁹ if.

- euery man praysed gretely Huon that he helde hym selfe so fermely. 'By Mahounde,' quod yuoryn, 'our man is fyers and of gret hardynes. I wolde he were 4 mounted nowe on¹ my hors.' And Huon, who had receyued the grete stroke, in grete yre cast downe his spere and toke his swerde with bothe his handes, & gaue ther with the paynym a grete stroke as he passed 8 by hym a hye on¹ his helme / the stroke was so pusante that nother the helme nor coyffe of stele coude not² resyst the stroke / but that his heed was clouen to the sholdres, and so he fell downe deed in y^e felde / then 12 Huon, who was quycke and lyght / toke the good horse Blanchardyn by the reyne & alyghted fro his owne horse, without fete in the styrop lept vp² vpon the paynyms horse, & lefte his owne in the felde. and 16 when he sawe hym self on Blanchardyn / he ³dashed to him³ his sporres to proue hym / when the horse felte the sporres / he began to lepe & gambaud & galop as it had ben the thonder / ⁴the paynyms had meruayle that 20 he had not fallen to the erthe / ⁵when he had well proued him and turned hym in and out / he thought he wolde not gyue hym for the valewe of a realme. then he cam to⁶ kyng yuoryn with .xx. gambaudes. 'By 24 mahounde,' quod yuoryn, 'this varlet semeth rather sone to a kyng or prynce then to be a varlet to a mynstrell' / then he came to⁶ Huon and embraced hym / & made hym grete feest⁷ / and the paynyms *that* were 28 within Anferlerne with the admyrall Galaffer yssued out of the cyte / and whan Galaffer saw his nephew slayn, he rode about hym thre tymes and made a pyteous com⁸playnt, and sayde, 'A, ryght dere nephew, I may well 32 complayne⁹ your youth / when I se you this¹⁰ pyteously slayne / certaynely yf I lyue longe your deth shall

and taking his own sword in both his hands,

cleaves Sorbryn's head to the shoulders.

Huon seizes his adversary's good horse Blanchardyn.

Ivoryn receives Huon well and makes for him a great feast.

The Admiral deplores the death of his nephew.

¹ vpon. ² omitted. ³⁻³ smoot him with. ⁴ and.
⁵ so. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ respecte. ⁸ Fol. xlvi. col. 1.
⁹⁻⁹ by reason of. ¹⁰ thus.

derely be bought' / ¹he caused the deed body to be caryed in to the cyte with grete lamentacyons / ²then he & his men entred in to the batayle. there³ was grete slaughter made on both partes; but amonge all 4 other Huon dyd meruayles / he slewe and bette downe & tare of helmes & strake out braynes with the pomell of his swerd / he slewe and bette downe all that came within his stroke / his hye⁴ prowes was suche that no 8 paynym durst abyde him, but fled as the shepe doth fro the wolues / he dyd so moche by vertue of his armes that within shorte space he brought all the⁵ enemyes to playne dyscomfytur / so that the admyrall 12 Galaffer with moche payne fled and entred in to the cyte, ryght sorowfull for y^e losse that he had receyued that day / for the thyrde parte of his men were slayne in the batayl, and all by the valyauntnes of Huon, the 16 whiche was so grete that kyng yuoryn and his barons stode styll to beholde his valyaunt dedes / and as Huon foughte he spyed out the paynym that had gyuen him his swerde / then he remembred the promys that he 20 had made hym / then² he lyft vp his swerd & strake a⁶ paynym ther with so that he claue his heed / to the brest & so⁷ fel downe dede / and Huon toke the paynyns horse & gaue the horse to hym that had 24 gyuen hym the good swerde / and sayd, 'frende, take it⁸ in worth the gyfte of this horse for a rewarde for the good swerde ye gaue me' / 'syr,' quod the paynym, 'I thanke you' / fynally,⁹ Huon dyd so moche that 28 there was no paynym that durst abyde him / but fled and entred into the cyte of Anfalerne. then they closed their gates & lyfte vp theyr brydges / and kyng yuoryns men departed with the boty¹⁰ they had wonne. 32 then with gret tryumphe Huon ¹¹was conuayed rydyng

and leads his men on to battle.

Huon fights with vigour, and does much havoc.

Through his prowes the Admiral is thoroughly worsted.

Huon gives a horse to the paynim who had bestowed the sword upon him.

Iuoryn drives the Admiral within his city, and departs.

¹ so. ² and. ³ where. ⁴ omitted. ⁵ his.
⁶ nother. ⁷ hee. ⁸ well. ⁹ In breefe. ¹⁰ that.
¹¹ Fol. xlvi. col. 2. .

cheke by cheke by kynge yuoryn, and so brought to Mombrant, where as they were receyued with gret ioy. and the admyral Galaffer was entred in to Anferlerne in 4 grete sorow for Sorbryn his nephew, who was deed, & also for his men that he hadde lost in batayle / and when he was vnarmed he caused his nephew to be buried with sore wepynges and lamentacyons. Now 8 let vs leue spekyng of them 'tyll we returne therto agayne.¹

Huon is treated with great honour.

In deep sorrow the Admyral buries his nephew.

¶ How Huon was set² in grete honoure, and satte at the table with kynge yuoryn of 12 Mombrant. Capitulo .lvi.

When yuoryn was entred into Mombrant he wente and vnarmed hym³ / his daughter came to⁴ hym to make him feest⁵ / and when he sawe his daughter / he kyssyd her and sayd, 'Dere daughter / thou wert mated in a good houre by the mynstralles varlet / for at⁶ y^e day of batayle that 20 we haue had agaynst the admyrall Galafer, who⁷ was dyscomfyted by the only prowes of this varlet by whom thou were mated ; thankyd be my god Mahound / for by him I haue ouercome myn enmyes / & be syde that, he 24 fought hande to hande agaynst sorbryn, nephew to the Admyrall Galaffer / & he slewe hym / but yf I maye lyue one yere, the grete seruyce that he hathe done to⁴ me shall be euen ryght well rewarded' / 'father,' quod 28 the lady, 'ye are bounde so to do' / then kynge yuroryn went vp in to his palayes, and his daughter with him, & Huon / went to y^e lodyng where as y^e mynstrell was lodged / then⁸ he vnarmed him and went with his

Ivoryn tells his daughter of Huon's valorous deeda.

1-1 vntill wee haue occasion to returne vnto them againe.

² hadde. ³ and. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ reuerence.

⁶ in. ⁷ he. ⁸ where.

maister ¹to the palayes / ²when kyngc yuoryn sawe them, the kyng auansed forth and toke Huon by the hande, & sayd / 'frende, ye shall go with me and syt at my table / for I can not do you to moche honoure for 4 y^e good seruyce *that* ye haue done³ me. I habandon and offers him all his valuables, to³ you all my house to do therin at your pleasure / take all my golde and syluer & iewelles, & gyue therof at and anything further that he may desire. your pleasure / I ordeyn & wyll that all that ye ⁸ commaunde shal be done ; all that is here I habandon to³ you / ye, in y^e ladys chambres take there your pleasure as ye lyste / & when I go out ye shall go *with* me.' 'syr,' quod Huon, 'of the grete honour that ye ¹² haue done to me I thanke you' / then they sat downe at the table / & when they had denyd, the kyngc and Huon sattu togyder on⁴ the ryche carpettes / then Mouffet plays music before the King. Mouffet the mynstrell apoynted⁵ his vyall, and played ¹⁶ so melodyously that the paynyms that herde him had grete meruayle therof / for the vyall made so swete a swonde / that it semed to be the mermaydes of the see / kyngc yuoryn & all his lordes had so gret ioye ²⁰ that it semed to³ them that they were in the glory of paradyce, so that there was no paynymme but *that* gaue hym gownes & mantelles & other iewelles. the mynstrell saw Huon syt by the kyng, &⁶ sayd / 'frende, ²⁴ yesterday I was your mayster, & now I am⁷ your mynstrell / I thynke now ye haue lytell care for me / yet I praye you come to³ me & gather togyder these clothes, & put them in my male as ye haue done or⁸ ²⁸ this' / when the kyngc and his lordes herd that they began to laughe. Now let us leue spekyngc of them / & speke⁹ of y^e olde Gerames.

¹ Fol. xlvi. back, col. 1. ² but. ³ vnto. ⁴ vppon.
⁵ opened. ⁶ hee. ⁷ become. ⁸ ere.
⁹ say somewhat.

¶ How the olde Gerames aryued at Anfa-
lerne by fortune, and the admyrall Galaffer
retayned hym to mayntayn his warre / and
4 how the fayre Esclaramonde spake with
1 hym. Cap. .lvii.



8 E haue herd here before y^e aduentures
that hath fallen to Huon, & how y^e
olde Gerames & .xiii. *with him departed*
& lefte Huon by cause he wolde not
byleue them, wherby fell to hym suche
aduentures as ye haue² herde, & how Gerames & his
12 companyons *that were in y^e lytel shyp sayled forth in*
the tempest without³ knowlege what was become of
Huon / but they thought rather he had ben deed then
alyue / and so within a moneth⁴ they were dryuen
16 *by another tempest to the porte of Anfalerne / when*
Gerames sawe how they were aryued there, he sayd to
his company / 'syr, we be not aryued at a good porte /
in this cyte dwelleth a paynym kynge who byleueth
20 *nother in god nor in good saynt⁵ / a more fyers*
paynyme can not be founde fro hens to the rede see ;
he is called the admyrall Galaffer ; without god haue
pyte of vs I can not se but we are lyke to dye / & we
24 *can not returne back' / y^e same tyme the admyrall*
Galaffer was rysen fro dyner, & loked out at a wyndow
& behelde the see syde / & than he perceyued the
lytell shyp where Gerames & his company were in /
28 *when he saw it he went downe with som of his men,*
desyringe to knowe what they were that ther ariued /
then he aproched to y^e shyp & said / 'syr, what men
be you that are thus aryued at my porte ?' / 'sir,' quod
32 *Gerames, 'we be frenchmen, pylgrymes, & are goyng to*
offre at y^e holy sepulcre, for⁶ fortune of y^e se hath

Gerames and his
companions in
their little boat
are driven to the
port of Anfalerne.

Gerames fears
that the Admiral
will use them ill.

The Admiral
comes down from
his palace,
and meeting
the knights,
inquires whence
they have come.

Gerames tells
their misfortune.

¹ Fol. xlvi. back, col. 2. ² since. ³ any. ⁴ after.

⁵⁻⁶ not in our god. ⁶ the.

The Admiral
receives them
kindly,

speaks to them of
King Ivoryn's
hostility.

Gerames promises
to fight for him
if his cause be
just.

The Admiral
tells him of
Esclaramonde's
arrival there,

and how King
Ivoryn seeks her
life,

and how he
himself has
wedded her,

brought vs hyder / & therefore, syr, yf there be ony
trybute *that* we ought to paye, we are redy to do your
pleasir' / 'syr, quod y^e admyrall, 'haue no dout
that by me or ony of min ye shal haue oni displeasur / 4
for yf ye wyll abyde *with* me ye are wel aryued' /
'sir,' quod Gerames, ¹'yf it may¹ please you,² shew vs
the cause why' / 'sir,'³ quod the admyrall,⁴ 'I shall shewe
you / trewe it is here nere me dwelleth kyng yuoryn of 8
Mombrant,⁵ who maketh⁶ me grete warre; he sleeth my
men & dystroyeth my countre, wherof I haue grete
sorowe in my hert' / 'sir,' quod Gerames, 'yf your
quarell be iust & ryghtfull we shall be all redy to ayde 12
you truly / for, *sir*, *without* your quarell be good
we wyll not abyde *with* you.' 'syr,' quod the
admyrall, 'I shall shewe you the trowth / so it was on⁶
a day I stode in a wyndowe & loked downe to y^e see 16
syde, as I dyd now *when* ye aryued at this porte /
& then I saw a shyp comynge & toke ancre there as ye
be now / & in the shyp there was a damsell & x
maryners / who thought to haue ledde her to⁷ kyng 20
yuoryn of Mombrant; I can not tel where they had
taken her / &⁸ she was doughter to the admyral
Gaudys / *that* Mahound take his soule / ⁹I know⁹ for
certain *that* yf kyng yuoryn myght haue the damsell / 24
he wolde a¹⁰ brent¹¹ her / by cause it hath ben shewed
him that she was the cause of the deth of her father y^e
Admyral Gaudys / who was broder to yuoryn / & so
he is vncl to the damsell / and *when* I was aduertysed 28
that the .x. maryners wolde haue delyuered her in to
the handes of her vncl yuoryn / I toke her fro them &
slew *them* all by cause they wold not delyuer her ¹²*with*
fayrnes /¹² & thus I haue wedded the damsel / &¹³ 32

¹⁻¹ I would it might.

² to.

³ Why.

⁴ that.

⁵ Fol. xlvi. col. 1.

⁶ vppon.

⁷ vnto.

⁸ but.

⁹⁻⁹ and I knewe.

¹⁰ haue.

¹¹ burnt.

¹²⁻¹² to me with entreatie.

¹³ omitted.

when yuoryn herd this he made me warre / & was here
 before my cite *with* al his pusanse, & hath slayn my
 men / & led awaye all my bestes & prouysyon, & hath
 4 brent¹ & dystroyed my countre / & euery day he cometh
 & ouer ryn all y^e countre, & he hath *with* him a yong
 man / I know not of what countre he is of / &² this
 last day he slew a nephew of myn whom I ryght derely
 8 loued,³ who was called Sorbrin / he was sone to my
 sister / for whom I haue suche sorow at my hert *that*
 it can not be apeased / & he hath led away his horse
 called Blanchardyn, the whiche is the best horse in x
 12 realmes / his lyke is not in al y^e world; wherfore
 I desyre you, as I maye deserue your *seruise*, to abyde
with me / & to do so moch ⁴*that* I myght haue y^e sayd
 yong man taken prisoner & the hors agayn to me
 16 restored / & yf ye can this do I shall so rewarde you
that y^e shall alwayes be ryche, & all tho⁵ in your
 company' / 'sir,' quod Gerames / 'yf he come ony
 more hyder, & that ye shew me him / I shall do my
 20 payn⁶ to bryng him & y^e hors also to⁷ you' / 'frende,'
 quod the admyrall, 'yf ye wyl shew me this curteyse I
 shal habandon all my realme to be at your pleasure &
 commaundement' / *with* these wordes the olde Gerames
 24 yssued out of y^e shyp & all his company / & entred *in*
 to y^e cyte of Anfalerne *with* the admyral Galaffer⁸ /
 when they came to the palayes Gerames sayd / 'sir, I
 & my company requyre you to shew vs the damsell for
 28 whose sake ye maynten this warre.' 'frende,' quod the
 admyrall, 'yf ye were a yonge man I wolde not shewe
 her to⁷ you / but I se wel ye be old & auneynt /
 wherfore no yonge lady wyl set ony thyng by you' /
 32 then y^e admyral toke Gerames by y^e hande & led him
 in to the *chambre* where as Esclaramonde was / as sone
 as the lady saw Gerames she knew him, wher*with* she

and how Sorbryn
 has been slain
 by Ivoryn's
 champion.

Gerames offers to
 aid the Admiral
 in his war with
 the King.

Gerames and his
 company enter
 the city.

Gerames asks to
 see Esclaramonde.

The damsell
 recognizes the
 old man,

¹ burnt. ² but, ³ and. ⁴ Fol. xlvi. col. 2.
⁵ those. ⁶ best. ⁷ vnto.

and cries aloud. began to chaunge coloure, & fel downe in a sowne in the
chambre, makyng a grete crye¹ / when y^e admyral
Galaffer saw *that* he was ryght sorowful, & sayd /
'fayre lady, why do ye make this sorow? are ye troubled 4
for² y^e syght of this olde man *that* I haue brought
hyder?' / 'nay, surely, *sir*,' quod she / 'it is for a
colyke *that* hath taken me in the ryght syde, wher by
I haue often tymes grete payn³ / but, syr, yf it were 8
your pleasir I wolde gladly speke *with* this frenche
knyght / for customably they know many thynges / &
perauenture he may shew me such thinges as shalbe for
my helth / for frenchemen are ryght subtyl⁴ in gyuyng 12
of good counsell' / 'dame,'⁵ quod y^e admiral, 'it pleaseth
me well *that* ye speke *with* him secretly' / then y^e
lady called Gerames, & sayd / 'frende, I pray *thee* gyue
me some good counsel *that* I may be eased of the payne 16
that I endure' / 'dame,'⁵ quod Gerames / 'for the
honoure of you & of the⁶ admyrall that is here present,
I shall ayde you in suche wyse that ye shall be eased
of the payne *that* ye endure' / then Gerames, who was 20
subtyl, wel perceyued the mynde of the lady / then he
aproched nere to⁷ her &⁸ sat downe togyder on a couche
therby / 'Gerames,' quod the lady, 'I praye you what
aduenture hath brought you hyther?' / 'dame,'⁵ quod 24
he, 'we be come hyther by reason of tempest of the
see / but, dame,'⁹ quod he, 'I pray you what is become
of Huon?' / 'by my fayth,' quod she, 'I byleue he is
deed / for when ye departed fro vs, such a meruaylous 28
tempest rose on the see that all *that* were in our shyp
were perysshed, & the shyp drowned & broken in small
peeses, excepte Huon & I / we saued vs on a table
of wode, wherupon we aryued in an yle *that* was nere 32
vs / & when we were on the lande, there cam to⁷ vs

The Admiral
inquires in vain
why Esclara-
monde is affected
at the sight of
him,

but he leaves the
two together.

Esclaramonde
asks how
Gerames came to
Anfalerne.

Gerames tells her,
and inquires for
Huon.

¹ outerie.

² at.

³ annoyance.

⁴ discreet.

⁵ Madame.

⁶ Fol. xlvii. back, col. 1.

⁷ vnto.

⁸ they.

⁹ Ladie.

.x. maryners, & toke me fro thens, & left Huon there
 blyndfelde, &¹ handes & fete faste bounde, so that he
 had no power to releue himselfe; & these .x. maryners
 4 brought me hyder, & the admyral Galaffer hath slayn
 them all / therfore I thynke surely *that* Huon is
 deed; Iesu haue mercy on his ²soule² / and thus I am
 here with this admyrall, who hath assured me to wedde
 8 me / but as yet he neuer medled with me bodely / but
 I haue made him to byleue that I made a vowe to
 Mahounde, for .ii. yere to come³ no man shold haue
 parte⁴ of my body, & that is for the loue of Huon,
 12 whom I can not forgette. the admyral hath beleued
 me /⁵for as long as I lyue I shal neuer forgete Huon, &
 shal alwayes,⁶ to dye in y^e payne,⁷ kepe me fro the
 bodely company of ony man lyunge / a, syr Gerames!
 16 yf ye myght do so moche that I might scape fro hens
 with you / ye shold do me a grete curteyse / for yf I
 myghte scape fro hens, & come in to a crysten realme, I
 wolde yelde my selfe in to some abbey of nonnes, to y^e
 20 entent *that* the resydew of my lyfe I myght pray for the
 soule of my louer ⁸Huon' / 'dame,'⁹ quod Gerames, 'be
 not dysmayed, for yf I can scape fro hens, what so euer
 come¹⁰ ther of, I shall cary you *with* me' / then the
 24 admyral came to¹¹ them & sayd / 'frende, ye hold ouer
 longe talkyng *with* the damsell / come a way! ye haue
 taryed there longe ynow' / then Gerames departed fro
 Esclaramonde, straynyng her by the hande / & the
 28 admyrall Galaffer toke Gerames by y^e arme / & brought
 him in to y^e hal to supper / & after supper they
 comoned of the feates of y^e warre. Nowe let vs leue
 spekyng of them / & ¹²speke of¹² kyng yuoryn ot
 32 mombrant, & of¹³ Huon who was *with* him.

Esclaramonde
says that she be-
lieves him dead,

but that she will
remain faithful
to him.

She desires to
enter a convent.

The Admiral calls
on Gerames to
close his
interview with
Esclaramonde.

The Admiral
receives Gerames
at dinner.

¹ his. ²⁻² vppon him. ³ that. ⁴ vse. ⁵ and.
⁶ be ready. ⁷ to. ⁸ Fol. xlvii. back, col. 2.
⁹ Madam. ¹⁰ to me. ¹¹ vnto. ¹²⁻¹² returne to.
¹³ noble.

¶ How kyng yuoryn cam agayne before Anfalerne, & how Gerames and Huon fought togyder, & at last they knewe eche other, & how they entred in to Anfalerne & 4 closed¹ the admyrall without. Cap. .lviii.



Huon advises Ivoryn to attack Anfalern a second time.

Ow sheweth y^e story² that a³ .ii. dayes after that kyng yuoryn had made his cours before Anfalerne / 8 then Huon came to yuoryn and sayde : 'Syr, cause your men too be armed, & let vs go vvsyte the Admyrall ⁴Galaffer / for a man that is in warre ought neuer to lye styll tyll he 12 hathe brought his enemy to vttraunce⁵ / for it semeth that he setteth but lytell by you when he kepeth styll your nece agaynst your wyl, ⁶& is⁶ your subiecte, &⁷ holdeth his landes of you' / 'frende,' quod yuoryn, 16 'ye say truly / I shall do by your counsell.' then he made to be cryed through the cyte, that euery man sholde make him redy to go with y^e kyng before Anfalerne / &⁸ Huon, who was desyrous to haue batayle, 20 armed him, & toke blanchardyn, his good horse, &⁸ mounted on hym without ony styrop, & toke a grete spere in his hande with a good sharpe hede / &⁹ y^e same tyme as Huon was in the palayes, yuoryns doughter 24 was lenyng in a wyndowe in her chambre, accompanied with dyuers ladyes & damselles / she behelde Huon, & she sayd / 'by Mahounde, it is ¹⁰goodly¹⁰ to behold yonder yong man syttyng on y^e hors blanchardyne / 28 ryght¹¹ well¹² becometh hym⁸ his armure / a goodlyer man can not be founde, nor a more hardy / for y^e last day he slew Sorbyn, the ¹³moost valyant¹³ knyght in all

Mounted on Blanchardyn, Huon sets out.

Ivoryn's daughter admires his beauty from her window.

¹ shut. ² Historie. ³ aboute. ⁴ Fol. xviii. col. 1.
⁵ vtter ruin. ⁶⁻⁶ hee being. ⁷ one that. ⁸ omitted.
⁹ Now. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ a goodly sight. ¹¹ how. ¹² he.
¹³⁻¹³ valiantest.

pagany, & also wan his good hors / but yet I am dys-
 pleased with him in¹ *that* when he played with me at
 the chesse / he was not so hardy, ones² to embrace nor³
 4 kysse me ; yf he had, I wolde haue loued him in suche
 wyse that yf he had requyred of me ⁴ony thyng elles,⁴
 I wolde not a⁵ refused him / though my fader had
 sworne the contrary a C tymes' / thus the ladyes &
 8 damselles deuysed togyder of⁶ Huon, who⁷ set lytell
 therby / thus kyng yuoryn & his men yssued out of y^e King Ivoryn
 cyte of Mombrant, & cam in⁷ to y^e felde, & then rode arrives with his
 forth toward Anfalerne, & at the last cam before the army before
 12 gates of the cyte, & there ordred them in batayle⁸ / & Anfalerne.
 Huon, who had grete desyre too attayne to good⁷
 renowne, cam to the gate with his spere in his hande,
 & cryed a hyc⁹ to them *that* were on the walles, & sayde,
 16 ' where is Galaffer your lorde ? go & shew him *that* he Huon challenges
 come¹⁰ & iust agaynst him *that* hath slayne his nephew, the Admiral to
 & *that* I wyl serue him in lykwyse¹¹ if I may mete avenge his
 with him in batayle, or elles he shall delyuer to me y^e nephew's death.
 20 fayre Esclaramonde' / Galaffer was nere by, & herd
 what Huon sayd, & knew wel it was he, by reson of the
 hors blanchardyn, wherof¹² his hert¹² was ryght sorow-
 full / and sayd to Gerames / ' frende, I shall shew you
 24 here he *that* hath done me all this yll / now I shal se yf Gerames offers to
 ye wyll kepe promys *with* ma.' ' Syr,' quod Gerames, fight the knight
 ' take no care / for by y^e fayth *that* I owe to god / I in the Admiral's
 shall rendre to you bothe the hors & the man / to do behalf,
 28 *with* them at your pleaser.' then Gerames yssued out and arms himself
 clene¹³ armed, well horsed, & toke a good spere in his for fight.
 hande / he was a goodly knyght of his age, pusant of
 body, and in his tyme gretely doughted¹⁴ / & when he
 32 was on hys hors, he strecched himself in the saddle in
 suche wyse *that* his styropes stretched out a long a⁷

1 for. 2 as once. 3 and. 4-4 my loue. 5 haue.

6 but. 7 omitted. 8 array. 9 allowed.

10 Fol. xlvi. col. 2. 11 like sorte. 12-12 he. 13 all.

14 redoubted.

He rides on in
front of the
Admiral's men.

Huon rushes
upon him,

and they strike
each other with
great violence.

Gerames forces
Huon to kneel
upon the ground,
and to petition for
grace.

Huon does not
recognize his old
friend,

handful or more ; he was gretly praised of the painims
that saw him / ¹ then y^e admyral Galafer commaunded
euery man to be armed, & he himself was armed rychely ;
then y^e gate was opened / & Gerames was y^e fyrst *that* ⁴
yssued out *with* his company / when he was *without*
y^e cyte, he strake y^e hors with the² spores so *that* he was
a grete space before all his company / with his spere in
his hande & sheld about his necke, & his whyte berd ⁸
hangyng downe on his brest vnder his helme, & ³ when
Huon, on y^e other part, saw Gerames coming, he spored
blanchardyn, & cam agynst Gerames / and so they met
togyder without any worde spekyng, & strake eche ¹²
other on ther sheldes so *that* al was broken ; but their
harnes⁴ was⁵ good, so *that* they toke none yll,⁶ but theyr
spers brake to their handes, ⁷ so *that*⁷ the sheuers flew vp
in to the ayre / & the strokes was so rude *that* both ¹⁶
knyghtes & horses fel to y^e erth / but ⁸ then quykly⁸
they arose,⁹ & gaue ech other grete strokes / Gerames,
who was experte in dedes of armes, toke his swe[r]de
with both his handes, and gaue Huon suche a stroke ¹⁰ on ²⁰
the helme, that perforce he was fayne to set one of his
knees to the erthe / the stroke was so heuy / and yf it
had not ben by the grace of god, he had ben slayne /
Huon was so astonyed with y^e stroke that he had moche ²⁴
a do to ¹¹ releue, and ¹¹ sayd, ' a, good lorde, socoure me,
& ¹² gyue me grace¹² that, or ¹³ I dye, I may se y^e fayre
Esclaramonde.' these wordes he spake openly / for ¹⁴ he
had thought *that* Gerames vnderstode hym not,¹⁴ for ²⁸
lytel¹⁵ he thought that it had ben Gerames that fought
with hym / then he came to Gerames with his swerde
in his hande, to ¹⁶ be¹⁶ reuenged / for he neuer receyued

¹ and. ² his. ³ Nowe. ⁴ armour. ⁵ so.

⁶ hurt. ⁷⁻⁷ and. ⁸⁻⁸ omitted. ⁹ againe.

¹⁰ Fol. xlviij. back, col. 1. ¹¹⁻¹¹ recouer, but.

¹²⁻¹² graunt me. ¹³ before.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ he thought that Gerames had not vnderstood him.

¹⁵ he *before* lytel. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ haue been.

before, suche a stroke as Gerames had gyuen hym. But Gerames vnderstode Huon by his wordes, & knewe hym / & ther with caste downe his swerde to the erth, 4 & had suche sorowe that he coude¹ speke no² worde / when Huon sawe that, he meruayled gretely why he caste his swerde to the erth / for³ Huon then wold not touch hym / but sayd, 'paynym, what is thy mynde to do? 8 wylt thou haue peace, or elles fyght with me?' / 'a, syr,' quod Gerames, 'come forth, & stryke of my hede / for well I haue deserued it, syn⁴ that I haue stryken you so rudely; but I knewe you not / wherof I am⁵ sorye' / 12 when Huon herd him speke, anone he knew well that it was Gerames, wherof he had grete ioye in his hert for fyndyng of hym. the paynyms that regarded them had grete meruayle what thyng y^e two champyons 16 ment or thought to do / 'syr,' quod Gerames, 'it behoueth vs shortely to determyne oure besynes / for I se on all partes paynyms assemble togyder to be-holde vs / I shall shew you what is best for vs .ii. to do / lepe⁶ 20 on your horse & I shall lepe on myne / then I shall take you and lede you parforce, as my prysoner, to the cyte of Anfalerne / and there shall ye se your louer Esclaramonde, who wold⁷ haue grete ioye with your comyng, 24 and she wyll tell you⁸ of her⁸ newes.'⁹ 'frende,' quod Huon / 'I shall do as ye deuyse' / then they lepte on theyr horses, & Gerames cam to Huon & layd handes on him, as though he toke hym prysoner / & so led 28 him towarde y^e cyte of Anfalerne, & his company folowed hym / & when kynge yuoryn sawe how Gerames had lede a-way Huon as his prysoner, he began to cry, & sayd, 'on forth, ye sarazyns / how suffre you 32 this yonge man to be lede away as a prysoner to the cyte of Anfalerne? / I shall neuer haue ioye at my hert yf ye suffre him thus to be led awaye' / then y^e sarazyns

but Gerames
knows him, and
casts his sword
away.

Huon inquires
the reason of this
conduct,

and Gerames
reveals himself.

They cannot
conceal their joy.
The paynyms
wonder at their
inaction.

Gerames proposes
that Huon shall
follow him into
Anfalerne to see
Esclaramonde.

The old man
lays hand on him
as if he were his
prisoner.

Ivoryn urges his
men to rescue
Huon,

¹ not. ² a. ³ and. ⁴ seeing. ⁵ very. ⁶ you vp.
⁷ will. ⁸⁻⁸ other. ⁹ Fol. xlviij. back, col 2.

but Gerames
leads him before
the Admiral,
who bids him put
him in prison.

When Gerames
and Huon are
within the city,
they and their
company of
French knights
close the gates,
and, in the
absence of the
army in the
field,

kill all the old
men and the
women and the
children.
The town falls
into their hands.

Huon visits
Esclaramonde.

She welcomes
him right
joyfully.

dashed in to the prese to haue rescued Huon / & on the
other parte the Admyrall Galaffer came & met Gerames
& Huon; & then Gerames sayd to hym, 'syr, go & fyght
with your enemyes; beholde here y^e yong man that ⁴
slewe your nephew Sorbryn! I shall led him into y^e cyte,
& set hym in sure pryson; ¹ then I shall shortly returne
agayne to you to fyght agaynst kynge Iuoryn' / 'frende,'
quod Galaffer, 'I requyre you so do; & as soone as you ⁸
haue set hym in pryson, returne agayne.' Gerames
departed fro the Admyrall, and wente to the cyte with
Huon and his .xiii companyons with hym / when they
were entred in to the Cyte, they lyfted vp the brydges ¹²
and closed the gates / in the cyte there was no men of
warre; ² all were in the felde with the Admyrall agaynste
³ Yuoryn; there were none but women and ⁴ chyldren &
olde folkes / & whan *that* Gerames & Huon saw how ¹⁶
they were strong ynough for them in the cyte / they
went in to the stretes & cryed 'saynt Denys,' & slewe all
they met, as well olde men as women & chyldren / so
that *within* a shorte space they had clene wonne the ²⁰
towne / many paynims fled & lept downe ⁴ in to the
dykes, & brake neckes, armes, and legges / then they
went in to the palays, and there they founde the fayre
Esclaramond. and whan Huon saw her, he dyd of his ²⁴
helme / & ran & embraced her, & whan the lady ⁵sawe
that it was Huon / the ioy that she had was so grete
that it was meruayle to se it / ther was suche ioy made ⁴
at there metyng that it can not be recountyd / Huon ²⁸
and y^e lady enbrasyd and kyssyd other many tymys /
and she sayd / 'A, Huon! ye be ryght hertely welcome /
for I went ⁶ I sholde neuer haue sene you.'⁷ 'Lady,'
quod Huon, 'I ought greatly to loue & to cherysshe ³²
you, & I am ryght ioyfull that it hath pleasyd ⁸our
lorde Iesu Cryst ⁸ *that* I haue nowe founde you in good

¹ and. ² for. ³ king. ⁴ omitted.
⁵ Fol. xlix. col. 1. ⁶ thought. ⁷ more. ⁸⁻⁸ God.

helth and prosperyte / for a more trewer¹ than ye be,
 there is none lyuyng² / whan all the company had
 made there salutasyons one to an nother, they went to
 4 dyner, & were rychely serued / for there was greate
 plentye in y^e cyte / and the sarazyns were without the
 cyte, where as they fought and slew eche other / there
 was suche sleynge on bothe partes that the felde were
 8 coueryd with deed men and sore woundyd ; manye a
 horse ranne aboute the felde, & there maysters lyenge
 deed / these two kynges fought one agaynst the other,
 pusaunce agaynst pusaunce / ²two sarazyns that were
 12 escapid out of the cyte of Anfalerne came to the
 admyrall Galaffer, and sayd / ' A, syr, your cytye is
 loste by the frenchemen who be enteryd in to it ; there
 is nother man nor woman³ but that is³ slayne / the
 16 olde knyght that cam to you & his .xiii. companyons
 be all seruautes to y^e yong man that slewe your
 newew / whan the two frenchemen fought one with
 an nother / they toke to-gether aquyntaunce, and they
 20 be all subgettes to the yonge man that was with kynge
 luoryn / and it is he that slew the admyrall Gaudys /
 and dyscomfytyd the Gyaunt Agrapart / we knewe
 hym well whan he enteryd in to the cytye / we wolde
 24 haue shewyd you therof / but we durst not tyll⁴ ye
 were returnyd fro the batayle. Now they be in your
 palays, ⁵where as it please⁵ them / for there is abyden⁶
 notner⁷ man / woman⁶ nor chylde⁸ / but all be slayne
 28 except a⁹ .xxx. ladyes & damselles who were with her
 that sholde be your wyfe / & they be put out of the
 cyte, ye may se them syttyng without the gate petously
 wepyng⁹. / whan the Admyrall Galaffer herd that, he
 32 was heuye and sorowfull, and sayd to his men that
 were aboute hym, ' Syrs, I praye you hastely gyue me

The Frenchmen
dine together.

Outside the city
walls the battle
rages between the
two Saracen
armies.

News is brought
the Admiral of
the capture of his
city.

and of Huon's
previous
adventures at
Babylon.

All within the
town are slain
except the ladies
in waiting on
Eclairamonde.

¹ man. ² and. ³⁻³ therein, but they are all.
⁴ vntill. ⁵⁻⁵ which pleaseth. ⁶ omitted.
⁷ Fol. xlix. col. 2. ⁸ liuing. ⁹ some.

The Admiral is advised to submit to King Ivoryn.

He offers his sword to the King,

and tells him of his evil plight.

sum counsell what I shal do, for it is nedfull.' 'Syr,' quod they, 'it is of necessity that ye goo to kynge Iuoryn, and knele downe at his fote, and pray hym to haue mercy of ¹ you / other counsell as nowe we can not ⁴ gyue you.' 'Syr,' quod Galafer, 'I shall do as ye haue sayd' / than the Admyrall Galaffer, with his sworde in his hande, went throw the prease and cam to kynge Iuoryn, and alyghtyd fro his horse, & knelyd downe ⁸ before ² kynge Iuoryn ² / and sayd, 'syr kynge, I yeld to you my sworde / with the whiche, yf you please, stryke of my hede, for well I haue dyseruyd it. But, syr, I pray you, for y^e loue of Mahounde, haue mercy of ¹² me / I offer to make you ³ amendes as you and your lordes shall iuge / so that ye wyl ayde me to take the frenchemen that be in my cytye, & hath taken a-way my wyfe, your nece Esclaramonde / syr, the yonge man ¹⁶ that ye so well louyd, who cam but lat to your courte with a mynstrell, is the same frencheman that slew your brother the admyrall Gaudys / this tydynges I haue herd by .ii. messengers that knew hym in your ²⁰ courte / & now ⁴ with hym his ⁵ .xiii. other frenchemen whom I had reteynyd with me to maynteyn my warre, but they be all subgetes to the yonge man / and now all .xiii. be in my palayes, & my wyfe with them.' 24



¶ Howe Iuoryn causyd Mouflet the old mynstrell to be brought to the gybet to haue been hangyd / & ⁶ howe he was rescuwyd by Huon. Capitulo .lix. 28

¹ vppon. ²⁻² him. ³ such. ⁴ there are.
⁵ omitted. ⁶ Fol. xlix. back, col. 1.



Uoryn herde Galaffer, he¹ sayd / 'Alas!
 I was vnhapye *that* I knew not *that*²
 this yong man³ had slayne my brother:
 4 yf I had, it sholde derely haue ben
 bought. Therefore, syr Galaffer, cause
 your men to withdraw fro the batayle,
 and I shall withdraw myn, and I shall know of my
 8 barons what counsell they wyll gyue me.' Than both
 partes blew the retrayte / than¹ kynge Iuoryn sayd to
 his lordes, 'Syr, what counsell wyl ye geue me as
 touchyng y^e admyrall Galaffer?' / 'sir,' quod they,
 12 'geue hym agayne his londes / syn he axeth mercy /
 yf he hath done yll, he offeryth to make amendes' /
 than Iuoryn called Galaffer, & sayd, 'sir' admyrall, I
 render agayne to you all your londes, & pardon you of
 16 all myn yll wyll / & besyde *that*, I shall helpe you to
 destroy the frenchemen that are in your cyte of Anfa-
 lerne' / than Galaffer knelyd downe, & thankyd kynge
 Iuoryn / for *that* courtesye *that* he shewyd him &
 20 offeryd to do / and so wolde haue kyssyd his fete / but
 Iuoryn wold not suffre hym, but lyft hym vp / Thus
 these two kynges agreed together / and sware to gether
 to haue the deth of Huon & his knyghtes / Than
 24 Huon & his company abandonyd vp the cyte of Anfa-
 lerne, by cause he had so few men to kepe it / & so
 kept y^e castell, y^e whiche was stronge ynow. stondyng
 on a rocke on the see syde, it was⁴ inpreyngnable so it
 28 were well vytellyd / at the corner of the castell there
 was a strong towre, & vnderneath it was the porte
 where as shyppes cam to theyr ancre / whan Iuoryn &
 Galaffer saw that the towne was gyuen vp by the
 32 frenchemen / they enteryd in to it *with* all theyr great
 puyssaunce / & logyd aboute in the towne / but *in*
 takyng of theyr lodgynges, Huon & Gerames and such

Ivoryn orders the
 battle to cease,
 and both the
 armies to retreat.

He promises to
 restore to the
 Admiral all his
 lands,
 and to aid him
 against the
 Frenchmen.

Huon and his
 knights abandon
 the city and
 retire to the
 castle.

Ivoryn and the
 Admiral enter the
 city with their
 forces.

¹ and.

² omitted.

³ that.

⁴ indeede.

Huon's men
shoot darts at the
Saracens.

as ¹were with them shot out darts & quarelles² in
suche wyse / that there was not so hardy a paynym
that durst pere before the castell. yf he dyd, he was
slayne or hurte / whan Iuoryn & Galaffer saw y^o 4

The Kings erect a
gibbet before the
castle.

deelynge of the frenchemen / they raysyd vp a gybet
before the castell / therby to make y^o frenchemen
afrayed / ³than they toke Mouflet y^o mynstrell, & bound
his handes behynde hym so sore *that* the blode cam out 8
at the nayles / than they hangyd his vyall aboute his

Ivoryn reproaches
Mouflet with
bringing Huon
to his court,

necke / & than he was brought before Iuoryn, who
sayde to hym, 'A, *thou* false traytore! yll hast thou
remembred the goodness *that* my brother Gaudys hath 12
done to the / whan *that*⁴ he that slewe hym, thou hast
brought in to my court, therby to do me dyspyte. But

and orders him to
be hanged.

I shall nother ete nor drynke tyll thou hast thy dysert,
& that is, to be hangyd.' 'A, syr!' *quod* Mouflet, 16
'Neuer in all my lyfe I haue done or thought any

The minstrel
pleads in vain
that he knew not
who Huon might
be.

treason / nor ⁵I know⁵ not that / that I brought to your
court hym *that* slew your brother the admyrall Gaudys,
who was my lord & mayster / therefore, *sir*, grete synne 20
it were for you to put me to deth for *that* I am not
gyilty of.' 'Thou lyst, false traytour,' *quod* Iuoryn /

He is led to the
gallows,

& so *commaundyd* a .xxx. men to lede hym to y^o
galows / & whan they were com theder, they causyd 24
the mynstrell to mount vp on y^o ladder / the frenche-
men in y^o castell had great meruayle who it sholde be
that they wold hang vp there / ³whan the minstrel was
aboue on the ladder / he tournyd hym towardes y^o 28

and calls on
Huon to protect
him.

castell, & cryed *with* an hye voyce, 'A, Huon! how wyll
ye suffer me here to dye / yet remembre the goodnes
that I haue done to you / & of⁴ y^o courtesye *that* I dyd
whan ye came all naked. I gaue you than clothyng 32
& mete & drynke / & I abandonyd to you all *that* I
had / yll it hath ben employed without ye rewarde me

¹ Fol. xlix. back, col. 2.

² quarrelled.

³ and.

⁴ omitted.

⁵⁻⁵ knew.

better' / whan Huon herd y^e mynstrell, he knew well
that it was Mouflet who had been his mayster / than
 he sayd to his company / 'syr, ¹I requyre you arme
 4 you quyckely / for the paynyms here without hath
 reryd vp a gybet, wheron they wyll hange a mynstrell
 who hath done me great ²good and ³pleasure. I wolde
 be ryght sory yf he sholde haue any yll' / than
 8 Gerames and all his companyons made them redy, and
 issued out of the castell with Huon by a secret
 posterne / so that they³ were aboute y^e gybet were not
 ware of them tyll Huon & his company was amonge
 12 them. Huon ranne at hym that sholde haue hangyd
 the mynstrell, & strake hym with his spere clene throwe,
 & so⁴ fell downe deed / and than Huon tooke downe the
 mynstrell, and made hym to fly away to the posterne /
 16 and his vyall about his necke. he that had sene hym
 flye a-way coude not a⁵ kept hym selfe fro lawghyng,
 for he ranne so fast that he semyd to be no olde man /
 but rather of the age of .xxx. yere. and Huon and
 20 Gerames and his company slew and bet downe all the
 .xxx. paynyms, so that none scapyd the deth / than⁶
 kyng Ivoryn and Galaffer perseuyd *that* there was
 myche a do aboute y^e gybet / they sayd, 'Syr, the
 24 frenchemen are come out of the castell / go and loke that
 ye do so mych that none of them enter agayne' / than
 paynyms on euery parte issued out of there lodgynges,
 and ranne thether he that best myght, without kepyng
 28 of any good ordre / than Huon & Gerames, whan they
 saw them comyng / they made semblaunt⁷ to returne
 to the cyte a soft pace / & the paynyms cam after them
 cryenge and howlyng lyke dogges / and whan they
 32 aprochyd nere, Huon sodenly tournyd, & with his spere
 he mette so the fyrst that he ranne hym clene throw
 the body with his spere, so *that* he fell downe deed,

Huon hears him,
 and calls on his
 men to resceue
 him.

They suddenly
 rush upon the
 gibbet and kill
 the hangman.

Mouflet runs into
 the castle.

Ivoryn and the
 Admiral order the
 Saracens to seize
 the Frenchmen
 before they can
 re-enter their
 fortress.

Huon turns to
 defend himself,

¹ Fol. 1. col. 1. ²⁻³ omitted. ³ that. ⁴ hee.
⁵ haue. ⁶ When. ⁷ semblance.

and with his
men slays many
of his enemies.

Then all the
Frenchmen
regain the castle,

except Garyn of
St. Omer,
who fights
valiantly until he
falls slain.

Huon laments his
loss,

and tells
Esclaramonde
of his grief,

and she consoles
him.

and Gerames and his company strake so amonge the
paynmys that y^e place ran lyke a ryuer of blode of the
deed paynmys. Huon strake with his sword with both
his ¹handes / he strake none with a full stroke / but ⁴
that he claue the hede to the teth / but fynally the
forse of the paynmys was so gret that at length they
coude not abyde it / than Huon, who was expert in
dedes of armes, parseyuyd that it was tyme to departe / ⁸
he called his men to-gether and went toward the
posterne / the whiche, with muche payne, they gatte in
there at; and so they entred in all .xiii. companyons /
but yet they were so hastyd and pursewyd / that ¹²
Garyn of saint Omer abode without and defendyd
hym selfe valyauntly; But at last he was slayne by the
paynmys / than Huon was ryght sorowfull whan he
saw that Garin was not enteryd in to the castell, and ¹⁶
peteously compleynyd for hym, and sayd, 'A, dere
cosyne, who for the loue of me haue left your wyfe and
chyldrene and londe and syngnoryes! I am sory of your
deth.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'leue your sorow, and ²⁰
thynke to make good chere, and to kepe wel our fortres.
our lord god hath always aydyd you, and shall doo
throw his grace / goo we vp & make good chere / for
with this sorow we can wyn no thyng' / than whan ²⁴
they came in to the palays, they mette with Esclara-
mond / ²whan Huon saw her, he sayd, 'my fayre louer,³
this day I haue lost one of my good frendes, wherof I
am sorowfull.' 'Syr,' quod she, 'I am sory therof / ²⁸
but that thyng that can not be recoueryd must be left /
we be all made to dye. god shall haue mercy on his
soule' / with suche lyke wordes Esclaramonde and
Gerames apeacyd Huon / ²whan they were in the hall ³²
they vnarmyd them / and went to dyner / and after⁴
mete⁵ they lokyd out at y^e wyndowes / to se the coun-

¹ Fol. 1. col. 2.

² and.

³ Loue.

⁴ afterwarde.

⁵ omitted.

tenaunce of y^e painymys / than Gerames sayd to y^e mynstrell Mouflet,¹ ‘frende, I pray the take thy vyall, and geue vs a songe to make his² mery’ / ³the mynstrell
 4 tooke his instrument and gaue them a⁴ swet songe, the whiche was so me⁵lodyus⁶ to here that they all beleuyd
 7 they had been in paradyce / and they all made⁸ great ioy with suche a ioyfull⁹ noyse / that the paynymys¹⁰
 8 without dyd here it / & sayd amonge them selfe, ‘A, these frenchemen are peple to be fearyd and doughtyd’ / and they were ryght sorowfull for the men that they had lost by the prowes of¹¹ .xiiii. persons.

Mouflet delights the Frenchmen with the sound of his viol.

12 ¶ Howe the good prouost Guyer, brother to Gerames, aryued at the porte of Anfalerne.

Capitulo .lx.

16 **W**Han that kynge Iuoryn saw & knew the grete losse that he had receyuyd, he was ryght sorowfull / ¹²than the admyrall Galaffer sayd / ‘sir, for y^e
 honour of Mahound, be not so sore troubled / for
 20 a thyng y^e whiche ye shall well acheue & brynge to an end. ye knowe well these frenchemen are as a byrde beyng in a cage / for they can not scape nother by londe nor water, & they are without
 24 hope of any rescue. to daye they were .xiiii., and now they be but .xiii. ye are lodgyd in a good towne, & haue the feldes and the see at your pleasure / it is not possyble for them to escape / they haue
 28 nother ship nor galay to flye in / ¹³syr, apeace your selfe; suffer them to wast theyr vytaylles.’ by theses wordes, sum what kynge Iuoryn was apeasyd; & the frenchemen in y^e castell deuysyd togyther / & Huon

The Admiral bids Iuoryn be of good cheer.

The Frenchmen cannot long hold against their forces.

¹ my. ² Pynson, ‘his.’ 1601, vs. ³ then. ⁴ most.
⁵ Fol. l. back, col. 1. ⁶ for. ⁷ that. ⁸ exceeding.
⁹ cheerefull. ¹⁰ that were. ¹¹ these. ¹² and.
¹³ Therefore.

Huon fears that the Frenchmen will receive no succour.

With Gerames he goes down to the seashore out of sight of the view of the Saracens.

A ship with a red cross on the mast is seen coming near to the port.

Huon approaches it, and asks the sailors for the master of the vessel.

The sailors are afraid when they see that they are arrived at Anfalern.

sayd to¹ Gerames, 'frende, ye se well we be here inclosyd, & we can nother departe by londe nor by see / nor we loke for no socoure of any man lyuyng / & here before vs are lodgyd paynyms who hathe sworne 4 our dethes' / 'sir,' quod Gerames, 'trew it is / but I hope in our lorde god *that* he wyll sende vs sum good aduenture / syr,² yf it please³ you, let vs two go downe & sport vs by the water syde nere to y^e porte tyll⁴ nyght 8 come.' 'I am content,' quod Huon / 'we may go theder, and be not sene by the paynyms / for thether myght come shyppe or galay with out daunger of the towne' / thether they went; and whan it was nere 12 hande nyght, Huon lokyd in to the see & saw a shyppe comynge thether warde / than Huon sayd to Gerames / 'frende, beholde yonder comyth a shyppe *with* full sayle. they wyll aryue at this porte. they be crysten 16 men, I se wel, by the tokens that the shyppe doth bere / for on the mast I se a rede crosse' / 'syr,' quod Gerames, 'by all *that* I can se, the shyppe is of fraunce / & therefore, as I haue sayd to you before, god 20 wyll sende vs sum good aduenture' / & therwith, by fere of the tempest, the shyppe came in to the hauen, and cast theyr ances. Than Huon aprochyd to the shyppe, & demaundyd for the patrone & for the mayster 24 of them *that* were in the shyppe / than the maryners regardyd y^e place where as they were / & they knew clerely⁵ by the grete toure / that they were in y^e porte of Anfalerne / wherof they had greate fere, & sayd one 28 to an nother, 'A, good lorde god, helpe vs / for we se wel we are but deed, syn⁶ we be aryued here in this porte / for we know well that the lorde of this place is y^e moost cruelest paynym betwen this & the red see.' 32 Thus they compleynyd them one to another / and Huon, who was nere them, vnderstode them well, and

¹ vnto. ² and. ³ Fol. l. back, col. 2.
⁴ vntill. ⁵ plainly. ⁶ seeing.

sayd, 'Syr, haue ye no dought of deth, for ye are
 aryued at a good porte / I requyre you¹ shew me fro
 whense ye cam, and what ye be' / and they answeryd
 4 and sayd, 'syr, syn² ye can speke frenche, ye shall
 shewe you so that ye wyll assure our lyues.' 'Syr,
 quod Huon, 'haue no fere of deth nor of any hurt that
 ye shal haue / for we that hath³ this place in kepinge
 8 are frenchemen / therfore shew vs hardely your ententes.'
 'Syr,' quod they, 'syn ye wold⁴ knowe what we be / we
 are all borne in the countre of Fraunce / and one of vs
 is of seynt Omers / and sum of the cyte of Parys, and
 12 of dyuers other partes of the realme of Fraunce' /
 'frendes,' quod Huon, 'I pray you shew me yf there
 be any amonge you / borne in the cyte of Burdeux.'
 'Syr,' quod one of them / 'here is one in this shyp that
 16 was borne in Burdeux, an olde, aunyent man / I
 thynke he be of an .C. yere of age / his name is Guyer /
 and we are goynge a⁵ pylgremage, for the loue of our
 lorde Jesu Cryst, to vysyt the holy sepulcure / but
 20 fortune, by force of tempest of the see, hath causyd vs
 to aryue here, ⁶the whiche⁶ tempest hath enduryd
 these thre dayes & thre nyghtes passyd / wherby we be
 so wery & so sore trauayled that we can do no more' /
 24 'frende,' quod Huon, 'I pray you shewe hym forth, *that*
 ye speke of' / than the patron of the shyp commaundyd
 that the olde man of Burdeux sholde com forth. than
 Guyer the prouost cam to Huon, & sayd, 'sir, beholde
 28 me here! what please⁷ it you to say to me?' / whan
 Huon sawe hym, he knew incontynent *that* it was
 Guyer the prouost / & sayd, 'frende, I requyre you
 shew me where ye were borne / & what hath mouyd
 32 you to come hether, seyng the grete age *that* ye be of,
 and to shew me what is your name.' 'Syr,' quod he,
 'I shall shew you y⁶ trouthe / I had a lorde whom I

Huon tells them
 how Frenchmen
 hold the castle.

They tell him
 how they too are
 Frenchmen,

and that among
 them is Guyer
 from Bordeaux,

on a pilgrimage
 to the Holy
 Sepulchre.

Huon asks to see
 Guyer,

and recognizes
 in him the
 prouost.

He inquires the
 reason of his
 journey.

¹ to. ² seeing. ³ haue. ⁴ Fol. li. col. 1.
⁵ omitted. ⁶⁻⁶ and this. ⁷ pleaseth.

Guyr tells how
he once served
Huon of
Bordeaux,

whom
Charlemagne
banished;

and how the
duches, Huon's
mother, is dead;

and how Gerard,
Huon's brother,
holds all his land,
and how he rules
so tyrannically

that the barons of
the country have
sent him, the old
provost, to seek
out Huon, the
rightful heir,

louyd entyerly; he was son to duke Seuyne of Bur-
deux / & he was called Huon / & so it fell¹ *that* after
the deth of his father about a .vii. yere, kinge Charle-
mayn sent for hym to do his homage & to reseue his 4
londe of hym / the yonge man, by y^e commaundement
of his mother,² & his brother Gerard with hym, tooke
theyr way towardes Parys / and by the way kynge
Charlemayns sonne called Charlot was lyenge in a wood 8
by the counsell of certen traytours, & there lay in a
waye to haue slayne Huon & his brother Gerarde / but
the case fell other³ wyse / for Huon slew Charlot, not
knowinge who it was; wherfore kynge Charlemayn 12
banyshyd hym⁴ the realme of Fraunce, and chargyd
hym, or⁵ he tournyd,⁶ to go to Babilone to do a message
to the admyrall Gaudys / &⁷ his brother Gerarde abode
styll at Burdeux to kepe the herytage / & than the 16
duches his mother was so full of sorowe *that* her son
was so banyshyd without cause / *that* she tooke there⁸
such a maladye / *that* she dyed therof / a⁹ .v. yere past /
& so therby Gerarde is lorde & gouernour of all y^e 20
londes, & he is maryed to the doughter of y^e moost
fellest¹⁰ tyraunt fro thense in to Spayne / & this Gerarde
hath lerned of hym many yll customs, & hath left all
y^e good wayes that was vsyd in y^e dayes of duke Seuyne 24
& of y^e duches his mother / & he hath reysyd vp in all
his londes / new taylles & gables & inpossessyons,¹¹ &
chasyd & put fro hym all noble men / he dystroyeth
the burgesses and marchauntes, wedous & orphelyns / 28
there can no man shew you y^e yll *that* he hath done &
doth daylly / & he hath dysheryt me / & on a day the
barons of the countre desyryd me *that* I wolde take the
payne to go and serche, as well by londe as by water, yf 32
I myght fynde the yonge lord Huon, who is our ryght-

¹ it fell so out.

² he.

³ Fol. li. col. 2.

⁴ out of.

⁵ ere.

⁶ returned.

⁷ But.

⁸ therof.


⁹ about.

¹⁰ cruellest.

¹¹ Impositions.

full lord. it is nowe a¹ two yere *that* I haue serched and how he has hitherto failed to find him.
 for hym in dyuers countrees / but I coude neuer here
 one worde of hym, wherof I am ryght sorowfull / & to
 4 seke hym I haue spent all my golde & syluer / how be
 it, these good marchauntes hath taken me in to there
 shyp for the loue of god / they thought to haue brought
 me in to Fraunce / but by fortune we be here aryued at
 8 this porte.'

¶ How Huon & Gerames, & al there company, with the fayre Esclaramonde, departyd
 fro the castell of Anfalerne, & ²entred in to²
 12 the see. Ca. .lxi.

16  Han Huon vnderstode y^e prouost
 Guyer / he sayd to Gerames / 'Syr, Gerames recog-
 come forthe here / I haue founde nizes his brother
 your brother' / than Gerames came in Guyer,
 to his brother, & enbraced &
 kyssyd hym, & ⁴all wepyng sayd,
 'my dere frende & brother, ye be ryght hertely wel-
 20 com.' 'A, brother,' quod Guyer, 'nowe I care not
 whether I lyue or dye / syn⁵ I haue founde you. and
 yf it were so yet that onnes or⁶ I dyed I myght se
 my lorde Huon / than I cared not how sone I dyed.'
 24 'A, dere brother,' quod Gerames, 'ye shall not dye so
 sone, & yet ye shall se Huon, whose presence ye so
 sore desyre / it is Huon to whom ye haue spoken to⁷
 al this season' / than Huon, sore wepyng, cam & en-
 28 braced Guyer, & sayd / 'my dere frend, your comyng
 is a ioye to my herte, for a more trewer knyght can not
 be found' / 'syr,' quod Guyer, 'do ye know me?' / 'ye,
 trewlye,' quod Huon / 'and do ye know me?' / 'ye,

and shows him
 how he has at
 length found
 Huon.

¹ about. ²⁻³ sayled thence on. ³ Fol. li. back, col. 1.
⁴ & after weeping. ⁵ seeing. ⁶ that yet once ere.
⁷ omitted.

Gerames tells his brother his adventures.

Huon proposes that they and their company and Esclaramonde shall embark for France in the ship in which Guyer is sailing.

Huon invites the sailors to seize all the treasure in the castle.

syr,¹ quod Guyer, 'ye are sore¹ desyryd in Fraunce / &, brother Gerames, I desyre you to shew me where ye haue ben syn² I saw you, for it is a³ lx. yere syn² ye departyd out of Fraunce' / than Gerames shewed hym 4 all his lyfe / & shewed at length how he founde Huon / longe they were talkynge togyther, wherof they of y^e shyp were ryght ioyfull / for than they saw well they were aryued at a good porte / ⁴than Huon sayd to the 8 maryners, 'Syr, I pray you make this nyght no grete noyse, nor make no fyer, nor shewe no lyght / for here before the castell is lodged two admyralles / paynmys, who hath⁵ sworne that they wyll neuer goo hense 12 tyll⁶ they haue vs at theyr plesir, therfore I counsell *that* we may scape out of this castell / we be here, a³ .xiii. persons, & with vs a noble lady / wherfore I requyre you lette vs com in to your shyp, or 16 elles we be all lost / & fere not but ye shalbe well payed for your laboure; ye shall haue gold & syluer as myche as ye wyll desyre.' 'Syr,' quod the pa⁷trone, 'ye nede not to speke of any golde or syluer / for this 20 our shyp is yours, to do ther with at your pleasure' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I thanke you of your courtesye / I praye you & your company come with me in⁸ the castell, and I shall charge your shyp with golde & 24 syluer, & ryche iewelles & presyus stoones / *that* you & al yours shal be ryche for euer / this must be done in hast, or⁹ the paynmys here without parseyue vs / for yf they perceyue vs, we shal neuer get hense, for¹⁰ in- 28 contynent they wyll sende¹¹ of theyr shyppes, & take thys shyp.' 'sir,' quod the patrone, 'we are redy to obey your commaundementes' / ⁴than y^e patrone & .xxiiii. maryners went *with* Huon in to the castell / & chargyd 32 all the treasure *that* was within y^e castell, & other ryches *that* Huon & his company had taken in the

¹ greatly. ² since. ³ about. ⁴ and. ⁵ haue. ⁶ untill.
⁷ Fol. li, back, col. 2. ⁸ to. ⁹ before. ¹⁰ but. ¹¹ some.

towne / they bare all in to y^e shyp, & vytaylles suffy-
 cyent / than Huon toke Esclaramonde by y^e hande, all
 smylynge, & sayd, 'fayre lady, one thyng I demaunde
 4 of you / be ye not dyspleasyd to leue y^e countre &
 londe where as ye were borne?' 'Syr,' quod she, 'I
 haue longe desyryd to se y^e day *that* I nowe do se¹ /
 well we may thanke our lord god Iesu Cryst,² *that*
 8 hath gyuen vs *that* grace to be sette³ out of the handes
 of y^e enemyes of y^e fayth of Cryst, wherin we ought
 to beleue' / than Huon entred in to the shyp, & y^e
 fayre Esclaramonde, & Gerames, & all the other com-
 12 pany; so they were in nombre within y^e ship a⁴. xxxiiii.
 persons / & with them was Mouflet y^e mynstrell / &
 whan they were all entred in to the shyp, & y^e shyp
 charged with all thynges necessarye / they weyed vp
 16 theyr ances, & lyft⁵ vp theyr saylles / & so had a good
 freshe wynde / so *that* they were within a whyell far
 fro y^e londes of y^e. ii. admyralles sarazyns / they saylled
 so⁶ *that* or⁷ it was daye lyght they were passyd y^e coast
 20 of y^e Roddes / & so passid⁸ by the yle of Cret / & so,
 by the ayde of god & good wynde, they aryued at y^e
 porte of Brandys / & so aboute noone, y^e admyrall *that*
 lay at ⁹sege before y^e castell of Anfalerne had gret
 24 meruayle *that* they coude se no man sterynge within
 the castell / than a paynym sayd to Iuoryn / 'syr, know
 for trouthe, within the castell ye shal fynde no man /
 the frenchemen are¹⁰ fled; But we can not tell how' /
 28 when the two admyralles herd that / they were sore
 troubled; & in hast they sette forth a galay & .xxx.
 paynyms therin, commaundyng them to go to the
 posterne / the whiche they dyd incontynent / and
 32 whan they came theyr / they founde nother man nor
 woman / &¹¹ founde the posterne open / & so they entred

Esclaramonde
 declares that she
 is willing to leave
 her native land.

At length the
 ship starts for
 France with the
 French knights
 and Esclara-
 monde and much
 treasure.

They soon arrive
 at Brondys.

News of their
 flight is brought
 to King Ivoryn.

¹ therefore. ² God. ³ fet (fetched). ⁴ some.
⁵ hoysed. ⁶ long. ⁷ ere. ⁸ came.
⁹ Fol. lii. col. 1. ¹⁰ all. ¹¹ but.

The Saracens
enter the castle.

in to the castell, & than¹ openyd the brode gates / & the two admyralles entred in, sore dyspleasyd that the frenchemen were so scapyd. Now let vs leue spekyng of theym, & returne to Huon, who was aryued in 4 sauegarde at y^e porte of Brandys.

¶ How Huon & his company aryued at the porte of Brandys / and fro thense went to Rome to the pope, who weddyd togyther 8 Huon and the fayre Esclaramonde; & of theyr departyng² thense. Ca. .lxii.

At Brandys Huon
and his company
go to church and
give thanks for
their deliverance.



Han Huon & his company saw howe they were aryued at the porte of 12 Brandys, they issuyd out of theyr shyp, & deuoutlye went to the chyrche of our lady / and there gaue laude & thankes³ to our lorde god, ⁴and to his mother and 16 vyrgyne, our lady seynt Mary, in that they⁴ had brought them thether in⁵ sauegarde / than they went to Garyn of seynt Omers lodgyng. when they came there, the lady of the house, who was ryght sage⁶ and courtoys, 20 cam to Huon & sayd, 'Syr, of your comyng I am ryght ioyus.⁷ But, syr, I pray you wher ha⁸ue ye left Garyn my lord and housbonde? for syn⁹ I se hym not with you, my hert trymbleth / for fere leest he be deed, or 24 elles¹⁰ sum great encumbrance.'¹¹ 'Dame,'¹² quod Huon, 'to hyde the trouthe fro you, can not cause you to haue hym agayne / for it hathe pleasyd¹³ our lorde¹³ god that he is departyd oute of this worlde / wherfore I wyll 28 counsell you, as mych as ye may, leue doloure and heueneys / for we must all come therto / and I repute

Huon tells
Garin's wife of
her husband's
death.

¹ so. ² from. ³ praise. ⁴⁻⁴ that.
⁶ such. ⁶ wise. ⁷ ioyfull. ⁸ Fol. lii. col. 2.
⁹ seeing. ¹⁰ of. ¹¹ happened vnto him.
¹² Madame. ¹³⁻¹³ omitted.

you so sage¹ / that ye know well that for any sorow or
 wepyng *that* ye can² make, ye can not haue hym
 agayne' / whan the ladye had herde Huon / she fell
 4 downe in a transe, more lyke to be deed than alyue /
 than Huon and his company set her vp, and comforyd
 her as myche as they myght / than Esclaramonde tooke
 and brought her in to her chambre / and dyd so mych
 8 with her fayre & swete wordes, that sum what she
 apeasyd her / and than, sore wepyng, she cam to Huon /
 & he sayd, 'dame,³ apeace your selfe, and pray for hym,
 for we must all passe the same passage' / with these
 12 wordes and such other, y^e lady was apeasyd / than they
 washt and went to dyner / and after, Gerames & other
 of his company went in to y^e towne, and bought horse
 and mules to ryde on, & bought ryche gownes all in
 16 one lyuery. ther they taryed an⁴.viii. dayes, & on the
 .ix. daye they payed the patrone of the shyp in suche
 wyse that he was ryche euer after, & euery maryner
 had a good rewarde / wherof they thanked Huon, &
 20 offeryd to do hym seruyce. Than Huon and Esclara-
 monde, with all his⁵ company, tooke theyr leue of there
 hostes, whom they left sore wepyng / and at theyr
 departyng, Huon gaue her a ryche gyft, wherof humbly
 24 she thanked hym / ⁶whan they were all redy, and theyr
 baggage trussyd⁷ / they departyd & tooke the way
 towardes Rome with grete ioy & gladnes / who so euer
 was ioyfull, Guier the prouost was ⁸ioyfull in two
 28 maners / one, in that he had founde his lorde Huon /
 and the other, for *that* he had founde his brother
 Gerames, and also by cause that his lorde Huon had
 fulfilled the message that kyng Charlemain had
 32 chargyd hym to doo to the admyrall Gaudys / so longe
 they rode,⁹ that in a mornynge they came to Rome, &

Esclaramonde
seeks to comfort
her.

Eight days they
remain at
Brondys.

The master and
sailors of the ship
that rescued them
are richly
rewarded.

Huon and
Esclaramonde
and his company
set out for Rome.

¹ wise. ² omitted. ³ Madame. ⁴ about.
⁵ their. ⁶ and. ⁷ vp. ⁸ Fol. lii. back, col. 1.
⁹ together.

On their arrival
they all visit the
Pope.

Huon tells him
how he has
accomplished the
Emperor's
mission,

and asks him to
admit Esclara-
monde into the
Christian
communion.

Next day
Esclaramonde
and Mouflet are
both christened.

alyghtyd at theyr lodgyng / than they al togyther
went to here theyr¹ deuyne seruyce : & as they Issued
out of the chyrche, they met a seruaunt of the popys /
than Huon demaundyd of hym in what estate the pope 4
was in. 'Syr,' quod the squyer, 'he is redy to here
messe'² / than Huon & his company lept on theyr horses,
and rode to the popys palays, and theyr alyghtyd / and
than Huon held the fayre Esclaramonde by the hande / 8
& the good prouost Guyer held his brother Gerames by
the hande / and so all the other .ii. and .ii.³ than they
founde the pope set⁴ in his trone deusyng with his
cardynelles / than Huon approchyd & salutyd hym 12
humbly / whan the pope beheld Huon, he knew hym
incontynent, & rose vp, & came⁵ & enbracyd Huon,¹
& kyssyd his cheke, and sayd / 'fayre sonne Huon, ye
be welcom ! I pray you shew me howe it is with you, 16
& shew me of your aduentures.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I
haue enduryd yll⁶ and trouble ynough, & all these
other that are come with me / but thanked be oure
lorde ⁷Iesu Cryst,⁷ it is so now⁸ I haue brought with 20
me / the berde & great teth of the admyrall Gaudys /
& haue also brought his doughter, who is here present /
& , *sir*, I requyre you to geue her crystondome / and
than I wyll wed her to my wyfe.' 'Huon,' quod y^e 24
pope, 'all this pleasyth me ryght well to do, and the
rather syn⁹ it is your pleasure ; & I desyre you tary
here with me this nyght.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'your
pleasure shal be myn.' Thus Huon and his company 28
taryed with y^e pope all *that* nyght, wher as they made
grete ioy / and in the next mornynge / ¹⁰A funt was
made redy / wherin the fayre Esclaramonde was
crystenyd without chaungynge of her name / and also 32
there was crystenyd Mouflet the mynstrell / & he was

¹ omitted. ² seruyce. ³ together. ⁴ sitting.
⁵ to him. ⁶ many euils. ⁷⁻⁷ god. ⁸ that.
⁹ seeing. ¹⁰ Fol. lii. back, col. 2.

namyd¹ Garyn. ²whan the sacrament of baptysme
 was fynyshyd / the pope hymselfe ³sange masse; ³
 fyrst he confessyd Huon, & assoylled hym of all his
 4 synnes; ⁴ than he wedded hym to Esclaramonde / and
 whan ⁵all the ⁵deuine seruyce was endyd / then they
 went all with the pope to his palays, and there was
 made the solempnytes of y^e maryage / ⁶to shew the
 8 maner of theyr seruyce, with meetes and drynkes and
 aparell of the brydes / it ⁷sholde be tedyous⁷ to reherce
 it. But one thyng I dare well say, ⁸there had not ben
 sene ⁹longe⁹ before, suche a gloryus and ryche fest / for
 12 the pope dyd as myche¹⁰ as tho they had ben his owne
 brother and syster / the melodye of the mynstrelles
 that played was so swete and delectable that euery
 man was satsyfied with the herynge therof / and
 16 specyally it was meruayle to here Garyn, the newe
 crysten¹¹ mynstrell, to play / he played so swetly on his
 vyall that it was¹² ioy to here it / Thus there was
 gret ioy in the popys palays / and ¹³yf they had ben
 20 well serued at the dyner¹³ / it was better at soupper /
 than² at nyght euery man with-drew¹⁴ / and the new
 brydes lay togyther in grete pleasure all that nyght /
 & in the mornyng they rose & herd masse,¹⁵ & than
 24 dynid / ²than they trussyd¹⁶ all theyr baggages, &
 chargyd theyr somers / mules & mulettes / & sadelyd
 theyr horses / ²than Huon & Esclaramonde went & toke
 theyr leue of the pope, & thankyd hym of¹⁷ y^e honour
 28 & grete courtesy that he had shewed them. ‘Syr,
 quod y^e pope, ‘yf it wold please you to tary lenger
 here *with me*, my goodes and my house shold be at
 your commaundement.’ ‘Syr,’ quod Huon, ‘I can not

The minstrel
 takes the name of
 Garin.

The Pope marries
 Huon to
 Esclaramonde,

and gives a great
 wedding feast.

Great joy is in the
 Pope's palace.

Huon and his
 wife take their
 leave of the Pope.

¹ called. ² and. ³⁻³ said service. ⁴ faultes.
⁵⁻⁵ omitted. ⁶ but. ⁷⁻⁷ would be ouer-tedious.
⁸ that. ⁹⁻⁹ of a long time. ¹⁰ for them.
¹¹ christened. ¹² great.
¹³⁻¹³ euen as they were well serued at dinner, so.
¹⁴ himselfe. ¹⁵ service. ¹⁶ vp. ¹⁷ for.

render¹ thanks to your holynes for y^e good that ye haue done to vs. But, syr, lenger² I can not tary, for the grete desyre that I haue to acomplyshe the rest of my besynes / therfore, syr, I recommaunde you to⁴ our lord god.' the pope kyssyd Huon, & touchyd³ Esclaramond by the hande. Thus they tooke theyr leue / and at theyr departynge, y^e pope sent to them a Somer chargyd with gold, and clothes of sylke / and⁸ thus they departed fro Rome.

¶ Howe Huon and his company aryued at the abbay of Mauryse, whereas he was reseyued by the abbot and couent with¹² grete reuerence. Ca. .lxiii.

Huon and
Esclaramonde
ride from Roine to
Bordeaux.



Guyer the provost
advise Huon to
inform a neigh-
bouring abbot of
his coming.

After that Huon had take leue of the
'holy father the⁴ pope, he and his
company departyd, & the fayre¹⁶
Esclaramonde was mountyd on a
fayre mule 'rychely aparelyd⁴ / ⁵so
longe they rode 'throwe cytyes / townes / and
vylages⁴ tyll they myght se 'afarre of, the stepelles²⁰
and toures of⁴ the cyte⁶ of Burdeux / whan Huon
sawe it, he lyft vp his handes to y^e heuen, thankinge
god of his grace that he had brought hym thether
in saue garde / and than he sayd to Esclaramonde,²⁴
'fayre lady, yonder ye may se 'before you⁴ the
cite and countre wherof ye shalbe lady & duches /
though it hath been or⁷ thys tyme a realme.' 'Syr,'
quod Guyer the prouost, 'it is good ye regarde wyalys²⁸
your besynes, the whiche touchyth you ryght nere ;
and, syr, yf ye wyll do by⁸ my counsell / sende fyrst
to an abbay that is here by, called the abbay of

¹ sufficient. ² Fol. liii. col. 1. ³ tooke.
⁴⁻⁴ omitted. ⁵ and. ⁶ town. ⁷ ere. ⁸ after.

Mauryse / the abbot is a notable clerke ; lette hym know
of your comynge, & that ye wyll dyne with hym.
‘Syr,’ quod Huon, ‘your counsell is to be beleuyd’ /
4¹ than Huon sent to the abbot, certefyeng hym of his
comynge / whan the abbot knew of Huons² comynge he
was ryght ioyfull, for he loud intyerly Huon, wherfore
he sore desyred the syght of hym / than he called all his
8 couent, and chargyd them, in the vertue of obedyence,
to³ reuest them selues with crosse and myter & copes,³
to reseuye Huon, the ryghtfull enherytour to the
countre of Burdeux / though the kynges of Fraunce be
12 our founders. But as to oure goode neyboure, we wyll
doo this reuerence / for honoure is dew to them that dy-
serueth it’ / than the couent, as they were commaundyd,
orderyd themselues / & so went out of the abbay to
16 mete Huon, who, whan he saw them, he alyghtid a⁴
fote, and also Esclaramonde and Gerames, and all the
other / thus the abbot and his couent in ryche⁵ copes
syngynge⁵ mette with Huon / whan Huon was nere to
20 the abbot, he was ryght ioyfull / and the abbot, who
anone knew Huon, came to hym ryght humblye,
and sayd / ‘syr duke of Burdeux, thankyd be god
that ye are come home, for your presence hath longe
24 ben desyryd’ / than they embrasyd eche other with
wepynges teres for ioy / than the abbot welcomyd y-
prouost Guyer and all the other. But he knew not
Gerames ; for yf he had, he wolde haue made hym
28 great fest.⁶

The Abbot bids
all his monks
give Huon a
warm welcome.

In procession
they sing together
in honour of
Huon's return.

¶ How the good abbot sent word to duke
Gerard of Burdeux how his brother Huon
was in the abbay of Mauryse.

32

Capitulo .lxiiii.

¹ and. ² Fol. liiii. col. 2. ³⁻³ make them selues readye.
⁴ on. ⁵⁻⁵ clothes seeming. ⁶ feasting.

Huon and his
company tarry at
the abbey of
Mauryse,



Hus the abbot with hys couent brought
Huon to the abbay of Mauryse ¹with
solempne processyon¹ / and Huon and
Esclaramonde a ²fote folowyd ³the ⁴

and are right well
entertained.

chyrch, ¹Huon kyst al y^e holy ⁴relikes, and¹ Huon
offeryd great gyftes / & after theyr offeringes & prayers
made / they went in to the hall, and went to dyner. ⁸
how well they were seruyd, nede not to be rehersyd /
they had euery thyng that nedyd / the abbot
sat by Huon, and sayd / 'syr, I pray you shew me
how ye haue done, and how ye haue done⁵ your ¹²

Huon relates the
success of his
mission.

message that ye were chargyd⁶ by kynge Charlemayn.'
'Syr,' quod Huon, 'thankyd be our lorde god, I haue
acumplyshyd and done all *that* I was commaundyd to
do, for I haue brought *with* me y^e berde & y^e.iiii.⁷ teth ¹⁶
of y^e admyrall Gaudys / & also I haue brought with me
his doughter, the fayre Esclaramonde, whom I haue
weddyd in the cyte of Rome; & to morowe, by the
grace of god, I wyll departe to go to kynge Charlemayne ²⁰

The Abbot
advises Huon to
inform his
brother of his
return.

my soueraygne lord' / 'Sir,' quod the abbot, 'of *that*
I am ryght ioyus⁸ / but, ¹sir,¹ yf it were your pleasure,
I wolde sende to certyfye your comming to Gerard your
brother / *that* he myght se you or⁹ ye departyd¹⁰ ²⁴
hense' / 'sir,' quod Huon, 'I am content¹¹ ye sende for
hym' / than y^e abbot commaundyd a squyer of his to
go for duke Gerard / & so he went, & restyd not tyll he
cam to Burdeux before duke Gerarde, & sayd, 'syr, if ²⁸

A messenger is
despatched.

it be your pleasure to come to y^e abbaye of seynt
Mauryse / there shall ye fynde your brother Huon, who
is come strayte¹² fro beyond y^e see' / whan duke
Gerarde herd surely¹³ how his brother Huon was com to ³²

¹⁻¹ omitted.

² on.

³⁻³ them.

⁴ Fol. liii. back, col. 1.

⁵ ended.

⁶ to do.

⁷ great.

⁸ ioyful.

⁹ before.

¹⁰ depart.

¹¹ that.

¹² lately.

¹³ certainly.

y^e abbay of seint Maurise, he was so ouercome *with* yre
 & dyspleasure / *that* his vysage became lyke a flame of
 fyre, & sayd to y^e messenger / 'go & retourne, & say to
 4 my brother Huon / *that* I wyll incontynent com &
 vysyt hym' / 'syr,' quod he, 'I shal shew hym of *your*
 commynge,' & so departyd, & came agayne to the
 abbay, & shewyd Huon what his brother Gerarde had
 8 sayd. And whan duke Gerard sawe that the messenger
 was departyd, he was sorowfull and pensyue, and called
 to hym his father in law, his wyfes father, who was
 namyd Gybouars / the most fals^est traytour *that* was
 12 fro y^e Est to the west / & Gerarde sayd to hym / 'sir,
 I pray you geue me counsell in *that* I haue to do / for
 all the deuelles in hell / hath brought my brother Huon
 fro the *partes* beyonde y^e see, & he is now present in
 16 the abbay of seint Mauryse / the abbot there hath sent
 me worde therof, & *that* I shold com thether to speke
 with hym / for as to morowe he wyll departe to go to
 Parys to the kyng, so that whan he is come thether, he
 20 wyll do so mych / *that* all his londe shalbe renderyd to
 hym / so² *that* I shall haue neuer a fote of londe³ but
 that⁴ ye haue geuen me *with* my wyfe, your daughter /
 wherfore, dere father in lawe, I pray you in this grete
 24 mater to counsell and to⁵ ayde me, or elles I am but
 lost' / 'fayre son,' quod Gybouars, 'dysmay you no
 thyng / for without my wyt do fayle me, I thynke to
 playe hym a tourne, *that* it had been better for hym to
 28 haue taryed there⁶ he was / than to⁷ come hether to
 clayme any⁸ londe.'

Gerard grows
angry when the
news is brought
him,

but promises to
visit him at the
abbey.

Gerard calls on
Gybouars, his
traitorous father-
in-law, to counsel
him.

When Huon goes
before the
Emperor, all his
lands will be
restored to him.

Gybouars
promises to
outwit Huon.

¶ How Gybouars of Beam, & Gerard, Ima-
genyd⁹ Huons deth / and how the traytour

32 Gerarde cam to se his brother Huon, who
with gret ioy reseuyd hym. Ca. lxxv.

¹ Fol. liii. back, col. 2. ² and. ³ left me. ⁴ which.
⁵ omitted. ⁶ where. ⁷ have. ⁸ my. ⁹ practised.

Gybouars bids
Gerard go to
Huon,



Hus, as ye haue herd, ¹sayd these ii
traytours¹ / than Gybouars sayd to
Gerarde / 'fayre son, goo ye your way
to your brother Huon, & take with you ⁴
but one squyer / & whan ye come

and, after giving
him a loving
welcome,

there, make to hym all the chere ye can / & shew
hym as grete loue as ye can do, & humble your
selfe to hym, to thentent that he take in you no sus- ⁸
pecyon / & ² whan y^e mornynge commeth, hast hym
to departe / & whan ye come with hym nere such a

induce him to set
out with him for
Bordeaux.

lytell wood, fynde sum rygurus wordes to hym, &
make as though ye were dyspleasyd with hym / & I ¹²
shalbe redy in that same lytell wood enbusshid, ³and
xl men of armes with me, & whan I se that wordes
[be]⁴ betwen you / I shall Issu out, and slee all those
that become⁵ with hym, so that none shall scape alyue / ¹⁶

In a little wood
Gybouars will lie
in ambush to
seize Huon and
make him
prisoner,

& than take your brother Huon, and cast hym into a⁶
pryson in on of the toures of your palays in Burdeux,
and there myserably he shall ende his dayes / and than
in hast ye shall ryde to Parys / but or⁷ ye goo to Parys, ²⁰

and so make an
end of him.

Gerard is also to
rob him of the
teeth and the
beard he is
bearing back,

ye shall take fro hym the admyralles berde & great
teth / & than ye shall shewe to y^e kyng, how Huon
your brother is returnyd with out bryngyng other
berde or teth of the admyrall Gaudys / and how for ²⁴

and it shall be
told the Emperor
that Huon has
returned without
them,

that cause ye haue set⁸ hym in pryson / the kyng wyll
beleue you, for he hateth greatly Huon, by cause of y^e
deth of his sonne Charlot whom he slew ; for the hate
that the kyng hath to hym in his herte, shall neuer ²⁸

whereupon
Charlemagne will
surely demand
his life.

departe from hym / and therefore, sonne, whan ye be
with your brother, demaunde of hym yf he haue the
admyralles berde and teth, or not / and whether he do
bere them hymselfe, or who elles / for yf he haue them ³²
not, he shal neuer haue peace with y^e kyng / but he

¹⁻¹ these two traitors conspired, and. ² But.
³ Fol. liiii. (*orig.* xlix.) col. 1. ⁴ are. ⁵ come.
⁶ omitted. ⁷ ere. ⁸ put.

wyll cause hym to be slayne of an yll¹ deth, other²
 hangyd or drawyn; for your brother layd hostage,
 promysynge *that* he wolde neuer retourne without he
 4 brought with hym y^o admyrall Gaudys berde and great
 teth / and also he *promysed that* he sholde³ neuer enter
 in to his herytage tyll he had spoken with the kynge;
 & that was euinynd hym on payne of deth.' Thus, as
 8 ye haue herde, these .ii. traytours deuysyd and con-
 cludyd the deth of Huon. 'Gerarde,' quod Gybouars /
 'thynke well of⁴ your besynes / & I shall go &
 assemble to-gether .xl. of my moost secrete seruantes,
 12 & in other places where as⁵ I can gette them, to
 furnyshe this entrepryse.' 'Syr,' quod Gerarde, 'I
 shall goo to the abbay to se my brother whan it is a
 lytell nerer to y^o nyght' / &⁶ whan the owre came, the
 16 false traytour departyd ⁷fro Burdeux, & with hym but
 one squyer, & so⁸ rode tyll he⁸ came to the abbay / & there
 alyghtyd : & whan he perseuyd his brother Huon / he
 enbrasyd & kyssyd hym with suche a kysse as Iudas kyst
 20 Cryst / whan Huon saw Gerarde his brother come with
 suche humylite / the water fell fro his /⁹eyen for⁹ kynd-
 nes, and enbrasyd hym & kyst hym, & sayd / 'ryght
 dere brother, I haue grete ioy to se you; I pray you
 24 shewe me how you haue done syn my departure.' 'Syr,'
 quod Gerarde, 'ryght well, now I se you in good helth.'
 'Brother,' quod Huon, 'I haue gret meruayle *that* ye
 be thus come alone without company.' 'Syr,' quod
 28 Gerarde, 'I dyd it for y^o more humylite, by cause I
 know not how ye shall spede with the kynge / nor
 whether ye shall haue agayne your londe or no. yf god
 wyll that ye shall haue it, I shall than⁵ assemble all
 32 the barons of the countre¹⁰ to reseyue you, and to make
 you chere accordynge / this, *sir*, I shall do tyll ye

Gybouars goes to assemble forty men to lie with him in ambush.

Gerard sets out with one squire from Bordeaux, and meets Huon.

He gives him a Judas kisse.

Huon is overjoyed to see his brother.

Gerard promises to assemble all the barons to receive Huon at Bordeaux.

¹ euill. ² either. ³ would. ⁴ on.

⁵ omitted. ⁶ so. ⁷ Fol. liiii. (*orig.* xlix.) col. 2.

⁸ they. ⁸⁻⁹ eyes with. ¹⁰ court.

Huon thanks Gerard, and says how he is setting out for Paris

with the beard and teeth of the Admiral Gaudisse,

and much treasure from the East.

Huon tells how Oberon aided him,

and how the objects of his mission are kept in Gerames's side,

retourne / often¹ tymys these grete prynces are mutable & lyghtly beleuyth; for this cause, *sir*, I am secretly com to you.' 'Brother,' quod Huon, 'your aduyse is good: I am content *that* ye thus so² do / and to morow 4 by tymys I wyll departe towards Parys' / than these two bretherne toke eche other by the hand, makynge grete ioy. 'Brother,' quod Gerard, 'I am ryght ioyous whan I se you thus retournyd in helth and prosperyte / 8 haue ye acumplyshyd the message *that* kynge Charles chargid you withal?' / 'brother,' quod Huon, 'know for trouthe *that* I haue the berde & grete teth of the admirall Gaudys; & besyde *that*, I haue brought with 12 me his doughter, y^e fayre Esclaramoude, whom I haue taken to my wyfe, and weddyd her in the cyte of Rome; and also I haue here with me .xxx. somers chargyd with gold and syluer & ryche iuelles garnyshyd 16 with presyous stones / wherof y^e halfe parte shalbe yours / & yf I shold shew you y^e paynes / trauelles, & pouertyes *that* I enduryd³ syn⁴ I saw you last, it sholde⁵ be ouer long to reherse.' 'Syr,' quod Gerarde, 'I be- 20 leue you well / but, syr, I pray you shewe me by what meanes or ayde ye dyd brynge your enterpryse to an ende.' 'Brother,' quod Huon, 'it was by a kynge of the fayrye, called Oberon, who dyd me such socoure and ayde, 24 that I came to my purpose, and strake of the admyrall's hede, and so toke his berde and great teth.' 'Brother,' quod Gerarde, '& how do ye kepe them, & where?' 'Brother,' quod Huon, 'beholde here Gerames, who 28 hath them in his syde / kynge Oberon dyd set them there by the fayrye & by the wyll of god' / 'syr,' quod he, 'whiche is Gerames?' 'Brother,' quod Huon, 'here ye may se hym before you: he with the great 32 hore⁶ berde.' 'Syr,' quod Gerarde, 'of what londe is

¹ for.

² omitted.

³ Fol. liiii. (*orig.* xlix.) back, col. l.

⁴ since.

⁵ would.

⁶ hoarie.

he of?' / 'he is of the best frendes that I haue,' quod and how he had
chanced to meet
Geramea.
 Huon / 'and he is Brother to the good prouost Guyer /
 ye neuer herd speke of a trewere nor more noble man /
 4 I found hym in a wood, where as he had dwelt a¹ .xl.
 yere in penaunce / god aydyd me greatly whan I founde
 hym / for yf he had not ben, I coude not haue retourned
 hether / mych payne and pouerte he hath endurid for
 8 my sake. And now, Brother, I pray you shewe me
 howe ye haue done syn I departyd fro you. it hath ben
 shewyd me ²howe ye be² rychely maryed / I praye you
 where was your wyfe borne, and of what lynage is she
 12 of?' 'Syr,' quod Gerard, 'she is doughter to duke³
 Gybouars of Cecyle, who is a great lorde, and ⁴hath
 great londes & sygnoryes.'⁴ 'Brother,' quod Huon, 'I
 am sory that ye haue taken suche alyauce / for I know
 16 hym for the moost traytor that can be founde, &⁵ moost
 vntrewest.' 'Syr,' quod Gerarde, 'ye do yll to say so,
 for I take hym for no suche person.'

Huon learns of
Gerard's wife,

and deplores that
he has a father-in-
law who is a
reputed traitor.

¶ Howe these .ii. bretherne departyd fro the
 20 abbay aboute mydnyght / & how the
 traytor Gerarde began ⁶to fall at rude
 wordes with Huon whan they aprochyd
 nere to the wood where as Gybouars lay in
 24 ⁷a busschement.⁷ Ca. .lxvi.



28

Hus as these two bretherne deusyd of
 Gybouars, the abbot came to them &
 demaundyd of Huon yf it were his
 pleasure to go to supper. 'syr,' quod
 Huon, 'whan it please you, I & my
 brother shalbe redy.' the fayre

The Abbot invites
Huon and his
brother to supper.

¹ about. ²⁻² that ye are very. ³ omitted.
⁴⁻⁴ Signior. ⁵ the. ⁶ Fol. liiii. (*orig.* xlix.) back, col. 2.
⁷⁻⁷ in ambush.

Esclaramonde, who was wery of trauayle, was in her chambre apart, and dyuers other of her company with her, where as she souppyd & lay that nyght / Huon was sumwhat troubyld by cause his brother had taken 4 to his wyfe the doughter of a traytor / thus they wasshyd & ¹than sat¹ down to supper, where ²as² they were rychely seruyd, & at another table sat the prouost Guyer & Gerames his brother, & dyuers other barons. 8

Gerard hates Guyer the prouost because he went in search of Huon, and longs for his death.

Gerarde behelde y^e prouost, whom he vtterly hatyd, because he went to seke for Huon / he sware to hym selfe, *that* yf he myght onnes go out of the abbay, that he shold be y^e fyrst³ sholde lese his lyfe / ⁴he 12 dyd ete & drynke but lytell for thynkyng to accomplyshe his yll entrepryse / whan they had suppyd, they rose fro the borde / & theyr beddes were made redy. Than Huon called y^e abbot apart, and sayd / 16 ‘syr, I haue ²in you grete trust / I haue² brought hether with me gret ryches. I wyl leue it here with you to kepe tyll my retourne, & I pray you, for any maner of thyng that may fall, delyuer it to⁵ no man 20 lyuyng, But all onely to my selfe; and yf god gyue me the grace to retourne, your parte shalbe therin.’ ‘Syr,’ quod the abbot, ‘al that ye take me to kepe shalbe sauely kept to your behoue / & I shall do so 24 that ye shalbe content.’ than ⁶he went to bed, and Gerard with hym / then⁷ Gerard sayd, ‘brother, yf ye thynke it good, I shall call you⁸ betymes / for it semeth *that* to morrowe the day wyl be hote.’ ‘Bro- 28 ther,’ quod Huon / ‘I am content.’ Thus they lay together in one bed / but the traytoure Gerard had no lyst to slepe, for the great desyre that he had to be reuenged of his brother, who neuer dyd hym ony 32 trespas / alas! why dyd not Huon knowe his entente? if he had, the mater had not gone so to passe / at laste

Huon gives his treasures into the keeping of the Abbot.

Gerard and Huon sleep together in one bed.

¹⁻¹ sate them. ²⁻² omitted. ³ that. ⁴ and.
⁵ vnto. ⁶ Fol. lv. col. 1. ⁷ where. ⁸ vp.

the houre cam that the cockes began to crow. then
 Gerarde a-woke Huon and sayd / ' brother, it were good
 for vs to aryse, for anone it wyl be day. it is good to
 4 ryde in the coole' / a¹ the yll traytoure / his thought
 was other wyse. Whan Huon herd his brother, he
 rose vp / and so² euery man a rose³ & made them redy /
 'syr,' quod Gerames, 'how is it that ye be so hasty to
 8 departe⁴ hens? I praye you let me slepe a lytell
 lenger' / 'syr,' quod Gerarde, 'that is yll sayd / for he
 that hath besynes to do *that* toucheth hym nere ought
 not to slepe nor reste tyll⁵ his besynes is⁶ fynnyshed.'
 12 'By my trouthe,' quod Huon, 'my brother sayth
 trouthe, for I haue good⁷ desyre to speke with kyng
 Charlemayne' / than euery man trussed⁸ and toke theyr
 horses, & the fayre Esclaramonde was redy and mounted
 16 on a⁹ mule, & so they all toke theyr leues of the abbot,
 who was ryght sorowful that they¹⁰ departyd¹⁰ so erly /
 then the gates were opened, and so departyd .xiiii. in
 a company / and Esclaramond made the .xv. and
 20 Gerard rode before to lede them the¹¹ way that he wolde
 haue them to ryde/¹² Esclaramonde, ¹³richely¹³ apparelled,
 rode very soberly / & she came to Huon & sayd / 'sir,
 I can not tell what me ayleth / but my herte is so sore
 24 troubled that all my flesshe¹⁴ trymbleth' / 'dame,'¹⁵ quod
 Huon, 'be not dysmayed nor haue no¹⁶ fere / for ye be
 in a good countre, where, by the grace of god, ye shall
 be serued lyke a prynces and lady of the countre' /
 28 and ¹⁷with those wordes spekyng her mule stumbled
 on the one fote before / so that she had nere hande a
 grete falle / then Huon aproched to her & toke the
 brydle of the mule in his hande & sayd / 'fayre lady,
 32 haue ye ony hurte?' 'sir,' quod she,¹⁸ 'I had almost

Gerard rouses
Huon at cock-
crow,
and urges him to
prepare for his
journey.

Gerames
complains of so
early a departure.

But Huon judges
it wise, and he
and his party
take leave of the
abbot.

Gerard leads the
way.

Esclaramonde is
troubled at heart.

Her horse
stumbles.

1 But. 2 omitted. 3 vp. 4 from. 5 vntill.
 6 be. 7 great. 8 vp their things. 9 stately.
 10-10 would depart. 11 right. 12 and.
 13-13 being very sumptuously. 14 bodie. 15 Madame.
 16 any. 17 Fol. lv. col. 2. 18 but.

Gerames begs
Huon to return to
the abbey and wait
until the day-
light,

but Gerard tells
him his fears are
idle.

When Huon
comes to four
cross roads, he
chooses the one
that leads to
France and the
Emperor.

Gerard complains
that when Huon
has re-entered
into his lands,
he himself will be
left penniless,

fallen.' 'By my fayth,' quod Gerames, 'we haue done
¹grete foly to departe or it be¹ day lyght.' 'Syr,'
 quod Gerard, 'I neuer saw men so ferefull for so small
 a cause.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'I knowe not why ye 4
 speke it / but yf I myghte ²be byleued, we shall² not
 goo one foote further / but returne agayne to the abbey
 tyll the³ day lyght.' 'By god,' quod Gerarde, 'it were
 grete foly to returne agayne now for the stumblynge of 8
 a mule / I neuer saw men so ferefull. let vs ryde
 forth and make good chere; I se y^o day begynneth to
 apere' / so they rode forth tyll⁴ they came to a crosse,
 where as there was .iiii. wayes, this was a legge fro the 12
 abbey / then Huon rested and sayd / 'loo, here is the
 border of the terrytory of y^o abbey of saynt Mauris,
 and this one way is to Burdeux, the whiche waye I
 wyll not ryde, for so I haue promysed to kynge Charle- 16
 mayne / to whom I neuer yet falsyd my fayth. yf I
 dyd it sholde be the cause that I myght lese my
 seynory. & this other way goeth to Rome / and this
 other way before vs is the ryght way in to Fraunce, the 20
 whiche way I wyl ryde and none other' / so they rode
 forth / & al theyr company / & within a whyle they
 were nere to the wode, within a bowe shot where as the
 traytoure Gybouars lay in ⁵a busschement⁵ / &⁶ when 24
 Gerard saw his hour & tyme to speke to⁷ his brother
 Huon, he sayd, 'brother, I se ye are in mynd to go in
 to fraunce to⁷ kynge Charlemayne to haue your landes
 & seynoryes / the whiche I am sure ye shall haue / it 28
 is a longe space that I haue kept it & maynteyned the
 countre in peace & rest and good iustyce, & haue wonne
 but lytell, nor haue had but small profyte, not y^o
⁸valew of one peny, and I am maryed to a noble lady / 32

¹⁻¹ very ill, for that wee departed from the Abbey before.

²⁻² counsell yee we would. ³ omitted. ⁴ vntill.

⁵⁻⁵ ambushment. ⁶ now. ⁷ vnto.

⁸ Fol. lv. back, col. 1.

doughter to a grete lorde / and it troubleth my herte
 sore when ye repute hym for a traytour / yf he knew it,
 by likelyhode it myght turne you to grete foly / for
 4 we byleued that ye sholde neuer haue returned / ther-
 fore now I may say *that* I am not worth a peny / ther-
 fore I wold know of you how ye wolde ayde me, and and inquires how
 Huon will aid
 him. what parte I shall haue at your returne out of Fraunce.'

8 'Brother,' quod Huon, 'I haue grete meruayle of this
 that ye say / ye know wel that in the abbey of saynt
 Maurys I haue lefte .xx. somers charged with fyne
 golde / and I haue sayd to¹ you *that* your parte shal be
 12 therin as moch as myne / nor I shall haue no peny but
 the² one halfe is yours.' 'Brother,' quod Gerard, 'all
 this suffyseth not to me / for I wolde haue parte of y'
 seynory to maynteyn myn estate.' When Huon
 16 vnderstode his brother, his blode rose in to his face /
 for he saw wel his brother serched all that he coude to
 fall at debate with hym / ³Gerames, who was sage and
 wyse, parceyued anone that the mater was lyke to go
 20 euyll / and sayde to¹ Huon / 'syr, graunt to Gerard
 your brother his demaunde. ye are bothe yonge ynough
 to conquare landes' / 'Gerames,' quod Huon, 'I am
 content that he shall haue Burdeux or Gerome / let
 24 hym take whiche he lyst. Brother,' quod Huon,
 'shewe whiche of these .ii. ye wyll haue, and I wyll
 haue the other.'


Huon promises
 half the treasures
 he has brought
 from the East,

but Gerard
 claims part of
 the lands of
 Bordeaux.

Gerames advises
 Huon, who is
 filled with wrath,
 to grant his
 brother his desire,
 and the knight
 consents.

¶ Howe these traytours slewe all Huons
 28 company except Gerames and Esclaramond
 and Huon himselfe, the whiche all thre
 were faste bounde handes and fete and
 blyn felde, and so brought to¹ Burdeux and
 32 were set⁴ in pryson. Capt. .lxxvii.

¹ vnto. ² that. ³ and. ⁴ put.

1  Hen y^e fals traytoure Gerard saw & vnderstole his broder, how he dyd graunt him his desyre / & sawe how that in no wyse he wold stryue with 4 hym, he was ther with so dyspleased that he was nere hande in a rage / then he came to the prouost Guyer and sayd, 'Guyer, Guyer, False traytoure, by the & by thy purchase I am lyke to lese 8 all my seynnorye / but by y^e fayth that I owe to² him that me created / or³ I dye I shall stryke of thy heed / nor I shall not let to do it for ony person' / & therewith, when he sawe his tyme, he cryed his worde & 12 token / and Gybouars who was in the wode with .xl. men armed brake out with theyr speres in theyr restes ; and when Huon perceyued them it was no meruayle thoughte he was abashed / then humbly he besought 16 our lorde god to saue his body fro mysfortune / ⁴gladly he wolde haue returned to the abbey / but he was so sore ouer layde that he coude not / then he drew out his swerde and gaue ther with y^e fyrst that came suche 20 a stroke that he claued his heed to the teeth, and so fell deed to the grounde / and Huon strake so on⁵ the ryght hande and on⁵ the lefte / that whom so euer he strake a full stroke neded after no surgyon / yf he had ben 24 armed he wolde not lyghtly haue ben taken without grete losse ; but his defence coude not auayle hym / for he and all his company were vnarmed, & all the other .xl. were clene armed, and they all fought cruelly 28 in such wyse that within a whyle .xii. of Huons men were slayne in the place / and none scaped alyue excepte Huon, who was beaten downe to the erth & his handes bounde / then Gerard the traytoure came to 32 Gerames, who was beaten downe by force / and then he cut open his ryght syde, and toke out therof the

Gerard is
wrathful because
Huon will not
quarrel with him,
and reproaches
the prouost Guyer
with having
caused his ruin.

Huon and his
company reach
the wood where
Gybouars with
his men lies in
ambush.

Huon is
dismayed, but

attacks his
enemies manfully,
although he is
unarmed.

Twelve of his
company are
slain.

Huon is bound,
and Gerard cuts
open Gerames'
side and takes

¹ Fol lv. back, col. 2.

⁴ and.

² vnto.

⁵ vpon.

³ before.

- Admyrall Gaudys berde & .iiii. grete teth, the whiche were set there by¹ Oberon of the fayry / ²Huon seyng the old Gerames lyenge on the erth, he sayd with a 4 hie voyce to³ Gerarde, 'a,⁴ broder, I praye you shew me that curteyse as not to sle that olde gentyman, but saue his lyfe' / 'brother,' quod Gerarde, 'that he hath let him kepe, other hurt he shal none haue at this 8 tyme' / then they bounde his eyen / then they came to Esclaramonde, who lay on y^e erth in a swone / they bounde her handes & her eyen, & so set her, whether she wolde or not, vpon a horse / & Huon, as he was 12 blyndfeld, he herde the cryes & wepynges that she made. then he sayd / 'broder Gerard, I pray you for the loue of our lorde Jesu cryst suffre none yll to be done to that good lady who is my wyfe, nor no dys- 16 honour' / 'brother,' quod y^e traytour Gerarde, 'thynke on your selfe, & speke no more. I shal do as it please me' / then they set Huon & Gerames on .ii. horses / then the fals traytour toke y^e.xii. deed bodyes and dyd 20 cast them into the grete ryuer of Geron; then they toke y^e way to y^e cyte of Burdeux, & led the thre prysoners fast bounde on⁵ thre horses / pyte it was to here the noble lady Esclaramond complayne, & she 24 sayd to³ Huon, 'a, syr, ye haue sayd to me that when we were ones in your countre of Burdeux that ye wold cause me to be crowned with golde / but now I se well / that in grete payne & mysery we must vse the 28 resydew of our lyues / ye haue founde here an yll brother, syn he hath purchased for you so moche yll / surely there is better fayth & trouth amonge the sarazins then is in the people of the realme of Fraunce.' 32 'dame,'⁶ quod Huon, 'your trouble more dyspleaseth me then myne owne / god sende to my brother Gerard⁷ rewarde as he hath deserued for the treason that he

thence the objects of Huon's mission to Babylon.

At Huon's request he spares the old man's life.

Huon's eyes are blindfolded,

and Esclaramonde with eyes and hands well bound is set upon a horse.

Huon pleads for his wife,

but he and Gerames are also set on horses with her,

and brought towards the city of Bordeaux.

Esclaramonde deploras their sad fate.

¹ Kinge. ² Fol. lvi. col. 1. ³ vnto. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ vpon. ⁶ Madame. ⁷ such.

They enter
Bordeaux before
daylight,

and through dark
lanes, so that
none shall see
them, are led to
the palace.

The three
prisoners are
placed in a deep
dungeon, and
are given little
sustenance.

hathe done ¹to¹ vs' / thus they complayned, & wyste
not whyther they were caryed / they entred in to the
cite of Burdeux an hour before day. Alas that the
good burgesses of the cite had not² knowyn how theyr 4
lorde Huon was so falsely ³betrayed / yf they had
knowen it, he had ben rescued, and Gerard & Gybouars
hewen all to peces / but the false Gerarde brought
them by preuy darke lanes to the palayes, for that they 8
shold not be parceyued / thus they cam to the castell /
there⁴ they alyghted & vnarmed them / then they toke
Huon and Esclaramonde & Gerames & put them all in
to a depe pryson all thre togyther / & ordeyned *that* 12
they sholde haue euery day barly brede & water / &
commaunded the gayler to gyue them none other
thyng, and also commaunded *that* nother man nor
woman shold speke with them / the gayler promysed 16
so to do, for he was seruant to Gybouars ;⁵ such as the
mayster was so was the seruuant / thus Huon ¹was¹
betrayed pyteously by his brother Gerarde & set in
pryson, & with *him* his wyfe ¹the fayre¹ Esclaramonde, 20
& Gerames / wounded on the syde as he was. Now
we wyll leue to speke of this pyteous company duryng⁶
grete sorow in y^o horryble pryson in the grete toure
of Burdeux. 24



¶ How the traytours returned to the abbey
of saynt Mauris & slew the good abbot, &
toke awaye all the treasure that Huon had
lefte there. Capitulo .lxxviii. 28

¹⁻¹ omitted.

² but.
⁵ and.

³ Fol. lvi. col. 2.

⁴ where.

⁶ enduring.



4 Hus as ye haue herd here before howe
 Gerarde & Gybouars had put in pry-
 son Huon & Esclaramonde & Gerames
 in grete mysery; & when it was day,
 Gerarde & Gybouars departed out of
 Burdeaux, & all theyr company, & rode
 agayne to y^e abbey & came thyder to dyner / then
 8 Gerard sent for y^e abbot to come & speke with hym /
 when y^e abbot herde how Gerard was come agayne to
 y^e abbey he had grete meruayle / & so came to Gerard
 & sayd, 'sir, ye be welcome. I pray you ¹ what aduen-
 12 ture hath brought you hyther agayne so shortly? / I
² went ye² had ben gone with your brother Huon' / 'Sir,
 quod the traytour, 'after that my brother Huon was
 departyd hens / he remembred his ryches that he left
 16 with you to kepe, & bycause he shal haue grete nede
 therof to gyue gyftes to³ the grete prynces & lordes that
 be aboute kyng Charlemayne, to y^e entent that his
 besynes may take y^e better effect / therefore my brother
 20 hathe sent me to³ you desyringe you to sende his good
 to³ him by me' / 'sir,' quod y^e abbot, 'when your
 brother Huon departed hens, trewe it was⁴ he left with
 me his ryches to kepe, & charged me / not to delyuer
 24 it too ony person luyng, but alonely to his owne
 person / therefore, sir, by the fayth that I owe to³ my
 patron saynt Maurys I wyl not delyuer³ you one peny' /
 when y^e traytour Gerard vnderstode that answer, he
 28 sayd / 'dane abbot, thou lvest / for whyther thou wylte
 or not I wyll haue it, & no thanke to the, & yet thou
 shalt also repent thy wordes' / then Gerard sodenly
 toke y^e abbot by y^e here of his⁵ heed / & Gybouars toke
 32 him by y^e one arme & dyd so stryke him with a staffe
 that he al to brused him, & then dyd cast him to the
 erth so rudely that his hert brast⁶ in his body & so

Gerard and Gybouars return to the Abbey whence Huon had set out.

The abbot marvels at their quick return.

Gerard says that Huon has sent him to fetch his riches.

but the abbot declares he has sworn to deliver them to none but Huon himself.

Gerard says he will seize them in spite of his refusal, and he and Gybouars slay the abbot.

¹ Fol. lvi. back, col. 1. ²⁻² had thought that you.

³ vnto.

⁴ that.

⁵ the.

⁶ burst.

The monks
flee in fear,
but the traitors
pursue them.

Despairing of
life, the monks
implore the
robbers to show
them mercy,
and offer to give
them the gold.

Gybouars spares
their lives, and
taking the keys
from them,
seizes all the
treasure of the
church there,
besides Huon's
wealth.

One of the monks,
who is cousin to
Gybouars, is
made abbot.

Gerard and
Gybouars bear it
to Bordeaux.

A third of it
Gerard lays in his
chamber, but the

dyed / when y^e monkes saw theyr abbot slayn they had grete fere, & so fledde away, & the two traytours *with* theyr swerdes in there handes wente after them *with* sore threstnynges; & when y^e monkes sawe how ⁴ they coude not escape for y^e two traytours & theyr men, they ¹taryed and ¹fell downe on theyr knees, ¹ryght ¹humbly prayenge them to haue pyte ¹& compassyon ¹of them, & that they wolde shewe them all the golde & ⁸treasure *that* was in y^e hous, to do ther with at theyr pleasure / then y^e traytour Gybouars sayd how they ²hadde spoken well. ³ when the monkes saw how they had peace they shewed to the two traytours the place ¹²where as ⁴the treasure was, and delyuered ⁵them the keyes / so they toke away all the treasure that Huon ⁶had lefte there, and besyde that all the treasure of the chyrch / crosses / sensers / chalesses / copes / and ¹⁶candelstyckes of syluer, all they tooke & caryed awaye ³yf and I sholde resyte all the ryches that they had there, it shold be to longe to be rehersed. In *that* house theyr was a monke who was cosyne to Gybouars, whom ²⁰the two traytours made abbot of that place / ⁷when they had acheuyd theyr entrepryce they departed with all that ryches, wher with was charged .xv. strong somers / they left not in y^e abbey the valew of a floren / for ²⁴euery thyng that was good they toke with them / and so rode tyll ⁸they came to Burdeux, ⁹& all ⁹they passed through the towne they were gretely regarded of all the burgesses of the cyte / they ¹⁰hadde grete meruayle fro ²⁸whens theyr lord came with so grete ryches. These traytours passed forth tyll ⁸they came to the palays, & there they dyscharged theyr somers / then Gerard toke the treasure that .v. of the somers dyd cary and layde ³²it in his chambre & cofers / then he ordeyned that .x.

1-1 omitted. 2 the monks. 3 and. 4 omitted.
5 to. 6 Fol. lvi. back, col. 2. 7 so. 8 vntill.
9-9 Now as. 10 who.

- somers sholde be trussed forth to go to Parys, and sent them forward, and sayd howe he wolde folowe soone after / then he and Gybouars dyned, & after mete they 4 mounted on¹ theyr horses, and the new abbot, cosyn to Gybouars, *with* them, and two squyers and a².vi. other seruantes, and so rode *in* hast to ouertake their somers with theyr tresure, and so *within* two legges they ouertoke them / & so then they all togyder rode so longe tyll³ on a wednysday they came to Parys. they lodged in the strete next to⁴ the palays in a good hostrye, & were well *serued*, & so rested tyll³ on⁵ the⁶ mornyg / 12 then they rose & apparelled them in fresshe arraye / & they led *with* them .v. of theyr somers with ryches, & two of them they presented to the quene & the other thre to y^e kynge, wherfore they were receyued *with* 16 grete ioye / then after they gaue grete gyftes to eury ⁷lorde in the courte / & specyally to y^e offycers, wherfore they were gretely prayسد. But who so euer toke ony gyfte, duke Naymes wolde take neuer a peny / for 20 he thought⁸ al that rychys was not wel gotten, & that they dyd it for some craft, therby to attayne to some⁹ fals dampnable enterpryce / this duke was a noble, wyse knyght¹⁰ and a trew, and of good counsell / ⁹ 24 he¹¹ well parceyued theyr malys. Then the kynge commaunded the thre cofers to be¹² set in his chambre, & wolde not loke in¹³ them tyl³ he hadde spoken with Gerarde / whom he caused to sytte downe by hym / & 28 Gybouars in lyke wyse,¹⁴ and¹⁵ the newe abbot / for it is ¹⁶a sayenge¹⁶ that they *that* gyue are euer¹⁷ welcome. 'Gerard,' quod¹⁸ Charlemayne, 'ye be welcome / I praye you shewe me the cause of youre comyng.' 32 'Syr,' quod Gerard, 'I shall shewe you / syr,⁵ the grete

rest he sends forward to Paris.

With Gybouars he sets out to follow it in its journey.

On the day after their arrival they make presents of part of their riches to the Queen, and part to the King and to the lords of the court.

The Duke Naymes will take no gift.

Charlemagne gives them a warm welcome.

¹ vpon. ² about. ³ vntill. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ omitted.
⁶ next. ⁷ Fol. lvii. col. 1. ⁸ that. ⁹ and.
¹⁰ knight after trew. ¹¹ very. ¹² brought and.
¹³ into. ¹⁴ manner. ¹⁵ also.
¹⁶⁻¹⁶ an old saying & a trew. ¹⁷ alwaies. ¹⁸ king.

Gerard declares
he brings
important
tidings.

besynes that I haue to do with ¹you and with ¹ your
lordes / hathe caused me to gyue these large gyftes
that I haue gyuen² you & other, and, syr, I am sorow-
ful at my hert for that³ I must shewe you / and I had ⁴
rather be beyonde the see then to shew you that thyng
that I must neddes doo / for to hyde it / it⁴ can not
auayle me / yet I neuer shewed⁵ thyng in all my lyfe
with so yll a wyll- / for I shall be blamed of many ⁸
persones / how be it, I loue better to defende myn
honour then I loue all the worlde besyde.' 'Gerard,'
quod the kyng, 'ye say trowth / for better it is to shew
the trouthe then to be ⁶styll, syn the mater⁶ toucheth ¹²
your honoure.'

¶ How the traytoure Gerarde shewed to
kyng Charlemayne how Huon his brother
was retourned too Burdeux without doynge ¹⁶
of his message to the admyrall Gaudys.

Capitulo .lxix.



⁷yr,' quod Gerarde, 'true it is⁴ ye haue
made me knyght, & besyde that I ²⁰
am your lyege man, wherfore I am
bounde to kepe your honoure to my
power / for I am certayne I shall
shewe you suche newes *that* all that ²⁴

Gerard says his
news is sorrowful.

be in your court wyll be sorowfull, ⁸and also⁸ my selfe.'
'Gerard,' quod Charles, 'come to y^e poynt, and vse no
more such langage nor suche serymonyes / by that I se
in you it is but yll⁹ that ye wyll saye.' 'Syr,' quod ²⁸
he, 'But late as I was in my house at Burdeux, and
with me dyuers lordes and knyghtes / as we were
deuysynge togyther, I sawe my brother Huon entre in

¹⁻¹ your Majestie and. ² to. ³ which. ⁴ that.
⁶ any. ⁶⁻⁶ silent in so great a matter which so much.
⁷ Fol. lvii. col. 2. ⁸⁻⁸ much more. ⁹ euill.

to my house, and thre with hym : the one was a yonge
damesell, and the other an olde man called Gerames.
When duke Naymes of Bauyer herde Gerard, he hadde
4 grete meruayle when that¹ he sayd that Gerames was
one of them / and sayd, ' a, very² god, I here that³ with
grete payne I can byleue it¹ / for yf it be the same
Gerames that I thynke it be, he and I were companyons
8 togyther at a tornay holden at Chalons in champayne,
'where as¹ he slewe by mysaduenture y^e erle Salamon.'
'Syr,' quod Gerarde, 'I shall shewe you as I haue
begon / trewe it is when I sawe my brother Huon I
12 was gretely abasshed / how be it, I dyd hym honour
and made hym good chere, and made hym and all his
company to dyne / then after dyner I reasoned with
my brother, and demaunded of hym yf he had ben at
16 the holy sepulture of oure lorde god / and⁵ when he
sawe that I demaunded that of hym, he was sore
abasshed, so *that* he wyst not what to answeye, and
then I parceyued by his wordes that he had not ben
20 there / and then, syr, after I demaunded of hym yf he
nad furnysshed your message to y^e admyrall Gaudys /
but he coulde gyue me none answeye nor saye ony
wordes that I coulde byleue / & when I sawe that I
24 coulde fynde no trouthe in none⁶ of his wordes, I toke
hym and haue set hym in pryson, how be it / it was
full sore agaynst my wyll / but I consyder in my selfe
that I muste owe to⁷ your grace faythe and fidelite,
28 and that I am your man / and *that* for no man lyuyng,
though he were neuer so nere of my kyn, yet I wolde
not be founde with ony treason. And therefore, syr,
my brother and¹ his wyfe and his companion I haue
32 retayned them in my pryson. Therefore,⁸ syr, it is in
you to doo here in what it shall please you best.
When all the prynces and lordes that were there vnder-

He tells him how
of late he had
seen Huon with
Gerames and a
damesel enter his
house at
Bordeaux.

The Duke
Naymes re-
members Gerames
as an old
companion of his.

Gerard says that
he received his
brother kindly,

but he perceived
that he had not
fulfilled the
Emperor's
mission, and he

had therefore
cast him into
prison,

together with his
wife and his old
friend.

¹ omitted. ² deere. ³ which. ⁴ Fol. lvii. back, col. 1.
⁵ but. ⁶ any. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ wherefore.

The courtiers
deplore that
Huon should be
now in prison.

stode the wordes of Gerarde, and that he had taken his brother Huon and set¹ hym in pryson, there were none but that was² sorye therof, and many for the loue that they³ hadde of³ Huon began to wepe / and demaunded⁴ of Gerarde who hadde done that dede / sayenge, 'surely it is done by some maner of treason.'

¶ 'Howe the kynge commaunded that Huon sholde be sent for fro Burdeux, to the⁸ entente that he sholde dye.

Ca. lxxx = lxx.

All the Emperour's
hatred of Huon
is roused anew by
Gerard's story,



¶ Hen the Emperoure Charlemayne vnder-
stode Gerarde, he rose⁵ on his feete 12
sore troubled and full of yre / for by
Gerardes wordes the aunycnt hate
& dyspleasure that the kynge hadde to

and he threatens
to slay his
sureties unless
the knight is
surrendered to
him straightway.

Huon for y^e deth of Charlot his sone was renewed in 16
his hert, and sayd openly, that euery man myght here
hym / 'lordes that be here present, before you al I
somon them that were pledges for Huon in such wyse
that yf the traytour Huon be not rendred in to my 20
handes to do with hym my pleasure, I shal cause them
to be hanged and drawen / and there is no man in my
courte that he be so hardy⁶ to speke or desyre the
contrary / but I shall cause hym to dye a shamefull 24
dethe' / and when he had thus sayde he satte hym
downe agayne, and called duke Naymes to hym, &
sayde, 'syr duke / ye haue herde what Gerarde hathe
sayde of his brother Huon.' 'Syr,' quod the duke, 'I 28
haue well herd hym / but I byleue the mater be other
wyse then he hath sayd / for there is no man wyll saye
the contrary but that all that Gerarde hathe sayd is

Duke Naymes
suspects the truth
of Gerard's tale.

¹ had put.

² were.

³⁻³ bare to.

⁴ Fol. lvii. back, col. 2.

⁵ vp.

⁶ as.

done by fals treason / ye shall fynde it so yf the mater
 be wysely enquiryed of.' 'Syr,' quod Gerarde, 'ye saye
 as it please you, but I take god to wytnesse, and my
 4 father in lawe Gybouars, and this good, notable, religious
 abbot and his chapleyne, that all that I haue sayde is
 trewe / for I wolde not for any thyng saye ¹ but *that* is ¹
 iust and trewe' / then Gybouars and the abbot and ² his
 8 chapleyn answered & sayde how it was trewe that
 Gerarde had sayde. ³ 'by my fayth,' quod ⁴ duke Naymes,
 'all ye foure are as ² fals lyers & theues, & the kyng is
 yll counseyled yf he byleue you.' 'Naymes,' quod y⁵
 12 kyng, 'I pray you how semeth it to ⁵ you this mater
 bytwene these ⁴ two bretherne?' 'Syr,' quod y⁶ duke,
 'it is a grete mater / he that is here before you is the
 accuser of his broder, & hath set him in pryson, and
 16 now he is come and accuseth hym here before you
 bycause he knoweth wel he can not come hyder to
 defende hymselfe / I shold do a grete yll ⁶ dede yf I
 had a broder that were banysshed out of Fraunce, and
 20 yf he came to me for refuge, & I then to take hym and
 set him fast in pryson in myn owne house, & then
 after to go and complayne vpon hym, to the entent
 to purchase his deth. I saye there was neuer noble
 24 man wolde thynke so to do, and they that hath done
 thus are all fals traytours. all noble men ought not
 to byleue ony suche, and specyally he that wyll pur-
 chase such a dede agaynst his owne brother / I knowe
 28 well all that they haue ymagyned & doone is by fals
 treason / therefore I say accordyng to the ryght, that
 all foure are fals traytours, & I iuge for my parte that
 they are worthy to receyue a velaynous dethe / for
 32 they are foure false wytnesses.' When Gerarde herde
 duke Naymes, he chaunged coloure and waxed as whyte
 as snowe, repentyng in him selfe the dede that he had

But Gybouars
 declares that
 Gerard has
 spoken the truth.

Duke Naymes is
 not, however, the
 more convinced,

and shows the
 Emperor how
 unnatural and
 cruel Gerard's
 conduct is on his
 own showing.

He denounces
 Gerard as a false
 traitor.

Gerard turns pale
 with fear,

1-1 which is not.
 4 the.

2 omitted.
 5 vnto.

3 Fol. lviii. col. 1.
 6 euill.

done to his broder / he cursed to hymselfe Gybouars
 in that he byleued his counsell / then¹ he answered
 duke Naymes and sayd, 'A, sir, ye do me greate
 wronge² to owe me youre yll wyll.' 'Gerarde' / quod 4
 the duke, 'it is for the ylnesse that is in you / ye that
 wolde be one of the peers of Fraunce. Certaynely of
 and the Duke reproaches him with having sought to become a peer of France.
 suche a counseller as ye be the kynge hathe lytell nede
 of.³ I had rather a⁴ lost one of my handes then I 8
 sholde⁵ haue consented therto.' 'Duke Naymes,' quod
 the kynge, 'I wyll ye cause to come before me all suche
 as⁶ were pledges for Huon at his departyng.' Then
 the duke caused them to appere before the kynges 12
 presence / of whome there were dyuers dukes and erles.
 Then kyng Charlemayn sayd / 'syr, ye know well ye
 be pledges for Huon of Burdeux, and you knowe the
 payne that I layde on your hedes yf Huon dyd not 16
 accomplysse my message that I gaue hym in charge /
 the which he hath not fulfilled. wherfore, without
 ye deliuer Huon in to my handes ye shal not scape, but
 that ye shall all dye.' 'Syr,' quod duke Naymes, 'for 20
 goddes sake I requyre you beleue me at this tyme / I
 counsel you to take a good nombre of youre notable
 men and sende them to Burdeux, and let them take
 Huon out of pryson and bryng hym to you, and here 24
 what he⁷ wyll saye / and yf it be trewe that Gerarde
 hath sayd, yet⁸ I desyre you too haue⁹ pyte on hym /
 but I byleue surely ye shall fynde the mater other wyse
 then Gerarde his brother hath sayd.' 'Naymes,' quod 28
 the kyng, 'your sayenge is reasonable. I accorde
 therto. I wyll he be sente for.'

Huon's sureties are called before the Emperor,
 and are ordered to deliver up Huon on pain of their lives.
 The Duke urges the Emperor to send for Huon from Bordeaux,
 and the advice is accepted.

¶ Howe the Emperoure Charlemayn went
 hymselfe to Burdeux to cause Huon to be 32

¹ yet. ² ill. ³ omitted. ⁴ haue. ⁵ once.
⁶ Fol. lviii. col. 2. ⁷ himself. ⁸ then. ⁹ no.

slayne for the grete yll wyll that he bare to
hym. Capitulo .lxxxj.



4 E haue herd here before how the good
duke Naymes dyde so moch *that* kyng
Charlemayn was content to sende for
Huon, but the kyng was so¹ sore dys-
pleased with hym that he wolde not
8 abyde so longe as to sende for hym, but he made hym
selfe redy to go thither him selfe² with all his trayne,
and commaunded that the pledges shold be set in
pryson tyll his returne; but y^e good duke Naymes
12 became pledge³ for them all to be forth comynge, and
soo they went not to pryson / the kyng made hym
redy and toke with him twelue of his peeres, & so toke
the waye towards Burdeux / god ayde Huon, for he
16 was⁴ in peryll of his lyfe yf god haue no⁵ pyte on him /
thus, as I haue shewed you, kyng Charlemayn nobly
accompanied rode so longe by his iourneyes that he
came *wit/in* the syght of Burdeux / ⁶when he aproched
20 nere to y^e cyte Gerarde came to y^e kyng, and sayd /
'sir, yf it please you I wolde gladly ryde before you in
to the cyte to ordeyn to receyue you accordyngly.'
'Gerarde,' quod the kyng, 'it is no nede *that* ye goo
24 before to prepare for my comynge, there be other *that*
shal go before / ye shal not go tyll I go myselfe' /
when duke Naymes herd the kynges answeere he sayd
to the kyng / 'Syr, ye haue answered lyke a noble
28 prynce, blyssed be he that counselled you so to saye' /
thus the kyng rode forth without gyyng ony know-
lege of his comynge / and so entred in to the cyte
of Burdeux and rode to the palays, & there alyghted /
32 then the¹ dyner was made redy / ⁶the kyng sate downe
and duke Naymes by hym, & at other bourdes other

But Charlemagne
is in such haste
to punish him,
that he resolves
to visit Bordeaux
himself,

and Duke Naymes
undertakes to
hold himself
pledge for the
sureties.

The Emperor sets
out with twelve
peers.

Gerard rides with
him and offers to
advance to
prepare for his
reception, but
Charlemagne bids
him stay with
him.

The Emperor
arrives at the
palace.

¹ omitted. ² in person. ³ Fol. lviii. back, col. 1.

⁴ now. ⁵ not. ⁶ and.

lordes and knyghtes, and there they were rychely
 serued; grete brute was made in the palayes, so that
 Huon, beyng in pryson, had grete meruayle of the
 noyse *that* he herde, and demaunded of y^e gayler what 4
 noyse it was that he herde aboue in the palays / the
 gayler answered fyersly¹ with grete pryde and dyspyte,
 and sayd, 'it nede not you to demaunde / for ye are
 lyke to knowe it to soone / but syn ye wolde knowe it, 8
 I shall shewe you y^e trouthe / it is kyng Charlemayne
 and all his barons, who are come hyther for¹ to iuge
 you to be hanged.' 'Go thy way, fals traytoure,' quod
 Huon / 'canst thou not shewe to me none other 12
 tydynges but that?' Thus Huon answered the gayler /
²there was as grete brute in the cyte as was¹ in the
 palays³ with lodgyng of the kynges men. The comons
 and burgesses of y^e cyte of Burdeux hadde full grete 16
 meruayle why the kyng came thyder at that tyme so
 sodeynely / ²the kyng syttyng at the table made good
 chere / but duke Naymes who satte by hym began to
 wepe, and coude nother ete nor drinke; he rose vp then 20
 sodeynly / so rudely that he ouerthrewe cuppes, and
 dysshes upon the table. 'Naymes,' quod the kyng, 'ye
 haue done yll thus to do.' 'Syr,' quod the¹ duke Naymes,
 'I haue good cause thus to doo, and I haue wonders 24
 grete meruayle that I se you so dotyd. I am in suche
 sorowe ther by that I am nere hande out of my wyttes.
 howe is it that ye be come in to the cyte of Burdeux for
 to ete and to drynke, and too take youre ease? ye nede 28
 not to haue gone out of Fraunce for that / for ye hadde
 mete and also good wynes suffycient at home in youre
 owne house. A, ryghte noble and worthy Emperoure,
 what thynke⁴ you too do? / it is no small mater to iuge 32
 to deth one of your twelue peers / and it is not possyble
 to gye ony trewe Iugement when you and we are full

Huon in his
 prison learns from
 the gaoler of
 Charlemagne's
 coming.

The town of
 Bordeaux is
 greatly excited
 by the visit of
 the Emperor,
 who makes good
 cheer in the
 palace.

Duke Naymes
 grows angry at
 Charlemagne's
 merriment,

who, having come
 to iudge one of
 his peers, sits
 drinking wine
 and banqueting.

¹ omitted. ² and. ³ Fol. lviii, back, col. 2.

⁴ meane.

of wyne and spyces. But, syr,' sayd the duke, 'by the lord that me fourmed, that who so euer this daye doth ete or drynke wyne / as longe as the lyfe is in my 4 body I shall neuer loue him.' 'Naymes,' quod the kyng, 'I am contente with your wyll.' Then the kyng commaunded that the tables sholde be avoyded / and commaunded incontynent Huon to be taken out of 8 pryson and brought before hym / they that had comyssyon to do it wente to the pryson / and theyr they toke out Huon and his wyfe Esclaramonde and y^e1 olde Gerames ;² they were all thre brought before the 12 kyng and his barons. ¹when they came¹ / Huon sawe where the kyng Charlemayn sate amonge all his lordes / ²they² arose when they sawe Huon and his company, pale & yll coloured by ⁴reason of y^e yll⁵ prison that his 16 brother had put them in / 'Esclaramond was gretly regarded, & the olde Gerames⁶ / when the pledges sawe Huon before the kyng, they sayd / 'syr, now ye may se Huon, for whom we be pledges / we trust now to be 20 quyt & dyscharged ; it lyeth now in you to do with him at your pleasure' / 'syr,' quod the kyng, 'I hold you quyt ; ye may go fro hens forth where ⁷ye lyst⁷ / for Huon can not now scape our handes' / then Huon 24 kneled downe before the kyng right humbly / ²when duke Naymes sawe hym, the droppes fell ⁸out of⁸ his eyen, and sayde to the kyng, 'Syr, I requyre you gyue Huon audyence, and here what he wyl say' / 'I 28 am content,' quod the kyng ; 'let hym say what he wyl' / then Huon, knelyng on his knees, sayd, 'Syr, in the honoure of our lorde Jesu cryste I⁹ crye you¹ mercy to god, and to you, and to all your barons. 32 I complayne me of the fals traytoure that I se there,

The Emperor orders Huon to be brought before him,

and he with Esclaramonde and Gerames comes into his presence.

At the sight of Huon,

the kyng discharges his sureties,

and bids him speak.

1-1 omitted, 2 and. 3 all. 4 Fol. lix. col. 1.
 5 noysome.
 6-8 and Esclaramond & old Gerames were greatly regarded and,
 7-7 you please, 8-8 from. 9 first.

Huon accuses his brother of treachery.

The lords of the court pity Huon,

who looks pale and thin.

Huon proceeds to tell Charlemagne all his adventures at Babylon,

how Oberon protected him;

who was my brother, yf ther had ben other fayth or trouth in hym / but I beleue in al the world *can* not be founde so cruell & fals a traytour / for Cayme that slew Abel his broder / was neuer so fals nor so cruell' / 4 when all the lordes herd Huon, they all began to wepe, sayenge eche to other, 'a, good lord, where is the beaute be come that was wonte to be in Huon? we haue sene hym so fayre that none¹ coulde passe hym in beaute / 8 and nowe we se hym pale and lene and yll coloured; it appereth well he hathe not ben all wayes in the ladyes chambres / nor amonge damselles to sporte and to playe² him' / thus they deuysed of him, and toke no³ hede of Gerarde, who was by them. Then Huon spake agayne, and sayd to the kynge, 'Syr, trewe it is, the message that ye gaue me in charge too doo³ the Admyrall Gaudys, I haue done it⁴ at length,⁴ as ye¹⁶ haue commaunded⁵ me / and I haue passed the see and came to³ Babylone to the Admyrall Gaudys / and ther I requyred of hym in the presence of all his lordes to haue his berde and .iiii. grete teth. But when he had²⁰ herde my demaunde he helde it for a grete folye, & so incontynente he caste me in pryson, where as I had dyed⁶ for rage of⁶ famine / and⁷ the Admyralles dough-ter hadde, not ben whom ye maye se yonder syttyng²⁴ by the pyller / and also by the ayde of the good kynge Oberon / whom I ought gretely to loue / he is a kynge of the fayry ryght pusant / and is in the cyte of Mommure / and he, knowyng²⁸ of the peryll that I was in, had pyte of me / and⁸ soo he⁸ came and socoured me in suche wyse, & with so grete a pusauunce / that in Babylone he slewe all suche as wolde not byleue in our lorde Jesu cryste. Then he toke me out of pryson / 32 and so⁹ we entred in to the palays, and there we slewe

¹ no one.

² with.

³ vnto.

⁴⁻⁴ to the verie vttermost.

⁵ Fol. lix. col. 2.

⁶⁻⁶ by.

⁷ if.

⁸⁻⁸ omitted.

⁹ then.

all suche as we founde there. Then I wente to the
 Admyral Gaudys and strake of his heed / and then I
 cut of his berde and opened his mouthe / and drewe
 4 out foure of his grete teth / ¹when I hadde theym / then
 I desyred kynge Oberon to ayde me to fynde the
 meanes that I myght brynge surely the berde and teth
 to your presence / and to shewe me where as ²I myghte
 8 beste kepe them. Then the good kynge Oberon, by
 the grace of oure lorde god and by the puyssaunce that
 god hadde gyuen vnto hym, he closed theym within
 the syde of Gerames / soo that they coulede not be
 12 perceyued. ¹Syr, knowe for trouthe ye neuer herde
 spekyng² of suche a man / and³ when that² I sawe
 that I hadde furnysshed your message, I retourned and
 toke with me the fayre lady Esclaramonde, doughter to
 16 the fore sayde Admyrall Gaudys / and the twelue
 gentylmen that went with me out of Fraunce / who all
 wayes hath ben with me. And, syr, yf I sholde shewe
 you the gret paynes and pouertes that I & they haue
 20 suffred, it sholde be to longe to ⁴reherse / but I may well
 saye, & ⁵the grace of god had not ben I had neuer
 come hyther agayne; yf I had had .x. lyues I coude
⁶not a ⁶scaped the deth. & ⁷after all these paynes &
 24 trauayles that I and they that were with me suffred, by
 the grace of god we came & aryued at Rome, where as
⁸the holy father² y^o pope receyued me with grete ioye,
 & ther wedded me to Esclaramonde, the Admyralles
 28 doughter, whom ye maye se yonder all desolate and
 full of dyspleasures, & not without cause' / when the
 barons that were there herd the pyteous complayntes
 of Huon, euery man of pite behelde y^o lady, who, pale
 32 & yll coloured, sate sore wepyng / so that such as
 regarded her were constrayned to take parte of her
 sorowe / there was no man but they began sore to

how Gaudisee was
slain;

how at Rome he
married the
Admiral's fair
daughter.

All who hear the
piteous tale begin
to weep.

¹ and. ² omitted. ³ Now. ⁴ Fol. lix. back, col. 1.
⁵ if. ⁶⁻⁶ neuer haue. ⁷ Next. ⁸⁻⁸ omitted.

Huon asserts that
all he says is
truth,

wepe / & Huon, who was before the kynge, was
sorrowfull to se his wyfe make so grete doloure. Then
he sayd ¹a hye to¹ the kynge / 'syr, yf ye wyll not by-
leue my sayeng, sende to Rome to y^e pope to knowe the **4**
trouthe / yf ye proue my wordes contrary I submyt my
selfe to receyue suche dethe that² ye & youre barons can
deuyse, yf the pope do not bere wytnesse of that I
haue sayd / god forbed that I sholde shew you ony **8**
thyng other wyse then trouth / I haue sayd nothyng
but he shal shew tokens that my sayenge is trewe / and
I can saye more yf I wolde shewe all / but it is not
nedefull that I sholde make a longe sermonde. But, **12**
syr, thus as I haue shewed you I dyd retourne fro the
place *that* ye sent me vnto³ / and, syr, knowe for trouth
I cam not so vnprouyded / but that I broughte with me
grete plente of golde & syluer / and my company came **16**
hole⁴ with me, and I ⁵was in purpose⁵ not to reste in
ony place tyll I hadde spoken with youre grace / for the
grete desyre that I had to se you / and so longe⁶ I rode
tyll I came too an abbey here⁷ by a foure legges hense, **20**
called Saynt ⁸Maurys, because the abbey is⁹ of youre
foundacyon, and not partaynyng to the lande of
Burdeux / for I wolde not haue entred in to this
towne bycause of the *commaundement* that ye gauē **24**
me / thus I came & lodged me in the abbey / and
the abbot receyued me with grete ioye / and he sent
worde of my beyng there to my brother Gerarde / and
the traytoure came too me lyke a false traytoure / & **28**
brought with hym but one squyer / wherby now I
maye perceyue that in hym was nothyng but falsenesse
and treason' / 'Huon,' quod Duke Naymes, 'your
reason is good, for yf he had ben trewe as he ought to **32**
haue ben / he ought to assemble the barons and lordes

and tells of his
fortunes since he
arrived in France.

¹⁻¹ unto. ² as. ³ to. ⁴ all. ⁵⁻⁵ purposed.
⁶ along. ⁷ hard. ⁸ Fol. lix. back, col. 2.
⁹ was.

of the countre, & so to haue come with them to¹ haue
 receyued you with reuerence and honoure.' 'Syr,' quod
 Huon, 'it is trewe / but the traytoure dyd other wyse /
 4 for when he was come to me, by grete subtylte he
 demaunded how I had sped in my iourney, and
 whyther I hadde spoken with the Admyrall Gaudys or
 not, and declared to him your message, and yf I had
 8 broughte with me his berde and foure grete teeth; and
 I shewed hym I hadde accomplysshed your hole com-
 maundement / then the vnhappy traytoure demaunded
 where I kept them, and I shewed hym, for I had no
 12 mystruste in hym / then he soo exorted me that at the
 houre of mydnyghte he made me to aryse hastely, and
 made me and al my company redy, and so lepte on
 oure horses and rode forth oure waye; and when we
 16 came too a crosse way, and sawe that I toke the way
 into Fraunce, he began to speke rygoryously to haue
 occacyon of some stryfe betwene vs; and nere therto
 there was a lytell wode, where as there laye in a
 20 busschement Gybouars, and in his company .lx. men of
 armes clene² armed / & they came & ran at me; my &³
 company⁴ were vnarmed, ⁵wherby they founde in vs
 but small resytence / and so fynally the .xii. ientylmen
 24 that were with me were all slayne & all to hewen, &
 then they toke theyr deed bodyes & dyde cast them in
 to the ryuer of Gerounde / then they strake me to the
 erth, & bounde fast my fete and handes and blynd felde
 28 myn eyen, and in lyke wyse they dyd to my wyfe / and
 then they came to Gerames / & the traytoure my
 brother came to hym, and with a sharpe knyfe opened
 his syde / and there he toke out the berde / and .iiii.
 32 gret teth of the Admyralles Gaudys / the whiche were
 set there by kynge Oberon; the false traytour knewe
 y^e place where as they lay by reason that I had shewed

Huon recounts
 Gerard's evil plot.

¹ and. ² well. ³ and my. ⁴ that.
⁵ Fol. lx. col. 1.

him therof before / wolde to god *that* y^e same tyme
that he cam to Gerames to do that cruel dede *that*
 Gerames had *ben* armed / I am sure then the false¹
 traytoure durst not a² regarded him to haue done hym 4
 any³ euyll / but, syr, when he had taken out y^e berde
 and teth / then he bounde Gerames handes and fete,
 hurte as he was / as, syr, ye may knowe the trouthe by
 hym' / then Gerames stept forth & lyfte vp his cloke, 8
 & shewed y^e kyng y^e wounde in hys syde, y^e which
 euery man myght se³ was there / 'sir,' quod Huon to
 the kyng / 'when he had done all this / he set vs on
 iii. lene horses, & so brought vs in to this towne, 12
 bounde handes and fete, and then set vs in a depe
 pryson / & so hath kept vs hyder vnto⁴ with brede and
 water / and⁵ hath taken fro vs all the ryches *that*
 we brought *with* vs / and, *sir*, yf he be so hardy to say 16
 the contrary, that it is not true that I haue sayd / let
 hym & Gybouars, lyke traytours as they be, arme
 them,⁶ and I shall fyght agaynst them bothe / and yf I
 may⁷ conquer them bothe, wherof I haue no doute with 20
 the ayde of our lord god / then let them haue as they
 haue deserued / & yf I can not ouer come them nor to¹
 make them to shewe the trouthe / I wyll that then
 incontynente ye ⁸cause me to be drawn & hanged.' 24
 'By my fayth,' quod duke Naymes, 'syr / Huon can
 saye nor offre no more / for he offereth to proue y^e
 contrary of *that* Gerarde hath sayd' / 'syr,' quod
 Gerard, 'my brother sayth at his pleasure, bycause he 28
 knoweth well that I will not stryue agaynst hym /
 bycause he is myne elder brother / let the kyng do as
 it shall please hym / as for me, I neuer consented to do
 so cruell a dede as he layeth to my charge.' 'A, good 32
 lorde,' quod duke Naymes / 'howe the fals traytour can
 cloke & couer his ylnes!' 'Huon,' quod Charlemayn,

Gerames shows
the wound that
Gerard made in
his side.

Huon challenges
Gerard and
Gybouars to
mortal combat.

Gerard denies the
truth of Huon's
story.

¹ omitted. ² haue. ³ that. ⁴ hetherto. ⁵ so.

⁶ selucs. ⁷ can. ⁸ Fol. lx. col. 2.

'I can not tell what ye haue done / but I wyll ye shewe me the berde and .iiii. grete teeth of the Admyrall Gaudys' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I crye you
 4 mercy, I haue shewed you howe they be taken fro me by the false traytoure my brother Gerarde' / 'Huon,' quod the kyng, 'ye knowe wel at your departure out of Fraunce I defended¹ you on² payn of your lyfe, that
 8 yf by aduen[tu]re ye returned agayne in to Fraunce, *that* ye sholde not be so hardy³ to enter in to this cyte of Burdeux tyl⁴ ye had spoken with me fyrst, & to kepe me promys ye deliuered⁵ me hostages, y^e which I haue
 12 quyt syn⁶ I haue you in my handes. it lyeth now in me other to hange you or to drawe you / or to gyue too⁷ you any other iugemente / for at youre departure ye were agreed that I shold so do / but by y^e fayth that I
 16 owe to⁷ saynt Denys, or⁸ it be nyght I shall cause the to be hanged and drawen, and that shall I not let so to do for ony man lyuyng / for now I take you in youre owne house.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'god forbed that a
 20 kyng of Fraunce sholde do so grete a cruelte. Syr,⁹ I crye you mercy / for goddes sake doo not to me so grete an outrage / for, syr,¹⁰ ye maye knowe ryght well that parforce I was broughte hyther. And therefore,
 24 syr¹¹ kyng, I requyre you let me haue ryghtfull and trewe iugement.' 'By my fayth, Huon,' quod duke Naymes, ¹²'it is but a small request that ye make / for your ryght is so clere that yf reason maye be shewed to
 28 you, there is no man can say the contrary / but that your landes oughte to be rendred to⁷ you franke and fre, & your brother Gerarde to be hanged and strangled' / then the duke sayde to the kyng / 'syr,⁹ I requyre you
 32 haue pyte of Huon, and doo nothyng to hym but ryght / and, syr,¹⁰ ye shall do grete synne without

Charlemagne in anger at the loss of the beard and teeth,

threatens to slay Huon.

Huon begs for mercy.

Naymes supports his appeal,

¹ charged. ² vppon. ³ as. ⁴ vntill. ⁵ to.
⁶ seeing. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ before. ⁹ my Lord.
¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ great. ¹² Fol. lx. back, col. l.

and the king
promises him a
trial.

Naymes protests
against the
Emperor's
treatment of
Huon.


The king bids his
peers give Huon
an impartial trial.

Naymes entreats
them not to allow
the king's hatred
to affect their
judgment.

ye do hym ryght' / 'Naymes,' quod the kynge, 'you knowe well it is in me to cause Huon to dye / but syn¹ that he is one of my peers I wyll ordre hym by iugement.' When the lordes and other knyghtes herde ⁴ the kynge saye so they were ryght ioyful / for then they byleued *that* the kyng sholde² haue pyte of Huon / but who so euer was ioyful / yet duke Naymes was not contente, and sayde to the kynge / 'syr,³ by that I se ⁸ and here ye bere Huon but small loue, seyng that ye wyll put hym to iugement, consydyryng his dedes and saynges to be true; and namely, where as he offereth to proue it by the holy father the pope' / then Huon ¹² withdrewē backe & lened hym to a pyller therby. Then the kyng called to⁴ hym all his peeres and lordes, & sayd, 'syrs, I requyre you, by the fayth and trouthe and homage that ye bere to⁴ me / *that* for me nor for ¹⁶ myne amyte that ye ayde not Huon agaynst me / nor say⁵ nor do no falshode / but the moost ryghtfull iugement that ye can make do / I charge you gyue trew iugement without ony faouore or parsealyte' / When ²⁰ the lordes herde the kynge saye so to⁴ them, and that he coniuered them so sore to do ryght / and iustyce / well they perceyued that the kynge had grete hate to⁴ Huon / and that y^o deth of his sone Charlot was not forgotten ²⁴ out of his mynde / then they all togyther drewe a parte in to a chambre ryght penseue and mornynge / then⁶ they satte downe on benches and beheld eche other without ⁷spekyng of ony worde a longe space / ²⁸ when duke Naymes sawe that, he rose vpon his fete and sayd / 'syrs, ye haue herde how the kynge hath charged vs to saye the trouthe; we may parceyue well by hym that he bereth grete hate to⁴ Huon, who is one of our ³² companyons / and therefore, syrs, I requyre you that euery man by hym selfe wyll saye his aduyse as he thynketh.'

¹ seeing. ² would. ³ my Lord. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ lay.
⁶ and. ⁷ Fol. lx. back, col. 2.

¶ How the .xii. peers drewe to counseyle to
gyue sentence vpon Huon, other with hym
or agaynst hym. Capitulo .lxxxi.

4  Hen there rose vp a knyght called Gaulter, a knight
of Ganelon's line,
8 Gaulter / he was yssued of y^e lygnage
of Ganelon ; he¹ was one of the peers
of fraunce / then he sayd / 'syr, as
for me, I say, seyng the case as it is,
that Huon by ryght iugement ought
to be hanged & drawen, for as ye know ²well the
12 kynge hath founde hym in the cyte of Burdeux / ther-
fore I say that the kynge may, without doynge any
synne, put hym to deth / and, syrs, yf ye thynke that
I haue sayd good reason / agree ye than to y^e same,
and lette Gerarde his brother be lorde and mayster of
16 all the londys and sygnyoryes that sholde partayne to³
Huon / I consent & wyll, as myche as toucheth my
parte, that Gerarde be one of the peeres of Fraunce in
y^e place of Huon his brother' / ⁴whan Gaulter had endyd
20 his reason, Harry⁵ of seynt Omers spake, and sayd,
'Syr Gaulter, goo & syt downe / your wordes can
bere none effect, for they be of no valure. But,
syr,' quod he, 'shortly to speke and ryghtwysly to
24 iuge, I say that it is reason that Huon be restoryd to
all his londes, for his dede is well proued, & by good
wytnes, as our holy father the pope / for we may beleue
surely that Gerarde his brother, that thus hath betrayed
28 hym, hath done it by false couetys⁶ / therefore I say
and iuge that Gerarde be drawen at horse taylles, and
than hangyd tyll⁷ he be deed.' Than he sayd no more /
but sat downe agayne.

Gaulter, a knight
of Ganelon's line,

addresses the
peers in favour of
Huon's death.

Harry of Saint
Omers declares
that Huon is
guiltless,

and that Gerard
deserves to be
drawn at horses'
taille.

¹ who. ² Fol. lxi. col. 1. ³ vnto. ⁴ and.
⁵ Henry. ⁶ couetousness.
⁷ vntill.

The Earl of Flanders urges that the two brothers should be reconciled to each other,



Han Harry¹ of saint Omers had sayd his reason / y^e erle of Flaunders rose vp, and sayd to Harry,¹ 'all that ye haue sayd I wyll not consent therto / but I 4 shall shewe you myne aduysse what ought to be done. Syrs, ye al know well the worlde, the which as now is lytell worth, for now a dayes can not be founde² trew frendes as were wont to be; ye 8 may well se by these two bretherne / the stryfe that is betwene them is foule and dyshonest; we sholde do well yf we coude fynde the meanes by any maner of wayes to apeace them / and therefore I counsell, lette vs 12 all togyther go to the kinge, and desyre hym to haue mercy and petye of bothe these tuo brethern, & that it myght ³please hym to apeace them, and render to Huon all his londes / and yf we coude bring it to this 16 poynt, it sholde be a good dede as to accorde them togyther.'

and the king should be prayed to spare both their lives.

¶ Howe the peeres layde all ⁴the dede to gyue the iugement vpon duke Naymes.⁴ But for 20 all that euer he coude say or doo, the kyng iuged Huon to dye. Capitulo .lxxxii.

The Earl of Chalons proposes that the peers shall follow the advice of Duke Naymes.



After that the erle of Flaunders had spoken, the erle of Chalons rose vp 24 and sayd, '⁵Syre erle⁵ of Flaunders, your reason is good, and ye haue spoken lyke a noble man / but I know surely that the kyng wyll do 28 no thynge at our desyres. But, syrs, yf ye thynke it good, let vs all put the hole mater vpon duke Naymes of Bauyer / & all that he wyll say let vs agree therto' / than all the lordes accordyd togyther, & sayd how the 32

¹ Henry.

² such.

³ Fol. lxi. col. 2.

⁴⁻⁴ vpon Duke Naymes to giue the iugement vpon him :

⁵⁻⁵ My Lord.

erle Chalons had sayd¹ wel. Than they came to the²
 duke Naymes, and desyryd hym that he wolde take
 the charge of that mater on³ hym, and what so euer he
 4 dyd they were al agreed therto / whan the duke herd
 them he stode styll a certen space, & began to studye
 on the mater, and tooke all the .x. peeres to counsell
 with hym. And whan y^e fayre Esclaramonde saw
 8 Huon her housebonde in that daunger among them
 with whom he shold haue been in ioy, than she began
 sore to wepe, and sayd, 'A, Huon, I se here great
 pouerte, whan in the same proper towne where as ye
 12 ought to be lorde to be in this daunger, and besyde
 that ye are not beleued nor herde of any man that is
 here, for any *profe* or wytnes that ye can say or shew /
 kynge Charlemayne wyll not beleue that ye haue ben
 16 in the cyte of Baby^lone, and yet surely there ye haue
 ben / for I saw you there slee my father the admyrall
 Gaudys, and toke his berd, and drewe out of his mouth
 .iiii. of his greatest teth / gret petye it shalbe yf ye
 20 sholde dye for *your* trough and faythfulnes /⁵ the thyng
 that most fereth me is that I se none that be here
 lykely to be a noble man, namely,⁶ the kynge, who is
 chefe of all other ;⁷ me thynke he is full of falshede /
 24 for I se none other but he ⁸purchaseth for⁸ your deth.
 But I promyse to god that yf he suffer you to haue this
 wronge, and thus to dye, I saye than as for my parte
 that Mahounde is better worth than your ⁹god Iesu
 28 Cryst⁹ / and yf it be soo that ye receyue deth without¹⁰
 cause, I shall¹¹ newer more beleue in ¹²Jesu Cryst¹² / but
 renounce his law, and beleue in Mahounde.' There were
 many lordes and knyghtes *that* herd the ladyes wordes /
 32 wherof they had suche petye that the moost part of them
 began to wepe. And whan Huon herde hys wyfe he

Esclaramonde
 bewails Huon's
 sad fate,

and reproches
 Christ with
 permitting
 injustice.

¹ right. ² omitted. ³ vpon. ⁴ Fol. lxi. back, col. 1.
⁵ but. ⁶ except. ⁷ and yet. ⁸⁻⁸ that seeks.
⁹⁻⁹ king Charlemaine. ¹⁰ a. ¹¹ will.
¹²⁻¹² your king.

Huon begs her to have patience.

Duke Naymes hesitates to give the peers counsel,

but he indignantly rejects Gaultier's proposal that Huon should be put to death.

The peers, however, fear for Huon's life.

tournyd¹ his face to her warde,¹ and sayd, 'Lady, I desyre you to leue your sorow and trust in god almyghty, who so often tymes hath socouryd vs. ye know not what he wyll do; let vs be content with his good pleasure.' Thus 4 with suche wordes Huon apeaced the fayre Esclaramonde. And duke Naymes, who was in counsell with the other peeres, sayd to them, 'Syr, I haue grete sorow at my hert by cause of these two bretherne, so 8 that I can not tell what Counsell to fynde. I desyre you all that in this weyghty mater to counsell me & shew me your opynions therin.' 'Syr,' quod the lordes, 'other counsell ye shall not haue of vs, for we haue layde 12 al y^e mater vpon you to do therin what it shall please you.' 'Syres,' quod the duke / 'to dyssymell the matter vayleth not,² syn³ that Huon must passe by iugement; howe saye you, shall he be hangyd or drawen?' 16 'Syr,' quod Gaultier, who was y^e fyrst 'speker / 'me thynke he can scape none other wyse.' 'A, traytour,' quod the duke, 'thou lyst falsly, for it shall not folow after thy counsell, whether thou wyllt or not; 20 there is no man this day that shalbe so hardye⁵ to iuge hym to dye / therfore, syrs, yet shew me agayne yf⁶ ye wyll all agree to my counsell.' 'Syr,' quod they, 'we haue layde the charge on you, the whiche we wyll all 24 byde by' / but who so euer was glade, Gaultier was sorowful and angrye / for he wold haue consentyd to the deth of Huon. Than all the barons, ryght sad and pensyue, went out of the counsell chambre, and they 28 coude fynde no maner of wayes howe to saue Huon, but they all prayed to god to ayde & socoure hym. And Huon seyng the barons comyng so sadly togyther, thought that the mater was not at a good poynt, wherby 32 he began sore to wepe / whan Esclaramond and Gerames saw the sorowe *that* Huon made, they had gret petye

¹⁻¹ toward her. ² but. ³ since.
⁴ Fol. lxi. back, col. 2. ⁵ as. ⁶ whether.

therof. Than Huon behelde duke Naymes, for he knew well al the mater lay in his handes / he feeryd greatly the iugement that sholde be made vpon hym / & sayd,
 4 'a, very god & man, as I beleue verily that thou dydyst dye on the holy crosse to redeme vs all, & that on the thyrd day thou dyddyst ryse fro deth to lyfe, I requyre the humbly in this grete nede to socoure me,
 8 as treuly as I am in the ryght, for more wrong can¹ no man haue.' Than y^e duke Naymes of Bauyer cam to y^e kinge, & said / 'sir, wyll it please you to here what we haue deuysyd?' 'Ye,' quod the kinge, 'I desyre
 12 no thyng eyles to know' / 'well, sir,' quod the duke, 'than I demaunde of you in what place of your regyon thynke you² that ye ought² too iuge of the peeres of Fraunce?' 'Naymes,' quod y^e kyng, 'I know well ye
 16 be a noble man, & all that ye say is to delyuer Huon of Burdeux / but I wyll know all shall not profyt hym.' Than y^e duke sayd, 'sir, to say so ye do grete wronge. Therefore, sir, regarde well in what³ place ye
 20 wyll haue one of your peeres iugyd. yf ye know not where it ought to be done, I shall⁴ shew you in your realme there are but thre places to do it in. The fyrst is the towne of Seynt Omers / the .ii. is Orleauce, &
 24 y^e thyrd is Parys / & therefore, sir, yf ye wyll procede vpon Huon by iustyce, it is conuenyent that it be done in one of these thre places, for here in this towne he can not be iugyd.' 'Naymes,' quod y^e kyng, 'I vnder-
 28 stonde well why ye saye this; I well se & perceyue that ye entende to none other ende but to delyuer⁵ quyt Huon. I had thought to haue entretyd hym by the ordre of iustice / to thentent that none of you sholde
 32 haue reproyde me, therfor I ordeynd that he sholde haue ben iugyd by you that be the peeres of Fraunce / & I se well ye haue done no thyng therin, & therefore

Huon prays for safety.

Naymes asks Charles where he thinks the peers of France should be brought for trial.

The king declares that Huon shall die.

Naymes shows that there are only three towns where peers can be tried.

Charlemagne reproaches the Duke with attempting to acquit Huon,

¹ can after man. ²⁻² omitted. ³ Fol. lxii. col. 1.

⁴ will. ⁵ and.

and orders the
knight to be slain
forthwith.

Great is the grief
of all who hear
the Emperor's
words.

Very piteous is
Esclaramonde's
lamentation.

Gerames also
weeps sorely.

as longe as ye lyue ye shall medell no more *with* that
mater / but by the berde that I bere on my chyn, I
shall neuer dyne nor ete no mete after this dyner tyll I
se hym hangyd and drawen / for all your berynge of 4
hym agaynst me.' Than he commaundyd y^e tabelles to
be set vp / ¹whan Gerard vnderstode the kyng he was
ioyfull ther of *in* his herte / but he made no semblaunt
of ioy by cause of the lordes that were there present / 8
whan Huon & Esclaramonde herd how y^e kyng had
sworne the deth of Huon, The doloures wepynges &
teeres *that* they made were so extreme that herd it
were to declare it / & Esclaramond sayde to Huon, 12
'A, syr, now I se well / that grete pyte it shalbe the
departyng of vs two / but yf I had a knyfe I wold
not abyde your deth / but fyrst I sholde slee my selfe
before this false and vntrew kyng' / her compleyntes 16
were so petufull *that* moost part of the lordes wept for
pyte / and the olde Gerames sore wept, & sayd, 'A,
good lord god, *in* what houre was I born ! in grete
doloure & payne I haue vsyd² my youth / & now in 20
myn age thus shamfully³ to dye.' Thus all .iii. made
suche sorow *that* it wolde haue made a hard herte to
lament. All .iii. thought none otherwyse but to dye,
by cause they had herde kinge Charlemayne make 24
suche promyse / but that⁴ god wyl ayde⁵ no man can
lette, ⁶for yf⁶ god saue the good kinge Oberon,⁷ kyng
Charlemayne shalbe forsworne, as ye shall here⁸ after.
Nowe let vs leue spekyng of these⁹ pyteous company, 28
& speke of the noble kinge Oberon of y^e fayrre, who as
than was in his woode.

¶ How kyng Oberon cam to socoure Huon,
& made Gerarde to confesse all the treason 32

¹ and. ² continued. ³ Fol. lxii. col. 2. ⁴ which.
⁵ saue. ⁶⁻⁸ and. ⁷ for. ⁸ here. ⁹ this.

that he had purchasyd agaynst Huon his
brother. Capitulo .lxxxiii.



4 E haue herd before how kinge Oberon
was displeased with Huon by cause he
had broken his *commaundement*. But
whan Huon had ben at Rome, and
confessyd of all his synnes, &¹ assoylled
8 of y^e pope. Than king Oberon was content, & in his
herte forgaue all the yll wyll that he had to Huon / &
as he sat at diner, he began to wepe / whan his seruantes
sawe that, they had grete meruayle, & sayd to² hym /
12 ‘*sir*, we desyre you to shew vs why ye do wepe & be
so troubled ; there is sum dyspleasure done to² you / *sir*,³
for the loue of our lorde Jesu Cryst, we desyre you
hyde it not fro us.’ ‘Syr,’ *quod* the kynge, ‘I
16 remembre now the vnhappy Huon of Burdeux, who is
retournyd fro y^e farre partes, & he hathe passyd by
Rome, & there hath taken his wyfe in maryage, & is
confessyd of all his synnes, for the whiche synnes he
20 hath ben by me sore punyshyd.

Oberon had taken
Huon again into
his fa our after
he had been
confessed by the
Pope,

and weeps over
his misfortunes
in Franco.

‘But it is tyme, yf euer I wyll do hym any good,
now to ayda hym, & to socoure hym agaynst kynge
Charlemayne / for he hathe ⁴sworne neuer to go to bed
24 tyll⁵ he haue hangyd & drawen the poore Huon / but
by the grace of our lorde god, Charlemayn shalbe for-
sworne, for at this tyme I shall socoure & ayde hym /
for he is as now in such a daunger, without he be
28 socouryd incontynent, deth is nere hym / he was neuer
in his lyfe in suche *perell* / he is now in the palays at
Burdeux, & hys wyfe the fayre Esclaramonde, & the
olde Gerames, with fetters on ther fete, beyng in grete
32 sorow / & kinge Charemain is set at dyner, & hath
made his oth to hang⁶ Huon / but yet whether he wyll

He declares he
will go at once to
his aid,

¹ was. ² vnto. ³ therefore. ⁴ Fol. lxii. back, col. 1.
⁵ vntill. ⁶ haue.

or not he shalbe periuryd / for I wyll go to my frende
 Huon, & helpe hym at his nede / therefore I wyshe my
 table, & all that is theron, nere to kyng Charlemayns
 table, & sumwhat aboute his a¹ two fote hyer; & also 4
 I wyll, by cause I haue herd say that often tymes of a
 lytell castell cometh a greater, therefore I wyl that on
 my table be set my cuppe, & horne, & harnes,² y^e
 whiche Huon conquestyd of y^e Gyaunt Angolaffer; & 8
 also I wysh with me a .C.M. men of armes such as I
 was wont to haue in batayle / he had no soner sayd
 y^e wordes / but by the wyll of god & the pusaunce of
 the fayry / his table & all *that* kyng Oberon had 12
 wyshyd was set iust by kyng Charlemaynes table,
 more hyer & greater than his was / whan³ Charlemayne
 sawe the table, & the cuppe &⁴ horne & cote of mayle,
 he had grete meruayle, & sayd to duke Naymes, 'sir 16
 duke, I beleue ye haue enchauntyud me.' 'sir,' quod
 the duke, 'neuer in my lyfe I medled with such mater' /
 the lordes & all suche as were there were greatly
 abasshyd how that mater came to passe / Gerames, 20
 who set nere to Huon, whan he sawe the table, & y^e
 cuppe & horne of yuory & the harnes⁵ theron, he knew
 them well, & sayd to Huon, 'syr, be not dysmayed / for
 on yonder table *that* ye may se is your cuppe & horne 24
 of yuory and cot of mayl / wherby I perceyue wel
 that ye ⁶shalbe socouryd by kyng Oberon' / Huon
 behelde the table, & had grete ioye whan he sawe it /
 than he lyft vp his handes to the heuen & thanked our 28
 lorde god *that* he wolde vyset suche a pore synner as
 he was.⁷ 'A, kyng Oberon, in many grete nedes ye
 haue socouryd me' / therwith aryued kyng Oberon in
 the cyte, wherof the burgesses & the comons were 32
 greatly abashyd, whan they sawe suche a nombre of men
 of warre enter in to there cyte without any knowledge

and he wishes himself, with the table at which he is sitting,

and his horn, cup, and armour,

and a hundred thousand men, transported to Bordeaux.

His desire is at once accomplished.

Charlemagne believes that Naymes has enchanted him.

Gerames shows Huon how Oberon is come to aid him.

The city is filled with Oberon and his armed men,

¹ aboute. ² my armour. ³ King. ⁴ omitted.
⁵ armour. ⁶ Fol. lxii. back, col. 2. ⁷ saying.

before. Whan kinge Oberon was within y^e towne, & al his company, he sayd to his lordes, 'syr, loke that ye set good watche at euery gate, so that no man go
 4 out' / the whiche they dyd delygently / for at euery gate they set .x.M. men / ¹the cyte was full of men.¹
 Than kyng Oberon toke the way to the palays, & at y^e gate he left .x.M. men, commaundyng them on payne of
 8 there lyues *that* they shold not suffer any man to passe out / & also he commaundyd that yf they herde hym blowe his horne of yuory, that incontynent they sholde come in to the palays to hym, & to sle all suche as they
 12 sholde fynde there / & they promysyd hym so to do.
 Than kyng Oberon went vp in to the palays, & many of his lordes / with hym / he was rychely aparellyd in cloth of golde, & the border therof was fret² with ryche
 16 precyous stonnes ; goodly it was to behold, for a fayrer lytell person³ coude not be founde / he passyd iust by kyng Charlemayn without spekyng of any worde, & went so nere too kyng Charlemayn that he shuldred
 20 hym so rudely that his bonet fell fro his hede. 'A, good lorde,' quod Charlemayne, 'I haue greate meruayle what this dwarfe may be *that* so rudely hath shuldred me, & all moost had ouer throwen my table / he is
 24 feerse whan he thinkes scorne to speke to me, how be it, I wyll se what he wyll do / I can not tell what he thynketh to doo / as³ me semyth he is ryght ioyful, & also he is y^e moost fayrest creature
 28 that 'euer I saw' / whan Oberon had passyd by the kyng he came to Huon, & wysshyd y^e fetters fro all there fete, ¹& toke them by theyr handes¹ & led them before Charlemayn *with* out any worde
 32 spekyng, & causyd them to syt downe⁵ at his owne table *that* he had wysshyd thether, ¹& he sat downe with them¹ / than he toke his cuppe and made theron

and the gates are guarded by them so that none can pass out.

Oberon arrives at the palace.

He rudely touches Charlemagne as he passes by him.

The King is greatly annoyed,

and watches his movements.

Oberon wills the fetters to fall from Huon's feet.

1-1 omitted. 2 sette. 3 but. 4 Fol. lxiii, col. 1.
 5 with him.

Esclaramonde,
Huon, and
Gerames drink
from his
enchanted cup.

Oberon bids Huon
offer the cup to
Charlemagne.

It grows empty
in the Emperor's
hand.

Oberon charges
him with having
committed a sin
which he has
never confessed.

Charlemagne
fears the fairy-
king.

.iii. crosses / than incontynent y^e cuppe was full of
wyne / than kynge Oberon toke it & gauē it to Esclara-
mond to drynke, & than to Huon, & so to Gerames /
& whan they had all thre dronken well, he sayd to 4
Huon, 'frende, aryse vp & take the cuppe & bere it to
kynge Charlemayne, & say vnto hym *that* he drynke to
you in the name of good¹ peace / yf he refuse it he dyd
neuer suche a foly in all hys lyfe.' Kynge Charlemayne, 8
who sat nere to them at his owne table, herd kinge
Oberons wordes / than he wyst not what to thynke, &
so sat styll & durst² speake no³ worde for the great
meruaylles that he saw there, and no more durst 12
none of his men, for they were so abasshyd that there
was none there / but *that* gladly wolde haue ben a
C. legges thense; ¹euery man beheld other *with* grete
meruayle.¹ But who so euer was afrayed, Gerarde 16
was not⁴ well assuryd.⁵ Than Huon rose fro kynge
Oberons table, & tooke the cuppe & went ther with to
kynge Charlemayn, & delyueryd it to hym. The kynge
toke it, and he¹ durst not refuse it. as soone as it was 20
in his handes it was drye & voyde, and not a drope of
wyne therin. 'Felow,' quod y^e king, 'ye haue en-
chauntyd me.' 'Syr,' quod kynge Oberon, 'it is
bycause ye are full of synne / for y^e cup is of suche 24
dygnyte that none can drynke therof without he be a
noble man, & clene without any deedly synne / & I
know one *that* ye dyd not longe a go, the whiche as
yet ye were neuer confessyd of / & yf it were not to 28
your shame I sholde shew it here openly, *that* euery
man sholde here it' / whan themperour⁶ Charlemayne
herde kinge Oberon he was abasshyd, & afrayed *that*
kynge Oberon wold haue shamyd hym openly / than 32
Huon toke agayne the cuppe, & than incontynent it
was full of wyne agayne / & than Huon bare it to duke

¹ omitted.

² not.

³ one.

⁴ verie.

⁵ pleased.

⁶ Fol. lxxiii. col. 2.

Naymes, who sat next to Charlemayne. Naymes toke
 the cuppe & dranke therof at his pleasure. But all
 other coude not touche the cuppe, they were so full of
 4 synne. Than Huon retournyd to kyng Oberon, & sat
 downe by hym / than kyng Oberon called to hym
 duke Naymes, & commaundyd hym to ryse fro Charle-
 mains table & to syt downe by hym at his table / the
 8 whiche duke Naymes dyd, he durst not say nay. Than
 Oberon sayd to hym / 'sir duke Naymes, ryght good
 thanke I can¹ you in *that* ye haue ben so trew & iust
 to Huon / & you,² kyng Charlemayn, ³who is³
 12 emperour of y^e Romayns / beholde here Huon, whom
 wrongfully & *with* out cause ye haue dysheryt, & wold
 take fro hym⁴ his londes / he is a noble man & trew /
 & besyde *that*, I say vnto you for trouthe he hath done
 16 your message to⁵ the admyrall Gandes, & I aydyd to
 bringe hym to hys deth, &⁶ he toke out of his mouth
 .iiii. of his grettest teth, &⁷ dyd cut of his whyte berde /
 & I dyd close them within the syde of Gerames by the
 20 wyll of god / this *that* I say ye may beleue surely, for
 at these dedes all I was present. Se yonder false
 traytour Gerard, who by his malysyous entent hath
 done this treason / & to thentent⁸ *that* ye may knowe
 24 the mater more surelyer, ye shall here it confessyd by
 his owne mouth.' Than Oberon said to Gerarde, 'I
 coniure the, by y^e deuyne puyssaunce & power *that* god
 hath gyuen me, *that* here before kyng Charlemayn
 28 & all his lordes, ⁹shewe & declare the trouthe of this
 treason *that*¹⁰ thou hast done agaynst Huon thy brother.'
 whan Gerarde vnderstode Oberon he was in such fere *that*
 he trymbled for drede / for he felt in hym selfe *that* he
 32 coude haue no power to hyde¹¹ or¹² couer¹¹ the trouthe of
 the treason / & than he sayd, 'Syr, I se wel to hyde the

Only Duke
 Naymes of all the
 courtiers can
 drink of the
 enchanted cup.

Oberon commends
 Naymes for his
 faith in Huon,

and rebukes the
 Emperor for the
 injustice of which
 he has been
 guilty in his
 treatment of the
 brothers Huon
 and Gerard.

Oberon bids
 Gerard confess
 the truth,

and he tells aloud

¹ giue. ² thou. ³⁻³ that art. ⁴ all. ⁵ vnto.
⁶ then. ⁷ also. ⁸ the end. ⁹ thou. ¹⁰ which.
¹¹⁻¹¹ omitted. ¹² Fol. lxiii. back, col. 1.

the story of his
sin against his
brother.

All the details of
the plot are set
before the
Emperor.

trouthe can not auayle me / therefore trewe it is I went
to the abbay of seynt Maurys to se my brother Huon /
& Gybouars accompanyd with .lx. men of¹ armes. we
departyd fro this cyte, and layde our busschement in a
lytell wood a² .ii. legees fro this cyte / to watch whan
my brother Huon shold passe by that way.' 'Gerarde,'
quod kyng Oberon, 'speke out hyer that ye may the
better be herde, & that euery man may here the treason
& falsnes that ye haue done to³ your brother.' 'Syr,'
quod Gerard, 'I wote not what to say / for I haue
done so yll and falsly against my brother *that* more yll
I coude not do; ⁴I am ashamyd to recounte it. But to 12
saye trewly that, or⁵ it was mydnyght, I made my
brother to ryse, & to departe fro y^e abbay / & whan we
came nere to the place where as my father in law
Gybouars was with his busschement, I began to stryue 16
with my brother so hyely that Gibouars myght here
me, who whan he herde me speke, he brake out⁶ of
his busschement, & ranne at my brothers company, &
so slew them all excepte these .iiii. that be here / than 20
we toke y^e deed bodyes & dyd cast them in to the
ryuer of Gerone / than we toke Huon, & his wyfe, &
the olde Gerames, & bounde theyr handes & fete &
blyndfelyd theyr iyen, & so brought them on .iii. 24
lene horses in to this cyte; & I toke out of the syde
of⁷ Gerames the berd & .iiii. gret teth / the whiche yf it
please you I shall fetche them fro thense⁸ I left them.'
'Gerarde,' quod Oberon, 'ye shall not nede to take the⁹ 28
laboure, for whan it shall please me I can haue them
without you' / 'well, sir,' quod Gerarde, 'thus whan
I had set them in pryson, I went backe agayne to the
abbay, & than I demaundyd of the abbot & couent 32
where the treasure was that my brother had left there,
& that he sholde delyuer it to me, beerynge hym in

¹ at. ² about. ³ vnto. ⁴ and. ⁵ before.
⁶ forth. ⁷ old. ⁸ the place where. ⁹ that.

hande *that* my brother Huon had ¹sent for it / the good
 abbot wolde not delyuer it to me / wherfore Gybouars
 & I slew hym, & than we made this monke here² abbot,
 4 who is neer of kyne to Gybouars, to y^e entent that he
 sholde ayde to bere vs wytnes, & to iustifye our
 saynges / *than* we toke all the treasure *that* was there
 & brought it hyther / *than* I charygd .x. somers, the
 8 whiche I had *with* me, to kyng Charlemayns court at
 Parys / the which treasure I gaue part therof to the
 kyng, & to other, by whom I thought to be aydyd,
 to performe myn vnhappye enterpryce / & I beleued
 12 surely that by reason of the ryches *that* I gaue *that*
 my brother sholde haue receyued deth / & therby I to
 haue ben lorde & mayster of al his londes & seynoryes /
 16 *sir*,³ this treason *that* I haue shewed, Gybouars causyd
 me to do it, or elles I had neuer thought to haue done
 it.' 'Gerarde,' quod king Oberon, 'yf it please our
 lord Jesu Cryst, you & he both shalbe hangyd by the
 neckes, there is no man lyuyng shall saue you. Syr
 20 emperour Charlemayn, ye haue well herd the confessyon
 of Gerard of the grete treason that Gybouars & he
 hath done to⁴ Huon. But by y^e lorde *that* fourmyd
 me to his semblaunce / both they two, & the abbot, &
 24 his chapleyne, shalbe hangyd for there false wytnes.'
 'By y^e fayth *that* I owe to saynt Denys,' quod kyng
 Charlemayn / 'they can not scape it.' 'Syr,' quod
 28 shal do well yf all iiii be hangyd' / whan all the lordes
 herd Gerarde confesse *that* gret treason that he had
 done to⁴ his brother, they blissyd them, & had grete
 meruayle of y^e false treason that the one brother dyd
 32 to the other.

Gerard charges
 Gybouars with
 the suggestion of
 the wicked
 scheme.

Oberon requests
 the Emperour to
 order Gerard and
 his companions to
 be hangyd,

and Charles
 assents.

¹ Fol. lxiii. back, col. 2.

² the.

³ and all.

⁴ vnto.

¶ How kynge Oberon caused to be hangyd the .iiii. traytours, Gerard, Gybouars, & the two monkes, for ¹there false wytnes / & of the peace made betwen Huon & Charle- 4 mayne / and how kyng Oberon gaue to² Huon his realme of the fayrye.

Capitulo lxxxiii.

Oberon wishes the beard and teeth which Gerard has retained to appear before him,



and they obey his will.

Huon pleads for the life of Gerard his brother.

Oberon will grant no respite,

Han kynge Oberon had herd Gerarde 8 confesse the treason done to his brother, and herde how Gerarde offred to goo & fetch the berde &³ teth / & how he had denyed hym to go, Than he 12 sayd, 'I wysshe them here on⁴ this table.' he had no sooner made his wysshe but they were set on the table / wherof all such as were there had gret meruayle. 'Syr,' quod Huon to kynge Oberon, humbly, 16 'I requyre you *that* of your grace ye wyll pardon my brother Gerard all y^o yll *that* he hath done against me / for he dyd it by Gybouars, & as for me here, & before god, I pardon hym; and, *sir*, yf ye wyll do 20 thus I shalbe content therwith / & to thentent *that* we may vse our liues fro hense forth in good peace & loue, I wyll gyue ⁵hym the halfe parte of my londes & seygnoryes / & *sir*, in the honoure of our lord Jesu 24 Cryst, haue pyte of hym' / whan the lordes that were there present vnderstode Huon, they all for pyte began to wepe, and sayd amonge them selfe *that* Huon was a noble knyght, & *that* it had ben pyte yf the mater had 28 framyd other wyse. 'Syr Huon,' quod Oberon / 'it is not necessarye to ⁶requyre me of⁶ this / for all the golde *that* is in the worlde shall not respyte them ⁷fro the deth.⁷ I wysshe by y^o puyssaunce that I haue in y^o 32

¹ Fol. lxiii. col. 1. ² vnto. ³ grant. ⁴ vpon.
⁵ Fol. lxiii. col. 2. ⁶⁻⁶ request. ⁷⁻⁷ their deaths.

fayrre, ¹and by my dygnyte,¹ that here beneth in y^e meadow ther be a payre of gallowes, & all foure theron hangyd.' Incontynent it was done, and all foure
 4 hangyd / thus as ye haue herd y^e traytours were payed ther desertes. Whan kynge Charlemayn had sene the gret meruaylles that were done by the ¹commaundement of ¹kyng Oberon, he sayd to his lordes, 'Syr, I beleue
 8 this man be² god hymselfe / for there is no mortall man can do this *that* he hath done' / whan Oberon vnderstode the emperour, he sayd, 'Syr, know for trouth I am not³ god, but I am a mortall man as ye be, and
 12 was engendred on a woman as ye were, & my father was Julyus cesar, who engendred me on the lady of y^e preuey⁴ yle, who had ben before louer to Florymount, sonne to the duke of Albanye / she bare me .ix.
 16 monethes in her bely,⁵ and⁶ begoten by Julyus cesar whan he went in to Thesayle after Pompe the grete. He was amourous of my mother bycause she prophesyed that my father, Julius cesar, sholde wynne
 20 the batayle as he dyd / and whan I was borne there were *with* my mother many ladyes of y^e fayrre, and by them I hadde many gyftes, and amonge other there was one that gaue me y^e gyft to be suche one as ye se
 24 that¹ I am, wherof I am sorye, but I can⁷ be none otherwyse / for whan I cam to the age of thre yere I grew no more / & whan this lady⁸ saw that I was so lytell / to content agayne my mother she gaue me agayne *that*
 28 I sholde be the moost¹ fayrest creature of the worlde, and other ladyes of the fayry gaue me dyuers other gyftes, the whiche I ouer passe at this tyme / & therefore, *sir*, know for trouth that aboute all thynges god
 32 loueth fayth & trouth whan it is in men, as it is here in Huon; & bycause I know in⁹ certaine that he is

and the traitors
are hanged.

The Emperor
believes Obero
to be God
Himself,

but the fairy-king
recites his
history,

¹⁻¹ omitted. ² some. ³ no. ⁴ secret. ⁵ wombe.
⁶ I was. ⁷ not. ⁸ Fol. lxi. back, col. 1.
⁹ for.

and tells of his
love for Huon.

Huon gives
Charlemagne the
beard and teeth
from Babylon.

The Emperor
hands over to him
all his lands,
and pardons him
all his offences.

The courtiers
rejoice over the
reconciliation.

Oberon bids Huon
come to Mommur
in four years'
time,

and promises him
the kingdom of
the fairies.

Bordeaux shall
then be given to
Gerames.

trew & faythfull, therefore I haue alwayes loued hym.' After *that* kyng Oberon had endyd his wordes, & shewed themperour Charlemayn of all his estate, he called Huon, and sayd, ¹'aryse vp, & take the berde & ⁴ the teth, & bere them to kyng Charlemayn, & desyre hym to render to you your londes as he promysyd.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I ought so to do' / *than* Huon came to kinge Charlemayne, & sayd, 'Syr, by your ⁸ grace, & yf it maye please you to receyue here y^o berde & teth of y^o admyral Gaudys.' 'Huon,' quod y^o kinge, 'I holde you quyt, and I render to you all your londes & seygnoryes, & pardon you of all myn yll wyll, and ¹² put al rancoure fro me, & fro hense forth² retayne you as one of my peeres.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'of this I thanke god & your grace.' *than* themperour Charlemayne clyppyd & kyssyd Huon in token of peace & ¹⁶ loue. Whan the lordes saw that they wept for ioy, & thanked god *that* the peace was made, & specyally duke naymes was ioyfull. *than* within a whyle dyuers of y^o lordes departyd fro the courte / *than* kyng Oberon ²⁰ called Huon to³ hym, & said / 'sir, I commaunde you, as derely as ye loue me, that this same day .iiii. yere to come that ye come in to my cyte of Mommure / for I wyll gyue you my realme & all my dygnyte, the which ²⁴ I may lawfully do, for at my byrth it was gyuen me *that* I myght so do, for it lyeth in me to gyue it where as I thynke best, & bycause I loue you so entyerly I shall set y^o crowne on⁴ your hede, and ye shalbe kyng of ²⁸ my realme / & also I wyll that ye ⁵gyue vnto Gerames all your londes & seygnoryes in this partes, for he hath wel deseruyd it / for *with* you & for your loue he hath suffred many grete trauaylles.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, ³² 'syn⁶ this is your pleasure, I ought wel to be pleasyd therwith; I shall acumplyshe all your commaunde-

¹ Sir. ² I. ³ vnto. ⁴ vpon.
⁶ Fol. lxiii. back, col. 2. ⁵ seeing.

mentes.' 'Huon,' quod Oberon, 'know for trowth I shal not abyde longe in this worlde, for so is the pleasure of god. it behoueth me to go in to paradyce, 4 wher as my place is appavelled¹; in y^e fayrye I shal byde no lenger. but beware, as derely as ye loue your lyfe, that ye fayle not to be with me at y^e daye that I haue apoyntyd; beware that ye forget it not / for yf ye fayle 8 I shall cause you too dye an yll deth / & therefore remembre it well.' whan Huon herde kynge Oberon he was ryght ioyus,² & stowpyd downe to haue kyst his fete / but than Gloryauns & Mallebron toke hym vp. Than 12 Huon sayd, 'syr, of³ this grete gyft I thanke you.'

Oberon telle of his approaching departure for Paradise.

¶ How kyng Oberon departyd and toke leue of Charlemayn, & of Huon, & of Esclaramounde / and also how kynge Charlemayne 16 departyd fro Burdeux. Ca. lxxxv.

20 **W**Han kynge Oberon had sayd⁴ to Huon as myche as he wold that he sholde do / than he sayd to Huon how he wolde departe, & toke leue of hym, & ⁵swetely kyssyd⁵ hym. Than Oberon stode styll a season,⁶ & behelde Huon, & began to wepe⁷ / whan Huon saw that he was sory in his herte, 24 & sayd, 'A, sir kynge, I desyre you to shew me why make you this sorow at your departyng.'⁸ 'Huon,' quod Oberon, 'I shal shew you it is for pyte that I haue of you / for I swere by ⁹y^e lorde⁹ that creatyd me 28 that, or¹⁰ I shal se thee agayne, fyrst thou shalt suffre so myche payne / trauayle / pouerte / hungre / thyrst / fere / & ¹¹aduersyte, that there is no tonge can tell it /

Oberon weeps on parting with Huon.

Huon has yet to suffer much aduersity.

¹ appointed. ² ioyfull. ³ for. ⁴ imparted.
⁵⁻⁶ kindly embraced. ⁸ little while. ⁷ lament.
⁹ departure. ⁹⁻⁹ him. ¹⁰ before.
¹¹ Fol. lxxv. col. 1.

& thy good wyfe shall suffer so myche that there is no creature shall se her but *that* shal haue ¹of her¹ great pyte.' 'A, syr,' quod Huon, 'than I requyre you to ayde & comforte ma.' 'Huon,' quod Oberon, 'what ⁴comforte wolde ye haue of me?' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I desyre you let me haue your horne of yuory, to thentent that yf I haue nede that ye may socoure me / for so well I know you that ye wyll com and socoure me.' ⁸'Huon,' quod Oberon / 'syn² I haue agreed you with Charlemayn, trust not on me to be socouryd in any of your besyness, suffyce you with the gyft that I haue gyuen you whan³ all my realme & pusaunce that I haue ¹²in the fayrye / trust on none other socoure of me.' 'Syr, I am sory therof,' quod Huon, 'that it may be none otherwyse.' Than kynge Oberon toke leue of kynge Charlemayn, & of duke Naymes, & of all other lordes ¹⁶there present. Than he went to Huon & embraced hym, & toke his leue of hym, & also of Esclaramonde & of olde⁴ Gerames, & sayd to ⁴the fayre lady⁴ Esclaramonde, 'I commaunde you to god, & I desyre you, yf ²⁰ye haue done well hether vnto, that ye wyll parseuer euer better & better, and bere always fayth & honour to your housbonde' / 'syr,' quod she, 'I pray god I lyue no lenger than⁵ I sholde⁴ do the contrary.' Thus ²⁴kynge Oberon departyd / & after his departure kynge Charlemayn made redy his company, & toke leue of Huon, and of Esclaramonde & Gerames, and they conueyed⁶ the kynge a⁷ two legges,⁸ and than toke there ²⁸leues of ⁹the kynge,⁹ & of duke Naymes, and of all the lordes. Than the kynge sayd / 'Huon, yf any warre be moued agaynst you, or *that* yf ye haue any gret affayres to do / let me haue knowlege therof, & I shall ³²come & socoure you, or ⁴I shall⁴ sende you suche ayde that shalbe suffycient.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I thanke

Oberon takes leave of all the court.

Charlemagne also leaves Bordeaux,

but promises to aid Huon in any war in which he may engage.

¹⁻¹ after pyte. ² seeing. ³ euen. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted.
⁵ if. ⁶ brought. ⁷ about. ⁸ off. ⁹⁻⁹ him.

your grace,' and so toke¹ leue of the kyng & retouryd
to Bur²deux, where as he was ³in grete ioy, & ³reccyued
with grete honour.⁴ Nowe let vs leue spekyng of
4 Huon, & speke of Oberon of the fayrre.'

¹ *hia.* ² *Fol. lxxv. col. 2.* ³⁻³ *omitted.* ⁴ *ioy.*

END OF PART I

(BEING THE STORY OF THE ORIGINAL FRENCH *CHANSON*
DE GESTE OF HUON DE BORDEAUX).

PART II.

THE CONTINUATION OF THE ORIGINAL *CHANSON DE GESTE*.

THE ADVENTURES OF

Duke Guon of Burdeaux.

100



*Sir John Bourchier, Knight,
Second Baron Berners (1469-1533),
from a painting by Hans Holbein
now in the possession of the Hon. H. Lytchett Wilson.*

PREFATORY NOTE.

THE portrait which is prefixed to this volume will, I hope, prove of some general interest. As the work of Holbein, and a memorial of a first discoverer of the capacities of English prose, it deserves a very prominent position among portraits of English men of letters. The original painting is at Keythorpe Hall, Leicestershire. It has been reproduced here for the first time by the kind permission of its owner, the Hon. H. Tyrwhitt Wilson. Lord Berners is represented in the robes of the Chancellor of the Exchequer: he holds in his right hand a lemon to protect him (according to a contemporary belief) from the plague, to which his presence in the Exchequer Court frequently exposed him. The picture is described by Mr. Ralph Wornum in his edition of Horace Walpole's *Anecdotes of Painting* (i. 82), but Dr. Alfred Woltmann in his elaborate book on Holbein makes no mention of it. The present engraving is the work of Messrs. Dawson of the Typographic Etching Company.

I regret that I have been unable to complete the reprint of this romance in a second part. The tale of Huon's wife, Esclaramonde, and of the treacherous advances made towards her by the Emperor of Germany (*chapters lxxxvi—clvii*), is alone printed here. The concluding portions of Lord Berners' work, relating the wooing and marriage of Huon's daughter, Clariet, the repulsive trials to which Ide, Clariet's daughter, was subjected, and the early fortunes of Croisant, Ide's son (*chapters clviii—clxxxiv*), are reserved for a third part. For that part I am also preparing glossaries of the proper names, places, and obscure words, with appendices on the leading differences in the language of the first and third editions, and on

some of the more curious legends introduced into the story. Lovers of fairy lore may find much to interest them in the pages that follow. Huon's second journey to the East (pp. 361 *et seq.*), to obtain succour in behalf of his wife and child, involves him in more marvellous perils than any he met with in his earlier travels. The descriptions of Judas Iscariot (pp. 363-7) and of Cain are singular examples of the mediæval mythology that grew out of scriptural history. The account of the last days of Oberon (pp. 597-606) is, like many passages in the first part, worthy of notice in future commentaries on Shakespeare's *Midsummer Night's Dream*.

The length of this romance will doubtless deter all but a very few students from proceeding very far in its perusal. It must in fairness be admitted, too, that the plot works sluggishly, wanting in rapid energy, and abounding in detail, which the modern critic will denounce as superfluous. But such incidents as those to which I have drawn attention effectively relieve the story's prolixity, and the never unmelodious monotony of its language is at times broken, as I have shown before, by tones of the purest beauty. It is moreover in its bulk, as in all other respects, an excellent representative of the popular literature of sixteenth-century England. And let us remember that it is not in effect much longer than an ordinary three-volume novel of our own day, with which in an historical sense it invites comparison. It therefore behoves lovers of the fiction of the present age to treat *Huon of Burdeux*, its author, and those sixteenth-century readers who could eagerly devour its pages, sympathetically: for the judgment that we pass to-day on Lord Berners' book and its first enthusiastic patrons, assuredly awaits three centuries and a half hence whatever may survive of the light literature of our own time, and ourselves, who reward it with a golden homage.

I desire to take this, the first opportunity allowed me, of correcting a misstatement made by Mrs. T. H. Ward in the *Athenæum* (August 18th, 1883), to disprove an assertion of mine that appeared in the same journal five weeks earlier. Mrs. Ward there set among her "facts" the remark that "Lord Berners—unless Mr. Lee has some quite fresh information, in which case I must plead ignorance—

died on March 16th, 1532," and she proceeded to point out, that as I accepted March 10th, 1533, for the date of the completion of an important translation of Lord Berners—"the Golden Boke of Marke Aurelie"—I made "the translation finished nearly a year after the translator's death." If Mrs. Ward had done me the honour of turning to my record of the life of Lord Berners in the Introduction to Part I, published in January last, she might possibly have avoided the frequently repeated error into which she has here fallen. I showed there that notices of the death of Lord Berners in Mr. James Gairdner's *Papers of Henry VIII* (vol. vi, nos. 238 and 239) prove conclusively that, reckoning the new year, as is the modern custom, from the first of January, he died on March 16th, 1533. The makers of biographical dictionaries have, I know, antedated the event by one year in their forgetfulness of the well-known fact that with Lord Berners' contemporaries the twenty-fifth day of March was the first day of a new year. The mistake is one worth correcting permanently, and I hope to be able to do so in the article on Lord Berners that I am writing for Mr. Leslie Stephen's new *Dictionary of National Biography*. As for Lord Berners' relations to so-called Euphuism, which was the original subject of my brief controversy with Mrs. Ward, I am quite ready to admit that Dr. Landmann, in a work privately printed at Giessen in 1881, was the first, as Mrs. Ward has shown, to call attention to the important influence he exerted in the matter; but I do not imagine that Lord Berners' connexion with Euphuism is so thoroughly understood in England as to make such a re-statement of the facts as I intend to give in an appendix wholly a work of supererogation.

S. L. LEE.


26, Brondesbury Villas, London, N. W.

December 26, 1883.

Huon of Burdeux.

¶ Howe kynge Oberon deuysyd with his
 knyghtes in his cyte of Mommure in the
 4 fayrye of the dedes of Huon of Burdeux, &
 of that¹ sholde fall² after to hym.

Ca. .lxxxvi.

8  Han kynge Oberon was departyd fro
 Burdeux he came to his cyte of Mom-
 mure. Than³ he began sore to wepe.
 Than Gloryaunt demaundyd of hym
 why he made that sorow. 'Gloryauns,'

Oberon returns to
 Mommur and
 bewails the sad
 fate that is still
 in store for Huon.

12 quod Oberon, 'it is for the vnhappy Huon / he is alone,
 and I knowe well here after he shalbe betrayed, and
 all for Esclaramonde his wyfe / for though⁴ he haue or⁵
 this tyme sufferyd greate trauayle and myche trouble
 16 and pouerte / yet I knowe surely that he shall suffer
 more than euer he dyd, & he shal⁶ haue no socoure of
 any man lyuyng' / 'why, sir,' quod Gloryauns, 'how
 can that be? / for Huon is a grete lorde, & hath many
 20 frendes, and is the moost hardyest knyght now lyuyng /
 & he is at accorde with kynge Charlemayn, therefore he
 were a greate foole that wolde make hym any warre, &
 do hym any dyspleasure' / 'well,' quod Oberon, 'god
 24 ayde hym in all his affayres / for or⁵ it be longe he shall
 haue myche to do.' Thus Oberon entred in to his ryche
 palays, & sayd agayne, 'A, fre⁷ knyght Huon, I know
 well ye shalbe betrayed for the loue of your wyfe, who

Esclaramonde will
 cause him much
 suffering.

¹ which. ² happen. ³ and there. ⁴ that. ⁵ ere.
⁶ Fol. lxxv. back, col. 1. ⁷ deare.

is fayre and good, and yf ye take not good hede ye shall leue her and your selfe in grete perell of deth / and yf ye scape the deth, yet shall you suffer suche payne and pouerte that there is no clerke lyuyng so 4 sage that can put it in wrytyng.' 'Syr,' quod Gloryauns / 'me thynke this can not be, seynge the loue that is now betwene hym and Charlemayn.' 'Gloryauns,' quod Oberon, 'yet I say agayne to¹ you *that*, or² this 8 yere be passyd, Huon shalbe in such distres, and so hardely kept, that yf he had .x. realmes he wolde gyue them all to be out of that daunger that he shalbe in' / than Gloryauns was pensyue, and sayd / 'A, sir, for 12 goddes sake neuer leue Huon your frende in suche daunger / but rather socoure hym' / 'nay, surely,' quod Oberon, 'that wyll I not doo / syn³ I haue promysyd hym my dygnyte & londe; he shal not be aydyd 16 nor socouryd by me, for he shalbe closyd in suche a plase *that* I wolde not go thether for .x. of the best cytyes of the worlde.' Now let vs retourne to¹ Huon, beyng in his palays at Burdeux. 20

Nor will Oberon aid him,

now that Huon will one day bear his crown.

¶ How Huon toke homage of his men & chastesyd his rebelles, & of .iii. pylgremes, by whom myche yll fell 'after, as ye shall here. Ca. .lxxxvii. 24



After that kyng Charlemayn was departyd fro Burdeux & that Huon was retournyd, he assambled all his barons, to whom he made good chere, 28 and there they toke there londes & fees of hym & made there homage.

The lords of Bordeaux do homage to Huon.

Than he toke a .M. chosyn knyghtes with hym, & rode in his londes & tooke possessyon of townes & castelles, 32 & was obeyed in euery place except of one Named

¹ vnto. ² before. ³ seeing. ⁴ Fol. lxxv. back, col. 2.

Angelers, who was cosyn germayne to Amaury, whom
 Huon had slayne before at Parys before themperour
 Charlemyan for y^e loue of Charlot / this Angelers was
 4 false & a traytoure, & he had a stronge castell with / in
 a¹.iii. legges of Burdeux / he wolde not holde of Huon
 nor obey hym, tho he was his lege man / whan Huon
 saw that he wolde not holde of hym nor do hym
 8 homage, he was sore dyspleasyd, and made promyse that,
 yf that he mygth gette hym parforce, he wolde surely
 hange hym vp & ²as many as were in the castell.³ than
 Huon assaylled y^e castell, & they within defendyd
 12 them⁴ valyauntly / so that many were hurt and slayne
 of⁵ both partes / Huon was there .viii. dayes & coude
 not wyn y^e castell / than Huon ordenyd before the
 place a payre of galowes, & on⁶ y^e.ix. day he made a
 16 freshe assault by suche force⁷ that he wan y^e castell
 & entred parforce. Angelers was taken & .lx.⁸ men
 with hym, & they were al hangyd on y^e galowes. Than
 Huon gaue the castell to⁹ one of his knyghtes /¹⁰ than
 20 he departyd & went to the castell of Blay, where as he
 was receyued with gret ioy / and the fayre Esclaramonde
 was in her¹¹ palays at Burdeux well acompenyd with
 ladyes & dameselles / & as they were deuyssynge to-
 24 gyther, there entred into y^e palays .iii. pylgremes who
 ryght humbly salutyd the lady Esclaramonde. 'Syr,
 quod y^e lady, 'I pray you shew me out of what countre
 ye are come' / 'dame,'¹² quod one of them, 'know for
 28 trouth that we are come fro Ierusalem, & haue made
 our offerynge to the holy sepulture. we haue sufferyd
 myche pouertie in oure iurnay, wherfore, lady, we
 requyre you humbly for the loue of our lorde Jesu
 32 Cryst to gyue vs sum meet.' 'Syr,' quod she, 'ye
 shall haue ynough' / & than she commaundyd two of

Angelers, a relative of the Earl Amaury,

resists Huon's authority.

Huon marches to take his castle,

which falls after nine days' siege.

Angelers and his men are taken and hanged.

Three pilgrims visit Esclaramonde at Bordeaux.

They say they are journeying from the Holy Land.

¹ omitted.

² Fol. lxvi. col. 1.

³ with him.

⁴ selues.

⁵ on.

⁶ vppon.

⁷ strength.

⁸ Fortie.

⁹ vnto.

¹⁰ and.

¹¹ the.

¹² Madame.

her knyghtes to se¹ y^e pylgremes sholde haue meet and drynke / & so they were set at y^e end of the hall, & a table coueryd for them, & thereon brede & fleshe & wyne / they were well serued. Than the duches 4 Esclaramonde went to vysyt them, & demaundyd where they were borne & whether they wolde go. 'Dame,'² quod they, 'we be all .iii. borne at Vyene, & thether we wolde retourne' / 'syrs, god be your gyde,' quod the 8 lady, & she gaue them .x. Florence, wherof they had grete ioy & thankyd y^e duches. ³Alas! that gyft was yll employed,⁴ as ye shal here ⁵after. They departyd & toke ther way, & trauallyd so longe *that* on a twes- 12 daye ⁶they aryued halfe a legge fro Vyene / & ther they met duke Raoull, who was goynge a hawkyng / he was a grete & puyssaunt lord of londes & seynoryes, & hardy in dedes of armes. grete damage⁷ it was *that* he 16 was such a traytoure, for a more subtylman coude not be knowen / for all the dayes of his lyfe he was euer a mouer of warre & stryfe & to do treason, without hauynge regarde other to kynne or other / god con- 20 founde hym / for by hym & hys cause Huon sufferyd so myche yll that it cannot be recoutyd. This duke Raoull was to mary / thus as he was in the feldes a hawkyng, & .xx. knyghtes *with* hym, he met the sayd 24 thre pylgremes, & anone he knew them. Than he rode to them & sayd, 'syrs, ye be welcom home' / they were ioyfull, whan they saw the duke, there lord, salute them so humbly, & for ioy therof they shewed hym such 28 newes *that* by y^e occasyon therof .xx. M knyghtes lost after theyr lyues, & Raoull hymselfe receyued y^e deth / & Huon had suche trouble that he had neuer none suche before, as ye shal here ⁵after. Than the duke 32 sayd to the pylgremes / 'frendes, I pray you shew me by what countrees ye haue passyd to com hether.'

They are well entertained,

but soon set out for Vienna.

On their way they meet Duke Raoul, who was hawking.

He is a traitor

and a mover of war.

He welcomes the pilgrims,

and asks how they have fared.

¹ that. ² Madame. ³ but. ⁴ bestowed. ⁵ here.
⁶ Fol. lxvi. col. 2. ⁷ pittie.

'Syr,' quod they, 'we haue passyd by Fraunce, & fyrst
 we were at Burdeux, & there we founde y^e duches
 Esclaramonde, wyfe to Huon of Burdeux, of whom ye
 4 haue herd so myche spekyng of.¹ she is so fayre &
 so well fourmyd,² so swete, pleasaunt, & gracyous as can
 be deusyd. she is doughter to the admyrall Gaudys,
 whom Huon hath slayne, & taken her to his wyfe /
 8 grete damage³ is it *that* Huon sholde haue suche a
 wyfe / for she were meter to be wyfe to a pusaunt
 kinge, for who so euer had suche a wyfe to lye by
 myght wel say *that* there were none ike her in all y^e
 12 worlde / wolde to our lorde god, *sir* / that she were
 your wyfe' / whan the duke herde that, he chaungyd
 coloure & greatly couertyd the lady in his herte / so
that he was stryken with⁴ such⁵ sparke of that for the⁶
 16 byrnyng loue that he had to the lady Esclaramonde,⁶
 he promysed & sware that he wolde haue her, who so
 euer sayd the contrary, & sayd howe⁷ he wolde slee
 Huon, & than haue Esclaramonde to his wyfe. Thus
 20 duke Raoull sware the deth of Huon /⁸ than he departyd
 fro the pylgremes. yll was employed⁹ the almes that
 Esclaramonde had gyuen them.

They tell him how
Esclaramonde
received them at
Bordeaux,
and how fair
she is,

and how worthy
to be the wife of a
greater prince
than Huon—even
of Raoul himself.

The Duke swears
that he will wed
Esclaramonde.



¶ How duke Raoull of Austrych, by the
 24 reporte of the pylgremes, was amourous of
 the fayre Esclaramonde / and of the tornay
 that was cryed,¹⁰ to thentent to haue slayne
 Huon. Capitulo .lxxxviii.

¹ for. ² faouered. ³ pittie.
⁴ Fol. lxvi. back, col. 1. ⁵⁻⁵ violent and. ⁶ as.
⁷ that. ⁸ and. ⁹ bestowed. ¹⁰ proclaimed.



Duke Raoul announces his intention to visit his uncle the Emperor of Almayne, and secretly resolves to hold a great tournament, to which Huon is to be induced to come to meet his death.

A messenger is sent to the Emperor asking him to arrange the tournament at Mayence,

and he does as he is requested.

Raoul assembles his barons and makes them swear to compass the death of Huon,

Hus duke Raoull retournyd to the cyte of Vyen ryght pensyue, and sent for his preuey counsell, & than he commaundyd them to assamble as myche¹ 4 people as they coude, by cause he sayde that he wolde goo to his vncler themperour of Almayne / to whom he sent a secret message that he shold cause the tournay to be cryed² in 8 sum conuenyent place, to thentent that the knyghtes of Almayne and of other countrees sholde assemble there. The false traytoure dyd it for a craft, to thentent that Huon by his prowes and hardenes sholde 12 come to that tournay. The messenger rode forth tyll³ he came to Strabrouge, where as he founde themperour, who was vncler to Raoull, for he was themperours brothers sonne / whan themperour herde the message he 16 was ioyfull / ⁴whan he herd those⁴ newes fro his neuewe duke Raoull, whom he loued enterly / and to do hym pleasure he sent to all londes vnder his obeysaunce, to all knyghtes and ⁵squyers suche as of custome 20 were wont to iust and tournay, desyrynge them to come at a day assygnyd to the cyte of Mayence, for there he wolde kepe open courte. ⁶themperour knewe not for what entent his neuewe Raoull had deuysyd that 24 tournay. Alas! he dyd it⁷ to fynde⁸ place to slee Huon, to thentent to haue his wyfe Esclaramonde. Than duke Raoull on a day assembled his barons, speycally suche as he had parfyte trust in / he shewed them at 28 length⁹ y^e cause why he had assembled all that⁸ people / to go to the tournay. 'Therefore, syrs,¹⁰ I wyll that ye sware to me the deth of Huon of Burdeux / for I wyll that ye & I togyther¹¹ put¹² to our payne¹² to slee hym / 32

¹ many. ² proclaimed. ³ vntill.

⁴⁻⁴ and not a little pleased to heare such.

⁵ Fol. lxxvi. back, col. 2. ⁶ Now. ⁷ but. ⁸ the.

⁹ large. ¹⁰ quoth he. ¹¹ omitted.

¹²⁻¹² all our vttermost.

- & than I wyll wed his wyfe, of whom I am so amourous *that* I can not slepe nor take any rest / y^e same tyme that they thus made promyse & sware y^e deth of
- 4 Huon, There was amonge them a varlet with duke Raoull who in his youghth had serued Huon of Burdeux / and¹ whan he vnderstode² yf Huon came to the tournay, howe³ he sholde be murderyd / as preuely as he coude /
- 8 he departyd fro Vyene, & neuer restyd tyll⁴ he came to the cite of Burdeux, where as he founde duke Huon in his palays *with* his lordes, who had been⁵ aduertesyd that there sholde be⁶ a great tournay at Mayence in
- 12 Almayne / and he deuysyd with his lordes⁷ to go thether. The same tyme thether came⁸ the varlet,⁸ who⁹ humbly salutyd duke Huon, who sayd to hym, 'frend, where hast thou ben so longe?' 'Syr,' quod the varlet,
- 16 'I come now fro Viene in Austrych, and¹⁰ duke Raoull who is lorde there¹¹ hath cryed¹² a tournay in euery countre, and¹³ syr, yf ye go thether ye shalbe slayne / for thys tournay is deuysyd for none other entent / for¹⁴
- 20 by cause it is¹⁵ well knowen that there can be no hye dedes of armes done in any place / but that ye wyll be¹⁶ at it. and whan they haue slayne you y^e duke Raoull wyll haue¹⁷ the duches your wyfe in mariage ;
- 24 therefore, syr, for goddes sake aduyse you well that ye come not there, in as moch as ye loue your lyfe / for ye can not scape / there be a .xx. M men that hath sworne your deth ;¹⁸ yf ye enter in to the tornay ye can
- 28 neuer scape the deth / and I haue herde duke Raoull swere that when he hath slayne you he wyll kepe all your londes.' When duke Huon hadde herd the varlet / he sware by god and made¹⁹ promyse that
- 32 duke Raoull sholde derely by his fals treason. Then

and to aid him in his quest of Esclaramonde.

One of the Duke's servants had of old served Huon,

and goes to Bordeaux to warn him of the plot against his life.

Huon contemplates going to Mayence when the man arrives,

and reveals the danger which threatens his old master.

Huon swears to make Raoul own his treachery.

1 now. 2 that. 3 there. 4 vntill. 5 before.

6 held. 7 how. 8-8 after time. 9 and. 10 where.

11 of. 12 proclaymed. 13 but. 14 omitted. 15 too.

16 present. 17 Fol. lxxvii. col. 1. 18 therefore.

19 a solemn.

Esclaramonde
begs her husband
not to go from
Bordeaux.

But Huon is deaf
to her entreaties,
and declares he
will set out at
once to slay the
traitor.

Esclaramonde
begs him to take
many armed men
with him,

and offers to go
with him herself.

the duches Esclaramonde kneled downe before Huon & sayd, '1 A, syr,¹ I desyre you to forbere your goynge thyther at this tyme / for I haue herd often reputed² that this duke Raoull is pusant & hath grate londes, &³ 4 is nephew to theemperour of Almayne / and also I haue herde saye that a falsar traytoure there is none lyuyng in this worlde.' 'Dame,'⁴ quod Huon, 'I haue well herd you / but by y^o lorde that fourmed me to his 8 ymage, thoughe I sholde lose halfe my londes I wyll go⁵ se y^o traytoure / what weneth⁶ he to abasshe me with his thretnynges ? / yf I may mete hym in⁷ the tornay, or in any other place where so euer it be, though he 12 had with him .x. M men of armes, and that I had but alonely my swerde in my hande, I shall sle him what so euer sholde fall therof, and let oure lorde god do with me as it shall please hym ; ⁸ nor⁸ I shall neuer 16 haue ioye at my herte tyll I haue slayne hym.' When the duches herde Huon, how he wolde do none other wyse, & that she coulde not let him of his enterpryce, she was sorowfull, and sayde, 'Syr, syn⁹ it is your plea- 20 sure / reason it is that I muste be content / but yet, syr, I desyre you to take with you .x.M. men well armyd, to thentent *that* ye be not founde vnprouyded, so that yf ye be assayled¹⁰ ye may be of¹¹ pusaunce to 24 resyste your enemyes / & also⁸ that it ¹² may be youre pleasure that I may¹² go with you ; & I wyll ¹³ be armed with¹⁴ shelde ⁸ & helme⁸ & swerde by my syde, & yf I may mete duke Raoul, I shall gyue hym suche a buffet 28 that I shall stryke hym from his horse, &¹⁵ I am so dyspleased with hym that there is no membre¹⁶ in me but that trembleth for angre /¹⁷ I shall neuer haue ioye at my herte tyll I be reuenged of hym.' When Huon 32

¹⁻¹ Deare Lord. ² repeated. ³ besides.
⁴ Madame. ⁵ to. ⁶ thinketh. ⁷ at. ⁸⁻⁸ omitted.
⁹ seeing. ¹⁰ yet. ¹¹ sufficient.
¹²⁻¹² will please you to suffer me to. ¹³ Fol. lxxvii. col. 2.
¹⁴ my. ¹⁵ for. ¹⁶ ioynt. ¹⁷ and.

- herde the duches his wyfe he was wel comforted, & began to laugh, & sayde, 'fayre ladye, I can¹ you grete thanke for your wordes, but ye are to farre gone *with* 4 chylde to ryde armed; it is a seuen monethes past syn ye were fyrst *with* chylde' / then Huon made to be cryed² in all his londes that euery man sholde be redy to go *with* hym to the tornay at Mayence. The dukes 8 entent was anone knowen through³ all the countre, so that it⁴ spred a brode that⁵ the brute therof came to the herynge of duke Raoull / and, when he herd that Huon wold come to the tornay, he was⁶ ioyfull therof / then 12 he sware that he wolde go and se Esclaramonde in the gyuse of a pylgreme /⁷ then he toke⁸ on a beggers garment and⁹ a staffe & a wallet / he shewed his entent to them of his preuey counsell. they wold haue stopped 16 his goynge, but they coude not / thus he appareled him selfe lyke a begger / and *with* an herbe rubbed so¹⁰ his face and handes that suche as hadde not sene hym¹¹ appareled coude not haue knowen hym, he was so 20 foule and blacke.¹² he desyred his men to kepe secret his enterpryce. Then he departyd fro Vyen, & neuer rested tyll he came to the cyte of Burdeux, and so wente to¹³ the palays &¹⁴ founde Huon amonge his barons, 24 makynge grete chere and feest, for to¹⁵ hym was come dyuers lordes and knyghtes, deuysynge of the tornay that shold be holden at Mayence. Thus Raoull came before Huon, & desyred hym for the honoure of our 28 lorde god to gyue hym some mete & almes. 'Frende,' quod Huon, 'thou shalt haue ynough / but I pray the tell me¹⁶ fro whens thou comest, and whyther thou wylt go, & of what countre thou arte of'¹⁷ / 'sir,' quod Raoul, 32 'I am¹⁸ borne of the countre of Berry, but it is .xx. yere

Huon tells her that her health will not allow her to bear him company.

Proclamation is made throughout Bordeaux bidding all knights accompany Huon to Mayence.

Raoul hears of Huon's intencion,

and disguising himself like a pilgrim, desires to visit Esclaramonde.

He leaves Vienna and arrives at Bordeaux.

He sees Huon among his barons,

and begs for sustenance.

¹ giue. ² proclaimed. ³ out. ⁴ being. ⁵ omitted.
⁶ not a little. ⁷ and. ⁸ putte. ⁹ tooke. ¹⁰ on.
¹¹ otherwise. ¹² then. ¹³ vnto. ¹⁴ where he.
¹⁵ Fol. lxxvii. back, col. 1. ¹⁶ was.

He tells a lying story of his pilgrimage and previous life.

passed syn I was there. when I departed thens I was but yonge, for yf I sawe ¹nowe before me¹ my father or mother, I shold not know them; & syr, I come fro beyonde y^e see, where as I haue ben prysoner amonge ⁴y^e sarazyns y^e space of .xiii. yeres in a stronge castell, where I haue suffred moche dysease of hungre & colde, & at² last I scaped by reason of a yonge man to whome I promysed,³ yf he coude brynge me to Acre in saue ⁸garde, that I wolde then gyue hym twenty ducates of golde / the yong man was couetous to haue the money, and founde the meanes that he brought me to Acre, where as I founde a kynnesman of myn who payed the ¹²yonge man⁴ that I⁵ promysyd⁶ hym / and also he gaue me .xv. ducates, the whiche I haue spent with comyng hyther.' 'Frende,' quod Huon, 'I praye to⁶ god to ayde the, for yf thou were not soo yll apparelled thou ¹⁶sholdest seme a man of a hye lynnage / for it semeth to me, yf thou were wel armyd and wepened, and were in some bysenes, thou were lyke ynough to be fered.'

Huon receives him kindly.

¶ How after that duke Raoull had ben at 20 Burdeux in the guyse of a pylgreme to se the fayre lady Esclaramonde, he retournyd Capitulo .lxxxix. to Vyen.

Raoul in his disguise dines with Huon and Esclaramonde.



Fter that Huon had longe deuysed ²⁴with Raoull / he wasshed & sate downe to dyner, & the duches his wyfe by him / then Huon commaunded that at the ende of the table, ryght before ²⁸his table, Raoull the pylgreme to be set, &⁷ was well serued / but Raoull hadde lytell care other of mete⁸ or drynke, for his thought was of another

¹⁻¹ after mother. ² the. ³ that.

⁴ the money the which I had. ⁵ had. ⁶ vnto.

⁷ there he. ⁸ Fol. lxxvii. back, col. 2.

mater wherupon he sore studied / for before him he
 saw the noble duches Esclaramonde, of whom he was
 so amourous that he coude not withdraw his eyen fro
 4 her / for the more he beheld her the more he was
 enbrased with¹ loue / he thought he neuer sawe before
 soo fayre a lady in all his lyfe / so that for the grete
 beaute that was in her / he chaunged often tymes his
 8 coloure, but it coude not be perceyued by cause he was
 so blacke & foule with rubbyng of certeyn herbes / &
 he sayd to² him selfe / that who so euer had suche a
 lady to his wyfe myght wel make auaunt to be the
 12 happyest man of y^e worlde,³ that myght⁴ haue his
 pastyme with so fayre a lady / & sayd,⁵ by the lorde
 that fourmed him / though he sholde be dampned in
 hell for euer / he wold slee Huon & haue his wyfe in
 16 maryage, & all Huons londes to be his for euer. Alas,
 that it had not pleased our lord god that at that⁶ houre
 Huon might haue knowen the treason of Raoull / he
 sholde then haue bought it ful derely. When y^e
 20 traytour had eten and made good chere / Huon gaue
 hym⁷ gowne / shyrte / hosen & shoes / & money for
 his dyspence / Raoull toke it, he durst not refuse it,
 but thanked Huon / & so toke his leue & departed, he
 24 durst no lenger tary for fere of knowlege / & as soone
 as he coude he departed out of the towne / of his
 iourneys I wyll make no longe rehersall / but he
 laboured so longe that he aryued at Vien; then he
 28 went to his palays, where as he was well receyued of
 his lordes / & they laughed when they sawe hym in
 that apparell / then within a whyle after he made hym
 redy, & his men, who were a grete nombre, & so
 32 departyd fro Vyen, & toke the way to Mayence.
 When his vncke, the emperoure of almayne, was aduertysed
 of his comynge / he wente & met hym without

His love for the
fair lady grows
apace,

and he swears to
slay Huon and
make her his own
wife.

Huon, however,
gives him
clothing and
money,

and he journeys
back to Vienna.

Soon afterwards
he leaves Vienna
for Mayence.

¹ her. ² within. ³ euen he. ⁴ but. ⁵ swore.
⁶ this. ⁷ a.

His uncle, the
Kemper of
Germany,
welcomes him
warmly.

y^e towne to do hym the more honour, & when he saw hym he was ioyefull, & kyssed hym & sayd, 'fayre nephew, I am glad of your ¹comynge; I haue longe desyred to se you.' y^e good emperour knew nothyng⁴ of y^e treason *that* his nephew had purchased agaynst Huon of Burdeux / for yf he had knowen it / to haue dyed in the quarel he wolde neuer haue consented to *that* treason. thus hande in hande themperour & his ⁸ nephew Raoull entred *with* grete ioye in to y^e cyte of Mayence, where as they were hyghly receyued / grete ioy was made at theyr comynge; moch people were in the towne, come thyder to iust & tourney, and ¹² many other to beholde the tryumphe. Now let vs speke of Huon of Burdeux.

A tournament is
arranged.

¶ How duke Huon toke leue of the duches his wyfe, & how he aryued at Mayence & ¹⁶ went to the palays. Capitulo .lxxxx.

Huon leaves
Bordeaux for the
tournament at
Mayence.



¶ Hen Huon saw his tyme to departe fro Burdeux to go to y^e turney to ²Mayence, he made redy his trayn, & toke *with* ²⁰ him .x.M. men of armes for the garde of his parson of ³the best horse men in all his countre / then he toke his leue of y^e fayre Esclaramonde his wyfe, who began sore to wepe when she saw ²⁴ his departure / ryght swetly they kyssed togyther at theyr departyng / then he toke his hors & he & his company departed fro Burdeux / & rested not tyll ⁴he cam to Coleyn on y^e ryne, ther he taryed .ii. dayes to ²⁸ refresshe him, & on ⁵y^e .iii. day he armed him ⁶& called his company before him, & said, 'syrs, I wyl take leue of you al, for none of you shal go *with* me. be nothyng abashed / for he *that* alwayes hath saued me ³²

He is strongly
guarded at his
departure,

but he leaves his
companions at
Cologne, and
proceeds alone.

¹ Fol. lxviii. col. 1.
⁴ vntill.

² at.
⁵ vpon.

³ Fol. lxviii. col. 2.
⁶ selfe.

out of all perelles wyll not forsake me at this tyme /
 when his men herde him they had grete meruayle /
that he wolde take his vyage alone, & he said to¹ them,
 4 ' syrs, haue no doute of me *that*² I shal³ dye tyll⁴ myn
 hour be come' / they of Coleyn enquiryed nothyng of
 theyr estate, for as then there was no warre, & they
 byleued *that* they wolde go to the tourney / when his
 8 lordes saw he wold⁵ go alone,⁵ they were sory *that* he
 wold go to the tourney alone, and sayd one to another,
 ' we fere gretly he shall neuer returne agayne / & we
 shall neuer haue suche another mayster agayne' / ' syrs,'
 12 quod Huon, ' ye shall not nede to take ony sorowe
 for me / for certaynly I knowe well yf ony peryllous
 besynes sholde come to me, *that* I shold be ayded by
 kyng Oberon' / but he neded not to haue sayd so, for
 16 when kyng Oberon departed fro him, he bad him not
 to trust vpon ony ayde fro him, & therfore Huon was a
 fole, & yll aduysed to truste theron, or to vndertake so
 peryllous an enterpryce as he dyde, wherby he was in
 20 grete peryll of dethe, as ye shall here⁶ after.

Huon's men-at-
 arms marvel at
 his resolve.

Huon puts vain
 trust in king
 Oberon.

¶ When Huon was redy he lepte on⁷ his horse
 without ony styrrop, clene armed as he was, & after
 stretched him so in his styropes that y⁸ lethers
 24 streyned out thre fyngers; he was apusaunte knyght,
 armed or vnarmed, & gretly to be fered / he toke leue
 of his men & left them wepyng in y⁸ cite of Coleyn /
 then he rode towardes y⁸ cite⁹ of Mayence; ¹⁰ so longe
 28 he rode *that* he had a syght of the cyte, & then he sawe
 aboute in the medow many tentes & ryche paulyons,
 pyght vp with pomelles of fyne golde shynyng agaynst
 the sonne / Huon behelde them well, & so passed forth
 32 & entred in to the cite, where as he sawe euery strete full
 of knyghtes & squyers abydyng¹¹ y⁸ daye of¹² turney

The knight rides
 on to Mayence,

1 vnto. 2 for. 3 not. 4 vntill. 5-5 thus depart.
 6 here. 7 vpon. 8 that. 9 Fol. lxxviii. back, col. 1.
 10 and. 11 there vntill. 12 the.

and arrives at the palace where the Emperor and his nephew are staying.

Huon passed forth tyl¹ he came to y^e palays, where as he founde themperour & his nephew raoul, whom Huon loued but lytel, as he shewyd wel shortly after, as ye shal here / when Huon was come before the palays he ⁴ sawe themperour & Raoull his nephew goynge vp y^e stayres, then Huon met *with* a gret almayn, & sayd to him, 'frende, I pray *thee* shew me what be yonder two prynces *that* goth vp y^e stayres, & that so moch ⁸ honour is done to them.' / 'sir,' quod he, 'y^e fyrst is themperour, & he *that* foloweth is his nephew, duke Raoull / he was sone to themperours brother / the turney *that* shall be made is done for the loue of him, & at his ¹² request, & after the tourney he thynketh to mary a grete lady, whose name shall not be knowen tyll the turney be done' / when Huon herde *that* he blushed in the face for the gret yre *that* he was in, for he knew ¹⁶ wel *that* Raoull, if he coude fynde y^e meanes, ² he wyll² haue fro him his wyfe the fayre Esclaramonde / but he promysed in his mynde that fyrst he sholde derely by her / 'frende,' quod Huon, 'I desyre you³ do so ²⁰ moche for me as to holde my horse tyl¹ I returne agayne out of the hal, & *that* I haue spoken *with* y^e emperour & with his lordes / 'syr,' quod the squyer with a good wyll, 'I shall here holde your hors tyll¹ ye ²⁴ come' / now god ayde Huon, for or⁴ he myght retourne he was in grete peryll of deth, as ye shal here.

Duke Raoul, he learns, is looking forward to marrying some great lady.

Huon knows of his design on his wife,

and enters the hall of the palace.

¶ How Huon slew duke Raoul in the presence of themperour syttyng at his ²⁸ table / and of the meruayles ⁵that he dyd, & how *in* the chase that was made after him he strake downe themperour and wanne his good horse. Capitulo lxxxxi. 32

¹ vntill. ²⁻³ would. ³ to. ⁴ ere.

⁵ Fol. lxviii. back, col. 2.



Uon, who was full of yre & dys-
 pleasure, went vp in to the palays &
 came in to y^e hall, where as he founde
 moche¹ peple; there was themperour,
 who had² wasshed his handes, &
 was set at the table / Huon preased
 forth before the table *with* his swerde in his hande, &
 8 sayd, 'noble emperoure, I coniure the by y^e grete vertu
 deuyne, & by your³ parte of paradyce, &⁴ that your
 soule⁵ to be dampned yf case be that ye say not the
 trouth & gyue trewe iugement *with* out falshode, nor
 12 to spare to say the trouth for no man luyngge, though
 he be your nere⁶ parent' / 'frende,' quod themperour,
 'say your pleasure, & I shall answere you' / 'sir,'
 quod Huon, 'yf ye had⁷ weddyd a lady, & loue her
 16 derely, & *that* she be fayre / good / swete / & sage / &
 replete *with* all good vertues / & *that* ye knowe surely
that she loueth you entyrelly as a good true wyfe ought
 to loue her lord & husbonde, & then a traytoure
 20 pryuely to purchase your dethe for loue of your wyfe /
 & yf by aduenture after ye fynde him in y^e felde /
 or in towne, medowe / or wood / in palays / or in hall,
 & *that* ye myght accomplysse your thought & your
 24 desyre agaynst the same traytour who dyd purchase
 the sayd treason agaynst you / I demaunde then of you
 yf ye wolde slee him or not?' / 'frende,' quod
 themperour, 'ye haue coniured me; I shall answere you
 28 to the trouthe / not for y^e valewe of x cytes I wyll not
 lye /⁸ knowe for trouth yf I had a wyfe, such⁹ one as
 ye speke of / adorned *with* such fayre vertues,¹⁰ wherof
 there be many suche / how be it, yf I had suche one as
 32 ye resyte, & that I knewe surely that she loued me
 enterly / then¹¹ yf I knewe any man luyngge that wolde

Huon lays his
 case before
 the Emperor,
 although he omits
 all names.

The Emperor
 declares that any
 traitor pursuing
 a wife who dearly
 loves, and is
 dearly loved by
 her husband, is
 worthy of death
 wheresoever he
 may be found.

¹ many. ² newly. ³ hopefull. ⁴ or. ⁵ is.
⁶ nearest. ⁷ haue. ⁸ therefore. ⁹ a. ¹⁰ and.
¹¹ Fol. lxxviii. col. 1 (this should be lxxix, lxxviii repeated).

purchase me suche a treason / thoughte he were my nere
parent, yf I myght fynde him, in what soeuer place it
were ¹in¹, and though I shold be slayne in the quarell,
there shold nother² chyrche,³ aultre, ¹nor crucyfyx¹ ⁴
that sholde saue his lyfe / but that with my two handes
I shold slee him; and also my herte sholde serue me
further / that after I hadde slayne hym / I wolde
drawe out his herte out of his body, and ete it for ⁸
dyspyte.' When Huon herde the emperour, he sayd /
'o, ryght noble and vertuous emperoure / iust and
trewe iugement ye haue gyuen / the which I repeale
not / but I shall shewe you what hath moued me to ¹²
demaunde of you this iugement / yf suche a case sholde
a⁴ fallen to⁵ you / and, syr, to y^o entent that ye shall
know y^e trouthe what hath me moued thus to do / ¹syr,¹
ye may se here before you he that wolde do⁶ lyke case ¹⁶
agaynst me, which is your neuewe Raoul / who hath
purchased my deth lyke a cruell and a false traytoure,
to the entent to haue Esclaramonde my wyfe, and all
myne herytages / the iugement that ye haue gyuen is ²⁰
iust and trewe / ye shall neuer be blamed in any
courte / but ye shall therin be named a noble prynce /
and therefore, syr, ⁷I haue founde⁷ so nere me ¹he¹ that
purchaseth⁸ my dethe & shame / I sholde neuer be ²⁴
worthy to appere in any prynces courte without I were
reuenged of hym / and I had rather dye then to forbere
him any lenger' / ther with he drew his swerde / ⁹when
Raoull sawe the clerenes of the swerde he was a frayde, ²⁸
bycause he was vnarmed / how be it, he thought that
Huon wolde not haue ben so hardy as to do hym any
hurte in the presence of his vncle the emperoure; but
when he sawe that Huon dyde lyft vp his swerde to ³²
stryke hym, he was in greate fere, and fledde to the
Emperoure to saue his lyfe / but Huon parceyued hym

Huon then
accuses Raoul of
working evil
against him and
his wife,

and drawing his
sword, cuts off
Raoul's head.

1-1 omitted. 2 be. 3 nor. 4 haue. 5 vnto.
6 in. 7-7 hauing found him. 8 for. 9 and.

so quyc¹kely that he strake hym with a reuerse² in
 suche wyse that he strake of his heed from his sholders,
 and the body fell downe before the Emperoure / and
 4 the heed fell on³ the table in the dysshe before the
 Emperoure, wherof he hadde great doloure / 'god gyue
 me good lucke,' quod Huon ; 'this traytoure shall neuer
 be amorous of my wyfe,⁴ I am sure ynough of hym.'

8 The emperoure, who satte at the table, hadde grete
 sorowe at his herte when he sawe his neuewe deed
 before hym / then he cryed alowde and sayde, 'Syr,
 ye my barons, loke that this knyght scape you not ; I
 12 shall neuer ete nor drynke tyll⁵ I se hym hanged. I
 sholde haue greate sorowe at my herte yf he sholde
 escape.'

The Emperour is
 greatly grieved to
 see his nephew
 slain,

and bids his
 guards seize
 Huon.

Huon vnderstode him wel, and fered hym but lytell /
 16 but with his swerde he layde on rounde aboute hym
 and strake of armes, handes, and legges, so that there
 was none so hardy that durst approche nere to hym ; he
 slewe so many that it was ferefull to beholde hym /
 20 within a shorte space he hadde slayne mo then eyght
 and twenty / and the emperoure was in suche fere that
 he wyst not how to saue himselfe for the grete
 meruayles that he sawe Huon doo / he douted bycause
 24 he was vnarmed / and Huon cryed & sayd, 'traytours,
 I doute you nothyng.' then on all partyes Almayns
 & Bauyers assayled Huon / but he defended hym⁶ by
 suche force and puyssaunce, that by the murder that
 28 he made the bloode ranne vpon y^o pauement lyke a
 ryuer / Huon might haue taryed to longe, for the
 emperoure and his men wente and armed theym / and
 Huon, who sawe well that he coulde not longe endure
 32 without⁷ paryll of dethe / strykyng with his swerde
 rounde aboute hym / he withdrew backe downe the
 stayres of the palayes, and none durst approche nere

Huon is furious,
 and slays twenty-
 eight of the men
 who lay hands on
 him.

After much
 bloodshed, Huon
 makes his escape.

¹ Fol. lxxviii. col. 2. ² stroke. ³ vpon. ⁴ for now.
⁵ vntill. ⁶ himself. ⁷ great.

him bycause they were vnarmed, and for feere of him. Huon, by his hye prowes for al his ¹enemyes, came to² his horse and mountyd on³ hym, and so yssued out / and there was a knyght called Galeram, who was cosyn ⁴germayn to duke Raoul, and he was clene armed and mounted on a good horse / and he folowed Huon, and sayde, ‘⁴horeson and thefe,⁴ thou hast slayn duke Raoull, my cosyn ; without *thou* tourne to² me I shall ⁸stryke the behynde.’ When Huon herde hym he sware he had rather dye then to refuse too tourne too² hym / soo⁵ he tourned, and they couched theyr speres / and mette so fyersly togider that they gaue eche other ¹²meruaylous⁶ strokes / Galerames spere brake all to peces / and Huon, who had employed all his force and vertu, strake Galeram on³ the shelde with his spere / the whiche was bygge and stronge / soo that Galeram ¹⁶fell out of the⁷ sadle so rudely that in the fall he brake his necke, and so lay deed on³ the erth ; & Huon, who thought he had not ben deed, returned agayne to hym / but when he sawe that he stered not / he departed ²⁰thense / but he taryed very longe / for he sawe well he was closed in rounde aboute, and sawe wel without god had pyte of hym he was not lyke to scape without deth or taken prysoner / they cast on hym dartes and ²⁴swerdes ; one with a sharpe swerde cam to² hym and gaue hym a grete stroke / but his ⁸harneys⁸ saued his lyfe, for all the strokes that he⁹ receyued he neuer remoued out of his sadell. When Huon saw in what ²⁸daunger he was in¹⁰ / he called vpon oure¹¹ lorde god, humbly prayenge hym to delyuer hym out of that paryll / with his swerde he dyde meruayles / he slewe and claue hedes to the brayne ;¹² he semed rather a ³²

A cousin of Raoul challenges him on leaving the palace.

They fight together fiercely,

but the German falls from his saddle, and is killed.

Huon is beset on all sides,

and does marvels with his sword.

¹ Fol. lxxviii. back, col. 1. ² vnto. ³ vpon.
⁴⁻⁴ Abide, Villaine. ⁵ then. ⁶ great. ⁷ his.
⁸⁻⁸ good armour. ⁹ had. ¹⁰ omitted.
¹¹ the. ¹² that.

spyryte of hell then a man, for he that had sene hym
 wolde haue sayde that he had ben noo mortall man / he
 sawe passe by hym a knyght of Almayne / called syr
 4 Hans Sperguer / as he passed by / Huon gaue hym
 suche a stroke that he claue hym¹ to the gyrdell, wherof
 the Almaynes were so abashed that none durst
 approche nere to hym, they fered him so² sore. Alas
 8 that his men at Coleyne had not knowen what case he
 was in / they were to³ farre of / Huon, who fared lyke He attacks his
enemies like a
wild boar,
 a wyld boore; he layde on rounde aboute hym so that
 his swerde was all bloody of y^e men that he had slayne
 12 and maymed / they cast dartes at him, so that at last
 his horse was slayne vnder hym, wher of he was sorow- but his horse
is killed under
him.
 full; how be it, lyke a coragious knyght, with his
 swerde he⁴ foughte valyauntly with his enemyes /⁵ he
 16 sawe where the erle of Seyne com to hym to haue
 stryken hym with his swerde, but Huon mette with²
 hym so hastily that he had no layser to stryke hym,
 and Huon gaue hym suche a stroke that his helme
 20 coude not saue his lyfe / for Huons swerde entred in
 to his brayne, and so fell downe deed amonge the horse
 fete / Huon, who was quycke and experte, toke the deed He soon obtains
another horse,
 knyghtes horse and lept vpon hym / and when he sawe
 24 that he was new horsed agayne he was ioyfull, and
 then he was able to departe in the spyte of all² his and rides away.
 enemies / but themperour, who had gret sorow at his
 herte for the deth of his neuew Raoull, made grete
 28 haste after Huon with .x. thousande men with hym, The Emperour
pursues with ten
thousand men,
 and so came fro Mayence⁶ on the sporres, desyryng to
 ouertake Huon / and so rode on before his men, for his
 horse was so good *that* he wold rynne as fast as a and follows as
fast as a bird
flies.
 32 byrde coude flye / in al y^e world there was no horse
 lyke to² hym / the emperoure on this horse folowed
 Huon / & as he rode he sawe all the waye deed men lye

¹ Fol. lxxviii, back, col. 2. ² omitted. ³ so.

⁴ still. ⁵ and. ⁶ all.

Huon is
overtaken,

and the Emperor
vows his death.

The knight turns
to fight with his
enemy.

The Emperor is
stricken to earth,

and Huon, seizing
his swift horse,
takes to flight.

The Germans
find their
sovereign like to
die,

that Huon had slayne / he sporred his horse that anone
he ouer toke Huon, and sayd / 'thou traytoure, tourne
thy shelde towards me, or elles my spere shall go
through thy body, for y^e sorowe that lyeth at my herte 4
for loue of my neuewe, whom thou hast slayne, con-
strayneth me to make hast to be reuenged ¹vpon² thee,
nor I shal neuer haue ioy at my hert tyl³ I haue slayne
the / moche it greueth me that I am constrained to 8
slee the with my spere, for I had rather hange the.'
When Huon herde themperour, who was so nere hym,
and saw howe he was mounted on so good a horse / he
called vpon our lorde god, and desyred hym of hys 12
grace to ayde hym to conquere that horse / and when
he sawe that the emperour was farre before his men /
he tourned his horse heed towards the emperoure,
and couched his spere / and the emperour came agaynst 16
hym lyke the tempest / and they mette togyder so
rudely that theyr sheldes⁴ were persed, so that the
emperours spere brake all to shyuers / and Huons spere,
which⁵ was⁶ rude and stronge,⁷ strake the emperour 20
with suche pyssaunce that he was stryken fro his
horse to the erth sore astonyed, so that he wyst not
where he was / and Huon, who had greate desyre to
haue the emperours horse, alyghtyd quykely fro his 24
owne horse, and toke the emperours horse and mounted
on hym, and was therof ryght ioyous / then he sayde
to hymselfe that he douted not them all / he strake the
good horse with the sporres, and founde hym quycke 28
and lyght vnder hym / then he lefte the emperoure
lyenge on the erth, and⁸ was not⁹ contente that he was
soo soone socoured / for yf the Almaynes hadde not
quykely come Huon had slayne him /¹⁰ when the 32
Almayns cam to theyr lord, and founde hym lyeng on

¹ Fol. lxix, col. 1. ² of. ³ vntill. ⁴ speares.

⁵ omitted. ⁶ so. ⁷ that he. ⁸ who.

⁹ a little. ¹⁰ but.

the erth, they beleued¹ he had ben deed / they began
to make grete sorow, and the emperour, who was come but he revives,
agayne to hym selfe, sayde / 'syr, thanked be god I
4 fele no hurte but I maye well ryde / but I haue grete
sorowe at my herte that Huon hath thus ledde awaye and grieues for
the loss of his
horse.
my good horse, and is scaped awaye, and also hathe
slayne my two neuwes / but, syrs, I counsell you
8 that none folowe hym, for it shall be but a loste ²tyme
for the good horse that is vnder hym, and he that is on
hym is³ valyaunt in armes /⁴ he is gretely to be doutyd /
therefore I counsell let vs retourne backe agayne / for
12 we may lose more then we shall wyne / but by the
grace of god, or⁵ it be thre monethes past, I shall
assemble suche a nombre of men that the valays and
mountaynes shall be full of men / then wyll I goo to
16 the cyte of Burdeux, and wyll not departe thens tyll I
haue wonne it, and yf I may gette Huon I shall make
hym dye of an yll⁶ deth, & shall take and wast all
his londes.'

The Emperor
declares that
within three
months Bordeaux
will be in his
hands.

* * * * *

20 ¶ How Huon, after⁷ he was mounted on⁸ the
emperours good horse, he aryued at Coleyne,
where as⁹ he founde his men, and how he
departyd thense / and of the emperoure
24 who lay ¹⁰in a busschement¹⁰ in a wode,
abydyng¹¹ to haue slayne Huon.

Capitulo .lxxxii. [= xcii.]

¹ verily. ² Fol. lxix, col. 2. ³ so. ⁴ that.
⁵ ere. ⁶ euill. ⁷ that. ⁸ vpon. ⁹ omitted.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ enambushed ¹¹ there.



Hus as ye haue herde, Huon departed with y^e emperours good horse and lefte the emperour lyenge on the erth, who commaunded his barons to returne ⁴ backe & not to folowe Huon any further / ther with there cam to the emperour a knyght called Godun, he was borne at Norembrege, & he sayde / 'syr, yf ye wyll beleue me ⁸ & do after my counsell ye shall do otherwyse / ye shall retourne to Mayence this night & ordayne foure ^{C¹} of suche men as ye haue here / & sende them with in two legees of Coleyn, on y^e hye way in to Fraunce, & there ¹² ye shall fynde a lytell wood, ²and there lette them lye ³in a bushhement³ tyll Huon passe by them / for I knowe well he wyll go straye to Coleyne this nyght, & lodge in a frenche mans house that dwelleth there / ¹⁶ and in the mornynge surely he wyll departe thens and so passe by the said bushhement, so that it shall not be possyble to saue hym selfe alone / but other he shalbe slayne or taken.' When the emperoure herde Godun, ²⁰ he sayde / 'syr, ye haue gyuen me good counsell, and this is lykely to be done / but it were conuenyent to sende mo then foure thousande / for the grete desyre that I haue to gete hym in to my handes constreyneth ²⁴ me to cause hym to be taken, to the entent to be reuenged of hym / therefore I wolde go myselfe and take with me x thousande men, and shall goo and lye in the place that ye haue apoynted / for I shall neuer ²⁸ haue parfyte ioye at my herte as longe as Huon is alyue / for he hath caused moch sorowe at my herte for the deth of my two neuewes, whom so pyteously he hath slayne. let vs take oure waye a⁴ two legees besyde ³² Coleyne, nerer we wyll not approche, too the entent that our comynge be not knowen' / then he chase out

A knight proposes that an ambush shall be prepared in a little wood near Cologne,

and that Huon be there slain on his journey.

The Emperor rejoices in this counsel,

and declares that he, with ten thousand men, will carry out the plan.

¹ Thousand. ² Fol. lxix. back, col. 1.

³⁻³ enambushed. ⁴ about.

- .x. thousande of the moost valyauntes men in his company, & the rest he sent backe to Mayence. Thus the emperour rode forth and rode so longe that daye & 4 nyghte / that an houre, or it was daye, he came to the said wode, & there layde his busschement.¹ And Huon rode² after he was departed fro themperour that late in the euenyng he came to Coleyne, wher as he was 8 receyued of his men with grete ioye / then Gerames said, 'syr, I requyre you shewe vs of your aduentures' / then Huon shewed them euery thyng, & the maner 12 Mayence, & how he was pursued / and how he wanne theemperours good horse / then³ Gerames & all the other had gret ioye, and ⁴thanked god of his fayre aduenture, & had grete meruayle howe he scaped / but they knewe 16 nothyng what the emperour was aboute to do, nor that he was in the woode abydyng⁵ for Huon / that nyght Huon and his company were at Coleyne makynge good chere / ⁶the nexte mornynge they herd masse⁷ / then 20 they mounted on theyr horses and yssued out of the towne ; they were to y^o nombre of .xiii. M. hardy fyghtynge men. and, when they were out in the feldes, Huon, lyke a good man of warre, sayd / 'syr, I desyre you 24 let vs kepe togyther and ryde lyke men of warre, to the entent that we be not sodeynly taken ;' and so they dyde / the daye was fayre & clere ; they myght well be parceyued a farre of / as they were by the emperour of 28 Almain, who lay ⁸in a busschement⁸ for Huon. the emperoure spyed them fyrst, and sayd to his company / 'syr, yonder⁹ I se moche¹⁰ people comynge ¹¹to vs warde¹¹ / they seme¹² men well experte in armes ; neuer 32 byleue me but they be frenche men, and he *that* is theyr

The Emperor reaches the little wood near Cologne, and lies in ambush.

Huon meets his companions again at Cologne,

and tells them his adventures.

The following morning Huon, with thirteen thousand men, leaves the city.

The Emperor sees them from afar approaching the wood,

¹ ambush. ² so. ³ wherat. ⁴ Fol. lxix. back, col. 2.
⁵ there. ⁶ and. ⁷ seruice. ⁸⁻⁸ enambushed.
⁹ a farre off. ¹⁰ many. ¹¹⁻¹¹ towarde vs.
¹² vnto me.

and marvels at
the number of
armed men.

He fears to do
battle with Huon
and his troops,

but urges his own
men to bear
themselves
bravely.

captayne is Huon of Burdeux / he is not come hyther
lyke a small parsonage, but he is hyghly accompanied
lyke a grete and a myghty prynce. I se well he is
valyaunt by that he hathe doone; he is so noble and 4
hardy that none may be compared to hym. ye haue
well sene howe *that* he all alone came in to my palayes,
and there slewe my neuewe duke Raoull, wher with my
herte is in grete dyspleasure / he is gretely to be 8
douted, for without god helpe vs we shall haue ynoughe
to doo with hym / wolde to god that he and I were at
accordement & agreed / for he is so noble and so
valyaunt that he fereth no man / ye haue well sene syn 12
he departed fro Mayence he hathe slayne mo then .xl.
of my men, and hath borne me to the erthe / and he
hath taken fro me my good horse, wherby he maye be
well assured *that* there is no man shall take hym yf he 16
¹be on² his backe / how be it, we must set on² hym,
for my herte shall neuer be in ease as long as he lyueth /
therefore, *sirs*, I desyre you euery man this day shewe
the loue that ye bere to³ me & the saue garde of youre 20
lyues / for to flye away auayleth not / therefore, *syrs*,
set on togyther, and do so that we may haue the fyrst
crye.⁴



¶ Of the gret batayle within two legees of 24
Coleyne bytwene the emperour of Almayn
& Huon of Burdeux, & of the trewes that
was taken bytwene them.

Ca. .lxxxiii. [= xciii.] 28

¹ Fol. lxx. col. 1.

² vppon.

³ vnto.

⁴ aduantage.



4 Von, who rode before his barons
 deuysynge with olde Gerames, re-
 garded on his ryght hande towards
 the lytel wood;¹ he sawe in the
 wood grete clerenesse by reason of
 the sonne shynynge on the helmes
 and on the spere poyntes, wherby he perceyued clerely²
 8 that ther was moch people hyden in the wood / he
 shewed them to ³Gerames and to his other com̃pany /
 and sayd, 'syrs, be in a suerte *that* without batayle we
 can not scape / here is themperour who lyeth in awayte
 12 for vs. I desyre you let vs do so that he shall haue no
 cause too make ony auaunt of vs / yonder ye may se
 them how they set them selfe *in* ordre to abyde vs,
 therefore let vs quyckly set on them' / & soo they dyd
 16 in suche wyse that with⁴ rynnynge of theyr horses y^e
 erth trymbled, & the sonne lost his lyght by reason of
 the pouder that rose vp in to the ayre on⁵ both partes /
 Huon, who ranne before on his pusaunt horse / behelde
 20 Godun, who was formost of⁶ his company; he ranne at
 hym with a strong spere, so that he ran hym clene
 through the body so that he fel downe deed⁷ to the
 erth / & with the same spere Huon met Crassyn
 24 polynger who bare themperours baner / Huon strake him
 so fyersly that he bare horse & man & baner al to the
 erth,⁸ wherof the almayns and Bauyers were sorowfull /
 Huon dyde soo moche or⁹ his spere was broken that he
 28 fyrst bare fyue to the erth so that they hadde no power
 after to releue them selfe / ther were many speres
 broken, and many a knyghte borne to the erth that¹
 there dyed among y^e hors fete / for the father coude
 32 not helpe the sone / nor the sone coude not helpe the
 father / and many an horse ranne a brode in the felde

Huon perceives
 his foemen in the
 wood,

and prepares his
 army for battle.

Huon made the
 first onset, and
 slew many valiant
 officers.

¹ and. ² plainly. ³ Fol. lxx. col. 2.
⁴ the very. ⁶ from. ⁶ in. ⁷ omitted.
 ⁸ ground. ⁹ ere.

and theyr maysters lyeng deed in the bloode and myre. Huon, who rode aboute in the batayle sleyng and woundynge his enemyes, behelde on his ryghte syde and sawe the erle Sauary sleyng many of them of 4
 Burdeux. 'A, good lorde,' quod Huon, 'yf yonder knyght reygne longe / he shall do me grete damage.' Then he rode to hym / & gaue hym suche a stroke with his swerde so that he strake of his shulder and 8
 arme so rudely that it fell vpon the erthe / so that for the greate payne that the erle Sauary endured he fell from his horse / ¹& there was slayne amonge the hors feete, wherof themperour, who was therby, was² ryght 12
 sorowfull when he saw another of his nephewes slayn / & sayd, 'a, Huon, of god be thou cursed, syn *thou* hast taken³ so many of my frendes ; I shall neuer haue ioye in my hert tyl I haue the in my handes to hange the' / 16
 'syr,' quod Huon, 'or⁴ ye haue taken me, ye are lyke to lese mo of your frendes, & beware of your selfe *that* ye come not in⁵ my handes / by youre nephewe Raoull ye haue all this damage, who by his falsenes thoughte to 20
 haue betrayed me & to haue had my wyfe / yf I haue slayne your nephewes and your men, I haue done it in defendyng myn owne body ; I say to you yf ye be not wel ware of me I shall brynge you to that poynt that 24
 it shall be harde for you to be caryed awaye in a lytter.' 'Huon,' quod the emperoure, 'the grete hate that I haue to the for the dethe of my nephewes, ⁶wherby I⁶ fele suche⁷ doloure at my herte that I had rather dye 28
 then that I sholde not be reuenged of the / therefore beware⁸ of me, for I shall nother ete nor drynke tyll I haue the other quycke or deed' / then they two wente backe to take theyr course togyther / but or⁴ they met 32
 y^o almayns came rynnynge thyther for⁹ fere that they hadde of lesynge of² theyr emperoure / and on the other

The Earl Savary works much havoc among the men of Bordeaux,

but Huon gives him a fatal wound.

Huon and the Emperor meet on the field of battle,

and bitterly reproach each other.

¹ Fol. lxx. back, col. 1. ² omitted. ³ slaine. ⁴ ere.
⁵ to. ⁶⁻⁶ makes me. ⁷ much. ⁸ thou. ⁹ the.

parte came thyther y^e olde Gerames, who fought so
 fyersly that whom soo euer he strake with a full stroke
 hadde no nede of ony surgyon ; and his company fayled
 4 not for theyr partes / and Huon with his good swerde
 opened the thycke prese, soo that the almayns¹ doutd
 hym. Huon with his noble chyualry caused his enemyes
 to recule backe halfe a bowe shotte / then there was a
 8 knyght of almayn sawe well that without some remedy
 were founde / the emperour & his company were lyke
 to be slayne ; he went out of the batayle as preuely as
 coude, and ronne on y^e sporres & rested not ²tyll he cam
 12 to Coleyne / then³ incontynent he rode to the prouostes
 house, & founde him in his house newly come fro
 masse / then y^e knight sayd to him / 'syr prouost, yf
 euer ye wyll se the emperour a lyue, cause the comons
 16 of this cyte to be armed, & come, & socoure themperour
 hastely / for when I cam from hym he had gret nede of
 ayde / ther is Huon of Burdeaux, who hath slayn thre of
 his nephewes, & this other day he was lodged in this
 20 cite. the emperour knoweth well ye knewe nothyng
 therof / for Huon had lodged his men in the suburbes,
 & in other lytell houses, bycause he wolde not be
 perceyued / syr prouost, make hast in this besynes' /
 24 when the prouost herd what daunger themperoure was
 in, he sowned⁴ the watch belle & made to be cryed in
 euery strete *that* euery man that was able to bere her-
 neys⁵ sholde arme them / & to⁶ go out in to the felde
 28 to socoure themperoure, who was in grete daunger of
 his lyfe / when the burgesses of the towne herde that
 crye euery man armed them as well as they coude / some
 were harneysed behynde, & some in a Jacke all smoked,
 32 and with staues & other wepens / what a fote & a
 horse backe, there went out of y^e cyte a⁶ .xx. M. men /
 yf ye had sene y^e horsemen, ye wolde haue laughed at

Old Gerames
fights with
youthful vigour.

A German, in
fear for the
Emperor's safety,

goes to the
provost of
Cologne, and begs
him arm the
burghers.

The watch bell
at Cologne is
sounded.

The burghers arm
in haste and leave
the city, twenty
thousand strong.

¹ greatly. ³ Fol. lxx. back, col. 2. ⁵ where.
⁴ sounded. ⁶ armes. ⁶ omitted.

Very rude is their
equipment.

The Emperor,
after losing
nearly all his men
in the battle,

seeks out Huon,

and challenges
him.

The duel begins.

The Emperor is
slung heavily to
the earth, and
lies in a swoon.

them, for it semed they were set a¹ horse backe in dyspyte / there was neuer sene so rude ²& foule a sorte² / it was no meruayle / for they ³hadde not ben³ accustomed to ryde in harneys / the prouost rode⁴ 4 before, and exorted theym to do theyr deuours, so they toke the⁵ way to come to the batayle, where as Huon & his company dyde parte of theyr wylles. ⁶the emperour seyng that he began to lese his men and place, he rode ⁸serchyng in the batayle for duke Huon / where as he founde by aduenture Huon, who had⁷ newly slayn⁸ the Emperoures seneschall. When that the Emperoure sawe hym slayne, he was ryght sorowful, & in⁹ grete ¹²rage, then¹⁰ cryed to ¹¹Huon, and said / 'thou knyghte that neuer arte satsyfied to shedde the bloode of my men to abate my lygnage and force, I pray the turne thy shelde to¹² me, for yf thou knewest the grete hate that ¹⁶I ¹³haue to¹³ the thou woldest neuer appere before me.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I ¹⁴haue grete¹⁴ meruayle that ye so sore hate me & haue taryed so long ¹⁵to be reuenged¹⁵ / therefore, ¹⁴sir,¹⁴ beware ¹⁴of me¹⁴ / for yf I may¹⁶ I ²⁰shal¹⁷ sende you after your nephewes, whom ye say that ye loue so wel' / they toke their cours with grete & rude speres / & so cam togyther lyke y^e tempest, & met so rudely that y^e buckles of theyr harneys¹⁸ al to brast; ¹⁹24 themperoure spere brake all too peces / but Huons spere was bygge & rude²⁰ / ²¹he strake the emperour therwith¹⁴ by²² such pusaunce that the²³ spere ranne through his shoulder / so that themperoure fell to the ²⁸erth so rudely that with the fall he brake the bone of his thygh / wherby he was in suche doloure that he sowned / and when Huon sawe hym lye on the grounde

¹ on. ²⁻³ a company. ³⁻³ were not. ⁴ went.
⁵ their. ⁶ and. ⁷ then. ⁸ by aduenture. ⁹ a. ¹⁰ he.
¹¹ Fol. lxxii. col. 1 (this should be lxxi, which is omitted).
¹² vnto. ¹³⁻¹³ beare. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ omitted. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ for reuenge.
¹⁶ can. ¹⁷ will. ¹⁸ Armour. ¹⁹ and. ²⁰ stronge.
²¹ and therewith. ²² with. ²³ his.

he cam to hym with his swerde in his hande, and had¹ slayne him yf he had not ben socoured / but there came so many almayns, that whether Huon wolde
 4 or not, they toke² and bare³ the emperoure³ out of the felde, & layde hym in the wode, &⁴ demaunded of him how he dyd / 'syr,' quod he, 'I am sore hurte / for my thygh is broken, wherby I endure⁵ as moch doloure
 8 as⁵ I can abyde / but⁶ I trust as for deth I shall scape by the grace of god'⁶ / when they herde that they were⁷ ioyfull / and said, 'syr, knowe for trouthe⁸ youre men are sore abashed⁹ / for they be so¹⁰ opprest by Huon
 12 and his men / that we fere all your men shal¹¹ be slayne / we shall¹¹ go agayne to the batayle & leue some with you to¹² kepe your body'¹² / 'syr,'¹³ quod the emperour,¹⁴ 'your force nor your defence can¹⁵ auayle
 16 you nothyng¹⁶ agaynste Huon / nor agaynst his men. But I shall shewe you what ye shall do /¹⁷ sende quyckly to Huon and desyre¹⁸ of¹⁸ hym in my name to¹⁹ sease²⁰ fyghtyng²⁰,²⁰ and¹⁸ desyre hym¹⁸ that there maye be a
 20 truse hadde bytwene hym and me for the space of halfe a yere /²¹ in that space I trust²¹ to fynde some other treaty /¹⁸ so¹⁸ that he and I myghte be frendes / and yf he refuse this,²² I se none other remedy but that we shall
 24 be all slayne or taken, and then he wyll cause me to dye in some²³ pryson.' 'Syr,' quod his knyghtes, 'we shall doo your commaundement / but we fere sore that we shall not be herde.' 'Syr,' quod the emperoure, 'go
 28 to hym and do the best ye can.' Then they returned to y^c batayle, where as they founde there company redy

Huon would have slain the Emperor, had not the Germans come to his aid.

The Emperor bids his men beg of Huon a truce for half a year.

¹ would haue. ² the Emperour. ³⁻³ him.

⁴ then. ⁵⁻⁵ more greefe than.

⁶⁻⁶ but, as for death, I trust by the grace of god, I shall escape it.

⁷ all. ⁸ that. ⁹ discomfited. ¹⁰ sore. ¹¹ will.

¹²⁻¹² looke vnto your Maiestie. ¹³ Well. ¹⁴ but.

¹⁵ cannot. ¹⁶ anything. ¹⁷ ye shall. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ omitted.

¹⁹ Fol. lxxii. col. 2. ²⁰⁻²⁰ slaying of my men.

²¹⁻²¹ for within that time I hope. ²² then. ²³ noysome.

Messengers set
out to beg the
truce.

Huon willingly
accedes to the
request.

But, had he
continued the
murderous attack,
all his enemies
would have been
slain, and he
would have been
spared much
future trouble.

to fle away / for they were nere all slayne and taken /
the knyghtes fro themperoure came to Huon and desyred
hym in the name of the emperoure that he wolde sease
the batayle and ¹blowe the retreyte,¹ and they sholde² ⁴
do lykewyse in the same maner / and that there myght
be a ferme truse bytwene them for halfe a yere / and
in that season they trusted *that* some good wayes
sholde³ be founde that the emperoure and he myght be ⁸
good frendes togyther. 'Syr,' quod Huon / 'if the
emperour your mayster hadde me in that daunger /
that³ he is in / he wolde not suffre me to scape a lyue
for all y⁶ golde in the worlde / how be it, I am content ¹²
that he haue truse for halfe a yere / the which I shall
surely kepe on my parte / and yf I be assayled I shall
defende me / and yf so be that he come to Burdeux to
assayle me / by the helpe of god and my good frendes, ¹⁶
I shal doo the best that I can / But yf he wyll haue
peace with me & pardon me his dyspleasure / for the
dethe of his nephewes, I shall be redy to make peace /
and I shal make amendes for all wronges, though I was ²⁰
not the begynner.' Then Huon caused the retreyt to
be blowen,⁴ and in lykewyse so dyde the almayns
who had therof grete ioie; it came to them at a good
poynt / for or⁵ elles all hadde ben slayne or ⁶folye⁷ ²⁴
when he had the ouer⁸ hande⁹ that he pursued not¹⁰
his chase, for then he myghte haue hal an ende of
that warre, and nother shelde nor spere more broken /
where as after many a man was slayne, and was the ²⁸
cause that the cyte of Burdeux was lost & the fayre
Esclaramond taken & sette in pryson in the cyte
of Mayence, and Huon suffred so moche payn and
trouble / that no mortall man can shewe it / thus as ye ³²
haue herde Huon graunted the trewes, and soo bothe

1-1 sound the treatie. 2 would. 3 which.
4 sounded. 5 omitted. 6 Fol. lxxii. back, col. 1.
7 folied. 8 vpper. 9 now. 10 still.

partes withdrew / wherof themperour and his company
 were ryght ioyfull. Then Huon called his company / Huon tells his
 company how the
 truce is made.
 and shewed Gerames and his lordes how he had
 4 graunted trewes to the Emperour for halfe a yere / 'and
 therefore I charge you al not to breke the peace' / the
 Emperoure was glad when he herde it / for he knewe
 well that¹ he was² scaped a greate daunger. Then he
 8 charged all his men on payne of deth that they sholde
 not breke the trewes. 'And, syrs,' quod he, 'I pray
 you make redy a lytter that I myght³ be 'caryed to
 Coleyne / for the payne *that* I fele in my legge causeth
 12 all my body to tymblye / and when I come there
 I wyll tary tyll I be hole.' 'Syr,' quod his lordes,
 'your commaundement shall be done' / then they layde
 the Emperoure in a lytter, sore complaynyng the losse
 16 and dethe of his nephewes and lordes that were slayne,
 and his legge greued hym sore. Then Huon said
 to Gerames, 'syr, thanked be god we haue vaynquysshed
 the Emperoure & slayne many of his men / therfore it
 20 is good that we now returne to Burdeux. I haue gret
Huon longs to see
 Esclaramonde
 again.
 desyre to se my wyfe Esclaramonde / who thynkethe⁴
 longe for my comyng; I am sure she is sorowfull that
 I haue taryed thus⁵ long.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'yf ye
 24 haue grete desyre to returne, so hath all other of youre
 seruantes; they wold gladly se theyr wyues and
 chyl dren, and some to⁶ se theyr louers.'

7 ¶ How Huon graunted the trewes to the
 28 emperour, & how the prouost of Coleyne
 came and assayed Huon, not knowinge of
 any peace taken.

Capitulo .lxxxiiii.⁸ [= xciv.]

¹ omitted. ² had. ³ may. ⁴ thinking. ⁵ so.
⁶ would. ⁷ Fol. lxxii. back, col. 2. ⁸ lxxxiiii in text.



Huon sees the burghers of Cologne advancing towards him,

and suspects the Emperor of treachery.

The provost of Cologne exhorts the men to fight well.

Hen Huon vnderstode y^e olde Gerames, he hadde grete ioy / then he sounded the trompettes with suche brute *that* meruayle it was to here, and com- 4 maunded euery man to set forwarde towards Burdeux. Then he behelde on his ryght hande and saw *them* of Coleyne comyng in¹ grete nombre / they were well a² twenty thousande bur- 8 gesses and other / they came with baners dysplayde redy to fyght. When Huon sawe *them*, he had grete meruayle fro whens they sholde come so hastely. Then he sayde to his men / 'syrs, I perceyue clerely we be 12 betrayde, for yf I had wold³ the Emperour nor his men coude not haue scaped / he hath falsely betrayed me, syn vnder y^e colour of ⁴trewes they⁵ to set newly vpon me.' Thus Huon sayde by themperour without 16 cause, for he knew no thyng thereof, nor that any socoures sholde haue come to hym. 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'lette vs rest here and tarye tyll they come nerer to vs / than let vs sette on them with suche hast 20 that they shall not know what to do.' 'Syr,' quod his men, 'haue no dought we shall not fayle you for fere of any deth / we trust to slee so many that the erth shalbe couered with the deed bodyes of your 24 enemyes' / Huon ordred his batayle, and the prouost of Coleyne comfortyd his men, saynge, 'syrs, our emperour is dyscomfytyd by Huon and his men,⁶ who be yonder abydyng before vs / they wene⁷ to departe in 28 saue garde / but they haue no power so to do / for the moost parte of *them* are sore hurt, and there horses sore traunaylled, wherfore they shall the sooner be dyscomfytyd.' Than the prouost and his men ranne 32 quykely vpon Huon and his men / there began a feerse bataylle, wherin many a valyaunt man lay on the erth

¹ a. ² nere. ³ pleased. ⁴ Fol. lxxiii. col. 1.
⁵ come. ⁶ companie. ⁷ thinke.

deed / and at the¹ fyrst brunt ther wer so many slayne The attack is made, and the fight begins.
that y^e² felde was coueryd *wit*h deed & hurte³ men ;
 sum were ouerthrowen without any hurte,⁴ and yet
 4 they coude neuer asyse bycause of the⁵ prese of the
 horses that ranne⁶ ouer them. Huon, who was¹ full of
 yre bycause he⁷ thought that vnder the coloure of trewes
 he was assaylled / he ran⁸ at a knyght who had done
 8 ⁹gret damage⁹ among his men ; it was he *that* went to
 Coleyne for that socoures / and Huon strake hym clene Huon slays the knight who had summoned this new army,
 throw the bodye with his spere, so that he fell downe
 deed to the erth. Than Huon cryed his crye to gader¹⁰
 12 his men togyther / he layde on the ryght syde and on
 the lyft / so that he cut of armes and legges, and rasyd and fights furiously.
 helmes fro y^e hedes / he semyd rather a man of y^e fayrye
 than a mortall man. But he had myche to do / for his
 16 men, who had fought all y^e day, were sore trauaylled &
 wery ; how ¹¹be it, they defendyd them selues ryght
 valyauntly, & they¹² slew so many of the comons of
 Coleyne *that* y^e blode ran on the grounde in grete
 20 stremes / and themperour, who was issued out of the The Emperor,
 wood in his lytter, whan he came in to the felde / he
 herde the brute & crye of the batayle, wherwith he hearing the noise, is brought into the field,
 was sore abasshed. Than he demaundyd what noyse it
 24 myght be. ‘Syr,’ quod a knyght, ‘it is the good
 prouost of Coleyne, who hath brought with him the
 commons of the citie of Coleyne to ayde and socoure
 you.’ ‘Syr,’ quod themperour, ‘and he shal derely and is very wrathful with the prouost of Cologne.
 28 aby¹³ it / how be it, I thynke he knoweth not of the
 trewes that we haue taken with Huon / for and¹⁴ I knew
that he was aduertesyd therof, I shode cause hym to
 32 incontyent he goo to Huon too make amendes for his

1 verie. 2 whole. 3 maimed. 4 at all.
 5 grent. 6 did runne. 7 had. 8 fiercely.
 9-9 verie great hurt. 10 call. 11 Fol. lxxiii. col. 2.
 12 omitted. 13 buy. 14 if.

The provost
laments the losses
his men meet
with.

A knight, sent by
the Emperor, bids
him make amends
to Huon for
breaking the
truce.

The provost,
much abashed,
seeks out Huon,

and begs him
have mercy upon
him, for he knew
nought of the
truce.

trespas / and yf he wyll not do it I charge you incontynent¹ sle hym.' Whan themperour had made his commaundement to one of his knyghtes / he rode as fast as he myght to the prouost, who was ryght sorow- 4 full for that he hadde lost foure .M. of his comons, and the knyght slayne that came to hym. Than themperours knyght sayd, 'Syr prouost, ye haue done ryght yll / syn² ye haue broken the trewes that was made 8 betwen hym and Huon / yf the emperour may gette you ye shall neuer se fayre day more / without incontynent ye go to Huon and dele so with hym that he be content, so that no reproche be layde to the em- 12 perour' / whan the prouost and his company herde themperours commaundement, they were sore abashed, and reculed backe. And the prouost, who was in grete fere for that he had done / and desyrynge to accom- 16 plysse thempersours commaundement, strake his horse with the sporres, and restyd not tyll he had founde out duke Huon. Than he lyghtyd a fote, and toke his sworde, and sayd, 'A, ryght noble and vertues prynce, I 20 ³desyre the, in the honour of Jesu Cryst, haue pyte of⁴ me, and pardon me the iniurye *that* I haue done⁵ without the knowlege or lycence of themperour, who wyll cause me to dye a shamfull deth without ye pardone 24 me / for all I knew not of y^o trewes betwen you and y^o emperour / for I thought he was⁶ deed / syr, that⁷ I haue done was to thentent to rescue my ryghtfull lorde, and therby I haue lost this day moo then .iiii. .M. 28 burgesses and comons of the cyte of Coleyne, and y^o most parte of my best frendes, and therefore, syr, I pray you haue pyte of⁴ me, elles themperour wyll sle me or set me in perpetuall pryson.' 32

¹ to. ² seeing ³ Fol. lxxiii. back, col. 1. ⁴ on.
⁵ against you. ⁶ had beene. ⁷ which.

¶ How Huon aryued at Burdeux, and of the
 counsell of the rayre Esclaramonde his
 wyfe, the whiche he wolde not beleue nor
 4 folow. Capitulo lxxxv.



8 Han Huon vnderstode y^e prouost / he
 had gret pyte, & thought that he
 ought lyghtly¹ to pardon hym, seyng
 that that he had done was in a iust
 cause, syn² he was not aduertesyd of³
 trewes taken betwex themperour and hym. Than
 Huon aproched to the prouost, and sayd, 'frende, aryse
 12 vp, I pardon you; this trespas that ye haue done for
 your lorde is⁴ reasonable / syn ye knew no thyng of y^e
 trewes / ye haue done as a trew subyet ought to do to
 his lorde / I can not be angrye with you for it.'⁵ Than
 16 the prouost toke leue of Huon, & retournyd to them-
 perour, who as than was nere to Coleyne /⁶ Huon rode
 forth towards burdeux, and so on a wednesday to⁷
 dyner he entred in to Burdeux, where as he was
 20 receyued⁸ with grete solempnyte of the Burgesses, & of
 all the clergie of y^e cyte. Than he alyghtyd at his
 palays, where as he was by the duches Esclaramonde
 well receyued with grete ioy, and she demaundyd of
 24 hym yf he were hole and in good poynt.⁹ 'Fayre
 ladye,' quod Huon, 'thanked be our lord god, I am in
 good helth.' 'Syr,' quod she, 'of your comyng I am
 ryght ioyous / & I desyre you to shew me of your
 28 aduentures.' 'Dame,'¹⁰ quod Huon, 'know for trouthe
 I haue ben at Mayence, whereas I founde themperour,
 and with hym was duke Roaull his neuwe, who had
 cryed¹¹ a tournay; & bycause he was aduertesyd of my
 32 commyng, his entencyone was that yf he had founde me

Huon has pity
 on the prouost,

and pardons him.

Huon rides to
 Bordeaux.

Esclaramonde
 welcomes him
 warmly,

and he relates
 to her his
 adventures.

¹ in reason. ² and that. ³ the. ⁴ but. ⁵ the same.

⁶ and. ⁷ about. ⁸ Fol. lxxiii. back, col. 2.

⁹ estate. ¹⁰ Madame. ¹¹ proclaimed.

Huon continues
his narration.

there, He was¹ concludyd with his men to haue slayne
me / but by the grace of god I haue done so myche, that
in the presence of themperour his vncke, and before²
all them that were there present, I strake of his hede / 4
bycause he made his au aunt that as soone as he had
slayne me he wolde haue you to his wyfe / & also² all
myn herytage / & whan I had slayne hym I departyd
in hast fro³ Mayence / and it was not longe after but 8
that themperour folowed me with all his men, mountyd
vp on the good horse that ye haue sene, who is so good
that I beleue surely there is not suche another in all²
the worlde / and themperour, who had grete desyre to 12
reuenge the deth of his newew duke Raoull, auansyd
hym selfe a bowe shote before his companye, and cryed
after me with many iniuryous wordes. And whan I
saw that he was far of fro his men I tournyd towardes 16
hym, & ranne & bare hym to the erth / than I toke
the good horse and mountyd on hym, and lete myne
owne goo / and whan his men saw hym lyeng on the
erthe, they feryd lest he had been deed / they assem- 20
bled about hym, & tooke no hede to folow me, by cause
they knew well it was but a folye to folow me, ⁴syn⁵ I
was mountyd on themperours good horse. Thus I de-
partyd fro them, and went and lay all that nyght at 24
Coleyne, wher as I founde my men whom I had left
there whan I went to themperours courte all alone /
the next day I departyd / but I was not gone farre
out of Coleyne whan themperour and .x M. men met 28
me in the way, where as they had lyene in a lytell
wood in awayte for me. Than they ranne at me & at
my men / there was a grete batayle on both partes, and
many slayne & woundyd. But I dyd so myche by the 32
grace of god & my good companie / that I ouercome
them, and I slew two of his newewes, and I bare

¹ had. ² omitted. ³ to. ⁴ Fol. lxxiii. col. 1.
⁵ seeing.

themperour to the erth / and whan he sawe that the
 losse of the batayle ran on his syde, he sent to me
 than a messenger to haue trewes for halfe a yere /
 4 the whiche I grauntyd bycause I thought I had done
 hym dysplesure ynough as in sleynge of thre of his
 neuwes. Thus we departyd, & as I¹ retournyd I met
 y^e prouost of Coleyne, who brought with hym .xx M.
 8 men to haue rescued themperour, & so we fought
 togyther. But as soone as themperour was aduertysed
 therof / he sende & commaundyd hym that he sholde
 no more fyght with me. Than the prouost came to me
 12 & cryed me mercy for *that*² he had done, excusynge
 hym selfe *that* he knew nothyng of y^e trewes. Than
 we made to sounde the retrayte of both partes. ³Thus
 we departyd without any moo strokes gyuyng, wherof
 16 I thanke god *that* I am thus scapyd.' 'Syr,' quod
 Esclaramonde, 'ye ought to thanke god *that* he hathe
 sent you *that* grace / for I haue herde say that them-
 perour⁴ whom ye haue slayne his two neuwes is greate /
 20 puyssaunt / and a ryche prynce, ryght sage and experte
 in the warre, wherefore it is to be feeryd that he wyll
 not let the mater thus to rest.' 'Dame,'⁵ quod Huon,
 'I know well this that ye say is trew; I thynke well
 24 he be dys⁶pleasyd with me for y^e deth of his neuwes
 and many other of his kyn / thus, as I haue sayd, I
 iustyd with hym two tymes / & at the seconde tyme
 I strake hym to the erthe in such wyse that he brake
 28 his thye, so that he was constreynyd to be borne⁷ in a
 lytter / and it hath ben shewed⁸ me syn / that y^e losse
 of his good horse greuyth hym more than the losse
 of all⁹ his men. Lady, to shew you the parelles and
 32 aduentures that I haue founde¹⁰ syn I departyd fro
 you, it sholde¹¹ be to longe to shew you. But surely I

Esclaramonde
fears that the
Emperor will
pursue the strife.

Huon knows that
the Emperor is
sore distressed
by his escape

and the loss of
his own horse,

¹ he. ² which. ³ and. ⁴ of. ⁵ Madame.

⁶ Fol. lxxiii. col. 2. ⁷ thence. ⁸ told.

⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ had. ¹¹ would.

thyinke as soone as the trewes be¹ expyryd, but² that³
 themperour with all his puyssaunce wyll come and
 besege me here in Burdeux, for it hath ben shewed
 me of trouthe that³ themperour hath so made his oth⁴
 and promyse / and hath sworne by his crowne imperyall
 that he wyll not departe hense tyll he haue taken and
 dystroyed this⁴ cyte.' 'Syr,' quod Esclaramonde, 'yf
 ye wyll beleue me / ye shall⁵ well resyte⁵ this, and I⁸
 shall tell you how / ye know well I haue a brother
 called kyng Salybraunt, who is kyng of Bougye, the
 whiche extendyth on the one syde nere too Mombrant,
 and on the other syde nere to Trypoley in Barbarye / 12
 he may lede in batayle a .C.M. men / and, syr, surely
 he is a good crysten man,² how be it, ther be⁶ but few
 that knoweth it / ⁷this .v. yere he hath surely⁷ beleued
 on Jesu Cryst / and, syr, yf ye wyll go to hym, and 16
 desyre his ayde by the same token *that*, whan ye were
 prisoner in Babylone, I dyscoueryd the secretnes⁸ of
 my mynde to hym, and shewed hym of y⁹ loue betwen
 you and me / and how ye sholde⁹ lede me in to Fraunce, 20
 wherof he was ioyfull, and desyred me affectuously
 that I sholde doo so myche to you / that we myght
 come and se hym in his owne realme. But the aduen-
 ture fell so that our departyng was¹⁰ other wyse than 24
 we had deuysyd / he was there & saw how my father
 was slayne, & all suche¹¹ as were with hym / than for
 fere he ranne away, & dyd hyde hym in a garden
 behynd the palays, and there taryed tyll it was nyght / 28
 and than he stalle away, and went in to his owne
 realme / there shall ye fynde hym yf ye wyll goo
 thither / I know surely¹² he wyll make you¹³ good
 chere / and wyll not refuse¹⁴ to¹⁵ socoure you, ¹⁶the 32

and he has heard how the Emperor has vowed to destroy the city of Bordeaux.

Esclaramonde says that her brother will lead a hundred thousand men to his assistance.

He has been a christian for five years past.

She desires Huon to visit him,

¹ is. ² omitted. ³ then. ⁴ the. ⁵⁻⁵ resist.
⁶ are. ⁷⁻⁷ verily he hath. ⁸ secreta. ⁹ would.
¹⁰ fell. ¹¹ Fol. lxxiii. back, col. l. ¹² that.
¹³ exceeding great. ¹⁴ for. ¹⁵ ayde and.
¹⁶⁻¹⁶ for hee will bee so exceeding puissaunt and mightie.

whiche shalbe so grete and puyssaunt¹⁶ that he wyll
 brynge with hym moo than a .C. M. sarazyns / &,¹ syr,
 I wolde counsell² you to take³ with you a⁴ .v. or .vi. and to take with
 him priests to
 christen his men,
 who are still
 Saracens.
 4 prestes⁵ furnysshyd with oyle and creme / for, as soone
 as he hath his men oute of his owne countre, he wyll
 cause them to be crystenyd, and suche as wyll not he
 wyll cause them to dye an yll deth. Syr, I requyre
 8 you beleue my counsell at this tyme / for ye know
 well⁶ out of Fraunce ye⁷ get no socoure / for yf sum Huon can expect
 no aid from
 France.
 wolde they dare not, for dought of kyng Charlemayne;
 the hate *that* he hath to you is not yet quenched for
 12 the deth of his sonne Charlote, he wyll neuer forget it⁸ /
 and, syr, yf ye go not to my brother for socoure ye may
 happe to repent it, and peraduenture it may be to late /
 and do as he doth that cloyth⁹ the stable dore whan
 16 the horse is stollen.' Thus the fayre¹⁰ esclaramonde
 exortyd duke Huon her husbonde, whom she loued
 enterly.

¶ How Huon had grete ioye for the byrth of
 20 Claryet his daughter. Capitulo .lxxxxvi.

11 **W** Han Huon had well herd his wyfe he Huon thanks his
 wife for her good
 counsell, but
 sayd, 'my ryght dere lady and com-
 panyon, ryght well I know the grete
 24 loue that ye bere to me, the whiche
 hathe constreynyd you to say thus,
 wherof I thanke you. ¹²By the lorde that on y^o crosse
 dyed¹³ to redeme humayne lynage, I wyll go to no place
 28 nor sende for any socoures / tyll¹⁴ I se them befor my
 cyte, and that I haue cause to purchace¹⁵ for socoures,
 nor tyll¹⁴ I fele the strokes of y^o Almayns and bauyers
 that they can gyue whan they be out of there owne

refuses to set out
 for the East
 before Bordeaux
 is in positive
 danger.

¹ also. ² and aduise. ³ along. ⁴ some. ⁵ well.
⁶ that. ⁷ shall. ⁸ omitted. ⁹ shutteth. ¹⁰ Ladie.
¹¹ Fol. lxxiii. back, col. 2. ¹² But. ¹³ for.
¹⁴ vntill. ¹⁵ labour.

He would be
reproached for
departing now.

Esclaramonde
presses her
husband to
obtain men from
her brother before
the Emperor
arrives,

and tells him
her fear of the
Germans.

Esclaramonde
becomes a
mother.

countre / nor as longe as my shyld is hole¹ fyrste, I
thynke they shall fele the sharpnes of my spere hede
and good sworde /² by goddes grace I shall not abandone
you nor leue my cyte and good burgesses /³ it myght 4
greatly be layde to my reproche, yf I sholde thus goo
away.' 'A, syr,' quod Esclaramonde, 'ye may well
know that this that I haue sayd is for the fere that I
haue of you / for I haue ben well aduertesynd that 8
themperour sore hateth you, and not without cause, for
his newwes and lordes that ye haue slayn, and ther-
fore, *sir*, yf ye wyll beleue me ye shall 4haue men to
defende you brought hyther by the kyng my brother / 12
so that whan the emperour is come in to your londe, it
shall lye in you other to make peace or warre at your
wyll / reason it were that ye made hym sum amendes
for the hurtes that ye haue done to⁵ hym / and on the 16
other parte, yf he wyll haue no peace / than it shall lye
in you to make hym suche warre so that he shall not
departe without your agrement and to his great losse.
syr, the fere that I haue to lese you constreyneth me 20
thus to say / I haue herd often tymes sayd / that the
entre into warre is large / but the issuynge out ther of
is very strayte / nor ther is no warre but it causeth
pouerta. But syn⁶ it is your pleasure not to beleue me, 24
it is reason *that* I must be content that your pleasure
be fulfilled.' Than they entred in to other deuyses /
7gret ioye and feest was made in the palayes at Burdeux
betwene Huon and the lordes of the countre. at last 28
the fayre Esclaramond, who was grete with chylde, fell
vpon trauelynge, and she prayed to god 8and to oure
ladye for ayde & helpe. she was in her chambre,
whereas she⁸ sufferyd gret payne / wher of Huon had 32
grete pyte whan he herd ther of / for 9there was grete

¹ and sound. ³ and yet. ³ for. ⁴ Fol. lxxv. col. 1.

⁵ vnto. ⁶ seeing. ⁷ and. ⁸⁻⁸ for helpe, and.

⁹⁻⁹ the loue betwene them was exceeding great.

loue between them⁹ / at last y^e ladye was brought to bed
 of a fayre doughter / wher of Huon thanked god / than
 entred in to the ladyes chambre a greate nombre of the
 4 ladyes of the fayrye / & came to Esclaramondys bed
 and sayd, 'Lady, ye ought well to thanke god / for ye
 haue brought forth y^e ¹moost¹ fayrest and best creature
 that as now is in the worlde, and to whom oure lord
 8 god hath grauntyd moost graces at her byrth / for
²more fayrer / nor more sage / nor courteys² hath not
 be borne this .C. yeres past / for she shall haue such
 desteney and happe³ in this worlde / that of the realme
 12 of Arogone she shalbe quene crownyd, and she shall soo
 gouerne her selfe that she ⁴shalbe⁵ a seint in paradise.
 At Tortouse ther is the chyrche where ¹as yet¹ she is
 honouryd / the whiche is foundyd in her name, and is
 16 namyd saynt Clare.' Esclaramounde was ioyfull of the
 wordes of these ladyes of the fayrye. ⁶grete ioy⁷ was
 made ⁸in the chambre⁸ for the byrth of this chylde /
 who was gretly regardyd of the ladyes of the fayry, and
 20 they sayd eche to other that this chyld was the fayrest
 creature of ⁹the world / they toke this chyld eche after
 other and blyssyd it thre times, and than¹⁰ layde it
 doune and departyd sodenly so that no man wyst
 24 where they were become, wherof all the ladyes & other
 hed grete meruayle. This tydynges was brought to
 Huon, he was ryght ioyefull, and sayd / 'A, syr¹¹ kynge
 Oberon, I beleue surely that as yet ye haue not forgotten
 28 me. Now I dought no thyng themperour nor all his
 pyussaunce syn¹² ye haue remembrance of me.' Than
 Huon cam in to the hall, and thyder his doughter was
 brought to¹³ hym to se / he toke her in his armes and
 32 shewed her to his lordes, who were¹⁴ ioyfull to se her.

Ladies of
fairyland attend
the birth of her
daughter,

and declare her to
be the fairest and
best creature born
in a hundred
years.

The fairies thrice
bless the child.

Huon thinks
that king Oberon
is still mindful of
him.

¹⁻¹ omitted.

²⁻² a more faire, modest, wise, and courteous. ³ fortune.

⁴ Fol. lxxv. col. 2. ⁵ accounted of as if she were.

⁶ and. ⁷ and feasting. ⁸⁻⁸ euerywhere. ⁹ in all.

¹⁰ they. ¹¹ worthy. ¹² seeing. ¹³ vnto. ¹⁴ very.

The babe is
christened
Clariette.

Than she was borne to chyrche and with grete solempnyte crystenyd / and named Claryet, because she was soo fayre and clere to beholde. Than she was brought to the duches, who had of her gret ioy / whan the 4 duches had kept her chambre a moneth, than she was chyrchyd, wher of all the courte was ioyfull, and such feest was made that yf I sholde shew you the ryches and noblesse that was there shewed, it sholde be ouer 8 longe to reherse. Therefore I¹ leue spekyng therof at this tyme tyll² another season.

¶ Howe themperour assembled a grete hoste and came to Burdeux. Capitulo .lxxxvii. 12



E haue well⁴ herde here before the maner & cause why this warre was mouyd betwene y^e emperour of Almayne & Huon, duke of Burdeux, the 16 whiche, after the trewes was expyryd, and that the emperour was hole of his thygh that Huon had broken, he publysshyd the warre⁵ / and sent ouer all his empyre / that euery duke / erle / baron / 20 knyght / and squyer shold com to hym, and sowdeours fro all partes, and that within a moneth they to be at the cyte of Mayence, to thentent too make warre vpon Huon of Burdeux / this commaundement was pub- 24 lysshed / and suche delygence was made that by the day apoyntyd euery man was com to the cyte of Mayence, and lodgyd in the cyte and in paultions about the cyte / there were assembled no than .lx. M.⁶ men, 28 well aparelyd⁷ for the warre. whan this emperoure, who was named Tyrrey, saw them he was⁸ ioyfull / & sore thretened Huon, and made promyse before⁹ all his barons that he wolde neuer retourne in to his owne 32

The Emperor of
Germany
assembles his
men at Mayence

to make war vpon
Huon.

Sixty thousand
men are collected
together.

¹ will. ² vntill. ³ Fol. lxxv. back, col. 1.
⁴ at large. ⁵ againe. ⁶ and all. ⁷ appointed.
⁸ verie. ⁹ to.

countré tyll he had fyrst slayne Huon, who had done hym so great damage. Than he commaundyd his constables & marshalles to be redy to departe the next 4 day, & to take the way towardes Coleyne with al his artilerey and caryage, the which was done. The next day themperour entred in to the felde and so rode towardes Coleyne / and whan themperour was within a 8 legge than there met with hym the olde Sauary hys brother, who was father to duke Raoull, slayne by Huon. whan these two brethern met togyther there was great ioy made.¹

They prepare to march to Cologne.

On the way the Emperor, whose name was Thierry, met his brother Savary, father of duke Raoul.

12 ¶ But than duke Sauory began to wepe, & sayd to his brother themperoure, 'Syr, of your cominge I am ryght ioyfull. But when the pyteous deth of my dere beloued sonn your neuwe Raoull cometh to my mynde / 16 there is no membre on me / but for doloure ²and dyspleasure trymbleth / nor I can neuer haue parfyte ioy at my herte as longe as he that hath done me thys dyspleasure ³be alyue.'³ This duke Sauary was a noble 20 man / but betwene hym and his sonne Raoull was great dyfference, for this ⁴duke Raoull was the untrewest traytoure that euer lyued : the which ylnes ⁵procedyd by y⁶ duches his mother / who was doughter to 24 Hurdowyn of Fraunce, the moost untrewest and falsest traytour that as than lyued in the worlde / whan themperour herde his brother speke the water ⁶fell ⁷out of his eyen, & ⁸embracyd hym, and sayd, 'My ryght dere 28 brother, your doloure ⁹dyspleaseth me / for your doloure is myne,¹⁰ therof I wyll haue my ¹¹parte / and yf ye haue ⁹ioy my parte shal¹² be therin. But it is not possyble for vs / to haue hym agayne for whom we make this 32 sorowe' / god ayde Huon fro his enemyes, for they greatly desyryd his deth; yet often tymes they that

Duke Savary weeps for the loss of his son.

He is not an untrue traitor, like duke Raoul.

The Emperor consoles his brother.

¹ betwene them. ² Fol. lxxv. back, col. 2. ³⁻³ liueth.
⁴ the. ⁵ wickedness. ⁶ tears. ⁷⁻⁷ from. ⁸ he.
⁹ much. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹ a. ¹² likewise.

The army is well received in Cologne.

It was a great host with long lines of artillery,

and passed over the Rhone into the country of Bordeaux.

desyre another mans deth auunseth there owne. Thus, as ye haue herde, themperour and duke Sauary entred in to the cyte of Coleyne, where as they were reseyued with great ioy / and so rode to y^e palayes : ¹there they 4 souppyd. I wyl make no longe rehearsall of y^e good chere that they made there. Than after soupper they went to there rest, and the next mornynge rose and herde masse,² and tooke a soppe in wyne,¹ Than departyd 8 out of Coleyne. It was a goodly host to beholde, they & theyr caryage / &³ artelyrey strechyd foure legges of lenght. Thus they all had sworne y^e deth of Huon / they passyd by hye Borgoyne and by Dolpheurey,⁴ and 12 so passyd the ryuer of Rone, and so in to the countre of Burdeux. Nowe I wyll leue spekyng of them tyll another season.

⁵ ¶ How themperoure Tyrrey of Almayne 16 beseged the cyte of Burdeux / and howe Huon made hym redy to fyght with his enemyes. Capitulo .lxxxxviii.



Huon orders all his men to be ready in armes, and to come to Bordeaux, when he heard of the Emperour's protest.

The town is well fortified and furnished with food and guns.

Hus ye haue well⁶ herde here before 20 the deuises that the duches Esclaramond had made to her husbonde Huon; who as soone as she was chyrched, Huon sent his commaunde- 24 ment throw al his countre euery man to be redy in armes and to come to Burdeux, bycause he was aduertysed of y^e cominge of his enemyes / the messengers made such delygence that in⁷ .xv. dayes 28 after euery man was come to Burdeux / and the⁸ duke Huon reseyued them with great ioy. Than he repayryd the cyte and the toures and walles, and it was well furnysshed with vytaylles and artelery, as in suche a 32

¹ and. ² seruce. ³ their. ⁴ Dolphinne.
⁵ Fol. lxxvi. col. 1. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ within. ⁸ there.

case it¹ aparteynyd. ²At that tyme y^e cyte of Burdeux was not so strong as it is now / whan duke Huon saw his cyte so well garnyshed with men and vytaylle / ⁴he was ryght ioyfull. ³Than he called to hym the olde Gerames, & sayd / ‘my ryght dere frende, ye se well this warre ⁴that is aparent betwene themperour and me, & nowe we be well aduertysed of his comynge, who is ⁸redye to come with all his host to besege this oure cyte / & therefore, my hertye⁵ frende, who hath aydyd me in so many besynesses, I pray you counsell and ayde me now; for⁶ all the condute of my warre / I wyll⁷ ¹²ye haue the charge, & that ye wyll comforte my men ⁸to do⁸ well, so that of vs there be none ⁹yll songe⁹ made, and that our enemyes haue no cause to prayse y^e warre that they haue agaynst vs / nor that whan they ¹⁶be retournyed in to there countres that they make not there auantes amonge theyr wenches and¹⁰ louers.’ ‘Syr,’ quod Gerames, ‘I thanke you of the honoure and gret trust that ye haue in me / how be it, ye haue ²⁰many other more sage and hardy than I am, too whom this¹¹ charge sholde better aperteyne than to me. But, *sir*, as for me, I shall so aquyte me that I trust I shall not be reprehendyd.’ Thus, as ye haue herde, Huon ²⁴made his deuyses amonge all his barons / and made all his ordynaunces for the defence of the cyte and the maner of theyr yssues,¹² and apoyntyd men for theyr rescue in reculynge. And themperour was entred in to ²⁸the countre of Burdeux with a ¹³grete puysaunce,¹³ byrnynge and dystroyenge the countre, wher of the poore peple were sore abashed, bycause they neuer had warre before / ³thus themperour neuer restyd ³²exilynge¹⁴ & dystroyenge the countre tyll they came

Huon begs the aid of Gerames in the conduct of the war.

Gerames, in spite of his age,

promises to do all he can.

The Emperor burns and destroys all the country he passes through,

1 well. 2 for. 3 and. 4 Fol. lxxvi. col. 2.
 5 deere. 6 in. 7 that. 8-9 omitted.
 9-9 euill report. 10 their. 11 great. 12 issuing.
 13-13 mightie armie. 14 wasting.

until he arrives
before the city of
Bordeaux,
and there
encamps.

Huon prepares his
men for a sortie.

Twenty thousand
are ordered to
follow him.

Esclaramonde
prays for their
safety.

before the cite of Burdeux and theyr he pyght vp his tentes and paulyons / and themperoure lay on the waye ledyng to Parys / on the other parte duke Sauarey, father to Raoull, was lodgyd by themperours marshalles / 4 so that all the cyte was closyd rownde aboute. Huon, who was within the cyte, behelde theyr countenaunces and maner of theyr lodgyng. He commaundyd that all his men sholde be redy to yssue out vpon ¹ there ⁸ enemyes / the whiche they dyd. Than Huon armed hym ² rychely / and mountyd vpon his good horse, the whiche was the emperours / and sware that, or ³ he returnyed agayne, he wolde shew his enemyes what ¹² they of Burdeux coude do / whan he was mountyd on his good horse he cam in to the cyte, and founde the old Gerames redy aparelyd and ⁴ all his company. Than he ordaynyd ⁵ .v. M. men to kepe the cyte, & ¹⁶ .xx. M. ⁶ to go with hym / thus duke Huon made his ordenaunces. ye may well know ⁷ that the sorow was great that Esclaramonde made for the duke her husbonde / she was ryght sage. ⁸ she feryd to lese hym, ²⁰ bycause she knew hym so aduenturus / and that his enemyes were of so grete nombre / ⁹ ryght peteously wepyng she made her prayers to our ¹⁰ lorde god deuoutly that he wolde kepe, and defende Huon, her ²⁴ husbonde, & all hys men fro daunger & losse, & to sende hym peace. ¹¹

¶ Of the grete batayle that was before Burdeux, where as Huon had grete losse & the ²⁸ olde Gerames taken. Capitulo .lxxxix.

¹ Fol. lxxvi. back, col. 1. ² selfe verie. ³ era.
⁴ with. ⁵ appoynted. ⁶ men. ⁷ imagine.
⁸ wise. ⁹ but. ¹⁰ the. ¹¹ with his enemica.



1 Hus, as he haue herde, Burdeux was be-
 2 seged by themperour of² hye Almaynes,
 & by hys brother the duke Sauary, with
 4 a grete nombre of men. Than Huon
 yssuyd out, and whan he was past the
 porte, he made haste, to thentent to surpnyce his
 enemyes, for at that tyme themperour was set at dyner.
 6 Than Huon & his company all at ones dasht in amonge
 the tentes and paunlyons / and bet them downe to y^e
 erthe, so that they that were within were sore³ abasshed,
 for they had⁴ thought⁵ that Huon durst neuer a⁶
 12 yssued out of the cyte agaynst hym, and the great
 nombre that he was of. Huon layde on rounde aboute
 hym so that who so euer met with hym had no nede of
 7 leche⁷ craft. Also the olde Gerames dyd meruaylles,
 16 and so dyd the Burdeloys. many a ryche tent and
 paunlyon was beten downe⁴ to y^e erthe,⁸ and they within
 slayne and all to hewyn. ⁹Huon, who was mountyd on
 his¹⁰ good horse, met with⁴ a knyght of themperours
 20 house, and he gaue hym suche a stroke with his sword
 that he claue his hede to the teth / and than¹¹ strake
 another that his hede / helme & al, flew to the erth. they
 that sawe that stroke was sore abasshed. Themperoures
 24 men assembled togyther by heepes. But by the hye¹²
 prowess of Huon anone they were agayne departyd /
¹³he was so doughtyd and feryd that none was so hardy
 to aproche nere⁴ to⁴ hym. The crye and noyce mountyd
 28 so hye that the emperour, who was⁴ as than⁴ at⁴ hys⁴
 dyner, whan he herde the¹⁴ crye he rose fro the table,
 and demaundyd what noyse it was. 'Syr,' quod a
 knyght, who was fled and sore hurt / 'sir, know for
 32 trowth that your enemye Huon is issuyd oute of Bur-

Huon and his
 company take the
 besiegers by
 surprise,

and fight with
 vigour.

The tents were
 beaten down, and
 their inmates
 slain.

The Emperor is
 roused from
 dinner,
 and learns the
 cause of the
 disturbance that
 he hears from
 afar.

¹ Fol. lxxvi. back, col. 2. ² the. ³ much.
⁴ omitted. ⁵ verily. ⁶ haue. ⁷⁻⁷ a leches.
⁸ ground. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ a. ¹¹ he.
¹² mightie. ¹³ for. ¹⁴ them.

The Emperor
arms himself,
and orders his
men to the onset.

He promises that
Hyon's wife and
land shall be
given to the
warrior who slays
the knight.

There is much
rivalry for the
promised gifts.

deux, and hathe done so myche¹ that he hathe slayne
a quarter of ²all² your hoost, and without that ye doo
rescue your men³ shortely, your losse is lyke to be ryght⁴
grete, ⁵for I haue sene Huon your enemy mountyd ⁴
vpon your good hors, wheron he doth gret meruaylles /
for there is none *that* meteth ²with² hym but ²that²
⁶is slayne, he is so cruell and hardy.' whan themperour
herde the knyght he swet for displeasure ; ⁷incontyent ⁸
he armed hym / and issued out of his tent and mountyd
on his horse / and founde his men redy. Than he saw
Hyon mountyd on his good horse / than⁸ he sayd to
his men, 'Syr, I requyre you at this tyme put to your ¹²
paynes that I may be reuengyd of myne enemye, who
before my face yonder sleeth⁹ my men. he is so
valyaunt that whom so euer he stryketh with a full
stroke is but deed / gret damage it was whan he slew ¹⁶
my newew.¹⁰ who so euer can delyuer hym to me
quycke or deed shalbe my frende for euer, and I shall¹¹
shew hym y^e courtesy / that Esclaramond, who is so
fayre, I shall gyue her to¹² hym in maryage, & all the ²⁰
countre¹³ of Burdeux.'

¶ Than suche as herde his promyse made them
redy for ¹⁴couytes¹⁴ of that gyft. But sum hastyd so
myche to acomplysh themperours wyll that it was to ²⁴
late after for them to repent. It is a¹⁵ saynge that
an yll haste is not good / sum hastyd so sore¹⁶ that
after¹⁷ bought it full¹⁸ dere, as ye shall¹⁹ here. after
these wordes spoken by the emperour, suche as desyryed ²⁸
to accomplyshe his wyll ran in all togyther in to the
batayle agaynst the Burdeloys / there was grete occy-
syon²⁰ on both partes. Hyon, who had grete desyre in
his hert to slee his enemyes / dyd so myche by hys ³²

¹ hurt. ²⁻² omitted. ³ verie. ⁴ exceeding.
⁵ Fol. lxxvii. col. 1. ⁶ he. ⁷ and. ⁸ whereon.
⁹ killeth. ¹⁰ nephewe. ¹¹ will. ¹² vnto. ¹³ Court.
¹⁴⁻¹⁴ the couetousness. ¹⁵ an old. ¹⁶ much.
¹⁷ afterwarde. ¹⁸ too. ¹⁹ heare. ²⁰ slaughter made.

prowes that he reculyd his enemyes to theyr tentes /
 & it had been yll with them, &¹ duke Sauary had not
 rescued them / he with his grete prowes made them to
⁴ recouer agayne the felde / ²there was a sore batayle on
 both partes. The olde Gerames that day slewe many a
 man. But he aduenturyd hym selfe so far forth
 amonge his enemyes / that his horse was slayne vnder
⁸ hym / so that he was ³constreynyd to fall to the erth /
 and there⁴ he was taken & led to themperours tent, and
 gret fetters set⁵ on⁶ his legges. Alas that Huon had
 not knowen therof; if he had, he shold not haue ben
¹² led away without grete losse. But he was in y^e batayle
 doying meruelles in armes. he helde his sworde in his
 hande tayntyd with blood and braynes of men that he
 had slayne / there was none so hardy that durst aproch
¹⁶ nere to⁷ hym / he cryed⁸ 'Burdeux' to draw his men
 togyther / and dashet in to y^e greatest prease, & strake
 on al partes in suche wyse that his enemyes⁸ gaue hym
 place, for none durst abyde his strokes / ⁹the prease
²⁰ was so grete of the men of duke Sauareys that he had
 gret payne to breke in among them. he fought so
 that he semyd rather a man of the fayrye or a speryt
 than a mortall man / euery man had grete meruayle of
²⁴ the prowes that he shewed¹⁰ & his company. Than cam
 agaynst hym y^e olde duke Sauary, with a byrnynge
 desyre too be reuenged for the deth of his son Raoull;
 and Huon parseyued hym well, and made suche hast
²⁸ that the duke had no leyser to gyue the fyrst stroke /
 for Huon gaue hym suche a stroke with his sworde
 that he cut clene of a quarter of his shyld, & y^e stroke
 gleynt¹¹ to the horse necke by suche vertue that it strake
³² of clene the horse hede / so that there by the duke fell
 to the erth / and yf he hadde not ben well socouryd he

but Huon is as
mighty as ever.

Old Gerames also
fights with
strength,

although his
horse is killed
under him,
and he is taken
prisoner.

Huon is to be
found wherever
the fight is
hottest.

His prowes is
marvellous.

He unhorses at
one blow Duke
Sauary, who
desires vengeance
for his son's
death.

¹ if. ² and. ³ Fol. lxxvii. col. 2. ⁴ then.
⁵ clapt. ⁶ vpon. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ still. ⁹ Now.
¹⁰ shewed after company. ¹¹ glyded.

He would have been slain, had he not been succoured by his men.

Huon perceives that his men are outnumbered,

and retires to Bordeaux.

Sixteen thousand of his soldiers were left dead upon the field.

While retreating, Huon kills a cousin of the Emperor, and four German knights.

The Emperor with his barons attacks him,

had been slayne / but there came to hym so many men, that whether Huon wolde or not he was socouryd / and mountyd vpon a new horse / whan Huon sawe that he was scapyd, he called vpon our lorde god, and sayd, 4
 'A, good lorde, yf I tary here longe I se well that my force shall but lytell profyte me, for there be .xx. agaynst one.' Than he called certen of his lordes that were aboute hym, & sayd, 'Syr, I perseyue well our 8
 force can not longe contynew¹ / therefore it is better² departe betymes than to³tary to longe.' 'Syr,' quod they, 'as it shall please you' / ⁴than they tournyd them towardes Burdeux a soft pace / and Huon dyd / as the 12
 sheparde doth go behynde his shepe / so wente he with his sworde in his hande / defending his company fro his enemyes, ⁵sorowfull & angry for the losse that he had that day, for in the mornyng whan he departyd 16
 from Burdeux he had a .xx. M. of good fyghting men, & at his retourne he saw well he had not past⁶.iiii. M., wherwith he was sore displeasyd / & often tymes by the way turnyd & returnyd to his enemyes. At last he 20
 met with a knyght named Jozerane, & gaue hym suche a stroke that he fell downe deed to y^o erth, wherof themperour Tyrrey was sore dyspleasyd / for he was his cosyn germayne; & after⁷ he slew other .iiii. knyghtes 24
 of Almayne. Than he returnyd agayne after hys men, & so led them forth⁸ as the shepharde doth his shepe / & often tymes tournyd & retournyd vpon his enemyes, so that there was none so hardy that durst aproche nere 28
 hym / therwith thither came themperour rychely armed with y^o armes imperyall,¹⁰ mountyd vpon a puyssaunt horse. Than he cryed, 'on forth, my barons / take hede that this traytoure Huon scape not away / yf I 32
 maye haue hym in my handes / all the golde in the

¹ endure. ² to. ³ Fol. lxxvii. back, col. 1. ⁴ so.
⁵ right. ⁶ aboue. ⁷ that. ⁸ still.
⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ and.

worlde shall not redeme hym fro hanginge.' Huon,
 who herd the emperour, sayd, 'A, false olde lepar,¹
 thou lvest falsly, I was neuer traytour.' Than them-
 4 perour ranne at Huon, & strake hym on the shyld, and
 strake it clene throwe, and the spere brake all to peces.
 And Huon with his sworde strake themperour on the
 helme, so that the serkell set with stone & perle was
 8 betten to the erth. ²yf the horse had not swaruyd,
 themperour had neuer³ scapyd alyue; neuertheles, the
 stroke lyght so on his shulder *that* y^o sword persyd the and is sore
wounded by
Huon.
 mayle and gaue hym a depe wounde; & forther, y^o
 12 sworde dissendyd to y^o arson⁴ of the sadell, so *that* the
 hors ⁵was stryken nye a sounder in two peces / ²so
 that⁶ themperour & the horse fell downe⁷ togyther ⁸to
 y^o erth⁸ / so *that* &⁹ he had not ben rescued by y^o
 16 Almayns he had ben slayn. Huon was sorie when he
 saw the Emperour so scapyd with his life; than he
 tournyd and rode towards Burdeaux after his men, who
 tarryed still for hym, and Huon dyd so myche by hys Under Huon's
protecting care,
his men reach
Bordeaux in
safety.
 20 prowes *that* for all themperour & his men he entred in
 to his cyte of Burdeux. But as than he knew not *that*
 the olde Gerames was taken prisoner. ¹⁰Thus, as ye
 haue herd, duke Huon entred in to Burdeux with
 24 .iiii. M. men, of whome y^o moost parte were sore hurte /
 he rode to the palays & there alyghtyd. Than he lokyd
 aboute hym, & was sore abasshed when he saw not He is saddened
to hear of
Gerames' fate,
 Gerames by hym / than he demaundyd yf any man
 28 knew where he was. 'Syr,' quod a knyght named
 Gallerance, 'know for trouthe¹¹ he is taken prysoner, &
 is in the handes of your enemyes / for to haue aydyd
 hym I was woundyd in thre places, & nerehande
 32 slayne. I employed my force to haue socouryd hym,
 but I coude fynde no remedy' / whan Huon herd that /

¹ dotard.² and.³ not.⁴ bow.⁵ Fol. lxxvii. back, col. 2.⁶ the.⁷ to the ground.⁸⁻⁸ omitted.⁹ if.¹⁰ so.¹¹ that.

he prasyd gretly Gerames force & vertue, & gretly compleynyd & sayd, 'alas that I had not knowen of his takynge, or¹ I had² returnyd I wolde soner haue dyed / but at the leest I wold haue taken sum man suffeynt⁴ and piteous is his sorrow. to a³ redemyd hym agayne out of daunger.' A pyteous⁴ thyng it was to here duke Huon what sorow he made for his frende Gerames / but his compleyntes coude not auayle hym / his lordes sayd, 'syr, ⁵with goddes grace⁵ 8 ye shal haue hym agayne saue & alyue.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'it shall be a grete aduenture without they put hym to deth.' Than Huon mountyd vp to the palays, where as he met Esclaramond his wyfe / whom 12 he kyssyd & embraced many tymes. 'Syr,' quod y^e lady, 'I pray you shew me of your newes.' 'Lady,' quod Huon, 'they be but pore & dolowrus, for of .xx. M. men that I had with me ⁶out of this cyte, I haue 16 brought home alyue but .iiii. M., and yet the moost parte of them is⁷ sore woundyd / and besyde that,² the olde Gerames is taken prisoner, who hath suffred before this tyme so many paynes & trauaylles for my sake.' 'A,⁸ 20 syr,' quod y^e lady, sore wepyng / 'I had rather ye had beleued me, and that ye had gone and sought for socoure of my brother / who wolde not a³ faylled you / he⁹ wolde a³ come with you with so myche people and 24 puyssaunce that themperour sholde not a³ durst to³ abyden you.' 'Dame,'¹⁰ quod Huon, 'speke no more therof / for the losse of as myche as .x. cytyes be in 28 valure I wolde not haue gone thether nor too none 32 other parte for any socoure, nor yet wyll not tyll I se me sorer¹¹ oppressyd than I am as yet / I myght well be reputyd for a coward and recreaunt thus to abandoned my cyte / I had rather be dysmembred in to peces 32 than for fere I sholde leue you / it sholde¹² be gretly to

Huon tells his wife the sad tidings.

She begs him seek succour from her brother,

but he declares he will not abandon the city.


¹ ere. ² omitted. ³ haue. ⁴ lamentable.
⁵⁻⁶ by the grace of god. ⁶ Fol. lxxviii. col. 1. ⁷ be.
⁸ Alas. ⁹ but. ¹⁰ Madame. ¹¹ more. ¹² would.

my reproche in the courtes of hie prynces, and whan I
 com there to be markyd with the fynger for that grete
 defaulte.' 'Syr,' quod Esclaramonde, 'your pleasure is
 4 myne, syn¹ ye wyll haue it so / but I am ryght sorye²
 for the olde Gerames, who is prysoner in y^e tentes of
 your enemyes / who hath suffred for your sake many
 grete paynes & pouertyes. I cannot be but sory whan
 8 I remembre hym.' 'Dame,'³ quod Huon, 'as yet
 Gerames is not deed. I hope, by the grace of our lorde
 god, that we shall haue hym agayne alyue.' 'Syr,'
 quod she, 'I pray to god¹ it may be so.' Now let vs
 12 leue spekyng of Huon, and speke of themperour, who
 lay sore hurt on the erth.

Huon hopes to
 rescue Gerames.

¶ How themperour reasyd vp a payre of
 galowes to hang vp the olde Gerames and
 16 all the Burdeloys that were taken prysoners.

Capitulo .C.

4
 20  E haue well⁵ herde here before re-
 countyd how Huon entred in to Bur-
 deux after he hadde betten downe
 themperour Tyrrey, whom he left
 lyenge on⁶ y^e erth, and had ben slayne
 and⁷ his men had not quyckely rescued hym. ⁸his
 24 men were sorowfull,⁹ they feryd he had ben deed, &
 vnlayd his helme, & was ryght ioyfull whan they
 founde hym alyue. Than they demaundyd & sayd,
 'sir, we desyre you shew vs what case ye fele yourself
 28 in.' 'Syr,' quod he, 'I am sore hurt, wherby I fele
 gret payne; this enemye Huon hath brought me in this
 case. I was foolyshly counselled whan I cam hyther to
 seke for hym, for yf I had taryed styl at Mayence, I

The Germans
 find the Emperor
 sorely wounded.

and he regrette
 his departure
 from Mayence.

¹ that. ² sorowful. ³ Madame.
⁴ Fol. lxxviii. col. 2. ⁵ alrely. ⁶ vpon. ⁷ if.
⁸ now. ⁹ for.

beleue to do me displeasure he wolde haue come
 thether / syrs, I praye you bere me in to my tent *that*
 my wounde may be serchyd' / than he was borne in to
 his tent & vnrmed / & layd on¹ his bed, & he sownyd ⁴
 thryse for paine of his hurt. And whan he cam to
 hym selfe, & his woundes² serchyd by his surgyons /
 he demaundyd where y^e knyghtes of Burdeux were *that*
 were taken in y^e batayle, & commaundyd³ *that* they ⁸
 sholde be brought to his presence / Gerames was
 brought before hym, who was gret & puyssaunt, with a
 berde as whyte as snow ; he was a fayre olde knyght to
 beholde / his vysage playne & smyllynge, he semyd to ¹²
 be a man of hye affayres / whan y^e emperour saw hym /
 he sayd, 'thou old catyue, shew me what thou art /
 beware,⁴ shewe me the trouth' / 'sir,' quod Gerames,
 'know well *that* for fere of any deth I wyll⁵ not spare ¹⁶
 to say y^e trouthe / syn ye wyl⁶ know what I am, I am
 named Gerames, & am Huons seruauant, whom I loue
 naturally, & also I am his parent,⁷ wherby I haue y^e
 more cause to loue hym / & I haue slayne dyuers of ²⁰
 your men.' 'Well,' quod the emperour, 'I repute the
 for a foole to gyue me thys knowlege / for, by the
 grace of ⁸our lord Jesu Cryst,⁸ tomorow erlye, or⁹ I ete
 or ¹⁰drynke, thou shalt be drawen and hangyd / and ²⁴
 .lx. of thy company *that* were taken with *thee* in the
 batayle.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'of this *that* y^e shew me
 I can¹¹ you no thanke for it / but I hope, by the ayde
 of ¹²our lorde¹² Jesu Cryst, that I shall do you ¹²yet¹² ²⁸
 more damage or⁹ I dye.' 'A, velayne,' quod themperour,
 'gret meruayle I haue of the that thus before me ¹³&
 my barons¹² thou dost vse¹³ thretnynges / and yet thou
 seest ¹²clerely¹² how thou art my prysoner, and that it ³²

His wound
causes him much
dolour.

The knyghts
taken in battle
are ordered into
his presence.

Gerames comes
before him and
tells his condition.

The Emperour bids
him be hanged
early the next
morning, with
sixty of his
company.

Gerames defies his
captor.

¹ vpon. ² were. ³ demaunded. ⁴ and.
⁵ shall. ⁶ needs. ⁷ kinsman. ⁸⁻⁹ God. ⁹ ere.
¹⁰ Fol. lxxviii. back, col. 1. ¹¹ giue. ¹²⁻¹³ omitted.
¹³ these.

lyeth in me to put the to what deth it please me /
 know for trouthe, &¹ it were not so late of y^e day as it
 is, I wolde not suffer the to lyue one houre. But or² I
 4 slepe I shall cause ³gybettes and³ galowes to be made
 where as thou and thy company shalbe hanged / and I
 shall cause the to be hangyd so nere to the cyte / that
 yf Huon be so nere a kynne to the as thou sayest, he
 8 wyll shew how well he loueth the / he maye haue grete
 doloure whan before his iyen he shall se his cosyn and
 his men hanged / and than after⁴ I wyll assayle the
 cyte / and take it parforce, so that than Huon in any
 12 wyse shall not scape out of my handes, & so to be
 hanged with other / and the fayre Esclaramonde shalbe
 brynt or condempnyd to pryson / and than I wyll
 byrne all the cyte and dystroy it clene.' 'Syr,' quod
 16 Gerames, 'ye may say your pleasure, but in the
 doynge is all the mater' / ⁵whan theemperour saw *that*
 Gerames doughtyd not the deth, he was sore abashed.
 Than he commaundyd incontynent galowes to be reysyd
 20 vp so gret to hange theron the .lx.⁶ prysoners, and to
 be set on a lytell rocke nere to the cyte of Burdeux,
 to thentent that Huon and his men myght se them
 playne / therby to abasshe them / the whiche was
 24 done / so the mater restyd tyll⁷ the next day in the
 mornynge. And whan it was day Huon within y^e cyte
 rose and came to hys palays, and regardyd out at the
 wyndowes to se and beholde the ⁸host of his enemyes /
 28 and as he stode he spyed the new galowes stondynge
 on y^e rocke. Than he callyd his lordes, and sayd /
 'Syrs, neuer beleue / but yonder galowes that I se new
 reysyd is for none other entent but⁹ to hang theron
 32 my men *that* be taken, & my¹⁰ frende Gerames, wherof
 I am¹¹ sorowfull. Therefore, syrs, quykely make you redy

Directions for
 setting up the
 gallows near the
 city are straight-
 way given.

The Emperor
 vows to destroy
 Huon and his
 wife, and to burn
 Bordeaux.

The gallows
 are set up,

and Huon spies
 them from his
 palace.

He points them
 out to his lords,

¹ if. ² ere. ³⁻³ a. ⁴ wardes. ⁵ &.
⁶ fortie. ⁷ vntill. ⁸ Fol. lxxviii. back, col. 2.
⁹ for. ¹⁰ good. ¹¹ verie.

and urges them
to follow him to
the rescue.

and mount on¹ your horses / for or² they be hangyd
we wyll proue our selfe against them / loke ³to the host
warde³ & se whan they be commynge ⁴to y^e galowes
warde⁴ / & whan ye se them be redy on horsbacke, & ⁴
y^e gate open, *that* we may issue out all at ones / & let
vs neuer thynke to returne tyll⁵ we haue rescued our
men / for I thynke⁶ neuer to returne in to this cyte tyll⁵
I haue delyueryd them out of y^e handes of our enemyes.⁷ ⁸
Than they armed them a⁷ vii. M. by tale of good men
of armes, well horsyd, redy at y^e gate to departe whan
tyme cam. Now we wyl leue spekinge of Huon / &
speke of theemperour.

Seven thousand
men are armed.

12

¶ How Huon issued out of Burdeux & rescued
the old Gerames and his company, whom
themperour wolde haue hanged.

Capt. .Ci. 16

The condemned
knights are tied
together in
couples on the
following day.



Gerames weeps,
and prays to God
to have mercy on
their soules.

⁸ Hemperour, who had grete desyre that
Gerames & his company were hanged /
caused them to be brought forth by
couples, one fast tyed to another, and ²⁰
Gerames⁹ the foremost / who then ryght
tenderly began to wepe when he saw
hymselfe in that case / 'A, good lord,' quod he, 'I
requyre the haue mercy on our soules, & kepe & ²⁴
defende my good lord duke Huon / who by y^e com-
maundement of kyng Oberon shold gyue me his duchy,
and he to haue kyng Oberons dygnyte of y^e fayre after
foure yere passed / I can not say what fortune wyl fal / ²⁸
but I may wel say *that* I shall neuer come to greter
honour / yet I am comforted in that I am so olde ¹⁰&
hoore;¹⁰ it is good reason that I be content to haue lyued

¹ vpon. ² ere. ³⁻³ towards the Hoaste.
⁴⁻⁴ toward the gallowes. ⁵ vntill. ⁶ purpose. ⁷ abouts.
⁸ Fol. lxxix. col. 1. ⁹ was. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ omitted.

so longe / it is now ¹good¹ tyme that I departs out of
 this worlde.' Then themperour called to ²hym a
 knyght / & sayd, 'sir Othon, I wyl that incontynent ye
 4 take thre .M. men, & take these prysoners & hange them
 vp all vpon the galowes that were made yester nyght
 late / & if it be so that Huon yssue out, loke that ye
 quyte your selfe valyauntly / & yf ye³ nede of ony
 8 ayde, take my horne and blowe it, for I haue redy a
 poynted .x. M. men to socoure you yf nede be' / when
 Othon herde themperour he was ryght sory to haue that
 4^{commission} / for in his youth he was brought vp in
 12 the house of duke Seuyn, father to Huon, & som what
 he was of his kyn, but as then he had slayne a man,
 wherfore he fled fro Burdeux, & came & serued them-
 perour at Mayence / wherfore he was ⁵wo and ⁵sorrowfull
 16 to haue that comyssyon. Then he sayd to themperour,
 'syr, me thynke ye do yll to cause them to dye so
 hastily, better it were to abyde to se what ende your
 warre wyl come vnto / and also yf it fortune that any of
 20 your lordes to be taken here after / for one of theym ye
 myght recouer hym agayne / and yf ye slee theym / and ⁶
 yf ony of ⁷youre barons happe to be taken, they shall
 dye of lyke deth / and therefore, syr, yf ye wyl byleue
 24 me ye shall forbere sleyng of them at this tyme / and,
 syr, yf ye wyll gyue me lysence / I shall doo so moche to
 duke Huon / that for the offence that he hath done to ²
 you he shall make ⁸ amendes at youre ⁹ pleasure, and he
 28 shal go to ² some holy pylgrymage to praye for the soules
 of your nephewes and other of youre lordes that he hathe
 slayne / and he to haue with hym two hondred men
 in theyr shyrtes, and so to go to the holy sepulture at
 32 his owne charge and coste / and he to holde of you all
 his londes, and to doo you homage.' Then the lordes

The Emperor bids
 Sir Otho direct
 the hanging, with
 three thousand
 men.

Sir Otho was of
 distant kin to
 Huon, and
 regrets such a
 commission.

He pleads with
 the Emperor for
 delay.

and promises that
 Huon will make
 him amendes for
 the death of his
 nephews.

1-1 omitted. 2 vnto. 3 haue. 4-4 euill office.
 5-5 right. 6 then. 7 Fol. lxxix. col. 2. 8 you.
 9 owne.

The Emperor's
lords approve
Sir Otho's
counsel;

but the Emperor
bursts into a rage,

and swears all
who plead for a
respite of the
lives of Huon's
men shall die
forthwith.

Otho is again
ordered to
despatch Gerames
and the rest,

and he departs
to work the
Emperor's will.

that were there present all with one voyce said to¹ the
emperour, 'Syr, the counsell that syr Othon hath gyuen¹
you is worthy to be byleued; we al agree ther to, and
desyre you so to doo,'² when the emperoure herde them⁴
he was sorowfull and sore dyspleased. 'Syr,' quod
Othon, 'ye may surely knowe yf ye hange any of them
that be taken / yf Huon happe to take any of your men,
he shal neuer scape vnhangyd and drawen.' When the⁸
emperour hadde herde Othon speke he was soo troubled,
& angry that it semed by his face that for³ pure yre³
he was nye⁴ in a rage, and sayd / 'beholde, syrs, this
foole, who wolde let me to take vengeance on them¹²
that so sore hath troubled me / he hath herde me or⁵
this tyme swere and make solempne promyse that I
wold neuer returne in to my countre tyll I hadde
hanged and drawen Huon of Burdeux / for, by the¹⁶
lorde that made me to his semylytude, I knowe noo
man this day, though he were neuer so nere a kynne to
me, excepte myne owne brother / but I shal make hym
to be slayne yf he speke any more to me for respytynge²⁰
of theyr lyues / nor I shall neuer loue hym / for I
make a vowe to oure lorde god that I wyll neuer
returne in to my countre tyll⁶ I haue taken⁷ this cite
parforce.' 'Syr,' quod Othon, 'syn⁸ it is your pleasure,²⁴
I shall speke no more therof / but I byleue it wyll be
longe here after or⁹ ye fynde ony that wyll be glad to
do youre pleasure.' 'Othon,' quod themperour / 'dys-
patch the mater and reuenge me vpon the old Gerames²⁸
and vpon all his company' / 'syr,' quod Othon, 'it is
conuenyent that I doo it, syn⁸ it is your pleasure' / then
without ony more wordes he departed & toke Gerames
& the other prysoners, and wente with them towardses³²
the galowes. Gerames went before with the halter

¹ vnto. ² but. ³⁻³ verie anger. ⁴ neerehand.
⁶ ere. ⁶ vntill. ⁷ Fol. lxxix. back, col. 1.
⁸ seeing. ⁹ before.

aboute his necke, sore wepyng, and all his company after hym; so at the last they came to the place of execucion / then¹ y^e ladders were set vp / ²then the 4 hangman came to³ Gerames, & sayd / 'come on, thou olde dottarde, *thou* hast lyued longe ynough / thou shalt no more se hym whom thou louest so well / but² I hope shortely he shall bere the company wayunge in 8 the wynde' / when Gerames herde hym / he behelde hym fyersly, and sayd, 'A, thou vnhappy vyllayne, yf one of my handis were lose *thou* sholdest neuer se fayre day more / how arte thou so hardy to say or to thinke 12 so ⁴vylayn wordes⁴ of the best and moost valyauntes knyght that is now lyuyng⁷? / then Othon came to them / and ⁵herde how the hangman⁵ reuiled Gerames / & ⁶said, 'a, *thou* ⁷false rybaude,⁷ thynkest thou not that 16 this knyght hathe ynough to suffre / though thou doest not reuyle him? / yf thou⁸ were in that poynt⁹ *that* they be in, and they in the cyte of Burdeux, thou woldest soone repente thy¹⁰ wordes' / & therwith he lyfte vp a 20 staffe that he had in his hande, and strake the hangman ther with that he fell downe to the erthe, and¹¹ sayd, 'A, thou false thefe, do thyne offyce, and speke no wordes' / then¹² the hangman durst speke no more; ¹³12 then he toke Gerames by y^e halter *that* was aboute his necke, & so mounted vpon the ladder, and Gerames after hym / who¹⁴ made pyteous complayntes for Huon his good lorde / the same tyme that Gerames mounted 28 vpon the fyrst steppe of the ladder, they *within* the cyte vpon the walles perceyued it, & sawe clerely¹⁵ *that* without the prysoners were shortly¹⁶ rescued / theyr lyues were lost. then they sayd to Huon / 'syr, yf ye 32 tary any lenger your men shall be all, hanged, for

The hangman rudely accosts the old Gerames.

Otho reproaches the fellow with his wickedness,

and strikes him sorely.

Gerames mounts the ladder with a halter about his neck.

Huon's lords perceiue him from the city walls,

¹ where. ² and. ³ vnto. ⁴⁻⁴ villainous a word.

⁵⁻⁵ hearing the hangman how he. ⁶ he.

⁷⁻⁷ base slaue. ⁸ thyselpe. ⁹ case. ¹⁰ saucie.

¹¹ then he. ¹² whereupon. ¹³ but.

¹⁴ Fol. lxxix. back, col. 2. ¹⁵ euidently. ¹⁶ speedily.

yonder we se one of them is mountyd vpon the ladder,
 who hath a berd as whyte as¹ snow.' when Huon herd
 that he was sore displeased, & sayd / 'a, good lord, I
 knowe suerly² it is my true frende Gerames whom⁴
 they wolde fyrst put to dethe / therefore, syrs,³ quyckly
 let vs yssu out at the gate / for, yf Gerames be not
 quyckly⁴ socoured, the traytours wyll put hym to deth ;
 but, yf² I may come tyme ynough, it⁵ shall be derely⁸
 solde to them therwith.⁶ ⁶Huon, with .vii. M. fyght-
 ynge men yssued out at the gate so fyersly *that* the
 erthe semed to synke⁷ vnder them / theyr horses
 made such brute⁸ / and so within a shorte space by a¹²
 preuy⁹ way they cam to the place where as the galowes
 were¹⁰ / Huon was the fyrst that aryued there / ¹¹he
 aduysed¹¹ well the hangman that sholde haue hanged
 Gerames / he¹² gaue hym suche a stroke with his spered
 that he ran hym ¹³clene¹³ through, so that he fell of¹⁴
 the ladder ¹³starke¹³ deed ; so was Gerames reuenged of
 the inurye that he had done to hym before. then Huon
 sayd, 'Gerames, come¹⁵ of the ladder and arme you in²⁰
 some harneys¹⁶ of them *that* shall be here slayne' /
 Gerames thanked our lorde god & cam downe the
 ladder, and then thyder came Huons company, who
 untyed all the other prysoners / then ¹³there¹³ began a²⁴
 sore batayle / the Almaynes wolde not flye / ¹⁷Huon¹⁷
 cryed to them, & said, 'ye false traytours, youre dethes
 is¹⁸ Juced ; dere shall be solde to you the offence that ye
 haue done to¹⁹ me when ye wolde slee thus my men with²⁸
 so vylayne²⁰ a dethe / better it had ben for you to haue
 ben at Mayence²¹ hyden in the lappes of your wenches²²
 and louers.' when they vnderstode Huon, anone they

and Huon
recognizes his old
friend in direst
peril.

He bids his lords
follow him to the
rescue,

and seven
thousand fighting
men issue from
the city gates.

Huon slays the
hangman at one
blow.

Gerames leaves
the ladder.

A fierce battle
takes place.

¹ the. ² that. ³ I requyre you. ⁴ presently.
⁵ his perill. ⁶ Hereupon. ⁷ groane. ⁸ a thundering.
⁹ secret. ¹⁰ stood. ¹¹⁻¹¹ and he marked. ¹² and.
¹³⁻¹³ omitted. ¹⁴ from. ¹⁵ downe. ¹⁶ armour.
¹⁷⁻¹⁷ the which Huon seeing. ¹⁸ are. ¹⁹ vnto.
²⁰ villainous. ²¹ Fol. lxxx. col. 1. ²² mothers.

knewe hym, wherof they were sore abashed / then
 Huon mette with a knyght of Almayn, and ranne hym
 clene through, and so he serued thre other / then he
 4 drewe his swerde wher with he dyd grete meruayles /
 for or¹ he seased he slewe .xiiii. and also his men dyd
 meruaylles in armes / so that within a shorte space the
 Almaynes were dyscomfyted, so that none scaped a
 8 waye a lyue excepte syr Othon, who valyauntly de-
 fended hymselfe / but, when he sawe *that* his force
 wolde not helpe hym, he yelded hym selfe to Huon,
 and gauē hym his swerde, and cryed hym mercy, and
 12 sayde / 'syr, I requyre² you slee me not, but haue
 pyte of³ me / for⁴ I promyse you faythfully that
 agaynste my wyll I came hyther, but I was forced so
 to do by the emperour; and, fyrst, I desyred respyte
 16 ⁵for them,⁶so moche that the emperour was sore dys-
 pleased with me. I entreated for a peace to haue ben
 had⁷ bytwene you and hym, but my wordes coude not
 profyte.⁸ syr, I am your kynsman, and was brought
 20 vp in duke Seuyn, your faders house, and there I
 serued a mayster who dyd bete me, and when I felte my
 selfe stronge and of age, I was dyspleased that he dyde
 bete me⁹ without¹⁰ cause / ⁴I slew hym and fledde
 24 away, and came to Mayence, & euer syn I haue serued
 the emperoure who is come hyther to besyege you.'
 'Frende,' quod Huon, 'fere not your deth, but I pray
 you fro hens forth ayde and serue me as ye ought to do
 28 to your carnall¹¹ frende' / 'syr,' quod Othon, 'god
 shame me yf I do *the* contrary / but I shall serue you
 truly as longe as lyfe is in my body' / then Huon came
 to y^e fote of y^e ladder, where as he founde Gerames as
 32 then not vntyed / Huon kyssed and embrased hym
 oftentymes, and sayd, 'ryght dere frende, I am ryght

Huon fights with
his customary
vigour.

Of all the
Germans there,
only Sir Otho
escaped alive.

He begs Huon
have mercy upon
him.

He claims kinship
with him.

Huon promises
him pardon if he
will join him for
the future.

Sir Otho consents
to serve Huon for
all time.

¹ ere. ² beseech. ³ on. ⁴ and. ⁵⁻⁸ omitted.
⁶ In. ⁷ made. ⁸ preuaile. ⁹ so.
¹⁰ a. ¹¹ louing.

Huon congratulates Gerumes on his escape,

and bids all the prisoners, whom he frees, to arm themselves with the weapons of the Germans he has slain.

A second band of Germans attack the French while retiring to Bordeaux.

They turn about and give battle.

Huon spares none within his reach.

Sir Otho fights nobly.

glad at my herte when I se you ¹hole of body' / then he wente to the other, and lossed them, and vnbounde theyr eyen, and sayd, 'Syr, arme ²you all² with the harneys of them that be deed / for a man that is armed hath³ ⁴aduantage afore⁴ other that be not so⁵ / it was nedeful for them to be armed, god defende them from yll⁶ / for anone after they had so meruaylous a rencounter that they had neuer ⁷none suche⁷ before / for the other .x. ⁸thousande men came to reuenge them *that* were deed / they wente⁸ to haue come tyme ynoughe / but they fayled, for they came to late / for⁹ Huon had taken of all them theyr truage. When Huon saw that he had ¹²done that¹⁰ he came for / he returned hym towards the cyte / but he was soo pursued that he was nere surprysed and stopped fro entrynge in to the cyte / when Huon saw his enemyes comyng he cryed a hye¹¹ to his ¹⁶men, ¹²and sayde,¹² 'Syr, let vs turne vpon them that cometh ¹³to vs warde¹³ / to y^e entent that they shall not make theyr auauntes that they haue caused vs to flye awaye before them' / then he and all his men returned ²⁰agaynst theyr enemyes with a¹⁴ valyaunt corage / ¹⁵at that metyng many speres were broken on bothe partes, & many a knyght borne to the erth / that had neuer³ power after to releue theym selfe / there was suche ²⁴occysyon¹⁶ on both partyes that pyte it was to se it¹⁷ / ¹⁵grete meruayle it was to se Huon how he bett downe his enemyes, and claue helmes and rased them fro the hedes of *his* enemyes. he delte in suche wyse that ²⁸none¹⁸ Almayne durst abyde his strokes, he was so douted and fered; he made the thycke prese to breke a sonder and flye awaye before him; and by him was syr Otho, who that dyd many a noble dede ³²

¹ Fol. lxxx. col. 2. ²⁻² yourselves. ³ the. ⁴ of.
⁵ armed. ⁶ euill. ⁷⁻⁷ the like. ⁸ hoped.
⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ which. ¹¹ aloud. ¹²⁻¹² saying.
¹³⁻¹³ toward vs. ¹⁴ most. ¹⁵ and. ¹⁶ a slaughter.
 ¹⁷ them. ¹⁸ no.

of armes / for next Huon aboue all other that day he
bare the pryce / fynally, Huon and Othon and his other
men dyd so moche that the Almayns were chasyd to
4 theyr tentes, & many slayne¹ in the chase and sore hurte
so that they neuer rode on horse backe after / some
tyme it fortuneth *that* it is foly to aduerture to moche
forward / and to late to repent offer² / I say this for
8 Huon and his company, who were gone so moche for-
warde that in great daunger they returned to the cyte /
for y^o almayns, who were thyrti thousande men redy
before theyr tentes / when they sawe Huon & his men
12 chase theyr company, they set forth agaynst Huon.
³ When Huon sawe them / he sayd to⁴ his men / ' syrs,
it is good that we ⁵recule to⁵ our cyte / for yonder I
se comyng mo then thyrti thousande almayns as fast
16 as they can' / ⁶when Huons company sawe them, they
douted gretely, and not without cause / for they had
ben before at two grete skyrmysshes, wherby they and
their horses were wery and sore trauayled, the whiche
20 was no meruayle / ⁶by the counsell of Huon they
returnyd a fause galop towards theyr cyte / and y^o
Almayns were at theyr backe, and chased them so
quickly that more then fwe Hundred Almaynes entred
24 in to the cyte with them of Burdeux / but they that
kept the gates that daye were sage⁷ and dyscrete, for as
soone as they perceyued that Huon and his company
were entred / and with them a⁸ fyue hondred of theyr
28 enemyes / they wolde kepe theyr gates no lenger open,
for fere that theyr enemyes shold haue entred with to
grete a nombre, so⁹ for hast they cut a sonder the corde
that helde vp the purcoloyes, the whiche fell downe by
32 suche force that it fell on¹⁰ the horse of an Almayn that
was vnder,¹¹ the whiche horse was cut clene a sonder,

The Germans are
chased back to
their tents.

A third band of
Germans now
threaten Huon's
company.

His men, wearied
with the two
skirmishes, grow
faint-hearted.

They gallop back
to Bordeaux with
the Germans in
pursuit,
and five hundred
enter the city
before the gates
are closed,

but the French
have arrived in
safety.

¹ Fol. lxxx. back, col. 1. ² afterward. ³ and.
⁴ vnto. ⁵⁻⁵ recoil into. ⁶ so. ⁷ wise. ⁸ aboute.
⁹ that. ¹⁰ vpon. ¹¹ it.

The Germans
retire to their
tents.

Huon orders the
five hundred of
them who have
entered the city
to be slain
forthwith.
They pray for
mercy.

Gerames supports
their prayer.

and Huon yields
to him.

Huon bids them
be all unarmed


and sent to
divers houses on
parole.

soo that the man and the fore parte of the horse fell
withyn the gate, and the hynder parte of the horse fell
without / wherof y^o Almans that folowed after were
sorowfull and angry that they had not come thyder ⁴
soner / then they returned to theyr tentes, complayn-
ynge for the grete losse and¹ damage that they had²
that daye by the hye prowess of Huon & his men / and
also they that were entred in to the cyte were sore ⁸
abasshed when they saw themself closed³ within the
cyte. When Huon perceyued it, he had grete meruayle /
that they were soo entred in amonge his men / for he
knewe not therof, and yet he⁴ was the last that entred / ¹²
then he sayde, 'A, ye false traytours, ye shall al dye an
yll deth' / ⁵then he sayd to his men, 'syr, slee them
all' / then incontynente they alyghted and kneled
downe before Huon, and requyred hym to haue mercy, ¹⁶
& pyte of theym / as to saue theyr lyues / 'and put vs
in pryson / ⁶we be all men of a noble lygnage / & it
maye so be that by vs ye may haue peace with the em-
perour.' Then Gerames sayd to Huon / 'syr, I requyre ²⁰
you to haue pyte of them, and put them not to deth,
for so it may be that by them ye may haue peace.'⁷
'Frende,' quod Huon, 'I am content to do at your
pleasure as ye wyll haue me do' / then he commaunded ²⁴
they sholde al be vnarmed / then they al made promyse
to Huon not to departe without lycence / 'Gerames,'
quod Huon, 'I wyll that these prysoners be brought vp
in to the borow & there departed,⁸ and set in⁹ dyuers ²⁸
houses that be sure, and let them haue all thynges
necessary for theyr lyuynges' / then Gerames delyuered
theym to the keypyng of suche as he trusted / and so
eche of them was kepte in a courtoyse pryson. Now ³²

¹ Fol. lxxx. back, col. 2. ² sustained. ³ enclosed.
⁴ himselfe. ⁵ and. ⁶ quoth they.
⁷ with the Emperour. ⁸ parted. ⁹ to.

let vs leue to speke of Huon and of his prysoners, and
 1speke of¹ the emperoure.

¶ Howe the Emperoure assayled the cyte of
 4 Burdeux two tymes, where as he lost many
 of his men. Capitulo .C.ii.

8  S ye haue herde here before how
 Huon chased his enemyes to theyr
 tentes / and how it was tyme for
 hym to returne to his cyte, & how
 he was so pursued by the Almayns
that more then fyue hondred of them

12 entred in to y^e cyte, and were closed with in it, and
 the resydue returned to theyr tentes sorowfull & aūgry
 for y^e grete losse that they had. ²When they were
 returned y^e Emperoure demaunded what tydynges, &

When the
 Germans returned
 to their tents, the
 Emperor inquired
 of their fortunes.

16 how they had sped / & yf they had³ taken Huon
 quycke or deed. ‘Syr,’ quod a knyght, ‘it is folye for
 you to speke thus / for Huon is no man so lightly to
 be taken / for the .lx.⁴ men *that* ye sent to haue ben
 20 hanged be rescued by Huon, and the thre .M. men
 that ye sent *with* them are all slayne, & dyuers other
 sore hurt,⁵ in peryll of dethe, and besyde that, fyue .C.
 men of y^e best of your frendes are entred in to

They tell him of
 the rescue of their
 prisoners,
 and of the prowess
 of Huon.

24 Burdeux / for we so hastily pursued Huon & his men /
 that entrynge in to the cyte fyue .C. of our men entred
 in to the cyte, entermedled *with* Huons men, & theyr
 they be inclosed in⁶ / therefore, sir, we alow⁷ &

They advise him
 to make peace
 with Huon.

28 counsel you *that* ye agree with Huon / ⁸yf ye do not
 ye shall lose⁹ youre men / for Huon is so fell & cruell /
that he wyll ¹⁰hange vp your men as ye had thought too
 haue done his, of whom one of them was his cosyn /

¹⁻¹ returne to. ² so. ³ not. ⁴ fiftie. ⁵ and.
⁶ within. ⁷ aduise. ⁸ for. ⁹ all.
¹⁰ Fol. lxxxii. col. 2.

ye may do as it please you.' when themperour herd his barons what counsell they gaue hym, he was¹ sorowfull, and sayd, 'syr, ye do me grete wronge to requyre me to make ony peace *with* Huon / syn ye⁴ knowe well what othe & promys I haue made *that* I wyll neuer be at peace with hym / and to y^e entent that ye shal speke no more therof / knowe for trouthe *that* tho².x.M. of my nexte³ frendes were taken by⁸ Huon, I wolde rather suffre them to⁴ be slayne of⁴ a shamefull deth then to agree to any peace *with* Huon tyll I haue slayne hym / and his cyte⁵ brynt⁵ & dystroyed.' 'Syr,' quod they, 'syn⁶ it is youre plesure¹² ye may do as ye thynke best.' 'Syr,' quod the emperour, 'I wyll that ye assemble all myn hoost, and sende to my broder that he brynge all his men / and then with all our puyssaunce⁷ assayle the cyte / and¹⁶ that none be so hardy⁸ to recule backe tyl⁹ y^e cyte be taken' / this was proclaymed through the hoost / & euery man¹⁰ redy to assayle the cyte; and y^e chefe captayne was duke Sauarey, who brought all his men²⁰ in good ordre to the dykes, well furnysshed with ladders & other necessary thynges parteynyng to assaulte. The same tyme Huon and his men were vnarmed and goynge to dyner /¹¹ when he herde the²⁴ noyse and crye without / he toke a sop in wyne, and armyd hym and all his men / and euery man went to the walles to theyr defenses / and Huon and¹² the¹² olde Gerames / Othon / and Barnarde, a valyaunt knyght, ²⁸ mountyd on the toure ouer y^e gate, and the Almayns on euery parte entred in to the dykes, and rayسد vp many a¹³ ladder to the wall; and¹¹ they with in caste¹⁴ downe¹² agayne theyr ladders, so that they that were ³² on them fell downe in to the dykes,¹² soo that they had

The Emperor will not listen to their counsel.

He bids all his hoost assemble, and sends to his brothers for further aid.

Huon perceives by its noise the attacking force approach the city.

The Germans set ladders against the walls, but the French overturn them.

¹ verie. ² if. ³ neerest. ⁴⁻⁴ die. ⁵⁻⁵ be burnt.
⁶ seeing. ⁷ we will. ⁸ as. ⁹ vntill. ¹⁰ was.
¹¹ but. ¹²⁻¹² omitted. ¹³ scaling. ¹⁴ them.

- no power to releue vp agayn / for there was caste
downe on them erthe and ¹tymbre & stones, ²so that
they coude not aryse² / fyerse was y^o assaute that y^o
- 4 Almayns made, & they within made goodly² defence,
for ²they slewe with bowes & crosbowes / that pyte it
was to see the deed & hurt men that lay on the erth² /
Huon & Gerames shotte so with theyr crosbowes /
- 8 that at euery shotte they slew some man, or sore
wounded hym / ⁴longe enduryd this assault / so that
fynally the Almayns were constrayned to recule back a
bowe shotte / whereof they within were⁵ ioyfull. Then
- 12 themperour Tyrrey, beyng sorowful and full of yre⁶ /
came to his men, & rebuked them shamefully / com-
maundyng them that incontynent they shold returne
- 16 quckely assaile y^o cyte agayne² they sholde not fayle
to winne it. Then the Almayns, to please theyr lorde,
returned in gret hast with theyr ladders & pyrkes / &
- 20 water, & reysed⁷ vp ²theyr ladders² to y^o walles / but
they were no soner vp / but they within bete them
downe agayne / ⁸so that they that were vpon them
were⁸ in daunger of theyr liues / for they ²within² caste
- 24 downe tymbre & ²stones & fagottes, with fyre & hote
oyle & leade⁹ / so that y^o assaylauntes were fayne
parforce to recule¹⁰ backe / & they within shot arrowes
- 28 sore dyspleased, & duke Sauarey / when they saw none
other remedy. many were slayne and sore hurt /¹¹
themperour & Sauarey his broder, seyng that they
coude nothyng profyete, sowned y^o retrayt / & so
- 32 returned to theyr tentes, sore dyspleased for y^o gret
losse that they had / ¹²they lost that daye mo then

Both besiegers
and besieged fight
valorously,

but the Germans
at length retire.

The Emperor is
wroth with his
men,

and they return
to the attack.

But a second time
they are repulsed,

and the retreat is
sounded.

¹ Fol. lxxxi. back, col. 1. ²⁻² omitted. ³ noble.
⁴ and. ⁵ very. ⁶ rage. ⁷ them. ⁸⁻⁸ and put them,
⁹ vppou. ¹⁰ recoile. ¹¹ and. ¹² for.

Two thousand
Germans were
slain and three
thousand
wounded.

The Duke Savary,
the Emperor's
brother, thinks
the city
impregnable,

but the Emperor
resolves to
continue the
siege.

Huon thanks God
for his success,

and bids his men
be wary in the
future,

but his losses
have been very
heavy.

.ii. M. men lyenge deed in y^e felde & in y^e dykes / &
mo then .iii. M. sore hurt / then duke sauary sayd to
themperour / 'sir, methynke it is but foly to assayle
thes cite / it is stronge & wel furnysshed with men & 4
good knyghtes to defende it / wherfore we may wel
perceyue *that with* out gret damage we can not wyne
it / *without* it be.¹ by famyne / ²he *that* is lorde therof
is hardy & cruell / & to be fered & douted / for he is 8
experte in armes / wherfore it is impossible to take y^e
cyte perforce.' When themperour vnderstode him, he
was right sorowful, & made agayn new promys not to
departe thens / tyll³ he had Huon at his plesure. Huon, 12
who lytel set by y^e thretnynges of themperour, went in
to his palais, & sayd to his men / 'syrs, we ought
gretely to thanke god for y^e defence of our cyte / many
Almayns be slayne & hurte / I doute them nothyng / 16
for our cyte is stronge / or⁴ it be lost it wyll cost many
men theyr lyues / I desyre you all take good hede *that*
we be not begyled.' 'Syr,' quod they, 'we shall take
good hede therof / as well for you as for y^e sauegarde 20
of our lyues.' Thus Huon & his men deuysed togyder /
how be it, they were sore apayred⁵ / for at y^e beginnyng
they were a⁶ .xx. M. men / & then they were not
past⁷ .vi. M. Now let vs leue spekyng of them & 24
speke of themperour, who was ryght sorowful for his
losse.



¶ Howe Huon sent Habourey his messenger
to themperour to requyre peace / & of his 28
answere. Ca. Ciii.

¹ Fol. lxxxi. back, col. 2. ² for. ³ vntill.
⁴ and before. ⁵ greued. ⁶ about. ⁷ aboue.



4 **W**hen thempour had herd duke Sauerey
 his broder speke / he made a solempne
 othe / *that* what so euer fortune sholde
 fall / he wolde not departe thens,
 wynter nor somer, tyll he had won y^o
 cyte / then he sent for his rerebande / as farre as his
 empyre stretched, *commaundyng* euery man to come to
 8 him, all excuses layde a parte / & so they dyd / ¹of
 theyr *commynge* by the way I make no mencyon, but
 so longe they trauayled *that* they came *with* in a leege
 of Burdeux.² When thempour knew therof he had
 12 gret ioye, & mounted on his horse with other lordes with
 him / & rode ³& met them, & spake to them, & made
 them good chere. Thus his force encreased, & Huons
 minysshed ⁴dayly / often tymes Huon ⁵wolde yssue⁵
 16 out on ⁶his hors called Amphage / and made dayly
 many grete skyrmysshes / *somm* tyme he wan / &
 some tyme he lost / he slewe many Almayns / so *that*
 they all fered him / for there was none *that* durst
 20 abyde him / his hors was so delyuer⁷ *that* none durst
 aproche nere hym without he were slayne / & Huons
 men ⁸dyd acquyte⁸ them valyauntly / so *that* yf they
 lost at one tyme / they wanne .iii. tymes for it / but
 24 theyr force coude not longe endure / ⁹theyr enemies
 were so many & they so fewe, for² they had made so
 many issues ¹⁰out¹⁰ that they had lost many of theyr
 company / for of .xx.M. they were lefte but .v.C.¹¹ /
 28 & a .C. archers / and a .C. crosbowes to kepe theyr
 towne with all¹⁰ / wherof Huon was ¹⁰ryght¹⁰ sorowfull /
¹when he sawe that he had but .v. C. men / he called
 to hym Gerames / Othon / Barnarde / & Richar,
 32 ¹²they were all of his kynne and he sayd to them¹² /
 ‘syrs, I se ¹⁰well¹⁰ that euery daye we do minysshe¹³ /

The Emperor summons new forces.
 From the furthest parts of his empyre do they come.
 Meanwhile Huon's forces are diminishing,
 but the Germans are much afraid of him.
 He makes skirmishes daily, and if he loses once, he wins thrice;
 but his men dwindle rapidly to five hundred.
 Huon calls his chief lords together,

¹ Now. ² and. ³ Fol. lxxxii. col. 1. ⁴ diminished.
⁵⁻⁶ issued. ⁶ vpon. ⁷ cruell. ⁸⁻⁸ quit. ⁹ for.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ men. ¹²⁻¹² saying. ¹³ diminish.

wherefore ¹at length ¹we can not ²endure agaynst the
 and advices that a messenger be sent to sue for peace. emperoures force / therefore I thynke that it were good /
 that we sente to themperour to knowe yf he wyll here
 spekyng of any peace.' 'Syr,' quod they, 'we thynke ⁴
 your aduysse ryght good / ³it were good too knowe yf
 he wyll agree therto or not' / then Huon called
 Harbourey is despatched on the embassy, Habourey his messenger, and commaunded him that
 incontynent he sholde go to the emperour, & say vnto ⁸
 hym 'that yf it be his pleasure to here spekyng of any
 peace, I shall ⁴condyscende therto / and too make hym
 amendes at his pleasure / for y^e wronge and damage
 and Huon bids him promise all possible reparation to the Emperor. that I haue done ⁵him and my ⁶men. Also shewe ¹²
 hym how ⁷I wyll become his man, and do hym homage
 for all the landes *that* I haue / the whiche I was wonte
 to holde of the kyng of Fraunce / but syn ⁸I haue no
 socoure fro hym / I am dry ⁹uen parforce to purchase ¹⁶
 for my profite in some other place / & besyde *that*,
 shewe hym / *that* the v. C. prysoners that I haue of his
 men / I shall deliuer them quyte without any raunsome
 payenge / & also when lent cometh / I & a C. knyghtes ²⁰
 with me at my coste and charge / shall passe the see
 and go to y^e holy sepulture / to pray for the soules of
 his neuwes that I haue slayn / & for all other as hath
 ben slayne by occasyon of this warre.' 'Syr,' quod the ²⁴
 messenger, 'I am redy to fulfyll your commaundement,
 what so euer fall ther of' / and so ¹⁰departed, & went
 Harbourey departs, and arrives at the Emperor's tent. to themperours host, and entred in to the ryche tent /
 and then he kneled downe before themperour, & sayde, ²⁸
 'The puyssaunt ¹¹god, who on a ¹²crosse dyed to saue
 all humayne lygnage, ¹³kepe & defende from all yll /
 themperoure & all his barony. syr, duke Huon of
 He delivers Huon's message. Burdeux sendeth to you salutacion and good amyte, ³³
 requyryng you, in the honour of ¹⁴our lorde Iesu cryst, ¹⁴

1-1 omitted. 2 long. 3 and. 4 quoth he. 5 vnto.
 6 his. 7 that. 8 seeing. 9 Fol. lxxxii. col. 2.
 10 hee. 11 almightie. 12 the. 13 kinde. 14-14 god.

that he may haue peace with you / by *that* he will
 become your lege man / & do you homage, & holde his
 landes of you / and wyl delyuer quyte y^e .v. C. men of
 4 yours that he hath in pryson in the cyte / & more ouer,
 he offereth hymself and a .C. knyghtes to passe the see
 this nexte lent and to go to the holy sepulture to pray
 to our lorde god for the soules of your neuwes that be
 8 deed, & for other *that* by hym and¹ his meanes hath
 ben slayn in this warre / syr, yf it well² please you
 this to do / ye shall do a gret almes dede / for lyfe can
 not be had agayne to *them* that be deed.' When
 12 themperour Tyrrey had well herd Habourey, y^e
 messenger / he became as reed as a broude of fyre / and
 regarded the messenger fyersly, and sayd, 'A voyde
 my syght, thou fals gloton³ / but *that* I doute to be
 16 reproued, I shold cause *thee* to be hewen⁴ al to⁴ peces,
 but a messenger oughte not to be touched for any
 wordes that he can speke / but saye to thy lord / *that*
 by him & by his cause⁵ I haue⁶ had slayne⁷ mo then
 20 xx.M. men, besyde my thre neuwes and my yonger
 brother ; but by that⁸ lorde *that* dyed on a⁸ crosse to
 redeme vs all, I wyll neuer haue peace with hym tyll I
 haue hym at my pleasure / nor neuer returne agayne
 24 hider to me nor none other vpon any such message.'
 When Habourey the messenger herde the emperour,
 he was in grete fere, and wolde gladly he had ben in
 Burdeux / *then* he departed without any mo wordes⁴
 28 spekyng, and rested not tyll he came to Burdeux / ⁹he
 wente to the palays, where as he founde duke Huon /
 then he sayd, 'Syr, I haue ben with themperour / and
 shewed hym at length¹⁰ all youre message / but his
 32 answeere wyll not serue to your demaunde / for he sayd
 to me / that he wyl haue no peace with you tyl he haue

The Emperor
rages against the
envoy,
and threatens
him.

He refuses to
make peace,

and Habourey
takes his leave.

He repeats to
Huon the
Emperor's
answer.

¹ by. ² omitted. ³ varlet. ⁴⁻⁴ in. ⁵ meanes,
⁶ Fol. lxxxii. back, col. 1. ⁷⁻⁷ lost. ⁸ the.
⁹ where. ¹⁰ full.

you at his pleasure / to do with you what he wyl / and thus I departed from hym, and lefte hym syttyng at his table at dyner.'

¶ Howe Huon yesued out of Burdeux & came 4
to the tentes & fought with themperour.

Cap. C.iiii.

Huon is sore displeased,

and gives order for a sudden sortie.



¹ Hen Huon vnderstode y^e messenger he was full of yre and dyspleasure, and ⁸ sayd / 'syr, I commaunde you al in hast go and arme you / for, or² euer y^e Almayns be rysyn fro theyr dyneres, and armed I shall make them so sorowfull that they ¹² shall curse the houre that euer they were borne / for I had rather dye then to leue them in this poynt, for I wyl go serue them of theyr fyrst messe.' then euery man armed hym / and Huon lept on³ his good horse ¹⁶ Amphage / then he toke⁴ leue of the fayre Esclaramonde hys wyfe, an so departed out of Burdeux with his company, and rode towardses themperours tentes / the same tyme themperour was rysyn fro his table / and he ²⁰ had ordeyned .iiii. hondred men on horse backe to kepe y^e tentes whyles he was at dyner / then Huon and his company came so quykly that he was amonge them, or² they perceyued any thyng, & he cryed 'Burdeux,' & ²⁴ strake a knyghte with his spere clene through the body, so that he fell deed to the erth / then he ran at a nother and serued him in lyke wyse, & so he slew ²⁸ iiii or⁵ his spere brake / then he drew his swerde & bette downe men & horses / & brake the thyckest presse, so that euery man gaue hym way / and Gerames / Othon / Barnarde / & Rycher,⁶ & all his company dyde meruayles in armes / ³² so moche they

The Germans are dining, and do not perceiue the approach of the French.

Huon and his companions fight wildly, and hew down their foemen.

¹ Fol. lxxxii. back, col. 2. ² ere. ³ vpon. ⁴ his.

⁵ before. ⁶ Rychard, always so written in 1601 ed.

⁷ ard.

- dyd that *witkin* a shorte space the thre .C. Almayns that were set to kepe y^o tentes were all slayne / then Huon & his company entred in amonge y^o tentes & 4 paulyons;¹ they bete downe² tentes, & suche as they met were slayne / then y^o almayns on all partes armed them / & themperour sowned his trompettes, & armed him / he was so sorowful & angry with y^o trauel & 8 damage he was put to by Huon / that he enraged & was nere out of his wyt / for nyght & day he coulede take no rest. When he was armed, he mounted on his horse, & xx .M. Almayns with him, & they all sware the 12 deth³ of Huon / whom god defende, for, yf he longe taryed there, he shokde be in daunger of his lyfe / but he was wyse and sage⁴ in feates of armes;⁵ he loked towards the emperours tente and sawe wel twenty 16 thousande men redy to come vpon hym / then he sayd to his men / 'syr, it is tyme that we recule⁶ to oure cyte / we may wel now go without blame / ⁷we may noo lenger tary here without grete daunger' / 'syr,' 20 quod Gerames, 'we be redy to do your commaundement' / then they toke the way to returne to the cyte / but the emperour, who desyred gretly the deth of Huon, he and his men pursued Huon as faste as theyr horses 24 wolde⁸ go / and when the emperour was nere to Huon, he sayd, 'A, thou fals traytoure, so many tymes thou haste troubled & angred me that lenger I wyll not suffre the to lyue / turne towarde me, for with the 28 I wyll iust, or elles I shall slee the flyenge / I hadde rather⁹ dye then not to take of the vengeaunce for the hurtes that thou haste done to me' / when Huon herde how the emperour called him traytour, he was sore 32 dyspleased, & turned his horse towarde the emperour, and sayd, 'A, false olde churle, where as thou sayest I am a traytoure / I shall shewe the how thou lyst

The guards about the tents are all slain, and the Frenchmen make havoc among them.

The Emperor is well-nigh distracted.

With twenty thousand men he moves to the attack.

Huon orders his men to retreat.

The Emperor pursues them, and, coming up with Huon, insults him loudly.

Huon turns to do battle with him,

¹ where. ² the. ³ Fol. lxxxiii. col. 1. ⁴ discreet.
⁵ and. ⁶ retire. ⁷ for. ⁸ could. ⁹ to.

and the Emperor
narrowly escapes
death.

Huon would have
cut off his head,
but the Germans
rescue their
sovereign.

The Emperor is
filled with a
longing for
vengeance.

falsely' / then they ranne eche at other with their
speres in theyr restes, so that they met so rudely and
strake eche other on theyr sheldes by suche force that
theyr sheldes brast¹ a sonder / themperoure was a ⁴
puyssaunt prynce, so that his spere brast¹ all to peces /
but Huons spere was stronge & helde, wherwith he gaue
the emperoure suche a stroke that shelde nor haubert
coude not warraunt hym, but that y^e spere entred in to ⁸
themperours syde / so that yf he had not swarued
a syde, he had not scaped y^e deth / that stroke was so
sore that themperour fell to y^e erth in such wyse that
nere hande he hadde broken his necke with y^e fal, & so ¹²
lay in a swone. Huon, seynge themperour lyenge on y^e
erth, ³ in grete yre ⁴ & dyspleasure ⁵ desyred to haue
slayne themperour / then he drewe out his good²
swerde, & turned to ⁶him to haue stryken⁶ of his heed / ¹⁶
the whiche he had done, yf he had not ben quyckely²
rescued / but the Almaynes fro all partes cam thither /
so that they rescued themperour fro deth, and set hym
on a hors with moche payne / then he thanked our ²⁰
lorde god that he was so⁷ scaped, and made auowe
to god that he wolde neuer more fyght with Huon
hande to hande / but he wolde pursue hym to the deth,
yf he coude. 24



¶ How Huon made another issue out of
Burdeux, and toke away al the bestes that
were in the pasturs without the towne
pertaynyng to themperours hoost. 28
Cap. C.v.

¹ burst. ² omitted. ³ Fol. lxxxiii. col. 2. ⁴ rage.
⁵ he. ⁶⁻⁸ strike. ⁷ well.



4 **W**hen Huon saw that he coude do no
 more at *that* tyme, and *that* y^e Almayns
 encreased in grete nombre to haue
 assayed hym / then he spurred his
 good horse Amphage, who made suche
 lepes that it semed he had flowne in the ayre / he had
 his swerde in *his* hande, and strake therwith so gret
 8 strokes that none durst approche nere hym / thus he
 rode after his men and led them towardes the cyte as
 y^e shepherde doth his shepe, for as soone as *his*
 enemies approached nere hym, he shewed theym his
 12 shelde and spere poynt / and as he rode there came
 a yonge knyght named Gerard / ryghte hardy and
 valyaunt in armes; he was bastarde sone to the
 emperoure / who desyred greatly to wynne honoure
 16 and prayse / he sawe Huon on his good horse, and
 sawe¹ *that* no man durst approche nere² him / ³cam
 after him & cryed, 'A, *thou* fals traytour, to flye awaye⁴
 shall not auayle ⁵the, for I brynge thy dethe in the
 20 poynt of my spere, with y^e whiche I shall slee the
 fleyng without thou turne to me, for or⁶ thou scape
 me I shall cause the to be hanged in the syght of them
 within Burdeux' / when Huon vnderstode the knyght,
 24 and saw the grete hate and yre⁷ that he was in, and
 herynge howe he called hym traytoure / he thought
 and sayd to hymselfe / that he had rather dye then he
 that had sayd these wordes shold ⁸departe⁸ without
 28 felyng the sharpnesse of his spere / the whiche he
 couched in the rest and spurred his horse, who ranne
 lyke the thonder / ⁹he gaue the knyght suche an
 horryble stroke / that¹⁰ his shelde nor¹¹ armure coude
 32 saue his lyfe / for his spere persed through bothe his
 sydes, and³ was clene borne ouer his hors croupe starke

Huon flees from
the enemy at a
flying pace.

Gerard, a bastard
son of the
Emperor, pursues
and defies him.

Huon turns again
and rushes upon
him, so that he
kills him.

¹ likewise. ² vnto.

³ hee. ⁴ it.

⁵ Fol. lxxxiii. back, col. 1.

⁶ ere. ⁷ rage.

⁸⁻⁸ haue departed. ⁹ and.

¹⁰ neither. ¹¹ his.

deed / 'go thy waye,' *quod* Huon, 'thou shalte neuer
 haue power to do any man dyspleasure¹ more' / ²then
 he drewe his swerde, wherwith he delte suche dys-
 syplyne among the Almayns that all fled before hym. 4
 Gerames / Othon / and Bernarde & Rychar employed
 theyr forces and vertues ryght valyauntly / but the
 Almayns dyd so moche that Huon lost parte of his
 men, and the rest he ledde with him / oftentimes he 3
 turned and returned agaynst his enemyes / but what so
 euer force or prowes he shewed, yf he had not in hast
 gone away / he nor neuer³ one of his men hadde scaped
 without deth / for mo then .xxx. M. Almayns were 12
 nere hym, and all they⁴ desyred his deth / but god
 dyd hym that grace / that he and the small nombre that
 he had lefte entred with hym in to the cyte, and y^o
 gates⁵ closed / and themperour in grete dyspleasure 16
 retourned to his tent / and by the waye he founde his
 bastarde sone deed / for whom he made suche sorowe
 that his lordes nor his broder coude not apease hym ;
 and so he caused hym to be borne to the tentes, 20
 and was gretely complayned of all the barons / ⁶for he
 was lyke to haue ben a⁷ noble man. And Huon went
 to his palayes, where he founde the fayre Esclaramoude,
 who demaunded how he dyde. 'Ryght well, lady,' 24
quod Huon ; 'thanked be god I am returned in saue
 garde, but I haue lost many of my men ;' and therwith
 he wepte, and the lady comforted hym as moche as she
 myghte / then themperour, beynge in his hoost, 28
 knowynge for trouthe that Huon had but a small
 company in the cyte and *that* he thought he coude do
 hym but small damage fro thensforth / dyslodged and
 cam and lay nerer to y^o cyte, and dressed vp his engyns 32
 and montons⁸ to breke the walles, and made euery daye

All the Germans
 flee before him in
 fear.

But he loses many
 men at every
 onset,

and is in great
 peril.

He was fighting
 with thirty
 thousand
 Germans,

but he returns at
 length to the city
 in safety.

Huon begins to
 despair of his
 fortune.

The Emperor
 moves his hoost
 nearer to the
 walls,

¹ any. ² and. ³ a. ⁴ those. ⁵ were.

⁶ Fol. lxxxiii. back, col. 2. ⁷ verie.

⁸ mountains.

betyng¹ at the walles ; and they within defended them
 valyauntly² with theyr crosbowes ; many men, bothe
 within and without, were slayne / this syege endured
 4 fro the begynnyng of August vnto³ Eester after /
 wherof Huon was sore dyspleased, and⁴ complayned for
 the losse of his noble barons / and⁵ men that he had
 lost. Also he sawe his tours and gates sore⁶ beaten,
 8 and his enemyes⁷ before his⁸ cyte / and loked for no
 socours fro any parte / and⁹ he had with hym¹⁰ but¹⁰
 thre hondred knyghtes and a hondred men to kepe the
 cyte with all / then he called Esclaramonde his wyfe,
 12 and sayd, ' Dame,¹¹ I knowe well ye endure trouble and
 dyspleasure ynough / and therefore I pray you & ye can
 gyue me any good counsell, gyue it me¹² / for the yre¹³
 & dysplesure that I haue at my herte troubleth so myne
 16 vnderstondyng that I can not tell what to do / &¹² on
 y^o other parte I se my cyte besyeged & my men slayn,
 nor I can gete¹⁴ none apoyntment¹⁴ with themperour,
 who¹⁵ is so¹⁶ sore dysplesed with me that I can neuer
 20 haue his loue / he hath slayne my men, wherof I am so
 sorowfull that my herte nere fayleth me' / 'sir,' quod
 Esclaramonde, ' ye do grete wronge to say these wordes
 before me or¹⁷ to complayn your damages / if ye wold a¹⁸
 24 beleued me¹⁹ ²⁰ ye had gone to my brother for socoure,
 who wold haue come with you & brought²¹ such²²
 nombre of men that themperour durst not¹⁸ abyden
 you, & also to haue made ther by my brother a crysten
 28 man, for he hath byleued in our lorde god this seuen
 yere past' / 'dame,'²³ quod Huon, 'all that ye say
 myght well haue ben,²⁴ but I had leuer²⁵ haue lost thre

and assaults the
city more
violently than
before.

From August to
Easter does the
siege continue.

Only three
hundred men are
now with Huon,

and he, not
knowing what to
do, asks
Esclaramonde to
give him counsel.

She repeats her
advice that he
should go to her
brother for aid.

¹ battering. ² for. ³ to the. ⁴ verie much.
⁵ other good. ⁶ so. ⁷ lying. ⁸ the. ⁹ that.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ not aboute. ¹¹ Madame. ¹² now. ¹³ rage.
¹⁴⁻¹⁴ no agreement. ¹⁵ for he is. ¹⁶ omitted.
¹⁷ in this sort. ¹⁸ haue. ¹⁹ then.
²⁰ Fol. lxxxiiii. col. 1. ²¹ you. ²² a. ²³ Madame.
²⁴ done. ²⁵ rather.

Huon still
hesitates to
abandon his wife
and friends in so
great a danger,

but he knows, if
he has no succour,
his city and
himself and his
men will fall into
the Emperor's
hands.

He therefore
determines to
seek out his
brother-in-law.

Esclaramonde
fears that the city
must fall in his
absence,

but nevertheless
bids him depart
at once.

Huon tells her of
a device whereby
the town may be
victualled.

such cytes as this is¹ then to haue lefte you, & my lordes,
& good burgesses, whom I loue so faythfully. yf I
had but a .M. knightes to defende my cyte / *with* an
yll wyll I shall² departe fro you, for I am ³in certayne³ ⁴
that yf I go and seke for socours I shall haue payne
ynough, & ye that shall abyde here are lyke to haue
more.⁴ I know wel *that* themperour, who⁵ hateth vs,⁶
setteth all his entent to haue vs / & yf he take you, ye ⁸
shall be in grete paryll / & yf I tary here *with* you, &
go for no socour / *this* cyte wyl be taken &⁷ famished /
& both you, & I⁸ destroyed / for themperour, who
loueth vs but⁹ lytell, and not *with* out a cause, yf he ¹²
may take me I shall dye of¹ a shamefull dethe / it is
no meruayle though¹⁰ he be displeased with me / for I
haue slayn his sones & neuwes, & many of his best
frendes; yf he maye take me I shall haue no pyte ¹⁶
shewed to¹ me / & I know well *with* out I haue some
socours myne ende is at hande / wherfore, dame,¹¹ I
thynke it best that I go to your brother for socours /
for I¹² haue taryed ouer long' / 'syr,' quod Esclaramond, ²⁰
' ye speke it¹³ very late / for now ye know well that all
our brede and wyne / and flesshe / & fysshe / begyn to
fayle vs, and all¹⁴ other vytales / wherfore it shall¹⁵ not
be longe after your departure but that this cyte shall¹⁶ ²⁴
be taken and dystroyed / and the men within slayne /
and I ledde in to grete mysery / yet for all *that* I wold
not counseyle you to abyde here / but I pray you make
hast to departe.' When Huon herde her, he began to ²⁸
wepe / and abashed¹⁷ his chere to the erth, and studyed¹⁸
a lytell, and¹⁹ sayd, ' Dame,¹¹ I thynke vpon ²⁰one
thyng / the whiche to you shall¹⁶ be ryght ¹ profytable /
wherby ye shall haue vyntayle ynoughe to lyue by¹ an ³²

¹ omitted. ² should. ³⁻³ assured. ⁴ for. ⁵ so.
⁶ as he. ⁷ or. ⁸ be. ⁹ a. ¹⁰ if. ¹¹ Madame.
¹² see that I. ¹³ of this. ¹⁴ our. ¹⁵ cannot.
¹⁶ will. ¹⁷ abashing. ¹⁸ studying. ¹⁹ he.
²⁰ Fol. lxxxiii. col. 2.

- hole yere.' 'Syr,' quod she, 'of that I thanke god, yf it may so come to passe.' 'Dame,'¹ quod Huon, 'I shall tell you how this cyte may be reuytayled without² grete
- 4 losse of any men / trewe it is³ here without in the medowe there are two hondred men set there by the Emperoure to kepe y^e beestes pertaynyng to his hoost, the whiche are without nombre / what in beeffes /
- 8 keen / and hogges / and mo then x thousande shepe / the⁴ whiche beestes ⁵by the grace of Iesu, or⁵ I slepe I wyll brynge them⁴ in to this cyte / and than ye may slee them and poudere theym in salte, soo that ye shall haue
- 12 no famyn for a hole yere.' 'Syr,' quod she, 'I pray to⁶ god ye may brynge it⁷ to passe.' thus they taryed tyll⁸ souper tyme / and after when it was nyght / & that they thought that they of y^e hoost were a slepe / and
- 16 sawe *that* the wether was troublous⁹ as they wolde desyre it, he armed hym and all his men / he¹⁰ set men at the gate to defende hym at his reculyng.¹¹ Then he mounted on¹² his good horse / then¹⁰ he opened the gate,
- 20 and yssued out as preuely as he myght / and tooke the way to the medowe and came thyder / and Huon then cryed, and sayd / 'a, ye vylaynes, this pasturage is myn / I come to chalenge it / in an yll¹³ houre ye put
- 24 your beestes here to pasture; ye shall make me amendes / for¹⁴ the beestes that I fynde here in my pasture I wyll goo and pounce theym / and yf the emperoure wyll haue theym he must bye them and
- 28 make amendes for theyr forfeyt, & ye that be the kepers shall derely a bye it.'

The Emperour
has much cattile
for his hoost.

and these he will
bring into the
city.

Huon arms his
men for the
adventure,
and leaves the
city by nyght.

He challenges the
keepers of the
cattile to surrender
them to him.

¹ Madame. ² any. ³ that. ⁴ omitted. ⁵⁻⁵ cre.
⁶ vnto. ⁷ well. ⁸ vntill. ⁹ euen. ¹⁰ and.
¹¹ recoiling. ¹² vppon. ¹³ euill. ¹⁴ all.

They prepare to fight,



but Huon slays very many of them forthwith.

He and his companions kill all the two hundred keepers, save one, who escapes to warn the Emperor.

The Emperor rushes forth with his men, but the cattle had already entered the city.

Huon and his men turn upon the Germans who were in pursuit of them,


and kills many of them with his own hand.

1 Hen the keepers herd Huon speke they had grete fere / ² they thought to haue gon and taken theyr horses, & ³ to haue defended them selfe, but Huon & his 4 company gaue them no layser so to doo / then ⁴ Huon with his spere strake one starke deed, & after he slew y^e seconde / ⁵ the thyrd / & fourth / & so slewe many as long as his spere helde ; 8 then he set his hande on his swerde, wherwith he claue a sonder helmes and sheldes and bette downe men on euery syde, & Gerames / Othon / & Rycher / dyd ⁶ valyauntly. ²so moche dyd Huon and his men within a 12 shorte space that the two hondred men that kept the beestes were all slayne except one, who scaped & ran to themperours hoost ; then ⁷ he shewed themperour how Huon & his men were yssued out of the cyte, and that 16 all the keepers of the beestes were all ⁸ slayne, and y^e beestes taken and dryuen in to y^e cyte / when themperoure herde these tydynges he was ryght sorowfull, and armed hym & his men, & lept on theyr 20 horses & ranne towards the cyte to stoppe Huon fro entrynge in to y^e cyte / but or ⁹ they came thyder al y^e beestes were entred in to y^e cyte / & ¹⁰ when Huon saw themperour comynge, he sayde to ¹¹ his men, 'syrs, 24 I requyre you let vs turne vpon oure enemyes who cometh after vs / for I wold fayne shewe them how men that cometh fro foraging can rynne with theyr speres.' then they turned agaynst the Almayns so that 28 eche of them bare a man to the erth, & they drew theyr swerdes / & slew men rounde aboute them / and Huon vpon his good hors Amphage held his swerde in his hande all ¹² be sprent ¹² with y^e bloode of his enemyes, 32 wherwith he cutte of armes, legges, & handes / he was

¹ Fol. lxxxiiii. back, col. I. ² and. ³ so. ⁴ for.
⁵ then. ⁶ verie. ⁷ where. ⁸ omitted. ⁹ before.
¹⁰ Now. ¹¹ vnto. ¹²⁻¹² to be sprinkled.

more douted then the deuyll / for by his prowes he dyd
 so moche that his enemyes fled before hym and made
 hym ¹way, so that in ²the spyte² of al the Almayns,
 4 after that he and his men had slayne foure M. of his Four thousand
men lie dead on
the field.
 enemyes / he entred into the cite with all the pray of
 his beestes / wherwith themperour & his men that
 folowed were sore dyspleased for the losse that they
 8 had,³ & for that Huon was so scaped fro theyr handes / The Emperour is
sore distressed.
 and *that* he had taken away there beestes and slayne
 his men / thus as ye haue herde Huon entred into the
 cyte of Burdeux *with* all his praye.

12 ¶ How Huon of Burdeux made hym redy to
 go to seke for some socours, & of the sorowe
 that the duches his wyfe made. Ca. c.vi.

16 fter that Huon was entred in to the
 cyte, he wente to his palays, & there
 founde the duches Esclaramonde,
 who vnclased his helme & clypped &
 kyssed him, & said, 'sir, I pray you,
 20 how haue ye done?' 'fayre lady,' Huon tells
Esclaramonde of
the success of the
adventure.
 quod he, 'we haue slayn many an Almayn, & haue
 brought away y^e pray / for in ⁴all the emperours host
 we haue not left nother porke / kyne / nor moton : we
 24 haue broughte all into this cyte, thanked be god / so
 now I shall leue you in more suertye in myne absence /
 for ye haue nowe wytayle ynoughe for a hole yere.
 Nowe I wyll go to your brother / & yf I fynde that He will depart at
once on his
mission to her
brother,
but if he will not
be converted, he
will slay him.
 28 he wyl be chrystened, I shall bryng hym with me / yf
 not, I shall defye hym and slee hym without he wyll
 beleue on Iesu chryste, what so euer fortune fall'
 'Syr,' quod Esclarmonde, sore wepyng, 'haue no
 32 doubt⁵ / for it is more then .vii. yeres syns he desyred

¹ Fol. lxxxiiii. back, col. 2. ²⁻³ despite. ³ received.

⁴ Fol. lxxxv. col. 1. ⁵ of that.

Huon calls his friends together, and informs them of his purpose.

He bids them remain quietly within the city in his absence,

and warns them of their danger.

He entrusts to them the keeping of his wife and daughter.

Gerames and his companions weep on hearing Huon's words,

to be chrystenyd, wherfore, syr, I requyre you loue my brother' / 'dame,'¹ quod Huon, 'I shall do your pleasure' / then he called to hym hys preuy frendes, and sayd / 'syr, ye knowe wel what daunger and parell we 4 be in : and by-cause in all thyngys nedefull² oughte to be made prouysyon with delygens / this citey is nowe well prouyded of vytayle, wherfore ye shal not nede to make enye issuinge out without ye se ³a³ great adwan- 8 tage : and as for assawlt, yf ye defende it well it is inpreyngnable for our enemyes to wyn it⁴ / yf ye be to yeld it vp, beware what ye do / for the great hate *that* the emperour hathe agaynst vs paraduerture wyl con- 12 strayne hym to breke his promys : yf ye be taken by force, or by this meanes, ye shall all dye myserably, & my wyfe⁵ muredred ³vp³ in pryson, or elles myserably to fynyshe her dayes / and my lytell doughter, Claryet, 16 whome I loue so derely,⁶ shalbe lost, and my citey dystroyed and brought to vtter ruyn / wherfore I commaunde⁷ vnto you my wyfe & my doughter and all the rest ⁸tyl my⁸ returne agayne, the whiche shalbe shortely 20 yf I may / and I shall brynge with me suche socoure that ye shall al be ioyfull therof' / ⁹'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'god gyue grace to sende you agayne in sauegard / ye knowe wel¹⁰ ye leue vs in great pouerte and fere, wher- 24 fore we al desyre you not to forget vs,' and therwith they al wepte / then Huon sayd, 'I praye you make no suche sorowe for my departynge : for¹¹ knowe the busynes that causeth me to departe : for without I go for 28 some socoure ye know well we ar but dede / &, Gerames, I gyue you the keypyng of my wyfe and chyld / ye ar bounde to serue me trewely / for in you I haue my parfyght trust.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'haue ye no 32

¹ Madame. ² there. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ but.

⁵ bea. ⁶ shee. ⁷ commend. ⁸⁻⁸ vntill I.

⁹ Fol. lxxxv. col. 2. ¹⁰ that.

¹¹ yee.

doughte but *that* as longe as I haue lyfe in my body, I shal not fayle them in lyfe nor dethe.'

¶ When Huon hard Gerames say so, he began sore
4 to wepe / and the fayre lady Esclaramonde be gan to
make suche sorowe that¹ pety it was to see:² she
wrange hyr handes and tare hyr here, and made suche
cryes³ that euery man had pety of hyr / ⁴they comforted
8 hyr as moche as they myght: she had great cause to
wepe and to be sorowfull / for ⁵or euer⁵ Huon returned
to Burdeaux she and all they that were with her suf-
feryd so moche payne and pouerte that to shewe it wold
12 cause a harde harte to wepe for petye. And after that
Huon had thus spoke to his companye, he entered in
to his chapell, & was confessyd of the bysshop of the
citye, ⁶and was hoselyd.⁶ Then the bysshop gaue to
16 Huon a stoole that was halowed and of great vertue, &
sayde, 'syr, I requyre you, for y^e loue of our lorde Iesu
chryst / kepe well this stoole, for such an owre maye
falle that it wyl stand you in good stede.' Huon ryght
20 humbly toke it, and thankyd the bysshope. It dyd
hym good seruyse after⁷ / for on a daye as he passed
he / ⁸had therof so great nede that he wolde not a for-
borne it for .xiiii. good cities, as ye shall here⁹ after.

but Gerames
promises to
protect
Esclaramonde and
Clarjet, so long as
he liues.


Esclaramonde is
sorely grieved
when Huon takes
leave of her.

Huon is confessed
by the bishop of
the city,
who gives him a
halowed stool,

which should
stand him in
good stede.

24 ¶ How Huon departed fro the cytye of Bur-
deaux, and sayled tyl¹⁰ he came into the
hye see, & had manye great fortunes.

Ca. .cvii.

28  Hen Huon had taken the halowed
stoole, he delyuered it to his chapleine,
who was a wyse man and of a holy
lyfe, and commaundyd hym to kepe it
32 well. Then he toke .v. knyghtes to

Huon takes with
him five knyghts,

¹ great. ² her. ³ out-cries. ⁴ yet. ⁵⁻⁵ before.

⁶⁻⁶ and receiued the Sacrament. ⁷ afterward.

⁸ Fol. lxxxv. back, col. 1. ⁹ more heereafter. ¹⁰ vntill.

and a chaplain
and a clerk.

haue with hym, and his chappleyne and a clarke to
serue hym. Then Huon went to his wyfe, and kyssyd
her at hys departyng, and she fell in a swoone in his
armys, & Huon sore wepyng releuyd her, and sayd / 4
'fayre ladye, I requyre you forbere makyng of this
sorow.' 'A,¹ syr,' quod she, 'well I ought to be dolent,²
syn ye le³ue me me besegyde with them that desyrethe
your dethe' / 'dame,'⁴ quod Huon, 'dyscomfort you 8
not / for by the grace of god I shall make a shorte
retourne.' Then he clypped and kyssed her, recom-
maundyng her to our lorde Iesu chryst. Then Huon
and suche as were appoynted to go *with* hym departed 12
out of the palays, and went to a backe posterne vpon
the ryuer of Geround, where there was a shyp redy and
rychely garnyshyd with all thynges conuentyente /
then⁵ Huon clene⁶ armyd & his men enterid into the 16
shyp & had no hors with them / when Huon departed,
he deluyered his good hors to the keypyng of syr Bar-
narde his cosyn / and toke his leue of Gerames and of
all his other companye / and so lyfte⁷ vp sayle, and 20
so⁸ or⁹ it was day in the mornyng he was more then .ii.
leges fro Burdeaux. Then Huon regarded y^e citey, and
sore wepyng dyd recommaunde it to our lorde Iesu
chryste, humblye requyryng hym to haue in his saue- 24
garde his citey / wyfe / and chylde, & al other that
were within it. Thus duke Huon sayled a long the
ryuer of Gerounde, petyously complaynyng for his wyfe,
the fayre Esclaramounde, & for his fayre daughter, 28
Claryet / *whom* he coude not forget / for he had so great
dought to lese them that when he remembryd them
he wepte. ¹⁰So long they sayled¹⁰ *that* they enteryd
in to the hyghe see / ¹¹he had good cause to wepe and 32
to make¹² sorow : for he neuer entered agayne in to

Huon finally bids
his wife farewell
amid her tears.

He and his
company embark
in a ship moored
on the Garonne,
and sail away.

Huon weeps at
the thought of
having left his
wife and
daughter.

The ship enters
the high sea.

¹ good. ² sorowfull. ³ Fol. lxxv. back, col. 2.

⁴ Madame. ⁵ there. ⁶ being. ⁷ hoysed. ⁸ so omitted.

⁹ ere. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ They sayled so long. ¹¹ and. ¹² great.

Burdeaux tyll¹ the emperour had taken it, who hated duke Huon mortally. Huon beynge in his shyp thought in hymself, that² his harte gaue hym or³ he returned to the cytye of Burdeaux, that⁴ the cytye shuld be taken and his wyfe⁵ led away / wherfore⁶ he determyned in his corage, that if it so /⁷ fortunod, and if euer he returned agayn, what so euer ende came therof, he wolde sle the emperoure Thyrry, & that castell nor towne shulde not saue hym. There was a notable knyght with Huon who sayd :⁸ 'syr, leue your musyng and set⁹ your hope¹⁰ in god. he shall ayde you & socoure you in all your affayres¹¹ / he shall¹² helpe your wyfe and kepe your cytye tyll¹ ye returne / discomforte your selfe no further.¹³ thynke of god / and praye to¹⁴ hym to geue you the grace to acomplyshe your vyage / the whiche I hope ye shall¹⁵ do¹⁵ yf ye thus do' / when Huon harde hym he was¹⁶ confortyd, and thanked the knyght : and so sayled forthe tyll¹ they were far on¹⁷ the see & loste theyr ryght way / for the shyp turned on the ryght hand and loste the waye that they shulde haue sayled / and sayld in to places not knowen to enye of the maryners / wherof the patron was sore abasshed in hym selfe, without makynge eny knowleg therof /² so longe they sayled with wynd and wether that they aryued at a porte where as they founde many botes / then¹⁸ they caste theyr ancre and went a lond to refreshe them¹⁹ / then Huon called to hym the mayster of the shyp and demaundyd of hym yf he coud sayle to y^e realme of Aufamie / 'syr,' quod y^e mayster, 'I was neuer there nor I haue no wyll²⁰ to go thether / it were a folye for me to take on¹⁷ me to sayle thether,

Huon fears that the Emperor will take the city while he is away.

A knight offers him consolation.

They sail onwards and lose their way.

They arrive at a port, where they find many boats.

¹ vntill. ² and. ³ that before. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ the faire Escleremond. ⁶ therefore. ⁷ Fol. lxxxvi. col. 1.

⁸ vnto him. ⁹ put. ¹⁰ trust. ¹¹ enterpryze.

¹² will. ¹³ but. ¹⁴ vnto. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ not faile of.

¹⁶ much. ¹⁷ vppon. ¹⁸ there. ¹⁹ themselues.

²⁰ minde.

The pilot of the vessel does not know in what direction to sail,

and a new pilot is sought and found.

He warns Huon that the voyage to Aufamie, the realm of his brother-in-law, is long and perilous.

Huon is sad at the thought that a whole year must pass ere he can return to Bordeaux.

Huon and his company move into a new ship.

syn¹ I had neuer no knowlege to sayle by that straynge see. But I counsaile you² here in this porte where as ye ar nowe to hyer a nother patron that can brynge you thether.' 'frende,' quod Huon, 'I praye you to ⁴ do so moche as to gette me one' / 'syr,' quod he, 'I shall do that³ I can' / then he and Huon serchyd fro shyppe to shyppe and fro bote to bote to get a pelot / at laste they ⁴came to an aunsyent man / who sayd that ⁸ he coude well brynge them thether / and sayd how he had bene there before that tyme. 'Frend,' quod Huon, 'yf ye wyll bringe me to the realme of Aufamie I shall geue you gold and syluer plente' / 'syr,' quod the olde ¹² patron, 'I shall do your pleasure / but, syr, one⁵ I say to you / knowe for trouthe the vyage is ⁶ryghte perelous & dangerous⁶ to passe and a⁷ long vyage.⁸ it wyll be halfe a yeere or⁹ ye can com thether / and besyde ¹⁶ 16 that we muste pas by a perelous Goulfe / the whiche is reputed to be one of the mouthes of hel / for¹⁰ if by aduenture by¹¹ fortune of the wynde that we be blowen nere to¹² it we shal neuer departe / but be loste for ²⁰ 20 euer.' when Huon hard the pylot, he began to wepe and complayne for hys wyfe and his dere doughter whome he had lefte in the citeye of Burdeaux in great dought¹⁸ to be taken. For he saw well then² he cou²⁴ 24 not returne¹⁴ of a hole yere with eny socours / how be it, he lefte not his vyage / then he commaundyd his seruantis to dyscharge all his baggage and vytayles out of the one shyp in to the other / ¹⁵ 15 when the new shyp ²⁸ 28 with y^o new patron was redy in all thynges Huon entered into it. Then the newe patron demaunded of the olde maryner the cause why thei came thether and fro whence they came. 'Syr,' quod he, 'trew it is we ³² 32

¹ seeing. ² that. ³ what. ⁴ Fol. lxxxvi. col. 2.
⁵ thing. ⁶⁻⁶ very dangerous for. ⁷ verie. ⁸ for.
⁹ ere. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹ or. ¹² vnto. ¹³ daunger.
¹⁴ for the space. ¹⁵ and.

came from the citye of Burdeaux / the whiche stonde the
 vpon a notable ryuer, and when we were entered in to
 the see / a sore wynde rose vpon vs in suche wyse that
 4 we were constrained to abandon our shype to the wynde,
 and wether, and fortune of the see / the whiche hath
 brought vs hether' / 'frend,' quod the new patron /
 'as sone as ye were out of the ryuer of Gerounde, yf ye
 8 had turned your ¹sterne towards the sirode,² ye hadde
 neuer comen hether, and within a moneth ye shulde
 haue com to the realme of Aufamie, where as now ye
 be³ far of' / when Huon vnderstode the cause of theyr
 12 comynge thether, he was ryght sorowfull and sore dys-
 pleased yf he coude haue amendyd it. But his dys-
 pleasure coude not ayde⁴ him : but rather hynder hym /
 therfore he let it pas, and so toke leue of hys fyrst
 16 patron, and lyfte vp theyr ances and sayles : and when
 they were in the see the wynde arose / and encreased
 more and more ⁵in suche wyse that they were more
 then⁵ .vi. wekys that y⁶ wynde chaungyd not, so that
 20 yf god had sufferyd the wynd to haue continued one
 monethe or .vi. wekys lenger, they had com to the
 place where as they wolde haue bene. But or⁶ they
 came there, they sufferyd moche payne / for there rose
 24 vpon them suche a wynde⁷ that they were forced to
 auayle theyr sayles. The heuen waxed darke, the mone
 was couerid / the tourment was great and maruaylous,⁸
 the waues of the se were of a great heyghte and orryble⁹
 28 to beholde / whereby, whether they wolde or not, they
 were constreyned to go as the wynde wolde lede them /
 theyr fortune was so¹⁰ terryble / that there was neuer
 sene suche a¹¹ storme before / wherof Huon and his men
 32 and his patron were ¹²sore abashed,¹² and specyally the

The old mariner
tells the new
pilot of the
previous voyage,

and the latter
shows how their
old ship came to
stray from the
right course.

Huon sets forth
again in his new
ship,

and encounters
mighty storms.

¹ Fol. lxxxvi. back, col. 1. ² sea roade. ³ verie.
⁴ helpe. ⁵⁻⁵ for the space of. ⁶ ere. ⁷ and tempest.
⁸ dangerous. ⁹ terrible. ¹⁰ great and.
¹¹ mightie. ¹²⁻¹² greatly afraide.

The pilot is
sorely discomfited,

and knows not
whither he is
going.

At length the sun
appears,

and the winds
abate.

The ship goes
with the wind,
as none knows in
what direction to
guide her.

patron more then Huon was / he was sore dyscom-
forted / and peteouslye he called on our lorde Iesu
chryste / requyrnge hym to bryng them to a good
porte / there was nother maryner nor patron but *that*¹ 4
were sore abasshyd,² nor they wyste not where they
were. They were in this tourmente³ the space of .x.
dayes, In¹ the whiche tyme they neuer saw the ⁴clere-
nes of the sonne: for the darkenesse that was there as 8
then / the which⁵ greatly annoyed⁶ them. And when
it came to the xi day, and that the tourment and wynd
began to abate and the see⁷ pesable and styll / where
with⁸ Huon and his companye were well comforted: 12
the heuen clered vp and the⁹ sonne cast out his rayes
alonge vpon the see / then¹⁰ when the master¹¹ sawe
the fortune of the see, and the great tourment began to
sease, he caused one of the maryners to mounthe vp into 16
the toppe to se yf he myght se¹² any lond / but he coude
se none, wherof the patron was sore¹³ abasshyed & sayd
how¹⁴ he knew not ¹⁵wher¹⁵ he was, for he neuer saylyd
in that¹⁶ partyes / and sayd to Huon, 'syr, it is fyfty 20
yeres syn¹⁴ I fyrste vsed the see / but yet I neuer sayled
in these partyes, wherof I haue great maruayle' / when
Huon harde that he was sore dyspleasyd and sayd /
'syr, let vs take the aduantage of the wynde and let 24
our shyppe dryue vnder the conducte of our lord Iesu
chryst. I hope that our lorde god wyll not suffer vs
to be pershysshed in this se.' 'Syr,' quod the patron,
'I¹⁷ agre well to your sayinge, and so let vs do' / then 28
they turned theyr helme and toke the wynd in to theyr
ful sayle / the wynde was good and fresshe and the see¹⁸
meke & pesable / so that within a shorte tyme¹⁹ they
had sayled a great iourney. Then Huon called on²⁰ our 32

¹ all. ² afraide. ³ for. ⁴ Fol. lxxxvi. back, col. 2.

⁵ did verie. ⁶ annoy. ⁷ waxed. ⁸ therewith.

⁹ glorious. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ of the shippe. ¹² discerie.

¹³ greatly. ¹⁴ that. ¹⁵⁻¹⁶ in what country.

¹⁸ those. ¹⁷ do. ¹⁸ very. ¹⁹ space. ²⁰ vpon.


lord god and helde vp his handes towardes the¹ heuen,
 & sayd / ²very god, who in this ³worlde transetory
 woldeste³ wochesaue to be borne in the wombe of a
 4 maid, and after ⁴here reygned⁴ .xxxii. yeres, and then
⁵reseyuyd⁵ dethe and passyon vpon a frydaye / and after
⁶rose⁶ from dethe to lyfe and wente into hell and drewe
 out ¹the¹ sowles / out of ¹the¹ paynes infernall⁷ / syr,¹
 8 ⁸as I beleue that this is trewe, I requyre the to haue
 petye and compassyon of⁹ vs & gyue vs grace ¹⁰to scape
 safely¹⁰ out of this perelous see / and to kepe and saue
 my ryght dere¹¹ wyfe Esclaramonde & my chylde : and
 12 my noble lordes whome I haue lefte in Burdeaux in
 great perell of theyr lyues, and gyue me that¹² grace
 that I may brynge with me suche socours and ayde that
 thereby to¹³ brynge them out of the daunger that they
 16 be in.'

Huon puts his
 trust in Christ.

¶ How Huon aryued on the perelous Goulfe,
 wher as he spake with Iudas, and howe he
 aryued at the porte of the Adamant.

20

Ca. .Cviii.

 Hen Huon had made his prayers to
 god / he behelde in to the see and sawe
 a farre of / lyke a great pese of can-
 24 was / and therby he harde as ¹⁴great a
 noyse as though there had ben a
 thowsande smethes and a thowsande carpenters and a
 thowsande great rynnynge riuers to gether,¹⁵ betynge
 28 and labourynge.¹⁶ ¹⁷Huon, who harde this great noyse :
 hadde great fere therof, so that he wyste not what to do, and grows fearful.

Huon looks
 ahead.

He hears a
 thunderous roar,

¹ omitted. ² Thou. ³⁻³ transitorie world diddest.

⁴⁻⁴ afterwards diddest raigne heere vpon earth.

⁵⁻⁵ didst suffer. ⁶⁻⁶ that didst rise. ⁷ Even so.

⁸ Fol. lxxxvii. col. 1. ⁹ vpon.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ that we may safely escape. ¹¹ and louing. ¹² the,

¹³ I may. ¹⁴ Fol. lxxxvii. col. 2. ¹⁵ all.

¹⁶ (tabourynge in original.) ¹⁷ to gether.

and so were al tho¹ that were in his compayne / the patron commaunded a maryner to mounte vp into the toppe² to se what thynge it was that made all that noyse / and so he dyd,³ and behelde that waye / and at 4 last he parseyued the daungerous Goulfe, wherof he had harde often tymes spoken ⁴of⁴ / wherof⁵ he had suche fere that nere hand he had fallen downe into the see / he came downe and sayd to⁶ the patron, 'Syr, we be al 8 in the way to be lost, for we be nere one of the Goulfes of hel' / wherof Huon and the patron and all other had suche fere that they⁷ trymbelyd. 'Syr,' quod the patron, 'knowe for trougthe it is inpossyble to scape 12 out of this perelous Gulfe / for all y^e sees and waters and ryuers there assemblethe to gether / and perforce we muste passe that waye' / when Huon harde that,⁸ he began petyously to complayne and sayd / 'a, swete⁹ 16 wyfe Esclaramonde, I se nowe clerely that our loues must departe / the beaute and y^e bounte that is in you I can not forget. Alas! I shall neuer se you.¹⁰ I praye to our lorde Iesu christ to gyue you that grace to 20 be agreyde withe the emperoure Therry to the entente that in peas and reste ye maye vse the resedewe of your lyfe / for as for me I shall neuer brynge you eny socours or ayde.' Then he studyed a season and then sayd,¹¹ 24 'good lorde, I thanke the, syn it pleaseth the that I shall pas out of this worlde, I humbely requyre the to receyue my sowle into thyne han¹²/des. as for the¹³ body and lyfe I care lytell for / synne¹⁴ it pleaseth the 28 that I shal thus ende my dayes.'¹⁵ Then Huon lefte his wepyng and the wynde seasyd and the sayle abated: yet neuer the lesse, the shyppe styll went forthe a lone in such wyse as thoughe it had flowen on 32

The ship approaches the gulf, that forms one of the gates of hell.

The pilot fears that they will not pass that way in safety.

Huon addresses his wife,

and prepares himself for death.

The ship goes nearer to the perilous waters.

¹ those. ² of the mast. ³ and looked round about him.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted. ⁵ and thereof. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ all.

⁸ then. ⁹ and louing. ¹⁰ more. ¹¹ againe.

¹² Fol. lxxxvii. back, col. 1. ¹³ my. ¹⁴ seeing.

¹⁵ and depart this life.

y^e see / 'Syr,' quod the mayster,¹ 'ye maye se clerely²
 that we nede not to trawaile our selfe to gyde our
 shyppe / for the Goulfe that is so nere vs drawethe the
 4 shyp to³ hym in suche haste as ye maye see. ⁴Anone
 ye shall se that we shall touble therin' / 'mayster,'
 quod Huon, 'it is conuenyente⁵ that we abyde the
 aduenture and fortune of the see, such as our lorde god
 8 wyll sende. lette vs truste in hym, and desyre hym
 that his pleasure be fulfilled: ⁴more I can not ⁶saye,
 for agaynste hym we can not⁶ stryue.' Then Huons
 chapelayne confessen them one after another.⁴ Then
 12 incontynent the great noyse seasyd. For⁷ they came
 thether at a good poynte / for the⁸ same tyme as they⁹
 fortune was y^e gulfe was full and playne / so that a
 shyppe myght pas ouer it without daunger as well as
 16 in a nother place of the see / ⁴when the patron sawe
 that, he sayde to Huon, 'Syr, we oughte greatly to
 thanke our lorde god / for we ar nowe come at suche
 a tyme that the Goulfe is full and playne, so that we
 20 maye passe ouer suerly *with* oute any daunger' / when
 Huon harde *that*, he was ryght loyfull and all wepyng
 he knelyd downe and so dyd all the companye, and
 dewoutly they thanked our lord god that he had sent
 24 them that⁹ grace. Then Huon rose vp and saw besyde
 hym a great pese of canwasse. And the waues of the
 see / betyng agaynste it *with* great vyolence / wherof
 he hadde great marueyle. For the waues of the see
 28 bet ¹⁰so sore agaynste the clothe and with so great
 vyolens: that they reculed backe / & for all the
 betyng of the see agaynste the canuas yet it brake not.
 Then Huon harde a wayse cryenge on hye, ¹¹petuously¹¹
 32 complaynyng, saynge, 'O, very god, in an yll oure I
 was borne when I solde the pusuant god who ded me

The gulf draws her towards the danger.

Happily the gulf was very full, so that ships might pass near it in safety.

Huon and his company kneel and thank God for their salvation.

A piece of canvas is seen above the waves.

and a piteous voice is heard, complaining of much evil fortune.

¹ of the shippe. ² evidently. ³ vnto. ⁴ and.
⁵ now. ⁶⁻⁶ omitted. ⁷ But. ⁸ verie. ⁹ good.
¹⁰ Fol. lxxxvii. back, col. 2. ¹¹⁻¹¹ and pitifully.

It tells how
Jesus was sinfully
sold for thirty
pence,

and how he who
did the deed was
blinded by the
devil.

The pilot asks
who it is that
makes the pitiful
complaint,

but no answer is
vouchsafed.

Then Huon
repeats the
question.

that grace¹ as to take me as one of hys dyceyples & apostelles / and for the goodnes that he dyd me I re-
deryd hym an yll² rewarde for the dewyll : the enemye
of all humayne lynage enteryd into my body, y^o whiche ⁴
was ful of synne / and exortyd me to selle my god &
good lorde / for .xxx. pens of money that was then
corante in the countre of Iudee / and, vnhappy that I
was, yf I had trusted in his great marce all the trespas ⁸
that I had done had bene forgeuen me. But pryde and
mysbeleue and wanhope³ that was in me wit^h the
deuyll : who blyndyd myne vnderstondyng,⁴ wolde
not suffer me to haue enye hope of grace or pardon for ¹²
my trespas. For of my synne I neuer had repentaunce.
And the deuyll doughtyng to haue loste me put me in
to dysparasyon, wherby I loste ⁵goddes grace.⁵ For yf
I wolde haue axed marcy of my lord god he wolde ¹⁶
haue pardoned me of all the trespas that I had com-
mytted agaynst hym. Alas!⁶ caytyue that I am, fro
hense shall I neuer departe.⁷ ¶ when the mayster of
the shyppe harde this woyce / he demaunded of hym ²⁰
and sayd / 'what arte thou that thus peteously com-
playneth? I commaunde the to shewe me ⁸yf⁸ there
be any man leuyng in this worlde that can ayde and
socoure the, and caste the out of the⁹ payne that thou arte ²⁴
in : ' when the voice hard hym, he spake no mo wordes
nor gaue¹⁰ none answer.¹¹ Then Huon ¹²awaunsed
hymselfe to the bourde of the shyppe,¹³ desyrous to know
what thyng it was that made that peteous¹⁴ complaynte, ²⁸
and sayde, 'Thou that so sore doste complayne,¹⁵ I con-
iure the in the name of our lorde Iesu chryste and by
all his powre, and by the glorious¹⁶ vyrgyn saynt Mary

¹ fauour. ² euill. ³ false hope. ⁴ and.

⁵⁻⁶ the grace of god. ⁶ poore.

⁷ but alwaies to remaine in this torment and paine.

⁸⁻⁸ and whether. ⁹ torment and. ¹⁰ made.

¹¹ at all. ¹² Fol. lxxxviii. col. 1. ¹³ being. ¹⁴ pitifull.

¹⁵ and mourne. ¹⁶ blessed.

his mother / and by all the sayntes & holy aungelles
and arcangelles : that are in y^e realme of paradysse /
and by all that euer god ¹made¹ in heuen and in erthe /
4 *that* thou answeere and shewe me what man thou arte,
and who hathe put the here² / and wherfore thou art
here : and wether thou maysto come to vs or not : &
what is thy name : and why that this canwas is here
8 set / wherfore it seruethe : ³and yf euer it may be put
fro the.³ And also shew me yf euer thou shalte
departe⁴ hens or not.

¶ When this woysse had harde Huon coniuere hym
12 in such wyse, it answered hym shortely and sayde :

'O thou mortall man that haste coniuered me so sore :
and ⁵a⁵ desyryd⁶ to know my name, I shall shewe ⁷the ;
know⁷ for sartayne that my name is Iudas, & ⁸am the⁹

The reply comes
that it is Judas
Iscariot who is
speaking.

16 same man that solde¹⁰ Iesu Chryste to the Iues for
.xxx. pens than beyng corante¹¹ in the countree of
Iudee / & deliueryd into theyr handes my ryght dere
lorde and mayster, who so moche ¹²honoure had done to¹²

20 me, as to ¹³holde me *with* hym¹³ as one of his apostelles,
and by a false and faynte loue I kyssed hym on the
mouthe⁶ to shewe the Iues wiche he¹⁴ was. And after

He recites how
he grieved to see
his Master injured
after he had
betrayed Him,

I saw hym beten and yll intretyd as ye may here¹⁵ in
24 the holy scryptures & Ewangelystes : who ¹⁶of his
passyon hathe made mensyon¹⁶ / and when I sawe how
I had betrayed my mayster, I was sorowfull¹⁷ and sore
dyspleasyd ¹⁸but I neuer durst cry hym marcy / wh[e]rein

but dared not ask
Him for mercy.

28 I dyd¹⁹ great foly / for he was so petuous²⁰ and full
of marcy,²¹ yf I had cryed hym marcy he wolde²² afor-
geven me / but the dewyll, whiche is ennemye to all

¹⁻¹ hath made and created. ² in this miserie.

³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ from. ⁶⁻⁶ also hast. ⁶ for.

⁷⁻⁷ vnto the. ⁸ I. ⁹ selfe. ¹⁰ our lord. ¹¹ money.

¹²⁻¹² honoured. ¹³⁻¹³ account. ¹⁴ he he *in original*.

¹⁵ read. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ therein haue made mention of his passion.

¹⁷ at my hart. ¹⁸ Fol. lxxxviii. col. 2. ¹⁹ commit.

²⁰ pitifull. ²¹ that. ²² haue.

He strangled
himself upon a
tree,
and his soul was
set in this place
to remain there
for ever.

Tormented unto
death, Judas
cannot die.

The canvas, on
which he lies, was
given him by God
to save him from
the wind on the
right side,
because he once
gave away such a
canvas in charity
for the love of
God.

Huon advises
Judas to ask for
God's mercy even
yet.

vmayne creatures, wold not suffre me to do it. But I went
and strangelyd and hangyd my selfe on a tree.¹ when
I was dede my sowle was taken and set in the plase
where as ye see me now : and here I shall be² for euer 4
in tourmente and ³in³ payne / for neuer shall I departe
from hens : for nowe it is to late to call for grace, for ⁴y^o
dome⁴ is geuen vpon me : wherfore I do and muste suffer
this tourmen & payne :⁵ for all the waters and ryuers of 8
y^o world doth assemble together here, there⁶ as I am in
this Goulfe / wher I am so⁷ beten and tourmented by
the great waues and course of the great ryuers. Thus
I am tourmented and can not⁸ dye, nor neuer come out 12
of this tourmente nor payne / this Canwas that ye de-
maunde wherto it ⁹dothe serue,⁹ and whye¹⁰ it is here
set, know for¹¹ trouthe, that on a day I gaue it for the
loue of god / nor I neuer gaue after eny thyng for goddes 16
sake, as longe as I leuyde / and therefore when I was
set here, our lorde god wolde *that* the good dede that I
had done in geuyng this canwas for his sake, shulde
not be vnrewardyd : therfor our lorde god wold that 20
this Canwas shulde be set on my ryght syde, to the
entente¹² to saue me from the wynde, and from the
great waues of the see that¹³ cometh so boysteously a
gaynst me / as ye haue sene how they bete agaynste 24
this Canwas / I had no grace to aske marcy of our
lorde god for my trespas, the deuyll was so great withe
me / wherfore let euery man take ensaple by me, and
aske marcy while he haue space.¹⁴ ¹⁴Thus I haue 28
shewed you all my dede.¹⁵ 'Iudas,' quod Huon, 'I
belyue yf that *thou* wilt yet crye to god for marcy he
wyll haue marcy and pety of¹⁶ the.' 'Nay, nay,' quod
Iudas, 'to praye can not awayle me, for I am dampned 32

¹ and. ² remaine. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴⁻⁴ iudgement.
⁵ continually. ⁶ heere euen. ⁷ sore. ⁸ by no meanes.
⁹⁻⁹ serueth. ¹⁰ wherfore. ¹¹ a. ¹² for. ¹³ here
¹⁴ Fol. lxxxviii, back, col. 1. ¹⁵ state. ¹⁶ on.

for euer / and yf ye wyll beleue me be ware,¹ tary not
 here to long, for yf ye do ye shall neuer departe hense
 for the Goulfe, ²the² whiche is nowe full and playne,
 4 it wyll not reste³ long but *that* y^o see wyll issue out, &
 all the ryuers with in it / ye were happy that ye came
 at the owre that ye dyd. For anone the waters wyll
 Issue out with suche a bowndaunce / that the waues
 8 that wyll ryse shall seme lyke hye mountaynes: it is
 more then two hondred yeres synne there passyn any
 shyppe this way / but that men, shyppe and all, were
 swallowed in to the Goulfe / wherfore, Huon, I counsayle
 12 the that incontynente thou departe hense / without
 thou wylte be lost for euer; it is tyme that thou depart
 hens whyles the Goulfe is full / it will not longe rest,
 but that the waters wyll Issue out with suche brute
 16 and noyse, that yf ye be .xv. leges of ye shall well here
 the tourmente that it wyll make. If ye had comen but
 halfe an owre soner then y^o dyd ye had neuer scaped
 the daunger therof.'

20 ¶ When Huon vnderstode Iudas, he hadde great
 maruayle / he¹ Ioyned his handys towarde the heuen :
 thankyng god of the grace that he had sente hym /
 Then Huon desyred y^o patron that they myght departe
 24 thense in hast. 'Syr,' quod he, 'it shall be done.' Then
 they drewe vp theyr sayles, and so departyd / they hade
 not sayled a leege but that they sawe a farre of great
 brondis of fyre brynnyng⁴ Issuyng out of y^o Goulfe so
 28 longe and so hye that they had nere hande come to
^btheyr shyppe. And the waues that Issued out of y^o
 Goulfe were as hye as mountaynes, and they aproched
 so nere⁶ theyr shyppe that they⁷ were nye⁷ perysshyd for
 32 theyr shyppe was nere hand full of water, so that they
 had moche to do to lade out the water, and were fayne

Judas declares
 that he is for ever
 damned,

and urges Huon,
 as he loves life,
 to hasten away
 from the perilous
 gulf.

The pilot hurries
 the ship away,
 and sees behind
 him burning fires
 issuing from
 the gulf.

¹ and. ²⁻³ omitted. ³ continue. ⁴ burning.

⁵ Fol. lxxxviii. back, col. 2. ⁶ vnto.

⁷⁻⁷ had like to haue.

At a great pace they passed on, for the water drove them onwards.

No land is in sight for many weeks.

At length a high rock with a thick wood, and a white house upon it, is seen afar off.

They sail in that direction,

to abate theyr sayle. For¹ the water that Issuyd out of the Goulfe draue them so rudely² that a byrde coude fleye no faster then they wente. In that case they were a monethe, and durste neuer hoyses vp sayle / 4
³Thus they draue a greate season without seyght⁴ of any londe / then Huon called vpon god, and sayde / 'A, very god, I hadde rather haue taryed styll in myne own countre, and haue taken suche fortune as it shulde / 8
 a⁵ pleased the to sende me : then here to be loste in this straunge see. A, lady Esclaramond, I pray to⁶ god⁷ kepe you and Claryet, my doughter / ⁸I thynke I shal neuer se you more.' Thus Huon complayned 12 saylyng in the see in fere of his lyfe.¹ Thus they were in the daunger of this Goulfe .v. wekys, and neuer coude se londe, wher of they were in great fere / often times they prayed to our lorde to haue petye of them. 16 Then Huon desyred the patron to mounte vp to y^e maste / to se yf he myght se any londe.¹ The patron, who greatly desyryd so to do, anone he mounted vp and regardyd on all partyes to se yf he myght spye any 20 londe. at last he sawe afarre of an hye rocke / and on y^e heyght therof they sawe a thicke wode, and at the enter of the wode he sawe a lytell howse / wherof he thankyd god, and descendyd downe and shewyd Huon 24 what he had sene, and sayde / 'syr, yonder, a far of, I haue sene a great rocke, & on y^e heyght therof a great thicke wode, & therein I haue sene a lytel house, or hermy⁹tage ; the howse is whyght, I can not tel 28 what yt is³ / by the grace of god or¹⁰ yt be nyght we shall take⁷ londe there and refresshe vs¹¹ / when Huon hard that he was ryght ioyfull, and thankyd god. Then they drewe to that parte, and had good wynde and a 32 fresshe / wenyng to haue come thether the same.

¹ and. ² swiftly. ³ but. ⁴ seeing. ⁵ haue.
⁶ vnto. ⁷ to. ⁸ for. ⁹ Fol. lxxxix. col. 1.
¹⁰ ere. ¹¹ our selves.

nyght, but they sayled .iiii. dayes and .iiii. nyghtes,
 and coude come no nerer to the woode then they were
 before, wherof they had marueyle / it semed to them
 4 euer that the wode and the howse rose vp hygher and
 hygher / ¹then they coud not tell whether they went /
 yf they had knowen they wold not haue gone thether
 for all the golde of ²the worlde / for yf god had not
 8 had petye of them they were all lykely to haue ben
 lost / for the plase that they sawe a farre of was a
 castell, and therin cloyd the rock of the Adamant :
 the which castell was daungerous to aproche / for yf
 12 enye shyppe come nere it and haue any Iron nayles
 within it, and ³a shyppe come within the syght therof,
 the Adamant wyll drawe the shyppe to ⁴hym. And
 therefore in those partyes the shyppes that sayleth by
 16 that see ar made and pynned with wooden nayles, and
 without any maner of Iron, otherwyse they be loste
 and perysshid. For the propertye of the Adamant is
 to drawe Iron to hym / thus Huon and his company
 20 were there the space of .vi. dayes, goynge and saylynge
 about the rocke of the castell of the Adamant. But
 yf they had had a good wynde the fyrst daye, they had
 aryued euen at the whyghte howse, that they sawe
 24 fyrste in the woode / the which was the fayrest and most
 rycheste howse in y^e worlde, within the whiche was so
 moch golde and rychesse that no man leuinge ⁵coude
 esteme the walue therof / for the pyllers within that
 28 howse were of Cassedony / and the walles and towres of
 whyghte Alablaster. There was neuer dyscryued
 in[s]cripture nor hystory the beauty of such a castell as
 this was, for whenne the sonne cast his rayes on it it
 32 semyd a far of to be of fyne christal, it was so clere
 shynynge. In this castell was nother man nor woman :
 but dede mennes bones lyenge at the gate of this

but it seems to
 recede before
 them.

They little knew
 that they were
 approaching the
 rock of the
 Adamant, which
 is very dangerous.

It draws towards
 it all ships with
 iron nails in it.

Therefore ships
 sailing in that sea
 should be made
 with wooden
 nails.

The white house
 or castle, how-
 ever, is full of
 fine gold,
 and very beauti-
 fully wrought.

But only dead
 men's bones lie
 within it.

¹ and. ² in. ³ that. ⁴ vnto.

⁵ Fol. lxxxix. col. 2.

castell / at the porte there lay many shyppes, so that
their mastes semyd a far of to be a great foreste.

¶ How Huon deuysed withe his patron in
regardingyng of the castell of the Adamat. 4

Ca. .C.ix.



The castle is
impregnable.

The thick wood
which the
mariners thought
they saw from
afar, was made of
the masts of ships
attracted by the
Adamant, and
wrecked.

Huon's ship
strikes her sails,

but she
approaches the
rock at a swift
pace, and the
sailors cannot
turn her course
aside.

His castel was set on a rocke of the
Adamant stone: for¹ the eest to the
weest was not so stronge a castell / 8
for yf al the worlde had come before
it, and men *within* to defend it, coude
neuer be won by eny mortall men :

the forest that² semyd to them a far of were y^e mastes 12
of ³the³ shyppes that had bene there aryued by con-
straynte of the Adamant / but for all y^e shyppes that
were there / there was no ⁴leuyng man / but⁴ there
lay ⁵the⁵ bones of them⁵ that had dyed by famyne 16
& rage / Huon and his company had great maruayle /
for when they aproched nere to y^e castell, they were
forsyd to stryke sayle / for the Adamant drewe the
shypp so sore *that*, yf they had not quickly stricken 20
theyr sayle, the⁶ shypp had broken all to peses, &
they all⁷ drowned in the see. The shypp wente
so faste that it was maruayle⁸ to consider it.⁹ Then
the patron of the shyp, who was wyse & sage,¹⁰ 24
knew anone how ¹¹they were nere to the castell of the
Adamant, because theyr shypp went so fast without
sayle thetherward / faster then yf they had had a full
wynd in all theyr sayles / nor⁹ they coude not tourne 28
theyr shypp no¹² way fro that part,¹³ they wold gladly
haue returned ³yf they had coude,³ but it wold not be

¹ from. ² so. ³⁻³ omitted.

⁴⁻⁴ man liuing therein, yet. ⁵ men. ⁶ their.

⁷ been. ⁸ maruailous. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ discreet.

¹¹ Fol. lxxxix. back, col. 1. ¹² any. ¹³ for.

bycause the Adamant drew ¹so sore the Iron¹ to hym
 by nature; when the patron sawe that clerely² they
 shold³ aryue there, he began peteously to wepe,⁴ and
 4 sayde to Huon / 'syr, our lorde god hathe created vs in The pilot warns
 Huon that he
 must now be
 prepared to die.
 this worlde to lyue and to dye / and there is none but
⁵that⁵ muste passe the passage of this, and bycause we
 knowe suerly that no creature can scape that / wher-
 8 fore⁶ we ought to be contente with that⁷ can be none
 otherwyse / syr I say this that ⁸dethe to abyde, we
 must be comforted, for here⁵ we muste all dye / when
 Huon harde the patron, he had great maruayle, and The knight does
 not understand
 the saillor's words,
 12 sayde / 'patron, I praye you shewe me the cause why
 ye say thus? / in this castell that we se before vs, is⁸
 there⁹ Sarasyns within it, or spyrytes of hell that hathe
 sworne our dethe / suerly I dought them not, make good
 16 chere, be nothyng abashed, take ¹⁰corage in you,¹⁰
 for by the ayde of our lorde Iesu chryst, and by the and longs to
 attack the little
 castle.
 forse of myne armes and good sword, if ther be eny
 man within the castell that wyll resyste agaynste vs, I
 20 assure you I shall sone delyuer¹¹ hym. Anone ye shall
 se what I can do / I neuer saw in all my lyfe so fayre
 a castell / I cannot tell yf¹² they within wyll defend vs
 the entre in to the porte¹³; yf they wyll haue any
 24 trybute of me, I shall gladly pay it, so they demaund
 no thyng elles / and yf I se¹⁴ they wyll demaunde eny He promises to
 fight with any
 that hold it to the
 death, if they bar
 his entrance.
 thyng elles,¹⁵ I shall shewe them how my sword can
 cut¹⁶ / for I had ¹⁷rather¹⁸ dye then in any prynces
 28 courte it shulde be layde to my reproche¹⁹ that for eny
 man I shulde recule²⁰ backe one fote, for fere or dought
 of⁹ deth / for I wyll neuer be taken alyue, therby to
 dye in pryson / 'syr,' quod the patron, 'your forse

1-1 the yron so sore. 2 needes. 3 must. 4 lament.
 5-5 omitted. 6 therefore. 7 which. 8 are.
 9 any. 10-10 good courage and ioy. 11 you from.
 12 whether. 13 or not. 14 that. 15 of mee.
 16 answeare it. 17 Fol. lxxxix. back, col. 2. 18 to.
 19 and shame. 20 retire.

The pilot replies
that human
prowess is of no
avali,

and tells him of
the fatal rock.

Huon is filled
with grief, and
weeps piteously.

He prays to God
to receive his soul
into paradise,

and to save his
wife and child.

His ship enters
the port about the
rocks,
and breaks many
rotten vessels
fixed to the
Adamant stone,
as she runs in
among them.

and great prowes can nothyng profyghte¹ you / for yf
ye² were as strong & as great as euer was Sampson / it
shuld no thyng awauntage you ; I shall shewe you the
cause wye / the castell that ye se yonder before you is 4.
the most fayrest and stron[g]este castell of³ the worlde /
it is set and compassed⁴ a bought with a rocke of
Adamantis stones / the whiche naturally drawethe⁵ to⁶
it all maner of Iron / as ye maye well se by our shyppes 8
that gothe so faste with out any sayle : the Adamant
drawethe⁵ it bycause of the ancrs and nayles that be
in our shyppes / the woode that semethe to be a forest
ar the mastes of suche shyppes as hath there aryued,⁷ 12
drawne thether by the Adamant.'

¶ When Huon vnderstode the patron, he was⁸
sorrowfull, and no maruayle / then peteously he com-
playned for his wyfe &⁹ his child / for he saw wel¹⁰ he 16
coud not scape the deth, nor neuer depart¹¹ thens. then
he wepte peteously, and sayd, ¹² ' a, very god,¹² who in
this worlde haste fourmyd me / I require thy grase /
that this¹³ pouer synner that I am, enclyned to all 20
myssefortunes, that it maye please the to reseue my
sowle into paradyse ; as for my lyfe¹⁴ none accounte
therof. But I praye the, good lorde, to saue my wyfe
and chylde, whome I haue lefte in daunger of deth, or 24
elles ¹⁵ wylayne pryson.' ¹⁵ And with thos wordes the
shyp entered in to the porte with such a force & pusaunce
that it ran ¹⁶ In amonge the other shyppes, so that yf
the shyppes had not ben stronge, and y^c other shyppes 28
rotten, Huons shyppes had bene broken all to peses / ⁹ it
ranne vnder the water .iii. or .iiii. of the other old
shippes / ¹⁷ when Huon sawe that hys shyppes was not

¹ auaille. ² we. ³ in all. ⁴ round.

⁵ doth draw. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ and are. ⁸ right. ⁹ for.

¹⁰ that. ¹¹ from. ¹²⁻¹³ ah, good Lord. ¹³ thus.

¹⁴ I make. ¹⁵⁻¹⁶ in shamefull imprisonment.

¹⁶ Fol. lxxxx. col. 1.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ and was not broken, thanked be almighty God.

broken he thanked god.¹⁷ Than he loked into the
 hauen, and sawe so many shyppes that he had¹ maruayle
 therof / and he was sore² abashed in that he sawe
 4 nother man ³nor³ woman ⁴sterynge abroad. Also he
⁵regardyd⁵ the castell, the which was so fayre and riche
 that there was none suche in⁶ the worlde. Then he
 thought to sende thether one of his companye⁷ to knowe
 8 what people were with in the castell / he sawe well⁸
 there was no waye to enter / but by a strayte waye of
 C.C.C. and .lxxx. greses of heyght: y⁹ way was so
 strayte⁹ that no man but one at ones coude mounte vp
 12 the grees,¹⁰ he had great maruayle¹¹ when he sawe no
 man comynge fro the castel. Then he called one of his
 knyghtes, and sayde, ‘Syr Arnolde, I wyll¹² that ye go
 vp to this castell to see what people be within,¹³ other¹⁴
 16 sarasyns or paynymes; knowe who is lorde there,¹⁵ and
 saye howe⁸ I greatly desyre to be aqeynted withe
 hym; yf ye can do so moch that I myght¹⁶ be aqeynted
 withe hym: then I & my men wyll mount vp to gether
 20 tyll¹⁷ some good aduenture fall: for I haue hope in
¹⁸god yet¹⁸ we shall skape this daunger.’ ‘Syr,’ quod
 Arnolde, ‘I shall do¹⁹ your pleasure’¹⁹ / then he departed,
 and went fro one shyppes to another tyll¹⁷ he came to the
 24 londe / ²⁰then he went to the rocke and founde the grees²¹
 and mounted vp. But or²² he came to the castell gate
 he rested hymselfe .iii. tymes,²⁰ when he came to the
 gate he rested hym he was so wery: and beheld the
 28 gate, the ²³whiche semyd to²⁴ hym meruelusly fayre;²⁵
 then he began to crye and calle to the entent that some
 man shuld come²⁰ to speke with hym; ²⁰when he saw

No man or woman is visible.

The approach to the castle is by three hundred and eighty steep narrow steps.

Huon bids Sir Arnold, a knight, climb up to the castle and bring word what people live there.

Sir Arnold departs, and mounts up the steps.

The gate of the castle is marvellously fair.

He calls out for a man to speak with,

¹ great. ² dismayed and. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ nor Child.
⁵⁻⁵ looked about him and beheld. ⁶ throughout all.
⁷ for. ⁸ that. ⁹ and narrow. ¹⁰ degraees.
¹¹ & was sore troubled in mind. ¹² and command.
¹³ it. ¹⁴ either. ¹⁵ of. ¹⁶ maye. ¹⁷ vntill
¹⁸⁻¹⁸ our lord that. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ as you haue commaunded me.
²⁰ and. ²¹ degrees. ²² before. ²³ Fol. lxxxx. col. 2.
²⁴ vnto. ²⁵ and rich.

but no one replies

for neither man
nor woman is
within.

On the right of
the hall door he
sees a serpent
higher than a
horse, with eyes
gleaming like
torches.

The noise of Sir
Arnold's shouting
rouses the
serpent;
it approaches the
gate.
The knight is
filled with alarm,
and hurries back
to the ship.

He tells Huon of
the horrible
serpent.

that none dyd speke, he stode & harkened yf any parson were comynge to open the gate; but none apered / ¹then he knockyd and called a gayn, & sayd, 'porter *that* art within, com and open the gate, *that* ² ⁴ cursed be thou of god.' this Arnolde had a good occupacion to crye ³ and call, for within was nother man nor ⁴ woman ⁵ that wold open the gate / when he saw that he was nye ⁶gruged for ⁶ dyspleasure / & loked ⁸ downe vnder the gate to knowe yf he myght se ⁷ other man or woman to speke to ⁸ / then he ⁹loked on the ryght hand of the hal dore, ⁹ and there he saw an orryble serpent / the whiche kept the castell and ¹² palays / it was a marueylous great serpent / heyer then any hors, his eyen lyke .ii. torches brynnynge ¹⁰ / when Arnolde saw hym he was ¹¹ sorowful and sore dyspleasyde, and when the serpent harde y^e knockyng ¹⁶ and ¹² noyse at the gate, brayenge & cryenge, he came ¹³ to the gate warde ¹³ / ¹ when Arnold saw the serpent ¹⁴ aprochyng to the gate, he fled a way in so great hast *that* he had ⁴ nere hand ¹⁵ fallen ¹⁵ downe the steyres : ²⁰ he rested not tyl ¹⁶ he come to y^e shyp wher ¹⁷ Huon was, & sayde, 'syr, I haue bene about at the gate of the castell, and cried and knocked therat more then the space of an owre : but there was nother man nor ⁴ ²⁴ woman ⁵ *that* dyd apere, & when I saw *that* I leyde me downe to loke vnder the gate, to know yf I myght se other man or woman to speke vnto / but I coud neuer se eny creature / but a great and a orryble serpent, ²⁸ hygher then a great hors, with eyen redder then fyer, with maruelous great talons and taylor / there was neuer man saw a fowler fygure of a best.' ¹⁸ 'alas,' quod

¹ and. ² or elles. ³ knocke. ⁴ omitted.
⁵ nor Child. ⁶⁻⁶ angry with. ⁷ espie. ⁸ vnto.
⁹⁻⁹ turned him round about. ¹⁰ burning. ¹¹ right.
¹² great. ¹³⁻¹³ towarde the gate. ¹⁴ with great furie.
¹⁵⁻¹⁵ (with verie feare) fell. ¹⁶ vntill. ¹⁷ whereas.
¹⁸ Fol. lxxx. back, col. 1.

Huon, 'nowe I see well¹ we be all but dede / for we haue no thyng to ete nor drynke, wherfore we shal dye for famyne and rage. But yf I maye enter in to 4 the castell, I shall gyue that sarpent suche a stroke that he shall neuer more hurte enye man leuyng. Alas, what haue I sayde, my hardynesse nor² prowes¹ nor a wauntyng¹ can not helpe me / for I se well that I and 8 all you muste dye, for it is impossible for vs to departe³ hens.' Than the patron sayd to Huon, sore wepyng, 'syr, it behoueth vs to depart⁴ our wytayle: yf ye wyll sustayne the ryght & customes of the see / when 12 men comethe to suche a case that there is no remedye to gette any fresshe vytayle / then it is a reason that the lorde and capetayne⁵ haue the one halfe to his parte and the other parte egally to be delyuered⁶ amonge his 16 men.' 'Mayster,' quod Huon, 'ye maye do your pleasure, do as ye shall thinke best.' Then the patron caused al theyr vytayles to be brought forth, and then it was deuyded / the patron was a wyse man / when 20 Huon saw that, he began to wepe, he dyd eate but lytell at euery meale by cause his vytayle sholde endure the lenger / howbeit all that but lytell awayled, for or⁷ .xv. dayes were passyd / all theyr vytayles were expyred⁸ 24 excepte Huons parte of the whiche he gaue euery man parte, & kepte for hym selfe no more then other men had. And as they were in this daunger they saw a galyot⁹ wherin were .xxx. men, sarasyns, ¹and¹ theues 28 and pyraottes of the see / they came and aryuede nere to the shyppe where as Huon was in / not knowyng what plase they were in / when they aryued it was in a darke nyght / they hadde¹⁰ meruayle of Huons shyppe 32 wherein they sawe great lyght / ¹¹¹²then they sayd one to another / 'it is happye for vs that we haue founde

Huon complains that his men haue nought to eat or drink. He longs to fight with the serpent.

The pilot advices the men to divide such food as is still left them.

One half should be given to their lord and captain, and the rest equally divided among themselves.

Huon bids him do as he thinks fit.

After fifteen days the men's food is all consumed,

and Huon divides with them his own portion.

A pirate ship comes alongside of Huon's vessel, and threatens it.

¹ omitted. ² my. ³ from. ⁴ part. ⁵ to,
⁶ deuided. ⁷ before. ⁸ spent. ⁹ galley.
¹⁰ great. ¹¹ and. ¹² Fol. lxxxx, back, col. 2.

here this fayre shyppe / it can not be but it is rych
and full of goodes : they shall not scape vs : but it
shalbe owrs, for therin ar but fewe men to defende the
shyppe.' 4

¶ Howe a galey withe sarasyns came and
assayled Huon, who were all slayne, and
also all Huons men ; and how Huon went
to the castel of the Adamant & slewe the 8
great serpent, and of the merueilles that he
founde there. Ca. .cx.



Then Huon sawe the galey aryue, and
goynge to his shyppe he had great 12
maruayle what men they were / then
he alyghtyd a torche & toke it in his
hande, and came a borde on the shyppe,
and sayd / 'syr of this galy, ye ar wel aryued here ; 16
1ye be welcome ; 1 we haue great ioy of your companye' /
when the sarasyns hard Huon, they 1 well 1 perseyuyd by
his language that he and his company were chrysten
men / then eche of them behelde other smylynge for 20
ioye / one of them turned his speche and spake good
spanysse, and sayde to Huon / 'felowe, it is no nede
for vs to hyde what we be : al we that thou seest here
be sarasyns, and ye be chrystened / wherfore we wyl 24
haue all the rychesse that is yn your shyppe / and
besyde that, all your hedes shall be streken of and your
bodys cast into the see.' 'Paynym,' quod Huon, 'or 2
thou haste our shyp at thy commaundement, fyrste 28
thou shalte bye it derely.' Then Huon cryyd to his
men that they sholde arme themselfe to defend them
fro the paynymes / 3the which they dyd dilygently.
And Huon, who was redy armed, and by that tyme the 32

Huon joyfully
welcomes the
men in the
galley,

but they, speak-
ing in Spanish,
declare them-
selves Saracens,

and threaten
Huon and his
company with
death.

Huon bids his
companions arm
themselves,

1-1 omitted. 2 ere. 3 Fol. lxxxix. col. 1.

Sarasyns were enteryd into the shyp. Huon was redy before them with his sworde in his handes, wherwith he stroke the fyrst that he met wthall in such wyse
 4 that his hede flew fro his shulders. Then he strake another and claue hym to the throte / and so the thyrd and the fourthe were shortely slayne / he layd on so rounde a boughte hym that his enemyes were
 8 afrayed to beholde hym. Then the chefe mayster of y^e theues came and rebuked his men bycause they had sufferyd Huon to do them so moche hurte and damage / he approchid to Huon to haue stryken hym / but Huon,
 12 who was lyght and expert in dedes of armes, awoydyd his stroke, and strake the Sarasyn with a reuerse that his hede flew from the body a great waye of. Then Huon cryed 'Burdeaux' / to reioyse his men and to geue them
 16 corage. Also Arnolde, who had sene the serpente in the castell, dyd marueylles, & bet downe his enemyes, wherof Huon ¹toke great pleasure.¹ And there was a great myghty Sarasyn / who cam behi[n]d this knyght
 20 Arnold as he fought with a nother Sarasyn, and he gaue Arnolde with an axe such a great stroke *that* he claue his hede to the tethe / whereof Huon was ryght sorowfull, and sayd he had rather dye then the deth of
 24 Arnolde shulde not be reuenged. Then he aprochyd² to the same paynyme and lyfte³ vp is sword with bothe his handes, ⁴and⁴ he stroke the sarasyn on the shulder that y^e sworde entered in to the breste. And
 28 the patron of Huons shyppe vnarmyd came to⁵ the batayle with a great staffe in his handes, wherwith he layd on y^e sarasyns in suche wyse that suche as he stroke ⁶ne ⁷dyd⁶ after no sorgyon. Then a Sarasyn
 32 aduised hym, and came and gaue the patron suche a stroke with a sword on the hede *that* his hede

and fights himself with his wonted boldness.

He slays the captain of the ship;

and cheers on his men.

But Arnold, the knight who had seen the serpent in the castle, is killed, and Huon swears vengeance upon his murderer.

The captain of Huon's ship is likewise slain.

¹⁻¹ had great ioy. ² neere vnto. ³ lifting.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted. ⁵ into. ⁶⁻⁶ needed.

⁷ Fol. lxxxix. col. 2.

was clouen to the brayne, wherwith Huon was ryghte sorowfull.¹ But it was not long or² he reuengyd his dethe / for he strake the sarasyn suche a stroke *that* he claue hym to the brest /³ when the patrons seruauentes ⁴ sawe⁴ theyr mayster⁵ slayne, they⁶ made great sorowe / and disarmyd as they were, they came⁷ to the batayle with great stauces in theyr handys / and fought with them fersly. But y⁶ sarasyns who were⁶ armyd had ⁸ anone slayne them all, wherof Huon was sory,⁸ for he had then with hym lefte a lyue no mo but .iiii. men of defence. And the Sarasyns, who in y⁶ begynnynge were .xxx., were all slayne excepte .vii. parsones / they⁹ ¹² feryd Huon / for they saw wel none coude endure agaynste his strokys / then they fled out of Huons shyp and enteryd in to theyr owne galey. But Huon and his .iii. knyghtes that were with hym folowed them ¹⁶ and¹⁰ slew them all, and caste them into the see. Then Huon and the .iii. knyghtes that were with hym toke all y⁶ flesshe / bread / and wyne that was in the galey and bare it into theyr shyp, wherby they leuyd more ²⁰ then .vii. monethes. And then when theyr vytales began to fayle them¹¹ they were¹² sorowful / they had no vitayle to leue by longe, and yet they dyd ete but lytell; so they became¹³ pale & lene for¹⁴ famyne / ²⁴ peteously Huon complayned and sayd / 'O ye, my ¹⁵ ryghte¹⁵ dere and trewe frendis, who for my loue haue left your londes, your wyues, and chyldren. Now I perseyue ye must nedys dey for the rage of famyne: ²⁸ alas,¹⁶ catyue that I am, I shal not long lyue after you : ' great petye it was to here the complayntes *that* ¹⁷ Huon made, who sawe ¹⁵ his men dye before his face / and also

At length Huon has only four men left alive with him, while seven Saracens are still uninjured.

Nevertheless, all the Saracens are at length slain,

and Huon's knyghts seize the victuals in their ship.

For seven months they live upon them, and then food fails them.

Huon tells his companions that death alone lies before them all.

¹ and sore displeased. ² before. ³ and. ⁴ that.

⁵ was. ⁶ all. ⁷ and entred into.

⁸ right sorrowfull and angry. ⁹ greatly.

¹⁰ so fast that they. ¹¹ then. ¹² right. ¹³ beganne to be.

¹⁴ through. ¹⁵⁻¹⁶ omitted. ¹⁶ poor.

¹⁷ Fol. lxxxix. back, col. 1.

he saw¹⁵ that he must folowe the same daunce. Then he sayde, 'a, lady Esclaramonde, I shall neuer see you more; I praye our lord god that he wyll comferte you in all your affayres / as for me,¹ it is impossyble to lyue .iiii. dayes lenger.' After that he hade made this petyous² complaynte he behelde his³ .iii. knyghtes, who renderyd vp theyr sowles and dyed for⁴ hunger. The 8 petefull complayntes then that⁵ he made was petye to here / he hade no hope to be aydyd by any man mortall,⁶ wherfore he knewe suerly⁷ he coude not lyue⁸ past .iiii.⁸ dayes lenger. Then all wepyng he wente fro 12 his knyghtes that lay⁹ dede and wente to the bourd of his shyp and lokyd in to y^e see yf he coude¹⁰ spye any maner of shyp comynge thether. For he thoughte that yf any shyp came thether of the sarasins, he wolde 16 haue some vytales or elles to dye in the quarel / thus Huon was there¹¹ all¹¹ alone without¹² companye.¹³

He prays to God to protect his wife.

The four knyghts die of hunger.

Huon looks out in vain for a passing vessel.

¶ When Huon saw *that* no maner of shyp was comynge thether, he was¹⁴ sorowfull. Then he turned 20 hym and regardyd the castell, the which semyd to¹⁵ hym maruaylously fayre and great, and sayd / 'a, good lorde, how cane it be that this fayre and ryche castell shuld be voyde without man or woman; I haue great 24 maruayle of *that* syr Arnolde shewyd me / for he shewyde me *that* within the castell was nother man nor woman, and howe that there shulde be a great serpente. I cannot tell yf¹⁶ it be trewe or not, and¹⁷ whether he 28 spake it for fere / but by the grace of god, though he I shulde¹⁸ dye in the quarell, I wyll knowe the trouthe / for I were as good to dye by the¹⁹ serpent as to dye for hunger' / then he²⁰ toke his sworde and dyd²¹ on his

He surveys the castle on the rock again,

and resolves to visit it, although he may die in the endeavour.

¹ poore soule. ² pitifull. ³ the. ⁴ through.
⁵ that then. ⁶ mortall man. ⁷ that. ⁸⁻⁸ about two.
⁹ there. ¹⁰ might. ¹¹⁻¹¹ omitted. ¹² any.
¹³ sore weeping and almost dead through famine. ¹⁴ right.
¹⁵ vnto. ¹⁶ whether. ¹⁷ or. ¹⁸ shall.
¹⁹ horrible. ²⁰ Fol. lxxxix. back, col. 2. ²¹ put.

helme, & toke his shelde, and dyd so moche withe goynge fro shyp to shyp tyll¹ he came to the² londe. And then with moche payne he mounted vp the degrees / and so came to ³y^e gate of ³y^e castell / ⁴then he sate downe ⁴ and rested hym / & beheld the fayre castel ; he thought he neuer saw no⁵ suche before, for the walles and toures were of fyne alabaster clere shynyng, and the towres rychely coueryd with fyne golde of Arabe ; ⁸ when the sun cast his rayes⁶ ther on⁷ it caste so great⁸ lyght *that* it gaue lyght⁸ far of / ⁴when he had longe behelde it⁹ he saw the gate, the whiche was fayre and rych, that great beaute it was to behold it : for the .ii. ¹² leuys of the gate were coueryd *with* fyne gold intermedelyd with other rych oueragis. And on his ryght syde he saw by the gate a wyndowe, and ouer the same there was wryten in letters of golde, saynge : Let any ¹⁶ man be ware how he entereth in to this castel, without he be the worthyest knyght of all other, or elles it were foly to assaye it. For he shall fynde there such aduventure / ¹⁰yf his body were harder than a stethy of ²⁰ stele yet he shuld be but dede and loste without he be of *that* pusaunce to resyste agaynste the great serpente, & vanquesshe hym / many men haue assayed that neuer coude spede / & he that wyll enter in to the ²⁴ castell beholde a lytell purse *that* hangeth on the ryght hand of the gate, where he shall fynde y^e keye for to open the gate / when Huon had red the writynge, he began sore to muse in hym selfe, and said, ¹¹' very god,¹¹ ²⁸ syn thou haste sauyd me from so many pavelles in tyme paste, I humbly requyre the at this tyme to ayde¹² me ; and to geue me y^e grace that I maye vanquesshe this orryble serpent & brynge hym to the deth / ¹³for I had ³²

He mounts the steps, and reaches the fair castle.

He admires the alabaster and the fine gold of which it is built.

But on examining the curiously-wrought gate, he sees an inscription saying that the castle is only to be entered by the worthyest of all knights,

for the serpent can overthrow all of small prowess :


but on the right side of the gate hangs a purse with a key within it.

Huon trusts in God to aid him.

¹ vntill. ² gate of the. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ and.
⁵ none. ⁶ and speares. ⁷ thereuppon.
⁸ a. ⁹ at his pleasure. ¹⁰ as. ¹¹⁻¹¹ good Lord.
¹² and succour. ¹³ Fol. lxxxii. col. 1.

rather dye in fyghtyng lyke a valyaunte knyght /
 then to dye for famyne.' Then Huon rose vp and went He finds the key,
and passes
through the gate.
 to the purse, & toke out the keye and opened the gate
 4 and enteryd, and cloyd the gate agayne after hym.

¶ How Huon of Burdeux fought with the
 orryble serpent, and slew hym, within the
 castell of the Adamant. Ca. .cxi.

8  The horrible
serpent is before
the door of the
hall. Hen Huon was enterid into the castell,
 he sawe before the hall dore the
 orrible serpent, who was resyn vp:
 his skyn was of dyuers colours, and it
 12 was so harde that no Iron nor steele
 coude enter in to it / when Huon saw the best so great Huon doubts
his power to
resist it.
 he doughtyd hymselfe, and callyd vpon Iesu Chryst
 requiryng hym to haue petye vpon hym & to geue hym
 16 that¹ grace to sle that dredefull best / when the beest
 sawe Huon, he had great marueyle / for he had bene
 there a longe space that neuer man came there /
 he strechyd² out his clawes and cast his tayle round The serpent
advances towards
him,
 20 abought hym, and came hastely agaynst Huon / who,
 when he sawe the beest aproche nere to hym, he made
 the sygne of y^e crosse on³ his forhede, recommaundyng
 hymselfe to god ; with his sworde in his hande and his and Huon
prepares to meet
him.
 24 sheld before hym and he fersly marchyd towards the
 serpent / he was so hydeous and ferfull to behold *that*
 the beest semyd rather an enemye of hel then any other
 beest / his body was marueylous great, with an vgelye
 28 hede *with* .ii. eyen bygger then .ii. basyns ful of
 brynnyn⁴ fyre / when he cam nere to⁵ Huon he lyfte
 vp one of his pawes thinkyng to haue drawen downe
 Huon to the erth / he strake on³ Huons shyld by⁶ The beest pulls
his shield from
his shoulder,
 32 such force that he pullyd it fro his sholder / lether nor

¹ the. ² Fol. lxxxii. col. 2. ³ vpon. ⁴ burning.
⁵ vnto. ⁶ with.

buckyll coude not resyst it / & then with his teth & nayles he tare the shyld all to peses / Huon, who was lyger and light, lept by the syde of the serpent and gaue hym a great stroke with hys sworde on¹ the ere, 4 that he thought to haue clouen asonder his hede. But he coude do it no more hurte then yf he had streken on¹ a stethy / so *that* his sword reboundyd agayne / wherof Huon was² sorowfull, and sayd / 'a, good lord, 8 now I se well that my dayes ar at an end: A,³ lady Esclaramonde, I praye our lord god to saue you & my daughter Claryet / for this daye ye shall lese me.' Then he auansyd hym to the serpent, and gaue hym a 12 great stroke on¹ the haunche be hynde / & yf he dyd but lytell with his fyrst stroke he dyd lesse hurt with that stroke / for he coude in no wyse cut through y^e serpentis skyn: wherfore he was in great fere; and 16 ⁴the serpent, when he felte hymselfe stryken, cast his tayle rounde about Huon by⁵ suche forse that Huon⁶ ouerthrew⁷ to y^e erthe and⁸ quykely releuyd agayne. Then he saw by the gate a great square spere with 20 a sharpe, brode hede / ⁹then he put vp his sworde and toke the spere in bothe his handys, and came¹⁰ agaynste y^e serpent, who came and encounteryd hym withe open mouthe to haue swallowed Huon / but Huon, 24 who was stronge and lyght, toke the spere and layde it on his arme, & saw the serpent with his mouth open / he strake the spere into the mouth of the serpent so depe that with the hede of y^e spere he cut his hart 28 a sonder / when the serpente felte hymselfe hurte to the dethe, he caste out a terryble crye, so that all the palays¹¹ sowned,⁹ so that the noyse myght be harde a leage of. Thus the orryble serpente was slayne / when 32 Huon sawe that he was dede, he knelyd downe & lyfte

and his sword cannot hurt it.

Huon sees a spear by the gate with a broad head, and seizes it with both hands.

The serpent opens his mouth to attack Huon, but the knight thrusts the spear down its throat, and reaches its heart.

¹ vpon. ² right. ³ faire. ⁴ Fol. lxxxii. back, col. 1.
⁵ with. ⁶ he. ⁷ Huon. ⁸ hee. ⁹ and.
¹⁰ with all his force and strength. ¹¹ place.

- vp his handys to the heuen, thankyng our lorde god
of¹ his grace. Then he rose and wente to the serpent,
and regardyd² hym, for he was hedyous and ferfull to
4 beholde / he was .xviii. fote longe; when Huon had
well regardyd² hym he went and sate downe to rest
hym³ by the hall dore³ / for he was so wery and faynt
with the blud that he had lost, and with swete, that he
8 had moche payne to draw his breth / the whiche was
no maruayle, for he had nother eten nor dronken of all
that daye / when he had well restyd hym then he rose
vp desyrng⁴ to know whether any man or woman
12 were within y^e castell or not, to speke vnto them / he
enteryd into the hall, the whiche he marueylously
regardyd: it was so fayre and ryche to beholde that
there is no clarke in the worlde can dyscryue the beaute
16 & ⁵rychesse therof; the ryche chambers that were on
the syde of the hall were al composyd and made
of whyght marbyll polysshed / the postes were coueryd
with fyne golde / at the ende of the hall there was a
20 chameney, wherof the two pillers that susteynyd the
mantell tree were of fyne Iaspas / and the mantell was
of a ryche Calsedony / and the Lyntell was made of
fyne Emeradis traylyd with a wyng of fyne golde / and
24 the Grapys of fine Saphers. This chemeny was so ryche
that none such coude be founde. And all the pyllers
in the hall were of ⁶a⁶ red Calsedony / ⁷the pament⁸
was of fyne Ambre.
- 28 ¶ when Huon had well aduysyd² this hall, he
lokyd towardes the chaumbers, and ouer the dorys of
euery chaumber was written in letters of gold, the
whiche shewyd where the keyes were of euery chambre.
- 32 Huon, who coude well rede the letters / and vnderstonde
it / he founde a purse wherin were the keyes of euery

When the serpent
was slain, Huon
kneels down and
thanks God for
His grace.

Huon is faint
with hunger,

and goes through
the castle in
search of man or
woman.

The hall is
constructed of
precious metal
and rich stones.

Inscriptions
over the doors of
the chambers
leading from the
hall tell Huon
where the keys of
each may be
found.

¹ for. ² behelde. ³⁻³ before to rest him.
⁴ as desirous. ⁵ Fol. lxxxii. back. col. 2. ⁶⁻⁶ omitted.
 ⁷ and. ⁸ pament.

He enters one of them, and wonders at its rich furniture.

He opens the door of another chamber,

and finds great quantity of jewels and gold.

A third chamber is still more richly equipped,

and in it are presses filled with gowns of fine gold and rich mantles of sable.

chambre, all of fyne gold; he toke one of the keys and opened one of the chambres¹ / and enteryd into² it.² Then he lokyd all aboughte the chambre / and sawe it garnysshed and hangyd with the moste rycheeste⁴ clothes that euer were sene / the benches & bedstedes were all of whyght Iuory, so rychely entraylyd & wrought and garnysshed with presyous stonys / that no mannes tonge coude dyscryue the beaute and rychesse⁸ therof / all was made by enchaument. This palays was³ great and large, and well garnysshyd with chambres. ¶ When Huon had well regardyd⁴ this chambre he was⁵ abasshed that he coude nother se man¹² nor woman. Then he lokid ouer⁶ the dore of another chambre,⁶ where there was also⁷ wryten in letters of golde⁸ as there⁹ was¹⁰ ouer the fyrst dore. Then Huon toke the key and openyd the¹¹ dore, and enteryd in to¹⁶ that chambre¹² / and there he founde great quantyte of gold & rychesse and¹³ iouelles, with¹⁴ precyous stones, that great beaute it was¹⁵ to beholde / 'a, good lord,' quod Huon, 'I wolde¹⁶ haue byleuyd that in all the world²⁰ there had¹⁷ not¹⁷ bene so moch ryches as I se here'¹⁸ / then anone he sawe a nother chambre, and toke the key & enteryd,¹⁹ & for all the ryches that he²⁰ had sene²⁰ before, there he found moch more / there were presses²⁴ made of fyne Iuory²¹ rychely wrought & entayled, so that there was no beast nor byrd but there it was²² wrought; in the whiche presses were gownes and robes of²³ fyne golde, and²³ ryche mantelles furryd with²⁸ sabyls, and all other thynges²⁴ apartaynyng to the aparel of mankynde / and the beddys so rychly coueryd that

¹ doorea. ²⁻² the chamber. ³ exceeding.

⁴ beheld. ⁵ greatly. ⁶⁻⁶ another chamber doore.

⁷ Fol. lxxxiii. col. 1. ⁸ according. ⁹ it. ¹⁰ written.

¹¹ another. ¹² also. ¹³ rich. ¹⁴ other most.

¹⁵ for. ¹⁶ neuer. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ omitted.

¹⁸ present before me. ¹⁹ therin. ²⁰⁻²⁰ sawe. ²¹ very.

²² most cunningly. ²³ most. ²⁴ the which were.

- it ¹coude not ¹ be dyscryuyd ² / thys chambre was so
 fayre and rych that Huon coude not ³ be satsyfyed
 with regardyng ⁴ therof / ther were wyndows ⁵ rychely
 4 glasyd openyng vpon a gardeyne side, the whiche ⁶
 was so fayre and so well garnysshyd with flowres ⁷
 swete smellynge, and ⁸ al maner of trees chargyd with
 frewtis so good & so delysyous to ete / ⁹so ⁹ that the
 8 smelle of them wold haue satsyfyed a mannes apetyte.
 Huon, who sawe this fayre gardyn, desyred greatly to
 enter into it to gather some of the ¹⁰ frute / he lokyd
 ouer the dore and founde the ¹¹key, and went to the
 12 purse and toke the key, and ¹¹ openyd the dore, and
 enteryd ¹² into y^e gardeyne and gatheryd of the frute at
 his pleasure, & dyd ete therof, for he had ¹³ great
 apetyte ¹⁴ to ete / he thought the frute maruaylous
 16 good. yf I wolde shew or dyscryue the beaute of this
 gardayn, ¹⁵it shuld ¹⁶ be ouer long to resyte, there wer so
 many sondry frutys so fayre and so swete of smellyng,
 that a syke man of any infyrmyte shuld ¹⁶ sone
 20 ¹⁷reouer ¹⁷ helth. Also there were herbys and flowres so
 swete ¹⁸ that all the gardayne semyd ¹⁹ full of balme /
 when Huon had bene there a good space and had well
 eten of the frute at his pleasure / he returnyd in to the
 24 chambre that he came fro, and then ²⁰ vnarmyd hym
 and dyd ²¹ of all his clothes, & toke out of y^e presse
 a fyne shyрте and dobelet / hosyd and shone / gowne /
 cote and cappe / such as he wold chose / for there was
 28 no man to saye hym naye / when he was thus newly
 areyed, ²² there coude not be founde a more goodlyer
 man / acordyng as the cronycle saythe / I byleue he

Glass windows
from it open upon
a garden filled
with fair flowers,

and trees,
and fruits.

Huon enters the
garden, and eats
the fruit.

The beauty of the
spot cannot be
described.

Huon returns to
the chamber,

and takes from
the presses some
rich clothes.

1-1 was impossible to. 2 by anie mortall man.

3 neuer. 4 beholding and viewing. 5 very. 6 garden.

7 most precious. 8 of. 9-9 omitted. 10 that.

11-11 purse with the key therin, and then he. 12 went.

13 a. 14 desire. 15 Fol. lxxxiii. col. 2. 16 would.

17-17 haue recouered his. 18 and delightfvll. 19 to be.

20 he. 21 putte. 22 arriued.

But he seeks in
vain for any
human being.

Eight days he
tarryes in the
castle, eating of
the fruits alone,
and he grows
feeble and faint.

He prays to God
to have mercy on
his wife and
child.

was borne by the fayrey / as then there coude not be
founde so goodly a man leuyng / when he was thus
apareyld he went fro chambre to chambre / alwayes
harkenenge yf¹ he myght² here the woyses other of man⁴
or woman / but as long as he was³ there he coud here
no thyng, wherof he was⁴ sory⁴; there he was⁵ viii.
dayes without etyng of any thyng sauynge of y^e frutis
of the gardayne / wherby he waxed febyll and faynt, 8
the which was no meruayle, for he had bene there .viii.
dayes without etyng other brede or flesshe / he was so
febyll that he thought he coude not longe endure there
without dethe. Then he prayed⁶ our lorde god to 12
comforte⁷ hym out of that daunger; ⁸ petyously he
complaynyd for his wyfe and chylde, saynge: 'A, my
dere wyfe, god⁹ socoure you in all your affayres / for ye
shall neuer haue¹⁰ socoure¹¹ of me¹² / for I tary but for 16
the cure of¹³ dethe, the whyche is¹⁴ nere¹⁵ aprochyng
to me / for I am so sore¹⁶ beten with famyne that
I haue moche¹⁷ payne to sustayne myselfe.' Thus Huon
was .viii. dayes in the castell of the Adamant / euery 20
day etyng of the frutys of the gardayne / and at
nyght he lay euer in the best bed in the chambre.
Nowe let vs leue spekyng of hym, and let vs retourne¹⁸
to the duchesse Esclaramonde, who was besegyde within 24
y^e cite of Burdeaux, where as she was in great
dyspleasure, and not without a cause / for she sufferyd
moche payne and troyll.

¹ whether. ² coud. ³ continued.
⁴⁻⁴ right sorowfull. ⁵ continued. ⁶ vnto.
⁷ and strengthen. ⁸ most. ⁹ ayde and. ¹⁰ any.
¹¹ and ayde. ¹² more. ¹³ my. ¹⁴ nowe.
¹⁵ at hand. ¹⁶ and grieuoualy.
¹⁷ Fol. lxxxiii. back, col. 1. ¹⁸ turne.

¶ How after that Huon was departyd fro
 Burdeaux the Emperour made dyuers
 assaultys to the cety / but he coude not
 4 wyn yt for the defence of the good cheualry
 that was in¹ yt / and of the busschement²
 that was layd by the counsell of duke
 Sauary, wherby the citey was taken &
 8 wonne. Ca. .cxii.



12 **E** she haue harde before howe duke Huon
 departyd from his citey of Burdeux,
 where as he lefte the duches his wyfe /
 who was in great displeasure when she
 sawe the departynge of her husbond.

Esclaramonde
 was sorely
 grieved by her
 husband's
 departure.

She greatly complaynid and sayd : 'a, my ryght dere
 lord, your departynge ought greatly to greue me. I
 16 fere ye shall not come in tyme to socour and to bryng
 me out of³ daunger that I am in / for it is impossible
 for vs long to endure agaynst this emperour. Alas ! I
 haue more sorowe for my daughter then for my selfe :
 20 and I am sorowful for my lordis and knyghtis who for
 the loue of you and me are in parell of theyr lyues. It
 had bene better for vs to haue taryed⁴ styll in Babylon
 then to come hether to suffer all this tourmentis /
 24 paynes / and pouertyes / and at laste paynfull dethe⁵ /
 with sayenge of these wordes y^e duches she⁵ fell in a
 traunce amonge her lordys. Then Gerames releuyd her
 and sayd / 'lady,⁵ dyscomforte you nothyng⁶, but take
 28 good corage and comforte your men, who hathe great
 desyre to defende this citey for the sauegarde of their
 owne bodyes and lyues / thus to make sorow ye can
 wyn no thyng^e therby, but lese more to more : haue
 32 no dought that Huon your husbonde wyll leue you at

She regrets that
 she over left
 Babylon.

Gerames
 endeavours to
 console her.

¹ with in. ² ambushment. ³ the.

⁴ Fol. lxxxiii. back, col. 2. ⁵ omitted. ⁶ not.

this poynte. he is gone to your brother for socoure / he wyll not long tary / and he wyll brynge you suche socoure that y^e emperour nor the Almayns shall haue no leysour to graunt hym the vycторы.' Thus Gerames 4 comforyd the duches, who was glade¹ to here Gerames. Thus as they deuysed to gether, the Emperoure, who was aduerteysyd of Huons departyng and howe he was gone for socoure / he assembelyd his counseyle in to 8 his tent, and there he shewyd and declaryd the great losses that he had sufferyd as wel of the dethe of his nepheus as of other of his frendis and kynne / and the great damage that by Huon he had sufferyd, and sayde / 12 'syrs, all this ye knowe well / his aquayntaunce hathe cost vs derely. Ye haue all harde how he is departyd to seke for socours / but I can not tell to what parte he is gone. As for the realme of fraunce, I know well he 16 shall haue no socoure there / for as it hathe bene shewyd me of late / that the ryght noble and vycторыous prynce Charlemayne is dede / who louyd Huon but lytell by cause of his sone Charlot whome Huon slewe / 20 and Charlemayne hathe lefte be ²hynde hym but one sone namyd Lowis, who is but of a yonge age :³ I beleue yf he were of full age that he wolde rather come to socour me then Huon, who slewe Charlot his bro- 24 ther / therefore it canne be none other wyse but that he is gone in to some far countre for socours ; therefore I thynke it best that in the mene tyme, or⁴ he retourne / that on all sides let vs contynually assayle the cite / 28 and let euery man do theyr payne to be reuengyd for the dethe of theyr frendys whiche are⁵ slayne by them within the cite.' ¶ when the lordis harde the emperoure, all with one wyse answeyrd and sayd, 'Syr, the 32 reason that⁶ ye haue shewyd vnto vs is to be kepte and done / and we shall go arme vs and make vs redy, to

On hearing of Huon's setting out for succour, the Emperor addresses his barons, in council assembled;

he does not know whither Huon has gone.

Although Charlemagne is dead, and Lewis, who is young, reigns in his stead, Huon cannot hope for aid from that quarter.

It is clear, says the Emperor, that the knight has gone on a long journey for succour, and that it is their part to assail and take the city before his return.

All his host is of his opinion.

¹ for. ² Fol. lxxxiiii. col. 1. ³ and. ⁴ ere.
⁵ heere. ⁶ which.

the entente to come to your entencyon, the whiche is¹ reasonable.' Then they sownyd theyr hornes and busyns, and euery man² armyd hym³ / and came with⁴ 4 'standarde⁴ dysplayed to assayle the citey, and they that were within as well as they coude they defendyd the citey: they⁵ without reryd vp ladders agaynste the wallys⁶ by great⁶ strengthe / but they⁵ withe in dyd⁸ bette them downe into the dykis, and then they cast vpon them hote lede and boylunge oyle / and quycke Lyme / and great stonis, & fagottis brynnynge,⁷ so that they that⁸ were downe in the dykes had no powre⁹ 12 to releue¹⁰ agayne; but there myserably dyed vnder the ladders. There was on bothe partyes¹¹ great shotyng with crosbowes and slyngynge of stonys, so thicke that it semyd¹² snowe fleyng in the ayre / marueyle it 16 was to regarde¹³ the olde Gerames / how he exortyd his company to do wel / and also the duches Esclaramonde, with her daughter in her armes, cryeng to¹⁴ her men and¹⁵ sayd, ' ye, my dere lordys and knyghtys, fyght lustly: 20 put¹⁶ to your payne⁹ to defend your bodyes and your lyues / your wyues and¹⁷ chylidren / to the entente that the Almayns make not theyr¹⁸ auaunte of the¹⁸ wynnyng of this¹⁹ noble citey by²⁰ assaule / the whyche is 24 so goodly and ryche / for, syrs, I knowe well ye shall not²¹ be in this payne²¹ no longe season / for duke Huon, your ryghtfull lorde, shall²² shortly²³ succoure vs all.' Then²⁴ the noble barons, knyghtis, and burgesses / 28 herynge the²⁵ comfote of the noble²⁶ lady the duches Esclaramonde, with a maruaylous²⁷ corage²⁸ they came to

A fierce assault upon Bordeaux is forthwith prepared, but the defenders of the city make a fierce resistance.

Gerames and Esclaramonde exhort Huon's men to fight lustly.

Very valliant is their defence,

1 verie good and. 2 speedily. 3 selfe.
 4-4 Ensigne displayde. 5 which were. 6-6 with mighte.
 7 burning. 8 which. 9 for. 10 themselues.
 11 exceeding. 12 like vnto. 13 beholde. 14 vnto.
 15 Fol. lxxxiii. col. 2. 16 but. 17 your.
 18-18 bragges and vauntes of theyr. 19 most. 20 theyr.
 21-21 abide this trouble for. 22 will. 23 ayde and.
 24 all. 25 exceeding great. 26 and vertuous.
 27 great. 28 and valour.

and the Germans
are forced to
retire.

The Emperor
invites his men to
give him advice
as to whether he
shall continue the
siege longer.

The Emperor's
brother, duke
Savary, urges the
Germans to
persist in their
endeavour,

but declares it
necessary to
capture Gerames.

the¹ defences / and dyd² so valyauntly that theyr
enemyes were fayne³ to recule⁴ backe with great losse
& damage / wherof the emperour and his lordys were
ryghte sorowfull / and they within the citey ryght⁴
ioyous⁵ of the⁶ victory that god had geuen them that
day. Then euery man ⁷drew to theyr⁷ logyng and
made great ioy / and the emperoure and his men with-
drew⁸ in great dysp[^l]easure for theyr⁹ losse. ¶ when 8
y^o emperour was vnarmyd, and had refresshed hymself,¹⁰
Then he sayd to his lordis / 'syr, we haue ben a longe
season before this citey and haue had¹¹ many losses :
therefore, syrs, I requyre you to counseyle me what is 12
best to do / this citey, is stronge & wel furnysshed with
knyghtis and men to defende it / by vs it wyl neuer be
wone, without vytaylis fayle them / but I thinke they
haue but small store of vytayle : therefore I desyre you 16
to shewe me your aduyyses whether we shall departe fro
this citey without more doynge, or elles abyde here vpon
suche fortune as god wyll send vs' / when y^e emperour
had sayd as moch as¹² pleasyd him,¹³ then the duke 20
Sauary, his brother, rose vp & said / 'syr, me thynke yf
I may be byleuyd, ¹⁴that this citey can not long endure :
and y^e cause why I shall shew you / ye know well that
Huon theyr lorde is gone to seke for socours / on the 24
other syde, they with in the citey haue but fewe men
and but yll furnysshyd of vytayles / within the citey
there is an olde knyghte who is a valyant and a hardy
knyght / and therefore it were profytable to study howe 28
he myghte be taken, or elles slayne / this shulde greatly
auaunce your enterpryse / of the whyche ye can not
fayle yf ye wyll byleue my counseyle, as I shal shew
you. Trewe it is this day we haue had grete losse and 32

1 theyr. 2 behaued themselves. 3 forced. 4 retyre.
5 ioyfull. 6 great. 7-7 went vnto his. 8 themselues.
9 his. 10 selfe. 11 sustained. 12 he. 13 omitted.
14 Fol. lxxxiii. back, col. 1.

receyuyd great damage, wherof they within ar Ioyfull /
 wherefore it were good to sende sartayne motouns and
 bestys in the nyght tyme *with* a fewe kepars: sende
 4 them into the medowe nere to¹ the citey / and I am
 sure² when the olde knyght knowe therof, the whiche
 he shall knowe by the wachmen on the toures and
 walles / then incontynent he wyll issue out with suche
 8 power as he hath to take the bestes & to bryng them
 into the citey. And to the entente that they shall
 neuer retourne agayne into the citey incontynente or³
 the mone ⁴dothe⁴ aryse, sende a goo[d] nombre of
 12 befes / and motons to the medowe. Then haue redy
 armyd .x. thousande men, and send them to the lytell
 mountayne, where as the galowes were⁵ reysyd / and
 when they parseyue that they within the citey be
 16 issuyd out to feche the praye / then let the .x. thou-
 sande men drawe nere to the gate of the citey / to the
 entent that they without shall not enter agayne, but
 to theyr great losse. And yf ye wyll thus do, I put no
 20 dought but that or⁶ it be mydnyght they shall be all
 taken or slayne / and the mater may so come to pas
 that⁷ ye shall enter into the citey at your pleasure.
 ¶ Thus I haue shewed you as I thynke best / yf any man
 24 knowe any better waye, let hym speke' / Then every
 man regardyd the Emperoure and seyde, 'syr, the
 counsayle that duke Sauary your brother ⁴hathe geuyn
 you we thynke all⁴ that a more noble counsayle coude⁸
 28 not be geuyn to any prynce.' when the emperoure
 vnderstode the counsayle of his brother duke Sauary,
 and that all his lordys dyd alowe y^e same / he was
 ryght Ioyfull, and sayde² it shuld so be⁹ done. Then
 32 he callyd his marshall and commaundyd that it shulde
 be done¹⁰ as his brother had deuydsid it before / the

He suggests a
 device to induce
 Gerames to put
 himself in peril.
 Herds of cattle
 should be sent
 under the city's
 wall,

and when
 Gerames and his
 men issue out to
 seize them, a
 large force of
 Germans should
 be set in ambush
 to seize or slay
 them.

All the Germans
 approve duke
 Savary's counsel,

and the Emperor
 gives directions
 for putting it
 into effect.

¹ vnto. ² that. ³ ere. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted. ⁵ is.
⁶ before. ⁷ Fol. lxxxiii. back, col. 2. ⁸ can.
⁹ bee so. ¹⁰ according.

whiche was done¹ dyligently, and sente² .xl.³ men with .vi. hondred motons and two hondred beestes nere to⁴ the citey / and⁵ layde theyr enbusschement of .x. thousande men by the lytell mountayne. It was⁶ darke nyght, & the mone was not rysyn / wherby they within coude not parsayue them / the whiche turnyd to theyr great losse and damage / for all those that issuyd out of the citey of Burdeaux were slayn and⁸ taken, as ye shall here after.⁶

The night is dark, and the men of Bordeaux are in great danger.

¶ Of the dethe of the olde Gerames and of the takyng of the citey of Burdeaux, and of commonyng⁷ of the duches with the 12 Emperoure, & of the delyueryng⁸ of the Castell to the Emperoure. Ca. .cxiii.



After their success over the Germans, Gerames called his men together, and thanked God for their victory.

⁹ e haue hard here before how the Emperoure assaylyd the citey of Burdeux, 16 and of the great losse that he receyuyd¹⁰ / wherof Gerames and they within the citey were ryght ioyous,¹¹ and made great feast, and thonkyd our lord god. Then 20 after supper Gerames callyd all the knyghtes and other together and sayde, 'Syr, ye haue sene this daye the great assualte that the Emperoure and his men hathe made to this cytye / but, thonkid be god, the losse is 24 returned to them / for there are dede and woundyd a great nombre of them / and many of them are sore weryed¹² of trauaylyng,¹² & thynkethe nowe to reste themselfe / and nowe is theyr owre that they be sette 28 at supper, and custumably they sytte euer longe at theyr table / far lenger then frenche men dothe / wherfore I wold thynke beste that incontynente without de-

He advised another night attack upon the enemy,

¹ verie. ² with him. ³ fiftie. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ then.
⁶ hereafter. ⁷ the comming. ⁸ vp.
⁹ Fol. lxxxv. col. 1. ¹⁰ sustained. ¹¹ ioyfull.
¹²⁻¹² with trauaile.

laye ¹to arme vs all¹ and to² issue out of the citey and go to theyr tentys and arayse them / and then let vs do there as good ³knyghtys ought to do, to the entente ⁴that good songes maye be made of vs. And that the Almaynes haue no cause to say but that we be as good men as they be.' 'Syr,' quod Othon and Bar- narde, 'we be redy thus to do.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames, ⁸'let vs make hast, that we may retourne agayne or⁴ the mone rysethe.' Then they armyd themselfe. Alas, what an yll aduenture came to them that⁵ nyght / for y^e moste parte of tho that issuyd out were taken and ¹²slayne. A, good lorde, what a losse fell to the good² citey of Burdeaux. A, noble lady Esclaramonde / ye may wel wepe and complayne. ⁶your dayes of ⁷sorowe and² payne and doloure aprocheth nere, wherby ye ar ¹⁶lyke to bere such dyseases and pouertye that no man lyuynge canne recounte it / nor ye shall neuer issue out of that daunger and sorowe⁸ tyll ye be delyueryd by the good duke Huon your husbunde / when Gerames ²⁰and his companye were redy, they moun tyd on theyr horses / they⁹ issuyd out at the gate as preuely as they coude / so *that* they were not parseyuyd by them that were set to watche for them, nor they hard not when ²⁴they were in the felde / they rode a fawse galope to the tentys, y^e which they myght well se clerely by the lyghte that were in the tentys / when they came nere, they dashed theyr sporys to theyr horses and cryed ²⁸'Burdeaux' / and strake and cut asonder the cordys and stayes so *that* many tentis fell to the erth / & suche as came out were slayne / great noyse & cry began to ryse in the host, & every man ran to theyr harnase¹⁰ / ³²and Gerames & his companye slew many of theyr enemyes, and made them to fle before them / it was

so that their
valiant deeds
might be
remembered in
song.

All agree with
Gerames,

and preparations
are made, but
ill fortune is
awaiting their
sortie.

Huon's men
approach the
German tents,

and dash upon
them.

¹⁻¹ we should arme ourselues.

² omitted.

³ Fol. lxxxv. col. 2.

⁴ ere.

⁵ at.

⁶ all.

⁷ for.

⁸ trouble.

⁹ and.

¹⁰ armour.

dreful to beholde the damage that they dyd there. But fynally the losse fell ¹vpon them / for the Emperoure and all his men were redy / when Gerames sawe howe all the hoost was mouyd / then he sayd to his com- 4 panye, 'Syr, it is tyme to recule² backe / for we maye tary here to longe / yonder cometh the emperoure with a ³great pusaunce³ to close vs in / it is nede⁴ for vs to make hast that we may go⁵ in sauetye.' Then all to 8 gether in one company⁶ retournyd, and went the way towardes Burdeaux. But they had not gone fare or⁷ that they were ouertaken by the almaynes / and they layde on on all partyes with theyr speris and swordys.⁸ 12 Then Gerames turnyd hym to an almayne / and with his spere ranne hym clene thugh / and in drawynge out his spere he fell downe dede to the erth / and then⁹ strake another, whome also he slew. He dyd such 16 dedes of armys that or⁷ his spere brake he slewe .v. of his enemyes / wherof the Almayns were sore abasshid. He brake the prese in suche wyse *that* none durst aprouche nere¹⁰ hym / ryght wel dyd Othon and Bar- 20 narde and such as was¹¹ with them.¹² But then the duke Sauary, who with .x. thousande men laye in the busshe- mente nere to¹⁰ the citey / when he¹³ hard the¹⁴ noyse and crye, he ¹⁵thought wel¹⁵ that they within the citey 24 were Issuyd out / when Gerames and his companye sawe how they were enclosyd bothe before and behynde, they were sore abashed. ¶ when Gerames saw that theyr forse and proues¹⁶ coud not auayle them, but *that* 28 other they must be taken or slayn, Then swetely¹⁷ he callyd vpon our lorde Iesu chryste / requyrynge hym to saue¹⁸ his good lorde, duke Huon of Burdeux, and the duches Esclaramond his wyfe. Then he cryed to his 32

But the Emperor and his host are ready to meet them,

and Gerames advises a retreat.

The Germans overtake them in vast numbers.

Gerames works mightily havoc among them,

but his forces are surrounded on every side.

Gerames calls upon Jesus Christ for aid,

¹ Fol. lxxxv. back, col. 1. ² retire. ³⁻³ mightie armie.
⁴ needfull. ⁵ away. ⁶ they. ⁷ ere.
⁸ swords & spears. ⁹ he. ¹⁰ vnto. ¹¹ were.
¹² him. ¹³ had heard. ¹⁴ great. ¹⁵⁻¹⁶ supposed.
¹⁶ powers. ¹⁷ earnestly. ¹⁸ and defend.

companye, & sayd, 'Syr, I pray you hartely at this tyme¹ shewe forthe your prouesses, and ²do so² that this emperoure & Almaynes haue no cause to make
 4 theyr auauntes that they haue founde vs as men dysmayde,³ and⁴ let vs shew them how our swordys can cut.' Then all together ⁵set on⁵ theyr enemyes in suche wyse that at the fyrste brounte the Almaynes were
 8 constraigned to recule⁶ abacke. Gerames dyd such dedys that none durste aproche nere hym. Then the duke Sauary weth .x. thousande men came vpon them sodaynely / the whiche was none egall partye / and
 12 also the emperoure with his great batayle came also vpon⁷ Gerames and his company, who had gotten themselves in to the subbarbes of the cyte and a great⁸ wall behynde them at theyr backes, where as they stode⁹ at
 16 a baye agaynste the almaynes / ¹⁰for as the wyld bore doth kepe a baye agaynst the mastyues and bayynge houndes, so dyd they of Burdeaux agaynst the almayns.¹⁰ Gerames was in the myddys of them, and vnder¹¹ his
 20 helme aperyd his long whyght berde / and y^e emperour who had great shame that so fewe men in nombre shuld kepe a baye ¹⁰in that moner¹⁰ agaynste his pusaunce¹² & do to¹³ his men so great damage / he parseyuyd where
 24 the olde Gerames was / who had often tymys slayne manye of his men and done hym suche damagys that he thought he coud neuer ¹⁴have amendys¹⁴ therof suffyeynt / and thought that yf he shuld haue scapyd them
 28 a lyue / that he wolde do hym moch more hurte and dyspleasure¹⁵ after / and sayd to hymselfe that he had rather dye incontinent then he shulde not as then be reuengyd vpon hym / & therewith incontinent he

and urges on his men to show all their prowess.

At their first charge, the Germans recoil;

and Gerames' men set themselves before the walls of the city and fight like wild boars at bay.

The Emperour vows that Gerames shall die,

¹ Fol. lxxxv. back, col. 2.

²⁻³ behaue your selues so valiantly. ³ amazed. ⁴ but.
⁵⁻⁵ they assayed. ⁶ retyre. ⁷ old. ⁸ mightie.
⁹ did stand. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ vnderneath.
¹² highnesse. ¹³ vnto. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ be reuenged.
¹⁵ damage.

and running upon
him, kills him.

The men of
Bordeaux had
good cause to
weep for the loss
of their leader,

and soon all
his companions
except one knight,
Barnard, are
slain.

Barnard was
nearly as brave
as Huon,
and he is mounted
on the swift horse
Amphage.

He alone returns
to Bordeaux,

and tells the
burgesses the evil
fate of all his
company.

couchyd his spere / and ranne at¹ Gerames on the one
syde or² he was ware, so that³ the emperour ran hym
clene thorowe y^e body / so⁴ this⁴ ientyll knyght Gerames
fell to the erthe and dyed incontynente. great damage 4
fell that daye to Huon of Burdeaux / for he loste the
treweste and best frynde that he had. Alas, for that
petuous iourney that fell that daye to them of Bur-
deaux. They had good cause⁵ to wepe / alas, good 8
duches Esclaramond, what losse haue ye receyuyd to
lese hym who was your chefe comforte and refuge /
ye myght haue called hym more then father. A, ryght
noble lady / there neuer came to you a greater mys- 12
chefe than ye haue by the dethe of Gerames / who
lyeth dede⁶ among his enemyes / when the Almaynes
sawe that Gerames was dede / then they fought so *that*
within a short space all they⁷ of Burdeaux were slayne 16
and not one scapyd alyue / excepte Barnarde, who was
on y^e pusaunt hors Amphage: for the gambaudes and
worke *that* he made, none⁸ Almayne durste aproche
nere hym / for Barnard nexte⁹ Huon was the moste 20
valyaunt knyght of his body that was as then leuyng /
for when the almaynes sawe hym on¹⁰ that horse / they
chasyd hym no further, then¹¹ they wente to theyr
tentis, and Barnarde seysyd not tyll he came to⁹ the 24
gate of the citey / the whiche was openyd / when he
was enteryd and the gate agayne closyd¹² / the burgesses
and comunaltye sawe how Barnarde came in all alone /
they demaundyd of hym and sayd / 'syr, where is 28
your capetayne, the olde Gerames?' Then sore
wepyng he shewyd them at lenth the petuous and
dolorous aduenture, y^e whiche, when they hard that,¹³
they made suche cryes and wepyng that petye it was⁵ 32
to here and to se them / the brute and noyse was so

¹ old. ² era. ³ Fol. lxxxvi. col. 1. ⁴⁻⁴ that the.
⁵ for. ⁶ euen now. ⁷ them. ⁸ not an. ⁹ vnto.
¹⁰ vpon. ¹¹ but. ¹² closed agayne. ¹³ omitted.

greate and lowde, that the ¹lady Esclaramond harde it /
 wherof² she ³had maruayle³ and was⁴ in great fere /
 Therwith syr Barnarde enteryd in to⁵ the castel gate
 4 and so mountyd into the hall, where as he founde the
 duches Esclaramonde / who was sore abasshyde when
 she sawe syr Barnarde come alone / who shewyd her
 the great losse that she had receyuid⁶ that day / wher
 8 with for inward sorow she fell downe in a svoune, and
 so lay a longe space as thoughe she had bene dede.
 Then the ladyes and damoysselles sore wepyng releuyd
 her / then she cast out a great crye, wryngyng her
 12 handes and teryng her here, and sayde, ' A, Huon, my
 ryght dere lorde, this day ye haue loste your moste
 sorowfull and dolorous wyfe and welbelouyd doughter.'
 ¶ Then⁷ ladyes and damoysselles & other wyues who
 16 had loste theyr husbondys / fathers / and bretherne
 came in to the castell and made suche cryes and sorowes
 that the noyse therof was harde into the emperours
 hoste without / and it was shewed the emperour that
 20 y^e noyse and brute that was made within the citey and
 castell was for the losse they had receyuyd that daye.
 And then they sayde it shulde be good that the nexte
 mornynge euery man shulde be redy to go and assayle
 24 the citey, and sayde that yf euer they shulde⁸ wyne
 it the owre then was comen. ¶ when the emperour⁹
 harde that reason, he sayde that the aduyce was very
 good / and¹⁰ he wolde it shuld so be done / he gaued the
 28 charg ther of to his constable and marshalles. thus¹¹
 the nexte mornynge the¹² host was redy, & the emper-
 oure commaundyd to set forward / and so¹³ they came
 before the citey garnysshed with all thynges nedefull
 32 and necessarye for assawlte / then¹⁴ they ¹⁵marched

Esclaramonde is
sore distressed at
his sad news,

and swoons as
though she were
dead.

Loud are the
lamentations of
the women
throughout the
city.

The Emperor
resolves to enter
Bordeaux on the
following day.

¹ Fol. lxxxvi. col. 2. ² whereat. ³⁻³ maruailed.
⁴ stood. ⁵ at. ⁶ sustained. ⁷ the. ⁸ would.
⁹ had. ¹⁰ that. ¹¹ & so. ¹² his. ¹³ then.
¹⁴ and. ¹⁵ Fol. lxxxvi. back, col. 1.

Only merchants
and burgesses
remained to
defend the city,

and Bordeaux
falls before its
assailants.

The Emperor
and all his men
make entry
within the walls,

but he forbids
his men to
violate the
women, or the
churches.

Little injury is
done to the noble
city.

forwarde and aproched the cytye / and when they came
there they gaue a great crye, and enteryd into the dykys
and reryd vp theyr ladders to the walles in dyuers
places / so that they that were within were sore ⁴
abasshyde¹ / For *within* were but burgesses and mar-
chauntys, who coude lytel skyl of ²the² warre / how be
it, they mountyd vpon the walles to ³defend³ theyr
citye. But the citye was so sore assayld on all partyes / ⁸
that the defendauntys wyste not where to make resyst-
ence / the shot of them without flewe so thicke that
none within durste appere vpon the walles, wherby
they enterid perforce into the citye and slewe as many ¹²
as they met withall in theyr enteryng. And then they
went to⁴ the gate and openyd it / so that the emperour
and all his lordys enteryd into the citye. Then euery
man wente abrode in the stretis to take presoners and ¹⁶
to spoyle mennes houses. ¶ when the emperour sawe
how he was lorde of the citye / he ⁵made it to be
cryed⁵ in euere strete that no man ²shulde be so hardy²
on payne of dethe / ⁶to vyolat⁶ any woman, or deflowre ²⁰
any mayd / nor to breke any church, nor to set any
hous a fyre / and also all suche as were in any churche
for sauegarde / that they shulde go at theyr pleasure
without any trouble or daunger⁷ of body or goodys / ²⁴
⁸the emperour, who was a wyse prince, thought in hym
selfe that great damage and petye it shulde⁹ be to dys-
troy and put to ruyne such a noble¹⁰ citye / so stronge
and so² well furnysshed with burgesses & marchauntes. ²⁸
When suche as were fled vnto strong places for refuge
vnderstode y^e emperours commaundement, euery man &
woman retourned to theyr owne houses, so that there
was but lytell damage ¹¹done / and that was by them ³²

¹ afraid. ²⁻² omitted. ³⁻³ and defended. ⁴ vnto.

⁵⁻⁵ caused it to be proclaimed. ⁶⁻⁶ should wronge.

⁷ either. ⁸ for. ⁹ would. ¹⁰ famous.

¹¹ Fol. lxxxxvi. back, col. 2.

that enteryd fyrst. ¶ when the lady Esclaramond
 sawe howe the citye was taken / ye may be sure she
¹had great dolour,¹ for fyrste she sawe her citye taken
 4 by ²her enemyes,² and her selfe closed within the castel
 yll furnysshed with wytayles / and moche people with
 her / wher by she sawe clerely without god dyd ayde
 her that her dethe aprochyd nere. Then peteously she
 8 complayned to god and sayd, 'Very god, on whome I
 beleue fermely, and for whos sake I haue lefte my fyrste
 mysbeleue & forsake my parentis and frendys to take
 to my husbonde a chrysten man / to y^e entent to reseyue
 12 thy law / syr,³ I requyre the of thy grace to haue petye
 of me, pouer, desolate creature / and to kepe & defende
 my dere chyde⁴ from all yll encomberaunce / for yf it
 be thy pleasure to saue my chylde I am content to abyde
 16 such⁵ fortune as⁶ it shall please the to send me, and
 besyde that, I requyre thy grace to saue and kepe Huon
 my dere lorde and husbonde.' Then all wepyng, she
 called to⁷ her syr Barnard, and sayd, 'ryght dere frend,
 20 I can take no counsayle now but of you / ye se well
 how our dethes aprocheth / and how⁸ it is impossyble
 for vs to kepe and defende this castell agaynste the
 emperoure, who hathe won the citye, and I dought yf
 24 he enter into this castell parforse, we shall be the fyrste
 that shall receyue dethe / and by cause I see wel I
 cannot scape from hense, I require you, my dere
 frende, and by the trowth that ye bere to⁷ Huon, my
 28 lord and yours, *that* incontynent ye take my dere
 doughter Claryet, whome I holde here in myne armes /
 and fynde some meanes that ye maye departe out of
 this citye, and bere hyr strayght to the abbey of Clune,
 32 the ⁹which is in Borgoyne / and delyuer her into the
 kepyng of the abbot there. and recommaunde me to⁷

Esclaramonde
 fears that, unless
 God aid her, she
 will surely die.

Piteously she
 prays to Heaven
 for help.

She petitions for
 the life of her
 child.

Calling Barnard
 to her, she begs
 him protect
 Clariet,

and bear her to a
 neighbouring
 abbey.

¹⁻¹ was ryght sorrowfull. ²⁻² the enemye. ³ O God.
⁴ cl.ildren. ⁵ what. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ that.

⁹ Fol. lxxxvii. col. 1.

hym. he is vnclē to my husbāde Huon, great vnclē
 to my chyld.' 'Lady,' quod Barnard, 'I know well yf
 I be taken here I shall be¹ slayn. Howe be it, yf I
 coude se or knowe that my abydyngē here coude ayde ⁴
 or socour you, bothe for myne honour and for the loue
 of my² lorde³ Huon, I wolde neuer depart hense fro
 you / but my reysyſtence and force is but of small
 valeue / and by cause I wolde serue you as I am bound ⁸
 to do / I am redy aparayled⁴ to take on⁵ me that
 aduenture as to bere your chyld awaye and to set her
 in sauegard by the grace of ⁶god.⁶ when the duches
 vnderstode Barnarde, she was well comforyd / and as ¹²
 for her selfe, she regardyd nother her lyf nor dethe /
 when she knewe that her chyldē shulde be sauēd.
 Then she delyueryd her chyldē to⁷ Barnarde / to the
 entent that in the nyght time he shuld issu out. Then ¹⁶
 the emperour and his lordis came before the castel.
 when the duches knewe that / she came to the gate,
 and at a wyndowe she desyryd to speke with y^e
 emperoure / who was there redy present, and sayde / ²⁰
 'dame,⁸ say what ye wyll to me at your pleasure' /
⁹when she sawe the emperour, she sayd / 'syr, I knowe
 well ye are the hede and chefe¹⁰ of all crystendome,¹¹ &
 noblest / wherby ye ar bounde to defend and kepe from ²⁴
 yll all noble men & women / I that am the doughter of
 an hye and myghty emperoure / and that for y^e loue
 of¹² Iesu chryst haue forsaken myne owne false byleue /
 to byleue on⁵ y^e christen faythe / syr, I requyre ²⁸you¹³
 haue pety¹⁴ of me and of all thos that be here with me,
 as⁹ to respyte our lyues / and to put fro¹⁵ all rancoure,
 & malyce, and pardon them ¹⁶that no thyng had to do

Barnard sees that
 his strength is
 now of no avail,

and promises
 to fulfil
 Esclaramonde's
 bidding.

The Emperor
 and his army
 come before the
 castle.
 Esclaramonde
 desires to speak
 with the
 Emperor,

and urges him to
 have mercy upon
 her.

¹ vtterly. ² good. ³ and Maister. ⁴ furnished.

⁵ vpon. ⁶⁻⁶ our Lord and Sauoure Iesus Christ.

⁷ vnto. ⁸ Madame. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ cheefest.

¹¹ the christened. ¹² my good Lord and Sauoure.

¹³⁻¹³ (for his sake that made and created you) to.

¹⁴ and compassion. ¹⁵ you. ¹⁶ Fol. lxxxvii. col. 2.



Esclaramonde tells her companions of the conditions of the surrender of the town.

Her daughter she entrusts to Barnard;

who promises to deliver her to the abbot of Cluny, her great uncle.

All night Barnard rides to fulfil his promise.

He was not mounted on Huon's swift horse, Amphage,

1
 e haue harde the peteous² taking of the
 citey of Burdeaux, and of y^e trete and
 apoyntment that the duches Esclara-
 monde had made with the emperour / 4
³ when she had made her apoyntment /
 she went to⁴ her company peteously wepyng / and
 shewyd them all the maner of her trefte, wherof euery
 parson was glad that theyr lyues shulde be sauyd / 8
 but they made grat sorow for that the duches shuld be
 come a presoner / ³ then she callyd Barnard, and sayd,
 ‘Syr, when it is nyght issue out by the posterne with
 my doughter Claryet, and bere her to⁴ y^e abbot of 12
 Cluney, who is her great vncl.’ ‘Dame,’⁵ quod he,
 ‘be⁶ in suerty that⁶ I shall not reste .ii. nyghtis in one
 place tyll⁷ I haue delyneryd your doughter to⁴ y^e⁸
 abbot of Cluney her great vncl.’ Then Barnarde toke 16
 leue of the duches, who kyste her doughter at her
 departyng⁹ / There was a posterne that openyd into
 the feldis ; ⁸ it was so small that Barnarde was fayne to
 lede his horse in his hande / the nyght was darke,¹⁰ and 20
 Barnarde¹⁰ knew ¹¹ well the wayes¹² / mountyd on his
 horse / and¹³ the chylde in his armys / and so rod
 forthe and passyd the laundes of Burdeaux, and was
 neuer sene by any¹⁴ man tyll⁷ the nexte day / he rode 24
 so all y^e nyght that his horse was wery. And when he
 sawe that he was past al daungers, and scapyd all
 perelles / then he rode at hys ease for loue of the
 chylde / and he complaynyd greatly for the good horse 28
 Amphage that Huon had left in his keypyng ;¹⁵ but he
 durste not take that horse with hym for fere that

¹ Fol. lxxxxvii. back, col. 1. ² pitifull. ³ &.

⁴ vnto. ⁵ Madame.

⁶⁻⁸ of good cheere and by the grace of our Lord and
 Sauour Jesus Christ. ⁷ vntill. ⁸ good.

⁹ sore weeping and pitifully complayning. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ but he.

¹¹ Fol. lxxxxvii. back, col. 2. ¹² & afterwards he.

¹³ with. ¹⁴ mortall. ¹⁵ vntill his returne.

he shulde haue delt the worse with the lady Esclaramonde / y^o which had bene trewe / for the emperour
 4 agayne the horse² then³ to win the citey / and therefore
 8 thens he rode to Mascon, and fro thence he restyd not
 tyll he cam to the abbey of Cluney. ⁴Then he alyghtyd,
 and desyryd to speke with the abbot.⁵ when the abbot
 sawe Barnarde with a chylde in his armes, he had⁶
 12 maruayle therof / ⁵when Barnard saw the abbot al
 wepyng,⁷ salutyd hym, and sayd / 'syr, the ryght
 desolat duches of Burdeux / your nese, wyfe to⁸ the
 duke Huon of Burdeux your nephue, hath sent here
 16 to⁸ you her doughter Claryet.' Then the good abbot
 embracyd hym, and toke the chylde and kyssed it mo
 then .xx. timys / and demaundyd why he brought the
 chylde to⁸ hym / 'syr,' quod Barnarde, 'the citey of
 20 Burdeaux hath bene besegyed by y^o emperoure of
 Almayne / and so straytly kepte that it was nere hand
 famysshed / manye knyghtis that were within ar
 slayne / so that Huon your nephue, by the counsayll
 24 ⁹of the duches his wyfe, & consent of all his company,
 is departyd out of Burdeaux to seke socoure of the
 kynge of Amphamie, brother to⁸ Esclaramond, Huons
 wyfe / and so it is a longe tyme syn he departyd, & we
 28 neuer coude here any¹⁰ word of hym / and thus he lefte
 vs in Burdeaux, and our chefe capytayne was y^o old
 Gerames, your cosyn, who was brother to the good
 prouost Guyer / & so it was ¹¹on¹¹ a nyght we issuyd out
 32 and rode to y^o emperours tentys and slew many of our

for the Emperor
longed to have
him again for
himself.

He reaches
Cluny, and
visiting the
abbot, delivers
Esclaramonde's
message.

Barnard relates
the disasters that
have befallen
Bordeaux and its
duke.

¹ the horse so well. ² agayne *after* horse. ³ for.

⁴ &. ⁵ and. ⁶ great. ⁷ hee. ⁸ vnto.

⁹ Fol. lxxxviii. col. 1. ¹⁰ any *omitted*.

¹¹⁻¹¹ that vppon.

enemyes, and when we sawe¹ tyme, we returnyd towardis our citey / but by some spye we were parseyuyd when we issuid out, wherby the emperoure, knowynge therof, sende duke Sauary his brother with .x.M. men to lye ⁴ in a busment nere to y^e citey / so that when we had thought to haue enteryd into the cytye, duke Sauary was before vs *with* .x.M. men / ther we fought a long space / but fynally the olde Gerames and his companye ⁸ were all slayne, none scapyd but my selfe, and that was by reason of my horse / so I enteryd into the citey, where as there was made great sorowe / and the nexte daye the emperour with great assaulte van y^e citey and ¹² cam to the castel, where as the duches was, who saw well she coud not longe holde the castell ; she made her trefte to saue her body and her companye, and so they ar all presoners / or² she delyueryd vp y^e castell she ¹⁶ delyueryd me her doughter, and so I issuyd out at a posterne preuely and was not parsayuyd / therfore, syr, your nephue³ hathe sent you her doughter to the entente that for the loue of her father and of her ye ²⁰ wold kepe and norryshe her tyll her father, duke Huon, be⁴ retournyd.' when the abbot vnderstode Barnarde he began to wepe, & ⁵ toke the chyld in his armys, and kyssyd her oftentymes, and sayde, 'my dere chyld, yf ²⁴ it please our lorde god I shall be to you bothe father and mother, and shall norryshe you tyll⁶ ye be great / and then mary you to⁷ some pusaunte⁸ prynce / in whome it shall lye to conquere agayne⁹ your herytage / ²⁸ londys / and sygnoryes / for I haue here in this¹⁰ house suche treasure that it is sufficyent to conquere y^e¹¹ hole empyre.' Then the abbot sente for a noble lady of the countre, and a nouryse, and delyueryd⁷ them the chyld¹² ³²

The abbot takes the child in his arms,

and promises to nourish and tend her carefully.

She is given to a noble lady of the country to nurse her.

¹ our. ² before. ³ neece. ⁴ were.
⁵ Fol. lxxxvii. col 2. ⁶ vntill. ⁷ vnto.
⁸ mightie. ⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ my.
¹¹ a. ¹² for.

to kepe and to nouryssh / for a fayred ¹ nor better
 furnyssh¹ of her age was neuer sena. Then the
 abbot sayd to Barnarde / 'syr, ye shall abyde here styll
 4 with me tyll² this chylde be of age, or elles her father³
 retournyd.' Now let vs leue to speke of this yonge
 chylde Claryet, and of the abbot / and retourne to
 speke of the dolerours company that were in the castell
 8 of the noble citey of Burdeaux.

Barnard is
 invited to remain
 with the abbot.

¶ How the duches Esclaramond yeldyd vp
 the castell to the emperour / and how she
 and her companye were ⁴ led to pryson⁴ in
 12 the citey of Magence. Ca. Cxv.



16 e haue wel hard here before that after
 the departyng of Barnard fro the
 castell in Burdeaux with Claryet, Huons
 doughter / how the emperour had made
 a trefte with the duches Esclaramonde
 for the delyueraunce of the castell / the whyche passyd ;
 and on the next mornynge the duches spake with the
 20 emperour, who with all his men were⁵ there redy before
 the place abydyng to haue the delyueraunce of the
 castell. And ⁶ when he sawe the duches at a wyndowe
 ouer the gate, he sayd, 'dame,⁷ I wyll that the promys
 24 that ye made me yester day ye vpholde,⁸ or elles I wyl
 do⁹ as I thynke best.' 'Syr,' quod the duches, 'I am
 redy to fulfill my promys, so that y^o promes me agayne
 that my body, and al ladyes and damoysselles and other
 28 to¹⁰ be sauyd, & not towchyd by no vyllayny, nor
 none¹¹ yll done to¹² our bodyes.' 'Dame,'⁷ quod the
 emperour, 'all this that ye ¹³ saye¹³ I promyse to
 vpholde;⁸ but you and all suche as be with you shall be

The Emperor's
 men assemble
 before the castle,
 awaiting its
 deliuerance.

Esclaramonde,
 speaking from a
 window, promises
 to uphold the
 treaty she has
 made with the
 conquerors.

¹⁻¹ creature. ² vntill. ³ be. ⁴⁻⁴ prisoners.
⁵ was. ⁶ Fol. lxxxxviii. back, col. 1. ⁷ Madame.
⁸ performe. ⁹ according. ¹⁰ shall. ¹¹ no.
¹² vnto. ¹³⁻¹³ require heere.

and offers herself
a prisoner.

my prysoners.' 'Syr,' quod the duchess, 'my lyfe and my body and all suche as be here with me, I put them into¹ the sauegarde of god and of you.' Then she descendyd downe & come into the hall, where as she 4 founde her petuous² company makyngre great sorow eche to other, for they knewe not yf³ euer they shulde mete

The castle-gate is
opened,
and the Emperor
and his lords
enter within it.

agayne.⁴ Then the duchess commaundyd to open the gate, the whiche was done.⁵ Then the emperoure and 8 all his lordys enteryd into the castell / but he wolde not go in to the hall tyl he had all the ladies and other brought out / to the entent that they shulde make no request to hym, & he ordayned a .M. knyghtes of the 12 most aunsyentys men of his hoste / ⁶then he delyueryd

Esclaramonde
and all within the
castle are sent as
prisoners to
Mayence,

the duchess and vi. ladyes with her, and all the other prysoners, as well they that were within the castell as other that had ben taken before at dyuers skyrmysshes / 16 he⁶ sent them strayte to the citey of Magence / and set

and she herself
is thrown into a
deep dungeon.

them all in pryson in towres and other places / but y⁷ duchess was put all alone in a stronge towre, within the whiche there was a depe dongeon / and therin she was 20 set, out of the whiche she neuer issued tyl⁷ she was delyueryd by Huon her husbonde. Then the emperour,

The Emperor
orders all the
men of Bordeaux
to do homage to
him.

⁸ beyngre in the castell of Burdeaux, sente ouer all y⁸ countre that all such as were alyue shuld come and do 24 theyr homage to⁹ hym and take theyr londys of hym / y⁸ whiche they dyd.¹⁰ Then he made his prouostis and offycers to do iustyce both in the citey and countre ;

Thirteen days
later he seizes
some neighbour-
ing provinces.

and after that the emperour had bene there .viii. dayes 28 he went out of the citey and rode and toke possessyon of Blames and of Gerounde, and set there his offycers / ⁶when he had full possessyon of all the countre he lefte keepers in the countre / and so retournyd to the citey of 32

¹ in. ² omitted. ³ where. ⁴ or not.

⁵ immediately. ⁶ and. ⁷ vntill.

⁸ Fol. lxxxviii. back, col. 2. ⁹ vnto.

¹⁰ according to his commaundement.

Magens, where as he was receuyd with great ioye.¹
 Now let vs leue to speak of y^e emperour Thyrry / and
 speke of duke Huon of Burdeaux, beyng in the castell
 4 of the Adamante in great pouerte and famine.

¶ How there aryud at the castell of the
 adamant a shyp full of sarasyns, wherein
 was the bysshop of Melayne / and how
 8 Huon causyd them to be chrystenyd; and
 then he brought them into the castell,
 where as they founde great plente of vytayle.

Ca. C.xvii [= Cxvi].

12



E haue hard here before how Huon was
 in the castell of the Adamant in great
 pouerte and famyne, where as he had
 been .X. dayes without mete and
 16 drynke excepte Appelles / and frute

Huon grows
 feeble in the
 castle of
 Adamant, for
 lack of strong
 sustenance.

that grewe in the gardayne / wher by he became so
 febyl and ²so voyde² that he had scant³ powre to
 sustayne hymselfe on⁴ his fete / he founde there ryches
 20 ynowe, golde and syluer, aparell & iouelles, and ryche
 beddyng / so that he wantyd no thyng excepte vytayll /
 and as he ⁵walkyd in the chambre where as the trespure

lay, he beheld an arch vaultyd, rychly peyntyd with
 24 gold and asure, vnder the which stode a ryche chayre,
 and ther in a couchyn of clothe of gold borderid with
 perlis and presyous stonys; Huon, who was verry of
 walkyng, sate downe in the chayre to reste hym.

He discouers a
 rich arch, under
 which stood a
 chair with a
 golden cushion,
 and there he sits
 down to rest.

28 Then he began sore to muse, castyng down his loke to
 the erthe, and by reason that his longe mantell had
 swepte the powder awaye fro the pauement, there
 aperyd letters of golde wretten on the pament; ⁶he red
 32 then / ⁶the tenoure of them was, who so euer rede

Upon the pave-
 ment at his feet
 he perceiues
 letters of gold,

¹ and triumph. ²⁻² weake. ³ scarce. ⁴ vppon.

⁵ Fol, lxxxix, col. 1. ⁶ and.

and thence learns that underneath the pavement is a cellar filled with all kinds of food.

But only such as are free from sin shall enter the cellar alive.

Huon prays to God for aid.

On the side of the chair he finds a key of gold, with an inscription written upon it.

With the key he opens a little wicket leading to the cellar.

Within all is as clear as mid-day,

and Huon sees a great oven.

And near the oven are ten fairies—all young men—who were making bread.

thes letter shall fynd that vnder this pauement there is a seller with vytayle, bothe brede, flesche, and wyne / and of all sondry metys for man or woman to ete of / but the letters sayd, that who so euer¹ enter into this 4 seller, without he be with out dedly synne, as sone as he toucheth any of the mete, sodaynly he shall dye. when Huon had red al the letters he had great maruayle and fere, and thoughte in hym selfe that when he 8 departyd fro Burdeaux, he was confessyd or² his prest dyed / and syn that tyme he coude not remembre any thyng that he had comyttyd that shuld be dedely syn, ³then he made his prayers to our lorde god 12 deuoutly, sore wepyng / and when he had endyd his prayers as he knelyd on⁴ his knees before the chayre, he saw hangenge on⁴ the syde of the chayre a lytell keye of golde; he toke it⁵ in his hande & began to 16 muse on the wrytyng that sayd / ' who so euer enter in to this castell, thoughe they be valyaunt & wyse / ⁶noble knyghtys, yet they shal not knowe well what to do ' / then he sayd to⁷ hym selfe / ' rather then I shulde 20 dye for famine, it were better to dye shortely then longe to ⁸langushe.'⁸ Then Hu⁹on recommaundid hymselfe to the ayde and helpe of¹⁰ god, and toke the key and openyd a lytell wycket and drewe the dore to⁷ 24 hym. Then he regaryd¹¹ into the seller, the whiche was as clere as though the sonne in the myddes of the day had enterid in at .x.¹² wyndowes / ¹³he went downe a¹⁴ .vii. score grefes, then he lokyd¹⁵ on the ryght syde¹⁶ 28 and sawe a great ouen with .ii. mouthes, the whiche caste out a great clernes / then he saw nere therto .x. fayre yonge men, they were all of the Fayry, .iiii. of them had¹⁷ made the past for bred / and .ii. delyueryd 32

¹ should. ² before. ³ and. ⁴ vpon. ⁵ vp.

⁶ or. ⁷ vnto. ⁸⁻⁸ endure in this hunger and thirst.

⁹ Fol. lxxxix. col. 2. ¹⁰ almightie. ¹¹ looked dowue.

¹² the. ¹³ and so. ¹⁴ about. ¹⁵ regarded.

¹⁶ hand. ¹⁷ omitted.

the louys to other .ii., & they dyd set them downe on¹
 a ryche clothe of sylke / then the other .ii. men toke
 the louys and deliuerid them to² one man by .ii. louys
 4 atones / and he dyd set them into the ouen to bake /
 and at the other mouthe of the ouen ther was a man
 that drewe out the whyght lous and pastes, & before
 hym there was a nother yonge man that reseuyd them
 8 and put them into baskettis³ rychely payntyd. when
 Huon had aduysed them, he had great maruayle, and
 came and salutyd them, sayenge / 'syr, I praye to⁴ Huon accosts
 god⁵ saue you & all your companye' / ⁶when they hard them,
 12 Huon speke, they gaue⁷ no maner of answer, but but they make no
 beheld eche other / ⁸when Huon saw that none of them reply.
 wold make hym any answer / he was sore abasshyd /⁸
 how be it he sayd / 'syr, ye that be here, I coniure Huon speaks to
 16 you in the name of the father,⁹ sone, and⁹ holy gost / them in the name
 & of the ¹⁰blessyd vyrgyn Mari his mother and of of all the
 all sayntys¹⁰ / angellis and arkeangellys, and of all inhabitants of
 the courte selestyall / that ye answer me to that I do heuen.
 20 demaunde.'¹¹ Then they all sessyd¹² theyr laboure and
 busynes and behelde Huon, and rubbyd of the paste
 & mele¹² of theyr handis and fyngers / then⁶ the mayster
¹³of them behelde Huon, and sayd / 'frende, ye do vs One of the faeries
 24 great wrong to coniure vs / we wyll that ye¹⁴ knowe yf reproves Huon
 ye were other Sarasyn or paynym ye shuld neuer for his speech;
 depart¹² hense without dethe / your trouthe and noblenes
 hath preseruyd you / ye ought greatly to thanke god /
 28 I knowe wel ye haue great hunger, for it is .x. dayes
 syn ye dyd other ete or drynke any thyng excepte
 alonely of the frute that ye haue¹⁰ founde in the
 gardayne / the which as yet is not rype and redy to ete.
 32 Therefore, Huon, fayre syr, I knowe well¹⁵ ye haue great

¹ vpon. ² vnto. ³ which were. ⁴ our lord.

⁵ to. ⁶ and. ⁷ vnto hym.

⁸ and greatly troubled in his mind. ⁹ and of the.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ of you. ¹² from.

¹³ Fol. lxxxix. back, col. 1. ¹⁴ well. ¹⁵ that.

but he offers him food and drink in an inner chamber, richly furnished.

As long as Huon remains in the castle, he shall have any manner of food and wine he may desire.

Huon demands what people they are that inhabit this place,

but the fairy is wrathful at the question.

He tells Huon, however, that the castle was built by Oberon's father, Julius Cæsar,

hunger / ¹ therefore, yf ye wyl drynke or ete, enter into yonder ryche chambre the which ye se open / where ye shal fynd the table redy set,² and the pottys of syluer and the wessell of golde borderyd *with* precyous stonys ⁴ and perle / and the basyns of golde, with¹ ewers with water to wasshe your handys / then³ syt⁴ downe at the table and there ye shall fynde metis and drynkis such as ye wyll wysshe for, and as longe as ye wyl tary here ⁸ in this castell, ye shall haue euery daye lyke seruys or better yf ye lyste / for any mete that ye wyl wysshe for ye shal haue it at your desyre,⁵ and of wyne in lyke wyse two tymys in⁶ the day, without ye wyl fast. But, ¹² syr, I requyre you of one thinge : that fro henseforth ye do not coniuere me nor none of my company / and then ye shall haue euery thyng at your desyre.' 'syr,' quod Huon, 'for henseforthe I shall not speke to⁷ you / so ¹⁶ that by the coniuracyon that I haue coniuryd you, ye wyll shewe me what people ye be that abyde thus⁸ in this castell, and what ye call this castell, and who is lorde therof / and by whome al the ryches that is here ²⁰ within is kept? I wyll go ete some mete, and then I praye you shewe⁹ me.' Then they answeyrd Hu¹⁰ on ryght fersly, and sayd / 'and,¹¹ thou false and vntrewe,¹² for to demaund any suche thyng of vs / at this tyme I ²⁴ shall shew you / but afterwarde / by me nor by none other of my company ye shall neuer here worde spoken.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'therof ¹³ I am sory,⁴ and I hartely desyre you yet yf here after I speke to⁷ you ²⁸ alone that ye wyll answeere me.' 'Naye, suerly,' quod he, 'that wyll I neuer do / but I shall shewe you that I haue promysyd,¹⁴ syn ye wyll¹⁴ knowe it. Syr, knowe for trouthe that Iulius Cesar, father to the¹⁵ noble kyng ³²

¹ and. ² and the cloth layd. ³ and there. ⁴ you.
⁵ pleasure. ⁶ of. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ heere. ⁹ it vnto me.
¹⁰ Fol. lxxxix. back, col. 2. ¹¹ Ah. ¹² knight.
¹³ the request. ¹⁴⁻¹⁵ seeing you are so desirous to.
¹⁵ good and.

Oberon, causyd this castell to be made by crafte of the fayry / the whiche castell can not be greuyd no take parforce / so it fortuneth that¹ on² a daye that Iulius

4 Ceser, after he had vanquessed y^e great pompey / he came into Alexandre to Tholomeus kyng of Egypt, and dyscomfytyd hym and toke fro hym all his londis to gyue it to³ his syster, the fayre Cleopatre, who was

8 quene of that londe, and after she maryed Marcus Antonius / and after that Iulius Ceser had this done to refresshe hym / he come hether withe the quene of the preuy Isle / and broughte her the same nyght into this

12 castel / and there were .iii. kyngys of the lynage of Tholomeus, who when they knew that Ceser was in this castell / they made an army, and with many shypys and galyes they came, and laid sege before this

16 castell / and laye at the sege a longe space and coude not hurte it of the value of a⁴ peny / so long they lay here that they were sore dyspleasyd therewith / and so they thought to depart home into theyr owne countrees /

20 but by reason that theyr shypes were naylyd with Iron naylis they coude not departe⁵ hence. For the Adamante stone, that by nature drawethe⁶ the Iron to³ hym / and so they laye here so longe that they all dyed

24 myserablye for famyne and rage / for no shyppe can depart⁵ hens without it be pynnyd with nayles of woode and not of Iron. And where as ye demaunde fro whence comythe the treasure that is here within this

28 castell / knowe for a truthe that it was the ryches that these thre kyngys lefte in theyr shypys when they were dede⁷ / the which treasure, after that they were ded, Cesar causyd it to be brought into this castell /

32 and or⁸ he dyed he delyueryd vnto me the keypyng of this castell and treasure. And I and .xl. other of my felawes are here condempnyd by the fayrey to abyde

and that no force can harm it. After Cæsar defeated Pompey, he came to Alexandria, and, having conquered Ptolemy, the king of Egypt, gave his lands to his sister Cleopatra, who wedded Mark Antony.

Thence he came to the castle with the lady of the secret isle. Three kings of Ptolemy's family besieged him here,

but they could do him no hurt.

And their ships were drawn to the Adamant rock, because of the iron nails, and the besiegers, being unable to depart, died of famine.

The riches in the castle were left in the Egyptian ships, and were brought within the walls after the death of all who sailed in them.

¹ omitted. ² vpon. ³ vnto. ⁴ one. ⁵ from.

⁶ Fol. c. col. 1. ⁷ dyed. ⁸ before.

Forty-one men
are condemned to
abide in the castle
till the world's
end.

After Cesar's
murder at Rome,
Oberon swore
never to visit the
castle again.

The fairy
speaker's name
is Gloridas,
and the castle is
called the
Adamant.

After Huon had
eaten and drank,
he came to a
chamber door,

and having found
the key, he
entered.

It is made of
crystal painted
with gold and
azure.
All the battles of
Troy and
Alexander's deeds
are portrayed
there.

The floor is
covered with
sweetly-scented
flowers,
and singing-birds
fly about the
room.

here to¹ the ende of the worlde. And² when that
tydynges came to the knowlege of³ kynge Oberon that
his father, Iulius Cesar, was slayne and murtheryd
within the senat of Rome by them whome he trustyd⁴
well / kynge Oberon toke suche dyspleasure that he
made promyse and assurement that he wolde neuer
come here more / & no more he hath done, for he
thought yf he shuld haue comen hether⁴ he shulde⁸
haue dyed for sorow, for the great loue that he had
vnto his father Iulius Ceser. And syn ye wyll knowe
my name, I am callyd Gloridas, and this castell
is callyd the Adamante. Nowe I haue shewyd you the¹²
trouthe of your demaund, and one thyng I saye to¹ you,
ye shall neuer departe⁵ hens as longe as you leue,
without ye flye in the ayre as a byrde dothe flye.⁶

¶ when Huon vnderstode hym he was ryght¹⁶
sorrowfull. And so after he hadde well eten and
dronken at his owne pleasure, he toke his leue and
departid, and⁷ came to¹ a dore of a chambre, and sawe
letters of gold wryten ouer the dore, wherby he had²⁰
knowlege where the key was / he toke it and openyd
the dore and enteryd into the chambre, and saw how⁸
all the chambre was made of Chrystall payntyd rychely
with gold and Asure. And there was porturyd⁹ all the²⁴
bataylys of Troye and all the dedys of Alexander.
And on¹⁰ the pauement was sprede a brode Roses and¹¹
flowres, and herbys, swete smellynge aboute all other
sauorys of the worlde, and in the chaumbre there were²⁸
dyuers byrdys flyenge about¹¹ the chaumbre,¹¹ syngynge
so maruaylous swetely that¹² ioye it was to here them.
The rychesse and¹³ beaulty of that chaumbre can¹⁴ not
be dyscryuyd. Huon had maruaylous great pleasure to³²

¹ vnto. ² Nowe. ³ the noble. ⁴ again, that.

⁵ from. ⁶ nowe I haue shewed you your desire.

⁷ Fol. c. col. 2. ⁸ that. ⁹ portraiture of the.

¹⁰ vpon. ¹¹ omitted. ¹² great. ¹³ and melodie.

¹⁴ could.

beholde it / ¹there he sawe a table set full of mete / The rarest food
is spread upon a
table,
 and therby stode great pottys of gold garnysshyd with
 precyous stonys full of wyne / there was no mete in the
 4 world but that there it was redy / Huon had good and Huon eats of
it.
 apetyte to ete, for he hadde eten but lytell before / by
 reason of the talkynge that he had withe Gloriadas.
¹Then two yenge men broughte hym a basyn of golde A gold basin is
brought him by
two young men
to wash his
hands.
 8 broderyd with perles to wasshe his handys / & a nother
 brought hym a towell to wype his handys. Then Huon
 sate downe at a ryche table, the whiche was broderyd
 with prsyous stonis / the clothe that laye vpon the
 12 table was of sylke rychely wroughte / Huon dyd ete his
 mete, for he had good apetyte therto / a goodlye yonge
 man caruyd vnto² hym, and another bare his cuppe /
 Many folkes there was to ³do all y^{e3} seruyse that All the services
he may require
are done for him
by youths,
to whom he
speaks without
reply from them.
 16 myghte be done⁴ vnto any creature leuyng in y^e
 worlde / and he spake to⁵ them, but none wold answer⁶
 one word, ⁷wherwith he ⁸had great dyspleasure; ⁸but
 when he saw there was none other remedy he⁹ let it pas
 20 and forgat it, bycause of the swete melody that the
 byrdys made. oftentymes he wysshyd for¹⁰ Esclaramond
 his wyfe, ⁴and for his doughter Clariet, and for Gerames /
 Barnard / and Rycharde, and his other companye that
 24 he lefte at Burdeaux : thus Huon was seruyd in the
 castell of the adamant / when he had dynyd the
 seruauantis toke vp y^e table and brought hym water & a
 towel to wasshe his handis / then he rose¹¹ fro the table
 28 and went¹² into the seller, where as he saw euery
 thyng as he had sene before / he salutyd them in
 passynge forby,¹³ but they made none answer / so he
 cam to⁵ the greses and mountyd vp / and then wente
 32 and sportyd hym fro chambre to chambre / and then At length he
leaves the
beautiful
chamber,

¹ and. ² for. ³⁻³ haue done. ⁴ omitted.
⁵ vnto. ⁶ him. ⁷ Fol. c. back, col. 1.
⁸⁻⁸ was angrie and sore displeased. ⁹ did.
¹⁰ his wife the faire. ¹¹ vp. ¹² downe. ¹³ by.

and returns to the garden above. When he is hungry again, he goes again to the cellar, and the food is ready for him as before. Although he is angry because none will speak with him, his health recovers,

and he wishes himself at Bourdeaux battling with his enemies.

At length he sees a Spanish ship approaching the port.

into the gardayne, wherin he toke great pleasure; and when the tyme came¹ to ete he retournyd in to the seller, and so into the chambre wher as he found euery thynge redy as he had done before / but he was sore² ⁴ displeasyd that they that seruyd hym wold not speke no word / thus he³ was there a hole moneth / and toke suche pleasure there that he recoueryd his helth and strengthe and beautye / greatly he was anoyed *that* ⁸ there was no man there that wold speke one worde to⁴ hym / oftentymes he wysshyd hymselfe at Burdeaux *with* a .C.M. men of⁵ armis to gyue batayle to⁴ y^e emperour who had done hym so moche damage. And ¹² on⁶ a daye as Huon walkyd in the hall saynge⁷ his prayers, he lokyd out at a wyndow into the see / and he saw a far of a⁸ shyp with full sayle comynge⁹ to a ryue at that porte / and they were .iiii. score marchauntys ¹⁶ all of Spayne / ¹⁰they knew not what port they aryuyd¹¹ at.

¹² ¶ How Huon saw a shyp aryue at the port of the¹³ Adamant. Ca. C.xvii. 20

Huon fears for the safety of the ship,



but it dashes in among the old rotten ships, and is unhurt.

Hen Huon saw this shyppe arryue at the porte he greatly complaynyd for them, and sayd / 'a, good lord, what asorte of good marchauntis haue here ²⁴ bene lost / yf they of yonder shyppe knewe therof they wolde not arryue here by theyr wylles' / and so then he sawe the shyppe com in with such a force, and it dassed in so sore amonge the ²⁸ other olde shypys, that the shyppe was nere¹⁴ perysshed. But the other vesselles¹⁵ / were so old that they were

¹ for. ² and greatly. ³ Huon. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ at.

⁶ vpon. ⁷ of. ⁸ a a in text.

⁹ comming before with full. ¹⁰ and.

¹¹ did arriue. ¹² Fol. c. back, col. 2. ¹³ Castle of the

¹⁴ hande. ¹⁵ shippes.

rotten, so that ther by the new shyppe was sauyd who had bene .xx. dayes in tourment in¹ the see / so that the men that were within it were so² sore trauayld and 4 faynte for famyne, that they were scant³ able to sustayne themselfe on⁴ theyr fete. ¶ When Huon sawe them aryue all wepyng he complaynyd for them, for he sawe well they were all lost, and that they shulde 8 neuer departe⁵ thense / when the shyppe was a ryuyd, the marchauntis within it callyd vpon Mahound to ayde⁶ them / and the mayster of the shyppe stode vp and wente ⁷on londe,⁷ and lokyd towardis the castell 12 and sawe Huon where he stode lenyng in a wyndowe, wherof they had great ioye, thynkyng that they were arryuyd at a good port / supposyng that he that they sawe there before them had bene the lorde of the 16 castell / by cause he was so marueylous rychely aparayld.⁸ Then they salutyd Huon in the name of Mahounde theyr god. ¶ When Huon hard that he knew suerlye that they were Sarasyns, and he⁹ coude 20 very wel¹⁰ speke the spanysshe languag, answeyrd to the mayster and said / ‘frendis, ye that be here aryuyd / shewe me¹¹ the trouth fro whense ye ar come, and what ye be / for be you⁹ sure as longe as ye lyue ye shall 24 neuer depart⁵ hense / and without ye haue vytayles brought *with* you, ye are¹² here yll aryuyd.¹² Then the mayster trymbelyng, sayd / ‘syr, know for trouthe⁹ I am of¹³ Spayne, and of¹⁴ the citey of Luysarne, and that¹⁵ 28 that¹⁶ be here¹⁶ with me ar al marchauntis of Portyngale and come fro the citey of Acre, and there we chargyd our shyp with marchaundyse / & we had¹⁷ good wynd till¹⁸ we were passyd the stratis of Marrocke, and that

The new vessel had met with rough weather, and the men were exhausted from want of food.

They see Huon at a window of the castle,

and salute him in the name of Mahomet.

Huon asks whence they come.

The master of the ship replies that they are Moors of Spain, travelling home from Acre,

1 on. 2 omitted. 3 scarce. 4 vpon. 5 from.
 6 and to succour. 7-7 a shoare. 8 and. 9 that.
 10 Fol. ci. col. 1. 11 (I pray you).
 12-13 all arrived at an unfortunat place.
 13 the country. 14 dwelling in. 15 they.
 16-18 are come hether. 17 a maruaylous. 18 vntill.

who have been
driven from their
course.

In their storm-
tossed wanderings
they had rescued
the bishop of
Lisbon and his
chaplain from
shipwreck, who
are on board.

The ship is
without food,
and all on board
are starving.

we were nere to our owne countre / ¹then a tourment
and a tempest¹ toke vs & draue vs of fro² our owne
countre, ³the whiche³ tempest hath ⁴enduryd this⁴ .xx.
dayes / ⁵so that perforce⁵ we were feyne⁶ to abandon ⁴
our shyp to the⁷ see and wynd,⁸ as the shyp wold go
at a venture, and⁹ at last ¹⁰we aryuyd¹⁰ by a great rocke,
and there we cast ancre; and whyles¹¹ we laye there we
founde on¹¹ the rocke¹² y^e bysshop of Lysbone, and ¹³his ⁸
chapelayne¹³ with hym, who came thether dryuynge on¹⁴
a mast of a shyp that had bene perysshed, and⁹ all¹⁵ his
company were¹⁶ by ¹⁷the fortune of the¹⁷ see. Then the
bysshop and his chapelayne ¹⁸prayed me humbly¹⁸ to ¹²
sauē theyr lyues, and to take them in to my shyp, and¹⁹
I had ²⁰pitye of²⁰ them, and ²¹delyueryd them fro the
daunger,²¹ & toke them in to my shyp, and gaue them
mete²² and other thynges suche as I had, for they had ¹⁶
bene²³ dede by famyne and ²⁴I had not ²⁵geuen them
mete²⁵ / and yet I thynke²⁶ they wyll be dede for famyne
or it be to morowe at nyght / for²⁶ I haue no more
vytaylor, nother for my selfe nor for such as be within ²⁰
my shyp / thus, syr, I haue ²⁷answeryd to your
demaunde / and therefore, ²⁸syr, I requyre²⁸ you, in
the honour of god & of mahound, to shew me to
whom this castell doth apartayne, and who is lorde ²⁴

1-1 and then suddenly a great tempest arose and.

2 the coast of. 3-3 a great distance, and this.

4-4 continewed these. 5-5 past, so extremely that.

6 perforce. 7 raging of the. 8 euen. 9 but,

10-10 by good fortune we chaunced to.

11-11 presently after the we were arriued there we went vp
into. 12 and there we founde.

13-13 one of his chaplaines. 14 vpon. 15 the rest of.

16 drowned. 17-17 misfortune at.

18-18 humbly prayed me to haue pite vpon them and.

19 whereuppon. 20-20 compassion on.

21-21 (as one verie glad and willing to deliuer them from
that daunger), I. 22 and drinke. 23 almost.

24 yf. 25-25 succoured them.

26-26 that they will not liue vntill to-morrow at night, for
truly. 27 Fol. ci. col. 2. 28-28 I desire.

therof, and what is the name therof, and of this porte
 where as we be aryuyd.' 'Frende,' quod Huon, Huon informs
 the master that
 the castle is hated
 by Saracens
 'know for trouthe this castell and porte is the place
 4 in the world most hatyd and doughtyd of paynyms
 and Sarasyns, and I shall shewe you the cause why /
 this castell is set on a rocke of Adamante stonys, because of the
 power of the
 adamant on
 which it is
 built.
 so that yf any shyp¹ come hether by aduenture²
 8 can neuer departe³ agayne. For the Adamant is of
 that nature that it drawethe all wayes to⁴ hym the
 Iron / and therefore any shyp that is naylyd or haue in
 it any Iron, and by hap⁵ come nere this port, by force²
 12 shall be constraynyd here to aryue.' when the mar-
 chaunt hard Huon / he began sore to wepe, and⁶ so dyd The newcomers
 are sorely
 distressed,
 all the other and sayd / 'syr, we are sore⁷ abasshyd of
 this⁸ that ye haue sayde.' 'Frende,' quod Huon, 'all
 16 that I have sayd is of trouthe; but, syrs, yf ye wyll but Huon
 promises
 to bring them
 safely out of
 danger if they
 will be converted
 to Christianity.
 byleue me, and to⁹ take on¹⁰ you chrystendome,
 and byleue on the faythe of Jesu chryste, and byleue
 farmely in hym, you and all suche as be in your
 20 shyppe I shall brynge you into suche a place where as
 ye shall haue mete and drynke at your pleasure / and
 apparell as ryche as ye shall demaunde / & then
 I shall shewe you so moche golde and rychesse
 24 that ye shall be satysfyed with the beholdynge therof.
 Therefore yf ye wyll byleue on¹¹ god¹² ye shall haue
 all this that I haue sayd before, or elles ye shall
 all dye of rage,¹³ of famyne myserably.' ¶ when
 28 the patron¹⁴ harde Huon, he sayde, 'syr, knowe for
 trouthe it is¹⁵ vii yeres paste syn I¹⁶ beleuyd fyrste The master of the
 ship is willing to
 embrace the
 Christian
 religion.
 of¹⁶ the faythe of our lorde¹⁷ Jesu chryst, and, ¹⁸syr, I
 thanke you of the curteysy that ye ¹⁹offer¹⁹ me; & fro

1 chance to. 2 it. 3 from hence. 4 vnto. 5 chaunce.
 6 lament and. 7 dismayed and. 8 these words.
 9 omitted. 10 vpon. 11 vppon.
 12 and of his sonne Iesus Christ. 13 and. 14 had well.
 15 about. 16-18 beleued vpon. 17 and Sauour.
 18 Fol. cf. back, col. 1. 19-19 haue shewed vnto.
 CHARL. ROM. VIII. E E

Huon bids him order his company to follow his example.

All are ready to comply with their master's command.

The bishop of Lisbon and his chaplain ascend the steps leading to the castle.

hensforthe I submyt me to the sauegarde of¹ god and of his² mother, the blessyd vyrgyn Mary, & to them I commende my sowle.³ when Huon hard that he was ryght ioyfull, and sayd, 'frind, go to thy shyp, and 4 moue⁵ all thy company to byleue on⁴ Jesu chryste / and shewe them what parell⁶ they be in nowe / and what welthe they shall haue yf they byleue⁶ on god⁶ / and also shewe them what pleasure they shall fynde in 8 this plase / and yf they wyll not thou mayst wel say that they are come to theyr laste ende shortly / and the .ii. men that thou hast sauyd cause them to com hether to⁷ me' / 'syr,' quod the patron, 'I shall sende 12 them to⁷ you' / then he departyd and enteryd in to his shyp / and there he shewyd his company all *that* he had harde of Huon, and⁸ was commaundyd to shewe⁹ them / when the marchantis, who were¹⁰ paynmys,¹¹ 16 harde theyr patron¹² in what case & parell they were in / they answeryd all¹³ how¹⁴ they were redy all¹⁵ to do his pleasure, and to receyue chrystendome, wherof the patron was ryght ioyfull.¹⁶ Then the patron sent for y^e 20 bysshop and his nephue, who was his chaplayn, & sayd / 'syrs, in the castell there is a lord who wyll¹⁷ that ye¹⁸ incontynent go¹⁹ a lond, and go to speke with hym.' when the bysshop harde the patron he rose vp 24 with moch payne from fayntenes, by reason of famyne, and sayd how¹⁴ he wolde gladly fulfyll his commaundement. Then he and his chapelayne departyd out of the shyp, and came to the stayres, and mountyd vp to 28 the castell / but they were fayn to reste them by the waye dyuers tymys²⁰; when they came to⁷ the gate they

¹ almightie. ²⁻³ sonne Iesus Christ. ³ remoue.

⁴ vpon. ⁵ and daunger.

⁶⁻⁸ vpon almightie god & of his sonne Iesus Christ.

⁷ vnto. ⁸ what he. ⁹ say vnto. ¹⁰ all. ¹¹ had.

¹² declare. ¹³ all answered. ¹⁴ that. ¹⁵ readie.

¹⁶ to heare them say so. ¹⁷ prayeth you. ¹⁸ omitted.

¹⁹ wil come. ²⁰ and.

marueylid greatly of the great beaute and ryche warke
 that they sawe there¹ / so they² came to³ Huon, who
 taryed for them at the hall dore. when they came
 4 nere to³ hym they humbly salutyd hym. 'Syr,' quod
 Huon, 'god saue you,¹ I praye you shewe me the
 trouthe of what countre be ye of.' 'Syr,' quod the
 bysshop, 'syn it please you⁴ to knowe I shall shew you
 8 the trouthe / syr, I was borne in the citeye of Burdeaux,
 and am bysshop therof, & haue bene this .xx. yere /
 and a deusyon toke me to go a pylgremage to the holy
 sepulture / but god wold not suffer vs so to do; for
 12 when we were departyd fro Lysbone, a great wynde &
 tourment rose vpon our shyppe / the whiche was fayre
 and ryche, and well furnysshyd with marchauntis / &
 so by fortune our shyp ran againste a rocke, so that
 16 our shyp brast⁵ all to pecys / ⁶so that⁶ all our company
 were there⁷ drownyd, excepte myselfe and my chape-
 layne, who is my nephue, and so⁷ we .ii. sauyd our
 selues on⁸ y^e maste of our shyp, flotyng on⁸ the see /
 20 and⁷ so⁹ by the grace of god / the shyp that is here
 beneth aryuyd by fortune at the porte nere to³ the
 rocke, and I prayed hym in the honour of god¹⁰ to saue
 our lyues / and the patron had petye¹¹ of vs, & toke vs
 24 in to his shyp, and dyd as¹² moch for vs as though we
 had bene his bretherne / syr, thus I haue shewyd you
 owre aduenture. And, syr, I requyre ye pardon me in
 that I so¹³ sore regarde¹³ you / but, syr,⁷ I shall shewe¹⁴
 28 the cause whye I do it / me thynke I see before me y^e
 good duke Seuyne of Burdeaux, who swetely nouryshed
 me in my youthe: ye greatly resemble to³ hym, and
 he¹⁵ set me to scole to¹⁶ Parys, and then he sente me

Huon questions them as to their history.

The bishop replies that he was born at Bordeaux, and for twenty years was bishop of the city.

He and his chaplain left Lisbon on a pilgrimage, and were wrecked at sea.

The Saracens who are in the ship below rescued them.

The bishop notes the resemblance of Huon to Duke Sevin of Bordeaux, who was his benefactor in his youth;

¹ and. ² Fol. ci. back, col. 2. ³ vnto.
⁴⁻⁴ seeing it is your pleasure. ⁵ burst. ⁶ and there.
⁷ omitted. ⁸ vppon. ⁹ that.
¹⁰ and of his sonne Iesus Christ. ¹¹ and compassion.
¹² so. ¹³⁻¹³ stearnly behold. ¹⁴ you (quoth he).
¹⁵ ge in text. ¹⁶ at.

through the duke's good offices he obtained the see of Milan.

The bishop knows Huon's features, but he does not recognize him to be his benefactor's son.

He relates how his father was brother to the abbot of Cluny, who brought Huon up.

Huon embraces the bishop as his cousin, and declares his name.

to Rome, to¹ our holy father the pope of Rome, to whom I was a kyne, and he dyd me moch good, and² gaue me the bysshoprych of Myllayne. duke Se^uen is dede / ⁴& he had .ii. sones, the eldest callyd Huon, & ⁴ the other Gerrarde / Huon was sent for to paris by kyng Charlemayne, & by the way there fel to¹ hym a marueylous adventure, for he slewe the kynges sone Charlot in his own defen[ce] not knowynge that it was the ⁸ kyngys sone, wherfore the kyng banysshed hym⁵ the realme of Fraunce, and sent him to the Admerall Gaudys in Babylon to do his message, and afterwarde he returnyd into Fraunce. And syn he hath had great ¹² warre with the emperoure of Almayne / more I can not saye, and I am⁶ sory that I know not where he is becum, for my father, who was brother to y⁷ abbote of Cluney, longe agone norysshed Huon vp in his youth ¹⁶ or⁸ his father duke Seuyne dyed / my father dyd teche him, wherfore I haue great sorowe⁹ at myne harte that I knowe not where he is becom synne the peas was made¹⁰ betwene hym and the kyng of fraunce.' when ²⁰ Huon vnderstode¹¹ the bysshop,¹² his blud changyd, and embrasyng hym swetely,¹³ sayd / 'Syr, ye are my cosyn : I am Huon who passed the see and went to the admyrall Gaudys, and I¹⁴ slew hym, and led away ²⁴ with me his daughter, the fayre Esclaramonde / who was maryed to¹ me by¹⁵ the pope / and I haue left her in the citeye of Bourdeaux in great pouerte,¹⁶ besegyed by the emperour of Almayne / I byleue suerly¹⁷ she is ²⁸ taken by this tyme.' when the bysshop hard Huon he began sore to wepe / and Huon embrasyd and kyssed hym, and sayd, 'cosyn, ye ar happy to fynde me here / ¹⁸elles shortly ye had been dede' / 'syr,' quod he, ³²

¹ vnto. ² hee. ³ Fol. cii. col. 1. ⁴ God be with him.
⁵ out of. ⁶ right. ⁷ good. ⁸ before.
⁹ and greefe. ¹⁰ and concluded. ¹¹ had well heard.
¹² and vnderstode him. ¹³ he. ¹⁴ I omitted.
¹⁵ our holy Father. ¹⁶ and miserie. ¹⁷ that. ¹⁸ or.

'I ought greatly to thanke god therof. But, syr, I requyre you¹ gyue me som mete / for I am so sore
²famysshyd *that* I can scant² sustayne my selfe on³
4 my fete.' 'Cosyn,' quod Huon, 'by the grace of god I shall brynge you to suche a place where as ye shall haue mete and drynke at your wysshe.'⁵ Then Huon toke him by the hand and brought him into the palays
8 and thrughe the chambres / the bysshop was⁶ abashed to se y^o great⁷ ryches that he saw there. Then they went downe into the seller / the bysshope beheld the maner of euery thyng, and had⁸ maruayle that none of
12 them that he saw there wolde not speke any word / he passed by them with Huon, and salutyd them / then he enteryd into the ryche chambre / where as the table was redy, and seruantis to gyue them water, and they
16 all .iii. sate downe /⁹then Huon sayde to the bysshop, 'cosyn, I coniure you by the sacramente that ye haue reseyuyd / that ye nor your chapelayne be so hardy¹⁰ to ete one morsell of mete yf any of you be in any dedly
20 syn / yf ye be incontynent, confesse you to your chapelayne, and he to¹¹ you ; for yf ye do otherwyse ye shall no soner ete one morsell but incontynent ye shall dye.
¶ when the bysshop¹² vnderstode Huon he had
24 great maruayle, and sayd / 'cosyn, by the grace of god I fele my selfe in good estate¹³ to abyde dethe¹⁴: when I departyd fro rome, Both I and my nephu were confessed and assoyled¹⁵ of the pope¹⁵ of all our synnes / and syn
28 we enteryd in to the see we haue done¹⁶ no synne.' Then Huon sayd, 'cosyn, syn¹⁷ ye be bothe in this case ye maye ete and drynke at your pleasure' / and so they

The bishop begs Huon to give him food.

Huon leads him to the castle cellar,

and warns him and his chaplain not to eat of the rich food there spread before them unless they are free from deadly sin.

The bishop declares himself and his chaplain free from sin.

¹ to.

²⁻³ punished with hunger and thirst, that I am neere hand famished and can scarce.

³ vppon. ⁴ Fol. cii. col. 2.

⁵ pleasure, and such as you will wish for. ⁶ greatly.

⁷ omitted. ⁸ great. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ as. ¹¹ vnto.

¹² had well heard and. ¹³ not. ¹⁴ for.

¹⁵⁻¹⁶ before and assoyled. ¹⁶ committed. ¹⁷ seeing that.

They eat and
drink at their
pleasure.

They marvel at
the sumptuous
furniture of the
room,

and at its sweet
odours and
sounds.

Huon, after the
meal, bids the
bishop go down
to the ship and
baptize the crew.

Elinas, the master
of the ship, had
converted all the
Saracens but ten.

dyde / ¹they had nede therof / they all thre were
rychely seruyd : they had euery thyng as they wysshyd
for / the bysshoppe and his nepheue dyd ete and drynke,
and they were greatly ²abasshyd of the great rychesse ⁴
that they sawe there / & they were rauysshyd with
the swete syngynge of the byrdys, and y^e herbes &
flowres that were there spred abrode smellynge so
swetely that they thought themselues in Paradyse / and ⁸
they had great maruayle to se the seruauentis to serue
them so pesably, but they wold neuer speke one worde /
they wold gladly a demaundyd the cause why / but
Huon had expresly chargyd them³ they shulde make ¹²
none inquiry. Thus passyd theyr dyner in great
ioye / & so⁴ wasshyd theyr handys and rose vp ; ⁵then⁵
the bysshop & his chapelayne sayd grase deuoutly.
Then Huon toke the bysshop by y^e hand, and sayde / ¹⁶
'cosyn, ⁶go we⁶ vp in to the palays, and then ye shal
go downe to⁷ your shyp / and shew them without they
wyll dye incontynent / let them be chrystenyd, and
dresse vp tubbes with water of the see / and halowe ²⁰
you it; and chrysten them therin / and I shall come
after you with my sworde and clene armyd / to the
entent *that* yf they refuse thus to do, I shall stryke of
theyr hedys.' 'Syr,' quod the bysshop, 'I shal do ²⁴
your pleasure.' Then Huon armyd hym,⁸ and wente
after the bysshop and his nepheue downe to the shyp⁹ ;
when they came there they founde Elinas the mayster
of them, who had prechyd so moche to¹⁰ the Sarasyns ²⁸
that he had conuerted them all excepte tenne. they
bare hym in hand that they were glade to be chrystenyd /
but theyr thoughtys was¹¹ otherwyse / for they .x. had
concludyd in theyr corages not to renounce y^e lawe of ³²

¹ for. ² Fol. cii. back, col. 1. ³ that. ⁴ then.
⁵⁻⁶ from the Table and. ⁶⁻⁸ we will go.
⁷ into. ⁸ selfe. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ vnto.
¹¹ were.

macomet¹ for to byleue on² Iesu Chryst / but they were content to be chrystenyd, to thentent that they wold not dye there for famyne. when Huon and the bysshop 4 was come to³ them the bysshop 4 sayd, 'Syr, I requyre you all shew me your entencyon that yf with a good hart not coloured ye wyll be come chrystenid, and byleue on the lawe of⁵ Iesu chryst, & leue the false and 8 detestable law of mahounde, the which is no thyng worth.' 'syr,' quod they al, 'shortely delyuer vs, for we 6 rage for famyne, the which so sore ouer presseth vs,⁶ that we can no lenger endure nor suffer it' / 7 when 12 Huon⁸ hard them he lawdyd⁹ our lorde god, and had great ioye therof; then⁷ the bysshoppe and his chape layne confessyd them al and assoyld them,¹⁰ and in two great vesselles he¹¹ chrystenyd them all. Then they all 16 cryed vpon Huon, and sayd / 'syr, for the loue of our lorde god, get¹² vs some mete / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'ye shall haue incontynente ynow so that ye shall be satysfyed.' Then Huon and the bysshop & his chapeleyne 20 all .iii. went into the castell, and chargyd in¹³ theyr neckes mete ynowe & brought it to¹⁴ the shyp / and causyd all the marchauntis to syt down / then⁷ the mete was set before them / & the wyne powryd out in 24 to cuppes / amonge other sate the .x. Sarasyns, who had rescyuyd¹⁵ chrystendome fayntly and falsely / and at y^e fyrst morsell that they dyd put into theyr mowthes sodaynely they dyed: the other marchauntis, when they 28 saw that, they were greatly abasshyd, and regardyd eche other, and durst not aproche to towche y^e mete, for they¹⁶ went all to haue¹⁶ dyed / 'syr,' quod Huon,

Their hunger is, however, so great that they consent to baptism, without believing in Christianity.

After all are baptized they cry out for food.

Meat and wine are set before them in the castle,

but the ten who had received the rite falsely, died on tasting the first morsel.

The rest of the converts fear to eat, lest they die also,

¹ Mahomet. ² vpon. ³ vnto. ⁴ Fol. cii. back, col. 2.

⁵ God the Father, and of his Son our Lord and Saviour.

⁶⁻⁶ be so hungrie and thirstie, that we are almost famished, the which ouerpresses vs so much.

⁷ and. ⁸ had well. ⁹ humbly thanked.

¹⁰ of all their sinnes. ¹¹ omitted. ¹² giue.

¹³ vpon. ¹⁴ into. ¹⁵ the.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ had thought that they would have all.

but Huon
reassures them.

After the meal
the men carry
up the merchan-
dise in their ship
into the castle.

They are de-
lighted with the
fair aspect of the
garden and the
rooms of the
castle.

A happy time
they spend in
their new abode,

be not dismayde of¹ this; for these .x. men *that* are dede dyd baptyse them selues but alonely to saue theyr lyues, & to haue mete / and not with² good harte,³ nor for the loue of⁴ god / therefore be not afrayde, ete and⁴ drynke at your ease / for ye shall want none⁵ / when the other marchauntys vnderstode by Huon how *that* ⁶they that dyed were no trew chrysten men they were⁷ abasshyd / and so fell to theyr mete & drynke / ⁸when⁸ they had eten & dronken at theyr pleasure they rose and toke all the ryches that was⁹ in the shyp, and caryed it vp into the castell / ⁸when they came there they had great ioy and pleasure to beholde the halles¹² and rych chambres that were there: so moch gold and¹⁰ syluer and other ryches they sawe there *that* they had therof great maruayle. Then they behelde the rych beddys and chambres aparaylyd wheras they¹⁶ myght reste them. ⁸Then they saw the fayre gardayne so pleasaunt and dylectable¹¹ to beholde / ¹²the more they regardyd it the fayrer it semed to¹³ them / the plase was of lenthe and brede a bowe shote & mora. ²⁰And when the owre cam for sopper / then Huon led them down into the seller, and after into the¹⁴ chambre where as there was mete and drynke plente / and after supper they went agayne into y^o palays, and laye in ²⁴the ryche beddys that they founde there redy, and in the mornynge the bysshope and his chapelayne sange¹⁵ masse before Huon and all the other that were there present / and when they wolde ete they wente to the ²⁸plase acustomyd, & there they founde alwayes redy euery thyng that they desyryd¹⁶ / in the day tyme they wold be in y^o gardayne to sporte them / oftentymes the bysshop prechyd to¹³ to them and confessyd them.¹⁷ ³²

¹ nor abashed at. ² a. ³ conscience. ⁴ almightie.


⁵ nothing, but haue all thynges at your wish.

⁶ Fol. ciii. col. l. ⁷ greatly. ⁸ and. ⁹ were.

¹⁰ ayd *in text.* ¹¹ delightfull. ¹² that. ¹³ vnto.
¹⁴ rich. ¹⁵ did sing. ¹⁶ or wist for. ¹⁷ of all their sinnes.

Thus they were there¹ together the space of a moneth,
 in great pleasure and solas. But who so euer had ioye
 Huon had none, for his abydyng there greatly anoyed²
 4 hym / ³oftentymes he wolde complayne for his wyfe⁴ but Huon
 Esclaramonde, and for his daughter Claryet, and sayde, grieues for his
 ' Dame,⁵ as oftentymys⁶ as I remembre what daunger I wife and
 7 haue lefte you in my harte nere departeth out of my daughter.
 8 body / a cursyd emperour, thou causethe me to suffer
 moch yll when I thynke that by this tyme thou haste
 taked my citey / my wyfe / and my chyld, and set
 them in thy preson / I wold yf it were the pleasure of
 12 our lorde god that they were here with me. Then
 I wolde neuer departe⁸ hens : and no more I shal do
 without it by the grace of god / A, syr,⁹ kynge Oberon, He prays for
 ye haue gyuen me your¹⁰ realme of the fayry ; yf it and begs Oberon
 16 might be your pleasure nowe¹¹ to socoure me as to aid him against
 delyuer me⁸ hense, and to ayde me to dystroy this the German
 emperour.
 emperoure who hathe done me so moche yll.' ¹²

¶ How Huon was borne by a gryffon out of
 20 the castell of the Adamant, and how he
 slewe the gryffon and v other yonge gryf-
 fons / and of the fountayne / of the fayre
 gardayne / & of the frute of the tree nere
 24 to the fountayne. Ca. C.xx.

28  Hus as ye haue harde Huon past¹³ the
 tyme in the castel of the Adamant, and
 on¹⁴ a daye he lenyd and lokyd out at a
 wyndowe into the see warde / and he saw
 a farre of a great byrde come flyynge¹⁵

Huon perceives
 a great bird

¹ all. ² greened. ³ for. ⁴ the faire Ladie.
⁵ Madame. ⁶ often. ⁷ Fol. ciii. col. 2. ⁸ from.
⁹ noble. ¹⁰ the. ¹¹ so much.
¹² for euer were I bound to your Mightines. ¹³ away.
¹⁴ vppon. ¹⁵ *leuyng in text.*

flying towards
the castle,

which alights
on a ship near
the rock of
adamant.

With its talons
it seizes one of
the ten Saracens
who lately died,
but who were
still whole and
sound.

The bird, which
is a griffin, carries
the man up into
the air like a
hawk bearing a
pigeon.

Afar off Huon sees
a crystal rock,
whither the bird
flies,
and he longs to
visit it.

He thinks that
the griffin will
return the next
day for more
prey, and that,
arming himself
securely and
lying among the
dead men, he
might be carried
away by the
griffin.

He resolves to
wait, however,
to see if the bird
returns again.

thetherwarde / this byrd or fowle was bygger then any
hors in the worlde / wherof he had great maruayle.
Then he saw where it cam to the same porte, and
lyghtyd in¹ the maste of a great shyp, and sawe how 4
for² the weyght of the fowle the mast had nere hand
broke asonder. Then after he sawe the fowle a lyght
downe into the shyp; and toke with his talantys one
of the .x. men³ that⁴ dyed bycause they wolde not 8
bileue fermely on¹ god⁵ / they coud not putrefye, but
lay styll in the shype all hole and sounde; then the
fowle⁶ lyfte hym vp into the ayre and caryed him
away as lyghtly as a hauke wold carry a pegyon. 12
Huon, who saw this, had great maruayle, and behelde
the Gryffon whiche way he dyd flye; and as far of as
he myght se he sawe to his semylytude a great rocke
as whyght to the syght as Crystall / ⁷then he sayd to 16
hymselfe⁸ 'wold to god ⁹I were there, I thynke it be
some place inhabytable⁷;' then he thought to¹⁰ hym-
selfe to com thether agayne the next daye to se yf the
Gryffon wolde come agayne to fech his praye: yf he dyd 20
he thought yf he wolde be out of that¹¹ castell, the
gryffon myght bere hym armyd so¹² suerly that he
shuld do hym no hurte with his talantis / thinkynge to
lye downe armyd *with* his sword in his hande amonge 24
the dede men / and when the Gryffon had brought
him wher his yonge byrdes were / then to fyght *with*
the Gryffon / yet he thought or¹³ he wolde thus do he
wolde agayne se yf the Gryffon cam and held the same 28
way as he dyd before / for he thought suerly yf he
retournyd to the same plase it muste nedys be some
londe / for he thought⁹ it¹⁴ impossyble to get out of
that castell by any other maner of wayes. Then Huon 32

¹ vpon. ² with. ³ Fol. ciii. back, col. 1.

⁴ that that *in text*. ⁵ and of his sonne Iesu Christ.

⁶ fowle *in text*. ⁷ and. ⁸ I. ⁹ that. ¹⁰ within.

¹¹ the. ¹² as. ¹³ before. ¹⁴ were a thing.

retournyd to the gardayne to the bysshop and to¹ the other companye, and made no semblance of that he had thought to do;² then he talked with them of 4 dyuerse maters. And when the tyme came they went to ete and drynke as they had bene acustomyd to do before. when nyght came and that Huon was in his bedde he lay and studyed of the conuayaunce of the 8 gryffon / desyrynge greatly for the daylight³ to go and se yf the Gryffon returnyd to feche his⁴ praye / when day came, Huon rose and harde mas,⁵ then he went to the wyndowe and lokyd there so longe that at the laste 12 he sawe a farre of where the Gryffon came flyynge fro the same place as he⁶ hadde done the day before / and came and sate downe on⁷ the same maste, beholdynge the dede men that laye vnder hym,⁴ whiche of them he⁶ myght 16 take to his⁴ pray / Huon beheld hym⁴ and sawe howe he⁶ was a crewell fowle. His⁴ becke⁸ was maruaylously greate / his⁴ eyen as great as a basyn, and more redder than the mouthe of a fornays / and his⁴ talantys 20 so great and so longe that ferfull it was to beholde hym⁴ / and then at last he⁶ alyghtyd downe into the shyp and toke one of the dede men⁹ in his⁴ talantis, and so mountyd into the ayre / and flewe the same 24 way as he⁶ dyd the day before. Huon behelde hym¹⁰ well, and sawe howe¹¹ he⁶ flewe to the whyght rocke. This rocke was callyd the rocke of Alexander / for when Alexander passyd the desertys of Inde, and 28 wente to speke with the trees of the sonne / and of the mone / he came to¹ y^e same rocke, and at his returne he baynyd¹² hym in a fountayne nere to the rocke, and there he taryed a sartayne space and sawe there many 32 thynges. Now let vs leue spekyng of this rocke and retourne to¹ Huon / who fyxed his corage / that he

He says no word of his plan to his companions.

The next day the griffin returns and seizes another corpee.

Huon notices that the bird is very horrible to look upon.

It flies away to the crystal rock, which is called the rock of Alexander,

because Alexander once stayed there,

¹ vnto. ² and. ³ Fol. ciii. back, col. 2. ⁴ her.
⁵ seruice and. ⁶ she. ⁷ vpon. ⁸ necke.
⁹ bodies. ¹⁰ the Griffen. ¹¹ that. ¹² bathed.

determynd to be borne thens by the Gryffon, and sayde to¹ hymselfe that he had rather aduenture dethe then to abyde any lenger there / for he hadde so² great desire to se his wyfe and his child that he put fro hym 4 all fere of dethe.

Huon reveals his plan to the bishop and his company, who are very dolorous on hearing him.

¶ when Huon sawe that the Gryffon was gone with his³ praye, he went to the⁴ bysshop and⁵ his company, and shewyd⁵ them all that he had sene and thought to 8 do.⁶ when they⁷ harde Huon they began greatly⁸ to wepe, and wrange theyr handys, and⁹ tare theyr here, makynge the greatest sorowe¹⁰ of¹¹ the worlde, and cryed out and sayd / ' a, cosyn,' quod the bysshop, 12 ' by y^e grace of god ye shall neuer take on¹² you suche a folye / ye ought not to seke for¹³ your owne dethe soner then it is the pleasure of god that your owre be come ; syr, for goddes sake forsake vs not / but tary 16 here with vs.' ' Frendys,' quod Huon,¹⁴ ' I remembre the daunger that I lefte my wyfe, and my chylde, and my citey, and lordis, and burgesses, and comunaltye¹¹ /

The bishop declares that Huon seeks his own death.

Huon replies that his anxious fears for his wife and daughter well-nigh kill him.

my harte is so sorowfull¹⁵ therof,¹⁶ that *that* it nere 20 hande sleeth me / ye shall abyde here in the sauegarde of our lord god / and I wyll take the aduenture that god wyll sende me, and I praye you¹⁷ speke no more to⁵ me in this mater.'¹⁸ when they saw¹⁹ they coude not 24 tourne Huon fro his enterpryse, the sorow that they made no man can declare / that nyght they passid in great sorowe and doloure / tyl²⁰ the next mornynge that Huon arose. Then he came to the bysshope, and 28 was confessyd and receyuyd ²¹his maker²¹ / then he dynyd wel with his companye / ⁶then after²² he went & armyd hym²³ in dobyll armure and with mayle on¹³ his

Huon is resolved to carry out his device, and is confessed by the bishop.

¹ within. ² a. ³ her. ⁴ Fol. C.iiii. col. 1.
⁵ vnto. ⁶ and. ⁷ all had. ⁸ pitifully. ⁹ did.
¹⁰ and greefe. ¹¹ in. ¹² vpon. ¹³ omitted.
¹⁴ when. ¹⁵ and so agreeded. ¹⁶ thereat. ¹⁷ to.
¹⁸ for, by the grace of god I will venture it. ¹⁹ that.
²⁰ vntill. ²¹⁻²¹ at his hand. ²² dinner. ²³ himselfe.

leggy, and helme on¹ his hede, and gyrted his sword
 about hym, and when he was redy, and sawe² it was
 tyme to departe, he toke his leue of the bysshoppe and
 4 of all the other, and commaundyd³ them ⁴to⁴ god.
 when the good bysshoppe saw his departure he made
 great sorowe, and so dyde all the other / but none of
 them durste speke any more to⁵ hym / the bysshoppe
 8 embrauyd hym at his departyng, and sayde, 'cosyn,
 in⁶ the ⁷sauegarde of ⁸our lorde⁸ Iesu chryste I
 commende you, and that he may of his grace preserue
 you fro all your enemyes.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'the
 12 great desyre that I haue to ayde and socoure her
 whome I lefte in great pouertye and dought of her lyfe
 constrayneth me thus to departe / for yf I go not by
 this m[ea]nes I must euer abyde here, and then ⁹shall
 16 I false her my promyse / and I wyll kepe my faythe
 and⁹ promys. Thus I recommend you to⁵ god.'¹⁰
 Then he departyd fro them and passyd out of the gate,
 and went downe the stayres and went in to the shyppe,
 20 and then he lokyd into the see and sawe where the
 gryffon was comyng / ¹⁰when he parseyued that he laye
 downe amonge the ded men withe his sword nakyd in
 his hande, and helde it on¹¹ his thye by cause it shulde
 24 not fall in⁶ the see; and as sone as he was layd
 grouelyng¹² a monge the dede men, the Gryffon came
 and ¹³restyd on a¹³ shyp maste as he¹⁴ was acustomyd
 to do / and he¹⁴ was so heuy¹⁵ that the mast ¹⁶bent nye¹⁶
 28 asonder. when Huon saw that, he was in great fere,
 and callyd vp on our lorde Iesu chryste for ayde and

He arms himself
 fully in strong
 armour,
 and takes leave of
 his companions.

Huon passes out
 of the gate of the
 castle, and down
 the steps, and into
 the ship.

The griffin
 approaches,
 and Huon lies
 down among the
 dead men with
 his sword drawn.

He trembles
 for fear.

1 vpon. 2 that. 3 commended.

4-4 all into the sauegarde of almighty. 5 vnto.

6 to. 7 Fol. C.iiii. col. 2.

8-8 almighty god and of his Sonne our Lord and Sauour.

9-9 I shall breake my promise vnto her, but by the grace
of god I will keape my faithfull.

10 and. 11 vpon. 12 crewling.

13-13 alighted vpon the. 14 she. 15 and so great.

16-16 was nere hand broken.

but the griffin
seizes him,
and its claws
pierce his armour.

Huon suffers great
pain,
and prays to God
for help.

The griffin bears
him to the white
rock, and, laying
him down, goes
to a fountain to
drink.

Huon rises,
and sees a forest
at hand.

The griffin swoops
down upon him to
devour him,
and Huon pre-
pares to defend
himself.

socoure, and to saue hym fro y^e fell¹ Gryffon / & the
Gryffon, lokynge for his² pray, saw where Huon lay
armyd / wherby he semyd more greater then any of
the other dede men / the Gryffon desyryd to haue hym 4
to his² nest to gyue hym to³ his² yonge byrdis / ⁴so he⁴
cam downe into the shyppe and toke Huon in his²
clees, and straynyd hym so faste by bothe sydes *that* his
clees enteryd into the flesshe for all his harnays,⁵ so 8
that the blode issued out, and Huon was in that
dystresse that all his body trymbelyd, & petuously he
callyd vpon our lorde god for ayde⁶ / but he durst not
stere for any payne that he felt, ⁷the Gryffon⁸ bare hym 12
so hye and so far that in lesse then thre owres he⁹ bare
hym to y^e whyght rocke / and there layde hym downe,
and for trauayle that the gryffon had he¹⁰ flewe downe
the rocke to a fountayne to drynke / the whiche 16
fountayne was of such great vertue that the bountye
therof coude not be descryuyd / and Huon, who lay
on¹¹ the rocke was sore wery for faynt, for the blude
that he had loste / ¹²thought in¹³ hymselfe that yf euer 20
he wolde scape fro that daunger it was tyme for hym¹⁴
to shewe then¹⁵ his prowes / then he rose vp and lokyd
rounde about hym / and sawe howe¹⁶ there was nere
hym a fayre foreste / then he prayed⁸ our lorde god to 24
ayd⁶ hym to depart¹⁷ thens in sauegard, and that
he myght ones¹⁸ retourne into his owne countre to se
hys wyfe and chyld, whome he so well lould, then anone
he sawe y^e gryffon / who had sene Huon ryse vp; then 28
she came withe her mouthe open to haue deuowryd
Huon, who¹⁹ was repenissed with hye prowes,¹ came
agaynste the Gryffon who had her pawes redy open to
haue grypyd Huon / ¹⁹who was light and quycke, gau 32

¹ cruel. ² her. ³ vnto. ⁴⁻⁴ and then she.
⁵ armour. ⁶ and succour. ⁷ Fol. C.iiii. back, col. 1.
⁸ did. ⁹ she did. ¹⁰ she. ¹¹ vpon. ¹² ha.
¹³ within. ¹⁴ then. ¹⁵ omitted. ¹⁶ that.
¹⁷ from. ¹⁸ againe. ¹⁹ but he.

the Gryffon suche a stroke with his sworde that he
 strake of one of his¹ fete by the ioynthe, and so the
 gryffon fell to the erth and gaue suche a crye that the
 4 yonge Gryffons, beyng in theyr neste in the foreste,
 harde the crye and knewe wel that it was the voys of
 theyr mother / father had they none, for he was slayne
 but a lytell before by a kyng of perce with his
 8 archers / bycause the Gryffon had slayne the kyngys
 horse for mete for his yong.² Thus when they hard
 the crye of theyr mother they rose vp in to the ayre,
 they were .v. in noumbre; they came all atons with
 12 open wyngis vpon Huon. / ³when he ⁴sawe them⁵ all .v.
 comynge on⁶ hym he had great fere / he strake the
 fyrste on⁶ the necke⁷ that he strake of the hede clene
 fro the body. Then the seconde seysyd Huon by the
 16 mayle, that yf he had not stryken of his¹ legge he had
 borne hym vp into the ayre / but Huon gaue hym
 suche a stroke that the legge hangyd styll at the lap of
 his⁸ mayle, then³ he toke it of with his hande and
 20 caste it to the erthe / and with another stroke he slewe
 that Gryffon / ³Then came the thyrde and gaue Huon
 suche a buffet with his wyngis that made Huon to
 knele downe on⁶ one of his knees / Then Huon strake
 24 that Gryffon suche a stroke on the wynges / that it fell
 clene fro the body. And the fourthe he strake of his
 legges / and with another⁹ stroke of his hed, and also
 then he slewe the other with the one wynges / then
 28 came the fyfthe Gryffon, who was bygger then any of
 the other Gryffons / ³then Huon strake at hym, and
 the Gryffon resyd¹⁰ vp his fete and spredde abrode his
 wyngis, and gaue Huon suche a recountre that the noble
 32 knyghte was stryken to the erthe; when Huon felte
 hymselfe hurte and laye on⁶ the erthe, he callyd vp on

He strikes off
 one of the
 griffin's feet,
 and its cry of
 pain rouses the
 young griffins
 in their nest.

Five in number,
 they attack Huon,

but he with great
 prowess slays
 them all one
 after another.

¹ her. ² ones. ³ and. ⁴ Fol. C.iii. back, col. 2.
⁵ omitted. ⁶ vpon. ⁷ in such sort. ⁸ the.
⁹ stroake. ¹⁰ reared.

god for ayd¹ / for he thought² he shuld neuer haue
 ryseen more / & wysshyd hym selfe at that tyme that he
 had taried styl in the castell of the Adamante with his
 company, who for sorowe that they had when Huon 4
 went into the shyppe / they durst not abyde the
 comyng of the gryffon / but went and dyd hyde them
 selues in the castell. And Huon, who was sore
 woundyd withe thys fyfte gryffon, rose vp as well as 8
 he myghte / and came to the Gryffon, who was redy to
 dystroye hym with his becke and naylys. Then Huon,
 lyke a vertuous³ hardyve knyghte⁴ toke corage, and
 lyft vp his sword with bothe his handys, and strake the 12
 Gryffon such a stroke on⁵ the hede that he claue it to
 the braynes, so the Gryffon fell downe dede to the
 erthe.

¶ Howe Huon foughte with the great gryffon 16
 & slew her. C. c.xxi.



Hen Huon saw that he had slayne the
 .v. yonge gryffons he thonkyd oure
 lorde god for the grase that he had 20
 sent hym as to ouercome suche .v.
 terrible beastis.⁶ then he sate downe
 to reste hym, and layd his sword by hym, thynkyng
 7 then to be in a suerty⁷ / but it was not longe but that 24
 the great Gryffon, who had brought hym fro the
 castel,⁸ came on⁵ hym with thre fete, and betyng
 with his wyngis /⁹ when she saw her yonge¹⁰ slayne, she cast
 out a great cry so that all the valey range therof / when 28
 Huon sawe her comyng he was in great fere, for he was
 sore wery with trauayle and losse of blode that it was
 payne to sustayne hymselfe / howbeit he sawe well¹¹ it

The old griffin,
 who was the
 mother of the
 birds that Huon
 had slain, flies
 at the knight,
 who is weak from
 loss of blood and
 the heavy strife.

¹ and succour.

² that.

³ and a.

⁴ Fol. C.v. col. I.

⁵ vpon.

⁶ foules.

⁷⁻⁷ that they had beene all slaine.

⁸ of the Adamant.

⁹ and.

¹⁰ ones.

¹¹ that.

was¹ nede to defende hymselfe / ²then he came to the
 Gryffon to haue stryken her, but he coude not, the
 gryffon was so nere hym betynges with her wyngis so
 4 fersly that Huon fell to the erthe, and his sworde fell
 out of his handys, wherof he had great fere / for he
 thought hymselfe in al hys lyfe neuer³ so nere dethe
 as he was then / he callyd then ryght petuously for
 8 ayde⁴ of our lorde Iesu chryste / and the Gryffon⁵ bet
 hym merueylusly with her beke / wyngis / and talouns /
 but the doble⁶ cotys of mayle that he had on were ⁷so
 strong that the gryffon coude not breke them / but yf
 12 the gryffon had not lost before one of ⁸his fete,⁸ and
 loste so moche blod as he⁹ had done, Huon coude neuer
 a scapyd without dethe / the Gryffon so sore defowlyd
 and bet hym that he could not ¹⁰ryse vp.¹¹ Then he
 16 rememberyd hym selfe how¹² he had by his syde a
 rych knyfe, the whyche he brought¹³ fro the castell of
 the Adamant / he drew it out and ther with strake the
 Gryffon on¹⁴ the brest .vi. great strokys, euery stroke as
 20 depe as the knyfe wold go / and as his hap¹⁵ was this
 knyfe was of ¹⁶two fote longe,¹⁷ and therwith y^o Gryffon
 fell downe ded / then Huon arose and dyde¹⁸ of his helme,
 and lyfte vp his handis to¹⁹ the¹⁷ heuen & thankyd²⁰
 24 god of his vyctory / ²he was²¹ sore trauaylyd and sore¹⁷
 chargyd with blod and swete / ¹²he dyd¹⁸ of his helme,
 and behelde rounde abought hym, and coude se no
 thyng to trowble hym ; when he had taryed there a
 28 sartayne tyme he rose vp & lokyd downe the rocke,
 then² he sawe a fountayne in a fayre medowe / then he
 went downe and came thether / then² he sawe the
 fountayne so fayre and clere *that* he had great maruayle

Huon fears that
he shall be killed
by the monster.

Huon draws a
knife that he had
brought with him
from the castle,
and strikes the
bird six times in
the brest, so that
it died.

Huon is weary
with the fight,

and happily finds
a clear fountain
at hand.

¹ great. ² and. ³ neuer *after* himselfe.
⁴ and succour. ⁵ did. ⁶ noble. ⁷ Fol. C.v. col. 2.
⁸⁻⁹ her Legges. ⁹ she. ¹⁰ in no wise. ¹¹ againe.
¹² that. ¹³ with him. ¹⁴ vpon. ¹⁵ fortune.
¹⁶ length. ¹⁷ *omitted*. ¹⁸ put. ¹⁹ vnto.
²⁰ our lord. ²¹ so.

White jasper with
flowers of fine
gold and azure
forms its
masonry,

and at its bottom
is gravel of
precious stones.

Huon drinks the
water.

All his wounds
heal at the first
draught,

for the fountain
was the fountain
of youth, which
cures all
infirmities.

Huon bathes in
the fountain.

At its side grew
an apple-tree,

and Huon tastes
its fruit.

Beyond he sees an
orchard,

therof / he sawe the masonry¹ therof ryche, all of
whight Iasper wroughte rychely with flowers of fyne
golde and Asure / ²when he sawe the water so fayre he
hade great desyre to drynke therof / then he dyd of 4
one of his dobyll armure to be the more lyghter, and so
aprochyd to³ the fountayne / and sawe the grauell in
the botome all of presyous stones / ²then he dyde⁴ of
his helme and dranke of the water his fyll, and he had 8
no soner dronke therof but incontynent he was hole of
all his woundys, and as fresshe and lusty as he was
when he came fro the castell of the Ada⁵mant, wherof
he⁶ thankyd our lorde⁷ Iesu chryste. This fountayne 12
was callyd the fountayne of youth, the whiche was of
suche vertue that what so euer sykenes a man or
woman had, yf they baynyd them in the streme of that
fountayne they shulde be hole of all infyrmytes. 16
Then Huon vnarmyd hym and dyd⁴ of all his clothes,
and bathyd hymselfe in the streme to put away the
blode and swete that his body was colouryd with all /
²when he was clene wasshyd, then he armyd hym⁸ 20
agayne with one of his harnes,⁹ and lefte¹⁰ the other /
by this fountayne there grewe an appell tree chargyd
with leuys and frute / the fayreste that myght be
founde / when Huon sawe the tree chargyd with so 24
fayre frute he rose on¹¹ his fete and aprochyd to³ the
tree,¹² and toke therof a fayre apple and a great, & dyd
ete therof his fyll, for the apple was great / ²he
thoughte¹³ he neuer dyd ete before of suche a frute / 28
'a, good lorde,' quod he, 'I ought greatly to laude &
praysse the, synne¹⁴ thou haste¹⁵ replenysshyd me this
day with such a fountayne and suche frute.' Then he
lokid on¹¹ his ryght hande and sawe a great orcheyarde 32

¹ workmanship.

² and.

³ vnto.

⁴ put.

⁵ Fol. C.v. back, col. 1.

⁶ most humbly.

⁷ and Saviour.

⁸ selfe.

⁹ armoura.

¹⁰ off.

¹¹ vppon.

¹² tre in text.

¹³ that.


¹⁴ seeing.

¹⁵ thus.

full of trees, berynge good frute of dyuers sortys, *that*
 great beaute it was to beholde them. This gardayne
 was so fayre *that* it semyd rather a paradise then a
 4 thyng terrestryall. For out of this gardayne there
 issuyd suche a smell and odoure *that* Huon thought
 that all the bawme and spycery of¹ the worlde coude
 not cast out so swete a smell. 'A, good lorde,' quod
 8 Huon, 'what place is this that I am in / for yf the
 Gryffon had not bene here I wold haue thought² I had
 bene in paradyse / good lorde,³ ayde and scoure me
 4^{so} that I be not loste nor dede.'

which cast forth
 so sweet an odour
 that Huon thinks
 that all the balm
 and spices of the
 world could not
 excel its sweet-
 ness.

12 ¶ How an aungell aperyd to⁶ Huon and
 commaundyd hym to gather thre apples of
 the tree by the fountayne, and no more ;
 and how the aungell shewyd hym tidinges
 16 of his wyfe⁷ Esclaramonde, and of his
 daughter Clariet / and shewed hym the
 waye that he shulde go⁸ thens. Ca. C.xxii.

20  Hus as ye haue harde Huon deuysyd
 by hymselfe at the fountayne, then he
 went agayne to the tre, and sayd
 howe² he wolde ete of that frute, and
 gatheryd therof as moche as shulde
 24 suffyce hym for .vi. dayes / and in
 that space he trustyd to come to some place where as
 he shulde haue mete suffycyente. Thus as he was
 goynge to⁹ the tre warde,¹⁰ sodaynely there aperyd to⁶
 28 hym a lyght shynynge, that he thought he was
 rauysshed in the¹⁰ heuen amonge the aungellys / ther-
 with he harde a voyse angelicall, that sayde / 'Huon,

Huon declares
 that he will
 gather enough
 fruit to serve him
 for six days;

but suddenly an
 angel appears to
 him.

¹ in. ² that. ³ God, I pray thee to.

⁴⁻⁴ in all mine affaires and enterprizes, and at this time.

⁵ Fol. C.v. back, col 2. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ the faire. ⁸ from.

⁹ towards. ¹⁰ omitted.

knowe for trouthe that our lorde god commaundythe
the not to be so hardy as to gather anye more frute of
that tre / excepte thre apples, the which god is well
content that thou shalte gather, and no more / here 4
after they shal serue the wel / so that thou do kepe
them clenely & worthely as they ought to be kepte / it
shall not be longe or¹ thou shalte haue great nede of
them / the frute of this tree is callyd the frute of 8
youthe / it hathe suche vertue that yf a man of .iiii.
score or of a .c. yerys of age do ete therof, he shall
become agayne as yonge as he was at the age of .xxx.
²yeres. In yonder gardayne thou mayst go and 12
gather of the frute there³ at thy pleasure, and ete
what thou lyste. But ete no more of this tre⁴ that
thou haste eten of,⁵ therefore beware⁶ gather no more
therof excepte the sayde thre apples / knowe for 16
trouthe⁷ yf thou breke my commaundemente / the
frute shall be derely sold to⁸ the.' 'Syr,' quod Huon,
'lawde and prayse be⁹ to our lorde god my creature,
when he shewethe his grace to⁸ me that am so pouer a 20
synner, and that he wyll thus vyset me / I shall neuer
consent to breke his commaundemente, I had rather
dye.¹⁰ My body and my sowle I recomende to⁸ his
good grace. But thou, the frende¹¹ of god, I requyre 24
the shewe me howe dothe my wyfe Esclaramonde and
Claryet my doughter, whome I haue lefte in my citey
of Burdeux, besegyed by the Emperoure Therry of
Almayne; I haue great fere *that* they be famysshid 28
within the citey, and my lordis and companye that
I lefte there with her slayne and dede.' 'Frynde,'
quod the voyse, 'know for sartayne that the citey of
Burdeux is taken, and all thy men dede or taken, and 32
thy wyfe in pryson in the great toure of Magence,

and bids him
gather no more
than three
apples.

The fruit is the
fruit of youth:

It can cause a
man of eighty
years to become
as one of thirty.

Huon promises to
obey the angel's
will implicitly,

and begs for
news of his wife
and child.

The angel recites
the story of the
fall of Bordeaux.

¹ ere. ² Fol. C.vi. col. 1. ³ there *after* gather.
⁴ omitted. ⁵ and. ⁶ I charge thee. ⁷ that.
⁸ vnto. ⁹ giuen. ¹⁰ then so to doe. ¹¹ Messeuger.

where as the emperoure Therry kepeth her straytly, & thy daughter Claryet is at Cluny in y^e abbey, wher as she is wel seruyd / and the abbot, who hathe alwayes 4 louyd the, he hathe her in his keypyng / and she is as well cherysyd there¹ as she were his proper² daughter.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'and whye was she brought thether?' 'Huon,' quod the voice, 'knowe well that Barnarde thy 8 cosyne garmayne brought her thether.' 'Frynde,' quod Huon, 'I praye you³ shewe me yf Gerames / ⁴Othon / & Rychard⁴ be alvue or not?' 'Frend,' quod y^e voyce, 'at y^e takyng of y^e ⁵citye they were slayne by the 12 Emperour.' when Huon⁶ harde those petyfull tydyngis he began tenderly to wepe, complaynyng for⁷ Esclaramonde his wyfe and for the dethe of⁸ olde Gerames, and sayd, 'frynde, I requyre you³ shewe me yf euer I shall 16 scape, consyderyng that I am here closyd in with the see, the which goethe rounde a boughte this rocke / and I se no waye to go out there of / Gladly I wolde knowe yf euer I shall retourne into my countre to se my wyfe 20 & daughter, who ar in great⁹ daunger.' 'Huon,' quod the voyce / 'comforte thy selfe / then¹⁰ shalt thou¹¹ see¹² ageyne thy wyfe esclaramond, and thy chylde¹³ Claryet, and thy good citye of Burdeaux / but or¹⁴ thou¹⁵ come 24 there thou shalte suffer moche payne and be in great fere¹⁶ / the emperour Tharry hathe conqueryd all thy countre and Geronnell is vnder his obeysaunce with the citye of Burdeaux.' Then Huon sware and made 28 promyse that yf our lorde Iesu chryst wyll¹⁷ gyue hym that⁸ grace that he maye¹⁸ retourne into his³ countre, that suerly he wolde sle the emperoure Tharry, what so euer ende come therof. 'Messanger of god, I requyre 32 you³ shewe me by what maner of waye I maye passe

Huon weeps over the death of Gerames,

and asks whether he may escape from the rock wheroun he stands.

The angel replies that he shall only rejoin his wife and child after he has suffered more ill fortune.

¹ euen. ² owne. ³ to. ⁴⁻⁴ Richard and Othon.

⁵ Fol. C.vi. col. 2. ⁶ had well. ⁷ the faire. ⁸ the.

⁹ feare and. ¹⁰ thou. ¹¹ omitted. ¹² them.

¹³ Daughter. ¹⁴ ere. ¹⁵ shalt. ¹⁶ and danger.

¹⁷ would. ¹⁸ might.

The angel bids
Huon gather
three apples,

and follow a path
leading to some
clear water,

where a ship
awaits him.

He is to let the
ship go what
course it will.

The angel
departs,
bidding Huon
be faithful to
Jesus Christ.

out of this rocke?' 'Huon,' quod the voyse, 'go to the sayde tree and gather the thre apples as I haue sayde to¹ the before, and kepe them well and clenly / for thou shalte hereafter haue so moche profyghte by 4 them that at the ende thou shalte come to¹ thy desyre and wyll, and shalte be out of thy great payne, troubyll, & thoughte. Take this lytell pathe that thou seeste here vpon thy ryghte hande, and so go thou 8 downe to¹ the fote of the rocke, and then² thou shalte fynde a fayre clere water, & theron³ a fayre shyppe, enter in to it; ⁴ fyrst go into the gardayne and gather frute to serue the as long as thou shalt be in the shype / 12 then lose⁶ the shyppe fro the chayne that it is tyed by / and let the shyppe go whether as it wyll tyll⁷ it come to the porte where as thou shalte aryue. But be thou sure or⁸ thou come there *thou* shalt be in as great fere 16 as euer thou wert in all ⁹thy lyfe dayes,⁹ nor thou wert neuer in so great parell / I commaunde the¹⁰ to the sauegarde of our lorde Iesu chryste, I go my waye and leue the here.' Then Huon knelyd downe and held vp his 20 handis, and sayd, 'a, the¹¹ very messenger of god, I requyre the haue me recommaundyd to¹ my creature' / 'Huon,' quod the voyce, 'be of good comfote, for as long as thou arte trewe and faythefull thou shalt haue 24 ayde and socoure of our lorde¹² Iesu Chryst, and shalt attayne to thy desyres / but or¹³ thou come therto thou shalt suffer moche payne and fere. But after, as I haue sayde, thou shalte haue welthe ynoughe and 28 exalte all thy fryndys.' Huon was glad of that the voyce had said to¹ hym / but he was in great dyspleasur in that his wyfe¹⁴ Esclaramond was prysoner in the citey of Magence, and of the dethe of Gerames and of 33

¹ vnto. ² there. ³ therevpon. ⁴ but.
⁵ Fol. C.vi. back, col. 1. ⁶ vnlose. ⁷ vntill.
⁸ before. ⁹⁻⁹ the dayes of thy life. ¹⁰ in. ¹¹ thou.
¹² and Sauour. ¹³ ere. ¹⁴ the faire.

other his lordis and seruautys / and sayd to hymselfe,
 'yf he¹ maye the emperoure shall derely abyge that
 bargayne.' Then Huon went to the gardayne and
 4 gatheryd frute to bere into the shyppe. ²Then he wente
 to the fountayne, where as the tree of youthe was therby /
 and then³ by the commaundement of the Aungell he
 gatheryd thre apples / and trussyd them sauely; and
 8 then he dranke of the fountayne at his pleasure. Then
 he departyd and toke the litell pathe, the whiche was
 betwene the gardayne and the streme that ⁴issuyd out
 of the fountayne / the whyche streme ran and fell into
 12 the great ryuer where as the shyppe laye; and when he
 was enteryd into this streme he sawe y^o goodlyest
 presyous stonys that euer he sawe, they were so fayre
 and so rych that the value⁵ coude not be estemyd, the
 16 grauell of the streme that issuyd out of the fountayne
 were all precyous stonys, and they cast such lyght that
 al the mountayne and rocke dyd shyne therof, wherof
 Huon had great maruayle. Also he sawe the shyppe
 20 so fayre that he was therof ⁶ abasshyd / the ryuer ioynyd
 to the ryche gardayne where as Huon had gatheryd
 fryte of .xiiii. sortys, the which he put into the
 shyppe / ⁷then recommaundyng hymselfe to our lord⁷
 24 Iesu chryst he enteryd in to the shyppe, and vntyed
 the shyppe fro the chayne, then the shyp departyd fro
 that porte / this ryuer was callyd Dyplayre. Thus the
 shyp went as faste as thoughe a byrde had flownen.
 28 ²Thus as ye haue harde Huon saylyd al alonge in this
 shyp on⁸ the ryuer of Dyplayre / ryght desyrous to
 bryng out of danger his wyfe the fayre⁹ Esclaramond.

Huon gathers the
three apples.

He follows the
path, which runs
by a stream full of
precious stones.

At the end of it
he sees a richly-
garnished ship,

and enters
within it.

The ship passes
very rapidly
down a great
river, called
Dyplayre.

¹ I. ² and. ³ there. ⁴ Fol. C.vi. back, col. 2.
⁵ of them. ⁶ greatly dismayed and. ⁷ and Sauour.
⁸ vppon. ⁹ Ladie.

¶ Howe Huon of Burdeaux saylyd in a ryche shyp, and of the perelous goulfe that he passed by, and how he aryued at the porte of the great citye of Thauris in¹ Perse. 4

Ca. Cxxiii.

Huon's ship was richly bedecked with gold and ivory.



A cabin within it was roofed with gold and precious stones, which shone brightly through the night.

Huon sailed alone between rocks,

and saw no town nor human being.

After three days' journeying, the rocks ahead appear to close above him and form a dark passage.

Huon enters the passage, where all is black. The wind rises, and the air grows cold.

Hus as ye haue hard was Huon² on this rych ryuer in his shyp, the whiche was broderyd with whyght³ Iuory & naylyd with nayles of fyne gold / & the fore castell of whyght crystal medelyd with rych cassydony, & therin a chambre, the selynge³ with sterres of gold¹² & presyous⁴ stones / the whiche gauc suche clerenesse in the darke nyght as thoughe it hadde bene fayre day / and the bed that Huon laye on² / there is no humayne tonge can esteme the valewe therof / therin lay Huon¹⁶ euery nyghte, and in the daye⁵ abrode in the shyppe / it was noyfull⁶ to hym for that he was alone without company / & saylyd euery daye betwene two rockys without syght of any towne or vyllage, or⁷ man or 20 woman / when he had bene in this shyppe thre dayes and thre nyghtis he behelde before hym and sawe howe y^o two rockis began to draw together and to⁷ couer the ryuer, and it semyd to⁸ his syght that the shyppe²⁴ shulde enter into a darkenes; howbeit, the ryuer euer styll kepte his brede / but the nerer he came y^o darker the passage semyd; and when the shyppe came nere⁸ it she went so fast that Huon thoughte⁹ no byrde in the 28 worlde coud flye so fast / ¹⁰then it began to be sore blacke and darke, and y^o wynde rose, and ¹¹haylyd so extremely that he thought the shyppe shulde ¹²perysse¹² / and Huon was so colde that he wyst not how to get 32

¹ of. ² vpon. ³ wrought. ⁴ Fol. cvii. col. 1.
⁵ came. ⁶ yrkesome. ⁷ omitted. ⁸ vnto. ⁹ that.
¹⁰ and. ¹¹ it. ¹²⁻¹² haue perished.

any hete. Then he hard petuous¹ voyces spekyng
 dyuers languages, cursyng the tyme that euer they
 were borne. Then he harde thonder and saw lyghtenyng
 4 so often / that certaynely he thoughte to² be perysshed
 and ³lost.³ Thus Huon was in this shyppe in great
 fere of lesyng of his lyfe / ⁴when he was hungerid
 then he dyd ete of the frute that he had brought
 8 thether / then agayne he was comforyd in that the
 aungel had sayd to⁵ hym that he shuld se againe his
 wyfe⁶ & his doughter Claryet. when he had bene in
 this case the space of thre dayes he sate downe on⁷ the
 12 see bourde of the shyppe / ⁴then he harde suche a brute
 so great and so hor⁸ryble that yf the thonder had fallen
 fro the heuen, and that all the ryuers of⁹ the world had
 fallen downe fro the rockes / ¹⁰coud not haue made so
 16 hydeouse anoyse / as the tempest made¹¹ of the Goulfe
 the whiche is betwene the see of perse and y⁸ great
 see occyan: it was neuer hard that euer any shyp or
 galey scapyd that way without perysshynge / when
 20 Huon saw hymselfe in that daunger deuoutely he
 callyd to⁷ our lorde god, and sayde / 'a, ¹²very god,¹²
 nowe I see and parseyue that without ¹³recouer¹³ I am
 loste and come to my end / but syn¹⁴ it is your pleasure
 24 and wyl that I shall perysshe, here I requyre¹⁵ your
 benyuolent grace to accept my sowle in to your¹⁶
 handys.' Huon had no soner spoken those wordys
 but a wynde arose with so great a tempest that ¹⁷Huon
 28 went¹⁷ then suerly to haue bene ¹⁸loste.¹⁸ Then he sawe
 comyng agaynst hym great barres of Iron red hote, that
 fell downe fro ¹⁹aloft¹⁹ in to the ryuer before Huon,
 in suche wyse²⁰ that when they fell into the water, by

Voices are heard cursing their ill fortune,

and Huon despairs of his life.

For three days all is unchanged,

but at length a thunderous noise is heard of falling waters.

Huon believes his end to be near, and prays to God for aid.

A great tempest arises,

and great bars of red-hot iron approach the ship,

1 pitifull. 2 haue bene.
 3-3 and neuer to haue escaped out of that danger. 4 and.
 5 vnto. 6 Escleremond. 7 vpon. 8 Fol. cvii. col. 2.
 9 in. 10 they. 11 made after Goulfe.
 12-13 good lord. 13-13 thy ayd and succour. 14 seeing.
 15 beseech. 16 fauourable. 17 hee thought.
 18-18 cast away. 19-19 on high. 20 sorte.

but they fall
hissing into the
river, and do not
touch the vessel.

The ship runs
aground in five
feet of water.

Huon draws the
ship to land,
and leaps out.

He finds the
gravel to be of
precious stones,
and casts some of
them into his
ship;

they shine as
brightly as ten
torches.

Huon launches
his vessel again,

and travels on in
mid stream as
quickly as a
bird.

He has no food

reason of the hete of the barres, trowbelyd so the water that ferfull it was to beholde.¹ Thus was² Huon a great space / or³ he coude passe the Goulfe, the whiche was so perelous / and the shyppe wente so sore by force ⁴ of the wynde / so that the shyppe wente out of the myddes of the streme, and so⁴ was nere to the lond so that the shyppe⁵ coude go no further.

¶ when Huon sawe and parsayuyd that the shyppe ⁸ was vpon the grounde, he thought then suerly to haue bene downyd. Then he toke an ancre and put it into the water to knowe how manye fote the water was of deppenesse. Then⁶ ⁷he founde it but v. fote. Then ¹² he toke one of his ances and caste it a londe⁸ & then drewe by the corde tyll⁹ the shyppe came nere to the banke syde / then he Issued out of the shyppe and lepte a londe / ⁶then he saw sodaynely a bought hym a ¹⁶ great clerenes wherof he was¹⁰ abasshed, and wyst not what to thynke / then he sawe before hym¹¹ all the grauell in the water were medelyd¹² with presyous stones / ⁶when Huon sawe that / he toke a scope and ²⁰ cast into the shyppe so moche of those presyous stonys that it gaue as great a light as thoughe .x. torchys hade bene brynnynge / so moch of this grauell Huon dyd cast into the shyppe that he was wery of laboure / and ²⁴ when he saw the shyp suffycyently chargyd / then he enteryd agayne and drewe vp the ancre, and traueyld so sore that he broughte agayne the shyppe into the myddis of the streme, then the shyppe went so faste ²⁸ that a byrd coud not haue folowid it. Thus he was .x. dayes or¹³ he coude passe that Goulfe / ⁶thus day and nyght he saylid, and¹⁴ great fere and sore opressyd for ¹⁵famyns,¹⁵ for he had no thynge to ete¹⁶ but frewte, so ³²

¹ it. ² was *after* Huon. ³ before. ⁴ omitted.
⁵ was grounded and. ⁶ And. ⁷ Fol. cvii. back, col. 1.
⁸ shoare. ⁹ vntill. ¹⁰ greatly dismayed and. ¹¹ that.
¹² mingled. ¹³ before. ¹⁴ with.
¹⁵⁻¹⁶ through hunger and thirst. ¹⁶ nor drinke.

that therby he was waxed so feble *that* he coud scant¹ but the fruit he had gathered at the angel's behest.

sustayne hymselfe on² his fete / and on³ the .xi. daye at the sonne rysynge he sawe apere the clerenes of the

4 day lyght, and then he was out of the darkenes & enteryd into the see of perse, the whiche was so plesaunt and peasable that great pleasure it was to beholde it / ⁵then y^o son rose and spred abrode his

8 stremis⁴ vpon the see, wherof Huon was so ioyfull / as thoughte he had neuer felt payne nor fere. Then a fare of before hym⁵ he sawe apere a⁶ great citey / and in the hauen ther of there were so many shyppes and

12 galyes *that* theyr mastys semyd to be a great⁷ forest, wherof Huon had such ioy at his harte that he knelid downe lyftyng vp his handis to⁸ the⁹ heuen,¹⁰ thankynge our lorde god that he hadde sauyd hym fro this

16 perelous Goulfe. This citey was called y^o great citey of Thauris in Perse / and¹¹ lorde therof was a pusaunte admirall / who had made to be cryed¹² and puplysshed / that all maner of marchauntys by londe or by see that

20 wolde come to his citey shulde haue free goynge and free comynge without let or disturbaunce other in the¹³ bodyes or goodys, whether they were chrysten men or Sarasyns / so that yf they lost the worthe of a peny

24 they shuld haue agayne .iiii. ¹⁴for it¹⁴ / and the same tyme that Huon came and aryuyd at that porte was the daye of theyr free feaste / wherfore there was so moche people of dyuers landys that they coude not

28 well be nomberyd / when Huon was come into the porte he casto his ancre nere to⁸ the land¹⁵ syde, and was ryght ioyfull when he saw¹⁶ that he was on³ the ferme londe. ³Then he had great desyre to know in

At length the perilous gulf is passed and the sea of Persia entered.

A great city comes into sight afar off, with a large harbour full of ships.

It was the city of Tauris in Persia,

and the admiral of the city allowed ships of all countries to tarry in his port.

Huon casts anchor, and lands.

¹ scarce. ² vpon. ³ and. ⁴ and spehares.
⁵ appear before him *after* sawe. ⁶ faire.
⁷ Fol. cvii. back, col. 2. ⁸ vnto. ⁹ omitted.
¹⁰ and humbly. ¹¹ the. ¹² proclaimed. ¹³ their.
¹⁴⁻¹⁴ times the value thereof. ¹⁵ banke.
¹⁶ himself.

what plase he was aryued in.¹ Now ²leue we² speking
of ³Huon tyll tyme shall be to retourne therto³ agayne.

¶ Howe syr Barnarde departyd fro the abbey
of Cluny and went to seke for Huon his ⁴
cosyn, whom he founde at the porte of the
great citey of Thauris. Ca. C.xxiiii.

Barnard de-
livered Huon's
daughter Clariet
to the good abbot
of Cluny,

and tarried with
him eight dayes.

The faithful
knight laments
the misfortunes
of his lord and
his lord's wife.



⁴ e haue hard here before how after the
takyng of Burdeaux, Barnard, who was ⁸
cosyn to⁵ Huon, had borne Clariet,
Huons chylde, in to Burgoyne, and
delyueryd her to be kepte with y^o
good abbot of Cluny. After that Barnarde had taryed ¹²
there the space of .viii. dayes he was very⁶ there, and
on⁷ a daye he sayd to⁵ the abbot, 'A, Syr, I wold at
the takynge of Burdeaux I had bene slayne with my
cosyn Gerames, for when I remembre my good lord ¹⁶
Huon, my hart fayleth me in suche wyse that it is
great payne for me to bere the sorowe that I endure /
and after⁸ when I remembre the duches Esclaramonde
his wyfe, who endurethe suche mesery that it is petye ²⁰
to thynke therof, dowbeleth ⁹my sorowe.⁹ Alas, what
shall Huon say yf he retourne and fynd his citey
taken, his men taken and dystroyed / and his wyfe in
prysone in great ¹⁰myserye and pouertye;¹⁰ I fere me¹¹ ²⁴
he shall¹² dye for sorowe. Alas, I se all that I haue
is loste for the loue of Hu¹³on my lorde / for the whiche
I care lytel for, yf he be in sautye alyue, and that he
may retourne agayne / & I am in great dyspleasure ²⁸

¹ and whether he was arriued at a good Port or no.

²⁻³ now lette vs leaue.

³⁻³ the good duke Huon vntill wee haue occasion to
retourne vnto him. ⁴ Fol. cviii. col. 1.

⁵ vnto. ⁶ with being. ⁷ vpon. ⁸ afterward.

⁹⁻⁹ the sorowe and grefe that I haue at my heart.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ pouertie and miserie. ¹¹ that. ¹² wyll.

¹³ Fol. cviii. col. 2.

that we can here no newes of hym neuer¹ syn he
 departyd fro Burdeaux / I shall neuer rest as longe as I
 lyue tyll² I haue founde hym, or harde som sartayne
 4 newes of him' / 'cosyn,' quod the abbot / 'yf ye wyll
 enter into this enquest ye shuld do me great pleasure,
 and for the great desyre that I haue had that ye shuld
 do³ this vyage, I wyll gyue you a thousande florences
 8 towardes youre Iorneye.' 'Syr,' quod Barnarde, 'I
 thanke you.' Then the abbot delyueryd hym the
 money, and Barnarde made hym redy to departe the
 nexte daye / and so he dyd, and toke leue of the abbot
 12 and departyd, & rested not tyll² he came to Venys /
 wher as he founde Galeyes redy to go to the holy
 sepulture, wherof he was⁴ ioyful; and so sayld forth
 tyll² they came to porte Iaffe, where as he wente a
 16 londe⁵ with other pylgremes / and euer as he passyd
 by the other portis he euer demaundyd for Huon / but
 he coude neuer fynde any man that coude shewe to⁶
 hym any maner of newes of hym. ⁷Then he departyd
 20 fro⁸ porte Iaffe and wente to⁶ Ierusalem, where as he
 taryed .viii. dayes. Then when he had done his
 pylgrymage he toke forthe his iourney vnto Kayre in
 Babylone / and when he came to Gasere, whiche
 24 standethe at the enterynge of the desartys, he met with
 many merchauntes who were goynge to the fre feast
 which was holden in the great citye of Thauris. Then
 he thought to demaunde of them whether so moche
 28 people were goyng, and al in one companye / and he
 spake to⁶ a marchaut of Geanes, & demandid of hym
 whether ⁹so moche people wente together in one
 companye / for they were to the nombre of .vi. score
 32 marchantis chrysten¹⁰ and hethen. ¹¹Then the marchante
 sayde / 'syr, as me thynke by you ye are of the

He longs to know
the fate of Huon.

The abbot
encourages
Barnard to seek
out his lord.

Barnard sets out
and reaches Jaffe.

and travelling
to other ports,
makes inquiry of
Huon in vain.

At Jerusalem he
tarryes eight days.

and visits Cairo
in Babylon.

At Gazir he finds
many merchants
setting out for
Tauris.

¹ omitted. ² vntill. ³ goe. ⁴ right. ⁵ shoare.
⁶ vnto. ⁷ and. ⁸ the. ⁹ Fol. cviii. back, col. 1.
¹⁰ men. ¹¹ hee.

A free fenst, Barnard learns from a Genoese merchant, is to be given at Tauris to all comers by land or sea, Christian or Saracen.

Barnard is induced to set out for Tauris.

For eight days Barnard makes fruitless search for Huon in the city of Tauris.

One day, however, a very rich ship in the harbour attracts his attention.

countre of Fraunce, I shall shewe you whether we go ;
 syr, within this .viii. dayes the fre feste shalbe at the
 great citey of Thauris, wher as ther shall come a great
 nombre of marchantys as well chrysten¹ as Sarasyns, **4**
 as well by londe as by see / & there is no thyng
 in this mortal world but there ye shall fynde it / and
 here of al maner of newes / fro all the partyes of y^e
 worlde. Now I haue shewyd you whether we are **8**
 goynge, I praye you shewe me whether ye wolde go
 and whome ye do seke for? 'Syr,' quod Barnarde,
 'know for trouthe I am of the realme of Fraunce, and
 I do seke for a knyghte who is lorde of Burdeaux, who² **12**
 is callyd Huon, and it is long syn I departyd out of my
 countre, & I coude neuer here any thyng of his lyfe
 nor deth.' 'Syr,' quod the Genouoys, 'yf euer ye
 shall here of hym / yf ye wyll beleue me ye shall go **16**
 with vs in to the realme of Perce to the fre feste at the
 citey of Thaurys.' 'Syr,' quod Barnarde, 'in a good
 owre I haue met with you / I shall not leue your
 company tyll³ ye come there, to se yf god wyll send **20**
 me so good a⁴ fortune to fynde hym that I seke for.'
 Then the marchauntis depart⁵ and rode⁶ to gether
 tyll³ they came to⁷ the⁸ citey of Thauris / and
 when they were logyd / they went a boughte theyr **24**
 marchandyse where as they lyste / thus Barnarde was
 viii. dayes in the citey goynge here & there, euer
 enquiryng newes for that he sought for; and on⁹ a
 daye he went downe to the porte to⁷ the see syde **28**
 where as many shyppes¹⁰ laye at ancre, &¹¹ as he lokyd
 about he saw nere to the see-syde a lytell proper
 vessell marueylusly fayre / and the nerer he came¹² the
 fayrer and rycher it semid / for he saw great clerenes **32**
 and shynynge within it by reason of the ryche stonys

¹ men. ² and. ³ vntill. ⁴ omitted. ⁵ departed.

⁶ all. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ great. ⁹ vpon.

¹⁰ and Gallies. ¹¹ Fol. cviii, back, col. 2. ¹² vnto it.

- that were there,¹ wherof he had great maruayle, and specially bycause he saw within the shyppe but one man clene armyd / he wyste not what to thynke / but
- 4 he thought² he was chrystenyd; then he aprochyd³ to the shyp and saluted Huon, and sayd / 'syr, god gyue you good aduenture, for me thynke ye be a chrysten man' / 'frend,' quod Huon, 'god saue the.
- 8 Me thynke by thy speche that thou werste borne in the good countre of Fraunce, by reason² thou spekest frenche, for I haue great ioy when I here that language spoken / and frynde I requyre the⁴ shew me where
- 12 thou wert borne and what thou sekyste for here?' 'Syr,' quod Barnarde, 'syn⁵ ye wyll knowe of my busynes, I shall shew you as he *that* is ryght sorowefull and heuy, and lytell shall ye wyn therby when ye do
- 16 know it; but syn⁵ it is your pleasure, I shall shew you the trouthe. Syr, I was borne in the good citey of Burdeaux / where as I haue left my howse and herytage / to seke for my good lorde, sumtyme lorde of
- 20 the same citey / and he was callyd duke Huon, who went fro Burdeaux to seke for some socours whylles the citey was besegyde / & so it is my lord Huon retournyd not, nor it can not be knowen where he is becom, and
- 24 bycause the citey at his departynge was besegyde by the emperour of almayne, and the citey but yll furnysshyd with vitayle to mayntayne it longe; and also it was so sore beten with engyns that y⁶ emperour wan the
- 28 citey parforce / & slew all those that my lorde Huon had lefte ⁶there excepte .iii.c., the whiche were taken presoners by the emperoure and led into the citey of Magence, with the noble duchesse Esclaramonde,
- 32 wyfe to⁷ my⁸ lorde Huon, and she is kepte in a strayte prison, where as she vseth⁹ her dayes myserably, wherof

Within it is one knight, whom he salutes, although he knows him not to be Huon himself.

Huon at once recognizes the speaker to be a Frenchman, but does not perceive who he is.

Barnard, at Huon's request, relates the causes of his journeying.

He recites the fall of Bordenaux.

¹ therein. ² that. ³ neere. ⁴ to. ⁵ seeing.

⁶ Fol. cix. col. 1. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ good.

⁹ spendeth.

Huon recognizes
Barnard,
but sorrow
overwhelms him
so that he cannot
speak to him.

He weeps as he
thinks of
Barnard's faithful
service.

Barnard, still
falling to recog-
nize Huon, asks
him if he has
heard news of his
lord.

my harte is in suche sorowe¹ that when I remembre² it
my hart fayleth me³ / when Huon had well harde³
Barnarde he knewe hym wel ; but he had no powre to
speke any word to⁴ hym, his harte was so full of⁴
sorowe¹ for that his cosyn Barnarde had shewyd hym,
and y^e chefe⁵ sorowe was for the trowbyl of his wyfe⁶
Esclaramonde, who was in⁷ parell of deth. Thus Huon
was a great space and coude speke no word for sorow,¹ 8
and wyste not what to do. ⁸Also he sawe hys cosy[n]⁹
Barnarde, who had taken great payne to serche for
hym / wherby¹⁰ he had suche petye that the terys fell
fro his eyen. ¶ when Barnarde behelde¹¹ that the 12
knyght gauē hym none answeere / & saw vnder the
ventayle of his helme the terys of water fell downe fro
his eyen, he was therof so¹² abasshid that he wyst not
what to saye. Then he sayd, ‘syr, me thyn[k]e¹³ ye ar 16
a chrysten man / and bycause I se and parseyue in you
that ye ar a man that hathe bene in many placys and
cuntries, therefore I desyre you to shewe me yf ye harde
euer any maner of spekinge of my¹⁴ lorde Huon duke of 20
Burdeaux / whome I haue sought for in many cuntres,
bothe by londe and by se, & I coud neuer here any
sartayne tydynges of him, wherof I am ryght sorry /
for yf I canne here no worde of hym by you I wyll 24
neuer hope more to haue any knowlege of hym / for¹⁵
I thynke I shulde¹⁶ haue some knowlege by you yf he
be aliue / for yf I knowe no thyng by you I wyll
neuer ¹⁷seke hym further / but I wyll go into som¹⁸ 28
deserte to⁴ some solytary place, and there to do penaunce
and to praye to⁴ god for my good lorde Huon, and to
pardon me of all my¹⁹ offences / and I requyre you in

¹ and greefe. ²⁻² them, it neere hand slayeth my heart.

³ and vnderstood. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ cheefest of his.

⁶ the faire Lady. ⁷ great. ⁸ and. ⁹ cosyd in text.

¹⁰ whereof. ¹¹ saw. ¹² dismayed and.

¹³ thynde in text. ¹⁴ good. ¹⁵ omitted. ¹⁶ shall.

¹⁷ Fol. cix. col. 2. ¹⁸ a. ¹⁹ sinnes and.

- the name of our lorde¹ Iesu chryst² shew me what ye
 be, and where ye were borne, and fro whence ye come,
that hath brought in your shyppe so great rychesse /
 4 for I knowe sartaynly that in all Fraunce can not be
 founde the value of so great a³ ryches. Nor the
 pusaunte Charlemagne coude neuer assemble together
 suche a³ ryches as ye haue in your shyppe.' when
 8 Huon harde Barnarde, he sayde / 'frend, I haue great
 maruayle of that I here you saye / for in my shyppe I
 know nother golde nor syluer nor none other thyng
 but my body and myne armure.' 'Syr,' quod Barnarde,
 12 'beware what ye saye / for y^e riches that I see in your
 shyp, yf ye wyll selle it ye maye fylle agayne your
 shyppe with money ; if ye wyll byleue me the treasure
 and ryches that ye haue brought in your shyppe, the
 16 valor therof can not be estemyd' / when Huon harde
 that he had great maruayle, and was ryght ioyful /
 then he lokyd downe into the botome of the shyppe
 and sawe the ryche stonys there lyyng amonge y^e
 20 grauell, the whiche he neuer toke hede therof⁴ before /
 for when he dyd caste it in to hys shyp he thought all
 had bene but grauell to balayse his shyp withal that it
 myght sayle the more suerlyer. Then Barnarde sayde,
 24 'syr, I pray you hyde it not fro me / wher haue ye had
 this great treasure, and in what countre ? all the stonys
 that be there I knowe the vertue of them all / for syn
 I came out of my cuntre I was a hole yere *with* y^e
 28 beste lapidary and knower of stonys that was in all the
⁵ world / and he taught me his scyens ; syr, suerly the
 place wheras ye had them in is of great dygnite.'
 Frend,' quod Huon, 'I shall shew you the trouthe /
 32 fortune brought me by the goulfe of Perse, where as I
 sufferyd moche payne & troubyll / but thankyd be
 god / I scapyd fro that hard aduenture, the force of the

and what is his
 own name,
 and whence he
 came to Tauris.

He marvels at the
 riches in Huon's
 ship.

Huon had not
 before perceived
 that the gravel
 he had cast into
 his ship for
 ballast was all of
 precious stones.

Barnard
 anxiously in-
 quires the place
 where they were
 obtained.

Huon relates
 his recent
 wanderings.

¹ and sauour. ² to. ³ omitted. ⁴ of.

⁵ Fol. cix. back, col. 1.

wynd that cam out of the Goulfe draue my shyppe out of the streme / to the lande / and when I sawe I was so nere the londe I went out of the shyp, and toke a scopet & ther with¹ dyd cast in of the grauell² by the 4 see syde to balayse ther-with³ my shyppe / not knowinge that any presyous stonys had bene amonge the grauell ; and when I thought I had caste in suffycient I enteryd agayne into my shyppe, and so saylyd forthe more 8 suerlyer then I dyd before / there I had these stonys that be in this shyp, the whiche ye say be of so great value.' 'Syr,' quod Barnard, 'I pray you wherfore serueth yonder fote of a great fowle or beast that I se 12 hang yonder in your shyp, I can not tel whether it be of a fowle or of a dragon / for it is a ferfull thyng to beholde.' 'Frynde,' quod Huon, 'anone I shall shewe you / but fyrste I praye you shewe me what vertue & 16 bounte ar in these stonys the whiche ye haue so moche praysyd / and also to shewe me to⁴ whome this noble citey partayneth?' 'Syr,' quod Barnard, 'this citey is callyd Thauris, wherof is lorde a ryche admyrall, who 20 be aduerteyd of your comynge hether, he wyll haue of you trybute as he hathe of other marchauntis / and as for your stonys, two of them that I se yonder, and yf ye 24 gyue them for your trybute he shall be well contente / and, syr, I shall ayde you in youre mar⁵chandyse to the best of my powre / the admyrall is a noble man in his lawe, and of great credence.' 'Frend,' quod Huon, 28 'I thanke you for the curtesy that ye shew me / but, syr, I praye you shew me the stones that be of ⁶ moche vertue, I wold haue the best layde aparte fro the other.' when Barnard harde howe Huon desyryd hym 32 to shewe the vertue of the stonys / then specyally he shewyd Huon .vi. stonys, and he drewe them out

Barnard perceives in the ship the foot of a great beast, and asks how it came there.

And he replies to Huon's questions as to the name and government of the city wherat they tarry.

Barnard points out to Huon the precious stones of


¹ I. ² that lay. ³ therwith *after* shyppe.
⁴ vnto. ⁵ Fol. cix. back, col. 2. ⁶ so.

fro the reste and layd them vpon Huons shyld, and so
 chase out .xxx. other / and shewyd them all to¹ Huon,
 and sayd, 'syr, these .xxx. stonys that I haue layd ou²
 4 your shyld ar of so great value that there is nother
 kyng nor emperoure that can paye the value of them,
 and specyally of .v. of them.'³ when Huon harde that
 he was ioyful. Then he wold no lenger hyde hymselfe
 8 fro Barnarde, and also bycause of the great hete that he
 was in he dyd⁴ of his helme / the whiche he kepte on
 all that season bycause he wold fyrst know of Barnarde
 some tydyngs or he wold be knowen to¹ hym / for he
 12 knewe⁵ Barnard well ynoughe at his fyrste comynge
 to¹ hym.

greatest value in
his ship.

After Barnard
had sorted the
stones, Huon
takes off his
helmet,
and reveals
himself.

¶ How Huon of Burdeaux and Barnarde his
 cosyne knowlegyd themselues eche to other
 16 & shewyd⁶ theyr aduenture. Ca. C.cxxv.

20  Hen Barnarde sawe Huon do⁴ of his
 helme he becam as ruddy as a rose,
 and was so rauysshyd that be wiste
 not what to saye or thynke, and sayde,
 'syr, I can not say trewly what ye
 be / ⁷but ye resemble so⁸ lyke Huon, whom I seke for
 that I can not tel whether ye be he or not.' 'Cosyn,'
 24 quod Huon, 'come hether to¹ me and embrace me, I
 am he whome ye do seke for, / so they embracyd eche
 other in suche wyse that of a longe space they coude
 not speke one to another / at laste Huon sayd, 'my
 28 ryght dere cosyn, I praye you shewe¹ me all the newes
 that ye knowe of Burdeaux syn my departynge.' 'Syr,'
 quod Barnard, 'I shall shew you that I wolde fayne
 knowe my selfe, but fyrst, syr, I praye you shew¹ me
 32 the aduentures that ye haue had syn my⁹ departynge

Barnard recog-
nizes Huon when
he removes his
helmet.

Huon inquires
anxiously for
news from
Bordeaux.

Barnard begs
first to know

¹ vnto. ² vpon. ³ and. ⁴ put. ⁵ his coozen.
⁶ the discourse of. ⁷ Fol. cx. col. 1. ⁸ much.
⁹ your.

Huon's ad-
ventures in the
East,

and the knight
relates them.

fro Burdeaux.' 'Cosyn,' quod Huon, 'yf I wolde¹
shewe you all the aduentures and fortunes that I haue
had syn my departynge fro you, it shulde² be ouer
long to shew³ it / but breuely I shal declare it⁴ / when ⁴
I was in⁵ the see a⁶ tempest rose vpon vs, the whiche
enduryd⁷ y^e space of .x. dayes with out sease⁸ / and
then Huon shewed hym howe he was in the Goulfe /
and what perel he was in there, & how he spake withe ⁸
Iudas; and howe he aryuyd at the castell of the
Adamant, and how his company there dyed for⁹
famyne; and howe he enteryd into the castell and
slewe the serpente, and shewyd hym of the beaute and ¹²
aduentures that were in the castell / and howe he was
borne to¹⁰ a rocke by a gryffon / and how he slew the
.v. yonge gryffons, and after¹¹ y^e great gryffon whose
fote was in the shyp, the whiche he shewyd to¹⁰ syr ¹⁶
Barnarde, and declaryd¹² of the fountayne and gardayne,
and tree of youth; and of the shyppe, the whiche they
were in / and howe he founde it by the ryuer / and
how by the voyce of the aungell he enteryd into the ²⁰
shyppe / and after¹¹ he shewyd what⁶ payn and parell
he sufferyd in passynge the ¹³ gulfe of Perse, and how
he was parforce dreuyn a londe,¹⁴ and there he cast in
y^e stonys, thynkyng it had bene but¹⁵ grauell / and ²⁴
how he was as then come and aryued at the great citey
of Tauris in Perce.

Barnard declares
his joy at Huon's
safety after all
his perils.

¶ when Barnarde had well harde¹⁶ Huon, he
enbracyd hym and sayd, 'a ryght¹⁷ vertuous knyght to ²⁸
whome in prowes and hardynes none can be comparyd /
of your comynge I ought to be ioyfull, & ¹⁸ thanke¹⁹ god
of the grace that he hathe sent you' / 'cosyn,²⁰ quod

¹ should. ² would. ³ rehearse. ⁴ vnto you.
⁵ vpon. ⁶ great. ⁷ continued. ⁸ ceasing. ⁹ by.
¹⁰ vnto. ¹¹ afterward. ¹² discoursyd.
¹³ Fol. cx. col. 2. ¹⁴ shoare. ¹⁵ omitted.
¹⁶ and vnderstood. ¹⁷ deare and. ¹⁸ I. ¹⁹ oure lord.
²⁰ syr.

Huon, 'I ought greatly to thanke our lorde Iesu
 Chryst, in *that* I se you in¹ helthe; and nowe I praye
 you² shew me wat hathe fallen in the countre of
 4 Burdeaux syn I departyd³ thence.' Then Barnarde, all
 wepyng, shewyd hym euery thyng as it had fallen, and
 shewed to⁴ Huon the maner how y^o good citey of
 Burdeaux was taken, and of the dethe of⁵ Gerames
 8 and his company / and of the takynge of the⁶ duches⁷
 Esclaramond,⁸ how the emperour held her in pryson
 in the cytye of Magence in great pouerty and
 mysery; and of his doughter Claryet, how he had
 12 brought her to⁴ the abbey of Cluny, and set her in
 keypyng there with the abbot her cosyn. ¶ when
 Huon⁹ vnderstode barnarde, he made great sorowe,¹⁰ &
 sayd, yf god wold ayde¹¹ hym he wolde cause the
 16 emperour to dye an yll¹² dethe / 'syr,' quod Barnarde,
 'wyl you apease yourselfe; yf ye haue trust in our
 lorde god, desyre his¹³ ayde and socoure, and let the
 whele of fortune ryn / and yf ye do thus, and take it
 20 a¹⁴ worth anythyng that is fallen vnto you ye shall
 not fayle, but ye shall com to⁴ your desyre, / thus with
 such wordys Barnard apaysyd Huon his cosyn / ⁸thus
¹⁵they deuysyd together of dyuers thyngis / 'cosyn,'
 24 quod Huon, 'I praye you shew me the vertue of thes
 presyous stonys that ye haue layde aparte¹⁶' / 'syr,'
 quod Barnarde, 'the .v. that lyethe¹⁷ by themself
 hathe great vertu / this stone is of suche¹⁸ vertue that
 28 he that bereth it vpon hym can not be poysonyd /
 also it is of suche dygnyte¹⁹ that who so euer do bere
 it may go & come thurgh the fyre without felyng of any
 hete though he were in a ²⁰brennyng²⁰ ouen / also yf

Barnard tells the
 story of the fall of
 Bordeaux.

Huon grieues
 over his wife's
 disasters.

Barnard consoles
 him with assur-
 ance that the
 Lord will help
 him.

Barnard tells of
 the virtues of the
 precious stones
 in the boat,
 and how one
 renders its owner
 invulnerable.

¹ good. ² to. ³ from. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ the old.
⁶ noble. ⁷ the faire. ⁸ and. ⁹ had well.
¹⁰ in his heart. ¹¹ and helpe. ¹² euill. ¹³ of him.
¹⁴ in. ¹⁵ Fol. cx. back, col. 1. ¹⁶ aside from the other.
¹⁷ there. ¹⁸ great. ¹⁹ and worth.
²⁰⁻²⁰ hot burning.

a man fell in¹ the water hauynge this stone aboutt hym² can not synke nor drowne / syr, this is y^e vertue of this fyrst stone.' Then Huon toke it and kepte it for hym selfe.³ Then Barnard toke vp a nother & 4 sayde / 'syr, here is a nother stone of suche vertue / that a man berynge it aboutt hym can haue no⁴ hunger / no⁵ thruste / nor cold, nor shal not wax elder by semynge nother in body nor vysage / but he shal 8 euer apere⁶ of the age of .xxx. yerys, nor fastyng shall not enpayre hym' / then Huon toke that stone and put it in¹ his bagge, and sayde⁷ he wolde kepe y^e7 stone for hymselfe / 'well,' quod Barnard, 'syr, here 12 is another of suche bounte and vertue that he that bereth it can not be hurte in armys, nor vanquesshyd by his enemyes, and yf any of his kyn were blynde and touche⁸ his eyen with this stone incontynente he 16 shall se agayne / and yf the stone be shewyd to⁹ a mans eyen he shall incontynent be blynd, and yf a man be woundyd¹⁰ tourne this stone in the wounde, and incontynent he shol be hole' / when Huon hard 20 that he was¹¹ ioyfull, and sayd that he wolde kepe wel that stone / 'syr,' quod Barnarde, 'here is a nother, the whiche hathe so great vertue, that yf a man or woman be neuer so syke, shewe them⁸ this stone, and inconty¹²nent 24 they shall be hole of any maner of maladye / and also yf a man were cloyd in pryson in chaynes and fetters, handys and fete,¹⁰ touch them with this stone and the chaynis shal breke / and also yf a¹³ man haue 28 any cause to be pledyd in any court before any Iuge, be his mater ryghtful or wrongfull, he shal wyn his cause, whether it be for londis or goodys, and also yf a man haue this stone in his hande and close it, he shall 32 be inuysible, and may go wher as he lyst, and shal not

This one Huon takes for himself.

Barnard tells of the virtue of another that preserves its owner from all discomfort and from old age.

The second stone Huon also takes.

Barnard tells of the virtue of a third stone, possessing other marvellous powers.

and of a fourth which has, among its many virtues, that of making him who holds it invisible.

¹ to. ² he. ³ and. ⁴ neither. ⁵ omitted.
⁶ seeme to be. ⁷ that. ⁸ but. ⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ doe but.
¹¹ right. ¹² Fol. cx. back, col. 2. ¹³ any.

be sene. As ye shal se the profe' / for as he had the
stone in his hande he closyd it, and incontynent he
was inuysyble so that Huon coude not se hym, wherof
4 he was not content, for he feryd lest¹ he had lost his
cosyn Barnard for euer, and sayd / ' a, good lord, thou
hast geuyn me the grace to fynde my cosyn Barnarde /
who shulde haue kept me company tyll² I had retournyd
8 into myne owne countre, and nowe I se well¹ I haue
lost hym' / when Barnarde harde Huon, he laughed,
and Huon who hard hym / gropyd all about with
his armes abrode / tyll² at laste he embrasyd hym, and
12 helde hym fast / and when Barnard felte that he openyd
his hand, and then Huon sawe hym agayne, wherof he
was³ ioyfull / and blyssyd hym at the vertue of that
stone, and toke it and layd it vp amonge the other in
16 his bagge, and sayde how he wolde kepe that stone⁴ for
specyallye.⁴ Thus Barnarde dyd chose out the stonys
one fro another / & there were so many good stonys
that the value of them coud not be estemyd / then he
20 tournyd vp the botom of the grauell to seke out the
best / and⁵ there⁵ amonge other he dyd chose out a
carbuncle / the whiche cast out suche a lyght as
thoughe two torches had bene lyght / Barnarde toke
24⁶ it and delyueryd it to⁷ Huon, and sayde / ' syr, be⁸
sure⁹ who so euer bere this stone vpon hym / may go
dry fotyde vpon the water as sure as thoughe he were in
a vessell / and also yf a man go in the darke nyght he
28 shall see as well as thoughe he had the lyght of. vi.
torches / and yf a man be in batayle, haugynge this
stone on¹⁰ hym,¹¹ can not be ouer come nor hurte, nor
his horse wery nor faynte, nor hurte, nor woundyd, /
32 when Huon hard that he smylyd, and toke the stone

To prove its
power, Barnard
renders himself
invisible to Huon.

Huon thinks he
has lost Barnard
for ever,

but to Huon's joy,
Barnard becomes
visible once more,
and Huon keeps
the wondrous
stone.

There are so
many more
stones, that
Barnard finds it
no easy matter
to value them
rightly.
He chooses out a
carbuncle that
shines with the
light of six
torches,
and gives it to
Huon.

¹ that. ² vntill. ³ right.

⁴⁻⁴ especially, because it was of such a woonderfull great
vertue.

⁵⁻⁵ omitted. ⁶ Fol. cxi. col. 1. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ you.

⁹ that. ¹⁰ about. ¹¹ he.

Saracen merchants come to them, and marvel greatly at their rich ship.

They ask to be allowed to buy some of the precious stones,

but Huon will sell none till the next day.

The news of the ship's arrival is spread through the city, and the admiral comes to behold it.

He salutes Huon and Barnard, and demands the customary tribute.

and put it¹ amonge the other. Thus as they were deusyngge together there came to² them dyuers marchauntys, Sarasyns, who with great maruayle behelde this lytell shyp³ they sawe it so fayre and ryche, and so⁴ wel garnysshed with precyous stonys / that they thought al the marchaundyse that was there in the hauen was not⁴ to the⁴ halfe⁵ valewe⁶ of that they saw there ; then⁷ they aprochyd to² the shyp and salutid Huon, and⁸ sayd / 'syrs, is it your pleasure to sell vs any of your stonys / we are here dyuers marchauntys that wyl be glad to bye of them⁸' / 'syrs,' quod Huon, 'as for me as this day I wyll sell none tyll⁹ to morowe in the¹² mornynge,¹⁰ / therwith the marchauntys helde theyr peas and spake no more ; but there cam so many Sarasyns and paynymys to beholde the shyppe, that maruayle it was to be hold them ; so that y^e newes¹⁶ therof spred abrode in the citey / & the admyrall was aduertysed therof / who incontynente, accompanied with his lordys, came to the porte syde wher as this shyppe laye at⁴ au⁴ ancre. 20

¶ when he¹¹ was come thether he behelde the shyppe, the whiche he thought fayre¹² and ryche ; and how that there was neuer kyng nor emperour that euer sawe¹³ any such, and it shone so clere by reason of the²⁴ stonys, that the Admyrall and all such as were with hym thought it had bene the sonne shynynge in the myddys of the day / then he aprochyd to² the shyp and founde there Huon and Barnarde : the admyrall²⁸ salutyd them, and sayde / 'syrs, it aperethe wel¹⁴ ye be chrysten men / it is conuenyent that ye paye me the trybute that is coustomyd to be payed in this citey' /

¹ into his bagge amonge the other. ² vnto. ³ and.
⁴⁻⁴ omitted. ⁵ the. ⁶ and woorth.
⁷ then then *is text*. ⁸ if yee please. ⁹ vntill.
¹⁰ and then if it please yee, you shall haue of them.
¹¹ the Admirall. ¹² Fol. cxi. col. 2. ¹³ behelde.
¹⁴ that.

'syr,' quod Huon, 'it is¹ reason and ryght that we
 paye you as we ought to do / syr, here be² two stonys
 the whiche I gyue you, and I desyre you to take them
 4 a³ worthe' / the Admyrall toke the stonys and behelde
 them well, and sayd / 'frynde, nowe ye maye go and
 come into this cite to make your marchaundise at
 your pleasure to your most profyght⁴ / for the gyfte
 8 that ye haue geuen me is to me more agreable⁵ then yf
 ye had geuen me y⁶ value of .iiii. of the beste cities of⁶
 this countre' / ryght ioyfull was the admyral for he
 knewe well the vertue of the stones: one was of suche
 12 valure⁷ that the berer therof coude not be poysonyd
 nor no⁸ treason coude not be done nor purpensyd,⁹
 comynge in the presence of hym that berethe this stone
 but incontynente the doer shuld fall¹⁰ dede / and the
 16 second¹¹ stone had that vertue and dygnyte that the
 berer therof coud neuer be perysshid by fyre nor
 water / nor dystroyed by Iron, for thoughe he were all a
 daye¹² in a brynnynge¹³ furnays he shuld not lese one
 20 here of his hede / nor perysshe in the see. 'frende,'
 quod the admyrall, 'the courtesye that ye haue done to¹³
 me¹⁴ shall be¹⁵ rewardyd, I wyll¹⁶ that throughe out
 my realme, as well of Perse as of Mede,¹⁷ ye shall¹⁸ go
 24 at your pleasure to sell your marchaundyse; and no man
 shall lette nor trouble you / but one thyng I wolde
 desyre of you to shewe me what aduenture hathe
 brought you hether / and of whens ye be, and of what
 28 countre / and in what place ye haue found thes stones
 wherof ye haue so great plente / howe be it I vnder-
 stonde your language, wherby I knowe¹⁷ ye be frenche-
 men / longe agone I was in fraunce, and dwelte there,

Huon gives him
two of the
precious stones.

The admiral is
much pleased,
as he knows the
virtues of the
stones, which can
preserve their
owner from many
perils;
he gives the
travellers per-
mission to enter
the city.

He promises to
protect them in
his own realm
as well as in that
of Persia and
Media,

and asks what
strange aduenture
brought them
hither.

The admiral
knows their
language,

¹ good. ² ia. ³ in. ⁴ and gaine. ⁵ acceptable.
⁶ in all. ⁷ bountie and dignitie. ⁸ no no *in text*.
⁹ purposed. ¹⁰ downe. ¹¹ other.
¹²⁻¹³ burning in a hot oven or. ¹³ vnto. ¹⁴ this day.
¹⁵ well. ¹⁶ and commaund. ¹⁷ that.
¹⁸ Fol. cxi. back, col. 1.

for he has served
in Charlemagne's
court.

and seruyd in the courte of kynge Charlemayne / &
was neuer knowen / I¹ haue² maruayle where-ye haue
founde so many goodly stones / it is nere³ a .C. yerys
syn I was gyrtte with a sworde ; but I neuer saw so 4
ryche stones here before.

¶ How the admerall of Perce dyd great
honoure to⁴ Huon of Burdeaux, and led
hym into his palays, where as he was 8
receuyd withe great ioye and myrth.⁵

Ca. C.xxvi.

As the admiral
seemed to be a
man of nobleness,
truth, and
freedom, Huon
tells him at
length all his
adventures.

He tells him his
name and the
place of his
birth,
how he departed
thence two years
back, and how
since that time
he has suffered
much pain and
poverty,
and how he set
out with seven
knights, his
chaplain, and a
clerk.

Contrary winds
came upon them
in their journey-
ing on the high
seas,



Hen Huon of Burdeaux⁷ vnderstode
the Admerall, he regardyd hym moch / 12
bycause he was a fayre old man, and
semyd to be a noble man, ¹said, 'syr,
bycause I knowe and se aparaunte in
you great noblenes, trouthe, and fredome, I shall shewe 16
you at lengthe all myne aduentures without hydyng e.
ony thyng fro you. Syr, know for trouthe my name is
Huon, and I am⁸ borne of⁹ the countre of Fraunce in a
city namyd Burdeaux ; and I departed¹⁰ thence abought 20
two yerys past, synne the whiche tyme I haue sufferyd
moche payne and pouerte. ¶ when I departyd¹⁰ thens,
I hadde with me .vii. knyghtys and my chapelayne and
a clarke to serue hym, and we toke our shyppe at 24
Burdeaux, and we sayld downe the ryuer tyll¹¹ we
come in the mayne see / then the wynde rose ¹²con-
trarye to¹² vs, and so contynuyd a longe space, so that
our patron knew not where he was /¹ so at the last we 28
came to a porte, where¹³ we founde many shyppes of
stran[ge] countres / and there we gote vs a newe
patron ; and as shortely as we myghte, we wente forthe

¹ and. ² great. ³ hand. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ triumph.
⁶ Fol. cxi. back, col. 2. ⁷ ~~com~~ had well heard and. ⁸ was.
⁹ in. ¹⁰ from. ¹¹ vntill. ¹²⁻¹² against. ¹³ as.

on our Iourney. But when we were comyn agayne
 into the hye see, a¹ tempest arose so great² that we³
 nere hand all perysshyd / this tempeste enduryd .x.
 4 dayes, so that we were fayne to abandone oure shyppe
 to the wynde. And on⁴ the .xi. daye, we aryuyd on⁵
 the perelous Gulfe, wher as we founde Iudas, who
 betrayed our lorde⁶ Iesu christ: we were then in suche
 8 fere that we lokid for nothyng but when we shulde
 perysse and end our lyfe. But god alwayes his
 seruauntis and suche at⁷ byleuethe in [h]is⁸ holy lawe⁹
 wyll euer kepe and preserue them / he sent vs a wynde y¹⁰
 12 which¹⁰ draue vs fro that perelous Goulfe, and brought
 vs to¹¹ the castell of the Adamant' / and there he shewyd
 the admyrall at lenthe the beautye of that castell, and
 howe there aryuyd a shyppe with Sarasyns, who were
 16 robbers¹² of the see, and howe they fought together, and
 also he shew[ed] hym all y¹³ aduentures of the castell
 that he had there, as well of his men that dyed for¹³
 famyn as of them *that* be lefte there, & also he shewyd¹⁴
 20 how he came by vetayles. And also he shewed howe
 he departyd¹⁵ thence, and was borne awaye by the
 Gryffon, and howe he strake of one of his¹⁶ legges when
 he fought with hym,¹⁶ after the gryffon had set hym
 24 on⁴ the rocke, the whiche legge he shewyd to¹¹ the
 admyrad[ll] wherof he had¹⁷ great maruayle.¹⁸ Then
 also he shewyd hym howe he fought with the .v. yong
 Gryffons, and slewe them / and also of the olde
 28 Gryffon / and also of the fountayne wherin he baynyd
 himselfe, and of the fayre gardayn, and of the tree of
 youth that stode by the fountayne: and of the vertu of
 the frute therof / and howe he dyd gather therof,¹⁹ and

and a storm arose
 lasting for ten
 days.

On the eleventh
 day they arrived
 in the perilous
 Gulf, where they
 saw Judas,
 and were like
 to end their
 lives;

then God in his
 goodness sent a
 fair wind, which
 drove them
 thence to the
 castle of
 Adamant.
 Huon describes
 to the admiral
 the beauty of the
 castle,
 and shows all
 the adventures
 that he and his
 men met there.

Then he tells how
 he departed, and
 was borne away
 by the griffin
 to a rock,
 and how in
 fighting with the
 beast he struck
 off one of its legs,
 and this leg he
 showed to the
 admiral.
 He then tells how
 he fought with
 the five young
 griffins and slew
 them,
 and of the
 fountain and the
 fair garden,
 and of the tree
 of youth by the
 fountain.

He, knowing its
 virtue, gathered
 some of the fruit,

¹ great. ² omitted. ³ were. ⁴ vpon. ⁵ at.
⁶ and sauour. ⁷ as. ⁸ gis in text.
⁹ and keepe his commaundements. ¹⁰ Fol. cxii. col. 1.
¹¹ vnto. ¹² Pirats. ¹³ by. ¹⁴ discoursed.
¹⁵ from. ¹⁶ her. ¹⁷ wonderfull. ¹⁸ and.
¹⁹ of the same.

but was forbidden
to take more by
an angel sent
from God.

However, what
he had already
eaten and drunk,
healed the
wounds given
him by the
griffin.

The angel com-
manded him to
gather three of
the apples,
and showed him
the way from the
rock.

In a fair river
under the side of
the rock, he
found the ship
they were now in,
and a wind drove
his ship faster
than a bird.

He passed by the
Persian Gulf,
and suffered
torments there
for ten days,
and was thence
driven to the
land where he
found the
precious stones.
He did not then
know their value,
but took them
to balance his
ship.

The admiral
marvels greatly
at Huon's
adventures;
he has never
heard the like
before.

more wolde haue done but that he was defendyd¹ so
to do by an aungell sent fro god / but before I was
commaundyd² the contrary, I dyd ete³ both of the
frute and dranke of ye water of the fountayne, wherby⁴
I was⁴ incontynente⁵ all⁶ hole of⁶ the great woundes
that the Gryffon had geuen me.⁷ And, syr,' quod
Huon, 'knowe for trouthe that of this tree I gatheryd
.iii. apples, by the commaundemente of the aungell, and 8
haue kept them suerly / then the aungell shewyd me
the waye howe I shulde go fro that rocke, and vnder
y^o rocke syde I founde a⁸ fayre ryuer, and there I
founde this shyppe that we be nowe in, and enteryd 12
into it. Then there⁹ came a wynde¹⁰ and draue my
shyppe so faste that a byrde coude not ouertake¹¹ it.
Then he shewyd¹² vnto the Admyrall how he passyd
by the goulfe of Perse, & what tourmentis he sufferyd 16
there, and howe he was there .x. dayes, and how he was
dreuen to the londe,¹³ wher as he founde tnose precyous
stones,¹⁴ wenyng to hym it were¹⁴ nothyng but grauell,
and¹⁵ he purposyd nothyng elles but to balays¹⁶ therwith 20
his shyppe, that y^o shyp myyht sayle the more suerlyer /
and he sayd, 'syr, god, on¹⁷ hom I¹⁸ byleue, so aydyd¹⁹
me that I am scaped²⁰ thence in sauegarde.'

¶ when the admerall²¹ vnderstode Huon / he 24
22 maruayld greatly,²² for he neuer hard before of so
great²³ maruayles,²³ and was sore²⁴ abasshyd, and sayd,
'Frynde, I haue great maruayle of *that* I haue harde you
say, for it is nere hand .vi. score yere syn I came fyrst 28
in to this worlde / and I neuer harde that euer any man

¹ forbidden. ² to. ³ ete after both. ⁴ whole.
⁵ of. ⁶⁻⁶ omitted. ⁷ when I slewe them. ⁸ great.
⁹ Fol. cxii. col. 2. ¹⁰ [quoth he]. ¹¹ haue ouertaken.
¹² discoursed. ¹³ shoare.
¹⁴⁻¹⁴ and he thought it had bene. ¹⁵ that.
¹⁶ ther therwith *in text*. ¹⁷ vpon. ¹⁸ stedfastly.
¹⁹ and socoured. ²⁰ from. ²¹ had well heard and.
²²⁻²² had great maruaille. ²³⁻²³ and wonderfull aduentures.
²⁴ dismayed and.

scaped alyue out of the Goulfe of Perse / therefore ye
 maye well saye that the god on¹ whome ye do² byleue
 hathe shewyd that he louis you well, when he hathe
 4 sauyd you out of that perelous Goulfe, your god is
 pusaunt, and louethe³ moche them that byleueth
 on hym,³ he is false⁴ that byleueth not on⁵ his law /⁶
 when he hath sauyd⁷ you out of .ii. suche Gulfes, and
 8 also fro the castell of the Adamant, fro whence none
 can departe, nor neuer dyd, nor I thynke neuer shall :
 and also hathe sufferyd you to slee the Gryffons /
 suerly ye ought to loue hym that hath geuen you that
 12 grace / & fro⁸ the great maruayles that he hathe done
 to⁹ you, I wyll be chrystenyd & receyue your lawe /
 but I fere me yf my lordis and men knewe therof they
 wold sle me shortelye, for agaynste them all /¹⁰ I can not
 16 resyste' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'to the entent that ye
 shuld haue the fermer byleue in our lorde¹¹ god¹¹ Iesu
 chryste, I haue .iii. apples, the whiche hathe such
 vertue in them that yf ye wyl byleue in our lorde
 20¹¹ god¹¹ Iesu chryste, I shall gyue you one of them, the
 whiche ye shall ete, and incontynent after ye haue
 eten it, ye shal become yonge agayne of the age of .xxx.
 yerys, and ye shall be as fayre & as lusty as ye were
 24 when ye were of *that* age / there is not so olde a man
 nor so crokyd, yf he ete of this frute¹² and byleue
 farmely¹³ in our lorde Iesu chryst / but he shall
 become¹⁴ as lusty as he was of .xxx. yeria.'¹⁵ 'Frend,'
 28 quod the admyrall, 'yf it be so that by the¹² etynge of
 this apple, I shal becom¹⁶ yong agayne¹⁶ as I was
¹⁷ of y^e age of¹⁷ .xxx. yerys,¹⁵ what so euer come of me

Huon's escape
 proves his trust
 in God, and God's
 love for him.

In awe of this
 testimony of
 God's love and
 power, the
 admiral wishes to
 be christened,
 but fears his
 lords and men
 would slay him
 if they knew of it.
 Huon answers
 that he will give
 him one of his
 three apples,
 and if he eats it
 believing firmly
 in our Lord God
 Jesus, he will
 straightway
 become young
 again—of the age
 of thirty years.

¹ vpon. ² stedfastly.

³⁻³ all men that stedfastly and vnfaindly beleue in his
 holy lawes, and keepe his commaundements and.

⁴ and vntrue. ⁵ in. ⁶ but hee loueth you well.

⁷ deliuered. ⁸ for. ⁹ vnto.

¹⁰ Fol. cxii. back, col. 1. ¹¹⁻¹¹ and sauour.

¹² omitted. ¹³ and vnfaindly. ¹⁴ yong and as.

¹⁵ of age. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ as yong and as lusty. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ at.

The admiral consents, and hopes to persuade all his realm to believe the same.

To this end Huon bids him eat the apple in the presence of his lords and men.

The admiral takes Huon's advice, and hand in hand they go out of the ship.

Barnard was left to keep the ship, which was visited by many people.

The admiral led Huon to his palace. In their walk through the city they were regarded with great interest by men of all nations. The admiral made a great feast in Huon's honour.

I wyll be chrystenyd and byleue in y^e law of Iesu chryst, the fere of dethe shall not let me to do it, for to longe I haue byleuyd in this false lawe¹ and detestable of Macomet / for yf I had² sene nor harde no more 4 then ye haue shewyd,³ I ought yet⁴ to byleue in your lawe / and I shall do so moche that I truste I shall cause all my realme to byleue in the same' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'and ye do as ye saye, ye shall be sauyd, 8 and I shall geue you the apple / the whiche ye shal ete in the presence of al your lordis & men. And when they shall se you wax agayne yonge,⁵ knowe for trouthe y^e maruayle therof shall cause them to byleue of⁶ Iesu 12 chryst, and to renounce theyr false 'macomettis' lawe'⁸ / 'frend,' quod the admyrall, 'I byleue well as⁹ ye saye / and I shall vse my selfe after your aduyse' / then the admyrall toke Huon by the hande 16 & wente together out of the shyp; and Huon lefte Barnard there to kepe it / moch¹⁰ people was come thether to se the shyp, and¹¹ also for the great maruayles that they had harde fallen to¹² Huon; ¹³they behelde 20 Huon and had great maruayle of y^e honour that y^e admyrall made to¹² hym / for he led hym styll by the hand tyll¹⁴ he came to his palays; as they passed through the citye they were greatly regarded of men of 24 sondry nasyons / for Huon was so fayre¹⁵ a knyght¹⁶ that none coude be founde as then *that* myght¹⁷ compare with hym in beaute¹⁷; when Huon was come to the palays¹⁸ the admyrall made huon¹⁹ great fest and 28 chere, and the tables were set vp, & they sate downe to

¹ lawe *after* detestable. ² neither. ³ vnto me.

⁴ yet *after* byleue. ⁵ yonge *before* againe.

⁶ in our Lord. ⁷⁻⁷ and detestable. ⁸ of Mahomet.

⁹ that which. ¹⁰ many. ¹¹ Fol. cxii. back, col. 2.

¹² vnto. ¹³ and. ¹⁴ vntill.

¹⁵ in his visage, and so valiaunt. ¹⁶ in stature.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ bee compared vnto him.

¹⁸ whereas hee was honourably receiued with great ioy.

¹⁹ him.

diner; of theyr seruyse and metis I wyll make no longe rehearsayle. ¹when diner was done, the admyrall commaundyd carpenters to make a great scaffold of tymbre before y^e palays / y^e which was coueryd with ryche clothes of gold and sylke, & thether was brought a ryche standarde of golde with other thyngys; ² then he commaundid throughout the citey that all hys³ barons of his realme that were come thether to⁴ his fre feste, that they shulde all come to⁴ hym at an owre apointyd, the which they dyd; there cam so many straungers and other that there were mo assembelyd together then 12 a .C. & .l.M. men. when they were all there together, then y^e admyrall, holdyng Huon by the hand, mounted vpon y^e ryche stage, & dyuers other great lordis with hym; ² when they were there the admyrall stode vp 16 and sayde with a hye voyce to⁴ the lordys and to the people / 'syrs, ye that be com hether by my commaundement, know for trouthe / the great loue that I haue had to⁴ you and haue / moueth me to saye and 20 to shew you the waye how that I and all you may come to eternal saluacyon, for yf we dye in this case that we be in, we shall all⁵ be dampnyd and loste by the false and detestable ⁶ way that you and I do hold / 24 therfore I counsayle and praye you for the loue that ye haue longe borne vnto me, that ye wyl leue⁷ the lawe of Macomyte and byleue in⁸ our sauour and redemer, Iesu chryst, who is worthy and holly, as ye maye se by 28 the euydente myracles that he hathe shewyd for his pouer knyght that ye se here by me.' then the admyrall shewyd to⁴ the people all the maruaylous aduentures that had fallen to⁴ Huon / that is to saye, how he had 32 bene at the castel of the Adamante, and how the Gryffon bare⁹ hym¹⁰ thence, whome he slewe, and

Carpenters were commanded to make a scaffold of timber in front of the palace, and to decorate it with cloth of gold and silk. By command, at the hour appointed, all the admiral's barons came there, and many strangers and others besides.

The admiral, holding Huon by the hand, mounted upon the stage, and tells the lords and people in a loud voice that he is going to show them how they may come to eternal salvation,

by leaving the law of Mahomet and believing in Jesus Christ, whose worthiness and holiness is proved by the miracles he has worked for Huon.

The admiral then shows the people all the marvellous adventures of Huon,

¹ but. ² and. ³ Lordes and. ⁴ vnto.

⁵ all after be. ⁶ Fol. cxiii. col. 1. ⁷ with me.

⁸ the Law of. ⁹ did beare. ¹⁰ from.

and how
such things could
not have been
without the aid
of Jesus Christ.

He then tells how
if he firmly
believes in Christ,
the apple of
Huon's gift will
make him young
again.

The people
answer that if
they see proof of
this, they also
will be christened,

but that of such a
miracle they had
never heard.

.v. of y^e yonge Gryffons; and also of the fountayne
and gardayne, and of the freute of the tree of youthe,
and howe he had passyd the two Gulfes where as he
had taken y^e ryche stonys that he had brou[gh]t¹ 4
thether / the whiche thyngis coude not haue bene
without the ayde² of our lorde³ Iesu chryste, and also
he shall shewe before you euydente myracles that Iesu
chryst shall do for me yf I wyll take his lawe / for he 8
seyth to⁴ me that if I wyll byleue on⁵ his god, he wyll
make me to ete of such a holy frute, by the which I
shall become agayne but of the age of .xxx. yerys, and
as lusty as I was then⁶ / & therefore, syrs, yf Iesu 12
chryst wyll do this for me I wyll be chrystenyd' /
then all the people answeyrd and sayd / 'syr, yf this
that ye haue sayd come to profe, we⁷ al be⁸ content to
be chrystenyd, and to byleue on⁹ y^e lawe of Iesu 16
chryst, and to leue the law that we haue long kept /
but we ar hard of byleue that this shall be / for
yf it be so, there was neuer harde of suche a¹⁰ myracle.'

¶ How the emperour, by reason of the apple 20
that Huon gaue hym¹¹ to eete, he became
of the age of .xxx. yeris / wherby he and
all the people of perce and Mede were
chrystenyd, and of the great honoure that 24
the admyrall made to⁴ Huon. Ca. C.xxvii.

Huon, right
ioyful to learn
that all the lords
and people were
willing to believe
in Jesus Christ,



Then Huon¹² vnderstode y^e lordis &¹³
people how they were al¹⁴ content to
leue theyr law and to byleue of⁹ Iesu 28
chryst, he was ryght ioyfull, & thankyd
god with all his harte / then Huon

¹ brouhht in text.

⁴ vnto. ⁶ in.

⁸ all after be.

¹ Fol. cxiii. col. 2.

² and helpe. ³ and Sauour.

⁶ at that time. ⁷ shall.

⁹ vppon. ¹⁰ wonderfull.

¹² hadde well heard and. ¹³ the.

¹⁴ omitted.

unhappy,
and they desire
to embrace the
religion of
Christendom.

A bishop of
Grece, who was
in the city as
Ambassador from
Constantine the
Noble, offered to
christen the
admiral and his
people.

Forty great
vossels of clear
water were
brought,
the bishop hal-
lowed them,
and baptized the
admiral and
named him Huon.
Afterwards all the
lords and people
were christened,
and then, the
admiral leading
Huon, returned to
his palace.
There was great
joy and feasting
in the city that
day,
especially among
the Christian
merchants there,
and fifteen priests
with them, who
had helped the
bishop to christen
the people.

The admiral tells
Huon he ought to
render thanks to
our lord Jesus
Christ, that
through him
Persia and Media
have been
brought to the
Christian faith,

doctryne / was of no valour / then they cryed with a
hye voyce, 'O ryght noble and pusant admyrall /
desyre that noble man that is there with you, that he
wyll cause vs to haue¹ chrystendome.' And as then in **4**
the citey there was a bysshop of Grece who was come
thether in bassade² to the admyrall fro the emperour of
³constantyne the noble,³ who, herynge the wyll⁴ of the
people, was ryght ioyfull / and he cam to⁵ the admyrall **8**
and to Huon, and sayde / 'syr, it shal be no daunger for
you to be chrystenyd / for, syr, I am here redy to do
it.' Then incontyned there was brought forthē .xl
great vesselles full of clere water / the bysshop dyd **12**
halow them, and crystenyd the admyrall and gaue⁶
hym ⁷to name⁷ Huon, bycause Huon was his godfather.
Then after⁸ all the lordis & people were chrystenyd and
receuyd the law of our ⁹lorde⁹ Iesu Chryste. when **16**
they were all chrystenyd, the admyrall with great
tryhumphe¹⁰ retournyd to⁵ his palays ledyng Huon by
the hande.¹¹ great ioye and feast¹² was made that day
in the citey / and spesyally of the chrysten marchauntis **20**
that were there, amonge the which there ¹³was a¹³ .xv.
prestes, and they all aydyd the bys¹⁴shop to chrysten
the people / the nombre can¹⁵ not be declaryd of the
men, women and, chyldren that reseuyd that daye **24**
chrystendome / the admyrall beyng in his palays
makyng great ioy and fest¹² to¹⁶ y^e noble duke Huon
of burdeaux, sayd to⁵ hym / ' frynde, well ye ought to
render thankynges to our lorde Iesu chryste, syn¹⁷ by **28**
you these two realmes, that is to saye, Perce and Mede,
are reducyd and brought to⁵ the chrysten faythe and
law, and I wyll¹⁸ ye knowe that ye maye well saye that

¹ receiue. ² ambassage. ³⁻³ Constantinople.
⁴ and desire. ⁶ vnto. ⁶ named. ⁷⁻⁷ omitted.
⁸ afterward. ⁹⁻⁹ Sauour and Redeemer. ¹⁰ and ioy.
¹¹ and. ¹² feasting. ¹³⁻¹³ were about.
¹⁴ Fol. cxiii. back, col. 2. ¹⁶ could. ¹⁶ with.
¹⁷ seeing. ¹⁸ that.

in these two realmes ye maye commaunde¹ at your pleasure without fyndyng any parson to do or say to y^e contrary of your wyl and pleasure / and to the
 4 entent that ye shall suerly byleue what great loue² I bere vnto you, I wyl that myne all only doughter ye shall haue to your wyfe, so that ye be not bound to³ none other; syr, know for trouthe the great desyre
 8 that I haue to haue you tary styll here with me mouethe me thus to do / I haue none other eyre but my doughter / wherby after my deth ye shal be lord and heyre of the realmes⁴ that I holde / and in the
 12 meane season I wyll that the moyte of the reueneue of thes realmes⁴ shall be yours, for your company pleaseth me so well⁵ that I wolde neuer haue you to departe⁶ hens.⁷

and that he may demand aught that he pleaseth;

to prove the great love he bears him, the admiral offers Huon his daughter in marriage, provided he has not already a wife.

The lady is the admiral's only child, and on his death the marriage would make Huon lord of the realms; meanwhile, the admiral offers him half the revenues of his kingdom.

16 ¶ Of the complayntis that Huon made to³ the admerall of Perse on⁷ the emperour of almayne / and of the socours that the admyrall promysyd to³ Huon. Ca. C.xxviii.

20 **W**hen Huon⁸ vnderstode y^e admyral, he sayd, 'syr, knowe for trouthe *that* it is .iiii. yerys past syn I was maryed to³ a noble lady who passeth in beaute
 24 al other *that* be alyue in thes dayes, & when⁹ I remember her all my body and harte trymbelethe for sorowe / when I thynke of the trowble / dyspleasure / and pouerte that she is in / & therefore,
 28 syr, I thanke you of the great honoure and curtesye that of youre bountye ye do¹⁰ offer me.' 'I praye to³ god that he may rewarde you, Huon,' quod the admyrall; 'syn¹¹ it is so *that* ye haue a wyfe, I hold

Huon replies, that four years past he was married to a noble lady of surpassing beauty, that when he remembers her it is with great sorrow, for she is now in trouble and poverty,

and thanks the admiral for the great honour he offers him.

¹ anything. ² and affection. ³ vnto.
⁴ and Dominions. ⁵ entirely. ⁶ from. ⁷ vppon.
⁸ had well. ⁹ Fol. cxliii. col. 1. ¹⁰ omitted.
¹¹ seeing.

The admiral
demands of Huon
why his wife is in
such distress,
and what
Christian prince
is so bold as to
trouble him.
Huon tells how
he left his city of
Bordeaux beseged
by the
Emperor of
Germany,
who had taken
the city,
and cast his wife
into prison.

The admiral bids
Huon take
comfort;

he will come to
his aid, and make
war on the
Emperor with all
his forces,

and oblige him
to make full
restitution.

But Huon desires
not to shed
Christian blood,

but to visit the
holy sepulchre,
and then, on
returning to his
own country, to
rescue his wife
from danger.

His wife was the
daughter of
Gaudys, the
admiral of
Babylon and
Egypt.

you well excusyd. But I praye you shew¹ me for what
cause youre wyfe is in suche case / or what chrysten
prynce is so hardy² to troubyll you or³ do you any
dyspleasure?' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'when I came out of 4
my countree I lefte my citeye of Burdeaux besegyd by
the emperour of Almayne / who hath taken my citeye
and slayne my men, and some⁴ kepethe in saruage, and
my wyfe set⁵ in pryson, and there kept in great 8
pouertye and mysery / the whiche when I remembre,
sorowe⁶ so⁷ grypethe my harte, that all my membres⁸
trymbelythe for⁹ dyspleasure' / 'Huon,' quod the
admyral, 'I praye you³ leue your sorowe and dys- 12
pleasure and cast it fro you, and take Ioye and comforte /
for by the holy lawe that I haue reseuyd, I shall so
ayde and socoure you, that the emperoure who hath
done¹ you so many dyspleasures, I shall make hym 16
suche warre, that whether he wyl or not,¹⁰ the damage
and losse that ye haue had,¹¹ I shall constrayne hym to
make full restytucion / for I shal lede with me in your
company such nombre of people, that all the valeys and 20
mountaynes shall be coueryd withe people.'¹² 'Syr,'
quod Huon, 'of the curtesye & socours that ye offer me
I humblye thanke you / but yf it please our lorde¹³
Iesu Chryste, who hathe aydyd me out of many 24
pelles / I hope he wyll so ayde me that I shall not
nede to make¹⁴ warre and¹⁵ to dystroye¹⁶ the chrysten
blode / but, syr, fyrste I wyll¹⁷ go to the holy sepulture /
& then I wyll retourne into my countree / and do what 28
I can to get my wyfe out of daunger and of¹⁵ the
payne that she is in / syr, the wyfe that I haue
weddyd was doughter to the admyrall Gaudys who
helde as then Babylon and all the realme of Egypte.' 32
Then Huon shewyd hym all the mater howe he came

1 vnto. 2 as. 3 to. 4 hee. 5 put.
6 and greefe. 7 sore. 8 and ioynts. 9 with.
10 for. 11 and receiued. 12 them. 13 and Sauour.
14 any. 15 omitted. 16 Fol. cxiii. col. 2. 17 shall.

by the fayre Esclaramonde / wherof the admyrall was
 sore abasshydde for the great maruaylles that he¹ hard
 Huon declare, and so were al other that harde it,
 4 and sayde one to another, that without that² Huon
 had bene welbelouyd with³ our lord Iesu chryst, he
 coud neuer haue scapyd the deth with one of the lefte
 aduentures that he had shewyd vnto the admerall.
 8 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'the Emperoure of almayne hath
 taken my citey and my wyfe, and destroyed my men /
 and hath taken in to his handys all my lordys and
 sygnoryes / but by the grace of god I shall do so
 12 moche to get them agayne / and yf I can not attayne
 therto, then I shall retourne agayne to⁴ you to haue
 your socoure and ayde.' 'Huon,' quod the admerall,
 'put all melancoly fro you / for yf ye gyue me know-
 16 lege that ye canne not haue your wyl of this Emperour /
 I shall brynge you people innumerable / that all
 chrystendome shal trymble for fere of you / and I²
 shall render to⁴ you your wyfe and all your londis,⁵
 20 and your men that be in pryson or in saruage, &
 I shall put the Emperour into your handis to do with
 hym youre pleasure, elles I shall not leue in all his
 lande neyther citey nor towne standynge vpon the
 24 erthe.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'of this I thanke you
 hartely / but, syr, I muste worke another waye fyrste /
 for⁶ when I scapyd fro the goulfe of Perce I promysyd
 to⁴ god, that or⁷ I went into m[y]ne⁸ owne countre to
 28 go and vyset the holy sepulture in Ierusalem, and to
 make warre vpon the sarasyns, or⁷ I made any warre
 vpon any chrysten men / but, syr, yf I may get of the
 emperour by fayre speche my londe and my wyfe,
 32 I shall serue hym with good⁹ harte; for as long as I
 leue, I shall make no war against any chrysten man yf

Huon relates how
 he came by
 the fair
 Esclaramonde,
 and all who heard
 it marvelled
 greatly.

If Huon cannot
 regain his city,
 wife, lords and
 seignories taken
 by the Emperour
 of Germany, he
 will ask succour
 of the admiral.

Then will the
 admiral make all
 Christendom
 tremble for fear
 of Huon; he will
 regain for him
 his wife, and
 lands, and men,
 and deliver the
 Emperour into his
 hands, or he will
 leave neither city
 nor town stand-
 ing in the
 Emperour's land.

Huon has
 promised God
 before returning
 home, to visit the
 holy sepulchre,
 and to make war
 upon the
 Saracens.

He hopes to
 recover his land
 and wife from the
 Emperour by fair
 speech,

¹ hadde. ² omitted. ³ of. ⁴ vnto.
⁵ and Signories. ⁶ Fol. cxiili. back, col. 1. ⁷ before.
⁸ none in text. ⁹ all my.

for if right can be shown him he desires to make no war against Christian man. The admiral will go with Huon to the holy sepulchre, and take with him 50,000 men to make war on the Saracens.

Huon tells the admiral how this good deed will cause him to be crowned in the empire of heaven.

I may haue ryght and reason shewyd to¹ me' / 'syr,' quod the admerall, 'of this that ye say I can² you good thanke / but by the grace of god I shall go with you the vyage to the holy sepulture, and take with me 4 l.M. men to make warre agaynst the paynymys and sarasyns suche as byleuethe not in god, and I shall put to my payne with all my powre to exalte and encrease the law of Iesu chryste.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'ye haue 8 sayd nobeyle; yf ye do thus³ great grace and glory parpetuall ye shall deserue / wherby ye shalbe crownyd aboue in the imperyall heueyn.' Now leue we to speke of this mater. 12

¶ How the admerall of Perse assembelyd moche people, and he & Huon, with all his armye, toke the see and came to the port before the citey of Angory, whereas they 16 founde a great nombre of paynymys & sarasyns redy to defende the porte.

Ca. C.xxix.

The admiral sends orders through Fersia for the men of war to make ready, and appoints the day on which they are to embark for the Holy Land.

All come at the time assigned. Meanwhile, Huon and Barnard oftentimes visit the city of Tauris,



Fter that the admerall and Huon had 20 deüysid to gether of many thyngys / the admerall sent out his letters and brefes commaundyngethrough⁴ 5 Perse, and made⁶ men of warre to be redy; 24 and gaue them a day to be redy to go with hym, sertefyenge them that his nauy of shyppes shulde be redy for the transportynge of hym and of⁷ them / the whiche was done, and euery man 28 came at the day that was assyngnyd. in the mean season Huon and Barnard wente often tymys together and vysytyd the citey of Thauris, where as moche

¹ vnto. ² giue. ³ thus do. ⁴ out.
⁵ Fol. cxliiii. back, col. 2. ⁶⁻⁶ and Media. ⁷ omitted.

honoure was made to¹ them / wherof Huon and Barnard oftentymys thankyd god of the good aduenture that he had sente them. Thus as ye haue
 4 harde the adneral of Perce assembelyd² great nombre of people, and made hym redy & enteryd into his shyp, and all other in to dyuers shypys, and shypyd theyr armure and horsys;³ Huon, who desyryd to ples
 8 the admyrall, toke hys owne lytell shyp and dyschargedy it, and toke all the presyous stonys & dyd put them into another shyp, the whiche y^e admyrall had delyueryd to serue hym.³ then he sayd to¹ the admyrall,
 12 'syr, I know well⁴ the lytell shyppe that I came in hether is not to serue in the warre, & therefore, syr, as it is, I do gyue it¹ you' / wherof the admyrañt had great ioye, for in al the worlde ther was none such
 16 of beautye nor of ryches. Then Huon gaue the admyrall a bussell of the stonys, and to¹ the lordys together, and they thankyd Huon of his curtesye and larges / of all the stonys he kepte to his owne vse but
 20 .iii.C., and gaue awaye all the resydewe. Then he enterid into the shyp that was apoyntyd for hym / and then euery man enteryd in to theyr shypys, the whiche were well furnysshyl and vytaylyd⁵ / then y^e
 24 admyrall toke⁶ leue of his daughter, ⁷&⁷ ⁸weyed vp ances and lyft⁹ vp the saylys, and they had suche good wynde that a ¹⁰none they were far fro the porte; a goodly syght it was to behold the nauy / for at theyr
 28 departyng, they made such noyse with trompettys ¹¹and tabours¹¹ & hornes that all the see range¹² therof / great ioye¹³ had Huon & Barnarde of the grace that god hadde sent them / so longe they saylyd with¹⁴ wynde
 32 and sayle, that they enteryd in to the great see or

where much honour is showu them.

Huon, to please the admiral, discharged his own little ship, took out of it all the precious stones, and put them into another ship, which the admiral gave him.

To the great joy of the admiral, Huon gives him his beautiful boat.

To the admiral and the lords Huon gives a bushel of the precious stones, keeping for his own use but three hundred. He entered the ship appointed for him; all the rest likewise embark.

The admiral takes leave of his daughter; the anchors are weighed, the sails spread, and a fair wind drives them quickly from the port.

The departure of the ships was a goodly sight.

¹ vnto. ² a. ³ and. ⁴ that. ⁵ for the wars.

⁶ his. ⁷⁻⁷ who pitifully wept at her Father's departing.

⁸ then they. ⁹ hoysed. ¹⁰ Fol. cxv. col. 1.

¹¹⁻¹¹ Drummes. ¹² did ring. ¹³ and gladnesse.

¹⁴ good.

They enter the Caspian Sea, and see afar off the city of Angore. Its admiral was powerful and rich, and, seeing from one of the towers of his palace, so vast a navy advancing, wondered greatly. He knew the Persian ships by their banners, but he saw in the forecastles banners of white with red crosses.

He gives orders that every man in the city should arm and prevent the Christians from landing. The noise and confusion in the city was so great that the admiral of Persia and Huon, and all with them, could hear it.

The admiral sees they will meet great resistance at their landing. Huon enquires what people possess the city.

Caspys, & then they saw a fare of a¹ cetye stondyng by the see syd, callyd the citee of Angore, wherin there was² an admyral ryght pusaunt and ryche / and the same tyme he was in one of the³ towres of his palays, ⁴ when he sawe ⁵so⁵ pusaunt a⁶ nauy come saylynge⁷ towardis his citee / he had great maruayle /⁸ for he knewe well the shypis were of Perce by the penons and baners that he sawe wauynge in⁹ the shypis, and ⁸ on⁹ the other parte he saw in y^e toppes and forecastelles baners stondyng, all of whyght, and therin red crosses / then he sayd to¹⁰ his lordis that were about hym / ‘syr, I am greatly¹¹ abasshyd what ¹² meanethe yonder great fiete : syn¹² this citee was won by Reyngualte of Mountaban / there came neuer chrysten man here / and I haue more maruayle to se the baners and arme of Perce y^e which thes chrysten men ¹⁶ do bere in⁹ theyr shypis / then he¹³ went downe and puplysshyd in the citee that euery man shuld arme them and go to the port to defend¹⁴ that the chrysten men shulde not londe there / then the crye and larum ²⁰ began in the citee so great and orryble, withe the noyse of ¹⁵hornes and busyns, trompettis and tabours¹⁵ / so that the noyse of them range vpon the see, so that the Admyral of Perse, and Huon, and such as were on⁹ ²⁴ the see myght well here them / Then the admyrall sayd to¹⁰ Huon / ‘syr, I se¹⁶ well¹⁷ at ¹⁸our londyng we shall haue great batayle and resystence’ / ‘syr,’ quod Huon, ‘I pray you what people be they that haue that ²⁸ citee in gydyng, and who is lorde therof?’ ‘Syr,’ quod the admyrall, ‘knowe for trouthe¹⁷ this citee is

¹ faire. ² dwelt. ³ his. ⁴ and.

⁵⁻⁶ and perceiued such a. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ so fast.

⁸ and was sore dismayed and abashed. ⁹ vpon.

¹⁰ vnto. ¹¹ dismayed and. ¹² seeing.

¹³ the Admirall. ¹⁴ it.

¹⁵⁻¹⁶ Trumpets and Drummes, Hornes, and Basons.

¹⁶ and perceiue. ¹⁷ that. ¹⁸ Fol. cxv. col. 2.

great and well peopled / they byloue not in god / and
 a¹.xx. yeris passyd, this citey was wonne by a lorde
 Fraunce callyd Reyngnalte of Mountaban, and he
 4 made it to be chr[y]stenyd; and then at¹.viii. yeris
 after, it was wonne agayne vpon the² chrysten men by
 the admyrallis son: the which admyral was lord
 therof when it was won. And nowe agayne they be all
 8 paynymys and Sarasyns as ye maye se vpon the see
 syde, they ar redy to abyde for vs and to defende theyr
 porte.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'we ought greatly to thanke
 our lorde Iesu chryst of this fayre aduenture / when we
 12 se before vs the enemyes of our chrysten faythe / & by
 the grace of³ Iesu⁴ this daye we shall do so moche that
 the citey and the inhabytauntis therin shal be in our
 handys to vse them at our pleasure' / 'syr,' quod the
 16 admyral /⁵ 'god⁶ gyue⁷ grace that it may so be⁸ / great
 grace our lorde god shall do to⁹ vs, yf we maye wyne
 this citey.' Then the admyrall causyd his men to be
 armyd /¹⁰ then they sawe halfe a lege fro the citey a
 20 porte or hauyn / the which was not kept nor defendyd,
 bycause the admyral of Angory wold not Issue out
 farof fro his citey, tyll¹¹ he sawe what countenance
 the chrysten men wolde make. Then the admyrall of
 24 Perce and Huon auaunsyd them selfe so forwarde, *that*
 they caste out they[r] ances and launcyd out theyr
 botys well garnysshyd with men, archars and crosbowes,
 so that they londyd at this porte¹² without any daunger.
 28 Then the shypys drewe to the londe & ¹³ vnshyppyd
 theyr armure and horses, & so euery man londyd
 excepte suche as were sygnd¹⁴ to kepe the shyppes /
¹⁰ then euery man lept¹⁵ on¹⁶ theyr horses and ordaynyd
 32 .iii. batayles / the fyrste was led by duke² Huon, and

The city, says the
 admiral of Persia,
 is great and
 inhabited by
 unbelievers;
 twenty years past
 it was taken by a
 lord of France
 and made
 Christian,
 but eight years
 after it was again
 won by Saracens.

The admiral and
 Huon determine
 to take the city
 and use it at
 their pleasure.

The men are
 armed,
 and half a league
 from the city they
 see a haven
 undefended.

Here they land
 without danger,

leaving some to
 guard the ships.
 They are arranged
 in three divisions,
 the first led by
 duke Huon with
 20,000 men;

¹ about. ² omitted. ³ our Lord and Sauour.

⁴ Christ. ⁵ I beseech almighty. ⁶ to. ⁷ vs the.

⁸ be so. ⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹ vntill.

¹² in sauegard &. ¹³ Fol. cxv. back, col. 1. ¹⁴ assigned.

¹⁵ mounted. ¹⁶ vpon.

the second by a great lord of Persia, marshal of the host; the third by the admiral of Persia himself, who rode from rank to rank, admonishing his men to do their duty valiantly.

with hym. xx.M. men of hault and hie corage; the second was led by a great lorde of Perce, who was marshall of the hoste / the thyrde, gydyd the admyrall of Perce / who rode fro ranke to ranke, admonesshyng⁴ his men to do theyr deuours¹ valyauntly; then a soft pase they drew in batayle towardses the citye.

¶ How the admerall & Huon toke the porte and fought with the admyrall of Angorie, 8 and discomfytyd hym, and toke the citye / and how after² Huon went in to the desertys of Abillant to serche aduentures.

Ca. C.xxx. 12

When the admiral of Angore saw that the Christians had landed,



he divided his men into four parties.

The two hosts met together with such force that the bright sun waxed dark,

and many a knight was killed under the horses' feet.

¶ Hen the admyrall of Angore saw and parsayuyd that the chrysten men had taken londe, and were re³dy to geue bataile, and were comynge towardys 16 the citye, he ordaynyd and rengyd his bataylis, & deuydyd them in⁴ .iiii. partys, and set them to be led and gydid by such as he thought best; then he auauuncyd forwarde and was to the nombre of 20 l.M. men / when these .ii. hostis saw eche other, there was none of them but that feryd the dethe / the day was fayre & clere, & so they aprochyd, and al at a frusshe⁵ of⁶ both partyes dassed together in suche 24 wyse, that by reason of the powder & dust that rose⁷ by theyr horses, the sonne that was fayre and bright waxed darke, and the shote of⁶ bothe partyes flew so faste and as thicke as thoughe it had snowed / at theyr 28 fyrste metyng, many sperys were broken, and many a knyght borne to the erthe, so that they coud neuer releue⁸ after, but laye on the ground amonge the horse fete, and there dyed in doloure / there were manye 32

¹ endeauours. ² afterward. ³ Fol. cxv. back, col. 2.
⁴ to. ⁵ rush. ⁶ on. ⁷ did rise. ⁸ be releued.

horses rynnynge abrode traylynge theyr brydels after
 them, and theyr maysters lyeng¹ in the blude & ² myre /
 great slaughter there was made on³ bothe partyes / and
 4 Huon, who went brekinge y^o great presses, where as he
 slewe so many paynyns that euery man feryd hym, he
 sawe where the admyrall of Angoryes nephue was who
 had slayne a christen knyghte / ⁴ they ran eche at other
 8 so freslye,⁵ that the paynym brake his spere vpon
 Huon ; and Huon faylyd hym not, but gaue hym so
 marueylous⁶ a stroke that his spere passed thurgh his
 body, and so⁷ fell⁸ to the erth and dyed / then Huon
 12 ran at another and gaue hym suche a⁹ stroke that
¹⁰ he persyd¹⁰ thurgh his shyld and body / and with
 drawynge out of the spere, he fell to the erth, and neuer
 relyuyd after / and so the .iii. and .iiii.¹¹ he saruyd in
 16 lyke maner, and ¹² dyd so¹³ that he slew .viii. or ¹⁴ his
 spere brake,⁴ then he drewe out his good¹⁵ sword / &
 therwith he dyd suche dedes that it was ferefull to
 beholde hym / he cutte legges and armes, and rassyd of
 20 helmes so that none of his enemyes durste aproche
 nere¹⁶ hym / but they fledde before hym. as y^o byrde
 dothe before the hauke, he brake asonder the thyke
 presses ; he dyd so to be feryde that his enmyes left
 24 hym / for he neuer stroke¹⁷ man with a full stroke but
 he¹⁸ was slayne. Also with hym was Barnarde his
 cosyn, who euer folowyd hym & dyd merueylous in
 armes, for he was a sharp and an eger knyght. ¹⁹ Also
 28 the admyrall of Angory enforsyd hym selfe to do
 damage to¹⁶ y^o christen men / he sawe were the admyrall
 of perce was sleynge of his men / and came and ranne
 at hym ; and the admyrall of perce sawe hym &

Huon encounters
the nephew of the
admiral of
Angore,

and slays him.

After Huon had
slain eight of the
paynims, his spear
broke,
but he did
fearful deeds
with his good
sword.

Barnard followed
Huon, and
worked marvels
in the fight.

The admiral of
Angore attacked
the admiral of
Persia;

¹ dead vpon the erthe. ² in the. ³ vpon. ⁴ and.
⁵ so fiercely *after* ran. ⁶ and so great. ⁷ he.
⁸ downe. ⁹ maruailous. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ it passed. ¹¹ more.
¹² Fol. cxvi. col. 1. ¹³ valiantly behaue himselfe.
¹⁴ before. ¹⁵ *omitted*. ¹⁶ vnto. ¹⁷ any.
¹⁸ that receiued it. ¹⁹ And.

each bore the
other to earth,

but they were
separated by their
men.

The force of the
Saracens was so
great that the
admiral of Persia
could not re-
mount, and was
obliged to fight
on foot.

He was rescued
by Huon and
Barnard.

Huon kills the
admiral of
Angore,

encounteryd with hym by such force¹ that eche of
them bare² oder to the erth / then q[u]yckly they
releuyd them³ with theyr swerdes in there handes,
wyllynge eche⁴ of them to slee⁵ other / y⁶ whiche had ⁴
bene done in dede, &⁶ there men had not come and
socouryd them / but theder came so many of⁷ bothe
partyes that the .ii. admyralles had no power on⁸ them
to towche² other ; weth great force came theder Paynmys ⁸
and Sarasyns so *that* the cristen men coude not
remount vp agayne the admyral of Perce / but was
fayne to fyght a fote / and had bene in great iopardy⁹
and⁶ Huon and Barnarde had not come and rescuyd ¹²
hym ; they came theder hastely when they harde the
showtynge and cryenge that was made aboute the
admyral of Perce / and they brake a brode¹⁰ the great
prese of the paynmys. And when they sawe Huon ¹⁶
aproche nere¹¹ them they were sore afrayde / ¹²they
knewe hym ¹³well, and departyd,¹⁴ and sperclyd¹⁵ a
brode, and durste not abyde / and Huon, seyng y⁶
admyrall of Perce a fote amonge his enymyes with his ²⁰
swerde valyauntly defendyng hymselfe, whiche shulde
but lytyl auaylyd yf he had not bene quyckly socowryd /
¹²when Huon sawe hym he sayd : ' O ryght pusaunte
Admyral, haue no doute ' / then Huon toke a spere out ²⁴
of the handes of a paynyme whome he had slayne / and
there with he ranne at y⁶ admyral of Angory, and gaue¹⁶
so horryble¹⁷ a stroke *that* the spere passyd thorowe his
body more then a fote / and so¹⁸ fell downe dedde ²⁸
amonge his men / wher of y⁶ Paynmys were sore¹⁹
abasshyde when they sawe theyr lorde lye dedde on²⁰
the erth ; ¹²then Huon quyckly toke the admyralles

¹ and puissance. ² the. ³ selues. ⁴ both.
⁵ each. ⁶ if. ⁷ on. ⁸ one of. ⁹ and danger.
¹⁰ asunder. ¹¹ vnto. ¹² and. ¹³ Fol. cxvi. col. 2.
¹⁴ parted. ¹⁵ spread. ¹⁶ him. ¹⁷ and so vehement.
¹⁸ hee. ¹⁹ dismayed and. ²⁰ vppon.

- horse by the rayne¹ and came to² the admyral of Perce, and mounts the
 where as he was fyghtyng a fote / and sayd, 'syr, admiral of Persia
³lepe on³ this horse, for the paynymys and Sarasyns ar on his riderless
 4 desconfyed' / 'Syr,' quod the admyrall, 'blyssed be horse.
 the oure that⁴ ye were borne / for by your excellente
 prowes I am sawyde and all myn hoste, and haue⁵ ouer
 come myn enemyes, / then the Admyrall mountyde on⁶
 8 y^o good horse, wherof he was ioyful; and so he and
 Huon and Barnarde delte suche strokes among the
 Sarasyns / that they were constrayned to fle and turne
 there backes / ⁷then they were chassyd by such force
 12 that they enteryd in to the citey one with a noder / they re-entered
 then the christen men slewe the paynymes and Sarasyns, the city with the
 men, women, and chyldrene, that⁸ pyte it was to se Christians in
 them lye dedde on⁶ heppes in y^o stretes / so that the pursuit,
 16 bloode of them that were slayne, ranne in the strettes to and the Saracen
 the horse pastours; fynally by the hey prowes of Huon men, women, and
 and by the pusaunce of the admyrall of Perce, the children were
 the paynymys and Sara⁹syns were discomfyted in the citey killed by the
 20 of Angory. when the sleynge was sessyd, and that the Christians.
 admyrall and Huon sawe how they had ouercome theyr
 enemyes / they sessyd sleynge of the pepyll / ⁷they
 wente in to the temples, tours, & palysses, where in
 24 many paynymys & Sarasyns were withdrawen / they
 were take to vertue,¹⁰ promysynge to saue theyr lyues
 yf they wolde leue the¹¹ law of Macomyte and byleue
 in¹² Iesu chryst / and so many were chrystenyd, and
 28 such as wold not were slayne / when the admyrall and
 Huon sawe that the citey was become chrystenyd /
 then th[e]y sette theyr offecyers, prouostis, and baylyes
 to gouerne the citey, and with them .ii.M. persons to
 32 kepe y^o citey. Thus they taryed ther¹³ .viii. dayes,

¹ of the bridle. ² vnto. ³⁻³ mount vppon. ⁴ euer.

⁵ vanquished and. ⁶ vppon. ⁷ and. ⁸ great.

⁹ Fol. cxvi. back, col. 1. ¹⁰ mercie.

¹¹ false and detestable. ¹² our Sauour and Redeemer.

¹³ by the space of.

made ready to depart.

They set forth, leave the Caspian Sea, enter the Euphrates river, and thence pass into the great sea.

They coast the desert of Abylante in bright weather and a fresh wind.

Huon and the admiral talk over their adventures, and praise God for their success.

The admiral has great desire to see the Holy City.

Huon hopes to reach it, but the chief object of his voyage is the destruction of all unbelievers.

The travellers meet with no adventure for eight days.

Huon laments the fate of Esclaramonde.

¹then they made redy to depart, and trussyd & newe wyttelyd theyr shyppes / ¹then they enteryd in to theyr shyppes,² trompetes, and³ busyns, & tabours made⁴ noyes,¹ the mareners weyed vp theyr ancrs and ⁴hyssed vp theyr sayles, & sayled so longe that⁵ they were out of⁶ great see of caspus, and enteryd in to the great floude of eufrates / the whiche dissendeth in to the great see / when they were passed the ryuer / they ⁸costydde the desertis of abylante / the sesone was fayr and clere, and the wynde freshe. Thus⁷ they sayled by this great see, the admyrall and Huon stode at the borde syde of theyr shyppes and deuysed⁸ of ¹²theyr aduentures, & laudyde⁹ god of his grace¹⁰ that he had done to¹¹ them. 'Huon,' quod the admyrall, 'great desyre I haue¹² to se the holy citey wher our lord god was crucifyede and layed in sepulture.' 'syr,' ¹⁶quod Huon, 'by y^o grace of god we shall ryght well¹³ come theder, & I hope he shall do¹¹ vs¹⁴ greater grace¹⁵ as to ayede vs to conquere and to ¹⁶dystroye them¹⁷ in our way that byleueth not on our holy law / for *that* is ²⁰the chef¹⁸ entent of our vyage.' Thus they deuysed togydder the space of .viii. dayes withoute fyndyng of any aduenture ;¹ so on¹⁹ an euennyng Huon all alone stode lenyng ouer the shyppes bord / beholding the ²⁴see, y^o which was playne and peasable, then he remembrede y^o duches Esclaramonde his wyfe / therewith the teres fel²⁰ downe his vysage, & sayd, 'a, ryght noble lady, when I remembre in²¹ what²³ danger I left you in, ²⁸and in what pouerte & mysery ye be in,²³ I haue no²⁴ membre but *that* trymblyth for the dysplesure that I

¹ and. ² and the. ³ omitted. ⁴ great. ⁵ vntill.

⁶ the. ⁷ as. ⁸ demysed in text. ⁹ prayed.

¹⁰ for. ¹¹ vnto. ¹² I haue after admyrall.

¹³ and shortly. ¹⁴ farre. ¹⁵ yet.

¹⁶ Fol. cxvi. back, col. 2. ¹⁷ all those. ¹⁸ cheefest.

¹⁹ vppon. ²⁰ ran tenderly. ²¹ omitted. ²² peril and.

²³ nowe. ²⁴ ioyn't nor.

am in, and for fere left y^e false emperoure cause you to
 dye or¹ my retoure,' then he begane to make great
 sorwe² / then³ Barnarde, who was not farre fro hym,
 4 sayd / 'A, syr, ye know well that in all the fortunes
 and aduentures that hath come to⁴.you god hathe
 ayeded you and sende⁵ you fro the peryll of deth /
 therefore take⁶ comfort to yourself, and laude and pryse
 8 god for that he sendeth⁴ you / and doute not yf ye
 haue perfyte hope and trust in hym he wyll ayed and
 confort you / ⁷he neuer forgeteth them *that* with good
 harte serueth hym.' Thus with suche wordes Barnard
 12 confortd Huon / ⁷then the admyral came and lent
 downe by Huon / and deuysede togyder of⁸ dyuers⁹
 thynges / the same tyme there rose vp a wynd and a¹⁰
 tempeste so great and so horryble that the sayles were
 16 broke in dyuers places, & some mastes brake and flewe
 ouer the bordes of the shyppe / the see begane to be
 wode¹¹ and furyous / so that euery man though[t] to
 haue bene peresshyde : the fortune of this tempest was
 20 so horryble /¹² euery man / deuoutly called vpon our
 lorde god to saue them fro that¹³ perryll.¹⁴ 'syr,' quod
 Huon, 'I pray ¹⁵you shewe me what countre is yonder
that I se before me, we were happy and¹⁶ we myght
 24 aryue there and cast our ances vnder the rocke that I
 se ther' / 'syr,' quod y^e Admyrall, 'we be aryued at an
 yll¹⁷ port, for we be nere to the deserts of abylyante ;
 on¹⁸ yonder mountayne that ye se is conuersant an
 28 enemy, who hath causyd many a shyppe and vesseyll
 to be drowned in this see, wherby we be all in great
 aduenture¹⁹ to be lost / for none can aproche to this
 rocke / but *that* he is slayne & stranglyd²⁰ by the

Barnard consoles
him.

There suddenly
rose up a great
tempest ;
the saile and
mastes were
broken in diuers
places.

Huon demands
the name of the
country he sees
before him.

It is an evil port,
inhabited by an
enemy who slays
and strangles all
who approach.

¹ ere. ² and greefe. ³ but. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ sauéd.
⁶ good. ⁷ and. ⁸ about. ⁹ and sundrie.
¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ rough. ¹² as. ¹³ the.
¹⁴ and danger that they were in. ¹⁵ Fol. cxvii. col. 1.
¹⁶ fortunate if. ¹⁷ euil. ¹⁸ vpon. ¹⁹ daunger.
²⁰ slayne *after* strangled.

Every man is much afraid, and the admiral is anxious to withdraw from the place.

Huon must have speech of this enemy; if he displeases him he will strike off his head. The admiral declares that 500 Huons could not resist him.

Huon is determined to visit him;

the admiral tries to dissuade him, but in vain.

Barnard wishes to go with Huon;

enemy that ys there, / then euery man was in great fere, and the Admyrall sayd to¹ y^e mareners / 'syr, I pray you if it may be let vs draw out of this quarter' / 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'me thynke ye are to sore² abasshyd / 4 for by that lorde that made me to his semblaunce, I shall neuer haue ioye in³ my harte tyll⁴ I know why that enemy causethe them to perysshe⁵ *that* pas⁵ this waye / I shall neuer rest tyll⁴ I haue spoken with 8 hym, and yf he do any thyng contrary to my pleasure, I shall stryke of his hede.' 'Huon,' quod the admyral, 'I haue great maruayle of that ye do saye / for yf there were .v.C. suche as ye be / within an owre ye shulde 12 all be dede and strangelyd.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'dought not⁶ that / for thoughe I shuld dye in the quarrell, I wyll go se hym and know the cause why he letteth or troubelethe this passage / or⁷ it be .iii. dayes 16 to an ende I shall go and speke with hym⁸ what soeuer fortune.'⁸ 'Syr,' quod the admyrall, 'in you it is to do your owne wyll: ⁹syn it pleseth you I must be content / but yf ye wold beleue me ye shuld not 20 take on¹⁰ you that vyage.'¹¹ 'Syr,' quod Huon, all smylng, 'I haue my hope¹² in¹³ god¹⁴ and in y^e vyrgyn Mary his mother,¹⁴ who hathe¹⁵ hether vnto¹⁵ sauyd me,¹⁶ and so I hope they¹⁷ wyll do¹⁸ yette / for it is a 24 comune prouerbe sayde,¹⁷ whome that¹⁴ god wyll ayde¹⁹ no man can hurte.' 'Syr,' quod the admyrall, 'I praye to¹ our lorde god to defende you fro all yll / and²⁰ gyue you²¹ grace to retourne agayne in sauegarde' / 28 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I thanke you.'²² Then Barnarde rose vp & sayd, 'dere cosyn, I requyre you²⁰ let me go

¹ vnto. ² dismayed and. ³ at. ⁴ vntill.

⁵⁻⁵ so fast. ⁶ you. ⁷ before.

⁸⁻⁸ what fortune soeuer commeth therof. ⁹ for.

¹⁰ vpon. ¹¹ and enterprize. ¹² and trust.

¹³ almightie. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ omitted. ¹⁵⁻¹⁶ heretofore.

¹⁶ from death. ¹⁷ he. ¹⁸ Fol. cxvii. col. 2.

¹⁹ and succour. ²⁰ to. ²¹ the. ²² heartily.

with you' / ¹then the admyrall sayd / 'syr, I desyre
 you² be contente that I and Barnarde maye keep
 you company, and we shall haue with vs for y^e more
 4 sauegard of our parsones .CCCC. hardy knyghtys' /
 'syr,' quod Huon, 'by goddys grace I wyll go alone,
 none shall go with me but my selfe and Iesu Chryste,
 and his blyssyd mother, in whose sauegard I commyt
 8 my selfe' / when Barnard hard that he had great
 sorowe at his harte, and so had the admyrall, when
 they sawe³ they coude not tourne hym⁴ fro his⁵
 vyage.⁶ Then Huon armyd hym⁷ and toke leue of the
 12 admyrall and of the other lordys, and of Barnard, who
 made great sorow for his cosyn Huon, who all alone
 wold go in to the desertes⁸; when Huon had taken his
 leue, he was sette a londe,⁹ and made the syngne of
 16 the¹⁰ crosse on¹¹ his breste. Then he mountyd vpon the
 mountayne, but or¹² he was the halfe waye / a great
 wynde arose on¹¹ the see / so that the tempeste was
 great and orryble / ¹³so that¹³ the cordys and cables
 20 of the shyppys with the admyrall brast asonder / ¹so
 that¹⁴ parforce they were fayne to take the see and sayle
 at aduenture as wynde and wether wolde serue them /
¹⁵so that parforce¹⁵ they were cast out of that great
 24 se, wherof the admyrall and Barnarde, and all the other
 lordys had great fere, and greatly complayned for
 Huon, who alone without company was mountid on¹¹
 the moun¹⁶teyne; and as he was goynge he lokyd
 28 downe into the see / and saw the marueylous tempest
 that was in the see, so that of .CC. shyppes that he
 had lefte there *with* the admyral, he coude then se no
 more but .ii. together, for al the rest were separate one
 32 fro another in great peryll¹⁷ / then ho began¹⁸ to wepe

the admiral will
 also accompany
 him with 400
 brave knights.

But Huon desires
 to go alone;

Barnard and the
 admiral are much
 grieved.

Huon arms
 himself,
 takes leave of his
 comrades,
 and is set ashore.

When he was
 half way up the
 mountain, a storm
 arose, which
 forced the
 admiral to sail as
 the wind would.

The ships are
 cast about on the
 great sea, and
 all have great
 fear for Huon.

Huon sees the
 storm, and how
 all the ships were
 scattered.

¹ and. ² to. ³ that. ⁴ Huon. ⁵ dangerous.

⁶ and enterprize. ⁷ self. ⁸ to seke aduentures.

⁹ shoare. ¹⁰ a. ¹¹ vppon. ¹² ere. ¹³⁻¹³ whereby.

¹⁴ omitted. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ whereuppon.

¹⁶ Fol. cxvii. back, col. 1. ¹⁷ and danger. ¹⁸ pitifully.

He began to weep
for his wife
Esclaramonde,
whom he thought
never more to
see.

He prayed to God
to aid him in his
need,

to cause Barnard
to reach a haven
in safety,
and to allow
Huon to see his
friends again.

and complayne for his wyfe¹ Esclaramonde, whome he thought then neuer more² to se, bycause he was in that deserte, and saw the shyppes dreuyn fro the londe in great fere of lesyng. Then he knelyd downe and held⁴ vp his handys to³ y⁴ heuen, requyryng our lorde god of his petye and grace to ayde and to gyue hym comforte so⁴ that he myght scape⁵ thence alyue / and to saue the shyppes and to bringe them agayne in⁸ sauegard to the place fro whence they departyd. Then petuously⁶ he complaynyd for his wyfe and daughter, & sayde, 'a, ryght noble lady Esclaramonde, when I remembre the paynes, and dolours, and pouerties, that¹² by my cause ye suffer and haue sufferyd / all my body sweteth for⁷ payne & doloure / Alas, I had thought in short space to haue ayded and socuryd you / but now I se well⁸ our departyng is come for euermore / in yonder¹⁶ perelous see, I se my cosyn Barnard and dyuers other lordys, that by my cause are in the way of pardyssyon without god to⁹ ayde¹⁰ them, whom I humbly requyre to sende them that grace that they may aryue at²⁰ some¹¹ porte, and that I may ones¹² see them agayne to the entente that I may fyght agaynste the paynyms and sarasyns in exaltyng the law of Iesu chryst.' Thus Huon of Burdeaux made his prayers to our lorde²⁴ Iesu chryste.



¹³¶ How Huon wente so long in this deserte that he founde Cayine and spake with hym a longe season, and howe he begylyd²⁸ Cayine and departid. Ca. cxxx.

¹ the faire. ² more *after* se. ³ vnto. ⁴ omitted.
⁵ from. ⁶ greuously. ⁷ by. ⁸ that. ⁹ doe.
¹⁰ and succour. ¹¹ good. ¹² once *after* them.
¹³ Fol. cxvii. back, col. 2.



After that Huon had thus made his prayers to¹ our lorde god, he rose vp & blyssyd him with y^e syngne of y^e crosse recommaundyng hym selfe to¹ our lorde god, & so² came to the heyght³ of the mountayne; ⁴ when he was there al his body trymbelyd with traueyle, so ⁸ that he was⁵ faynte, and feble. Then he lokyd all⁶ about, ⁷ and sawe in a fayre medow a clere fountayne, thether he went to refresshe and to reste hym / then he layde hym down on⁸ the gras to refresshe hym or⁹ he ¹² wolde drynke, he was so hote / and when he was well colyd he came to the fountayne and dranke¹⁰ a lytyll and wasshyd his handys and fase / ¹¹ then he went further into the foreste and coude fynde nother towne ¹⁶ nor castell, gardayne, nor trees with frute, wherof he was¹² sorowfull, ¹³ and so serchyd all day to fynde som man or woman, but all was in vayne / & when he saw that the sonne went to rest and coude fynd no creature, ²⁰ he was sore annoyed¹⁴ / he chose out a tree & there¹⁵ layd hy[m]¹⁶ downe & slepte; & in the mornyng when he saw the sonne ryse, and that his beamys spred abroad on⁸ the erthe / then² he arose and blessyd hym / and so ²⁴ wente forth in to the deserte and found nother man nor woman / beste nor byrde, wherwith ¹⁷ he was sore dysplesaunt¹⁷ / deuoutly he callyd vpon our lorde god ¹⁸ Iesu chryst, and on his blessyd mother the vyrgyn ²⁸ Mary, ¹⁸ prayenge them¹⁹ to haue in theyr²⁰ ²¹ tuiisson²² his body and sowle / and that he myght yet ones see his wyfe²³ and ²⁴ chylde.²⁴ He went so long in this

On reaching the top of the mountain, Huon was faint, and fell down.

He refreshed himself at a clear fountain, and,

going further into the forest, could find neither town, castle, gardens, neither were there men nor women.

He was sore annoyed, and laid him down to sleep under a tree.

At sunrise he arose and went into the desert, but met neither man nor woman, beast nor bird. He called on our Lord Jesus Christ and the Virgin Mary to let him see once again his wife and child.

¹ vnto. ² omitted. ³ toppe. ⁴ but. ⁵ verie.
⁶ round. ⁷ him. ⁸ vpon. ⁹ before. ¹⁰ thereof.
¹¹ and. ¹² right. ¹³ and sore displeased.
¹⁴ discomforted. ¹⁵ vnder. ¹⁶ hyd in text.
¹⁷⁻¹⁷ being sorowfull and angrie. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ omitted.
¹⁹ him. ²⁰ his. ²¹ Fol. cxviii. col. 1. ²² and keeping.
²³ the faire Escleremond. ²⁴⁻²⁴ Clariet his Daughter.

At last he reached a plain, where he saw a tun of oak bound with iron, which rolled about in the circuit of the plain,

and beside it, lying on the ground, a great mallet of iron.

As the tun passed by him, he heard a piteous voice within complaining.

He approaches near, and asks who lies within it.

No answer comes forth.

Huon conjures the voice to reply to him.

He who is in the tun replies that Cain is there who slew his brother,

deserte that at last he cam to a playne of a¹ .iii. bowe shote large, and in y^e myddes therof he sawe a tonne made of the hart of oke, bound all about with bandys of Iron / and it euer¹ tournyd and rollyd in the 4 playne, and neuer passyd out of the cyrcuyte of the playne / and besyde the tonne he saw where there lay on² the grounde a great mall of Iron / great maruayle Huon had³ when he saw this tonne thus⁴ rolle about 8 without sease lyke a tempeste, and as it passyd by hym⁵ he hard a petuous⁶ woice within the tonne sore complaynyng, and when he had hard it .ii. or .iii. tymys he aprochyd nere to the toune, and sayd, 'thou 12 that art in this tonne / speke to⁷ me & shew me what thou art or what thyng thou nedyst⁸ of, and why *thou* art put there' / Then when he that was in this⁹ tonne harde Huon,¹⁰ restyd styl & spake no word.¹¹ when 16 Huon sawe that it wold not speke,¹⁰ sayd / 'what so euer thou art, I coniuere y^e by hym that creatyd all the worlde, and by his sone our lorde Iesu chryst, whom he sent downe to suffer dethe and passy[on] on the tre of 20 the crosse to redeme his frendys, who by the synne of Adam and Eue were in lymbo, and by his glorious resurreccyon, and by his aungels and archangels, Cherubyns and Seraphyns, and by all his holy sayntys, 24 I coniuere *thee* to shewe me what thou arte, & why¹² thou art set here in this tonne?' when he that was within the tonne hard how sore he was coniueryd, he answeryd and sayde / 'thou that hast coniueryd me, 28 thou doeste great yll¹³ to cause me to shew the y^e trouthe / knowe suerly that I haue to name Cayme, and sone I was to⁷ Adam & Eue,¹⁴ and am he that slew my brother Abel by false and cursid enuy that I 32

¹ omitted. ² vpon. ³ had *after* maruayle.

⁴ thus *after* about. ⁵ Huon. ⁶ pitifull. ⁷ vnto.

⁸ hast neede. ⁹ the. ¹⁰ he. ¹¹ and.

¹² and for what cause. ¹³ euill. ¹⁴ Fol. cxviii. col. 2.

had to¹ hym, bycause his oblacyons and dymes that he
 made to¹ god were exaltyd, and the fume therof went
 vpwarde to heuyn / and tho² that I made the fume
 4 wente downe warde / and when I sawe that, I slewe &
 mourderyd my brother Abell, wherfore, and for the
 great syn that I haue commyttyd, I am dampnyd to
 be and to suffer this merterdome with in this tonne
 8 wherin I am closyd brynnynge³ and with⁴ serpentys,
 and todys here within deuouryth⁴ me, and yet I can
 not dye / and here I shall be vnto⁵ the day of Iuge-
 mente, and then my payne shall be doubelyd / Nowe
 12 haue I shewyd the thy demaund, wherfore I repute the
 but a fole / when thou art so hardy⁶ to enter into this
 deserte where as neuer man enteryd and departyd
 without dethe / for knowe for trouthe⁷ hether repayreth
 16 .ii. enemyes, fendys of hel, who shall sle the and bere
 thy sowle into hell without thou wylt do as I shall
 shewe the' / 'frende,' quod Huon, 'I pray the shewe
 me what it is that thou spekest of, or what thyng
 20 thou wylte *that* I shulde do, and I shall⁸ do it to the
 entent that I may departe⁹ hense / there is no thyng
 in the worlde but I shall do it for the, so thou shewe
 me the way how I maye departe⁹ hens' / 'frende,' quod
 24 Cayme, 'I shall shew the what thou shalt do: thou
 shalte take this malle of iron that thou seest there
 & stryke therwith so long vpon this tonne tyl¹⁰ thou
 breke¹⁰ it, to the entent that I myght¹¹ issue out / &
 28 when I am delyueryd I shall set y^o in sauegard in
 Ierusalem or in fraunce, or in what contre¹² thou wylte
 wysse / yf thou do this that I haue sayd, & delyuer
 me fro this tourment, I shal set y^o whersoever *thou*
 32 wylt be, in any lond ¹³chrysten or hethen / and yf thou

and is therefore
 condemned to
 suffer this
 martyrdom until
 the day of
 Judgment.

None depart from
 this desert alive,

for it is inhabited
 by two fiends of
 hell, who will slay
 Huon unless he
 does as Cain
 shows him.

Huon will do
 whatever Cain
 asks him, if
 only he will show
 him how to
 depart thence.

Cain tells Huon
 to take the iron
 mallet and strike
 upon the tun till
 he break it.

Cain will then be
 delivered,
 and will set Huon
 in whatever
 country he may
 wish.

¹ vnto. ² those. ³ burning. ⁴ deuouring.
⁵ vntill. ⁶ as. ⁷ that. ⁸ will. ⁹ from.
¹⁰ hast broken. ¹¹ may. ¹² soeuer.
¹³ Fol. cxviii, back, col. 1.

Huon refuses to set Cain free until he has told him the way hence; then he promises so to do.

Cain tells Huon to descend the mountain, to enter a ship, and pretend to the one man he will find in it that he is Cain himself, ready to destroy Christian men;

do not this that I haue sayd, or¹ it be nyght I shall cause the to dye with great tormentes, for anone thou shalt se come heder .ii. deuyls of hell, fowyll and howdeous to behold, and they shall strangle the & bere ⁴ thy sowle into hell.' ²'O, verye god,'² quod Huon, 'humbely I requyre³ the to saue me fro this tourmente / Cayme,' quod Huon, 'thou spekyste⁴ fayre and sayeste as thou lyste, but I wyll not delyuer the out of this ⁸ tonne tyll⁵ fyrst thou shewe me how I may departe hence' / then Cayme sayd, 'yf thou wylt promyse me by thy faythe and by thy parte of paradyse to delyuer me out of this tonne / I shall shewe the the maner ¹² howe thou shalte scape fro hense.' 'Cayme,' quod Huon, 'haue no dought, and that I promyse the to kepe my faythe / so thou shew me the maner how I may depart out of this deserte, I shal delyuer the out ¹⁶ of thy tourmente.' Then Cayme sayd / 'thou shalte go by this lytyll pathe that thou seest here by on⁶ thy ryghte hande / the whiche shall brynge the straye to the see syde, the whiche is not far⁶ hense / ²⁰ then go downe the mountayne where as thou shalt fynde a shyp, and therin but one man / but or thou⁹ enter into the shyppe, blysse the thre tymys, for he that thou shalte fynde there is a fende of hell / and shewe¹⁰ hym ²⁴ howe thou art Cayme scapyd out of the rollynge tonne, and byd hym to pas the ouer; and saye howe¹¹ thou wylte go and dystroye¹² the chrysten men that be in the worlde & brynge theyr sowlys into hell / and ²⁸ when he hereth the say thus, he wyll pas the ouer in sauetye / for it is longe synne that he hathe taryed for me / by cause he thynkethe I shulde scape out of this tonne. But thou must take with the this mall ³² of ³²

¹ before. ²⁻³ Ah, good Lorde. ³ and beseech.
⁴ mee. ⁵ vntill. ⁶ from. ⁷ vpon. ⁸ and.
⁹ doest. ¹⁰ vnto. ¹¹ that. ¹² slay all.
¹³ Fol. cxviii. back, col. 2.

- Iron on¹ thy necke to the entente that he shall the better byleue the.² ¶ 'Cayme,' quod Huon, 'I pray the is this of truth that thou hast sayd?' / 'frend,'
 4 quod Cayme, 'I lye neuer a worde. Nowe I praye the synne³ I haue shewed the maner howe thou mayst scape / take this mall of Iron and breke asonder this tonne that I am in / that I maye be delyueryd'⁴ /
 8 'Cayme,' quod Huon, 'I praye the⁵ shewe me who is he that dyd put the into this tonne, & what is his name?' / 'syr,' quod Cayme, 'knowe for truth that god of heuen set me here bycause I had dyspleasyd
 12 hym for sleynge of my brother Abell, wherfore I haue sufferyd so moche payne and sorowe that more I can not endure / and therefore yet agayne I praye the⁵ delyuer me⁶ hense' / 'Cayme,' quod Huon, 'god
 16 forbede that I shulye delyuer the syn³ our lorde god haue set the there / know for truth thou shalte neuer departe⁶ thense without⁷ it be by his commaundemente / for there shalte thou be euer for me / I had
 20 rather be pariuryd then to fordo⁸ that thyng that⁹ god wyll haue done to punysse the for the ylles¹⁰ that thou haste done / I knowe well as for the yll¹¹ that I haue done as in brekinge of my promyse to the,
 24 god wyll lyghtly pardone me for it / abyde thou there with thy cursyd synnes / for as¹² by me thou shalte haue none other ayde.'

he is to fasten the iron mallet on his neck, that the man shall the better believe him. Huon is doubtful if this is true; but Cain never lies.

Huon enquires who put Cain into the tan,

and learns that God of Heaven set him there.

Therefore Huon will not release him;

Cain shall not depart thence except by the commandment of the Lord.

Huon feels sure he will be pardoned for thus breaking his promise.

- ¶ How Huon departid fro Caym and passed
 28 the see in a veseyle gydyd by the deuyll, who byleuid it had bene Cayme / and Huon aryuyd at a citey callid Colanders, where as he found the admiral of perse

¹ vpon. ² and surely he will then passe the ouer.
³ seeing. ⁴ out of this paine and torment. ⁵ to.
⁶ from. ⁷ excepte. ⁸ vndoe. ⁹ which. ¹⁰ euils.
 ¹¹ euil. ¹² sure.

¹and Barnarde his cosyn, who had layd
sege to the citye. Ca. Cxxxii.

Cain calls Huon
traitor and liar.



Huon retorts;

Cain has well
deserved his
suffering, and
shall shortly have
more pain and
sorrow.

Cain complains
that Huon has
subtly deceived
him,

but owns that had
Huon delivered
him, he would
have strangled
the knight.

Hen Cayme² vnderstode Huon, he sayd,
'A, thou false traytoure, by whome I 4
am begyld and mockyd / thou arte
not worthy to be byleuyd in any
thyng that thou sayeste, thou lyeest
worse than a dogge.' 'O thou false pariuryd traytoure, 8
thou hast yll kept thy promys, thou art not worthy to
be byleuyd, Cayme,' quod Huon, 'other good getteste
thou none of me / for thou arte not worthy to be harde,
when thou haste slayne thy dere brother by false enuy 12
and cursyd treason wherof thou arte ful / go thy waye,
traytoure, to moche yll³ can not be done to⁴ the / be
contente with the tonne that thou arte in / thou
nedyste not fere of any fresshyng nor of more 16
fourtheryng for me, well hast thou deseruyd it, but
within short tyme thou shalte haue worse payne and
sorowe.' 'A, traytoure,' quod Cayme, 'and false lyer,
thou hast loste thy parte of paradysse.' 'Thou lyeeste,' 20
quod Huon / 'to⁴ the, ought to be kepte nother faythe
nor promys, bycause thou haste slayne Abell thy
brother, wherfore thou arte nowe ponysshyd, and well
hast thou deseruyd it' / 'A, false lyer,' quod Cayme, 24
'suptylly thou haste deseuyd⁵ me by thy false wordys
and subtyltyes / I see well thou shalte⁶ go⁷ hense and
leue me styll in this payne.' 'sartaynely,' quod Huon,
'that I promysed the was but to begyle the / for as by 28
me thou shalt not come out without he commaunde it
that set the here' / 'well, Huon,' quod cayme, 'knowe
for sertayne *that* in all thy lyfe thou were neuer better
counseyld, for yf thou haddest delyuerde me out in 32
contynente I ⁸wolde haue strangled the.' 'A, false

¹ Fol. cxix. col. 1. ² had well. ³ euill. ⁴ vnto.
⁵ and mocked. ⁶ wilt. ⁷ from. ⁸ Fol. cxix. col. 2.

fende,' quod Huon, 'yet thou hast no repentaunce of thyne yll¹ that thou hast done / I wyll go my waye, and thou shalt abyde here styll² for euer in³ payne & 4 tormente' / there with Huon departyd and toke the mall on⁴ his neke and enteryd in to the letyll waye that Cayme had shewyd⁵ hym.

Huon departed the waye Cain had shown him.

¶ Now we wyll leue spekyng of Huon and speke 8 of the admyrall of Perce and of his armye on⁴ the see. On⁴ the seconde day the tempest sessyd and the see⁶ calme and fayre / then the shyppes drew agayne togyder as it pleysede god, and aryuyd at a noble citye, 12 the whiche was as then in armanye called colanders, a great and a fayre citye / but after it was dystroyd by the noble duke ogyer y^e danoyse, he went in to ynde / the admyrall⁷ greatly compleyned for Huon 16 whom they had so lost / they though neuer to se hym more, and Barnarde his cosyn made suche sorowe that⁸ pyte it was to se hym ; y^e Admyrall and all his lordes wepte⁹ sore⁹ for Huon, they thought ne[u]er¹⁰ to se hym 20 agayne. But he that oure lorde Iesu chryste wyll haue sauyd can not peryse, for Huon the same tyme came downe the mountayne to come to⁵ the porte where as the vesseyll laye and the deuyll with in it / when Huon 24 sawe the vesseyll and the fende with in it, who was so howdeous and horryble to regarde¹¹ that it was maruayle to se; he semyde well to be the deuyll of hell, his hede was as great as an oxe hede / his eyne more 28 redder then .ii. brynyng¹² coles, his tethe greate and longe, and as rougt as a beyre, he caste fyre and smoke oute of his gorge lyke a forneyse, ¹³it was no meruayl though Huon doutyd hym / for when he saw 32 him so fowle, he had great fere / and so lent hymselfe

To return to the Admiral of Persia, the tempest ceased on the second day, when the ships arrived at a city called Colanders.

The admiral laments the loss of Huon greatly: he and Barnard fear never to see him again.

But at that very time Huon was coming down to the ship with the devil in it, of which Cain had warned him; the fiend was hideous to look upon.

Huon had great fear,

¹ euill. ² for euer *after* tormente. ³ great.
⁴ vpon. ⁵ vnto. ⁶ waxed. ⁷ and his companye.
⁸ and pitifully compleyned. ⁹ sore *before* wepte.
¹⁰ nener *in text*. ¹¹ beholde. ¹² burning.
¹³ Fol. cxix. buck, col. 1.

and made the sign of the cross. to a roke the better to beholde hym / ¹then he blyssed hym with the synge of the crosse, recommaundyng hymselfe to the saue garde of our lord ²Iesu chryst ³/ it fortunede so the same tyme that y^e enemy sawe hym ⁴not. 'A, ⁵very god,' ³quod Huon, 'I praye and requyre the humbly to conseyll me in what maner I shuld trust in this fowle fende who is fereful to beholde, I haue merueyll how I myght be aquentyd ⁸with hym, wheder I myght trust to be in the shyppe with hym / sertaynly I haue great dought that he wyll cast me in to the see or elles slee me on the other syde of, y^e se I wote not what to do / for I most be fayne to ¹²trust hym, or elles ⁴retourne in to the deserte, where as I shall dey ⁵for rage, ⁵and neuer to ⁶se wyfe nor chyld. But syn ⁷it is thus I shal aduenture myselfe with hym / and yf I may escape fro this aduenture, ¹⁶I shall go to the holy sepulture wher as our lorde Iesu chryst was quycke and dedde / and then I shal make warre vpon the Sarasyns' / then duke Huon toke on ⁸hym herte and corage, and with y^e mal on ⁸his neke he ²⁰marchyd forth fersly / then he callyd the enemy and sayd / 'O thou that kepest this wessell and passage, passe me in contynente ouer this see and sette me a londe on ⁸the other syde' / when the deuyll sawe ²⁴Huon with the mal on ⁸his neke and spekyng so fersly, he sayd, 'what arte thou, wheder wylt thou go, or what dost thou seke for here, or how art *thou* so bolde to come heder, thou shalt neuer go farther. But ²⁸I shal cast the in the see or strangell the, and then bere thy soule in to hell.'

⁹¶ when Huon hard hym, he began to trymble, but he was no thinge abasshyd / for yf he had fayntyng or ³²taryed to haue made answer he had incontynent be ¹⁰

The enemy did not perceive the sign. Huon entreats God to counsel him how to deal with the fiend;

If he remains in the ship Huon will surely be slain.

If Huon escapes from this aduenture, he will go to the Holy Sepulchre and make war on the Saracens.

Then Huon takes heart,

and calls on the fiend to give him passage over the sea.

The fiend refuses to let him go farther, and will certainly slay him and bear his soul to hell.

Huon, in no way abashed, says he is Cain;

¹ and. ²⁻³ god, but. ³⁻³ good Lord. ⁴ to.
⁵⁻⁵ with famine. ⁶ more. ⁷ seeing. ⁸ vpon.
⁹ Fol. cxix. back, col. 2. ¹⁰ beene.

dystroyed and slayne / but lyke a hardy knyght ful of
 great prowes, & ferme in the fayth of Iesu chryst, sayd /
 'hold thy pease, thou fole / for I am Cayme for whome
 4 thou hast taryed here so longe / I came ryght¹ now out
 of the rollynge tonne vpon the mountayne: hast the
 and passe me ouer this arme of the see / for I shall
 fynd nother man nor woman / that byleueth on² Iesu
 8 chryst but I shall sle hym to the entent that hell maye
 be fyllyd with theyr sowles' / when the fende harde
 Huon say so he had great ioye, and sayde / 'Cayme,
 whye haste thou made me tary here so longe as I haue
 12 done, I am ioyfull of thy comynge / for I coud neuer
 haue departyd out of this place without thou haddest
 bene delyuerid out of the tonne, therefore, Cayme, come
 on thy waye, enter into this shyppe³ / and I shal
 16 brynge the where as thou wylte be / gladly I wyll passe
 the ouer the see to the entente that thou shuldest sle
 chrysten men and Sarasyns / to haue theyr sowles into
 hell' / Then Huon enteryd into the shyppe com-
 20 maundyng⁴ hymselfe to our lorde Iesu chryste: and
 sayd, 'quyckly passe me ouer' / or⁵ Huon thought
 that he had bene gone but .ii. legys, he was ouer on the
 other syde, wherof Huon had great maruayle that he
 24 was so sone ouer, and thankyd our lorde god that he
 was out of that daunger: then he toke leue of the
 enemy, and sayd, 'farewell, I wyll retourne agayn
 shortely, within these thre dayes thou shalte here
 28 tydynges of me' / ⁶then the fende answeryd shortely
 and sayde, 'Cayme, go thy waye quyckely, & hast the
⁷to the entent that when thou retournyst into hell, thou
 shalte haue good chere of our maysters, who greatly
 32 desyreth thy comynge' / then Huon departyd quyckely /
 he thought euer the deuyll had folowed hym / ⁸then
 Huon⁸ went so longe that he aprochyd to a citey

the fiend must
 give him passage,
 and then will
 Cain slay all
 Christians.

The fiend joyfully
 invites Cain to
 enter the ship:

he will gladly
 take him over
 the sea.

Very quickly the
 ship arrives at
 the land on the
 other side of the
 sea,
 and Huon thanks
 God for his
 deliverance.
 He takes leave of
 the fiend,
 promising to
 return in three
 days.

Huon departed
 quickly, and
 approached the
 city of Colanders,

1 euen.

2 in.

3 presently.

4 recommending.

5 Before.

6 and.

7 Fol. cxx. col. 1.

8-8 and he.

and in the evening entered it with the mallet on his neck.

The Saracens marvelled to see him come alone on foot, and armed,

and demanded of him who he was.

He is Cain, come to destroy all who believe in the law of Jesus Christ.

That night the paynims feasted Huon and welcomed him joyfully,

because the day before the admiral of Persia had laid siege to the city.

callyd Colanders / glad was Huon when he had loste the syghte of the ¹spryghte¹ / and in the euynnyng he enteryd into the citey of colanders with the mall on² his necke / the paynims and Sarasyns³ within the ⁴ citey had great maruayle when he cam alone afote clene armyd into the citey / and amonge other there was one demaundid of hym what he was and why he wente so alone armyd / then Huon answeyrd hym ⁸ fersly to abasshe hym therwith, and sayd, 'I am Cayme who by myne ylnes slew Abell my brother, wherwith^h god was angry with me / but or⁴ it be longe tyme I shall take suche vengauce that as many men, ¹² or women, or chyltren, as I fynd byleuyng in the lawe of Iesu chryst, I shall dystroy them all in such wyse that the paynims and Sarasyns shal haue no dought for any yll⁵ that they shall do to⁶ them / for I ¹⁶ shall dystroye and sle them all, nother sparyng olde nor yong' / when the paynims harde that they were ⁷ioyfull / and that nyght saruyd well⁸ Huon and made hym great feste, bycause they trustyd that he shulde ²⁰ dystroye all chrystendome, and sayd amonge them selues that he was as then⁹ welcom thether bycause the citey was besegyrd the day before by the admyrall of Perce / thus Huon had great ioye & feaste made to⁶ ²⁴ hym ; and after supper he was broughte to¹⁰ a¹¹ ryche chambre wherin he laye and slept¹² tyll¹³ the nexte mornynge.

¶ ¹⁴How Huon¹⁵ had great ioye when he sawe ²⁸ the admyrall of Perce before Colanders where he foughte with the Sarasyns.

Ca. C. xxxiii.

¹⁻¹ euill Spirit. ² vppon. ³ that were. ⁴ before.
⁵ euill. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ right. ⁸ well after Huon.
⁹ as then after that. ¹⁰ into. ¹¹ faire and.
¹² soundly. ¹³ vntill. ¹⁴ Fol. cxx. col. 2.
¹⁵ of Bourdeaux.



After that y^e admyral of Perce had
 lefte Huon in the deserte of abylaunt
 & how he had a great storme on¹ y^e
 see, & at y^e2 last there shyppes
 assemblyd togyder & aryued at the
 porte before the ceyte of colanders,
 in the whiche cyete huon was³ in / who was ryght
 8 ioyous when he knewe that y^e admyrall was come
 theder to laye sege to the cete, and the admerall⁴ was
 sorowfull bycause they had lost huon, and speseyally
 barnard hys cosyn, for he though neuer to haue seen
 12 hym agayne. But he had shortly tydynges of hym as
 ye shal here after / when the admerall was aryuyd at
 y^e porte, they armyd them⁵ and ordeyned there men
 as well as they myght to assayll the ceyte of colanders.
 16 They issuyd out of there shypmys & came marchyng
 towards the ceyte, and made a great assault / ⁶then y^e
 paynmys⁷ armyd them on all sydes and went to the
 defences / then the chatelyne⁸ of y^e toune came to
 20 huon, and sayd, 'come on forth, cayme, it is tyme for
 you to shewe what ye can do / for here *with* out ar the²
 cristene men assaylynge the ceyte / I pray you spare
 them not,⁹ we haue great trust in you' / 'syrs,' quod
 24 huon, 'syn¹⁰ I am in this ceyte ye nedde not to fere
 any parson, anone ye shall se what I can do' / 'cayme,'
 quod the capetayne, 'I pray you go on before, and we
 shall folowe you' / 'well,' quod huon, 'with this mall
 28 I shall astone them all' / the paynymes had great ioy
 of his wordes, wenyng surely it had bene cayme /
 then huon¹¹ armyd hym / and he hadde a good horse
 brought to¹² hym, where vpon he mountyd / then he
 32 and the paynymys Issuyd out of the citey and found as
 then the admyrall of Perse and all his company redy

The admiral of Persia had arrived at the city of Colanders where Huon was,

although the admiral and Barnard were lamenting that never again would they see him.

The admiral orders his men to assault the city.

The paynims, fully armed, went to the defences,

and the captain calls on Huon to show what he can do.

Huon is to go before, and the rest will follow; Huon will destroy the enemy with his mallet.

Huon, armed and well mounted, went out of the city, and found the men of the Admiral of Persia ranged in order of battle.

¹ vpon. ² omitted. ³ now. ⁴ and his companie.

⁵ themselves. ⁶ and. ⁷ and Sarazins. ⁸ Captaine.

⁹ for. ¹⁰ seeing. ¹¹ Fol. cxx. back, col. 1. ¹² vnto.

Huon takes no part in the fight, because he had been so kindly welcomed in the city.

He thanks God that once again he beholds the admiral and Barnard, and hopes, with the Lord's aid, to see his wife and child.

rengyd¹ in batayle. And when he sawe *that* the Sarasyns were issuyd out, he set on² them fersly, and Huon, who was ioyfull of the aduenture that was fallen to him, he stepte out aparte to behold the batayle, and ⁴ wolde not medyll bycause he had bene so well reseuyd and feastyd in the citey by them of the towne. And he well parsayuid that the assaults were of the realme of Perce, and how the admyrall & his cosyn Barnard ⁸ were there / wherof he hadde suche ioye that he wepte for gladnes, and thankyd god of y^e good fortune that he had sent hym, and sayd : ³ 'O very god, ye ought³ greatly to be laudyd,⁴ for ye⁵ neuer fayle⁶ them at ¹² tyme of nede *that* serueth you⁷ / now I may well saye that with your grasyous ayde yet I shall ones⁸ se my wyfe & my chylde' / thus Huon sayd to himselfe beholdynge bothe batayles fyghtynge. 16

¶ Howe the citey of Colanders was taken by the admyrall of perce after he had wonne the batayle, and of the great ioye that was made to⁹ Huon when he was knowen by ²⁰ the admeral of Perse and by his cosyn Barnarde. Ca. C.xxxiiii.

The admiral set on his enemies; the slaughter on both sides was great. The men of the city were worated, and were forced to grant the victory to their enemies.



¹⁰ Hen the admyrall of Perce sawe and parseuyyd *that* they of the towne ²⁴ were issuyd out, he marched forthe his batayles and set on¹¹ his enemies / there was great slauter¹² on both partyes. But at the last they of the citey had the ²⁸ worse, for the chrysten men were of a greater nombre then the paynymys¹³ that were issuyd out, wherfore

¹ arriued. ² vpon. ³⁻³ Ah, good Lord, thou oughtest.
⁴ prayed. ⁵ thou. ⁶ faylest. ⁷ thee. ⁸ more.
⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ Fol. cxx. back, col. 2. ¹¹ vpon.
¹² made. ¹³ and Sarazins.

they were constraynyd to graunt the vyctory to theyr
 enemyes / the paynymes ¹tourned theyr backes¹ and
 fled towardes theyr citeye / & the admyrall and Barnarde
 4 with theyr company chasyd them ²and slew them,²
that it was pety to se it / fynally the admyrall opressyd
 them so sore, that he enteryd in to the citeye with
 them, and Barnarde & his company / and slewe and bet
 8 downe the Sarasyns, that maruayle it was to see / the
 blud that ran in³ the stretys / when the admyrall sawe
 how⁴ he had the vyctory / then he commaundyd to
 sece the² sleyng / and that all suche as wold byleue
 12 ⁵on god Iesu chryst,⁶ theyr lyues shuld be sauyd and
 theyr goodes / and so all such as wold not be christenid
 shuld be slayn incontynent and none sparyd, the
 which was done / many⁷ receyuyd chrystendome, and
 16 such⁸ as wold not were⁹ slayne / thus as this citeye was
 taken ; then Huon, who¹⁰ enterid into the citeye with
 the admyralles men, came to the palays, where as
 he sawe the admyrall and all the barons, & Barnarde
 20 his cosyn / Huon had styl his malle in¹¹ his necke /
¹²when he came into the hal he dyd¹³ of his helme and
 salutyd the admyrall & all the other that were there ;
 when the admyrall and his lordys sawe Huon, the¹⁴ ioye
 24 that they had no man¹⁵ can tel. ‘O ryght¹⁶ vertuous
 knyght,’ quod the admyrall, ‘your comynge doth so
 reioys me that I can not tell whether I dreme or not,
 ye ar moche bounde to¹⁷ god that he hathe geuen you
 28 y^o grace to saue you fro perell /, then the admyrall /
 enbracyd Huon ; and ye may well knowe that Barnarde,
 his cosyn, had great ioye, & so had all the other /
¹²then the admyrall sayd to¹⁷ Huon, ‘syr, I pray you
 32 shew me what adventures ye have had syn ye departyd

The paynyms fled to the city, pursued by the admiral and Barnard, who at length enter the city.

Seeing he had the victory, the admiral orders the slaughter to cease, and promises to spare all who will be baptized.

Many accepted Christianity, those who would not were slain, and thus was the city taken.

Huon comes to the palace, and salutes the admiral and all the others ; their great joy no man can describe.

The admiral cannot tell if it be a dream or not ;

he embraces Huon.

The admiral asks of Huon his adventures,

1-1 retired. 2-2 omitted. 3 through. 4 that.
 5 Fol. cxxi. col. 1. 6-6 in our Lorde God. 7 of them.
 8 as many. 9 receiue were all. 10 was. 11 vpon.
 12 and. 13 put. 14 great. 15 tongue.
 16 deere and. 17 vnto

fro vs' / then Huon shewyd them all as ye haue harde here before, and how he scapyd / when the admyrall and other vnderstode Huon they were neuer so¹ abasshyd in all theyr lyfe / of that he was so scapyd fro the 4 handys of the deuyll, and sayd how² he was moche bounde to³ god ; they were al glad⁴ of the comynge of Huon, and specyally Barnarde / then the capetayne of the citye, who had newly receyuyd chrystendome, came 8 to³ Huon, and sayd / 'syr, I requyre you⁵ desyre the admyrall to be my goode lorde⁶ / for I promyse⁷ faythefully to abyde here in this toun as his good and trew seruaunt, kepyng⁸ fermely the chrysten faythe, 12 the whiche I haue newly receyuyd' / when Huon saw the capetayne who had receyuid hym in to his house at his fyrste comynge in to the citye, he wente to³ the admyrall, and sayd / 'syr, I requyre you to geue the 16 keypyng of this citye to³ this noble man &⁹ to holde it as his owne, and to do homage to³ you for it' / 'syr,' quod the admyral, 'al *that* ye wyll I am agreeable vnto ; I graunt it hym for the loue of you' / Then Huon 20 thankyd the admyrall / the capetayne, seyng the great and ryche gyfte that the admyral had geuen³ hym for the loue of Huon, he had great maruayle of y^e great larges and courtesy that was done to³ hym by meanes 24 of Huon / ¹⁰then he knelyd downe before them and thankyd them, and dyd homage to³ the admyrall in the presence of all the lordys,¹¹ and promysid trewly to kype the citye agaynst all men that wold do any 28 domage therunto, nor neuer to yeld it vp to³ any parsonse but alonly to the admyrall or to³ hym *that* shall haue his comyssyon / thus¹² y^e citye of Colanders was taken.

32

which he relates, to their great wonder.

All, and especially Barnard, are glad of Huon's coming.

The captain of the city, who was newly converted, desires the admiral to be his good lord.

Huon asks the admiral to give the keeping of the city to this noble man.

The admiral grants this for love of Huon.

The captain thanked them, and did homage to the admiral.

The captain promises to guard the city against all men,

and thus was Colanders taken.

¹ amazed and. ² that. ³ vnto. ⁴ and right ioyfull.
⁵ to. ⁶ and Maister. ⁷ promised.
⁸ Fol. cxxi. col. 2. ⁹ he. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹ and barons.
¹² as yee haue heard.

¶ How the admyral of Perce and Huon of
 Burdeaux, and all theyr hoste, passyd by
 Antyoche and by Damas & came to the
 4 citey of Ierusalem to the holy sepulture,
 & was nobly receyuid be the kyng of
 Ierusalem / and how the Soudans messenger
 came and defied the admyrall of perce.

8 Ca. C. xxxv.

1 **W**hen the admyrall and Huon sawe this
 citey thus² wonne and brought vnder
 12 their obeysaunce, and had stablysshed
 there a newe lorde and capetayne, and
 set prouostis, and baylyffes, and other

officers / then they toke aduyse together and deter-
 mynyd, syn they were alonde, to send hacke agayne
 16 theyr nauy of shyppes into Perce / & they to go by
 londe to the citey of Ierusalem / for they had fro
 thence as they were but .x. ³iouneys³ vnto antyoche /
 and so to pas by that citey, and then to⁴ Damas,
 20 & then⁵ to Ierusalem, and there to do theyr offerynge ;
 and yf by aduenture they founde in theyr waye other
 kyngis or admyrallis that wolde let or trouble them in
 theyr passynge, they sayd⁶ they were of pusans suffycient
 24 to resyste agaynste them / and then they sayde how⁶ fro
 Ierusalem the admyrall myght retourne by lond into
 Perce / vnto the ryuer Eufrates / and there his nauy to
 mete hym, & so to conuey hym to⁴ his citey of Thauris /
 28 & Huon to retourne to⁴ Iaffe, and fro thence by water
 to retourne into fraunce: thus they concludyd to do /
 the which aduyce was laudyd⁷ of all the lordys⁸ of the
 hoste ; af⁹ter this conclusyon thus taken / the admyrall

The admiral and
 Huon determine
 to send back their
 ships to Persia,
 and to go by land
 to Jerusalem
 through Antioch
 and Damascus.

They themselves
 were of sufficient
 might to resist
 any kings or
 admirals who
 should trouble
 them in their
 way.

From Jerusalem
 the admiral could
 return by land to
 Persia ;
 his navy could
 meet him at the
 river Euphrates
 and convey him
 to Tauris,
 and Huon could
 return to France
 by water from
 Jaffa.

¹ Fol. cxxi. back, col. 1.

⁴ vnto. ⁶ so.

⁸ and Barons.

CHARL. ROM. VIII.

² omitted. ³⁻³ dayes iourney.

⁶ that. ⁷ and praised.

⁹ Fol. cxxi. back, col. 2.

The ships, after setting ashore the things necessary for the journey by land, are discharged,

and their masters commanded to await the admiral in the river Euphrates.

The admiral ordered that merchants and others should send after his host supplies of food, and gave this charge to the new admiral of Colanders.

Every man was to be ready in the morning to go where it pleased the admiral,

and with great noise the admiral, Huon, and all the host entered the fields on their way to Antioch;

they reached the city on a Monday,

commaundyd his shyppis to be dyschargyd of all thyngis necessary to be caried by londe / the whiche was done dylygently¹ / theyr horses were sette a londe, and theyr tentys and paulyons trussyd vpon mulys, & 4 Camelles, and Dromedaryes / the which caryag semyd a great host, there were so many together / the noyse and brute that they made semyd to be a newe worlde / ²when al the shyppis were dyschargyd, the patrouns 8 and maysters of the shyppis toke theyr leue of the admyrall, who commaundyd them expresly to abide for hym in the ryuer of Eufrates / and so they dyd.⁸ Nowe let vs leue spekyng of them and turne to⁴ ou[r]⁵ 12 fyrste⁶ mater. ¶ when these shyppis were departyd & euery thyng trussyd / then y^e admyral commaundyd thurgh⁷ all the countre that all marchantis and other able to do it shulde sende after his host brede, wyne, 16 and flesshe, and bysket to vytell his host / and the charge to se this done was geuyn to the newe admyrall of⁸ Colanders / the whiche he dyd dylygently / when the admyrall of Perce saw⁹ tyme to departe, he made it 20 to be cryed¹⁰ thurgh⁷ the city by a trompet¹¹ euery man to¹² make hym redy to depart y^e next mornyng to go whether it pleasid y^e admyral; this was done, so that¹³ an owre before the next day there was great 24 brute & noyse made in the remouynge; then y^e admyrall & Huon made them redy, & mountid on¹⁴ theyr horsis & issued out of the citey and enterid into the feldis / then the hole hoste toke y^e way towardis Antioche; 28 of theyr iourneys I make no rehersaile: they ¹⁵did¹⁵ so that they passyd by low Armanye & by the hye ¹⁶ermyne, and so on¹⁴ a mondaye they came before Antyoche / where as they logyd that nyghte a longe¹⁷ 32

¹ according to his commaundement. ² and.
³ accordingly. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ out in text. ⁶ former.
⁷ out. ⁸ the citey of. ⁹ his. ¹⁰ proclaimed.
¹¹ that. ¹² should. ¹³ at. ¹⁴ vpon.
¹⁵⁻¹⁶ road forth. ¹⁶ Fol. cxxii. col. 1. ¹⁷ by.

the ryuer¹ without that any parsonse of the citeye made any semblaunt to trouble or to let them / but they brought out of the citeye into y^e host brede, flesshe,² 4 and wyne, and othe[r]³ thyngys necessary for theyr meny⁴ / wherof the admyrall and Huon were ryght ioyous,⁵ and coude⁶ them great thanke / and for that courtouse the admyral wolde not suffer that any of his 8 hoste shulde do any hurte or damage to⁷ any parsonse of the citeye / then the nexte daye when they had dynyd, they toke theyr waye toward the citeye of Damas / and as they wente thetherwarde they toke sartayne townes 12 and castelles, and brought them vnder theyr obeyssaunce / and such as were taken parforce and wolde not byleue in our ⁸lorde god⁸ Iesu chryste incontynent⁹ were¹⁰ slayne.¹¹ Thus wastynge and dystroyenge the 16 countre in theyr waye, at laste they came before the citeye of Damas ; when they came thether they logyd about the citeye in the gardaines and subbarbes, and constraynyd them within the citeye to brynge them 20 vytayles / y^e whiche they dyd for dought of the dystroyenge of theyr gardayns and frutys there ; they laye one nyght, and the nexte daye they toke the way to Ierusalem, and had dyuers batayles by the waye / 24 but they were of so great a pusaunce that none coude reeyst¹² them ; so longe rode this chrysten host that they came and logyd before Napelous, and there lefte theyr hoste, then the next mornynge the admyrall and 28 Huon, and dyuers of the great lordys¹³ of Perce,¹⁴ departyd fro Napelous, to the nombre of foure thousande¹⁵ knyghtis to accompany¹⁶ them into the ci¹⁷tye of Ierusalem / thether they came about none, where

and encamped by the river, supplied with food by the men of the city.

In gratitude for this, no man harmed any person of the city.

The next day they went towards Damascus,

and on their way took possession of certain towns and castles.

At Damascus they lodged in the gardens and suburbs, and obliged those within the city to furnish supplies.

The next day they set out for Jerusalem, fighting many battles by the way, but none could resist their power. They next lodged before Nablous, and Huon, the admiral, and about 4000 of the great lords of Persia, reached Jerusalem at noon on the next day.

¹ side. ² flesshe after wyne. ³ othem in text.
⁴ companie. ⁵ ioyfull. ⁶ gaue. ⁷ vnto.
⁸⁻⁸ Sauour and Redeemer. ⁹ they. ¹⁰ all.
¹¹ and barons. ¹² and destroyed. ¹³ against.
¹⁴ accompanied with them. ¹⁵ valiant.
¹⁶ guard. ¹⁷ Fol. cxxii. col. 2.

They were joyfully received by the king, and the patriarch, and the arch-priest.

They made their offerings to the Holy Sepulchre,

and when they had accomplished their holy pilgrimage, all were splendidly feasted at the palace.

As they sat at dinner, a Saracen entered;

he was a messenger sent by the sultan to challenge the admiral to battle between Rame and Jaffa.

as they were receyuyd with great ioy of kyng Thybault and of the patryarke & arche pryst, who as then were in¹ Ierusalem / whom y^e emperour Constantyne had lefte there and orderyd for the keypyng of the citey; 4 when the admyrall of Perce, and duke Huon, & Barnarde, and other went and offeryd to the holy sepulture / then they went to the temple of Salamon and to² the holy temple of Symeon, where as they 8 made theyr offerynges / and the next ³day they dyd theyr other³ pylgremages to³ all the holy plases in the citey with great deuosyon and reuerence; when they had acomplysshyd theyr holey pylgremages, they 12 retournyd to the paleyse of the kyng of Ierusalem, where as they were greatly festyd and honorably receyuyd, of theyr seruyce I wyll make none acounte / but one thyng I dare well saye, that there was neuer 16 admyrall⁴ nor kyng better seruyd / and as they sate at dyner / there enteryd a sarasyn fowle and blacke, callyd Trampoyngnyfle, the whiche is as moch to say as Balaach. Then he sayd ahye before the table / 'the 20 same god that made the fymament, and that downe to vs he⁵ sent his holy profyt Mahomet to teche vs his holy law / he saue and kepe Saphadin y^e³ sowdan of Babylon and of Egypte, & may confound them *that* 24 be his enemyes / to the admyrall of Perce & of Mede; the sowdan sendethe the³ worde by me / that wro[n]gfully and without cause *thou* goest & dystroyest his countre & his people without⁵ geuyng hym any 28 knowlege why *thou* dost soo / & therefore by me he sendeth y^e word ³by me³ *that* am his secrete messenger, *that* he wyl assyngne to² y^e day of batayle, that is a⁶ thursday nexte comyng, ⁷betwene Rame and Iaffe / 32 wheras there is a playne countre / and he wyll⁸ thou

¹ the Citie of. ² vnto. ³⁻³ omitted.


⁴ Admyrall *after* kyng. ⁵ not. ⁶ vpon.

⁷ Fol. cxxii. back, col. 1. ⁸ that.

knowyst for sartayne that yf he take the, thou shalte be hangyd & flayne all quycke,¹ and all other that I se here settynge at this table.'

4 ¶ Of the answer that the admyral of Perce made to² the sowdans messanger / and of the report that he made to² his mayst[er].

Ca. C.XXXVI.

8  Hen the admyrall had well harde³ the sowdans messenger, he begane to smyle, and sayd ⁴to the messenger, 'go and say to⁴ thy mayster *that* I sette no

The admiral sets no value on the sultan's threats, and is ready to fight with him.

12 thyng by his thretenyng nor by no thyng that he can do, nor I wyll not leue for all his sayenge to distroye, and to take his townes and castelles, and to sle all them that wyll not byleue in Iesu Chryst,

16 and saye vnto hym fro me that I am not in mynd to recule⁵ backe / but by the ayde of god my creature, I shall go⁶ and mete with hym so that he shall not need to tary for me, and I shall fyght *with* hym my pusaunce

20 agaynst his to shewe ⁷hym how they can do *that* bileueth in Iesu chryst / go thy waye & saye to² thy mayster that he shall not fynde me fleynge for any fere *that* I haue of any man byleuyng in the false &

24 detestable faythe of mahomet.' Then the admyrall commaundyd to gyue to the messenger mete & drynke, and .xl. florencis; the messenger refusyd it not, but toke it, and thankyd the admyrall / & when he had

The admiral gives the messenger food and twelve florins;

28 dynyd he taryed not nyght nor day tyll⁸ he came to the citeye of Gasere, where as he founde the soudan & all his army, the whiche was a great nombre, for they were ⁹mo then⁹ a .C.M. men, and all they thretenyd the

he returned to Gaza, where was the sultan with 100,000 men.

¹ and neuer see faire day more. ² vnto.

³ and vnderstood. ⁴⁻⁴ Tell. ⁵ retire. ⁶ come.

⁷ Fol. cxxii. back, col. 2. ⁸ vntill. ⁹⁻⁹ omitted.

The sultan was astonished at the admiral's reply,

and swore he would kill him quickly.

He orders his host to march towards Escalon.

deth of y^e admyral of Perce / but it is a comune sayng that many thingis lackethe of folysshe thoughtis, & so dyd they / when y^e messenger was ariuyd at Gasere, he came before the soudan & made his reporte what 4
answere the admyral had made hym / & when the soudan¹ vnderstode the messenger, he had great maruayle of the great outrage *that* he thought to be in the admyral of Perce in *that* he durste abyde hym, & 8
sware by his lawe *that* yf he myght haue the vper hand of the admyral that he wolde flee hym quicke. Then he commaundyd his hoste to dysloge & to take the way towardis Escalonne / y^e whiche they dyn. 12

¶ How the admyrall of perce sent his men that laye at Napelous & causyd them to drawe² towardes Rames, and how they departyd fro Ierusalem; and how he wente 16 to fyght with his enemyes.

Capitulum .C.xxxvii.

³ After that Trampounnife, the messenger, was departyd fro Ierusalem 20 and retournyd to his mayster the sowdan / then the admyrall of Perce and Huon of Burdeaux, who were in the palays with the kyng of Ieru- 24
salem / thether they callyd all theyr counsayle; and when they were al assembelyd, the admyrall sayd / ' syrs, I pray you counsayle me what maner I shall vse myselfe to go and mete with the enemyes of the chrysten 28
faythe, the whiche are come agaynst vs, therfore I desyre eche⁴ of you to shew me your opynions what⁵ is best to be done.' Then Thybaulte, kyng of

The admiral asks the king of Jerusalem to counsel him how best to meet these enemies of the Christian faith.

¹ had well heard and. ² with drawe.

³ Fol. cxxiii. col. 1. ⁴ eueryone. ⁵ in this case.

Ierusalem, arose¹ and sayd, 'syr admyrall of Perce and Mede, we thynke ye shuld not abyde them here / but rather ye ought to departe and to go agaynst your
 4 enemyes / for yf ye abyde for them in this citey ye shal do great damage to this countre, for we haue truse with the Sowdan for .v. yerys, the which with our honour we can not breke / for yf we wolde haue made
 8 warre agaynst hym, we coude not a² resystid agaynst hym / and also we ar far of fro Fraunce to seke for socoure & ayde there.' Then³ the kyng spake no more. Then duke Huon of Burdeaux sayde / 'syr
 12 admyrall, y^e kynge of Ierusalem hathe shewyd you the trouthe / for yf we shuld abyde here, it shulde be alwayes to our reproche⁴ yf this holy citey shulde be lost, the which was wonne by two noble emperours
 16 as of Rome and of Grece, for the kynge that is here his honoure sauyd and the suertye of his countre, maye not breke the truse that he hath taken with the Sowdan of Babylon / and therefore myne aduyse it⁵ that as sone as
 20 we may commaunde your men that be at Na⁶pelous hastily to dysloge and to mete wth you at Rames / and then when ye haue somewhat refresshyd your hoste, then set forwarde towardys your enemyes / as the
 24 kynge of Ierusalem hathe sayd / for it were folly to gyue them leyser to come to far forward / fyrst let them know how the swordys and sperys of the Percyens and Medyens can stryke / who somtyme dyd maruayles
 28 in armes, wherfore it is reason that they folowe nowe theyr predecessours' / when Huon had fynysshyd his reason / the admyrall and all the⁷ lordys that were there laudyd,⁸ and helde *that* counsayle good that was
 32 purposyd by the kynge of Ierusalem and of Huon / and then they departyd and retournyd to theyr⁹

King Thybault advises them to go and meet the enemy.

since he has a five years' truce with the Sultan, and cannot in honour break it.

Huon advises that the men left at Nablous be commanded to break up their camp and meet them at Rames, and then altogether set forward against the enemy.

¹ vp. ² haue. ³ thus. ⁴ and shame. ⁵ is.

⁶ Fol. cxliiii. col. 2. ⁷ other. ⁸ praised.

⁹ Chambers and.

The admiral follows this counsel,

takes leave of the king of Jerusalem; Huon and Barnard do likewise.

On arriving at Rames they found the host ready lodged, and the next day the host sets out for Escalon, to the great joy of Huon.

The admiral arranged his army thus: the first division under Huon and Barnard; the second led by the marshal of Persia; and the third by the admiral himself.

He exhorts all to do their duty valiantly, and specially puts his hope in the strength and prowess of Huon.

logynges. Then the admyral commaundyd hastely his hoste to drawe towardes rames, where as he wolde tary for them / the whiche thyng was done dylygently / ¹the host restyd not tyll they came to ²Ramys, where ⁴ as they founde redy y^e admyralles herbygers, who had redy³ apoyntyd theyr logynges. Thus after that y^e almyrall had wryten to his marshalles of his hoste, he toke then⁴ his leue of the kyng of Ierusalem, and in 8 lyke wyse so dyd Huon and Barnarde his cosyn, without knowlegyng of hymselfe to the kyng of Ierusalem. Then they departyd fro y^e holy citey, and rode so longe that they came to the towne of Rames, whereas they 12 founde theyr host redy⁵ lodgyd. Then they restyd them there vnto⁶ the nexte daye / ¹then the admyrall commaundyd⁷ to dysloge and⁸ thake the waye towardys Escaloune. A goodlye syght it was to se the hoste 16 dysloge / Huon had therof great ioye / for he desyryd rather to slee the paynymes then to be in chaumbres with ladies & damosellis; ⁹when they were all in the feldys the admyrall ordayned his batayles / the fyrst 20 gydyd Huon of Burdeaux and Barnard his cosyn, he had with hym .xx. M. Persyans ferse and hardy / the seconde batayle led the marshal of Perce with .xx. M. men⁵ of good men of warre / the thryd batayle led the ²⁴ admyrall of Perse and of Mede, and with him .xxx. M. men⁵ of the most valyantys men of his hoste / ¹when euery thyng was ordayned as it aparteyned, he went and vysyted,⁷ exortynge them to do well theyr 28 deuoyre¹⁰ / then he came to³ Huon and sayde. ‘O, ryght¹¹ vertuous knyght, garnysshed and replete with all prowes / all my hope I put in your strenthe and vertue of your armis and body / therfore I desyre you 32

¹ and. ² vnto. ³ alreadie. ⁴ then *after* haste.

⁵ omitted. ⁶ vntill. ⁷ them.

⁸ to make them ready to. ⁹ Fol. cxxiii. back, col. 1.

¹⁰ and prayinge them to quit themselves valiantly.

¹¹ deare and.

this day to shew out your great vertues wherof¹ ye
 be² garnysshed / for specyally for y^e loue of you and
 for your bountye I haue taken & receyuyd the holy
 4 baptyem, wherof I laud³ our lord god of his grace *that*
 he hath done to⁴ me / therefore I desyre you this day
 to shewe to⁴ the sarasyns that your sworde is to be
 feryd' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'god gyue me grace to be
 8 such⁵ one as ye saye, and to parfourme in me that⁶
 lackethe / and, syr, I truste in me it shall not be let but
that this daye our enemyes shall haue no cause to praise
 nor to make⁷ bost; ⁸therefore, syr, let vs ryde forth
 12 suerly / for by the grace of god I haue hope *that* this
 daye we shall gyue⁹ our enemyes so moch a do that
 they shall haue scante¹⁰ ¹¹leyser to graunte⁴ vs the
 vycory' / and¹² as y^e admyrall and Huon was¹³ thus
 16 deusyng together, they sawe before them a fare of the
 ayre waxe thycke, and that the sonne lost his clerenes,
 wherof they had great maruayle, bycause they sawe¹⁴
 the sonne shyne so fayre & clere there; as they were
 20 ¹⁵anone they parseyuid that the darkenes rose by reason
 of the dust rysynge of the horses of theyr enemies, who
 were hastely comynge towards them to haue taken
 them in theyr logynge, wherby they came all out
 24 of order / trustynge all in theyr great nombre of men,
 for they were mo then a .C.M.; ferfull it was to se
 them comynge / so faste they rode, that the one hoste
 myght well se the other / when Huon had well parseyuid
 28 them and sawe theyr demenoure and dysorder,¹⁶ sayde
 to⁴ y^e admyrall / 'syr, well ye qught to prayse our
 lord ¹⁷Iesu chryst,¹⁷ for this day he shal brynge your
 enemyes into your handis to sle them at your pleasure;
 32 therefore, syr, I counsaile¹⁸ that incontynente ¹⁹in

Huon trusts the
 enemy shall have
 no cause to boast,
 and is anxious to
 ride forward.

As they talked,
 they saw the sun
 lose his clearness,
 and marvelled
 much;

It was by reason
 of the dust from
 the horses of their
 enemies,

who, trusting
 to their vast
 numbers, were
 advancing with-
 out any order.

¹ wherwith. ² are. ³ and praise. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ a.
⁶ which. ⁷ their. ⁸ and. ⁹ make. ¹⁰ scarce.
¹¹ time and. ¹² now. ¹³ were. ¹⁴ a little before.
¹⁵ Fol. cxxiii. back, col. 2. ¹⁶ hee. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ god.
¹⁸ you. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ we hasten and.

Huon advices
an immediate
attack upon the
enemy;

It is easy to
discomfort them
while they are in
such confusion.

The admiral gives
the word to
advance.

When the sultan
sees the host of
the Persians
advancing,

he desires to set
his armies in
order.

Then steps forth
the admiral of
Dorbrye, great
and horrible to
behold.

He rode a mare
with a horn in
her forehead.

The admiral
seemed rather a
fiend of hell,
and all made way
as he came to the
sultan.

The admiral
advices to meet
the enemy at
once,
he boasts he can
slay them all.

haste¹ sette vpon them to the entente that they shal
haue no¹ leysur to assemble together to brynge themsel-
fe in good order / yf we do thus it is no dought, but by
the grace of god, we shall shortly dyscomfyte them or² ⁴
they be assemblid.' 'Syr,' quod the admyrall, ' your
opynyon is good and resonable / let it be done as
ye haue deusyd' / then the admyrall commaundyd y^e
marshalles & capetayns of his hoste to marche forwarde ⁸
his batayles agaynste his enemyes / ³then trompetyts
and tabours⁴ began to sown, that it was maruayle to
here them / ³then they set on towardis theyr enemyes /
when the Sowdan and they of his hoste sawe the ¹²
Persyans comyng agaynst them redy renygd in batayle /
then⁵ he callyd to⁶ hym his kyngis and admyrallys,
who were .xv. in nombre, and said to⁶ them / 'syrs, it
were good that our men restyd styll a season, that we ¹⁶
myght order and reнге our batayles / for yonder we
maye se⁷ our enemyes comynge' / Then stepte forthe
the admyral of Dorbrye, who was orryble & great to
behold, ⁸he was .xv. fote of heyghte, and rode on⁹ a ²⁰
goodly splayed mare, the most fayrest and greatest that
euer was sene, she had a great horne in her forhede / yf
she were anythyng chafyd none durste aproche nere⁶
her but alonly her kepar / this admyral was fowle and ²⁴
great, he rather semyd a fende of hell then any humayne
creature / ³when he came to⁶ the Sowdan euery man
made hym way / then he said to⁶ the Soudan, 'syr, I
haue great maruaile of the that thou art so affrayed for ²⁸
a small nombre of men / who are comynge towardys
theyr dethe / syr, knowe for trouth that or² ye can
order your men in ¹⁰to good¹⁰ araye, I shall dyscomfyte
your enemyes and delyuer to⁶ you the admyrall of ³²

¹ time nor. ² before. ³ and.

⁴ Drummes, ⁵ omitted. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ well.

⁸ Fol. cxxiiii. col. 1. ⁹ vppon.


¹⁰⁻¹⁰ bataille.

Perce other quycke or dede' / when the Sowdan¹
 vnderstode the admyrall of Dorbrey, he sayd / 'syr
 admyrall, I put al the conducte of myne hoste into
 4 your handys / I haue great affyaunce in the vertue that
 is in you, and in the strenthe of your armys / the
 whiche ar greatly to be feryd' / then the Sowdan
 commaundyd all his host to set on² theyr enemyes, and
 8 sayd / 'syn³ the admyrall of Dorbrey is with me I fere
 no man of Perse nor⁴ Mede,' & so sporyd his horse
 without makyng of any good order.

The sultan
 therefore puts the
 conduct of his
 host into the
 hands of the
 admiral of
 Dorbrey.

¶ Now speke we of the great batayle that
 12 was in the playnes of Raines betwene the
 Sowdon of Babilon and the admyrall of
 Perce / the whiche was discomfited by
 the prowes of Huon of Burdeaux.

16 Ca. C.xxxviii.

5  Hen Huon, who led the fyrst batayle of
 the Perseans, beheld and sawe how
 the Sarasyns came on without any
 20 good ordre or conducte, he sownyd his
 trompettes, exortynge his men to do
 well,⁶ and commaunded his constables and marshalles to
 hast⁷ forward, and so dyd the Admyrall; ⁸his company
 24 and they ioyned nere one to a nother to the entente
 eche of them to socoure other; when Huon saw his
 enemyes approche, and that it was tyme to set on⁹ / he
 commaundyd his archers and crousbowes to shote,⁸ so
 28 they dyd, that by reasone of y^e shotynge of bothe
 perteyse it semyd lyke a clowde, so¹⁰ that there by and
 with¹¹ duste togyther it darked the lyght of y^e sonne;
⁸then Huon couchyd his spere and ranne at hym that

Seeing the
 Saracens advance
 in disorder,

Huon sounds his
 trumpets, and
 hastens forward,

Joined by the
 admiral's
 company.

Huon commands
 the archers and
 crosbowmen to
 shoot,
 and so they do
 till the light of
 the sun was made
 dark by their
 arrows.

¹ had well heard and. ² vpon. ³ seeing. ⁴ of.
⁵ Fcl. cxxxiiii. col. 2. ⁶ and valiantly. ⁷ march.
⁸ and. ⁹ vpon them. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ the.

Huon runs at the
sultan's standard-
bearer with his
spear,

throws him,

and kills so many
Saracens that
they doubt if
Huon be mortal.

He slew five kings
and two admirals;
and he and
Barnard are so
greatly feared
that the Saracens
hardly dare
approach him,

and so fierce is
the battle that its
like has not been
seen for 100 years.

When the sultan
saw his men so
slain, he curses
the time that he
put faith in the
admiral of
Dorbrey.

bare the soudans standder, who was comynge before all
the other to cause his compayne to folowe the faster ;
Huon gaue hym suche a stroke with his spere that
he persyde hym¹ thorowe the body so that he fell fro 4
his horse² with y^e standard, wherof the Sarasyns were
abasshyd and sore³ dyspleasyd / then they aprochyd to
reyse vp agayne theyr baner / but Huon and the
Perseans encounteryd them fersly so⁴ that many were 8
slayne on both parties / he that had sene Huon howe
he slewe and bet downe the Sarasyns and paynymes,⁵
wolde haue sayde that he was no mortall man / but
rather a man of the fayrey, for the great prowes and 12
maruayles that he dyd / for he causyd the paynyms,
whether they wolde or not, to recule backe and to
forsake the baner⁶ lyenge on⁶ the erth / for or⁷ he
departyd⁸ thense he slewe .v. kyngis & .ii. admyrallis / 16
Huon was so feryd that there was none so hardy⁹ durst
aproche nere to hym /¹⁰ also¹¹ Barnarde his cosyn¹¹ was
greatly to be feryd, and he euer folowed Huon as nere
as he coude / then there ioynyd y^e batayles of the 20
marshallys / and the admyrall of Perce set vpon the
sowdans batayle / then¹⁰ the batayle began so orryble
and great¹² that a .C. yerys before was¹³ sene none
suche ;¹⁴ valyantly dyd the admyrall of Perce and 24
suche as were in his company / when the Soudan sawe
his men so slayne, he was¹⁵ sorowfull,¹⁶ & sayd to¹⁷ the
admyrall of Dorbrey, 'I may well curse the daye
& tyme that I beleuyd you / for by you I haue lost my 28
baner, and I se my men slayne / for and¹⁸ I had
orderyd my batayle before / this myscheffe had not
happyd / nor that¹⁹ is aparant to fall /¹⁰ then the

¹ cleane. ² Fol. cxxiii. back, col. 1.

³ sore *before* abashed. ⁴ so *before* fersly.

⁵ Paynyms and Sarasyns. ⁶⁻⁶ that laye vpon. ⁷ before.

⁸ from. ⁹ that. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹⁻¹¹ his Cozen Barnard.

¹² great *before* horrible. ¹³ were. ¹⁴ so. ¹⁵ right.

¹⁶ and sore displeased. ¹⁷ vnto. ¹⁸ yf. ¹⁹ which.

Soudan couchyd his spere and strake therwith a knyght
 who was great mayster of the howse of Perce, in suche
 wyse that the sowdan ran hym clene thrughe, and so
 4 he seruyd the second, thyrde, and fourth, and when his
 spere was broken, he drewe out his sworde and dyd
 therwith great ¹damage; great cry and noyse was
 made when the batayles ioynyd / there myght a² bene
 8 sene many horse rynnynge abrode in the felde traylynge
 theyr brydellis after them, and theyr maysters lyeng in
 the felde a monge the horse fete, and³ orryble thyng
 it was to se and to here y^o playntys⁴ and cryes that the
 12 woundyd men made amonge y^o horse fete, hauyng
 no power to releue themselfe, but there dyed and
 fynysshed theyr dayes miserably; great cry made the
 sarasyns and Persyans that fought together, and
 16 specyally where as Huon fought & serchyd the rankes,
 and brake the great presys, he bet downe and con-
 foundyd all that came before hym / so that none
 durste abyde before hym / for by that tym he had
 20 slayne vi of the kyngys and .v. admyrallis, besyde
 many other / so *that* the noyse and crye cam to the
 herynge of the admyrall of Dorbrey, who dyd great
 dystruccyon amonge the Persyans, so that it was an
 24 orryble thyng to se⁵ / and when he harde how that
 there was a knyghte that dyd great damage,⁶ and had
 slayne dyuers kyngis and admyralles / he said to⁷ a
 paynyme who had broughte⁸ those⁹ newes / 'go thy
 28 waye and shewe me¹⁰ hym¹¹ that hathe done vs so great
 damage' / 'syr,' quod the paynym, 'I shall shewe¹² you
 hym¹⁰ / but I wyll aproche to hym no nerer then I am
 now; ye may se hym¹⁰ yonder how he fyghtethe / and
 32 makethe our men to recule¹³ backe,¹⁴ for there is none so

The sultan does
great damage,

and when the
armies are joined,
there is much
noyse,

and many perish
under the horses'
feet.

The admiral of
Dorbrey, hearing
of Huon's pro-
gress, desires to
meet him,

and a Saracen
points him out to
the admiral.

¹ Fol. cxxxiii. back, col. 2. ² haue. ³ a.

⁴ complaints. ⁵ and behold. ⁶ and hurt among them.

⁷ vnto. ⁸ vnto him. ⁹ tidings and. ¹⁰ omitted.

¹¹ vnto me. ¹² him vnto. ¹³ retire.

¹⁴ from hiu.

When the admiral beheld Huon, he spurs on his mare.

Huon does not refuse to meet him.

The admiral kills Huon's horse,

and lifts Huon by his armour on to the neck of his mare, and the admiral, carrying Huon in one hand, fights with the other.

Huon, fearing he is lost, asks God to have pity on his wife.

The admiral desires to present Huon to the sultan,

but the mare, running among the spears and men that lay on the ground, stumbles, and the giant falls.

hardy that dare aproche nere¹ hym / then the gyaunt behelde Huon and saw how he made the paynymes to recule² backe / then he stroke his mare with the³ sporys. ⁴Huon, who well parsayuyd⁵ hym comynge, ⁴feryd hym ; howbeit, he refusyd hym not / but cam with his sword in his hand⁶ ⁷agaynst ⁸then the paynym, then ⁸ the sarasyn, who bare a great hache in⁹ his necke, sawe Huon comynge / ⁴strake at hym, but as ⁸ god wold,¹⁰ he myst hym, for yf the stroke had lyght vpon hym he had bene slayne / the stroke lyght vpon the crope of his horse, so that the horse fell downe dede and Huon on⁹ his backe ; and he was not so sone ¹² releuyd but that the gyant toke hym by the harneys¹¹ & caste hym before his sadell as lyghtly as thoughe it¹² had bene but a fether, and so he helde and caryed Huon with y^e one hand and fought with the other ¹⁶ hande / when Huon felte hymselfe so taken he cryed¹³ vpon our lord god & prayed hym to haue petye¹⁴ of Esclaramond his wyfe, for he saw well his lyfe was determyned / the gyaunte who was¹⁵ ioyfull in that he ²⁰ had taken Huon who had done the sarasyns so moche damage / he desyryd to fynde the Sowdan to make hym a present of Huon / so that with the hast that he made he strake his mare, and she began to lepe and ²⁴ gaumbaulde, and began to rynne ; and, as fortune was, she ran amonge the broken sperys and dede men that lay on the ground so that she stombelyd, ¹⁶so that she¹⁶ knelyd to the erthe / and the gyante thought to ²⁸ haue releuyd her / but he coude not by reason of the weyghte that laye vpon her necke / ¹⁷so that¹⁷ she was

¹ vnto. ² retire. ³ his. ⁴ and.

⁵ and saw.

⁶ then. ⁷ Fol. cxxv. col. 1. ⁸⁻⁸ the Sarazin, and the.

⁹ vpon. ¹⁰ haue it. ¹¹ armour. ¹² he.

¹³ and called. ¹⁴ and compassion. ¹⁵ right.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ and thereby.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ and by the great swiftnease of her running.

- fayne to fal downe to the erthe / when Huon saw¹ that,
 he was lyght and quycke, and rose vp on his fete / and
 when he sawe the gyaunte fallen downe & began
 4 to releue / he hastyd hym and lyfte vp his sworde
 with bothe his handys and gaue the gyaunt such a
 stroke on² the helme that he claue his hede to the
 brayne so³ therwith he fel⁴ dede to the erthe / and
 8 then Huon sesyd² the mare by the rayne⁵ and lepte
 vp⁶ vp⁷ on her and had great ioy, and so had the
 Persyans / and the admyrall had great ioye, for it had
 bene shewyd hym how y^e gyaunt had taken Huon / and
 12 was scapyd and had slayne the gyaunte / when Huon
 felt hymselfe on² the stronge mare, he dasshyd in
 among the paynyms⁸ and met with the kyng of
 Olyfarne, whom he gaue suche a stroke that he claue
 16 his hede asonder; then he ran at the admyral of
 Orcaney, who was brother germayn to⁹ y^e sowdan, he
 gaue hym suche a stroke on the sholder that he strake
 of his arm, so that it fell⁴ to the erthe shyld and all;¹⁰
 20 when the admyrall felte hymselfe hurte,¹¹ wolde haue
 fled a waye / but Huon, syttyng on² the mare who
 was the swyftest¹² horse of¹² the world, ran after him,
 & when Huon had ouertaken y^e paynym,¹³ he gaue
 24 hym suche a stroke on² the hede that he claue it to his
 tethe, & so¹⁴ fell downe dede to the erthe / wherby the
 paynyms¹⁵ were so afrayed that after that they durst
 not assemble together; this was shewyd to y^e sowdan
 28 how the gyant was slayne and .v. other kyngis and
 admyralles, and his brother also slayne / and all by the
 handis of one knyght / and also he sawe his batayle
 sore broken and how they began to fle, wherfore he
 32 saw well that yf he taryed there longe he shuld be

Huon quickly
rises to his feet,

falls the giant
to the earth with
his sword,

and leaps on his
mare.

Great is the joy of
all the Persians.

On the strong
mare Huon
dashes in among
the paynims,
and meete and
kills the king of
Olyfarne.

He fells the
admiral of
Orcaney to the
ground.

As he tries to flee,
Huon overtakes
and kills him.

When the sultan
saw how many
bold knights were
slain by the hands
of one man, and
how his men
began to flee,
he feared he
would be either
slain or taken.

¹ and well perceiued. ² vpon. ³ that. ⁴ downe.
⁵ of the bridle. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ Fol. cxxv. col. 2.
⁸ and Sarazins. ⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ and.
¹¹ and wounded, he. ¹²⁻¹³ of pase in all. ¹³ Sarazin.
¹⁴ hee. ¹⁵ and Sarazins.

The king of Antiopheney, a near relative, counsels him to flee;

and the sultan, with twenty men, departs towards Acre, which belongs to the Saracens. Huon, mounted on the powerful mare, beats down his enemies, and none can abide his strokes.

The admiral wishes that Huon could always stay with him.

The admiral and Barnard follow Huon, but by reason of his good horse, he outstrips them. Huon's desire is to overtake the sultan.

other slayn or taken / then the kyng of Antiopheney, who was nere parent to y^e sowdan, came to¹ hym and sayd / 'syr, thynke² to saue thy lyfe, for yf thou tary longe here there is none can saue the / for yf the⁴ knyght that is with the admyrall of Perce hap to com hether thy lyfe is lost, therefore I counsaile the to departe and saue thy selfe / elles thou art but dede.' then the sowdan³ with a³ .xx. with hym departyd and⁸ toke the waye by the se syde to go towardys⁴ Acre, the whiche as then partaynyd to¹ y^e sarasyns, and Huon, who was mountyd on⁵ the pusaunt mare, betyng downe his enemyes so that none durste abyde his¹² strokys; and the admyrall of Perce folowyng him, regardyng that by y^e hye prowes of Huon his enemyes were confoundyd⁶, and sawe well howe⁷ there was no humayne body that had any powre to resyst agaynst¹⁶ hym⁸ without deth / then he sayd to¹ his lordys and to Barnarde / 'syr,' quod y^e admyral, 'yonder before you ye may se maruayles and thyngis incredible to be declaryd / for ye may se there is none so pusaunt⁹ that²⁰ can resyst agaynst my frende Huon /¹⁰ wolde to god⁷ he were vnmaryed / then he shulde neuer departe fro me, for I wolde then gyue hym my doughter;¹¹ I shall be so¹² sore dyspleasyd¹³ when he shall depart fro me' /²⁴ thus as ye haue herd the admyrall of Perce¹⁴ sayd to¹ his company, and so sleyng and betyng downe the¹⁵ sarasyns that fled / the admyrall and Barnard folowyd Huon, but by reason of his good hors he was so²⁸ far before them that they coude not ouertake hym, for he desyryd nothyng so moche as¹⁶ to ouertake the sowdan, who was fleyng as fast as he myght towardys the citey of Acre / when the admyral sawe that he³²

¹ vnto. ² how. ³⁻³ and about.

⁴ Fol. cxxv. back, col. 1. ⁵ vpon. ⁶ and discomfited.

⁷ that. ⁸ and escaped. ⁹ and strong. ¹⁰ I.

¹¹ in marriage. ¹² verie. ¹³ and discomfited.

¹⁴ and Media. ¹⁵ Paynims and. ¹⁶ he did.

coude not ouertake Huon, then he and Barnard enteryd
 in amonge the sarasyns who were fleynge away; the
 admyrall and Barnarde slewe & bet them downe that¹
 4 petye it was to se² / for with the blode of y^e dede
³sarasyns theyr swordys were all⁴ tayntyd red; yf I
 shuld shewe all the hye prowes⁵ that was⁶ done there
 that daye, it shuld⁶ be ouer longe to reherse / but
 8 I dare well saye that by the great prowes of Huon the
 batayle was vanquesshyd and clene dyscomfytyd / the
⁷Percyans chasyd the sarasyns and paynymys⁸ and
 slew an[d]⁹ ¹⁰bet them downe, the chase enduryd more
 12 then .iiii. legis / and the admyrall had great maruayle
 that he coude not ouertake nor here no¹¹ thyng of Huon /
 who chasyd styll the sowdan & folowid hym so longe
 that Huon found the sowdan¹² alone / for his men coude
 16 not folowe hym so fast for¹³ theyr horses wer so wery
 that they coude¹⁴ go no¹⁵ further / y^e sowdan rode on¹⁶
 a pusaunt¹⁷ horse / and Huon, who folowed hym on¹⁶
 the pusaunt mare, anone ouertoke hym / ¹⁸when he came
 20 nere to the sowdan / he sayd, ' O thou ¹⁹sowdan, great
 shame²⁰ thou maiest haue when thou fleest thus²¹ away
 all alone without¹¹ company, tourne thy shyld agaynst
 me or elles I shall sle the fleynge.' when the sowdan²²
 24 harde Huon he had great ²³ferre²³ / for he knew well it
 was he by whome he had²⁴ so great losse,²⁵ and by
 whome so¹⁵ many kyngis & admyrallis had bene slayn,
 and thought to hymselfe yf he tournyd²⁶ not²⁷ he
 28 shulde be slayne, wherfore he toke corage to hymselfe,
 seyng *that* Huon was alone as well as he, and also he

The admiral and
 Barnard slay the
 fleeing Saracens,

and, owing to the
 great prowess of
 Huon, the enemy
 is vanquished.

At last Huon
 comes up with the
 sultan;
 he is alone, his
 men being unable
 to keep up with
 him.

Huon challenges
 the sultan to
 fight.

The sultan takes
 courage, seeing
 Huon is alone
 also.

¹ great. ² and behold them. ³ Paynims and.
⁴ all *after* tayntyed. ⁵⁻⁶ and maruailous deedes that were.
⁶ would. ⁷ Fol. cxxv. back, col. 2.
⁸ Paynims *before* Sarasyns. ⁹ add *in text*. ¹⁰ did.
¹¹ any. ¹² all. ¹³ because. ¹⁴ not. ¹⁵ *omitted*.
¹⁶ vppon. ¹⁷ and a goodly. ¹⁸ and. ¹⁹ traitorous.
²⁰ and reproach. ²¹ thus *after* away. ²² had well.
²³⁻²⁵ maruaille and was greatly feared. ²⁴ received.
²⁵ and damage. ²⁶ returned. ²⁷ that.

They run fiercely together, and had not the sultan been rescued by his men, he would have perished.

Huon, sore abashed, will not flee, and deals his strokes among them;

great slaughter follows.

The sultan tells his men to slay Huon's mare, for then he will be overcome.

If they let Huon escape them, never more ought they to be seen in prince's court.

thought that it shulde not be longe or¹ he were
 socourid with some of his men that folowyd hym,
 & therefore, lyke a hardy knyght, he tournyd his horse
 hede towardis Huon / who fersly ran together² & gauē 4
 eche other great strokys, but it had bene³ but a⁴ small
 profyght⁵ to the sowdan and⁶ he had not bene rescued
 by his men, for⁶ Huon had elles⁴ slayne hym / but
 thether came a⁷.xl. knyghtys sarasyns, and they al ran 8
 at Huon / who was sore⁸ abasshyd when he saw hym
 selfe so enclosyd with his enemyes; how beit he myght
 haue sauēd hymselfe welynowe yf he had lyst to
 ha[ue] fled awaye / but for any fere of them he wolde 12
 not fle, but⁹ he delte suche strokys¹⁰ amonge them that
 there was none so hardy that durste aproche nere¹¹ hym,
 so sore they feryd hym / for he strake none with a full
 stroke but that his hede was clouen to the brayne¹² / 16
 when they sawe¹³ they coude not take nor sle hym,
 they were¹⁴ sorowful¹⁵; then the sowdan cryed and
 sayd, 'syrs, on⁴ vpon hym, great shame it is to¹¹ you all
 when by the body of one man ye are so put backe, and 20
 ye se wel¹⁸ he hathe no socoure / go and sle the mare
 that he rydethe on¹⁶ with sperys and dartis / then he
 shall be sone ouercome / and ye know well¹³ it is he
 by⁴ whome I haue sufferyd al my great¹⁷ damage / it is 24
 he that hathe slayne my men, and by hym I haue lost
 the batayle / yf he scape¹⁸ you ye ought neuer to be sene
 in any prynces court' / when the paynymys¹⁹ vnderstode
 theyr sowdan, they then²⁰ sore oppressyd Huon, who 28
 dyd²¹ merueyles²², but his pusaunce and vertu shulde²³

¹ before. ² one at another. ³ vnto the sowdan.
⁴ omitted. ⁵⁻⁵ if. ⁶ if they had not come when they did.

⁷ about. ⁸ dismayed and. ⁹ and.

¹⁰ Fol. cxxvi. col. 1. ¹¹ vnto.

¹² or to the teeth, so that they needed after no Surgeon.

¹³ that. ¹⁴ right. ¹⁵ and angrie. ¹⁶ vpon.

¹⁷ losse and. ¹⁸ from. ¹⁹ and Sarazins had well.

²⁰ then after they. ²¹ great. ²² in armes.

²³ but.

lytell auayle¹ hym yf he had not bene shortly² socoryd / and also by reason of the riche stonys and perles that were on³ hym / then the⁴ Sarasyns, who of 4 .xl. were lefte alyue but .xxviii., they saw well⁵ they could not haue⁶ Huon without fyrst⁷ they slewe the mare that he rode on⁸; therefore they cast at her dartys & iauelyns in suche wyse that fynally they slew her 8 vnder hym, wherof Huon was⁹ sorowful⁹, and was ¹⁰then in¹¹ fere of his lyfe / then he callyd vpon our lorde Iesu chryst to haue petye¹² of his sowle, for he saw *that* his lyfe was at an ende, & sayd, 'dere 16 lytell daughter Claryet.' After that Huon had made his prayer to¹⁵ our lorde ¹⁶god, he toke his shyld and his swordes in his hande afote, and he saw where there grewe a busshe, he went thether and set his backe 20 therto that the sarasyns¹⁷ shuld not come behynde hym,¹⁸ so he stode at a baye lyke a wylde bore baytyd with houndis, there was not so hardy a paynym¹⁹ that ourst assayle hym / they cast at hym sperys and dartis, 24 but they coude neuer hurte his flesshe, he coueryd hymselfe so well²⁰ with his shyld that nothyng coude touche²¹ hym. The sowdan, seyng that no thyng coude hurte hym / he sayd to his men, 'a, ye false¹⁸ 28 vntrewe cowardis, of mahomet be ye cursyd, when ye can not slee nor take one man alone' / ¹⁸then the sowdan approchyd¹⁵ Huon and gaue hym a great stroke

Huon did marvels, but his power would have availed little, had he not been succoured by the precious stones he had on him.

The Saracens cast their darts at Huon's mare, and finally slew her under him.

Huon, in fear of his life, calls on our Lord Jesus Christ to have pity on him,

and recommends his wife and little daughter Claryet into God's safe keeping.

Huon sets his back against a bush, and so stands at bay, but not a paynim can hurt his flesh.

Then the sultan himself approached Huon,

1 haue auailed. 2 aided &. 3 vpon.
 4 Paynims and. 5 that. 6 ouercome.
 7 first after mare. 8 right. 9 and sore displeased.
 10 as. 11 great. 12 and compassion. 13 pitie and.
 14 Esclermond. 15 vnto. 16 Fol. cxxvi. col. 2.
 17 and Paynims. 18 and. 19 or Sarazin.
 20 and so surely. 21 pierce.

and brake his shield into two pieces.

Looking behind him, the sultan perceives the admiral of Persia with 20,000 men coming to Huon's aid.

The sultan then decides to leave this enemy, who cannot be vanquished by force of arms. Near them was the sea, about a league from Jaffe, towards Surrey, a galley was there, sent from Escalon, and thither rode the sultan. Huon, right weary, could not have borne up so long save for the precious stones about him.

The sultan and his men enter the galley, and leave their horses on the sea shore.

so that he brake his shyld in two peces, wherof Huon then was in¹ fere of dethe / then the sowdan drew backe and lokyd behynde hym into the playnes of Rames wheras the great batayle had bene / and then he ⁴ sawe comynge the admyrall of Perce with .xx. thousande men, and they came to seke for Huon / ² when the sowdan sawe that socours were comynge to³ Huon / the whiche he knew by reason of the great baner ⁸ of Perce / then the sowdan sayd to³ his men / 'syrs, let vs leue this enemye, who by force of armys can not be⁴ vanquesshid / let vs saue our lyues, for yonder I se comynge the admyral of Perce / for² yf we tary longe ¹² here we ⁵are all dede⁵ & dystroyed.' Nere to³ them was y⁶ see syde about a lege fro Iaffe, the way towardis Surrey / there was redy a galey the which the sowdan had sent thether fro the citey of Escalounne / ¹⁶ the sowdan rode thether; and his men lefte and forsoke⁶ Huon, who was ryght wery and coud not longe haue enduryd, nor had not enduryd so longe but for the ⁷ vertue that was in the rych stones⁸ that ²⁰ were about hym. The sowdan to saue his lyfe he and his men dyd so moch that they came to the place where as the galey was / and enteryd in to it in² great haste¹⁰ for¹¹ sauegarde of theyr lyues, &¹² forsoke⁶ ²⁴ theyr horses on¹³ the see syde.

¶ How the admyral of Perce¹⁴ founz Huon, where as he hadde foughte with .xl. men sarasyns, and howe the sowdan fled to ²⁸ acre / and how the admyral of Perce¹⁴

¹ great. ² and. ³ vnto. ⁴ ouercome nor.
⁵⁻⁶ shalbe all slaine. ⁶ did forsake.
⁷ Fol. cxxvi. back, col. 1. ⁸ and pearles. ⁹ as.
¹⁰ as they could by any meanes. ¹¹ the. ¹² they.
¹³ vpon. ¹⁴ and Media.

besegid hym there; and of the¹ vysyon
that Huon had in a² nyght. Ca. C.xxxix.

- 4 **A**fter that the Sowdan was thus fled
and departyd, the admyrall of Perce³
came to the place where as Huon
was sore wery of traunayle, and saw⁴
8 abought hym ⁵laye dede⁵ a great
nombre of men slayne, wherof they
had⁶ maruayle; the admyrall, seyng Huon alone,
began⁷ to wepe for petye and for ioy that he had, and
sayd, 'O ryght noble⁸ knyght, moste excellente of all
12 other leuyng in this world, to whome in prowes and
valure none can compare⁹ / ye are the myrour of all
knyghtis / the temple of trouthe / the resort¹⁰ of wedowes
and of⁵ orphelyns / to whome god hathe geuyn so
16 great¹¹ grace that none can saye¹² the bountye *that* is
in you / by whome the honure of the Percyans and
Medyens this day is sauyd and kepte / I desyre
you ryght cordeally,¹³ my dere frynd,¹⁴ shewe me yf ye
20 haue any hurt wherby ye shulde be in any parell¹⁵ /
'syr,' quod Huon, 'it apartayneth¹⁶ not to¹⁷ me to
haue suche hye wordys or prayes to be geuen / I
oughte to haue none other prayse but as one of your
24 other knyghtis, wherof ye haue so many noble and
valyaunte that they can not be nouberyd / but, syr,
know for trouth, this grace and glory cometh of our
lord god, who hathe aydyd and socoryd you, reportyng
28 how¹⁸ ye haue in hym parfite affyaunce' / ¹⁹then the
admyrall alyghtyd, and came and embracyd Huon,
and after²⁰ came Barnarde, sore wepyng for petye²¹

The admiral of
Persia comes to
where Huon is,
sore weary;

the admiral
marvels at the
number of men
lying dead
around.

He weeps for joy
at seeing Huon,
and sings his
praises;

then the admiral
asks if Huon has
received any hurt.

Huon disclaims
any merit in
himself;

the success came
from God alone.

¹ strange. ² the. ³ and Media. ⁴ lying.
⁵⁻⁶ omitted. ⁶ great. ⁷ sore. ⁸ and valiant.
⁹ be compared. ¹⁰ comfort. ¹¹ vertue and.
¹² report. ¹³ hartely. ¹⁴ to. ¹⁵ or daunger.
¹⁶ Fol. cxxvi. back. col. 2. ¹⁷ vnto. ¹⁸ that.
¹⁹ and. ²⁰ him. ²¹ compassion.

Barnard, weeping for joy, kisses his cousin Huon, who ought to thank God and the Virgin for having thus saved him.

Huon is feasted by all the barons.

A horse is brought Huon, who mounts, and they come to the place where the battle had been fought.

The Persians were made rich by the booty.

The admiral and Huon leave the plains of Rames and lodge in the town, where they determine to remain three days to refresh themselves.

and¹ ioye that he had founde his cosyn Huon in sauegarde, and came and kyste hym² .x. tymes, and sayd / ' my ryght dere lorde,³ well ye⁴ ought to⁴ thanke⁵ god⁶ and the blessyd vyrgyn Mary his mother⁶ who⁴ hathe sauyd you fro so many parelous⁷ aduentures, wherof I thanke our lorde Iesu chryst that hathe geuen you such grace' / ⁸then he was of all the barons greatly festyd, and they had⁹ maruayle of the parelles and ⁸ aduenture that Huon had scapyd, wherfore they sayd they ought greatly to lawde¹⁰ god in that Huon was aryuyd in theyr countre, by whome they were reducyd¹¹ to¹¹ the fayth of Iesu chryst. Thus deuysyd the ¹² lordis¹² amonge themselfe / and behelde the dede men that lay about Huon / ⁸when they had bene there ¹³a season and sawe that y^e sowdan was fled, then a horse was brought to¹⁴ Huon, and he mountyd¹⁵ / then ¹⁶they departyd¹⁶ thence and came to¹⁴ y^e place wher as y^e batayle had bene, wheras they founde .lxxiiii. thousande men dede,¹⁷ besyde them that were slayne in the fleyng in y^e chase, wheras there were slayne ²⁰.xii.M.,¹⁸ besyde the presoners great goodes ¹⁹wan ther¹⁹ the Parsyans,²⁰ the whiche was departed²¹ to such as it apertained, so that they were all made ryche / then the admyrall²² and Huon departed fro the playns of Rames, ²⁴then they went and logyd in the towne / and in the mornynge they determynyd to tary there thre dayes to refresshe them / and on²⁴ the fourthe daye they departed because it was shewed them how²⁵ y^e sowdan ²⁸was departed fro Sayre and gone by see with a small

¹ for. ² more then. ³ and Maister. ⁴ may.

⁵ our lord. ⁶⁻⁶ for his goodnesse alwayes towards you.

⁷ and dangerous. ⁸ and. ⁹ al great. ¹⁰ and praise.

¹¹⁻¹¹ and brought to beleue in. ¹² and Barons. ¹³ for.

¹⁴ vnto. ¹⁵ vppon him and. ¹⁶ from.

¹⁷ vppon the earth. ¹⁸ men.

¹⁹⁻¹⁹ wan ther *after* Medians. ²⁰ and Medians.

²¹ and diuided. ²² Fol. cxxvii. col. 1. ²³ and.

²⁴ vpon. ²⁵ that.

companye to the cite of Acre. Then the admyrall
 and Huon drew theyr host towardis Napelous, and
 there taryed two dayes / ¹fro thence they wente to
 4 Iene and so to the cite of Nasareth, and visyted that
 holy place, whereas the sungell brought the salutacion
 angelyke to the vrygyn mary. Then fro thence they
 went to the castell of Iaffet and toke it with assaulte,
 8 and slewe all them that were within² excepte suche as
 wolde byleue in our lord Iesu chryst. ¹Then fro
 thence they went and logyd within halfe a lege of
 Acre, & there pyght³ vp theyr tentis and paulyons /
 12 and when they were all logyd / ther foragers ran
 abrode and brought to the hoste great plente of
 vytayles / oftentymys they skyrmysshed before the
 cete of acre / But they kowde neuer⁴ fynde man nor
 16 woman that durst issu out to do any dede of armes ;
 there they lay .viii. dayes and no man dyd them any
 domag, for the⁵ sarasyns wer so affrayed for the great
 los⁶ that they had sufferyde, that they durste not
 20 ster⁷ / And the sowdan, who was wⁱthin, wrote letters
 into al his countres, as wel in to Arrabey / Egypt /
 and⁸ Barbarye / & Europe, and⁹ to al¹⁰ hys frendys,
 that they wolde come and socoure hym in¹¹ his nede ;
 24 he sent dyuers messengers bothe by londe and by see,
 also he sent in to anthyoche & in to Damas, & to
 al other places where as he thought to haue any¹²
 socoure / and on¹³ a day two foragers of the admirallis
 28 ¹⁴went forthe on¹³ the see seid, and they found by the
 way trampoignifle the sowdans messenger / they toke
 and brought hym in ⁸to the hoste⁸ to the Admyrals
 tent, and ther he was examynyde and hys letters taken
 32 fro hym, the which were sene and red befor the

On the fourth day
 the admiral and
 Huon draw their
 host towards
 Nablous, where
 they tarry two
 days.
 Thence they go to
 Jene and the city
 of Nazareth.

They assaulted
 and took the
 castle of Jaffet.

They put up their
 tents and pavilions
 half a league from
 Acre; foragers
 brought food to
 the host.

They skirmish
 before the city,
 but the Saracens
 are too frightened
 to venture out for
 deeds of arms.

The sultan wrote
 letters to all his
 countries, as well
 as to Arabia,
 Egypt, Barbary
 and Europe, for
 aid.

Messengers are
 sent by land and
 sea, even to
 Antioch and
 Damascus.

Two foragers of
 the admiral find
 the sultan's
 messenger by the
 sea-side,
 and bring him to
 the admiral's
 tent.

¹ and. ² it. ³ pitcht. ⁴ neither. ⁵ paynims and.

⁶ and dammage. ⁷ nor make any semblance.

⁸ omitted. ⁹ as. ¹⁰ other. ¹¹ at. ¹² any ayd or.

¹³ vpon. ¹⁴ Fol. cxxvii. col. 2.

His letters are read, and thus the admiral and Huon learn the sultan's plans.

They hang the messenger on a gallows in sight of the sultan.

The admiral summons the barons to his tent, and bid them take counsel together as to the manner of continuing the war.

They are to give their answer on the morrow.

At night all go to rest except those who have charge of the watch.

Huon spent the night in the admiral's tent, and in his sleep a vision came to him. He thought he was at Mayence in person, and saw the Emperor of Germany take Esclaramonde out of prison, and

admyrall and huon / the whiche when they herde yt and the content therof, ther by they knew sumwhat of y^o sowdans counsaile / then they toke the messenger and brought hym before the citeye of Acre, and made there 4 a payre of galowes, and hangyd vp the messenger in¹ the syght of the sowdan and of them² within the citeye / the same day the admyrall assemblyd his³ barons in his tente, & sayde to⁴ them / 'syrs, all ye that be⁵ here assemblyd, knowe that I haue great desyre to knowe what thyng is⁶ to be done, and how we shall vse our selfe in this warre that we haue begonne / ye knowe wel the victory that, by the grace of ⁶god⁶ and¹² by the⁷ prowes of Huon, that⁸ we haue⁹ obtayned and haue here our enemye enclosyd, who can not fle without¹⁰ it be by the see / therfore I desyre you all that eche¹¹ of you wyll shewe your aduyse what is to¹⁶ be done / and that to morowe at¹² this owre¹³ to geue me an answer /, then al the lordis¹⁴ aduysyd together, and so among them was dyuers opinyons and reasons, howbeit they departyd eueryman to his¹⁵ owne logyng, ²⁰ because they had daye of answer; ¹⁶ the nexte day folowyng / thus y^o daye passyd without any thyng done, and at nyght euery man wente to reste / excepte suche as had the charge of the wache that nyght / who ²⁴ went not to bed, as is the¹⁷ custume of the warre. Huon taryed all that nyghte in the admyralles tente, and aboughte the owre of mydnyght Huon dremid in his slepe, & thought ¹⁸that he was at Maience in ²⁸ presone, and saw the emperoure of Almayne take Esclaramonde his wyfe out of presone / and she semyd to⁴ hym pale and lene and yl coloryd / and how she was in her kyrtyl, and her heyr hangyng aboute her ³²

¹ within.

² there.

³ Lordes and.

⁴ vnto.

⁵ best.

⁶⁻⁶ our Lord Iesus Christ.

⁷ hye.

⁸ omitted.

⁹ now.

¹⁰ except.

¹¹ euerie one.

¹² about.

¹³ time.

¹⁴ and Barons.

¹⁵ their.

¹⁶ and.

¹⁷ order and.

¹⁸ Fol. cxxvii. back, col. 1.

- sholders / and .x. men ledynge her out of the towne to
 be brente¹ / and he thought² she made petuous com-
 playntes for Huon her husbaynd and for claryet her
 4 daughter. ³Also he thought he saw passe through y^e
 stretes .ccc. gentyll men who had bene takyn at
 Burdeaux when the cytye was takyn / and he thought²
 he sawe dyuers galowes made, and how the Emperoure
 8 had sworne to hange them all / so *that* he thought he
 was⁴ sorowful⁵ to se that company ledde to⁶ the⁷
 deth warde⁸ / for in his slepe he thought verely all this
 had bene trewe, and that he coude not helpe it. Thus
 12 as Huon was in this payne slepyng, he gaue an horryble
 crye / so *that* y^e Admyrall and Barnarde awoke ther-
 with in hast / thynkyng it had bene theyr enemyes²
 had enteryd to haue slayne them / then they herde
 16 Huon say, 'O good lord, I pray the⁹ by thy pyte and
 grace to socoure & comforte my good wyfe / for sertenly
 I can not tell, but my harte luggyth¹⁰ / that the false
 emperoure wyll cause her to dye and all y^e other
 20 presoners.' Then the Admyrall and Barnard rose
 vp and came to¹¹ Huon, and had well harde his
 complayntes, and sayd / 'A, syr, dyscomfort not
 your self nor gyue no fayth nor credence to dremes /
 24 for the emperoure wyll neuer do suche a velany as to
 put to deth so noble a lady / it is nothyng but your
 thought and remembrance that ye haue dayly, the
 whiche in the nyght representyth before you slepyng^e /
 28 'A, syr,' *quod* Huon, 'I can not beleue¹² but that my
 wyfe hath sumwhat to do / Alas, to longe¹³ I tary¹³
 here / but yf your warre were at an ende I wolde
 gladly go my way / for I shall neuer haue ioye at my
 32 harte tyll¹⁴ I maye knowe the trought.' Then they

cause ten of his
 men to lead her
 out of the town
 to be burnt;

and a gallows
 prepared on which
 to hang 300
 gentlemen taken
 at Bordeaux.

Huon awoke with
 a great cry;
 the admiral and
 Barnard wake
 hastily, deeming
 the enemy had
 come.

They hear Huon
 pray to the Lord
 to succour his
 wife.

When they hear
 the cause of
 Huon's distress,
 they assure him
 that it is but a
 dream, to which
 no credence must
 be given.

Huon is troubled,
 and were the war
 only at an end
 gladly would he
 go his way.

¹ burnt. ² that. ³ And. ⁴ right.

⁵ and sore greeued in his mind. ⁶ towards. ⁷ their.

⁸ omitted. ⁹ euen for thy Sons sake and. ¹⁰ thinketh.

¹¹ vnto. ¹² Fol. cxxvii. back, col. 2.

¹³⁻¹⁵ haue I taried. ¹⁴ vntill.

The council
assembles in the
admiral's tent.

The marshal
announces they
will say not a
word until Huon
shall have given
his opinion.

The admiral begs
Huon to show
what he thinks
it best to be done.

arose, for it was day,¹ and then eueryman arose / and
the oure come that all the² counseyll assembled³
together in the admyralles tente / And euery man sat
downe on⁴ benches well coueryd with cloth of golde⁴
and other ryche clothes of sylke /⁵ when they were
there assembled / the marshall rose vp,⁶ he was a ryght
sage and a⁷ wyse man, and sayd / 'Syr Admyrall, we
haue comonyd togyther and debatyde y⁸ mater at lenth,⁸
and we haue had dyuers opynyones, but we be all
concludyd to say nothyng tyll⁸ that Huon, who is
therby you, hath fyrst⁹ shewyd his opynyone what he
thynkethe¹⁰ to be done / for it is¹¹ resone that he be¹²
harde fyrst¹² to speke' /⁵ then the Admyrall beheld
Huon, and sayd / 'my dere frende, ye here what my
lordes¹³ hath concludyd togyther / and how they all
resteth vpon you that fyrst ye shall say your aduyce,¹⁶
wherfore I requyre you for the loue of¹⁴ god /¹⁵ shew
me what I ought to do as ye thinke best.'

¶ How Huon of Burdeaux counseylyd y⁸
admyrall of Perce to reyse vp his sege²⁰
before acre, for dyuers resones, and to
retorne in to Perce. Ca. C.xl.



Huon gives his
advice.

¶ Hen Huon had well vnderstond the
Admyrall, and that he had¹⁶ hard the²⁴
lordes¹³ that theyr opynyons was that
they wolde not speke till⁸ he had
fyrst shewyd his¹⁷ opynyon, then he
sayd¹⁸ to¹⁹ the Admyrall, 'syr, yf it be youre plesure²⁸
I owght not to be gyn fyrst, this reason for ye haue

¹ and the appointed hour was come *before* & euerie man.
² Lords of the. ³ should assemble. ⁴ vpon. ⁵ and.
⁶ for. ⁷ omitted. ⁸ vntill. ⁹ first *after* shewed.
¹⁰ is best. ¹¹ good. ¹² first *after* to speke.
¹³ and Barons. ¹⁴ our Lord. ¹⁵ to. ¹⁶ well.
¹⁷ aduise and. ¹⁸ Fol. cxxviii. col. 1. ¹⁹ vnto.

many lordis can better speke in this matter then I, but syne¹ it is youre plesure and theres, I shall shewe² yow shortly myn aduys, and as I wold do if I where
 4 as yowe be ;³ then⁴ Huon of Burdeaux sayd / ' syr admyrall of perce & of mede, it is a longe season sin ye departed fro youre contre londys and syngnoryes, and not without great trauaile and great⁵ payne, and that
 8 god haue done you that grace that with⁶ an armeri⁶ al ye haue passed, & taken castels, & haue slayne and dystroyed the cou[n]treys & mep of the sowdans of babylone and⁷ egyp / and haue bene at the holy cetye
 12 of Ierusalem, the whiche is in the myddes of his countre / and after that the sowdan hath fought with you with people innumerable, whom ye haue dyscounfyted, and slayn⁸ all they that were with hym.
 16 And also god hath gyuen you grace that ye ar sauely skapyd with lytyll losse⁹ / and none ye haue in this cytye before vs besegyde and inclosyd in y^e sowdan your enemy / who nyght and day doth emagen how he
 20 may recouer his losse, as ye may well knowe by his letters sent by his messyngers / y^e whiche ye haue sene and red the contynue¹⁰ of y^e same. And, syr, ye may well thynke that he hathe sente dyuers other
 24 messengyras as well by londe as by see to his frendys to seke for socoure and¹¹ ayeyd, in the entencion to be reuengyde of you, wherfore I counseyll you, syn¹² ye be so farre of fro your countre, as shortly as ye can
 28 to departe fro thence¹³ and to reyse your sege and retorne in to your owne countre / your men be wery and sore trauelyd / ¹⁴the Sowdan is in his owne countre / and¹⁵ he wyll alwayes assemble ¹⁶great nombre of
 32 peopell / and alwayes he may haue socoure and vyteyllles,

Since they have been so long away from Persia, and

have so far been successful, and

have escaped with little loss,

they had better raise the siege of Acre, and return into their own country as quickly as possible.

The sultan can command succour both of men and food,

¹ seeing that. ² vnto. ³ are. ⁴ Duke. ⁵ much.
⁶⁻⁸ one armie. ⁷ of. ⁸ almost. ⁹ or dammage.
¹⁰ contents. ¹¹ for. ¹² seeing. ¹³ hence.
¹⁴ and. ¹⁵ omitted. ¹⁶ Fol. cxxviii. col. 2.

whereas the
Persians can have
neither.

They can return
in the spring
if they wish.

As long as they
stay in these
parts, Huon will
not forsake them,

though he greatly
desires to return
to France.

the whiche ye can not do nor haue / for here with¹
great payne ye shall ²fynde any² vyteyll / for the
countre is sore fowlyd and opressyd / & ye can haue no
socoure fro any parte, wherfore of necessyte ye most ⁴
departe / the whiche ye may do without any losse.
For ye may passe y^e ryuer of eufrates or³ his pepill be
assembled to do you any damage / & when the
sprynge⁴ tyme of y^e yere cometh, yf it be your ⁸
plesure, ye may retorne with such nombre of men as ye
shall thynke best / for ye are of pusaunce so to do.
Syr, this that I say is for nothyng that I wold forsak or
leue you as longe as ye be in this parts; I had rather ¹²
dye / though it be so as ye well knowe / that the
thyng that I ought most to desyre is to departe to go
in to ⁵france,⁵ where as I haue left my wyffe, my
doughter, and my countre in great pouerte and danger ¹⁶
of deth and dystruccyon.'

¶ How the admyrall of Perce agreed well to
the counseyll of Huon of Burdeaux, and
pryessed his saynge; & of y^e fayr offer that ²⁰
y^e admyrall of Perce mad to⁶ Huon of
Burdeaux. Ca. C.xli.



Hen the Admyrall had⁷ hard⁶ Huon, he
belhelde his lordes, and all wepyng, ²⁴
sayd, 'syr, all ye that be my men, ye
haue⁹ well herd Duke Huon, who hath
shewyd his aduyce,¹⁰ and therefore I
²¹commaunde and desyre you all to shew me what ye
thinke by the sayenge of Huon' / then they all with
one voyce sayd / 'syr, a more noble nor¹² profytable

¹ without. ²⁻³ haue no. ³ before. ⁴ spring.

⁵⁻⁶ my owne countre. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ well.

⁸ and vnderstood. ⁹ all. ¹⁰ and opinion.

¹¹ Fol. cxviii. back, col. 1. ¹² or.

counsayle can¹ no mortal man geue for your welth and
 suertye of your parsons and of vs all / there was neuer
 man spake better, & therefore all we pray and counsayle
 4 you to vpholde the counseyle that he hathe geuen
 you' / then the admyrall, seyng² al his lordis agreed
 to the counseyle that Huon had geuyn hym / he sayd /
 'syr, as for me, syn ye are agreed therto, I am redy to
 8 byleue all good counsayle / there was neuer a heygher
 counsayle geuyn to³ any kyng or prynce' / 'when the
 admyrall had sayd how² he wolde byleue the counsayle
 that Huon had geuen hym / he callyd then Huon to³
 12 hym, and sayde / 'syr Duke of Burdeaux, the pyller /
 shyld, and sworde of the chrysten faythe, and the
 defender of the Perseans / and Medyons / we⁵ knowe
 well that by ryght I oughte not to kepe you / for⁶
 16 reason is⁷ that ye retourne thether where as ye were
 borne, and to ayde & comferte your trew spowse and
 wyfe / for whom ye be in great anoyauce,⁸ and not
 without cause / and therefore for y^e goodnes and honoure
 20 that we haue founde in you, we offer to go with you in
 our owne proper parsons with al our armye, and mo to
 the nombre inestymable, and to ayde to reuenge you of
 the false emperoure of almayne who hathe done you so
 24 moche yll and damage, or elles yf ye wyll retourne to³
 vs in to Perce at this nexte spryngyng⁹ tyme we shall
 delyuer³ you suche pusauce, and my selfe to go with
 them in to almayne, so that y^e valeyas and mountaynes
 28 shall be full of people / and we shall do so moche by
 the grace of our lorde god that we shall de¹⁰liuer the
 emperour in to your handis to do with hym¹¹ your
 pleasure.' when Huon¹² vnderstode the admyrall¹³ who
 32 offeryd him so great an offer,¹⁴ sayde / 'Syr, of the

The lords of
 Persia pray the
 admiral to follow
 Huon's advice;

the admiral
 agrees to do so.

The admiral
 offers, accom-
 panied by his
 whole army, to
 go with Huon,
 and aid him to
 revenge himself
 on the Emperor.

¹ can *after* man. ² that. ³ vnto. ⁴ and. ⁵ I.

⁶ it is good. ⁷ omitted. ⁸ discomfort. ⁹ spring.

¹⁰ Fol. cxxviii. back, col. 2. ¹¹ at.

¹² had well heard and. ¹³ Persia and of Media.

¹⁴ hee.

Huon thanks the
admiral for his
great offer,

but first intends
to try peaceful
means with the
Emperor.

If he is un-
successful, then
Huon will ask the
admiral's aid and
that of all his
friends.

curtoyse that ye offer me I thanke you with ¹a good ¹harte: god forbede that I shulde be the causer of dystruccyon of chrysten blode / fyrst I wyll assaye with all swetenes and reasonable offers as moche as in ⁴me is possyble to do to present & offer² the emperour / to y^e entent that I myght³ ateyne to his loue and to haue pease, the whych thyng I ⁴desyre, and wyll⁴ do with all my harte; And yf it be so that he wyll not ⁸inclyne nother to ryghte nor resone, then H.⁵ will come to you and to² all other that I knowe or thynke⁶ to be⁷ my frendis, and then desyre you al of⁸ ayed & comferte.⁹

12

¶ howe¹⁰ huon¹¹ toke¹² leue of the admyral and of¹³ the¹⁴ lordys of Perce & wente and toke shyppeinge at the porte of thesayre, and how he ariuyd at marsell without ¹⁶fyndyng of any strange aduezure.

Ca. C.xlii.



If there is need,
the admiral will
stand by the offer
he has made.

¶ Hen the admyrall¹⁶ vnderstode Huon, he sayde, 'my ryght dere¹⁷ frend, I ²⁰can¹⁸ you¹⁹ thanke of that you saye / ye maye be sure²⁰ yf ye haue any nede & that ye can make none apoyntment with y^e emperoure, the offers *that* I haue made² ²⁴you, I shall vpholde and socoure you in myne owne parsones' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I²¹ thanke you, for I am moche bounde to² you, wherfore I am yours' / then the admyrall toke Huon by the hande, & sayde, 'syr, ²⁸I se well we two muste departe, the which greueth me

1-1 all my. ² vnto. ³ may. 4-4 will and desire to.

⁵ Huon. ⁶ thinke *before* knowe. ⁷ of.

⁸ of your courtesies for. ⁹ succour. ¹⁰ Duke.

¹¹ of Bourdeaux. ¹² his. ¹³ all. ¹⁴ other.

¹⁵ Fol. cxxix. col. l. ¹⁶ had well. ¹⁷ and wel-beloued.

¹⁸ giue. ¹⁹ good. ²⁰ that. ²¹ most hartely.

sore / but synne it is thus I must suffer it, ¹I knowe
 well² ye thynke longe tyll³ ye be gone / the seruys
 that ye haue done⁴ me, I can not recompence it / for our
 4 two wayes ar contrary, yours is by water and myne is
 by lond; And, therefore, at y^e porte of the sare⁵ there is
 a ryche shyp / the whiche was wonne vpon the sowdans
 men, I gyue her to you, enter into her at your pleasure,
 8 and therwith I gyue you .x. somers charygd with
 golde, & other charygd with clothes of golde and
 sylke / and ye maye take with you all the Frenshe
 men that be in this host, such as folowed vs when we
 12 departyd fro Ierusalem / let them go with you in to
 theyr countre / and after that ye be⁶ departyd I shall
 rayse my sego and retourne into Perce' / 'syr,' quod
 Huon, 'of your gyfte and of your courtoysy I thanke
 16 you.' Then the admyrall sente these somers to the
 porte of the sare,⁵ and there al that⁷ rychesse was⁸ put
 into the shyppe that was⁸ geuen⁴ Huon / ¹then he
 delyueryd vnto Huon to serue hym al the pylgremes
 20 that were there of Fraunce; and the admyrall gauē
 them ryche gyftys, wherof they were⁹ ioyful¹ of the
 fayre aduenture that was fallen to⁴ them / for they
 hadde ¹⁰more moneye at theyr departynge then they
 24 hadde when they came out of theyr ow[n]e countre,
 wherof they thankyd the admyrall / and promysyd to
 do trew seruyce to⁴ Huon, and not to leue hym tyll³
 he had achewed all his busynes / Then Huon made
 28 hym redy, & toke with hym the great Gryffons fote /
¹the admyrall, & his constables and marshallys, and
 the other lordis of the hoste, lepte on¹¹ theyr horses and
 conuaied huon and his companye to the porte of the
 32 sare,⁵ where as his shyppe was redy furnysshyd with
 vyteyle and other thyngys parteynyng therto / then

Huon will find at
 the port a rich
 ship won from the
 sultan;
 this the admiral
 gives to Huon,

and he may take
 with him all the
 Frenchmen that
 are in the host.

Huon thanks the
 admiral for his
 gift.

The admiral gives
 the pilgrims of
 France rich gifts;

they thank the
 admiral,
 and promise not
 to leave Huon till
 he has accom-
 plished his desire.
 Huon makes
 ready to depart,
 taking with him
 the griffin's foot.

All the Persians
 accompany Huon
 to the port,

¹ and. ² that. ³ vntill. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ Thesayre.

⁶ are. ⁷ the. ⁸ were. ⁹ right.

¹⁰ Fol. cxxix, col. 2. ¹¹ vpon.

and there he takes leave of the admiral and the other barons.

Huon,¹ wepyng, toke² leue of the admyrall and of the other³ barouns / for whose departyng they were⁴ sorowfull, and so retournyd to theyr hoste before Acre / deuysynge of the great valure, prowes, and courtoysye ⁴ that was in Huon. Then the admyrall commaundyd preuely the nexte mornyng to dysloge and to⁵ departe / the whiche was done.

The admiral left Acre, found his feet in the river Euphrates, and sailed into his owne country.

Huon and Barnard, when aboard their ship, weighed anchor, and sailed without danger to Marselles.

Then Huon gave the ship to the master who had brought them thither.

They rest at Marselles for eight days.

¶ Thus the admyrall departid fro the cite of ⁸ Acre and toke his waye towardis Perce / and he founde on⁶ the ryuer of Eufrates all his shypis, and so with them he sayld into his owne countre / And Huon and barnarde his cosyn, and dyuers⁷ knyghtis and squyers ¹² of Fraunce, ⁸ when they were in theyr shyppe / they wayed vp theyr ancens and made sayle. Then they passyd the Goulfe of Sathale / and then passyd by the rodes and by sardayne / and so longe they saylid ¹⁶ without daunger or let that they came and aryuyd at the porte of Marseyle / ⁸ there they ⁹ toke londe⁹ with great ioye / and dischargyd the shyp, and then he¹⁰ gaued the shyp to the patron *that* had brought them ²⁰ thether, wherby y^e patron was rych & thankyd Huon / when they were al a lond, they ¹¹ conueyed all theyr baggage in to theyr lodgyng in the towne, wheras they restyd an¹² .viii. dayes. Nowe let vs leue to speke of ²⁴ Huon and of them that were with hym, and let vs speke of the abbot of cluney.

¶ How the¹³ abbot of Cluney layde a busshe-ment of men of armys betwene Mascon ²⁸ and Tournous agaynste the Emperours¹⁴ nephue, who was there slayne, and all his men / wherof the emperoure was so sore

¹ all. ² his. ³ Lords and. ⁴ right. ⁵ omitted.
⁶ vpon. ⁷ other. ⁸ and. ⁹⁻⁹ went a shoare.
¹⁰ Huon. ¹¹ Fol. cxxix. back, col. 1. ¹² about.
¹³ good. ¹⁴ of Almaines.

¹troubelyd that he toke the duches esclaramond out of prison to haue brent² her, & the .iii.c. prysoners of Burdeaux to haue

4 hangyd them all. Ca. C.xliiii.



8 e haue well harde in this hystory / how Barnarde departyd fro y^e abbey of Cluny to go³ serche for his nephue Huon / and the abbot, seynge that he coude here no newes of Huon nor of Barnarde his cosyn, who was gone to seke for hym / he was⁴ sore⁵ displeasyd that he coude haue none other

12 knowlege ; but the thyng that causyd hym to pas y^e mater the more esyer, was by cause of Claryet, Huons doughter, whome he kepte, and she was all his comferte / she was so fayre and so swete that none was

16 lyke her in beauty nor³ in good vertues, and agayne when he rememberyd the duches her mother, Esclaramond, whome he knewe was in great pouerte and mysery, he was therwith so sore dyspleasyd that al his

20 membres trymbelid. So on⁶ a day it was reportyd to⁷ hym by a notable man that as he cam fro saynt Iames and by Burdeaux, howe that a nephue of the emperours shoulde go fro Burdeaux to the citey of Mayence, to

24 his vncl Tharry the emperoure of Almayne / & howe he shuld haue with hym a great nombre of the burgesses of y^e citey of Burdeaux as presoners, bycause on⁶ a daye they spake of Huon theyr naturall lorde /

28 and also how⁸ he shuld cary with hym the trybute and money of the rentys and reuenewes of the countre of Burdeloys, and suche moneye as euery man was bounde to pay to⁷ the emperour: when the good abbot of

32 Cluney was aduerteyd of the comynge of the

The abbot of Cluny was sore grieved that he could hear no newes of Huon or Barnard his cousin.

The abbot's grief was easier to bear since he kept with him Huon's daughter Clariet; none was like her in beauty and virtue.

But the remembrance of the distress in which her mother was troubled the abbot.

It was reported how a nephew of the Emperor was going from Bordeaux to Mayence, with a number of the citizens of Bordeaux as prisoners,

and how he would carry with him certain moneye.

¹ vexed and. ² burnt. ³ and.
⁴ right sorowfull and. ⁵ Fol. cxxix. back, col. 2.
⁶ vppon. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ that.

Thereupon the
abbot assembles a
number of men,

and chooses the
lord of Vergier to
be captain.

He learns through
spies which road
the Emperor's
nephew will take,

and commands
the lord of
Vergier to lie in
ambush.

When the
Germans pass, the
lord of Vergier's
company issues
from the ambush,

and in a short
space slay or take
prisoner all their
enemies.

emperours nephue, whom he reputyd as his enemy / he
assembled a great nombre of noble men, the most part
parteynyng to¹ the duke of Burgoyne, who as then
was father to Gyrard of Rousayllon, ²who as then was² ⁴
but .iiii. yere of age / ³when y^e abbot had assemblyd a
good⁴ nombre of men / he chose the lorde of Vergier to
be capetayne and leder of that company / & then he
sent out his spyes to knowe ⁵the sartayne⁵ which waye ⁸
the emperours nephue shulde come ; ³at⁶ last he had
sartayne knowlege that he was logid at mas⁷cou, and
that⁸ the nexte daye he shulde departe to Tournous /
³then the lorde of vergier and dyuers other by the ¹²
commaundement of the abbot of Cluny went and layd
theyr busschement betwene mascou and Tournous, in a
valey / so *that* by their spye, who laye on⁹ a mountayne,
¹⁰saw the Almayns comynge, aboutht the nombre of 16
.ii. M. horses / and the lorde of vergier had in his
company aboute .iiii. M. horses defensably aparayld /
they were¹¹ ioyfull when they harde by theyr spye
that theyr enemyes were comynge ; then they aparelyd ²⁰
themselfe to abyde theyr enemyes / who were come so
forwarde that they were past theyr fyrst enbusschement
and were enteryd into the valey / when they of the
fyrst enbusschement and they of the seconde enbusshe- ²⁴
ment sawe theyr tyme, they issuyd out & brake vpon
theyr enemyes, and made a great crye, so that in¹² a
shorte space theyr enemyes and the most parte of them
were slayne, not one that scapyd, but other he was ²⁸
slayne or taken / they coude not saue themselfe by
cause on⁹ the one syde was the mountayne, & on⁹ the
other syde the ryuer of some, and before and behynde
theyr enemyes were they them selfe / the same tyme ³²

¹ vnto. ²⁻² being at that time. ³ and. ⁴ great.

⁵⁻⁵ certainly. ⁶ the. ⁷ Fol. cxxx. col. 1.

⁸ omitted. ⁹ vpon. ¹⁰ they. ¹¹ right.

¹² within.

the emperours nephew was slaine, who was a goodly knyghte / and y^e emperour had before sent hym to Burdeaux to gouerne the londe and countre of Burdeloys, and had bene there the space of .iiii. yeris / of whose dethe the lorde of Vergier was sory, for he had rather he had bene taken presoner / then they toke his body and buryed hym in the chefe church of Tournous, where as they lay all nyght with theyr presoners, who were to y^e nombre of .viii. c. ; they of Burdeaux that were taken as presoners were² Ioyfull, when³ they were⁴ scapyd the handys of the almayns.

¶ After this discomfiture they retournid⁵ Cluny, where as they were receyuid with great ioye of the abbot and of the couente / then the lorde of Vergier shewyd the⁶ maner of the⁶ dyscomfyture / and then the botye was⁷ departyd to⁷ them that had wonne it⁸ / then⁹ all the men of warre departyd excepte a .M. men whome the abbot retaynyd styll⁸ for the sauegarde of the towne of Cluny / who made many scyrmysshis with the emperours men. After this dyscomfyture the newes therof were¹⁰ broughte to the citey of Magence to y^e emperoure Therry, who was ryght sorowful for y^e dethe of his nephue, who was his systers sone / by reason of the sorowe &¹¹ dyspleysure that he had,¹² he was thre dayes after or¹³ he wold come out¹⁴ of his chambre / and on the fourthe day he sent for all his lordys and counsayle / & to the[m]¹⁵ he made his complayntis, how by the occasyon of duke Huon of Burdeaux, he had loste .iiii. of his nephues, & his bastarde sone / & sayd, 'I ought greatly to be annoyed¹⁶ when I can not be reuengyd of Huon / I 32 thynke he shal neuer retourne agayne / but syn¹⁷ it is

The Emperor's nephew, a goodly knight, was himself slain,

and buried in the chief church of Tournous.

The men of Bordeaux that were prisoners were glad to have escaped the hands of the Germans. They returned to Cluny, and were joyfully received by the abbot.

All the men of war departed except a thousand retained to guard the town of Cluny.

The news of this defeat was brought to the Emperor Thierry at Mayence; he was right sorrowful for his nephew's death.

¹ that. ² right. ³ Fol. cxxx. col. 2. ⁴ thus.
⁵ to the abbey of. ⁶⁻⁶ whole discourse of their.
⁷⁻⁷ decided amongst. ⁸ omitted. ⁹ and.
¹⁰ was presently. ¹¹ great. ¹² for. ¹³ before.
¹⁴ forth. ¹⁵ then *in text*. ¹⁶ greeued. ¹⁷ seeing.

As he could not
be revenged on
Huon himself,

the Emperor
determines to
burn Esclara-
monde and hang
the 300 prisoners
brought from
Bordeaux.

Thorns were
carried out of the
city to burn the
noble lady
Esclaramonde,
and four hangmen
bring her and the
prisoners out of
the city,
and beat them by
the way.

Weeping and
lamenting, the
lady calls on our
Lord Jesus Christ
to bring her soul
into Paradise.

so that I can take of hym¹ no vengauce, I shall take
it vpon his wyfe Esclaramonde and vpon the .CCC.
presoners that I brought out of Burdeaux / but by the
same lorde that made and fourmyd me to his semblance, ⁴
I shall neuer haue ioye in² my harte, nor drynke³ nor
ete tyll⁴ I haue sene Esclaramonde brente⁵ in a fyre,
and y^e .CCC. presoners hangyd and strangelyd, and I
wyll that eche of you knowe that he that speketh ⁸
to me fyrst to the contrary I shall hate hym euer
after' / when the ⁶lordis⁷ harde the emperoure make
that promyse, there was none so hardy that durst speke
one worde / then the emperoure in hast⁸ commaundid ¹²
great plentye of thornes to be caryed out of the citey
vnto a lytell mountayne there besyde / and therby
to be rerid vp sartayne galous to hang theron .iiii.
C. presoners; all this was done as he commaundyd / ¹⁶
for mo then .x. lode of thornes were caryed out to
brenne⁹ the noble lady Esclaramonde / and she was
sent for out of pryson by .iiii. hangmen, and the
presoners with her were brought into y^e citey, and all ²⁰
to¹⁰ beten by the waye / when the noble lady sawe how
she was delte with all,¹¹ petuously she complaynyd for
her good husbände Huon, and for her doughter claryet,
and sayd / 'a, my ryght swete lorde & husband Huon / ²⁴
at this tyme shal be the departure of vs two'; ¹²then
she callyd vpon our lorde god¹³ Iesu chryst, prayenge
hym by his grace and petye to brynge her sowle into
paradyse / thus cryenge and complaynyng the noble ²⁸
lady was led thurgh the towne / ¹²then ladyes, and
burgesses, and maydens of the citey ran to theyr
wyndowes and dorys / and behelde the dolorous and
petuous¹⁴ company ledyng towards theyr dethes; then ³²

¹ of hym *after* vengeance. ² at. ³ drinke *after* etc.

⁴ vntill. ⁵ burnt. ⁶ Fol. cxxx. back, col. 1.

⁷ had well. ⁸ in hast *after* commaundid. ⁹ burne.

¹⁰ bee. ¹¹ shee *before* petuously. ¹² and. ¹³ omitted.

¹⁴ pitiful.

they sayde ahyghe / 'A, ryght noble lady, where is
 become the great beautye that ye were wonte to be of /
 for now your vysage is pale and dyscolouryd that was
 4 wonte to be so fayre, and now so lothely¹ and dis-
 fygyurd / where is become your fayre herys, that nowe
 be so blake and ruggyd for the great pouerty that
 ye haue enduryd / Alas, noble lady, great pety² we
 8 haue to se you in this estate yf we coud a mende it' /
 thus as this lady was led thurgh y^e towne she was
 bemynd³ of them that sawe her / the .iiii. C. ientylnen
 also⁴ were led forthe / and the emperour Thyrry and
 12 his lordis rode after them / for his desyre was to se the
 lady brente⁵ & the⁶ presoners hangid / he made haste
 because of the sorowe that he had for y^e dethe of his
 nephue and of his men, who were newly slayne by the
 16 purches⁷ of the abbot of Cluney / when they were
 issued out of the citeye of Magence / duke Hyldebert, a
 nere kynsman of the emperours, was comyng into the
 citeye the same tyme that the lady was led fourth, and
 20 sawe how rudely they delte with the lady / ⁸when he
 sawe her he knew wel⁹ it was¹⁰ Esclaramond / ¹¹when
 he sawe her at that poynt, the water was in his eyen,
 and¹² sayd to¹³ them that ledde her / 'Syr, go not
 24 so faste tyll¹⁴ I haue spoken with the emperoure' / the
 whiche they dyd gladly ; when the noble lady Esclara-
 monde¹⁵ vnderstode the duke / she had a¹⁶ lytell hope,
 she tournid her eyen towardis hym, and sayd / 'A,
 28 ryght noble pryncce, haue petye and compassyon of me,
 for I haue done no thynge wherby I shulde deserue to
 dye' / when the duke ¹⁷harde¹⁷ her he had suche petye
 that he coude speke no worde, his harte was so full of
 32 sorowe / ⁸then he rode as fast as he myght to mete with

All who behold
 her ask what has
 become of her
 great beauty.

As the procession
 went out of the
 city. duke
 Hildebert, a
 kinsman of the
 Emperor, was
 coming in, and
 seeing how
 roughly they
 dealt with
 Esclaramonde,

he bid them
 desist till he had
 spoken with the
 Emperor.

Esclaramonde
 begs Hildebert
 have pity on her.

¹ loathed. ² and compassion. ³ Fol. cxxx. back, col. 2.

⁴ were also. ⁵ burnt. ⁶ other. ⁷ means.

⁸ and. ⁹ that. ¹⁰ the faire Ladie. ¹¹ but. ¹² he.

¹³ vnto. ¹⁴ vntill. ¹⁵ had well heard and.

¹⁶ some. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ had well vnderstood.

He entreates the
Emperor to
respice their lives
till after Easter.

Surely it is
sufficient to have
chased her from
her country and
signories, and to
have taken her
revenues for
himself;

but if all the men
in his empire
and all the priests
preached to him
for a year, the
Emperor will not
give way, neither
will he eat nor
drink till
Esclaramonde be
burnt, and the
other persons
hanged.

y^e emperoure, and passyd by the .CCC. presoners, and had great pety¹ of them / and so he came to² the emperour all wepyng, he³ sayd / ‘A, ryght noble emperoure, I requyre you in the honoure of the passyon 4 of our lorde Iesu chryst, haue petye and compassyon of this dolorous company that ar lykely to dye this daye / remembre howe⁴ it is nowe in the holy tyme of lente, wherefore I requyre you⁵ respyght theyr lyues vnto⁶ it 8 be past Ester / and, syr, humbely I requyre you for all the ser⁷uyce that I and myn haue done⁸ you, graunte me⁸ this request for my rewarde, the whiche is⁹ resonable and iust / great wronge ye do to reuenge your 12 iyre¹⁰ vpon this noble lady / ye haue chasyd her out of her countre¹¹ and syngnoryes, the whiche you hold in your handes, and take the reuenys & profyghtes therof / yf ye be not suffyced with this, I dought me¹² 16 that our lorde Iesu chryst wyll be sore dyspleysd with you’ / when the emperoure had¹³ herde the duke his cosyn, he stode styll and spake hastely, and sayd, ‘fayr cosyn, I haue well herde you, & therefore I 20 answere you in breue wordys / how that yf al the men that be in myn empere, and all the preestes and freers were here, and dyd preche to² me an hole yere desyringe me to respyght this ladyes deth and the other 24 that be with hyr, I wolde do nothyng for all them / and therefore speke to me¹⁴ no more in that mater / for by the berd that hangeth at¹⁵ my chynne, syn I can not haue Huon hyr husbnde at my wyll, I shal neuer eete 28 nor drynke tyll⁶ I haue seen hyr brente¹⁶ and the other persones hangyde. For when I remembre the deth of myn nephues and of my dere sone, the whiche hath bene slayne by Huon, there is no membre in my body 32 but that trymbleth for sorowe and dyspleasure.

¹ and compassion. ² vnto. ³ and. ⁴ that.
⁵ to. ⁶ vntill. ⁷ Fol. cxxxi. col. l. ⁸ but.
⁹ both. ¹⁰ anger. ¹¹ landes. ¹² omitted.
¹³ well. ¹⁴ to me after more. ¹⁵ vuder. ¹⁶ burnt.

¶ when the good duke hyldeberte vnderstode the
 emperoure, he had great sorowe,¹ and departed without
 any worde spekyng and without any leue takyng.
 4 But retornyd fro thence² he came³ full of iyre and
 dyspleasure / then the emperoure thyrry cryed with a
 hye voyce, and sayd how⁴ he wolde shortly dispatche
 the mater to se the lady brente,⁵ and led to y^o hyll
 8 where as the fyre was redy / when the lady perseyued
 y^o place where as she⁶ shulde dye in / she cast out a
 great crye & made a petuose⁷ complaynte to our
 lord Iesu chryst, and sayd / 'A, ryght swete lorde
 12 Iesu chryst, thou knowest that for the loue of the
 I am chrystened to byleue in thy law, wherin I wyll
 lyue and dye / I se well my dayes ar but shorte / and
 thou knowest well⁴ there is no cause wherin that
 16 I haue deseruyd deth / therfore I requyre the hombly
 to haue pyte⁸ of my soule and⁹ to kepe and preserue
 my husbände Huon and my doughter claryet.' Thus
 as ye haue herd the noble duches Esclaramonde made
 20 hyr complayntes, hyr handes fast¹⁰ bound, and knelyng
 on¹¹ hyr kneys before the stakes, abydyng y^o our
 of hyr deth / Now¹² leue we¹³ to speke of this noble
 lady tyll¹³ we retorne agayn, and speke of the noble
 24 kyng Oberone and¹⁴ his compayne.

He commands
 the despatch of
 the business :

when the lady
 saw the place
 where she should
 die, she implored
 our Lord Iesus
 Christ to have
 pity on her soul,

and to keep and
 preserve her
 husband Huon
 and her daughter
 Claryet.

With her hands
 bound and kneel-
 ing before the
 stake Esclara-
 monde awaits the
 hour of her death.

¶ How¹⁵ Oberon sent .ii. of his knyghtes
 of the fayery, that is to saye, Malabron
 and Gloryande, to delyuer the duches
 28 Esclaramond, who shulde haue bene brente,⁵
 and¹⁶ .ccc. presoners¹⁷ who were¹⁸ delyueryd
 by the sayd knyghtes. Ca. C.xliiii.

¹ at his heart. ² and. ³ became. ⁴ that.
⁵ burnt. ⁶ Fol. cxxxi. col. 2. ⁷ pitifull.
⁸ and compassion. ⁹ that thou wilt vouchsafe.
¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ vpon. ¹²⁻¹³ let us leaue. ¹³ vntill.
¹⁴ of. ¹⁵ King. ¹⁶ the. ¹⁷ all.
¹⁷ that should haue bene hanged. ¹⁸ all.

On the same day as Esclaramonde should have been burnt, Oberon was holding a great court in his palace.



The noble queen Morgan was there, with her niece and many other ladies and knights of fairyland, making great joy.

Oberon began to weep,

and Gloryand, the good knight of Fairyland, asks him the cause of his grief.

It is that Esclaramonde, wife of Oberon's friend Huon, is to be burnt, and the prisoners hanged.

Oberon may not succour them.

Ow seweth the story¹ that y^e same daye that the duches, y^e fayre Esclaramonde, shuld haue bene brent,² kyng Oberone of the fayery³ 4 was in his pales of mummur, wheras he had holden a great courte and a sumptuous for his mother; the lady of the pryue Isle was there / and also the noble quene Morgan⁴ le faye / & the 8 dameysell Transcelyne hyr nese, with dyuers other ladyes of the fayery, and dyuers knyghtes⁴ of the same, makyng great ioye; kyng Oberon was syttyng in a ryche trone garnyshed & borderyd with fyne 12 golde and precyous stones / and as he satte he fell in a great study / and therwith the dropes of water fell out of his eyene, &⁵ began to wepe⁶ so sore as though he shulde haue drowned in⁷ dropes of water / when these 16 quenys, ladyes, and damysels sawe hym make suche sorowe, they had great merueyll /⁸ there was Gloryande, the good knyght of the Fayery, and Malabron, who were ryght preuy and wel-belouyd with kyng Oberon / 20⁸ when they sawe the kyng make such sorowe they were⁹ abasshed, and syr Gloryand sayd / 'Syr, what man is lyuynge in this world that hathe dyspleased you or done any thyng agaynst you?' / 'Gloryand,' 24 quod y^e kyng / 'the dysplesure that I haue is for the fayre¹⁰ Esclaramonde, wyffe to¹¹ Huon of Burdeaux / my¹² frende / she is as nowe led out of the cytye of Maience & brought to¹³ a¹⁴ fyre, wherin y^e Emperoure 28 therry wyll byrne her / & other .CCC. poore presoners to be hanged / and I maye not¹⁵ socoure them / and I am sory therof for the loue of Huon / who is as now passyd the see, and is in the waye retournynge home- 32

¹ Historie. ² burnt. ³ Morgne.

⁴ Fol. cxxxi. back, col. 1. ⁵ he. ⁶ and complaine.

⁷ with. ⁸ and. ⁹ sore dismayed and. ¹⁰ Ladie.

¹¹ vnto Duke. ¹² verie good. ¹³ vnto. ¹⁴ great.

¹⁵ ayd nor.

- warde / and he hath had suche aduenturs that there is
 no humayne body coude suffre nor bere the payns and
 trauelles *that* he hath endeured, nor the meruelous
 4 aduentures that he hath borne; ¹ he hath had so
 many bateylls that it were ² meruyll ³ to here them
 rehersyd, and nowe where as he thought to haue had
 rest & to haue founde his wyfe, the fayr ⁴ Esclara-
 8 monde a lyue, who shall now be brent ⁵ without ⁶ she
 be shortly ⁷ socoured, ⁸ & then ⁸ I am sure ⁹ he shall ¹⁰
 dye for sorowe. ¹¹ when Gloryand and malabrone ¹²
 herde ¹³ ¹⁴ kyng Oberone / they kneled downe before
 12 this kyng and sayd / 'syr, we desyre you to socoure
 this noble lady for the loue of her good husbond,
 your ¹⁵ frend Huon' / ' Gloryand,' quod the noble kyng
 Oberon / ' *that* wyll I not do, but I am well contente
 16 that hastely ye go and delyuer the good lady and the
 other *presoners* that be with her / and saye on ¹⁶ my
 behalfe to the Emperoure therry, that he be not soo
 hardy ¹⁷ to do any yll to the lady or to any of her
 20 compayne / but saye *that* I wyll ¹⁸ *that* he respyght
 theyr lyues tyll ¹⁹ the holy feeste of Eester be passyd /
 and *that* the lady & all ⁸ y^e other *presoners* he cause to
 be returned agayne ¹⁶ to the citey of Maience, and *that*
 24 y^e lady be set in a chambre at her lyberte and pleasure,
 & let her be bayngned ²⁰ and wesshyde and new arayed,
 and let her haue .iiii. noble ladyes to serue and
 acompaynye her, & that she haue meet and drynk
 28 as good & as plenteous ²¹ as though she were his owne
 propre daughter / in lyke wyse let ²² the other *presoners*
 be seruyd / & saye that I wyll ²³ he ²⁴ do this vnto ²⁴ the

Huon, after
 enduring many
 pains, is return-
 ing to his own
 land,

and if he
 finds Esclara-
 monde burnt will
 die of sorrow.

Gloryand and
 Malabron ask
 Oberon, for love
 of Huon, to
 succour the noble
 lady.

Oberon desires
 his two knights
 to go and deliver
 her,

to request the
 Emperor to
 respite their lives
 till after Easter,

to place the lady
 in a chamber
 with four noble
 ladies,
 to serve her
 and to treat her
 exactly as if she
 were his own
 daughter.

He is to do
 likewise with the
 other prisoners.

¹ and. ² great. ³ and wonderful. ⁴ Ladie.
⁵ burnt. ⁶ except. ⁷ aided and. ⁸⁻⁸ omitted.

⁹ that. ¹⁰ will.

¹¹ and grieft that he will haue at his heart. ¹² had well.
¹³ and vnderstode. ¹⁴ Fol. cxxxi. back, col. 2. ¹⁵ deare.

¹⁶ in. ¹⁷ as. ¹⁸ and commaund. ¹⁹ vntill.

²⁰ bathed. ²¹ plentifull. ²² all.

²³ and commaund that. ²⁴⁻²⁴ doth thus vntill.

Then Gloryand
and Malabron
wish themselves
in the place where
the lady was,

and they come
through the air
with a noise as of
thunder, but
invisible to all but
the lady,

and cast into the
fire the men who
would have burnt
the lady.

The knyghts
release the lady,
tell her who they
are, and bid her
be of good
comfort.

It is not the
first time Oberon
has aided
Esclaramonde
and Huon.

In a short time
Esclaramonde
shall see Huon
again.
Esclaramonde
rejoices greatly
at the good
tidings.

tyme that Easter be passyd / and shew him that he be
not soo hardy to breke or trespas¹ my commaunde-
ment' / then Gloryand & Malabron toke leue of the
Kyng and of all other *that* were there / ²then they 4
wysshyd them selfe in the place wher as the lady and
the other presoners where ; ³the lady as then was on⁴
her kneys before the fyre sore wepyng,⁵ abydyng the
oure of her deth / the which had bene nere to⁶ her yf 8
she had not shortly bene⁷ socouryd for they were
aboute to haue bounde her to the stake / when Gloryand
& Malabron came braynge in the ayre lyke thonther /
and they were not seyne of no person but alonely of the 12
lady / ²when they were come & saw y^e fyre akyndlyng,
⁸they toke y^e .x. rybawdis⁹ that wold haue cast the
lady in¹⁰ y^e fyre, they toke them & dyd¹¹ cast them all
.x. in to y^e flamyng fyer, wheras they wher shortly 16
brent;¹² and besyde them there wher dyuers other
brent,¹³ whereof suche as were there had¹³ greate feer
that none durst a byd there / then y^e .ii. knyghtis cam
to the lady and lousid hyr, and sayd, 'dame,¹⁴ be 20
of good comfort, we ar .ii. knyghtis sent hether fro
kinge oberon to socour and to bryngye you out of the¹⁵
daunger that ye be in' / 'syrs,' quod the lady, 'yt ys
not the fyrste tyme that the noble kyngye Oberon hathe 24
socouryd vs, bothe me and my husbonde / god of hys
grace rewarde hym' / 'dame,¹⁴ quod gloryand, 'be
mery and make ioye, for your good husbonde Huon is
come on this syde the se, whome ye shall see in¹⁶ 28
shorte tyme' / when y^e good lady¹⁷ vnderstode gloriand
she had suche ioye *that* of a great spase she coude
speke no word, she was so rauysshyd ; ¹⁸at laste she
sayde, 'syr, I ought greatly to loue you ¹⁹to bryngye¹⁹ 32

¹ against. ² and. ³ where. ⁴ vpon.
⁵ and complaynyng and. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ been shortly.
⁸ Fol. cxxxii. col. l. ⁹ villaines. ¹⁰ to. ¹¹ omitted.
¹² burnt. ¹³ so. ¹⁴ Madame. ¹⁵ perill and.
¹⁶ within. ¹⁷ had well. ¹⁸ but. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ for bringing.

me suche tydynges' / ¹then they sayd to ²hyr, 'Dame, ³rest you here a seson tyll ⁴we haue delyueryd the other prysoners, whom we see yonder ledyng to ⁵the dethe ⁴warde, ⁵and shortly we shal retourne to ⁶you.' there with they departyd fro the lady, and lefte hyr on ⁷hyr knees holdyng vpon hyr handys ²to the ²heuen, ¹deuoutely re[n]dering thankis to our lord Iesu chryste ⁸of ⁸the socoure and ayed *that* he had sent hyr. then gloryand and malabron came to y^e galous, & there lowsyd y^e CCC. prysoners, and slew dyuers of *them that were sent thether* to do execucyon, wherof all ¹²they that were ther⁹, had great merueyl¹⁰ when they saw there compeny slayn & coude not se them that dyd it / but they thought there were a thousande knyghtes by reason of y^e¹¹ brute & noyse *that* ¹²y^e.ii. knyghtes ¹⁶of y^e fayry made / wherof they had suche fere that they fled away and ran to the emperoure, who was sore ¹⁵abashed of that auenture / for it was also shewyd² hym / that the lady was reskewyd, and they coude not ²⁰tell by whom; But *that* they sayd they herde¹⁴ great brute & tempest¹⁵ / then also the emperoure saw how the people came rynnynge toward hym, fleyng fro the galous, and they shewyd¹⁶ hym all that they had sene ²⁴and hard, wherof y^e emperoure & all his lordes had great fere & were sore abashed. 'A, syr,' quod the duke of Austrych, 'it had bene better for you to haue beleuyd duke Hyldberty, your cosyn / know suerly¹⁷ ye ²⁸haue greatly displeased our lord Iesu chryst syn¹⁷ ye wolde do suche cruell Iustyce in the holy tyme of lente' / thus after these .ii. knyghtes of the fayry had reskewyd the good lady and y^e other presoners, he¹⁸ ³²toke them and the lady & brought them to² the

She devoutly renders thanks to our Lord Iesus Christ.

The knyghts deliver the 300 prisoners, and slay their executioners.

All the spectators marvel greatly, thinking there must be a thousand knyghts, so great is the confusion.

They flee to the Emperor, and describe to him what has taken place.

It would have been better for the Emperor to have given heed to Hildebert's request.

¹ and. ² vnto. ³ Madame. ⁴ vntill.
⁵⁻⁵ toward their deaths. ⁶ again vnto. ⁷ vpon.
⁸ for. ⁹ present. ¹⁰ and did woonder thereat.
¹¹ great. ¹² Fol. cxxxii. col. 2. ¹³ dismayed and.
¹⁴ a. ¹⁵ noyse. ¹⁶ to. ¹⁷ that. ¹⁸ they.

Then the two knights brought the lady and prisoners to the Emperor, and made themselves visible to all. The Emperor, seeing only two knights armed on horseback, sets little account by them, and asks what they mean by such boldness,

and declares he will hang them also.

Gloryand repeats to the Emperor the things Oberon has commanded him to do.

emperoure, and shewyd them selues openly / ¹when they were in the presence of the emperoure, and y^e presoners *wilk* them / ¹the emperoure saw that there were but .ii. knyghtes armyd on² horse back, he set ⁴ lytyll by them, and sayd / ' how are you so bold and so hardy to delyuer and to take out of my mens handes they³ that are condemned to dye by Iustyce, and beseyd, that ye haue slayne⁴ of my men / and⁵ brynge ⁸ them in to my presence whome I haue condemned to dye / wherfore I wyll⁶ ye⁷ knowe that or⁸ I eete or drynke you and all they shal be hanged, and the lady Esclaramonde brente,⁹ nor I shall not departe¹⁰ hence ¹² tyll¹¹ I haue sene you all dye '¹² / then Gloryand and Malabrone lyft vp theyr wessers and shewyd theyr faces / and they semyd to¹³ all them that sawe them *that* they neuer saw before .ii. so ¹⁴ fayre knyghtis in all ¹⁶ theyr lyues. Then Gloryand sayde to¹³ the emperour / ' syr, of you nor of your thretenynges we make ther of¹⁵ lytell acounte. But, syr, know for trouthe / that the noble kyng Oberon commaundeth you by vs in as ²⁰ moche as ye fere your lyfe / that ye be not so hardy any farther to do any yl or iniury nor *commaunde* to be done to¹³ this noble lady *that* is here present, nor to these other prysoners / vntyll Eester day be past. ²⁴ And also kyng Oberon commaundeth you that ye¹⁶ kepe this lady in your house clothyd and apareyld and as well gouernyd, & to be acompanyed with ladyes and damoselles to serue her honorably as well as¹⁷ she ²⁸ were your owne proper doughter, and that in lyke wyse these presoners to be newly apareyld¹⁸ and orderyd as well as other knyghtis of your house / & syr, we warne¹⁹ that in all²⁰ this that we haue sayd that ye do ³²

¹ and. ² vpon. ³ those. ⁴ many. ⁵ nowe.
⁶ that. ⁷ well. ⁸ before. ⁹ burned. ¹⁰ from.
¹¹ vntill. ¹² the death. ¹³ vnto.
¹⁴ Fol. cxxxii. back, col. 1. ¹⁵ but. ¹⁶ doe. ¹⁷ if.
¹⁸ arrayed. ¹⁹ and charge you. ²⁰ omitted.

not the contrary for any thyng that maye fall / for yf
 ye do other wyse / there is no mortall man shal saue
 your lyfe: thus commaundeth you¹ to do the² noble
 4 kynge Oberon, who is souerayne lorde³ of the fayry' /
 when the emperour Therry⁴ harde these knyghtes of y^e
 fayry thus speke to⁵ hym / and saw how they were
 armyd with theyr swordis in theyr handys tayntyd
 8 with the blode of his almayns, he had great fere,
 & beheld his barons, and sayde / 'syr, I praye you
 gyue me som good counseyle in this⁶ besynes / ye⁷
 haue well hard moch spekyng of kynge Oberon and of
 12 his great actis and dedys, wherfore I fere hym moche /
 ye may se what .ii. of his knyghtis haue done / they
 haue rescued them that I had condempnyd to dye /
 and slayne dyuers of my men. Also ye here what
 16 worde he sendeth me by his two knyghtis, that I
⁸shulde kepe this lady and the other presoners
 honorably / and that I shuld not be so hardy to put
 them to any daunger tyll⁹ Eester were¹⁰ passyd.' Then
 20 an aunsyent knyght sayd / 'syr, knowe for trouthe
 that kyng Oberon is pusant and wyse / for there is
 nothyng in the world but *that* he knoweth it, and
 also as often as he lyst, he can be where as he wyll
 24 wysse hym selfe, ¹¹with as great nombre of people as
 he lyste / ¹¹therfore, syr, bylcue suerly yf ye do other-
 wyse then he hathe commaundyd you to do these two
 knyghtis of his that he here present hathe suffycyent¹²
 28 pusaunce to dystroye you, and kynge Oberon to syt
 styl at home / therfore, syr, myn aduyse is that ye
 answeere these .iii. knyghtes, that all that kynge Oberon
 hath commaunded you to do by them, that ye wyll do
 32 it suerly' / ¹¹then all the other lordis gaue the emperour

The Emperor
was sore afraid,
and asks his
barons to counsel
him what to do.

An ancient
knight describes
Oberon's great
power,

and advices the
Emperor to do as
the two fairy
knights
command.

¹ commaundeth you *after* Oberon. ² right.
³ and Gouernor of all the Realme. ⁴ had well. ⁵ vnto.
⁶ serious. ⁷ we. ⁸ Fol. cxxxii. back, col. 2.
⁹ vntill. ¹⁰ be. ¹¹ and. ¹² *after* puissance.

The other lords gave the same counsel. the same counsaile / when the emperour had¹ hard² his lordys³ he retournyd⁴ hym to⁵ the .ii. knygtys of the fayry, and sayde / 'syr, ye shall salute me to kyng Oberon, and say that as for me I shall do euery⁴ thynge as he hathe commaunded me to do to the best of my power' / 'syr Emperour,' quod Gloryand, 'yf ye⁶ do as ye saye the kyng wyl take you for his frende / and therupon we commaunde you to god' / ⁸ thus the .ii. knygtis departyd, so that the emperoure nor none other parson⁷ coude tell⁷ where they were become, wherof euery man hadde great maruayle and were sore abasshyd. ⁸ Thus Gloryand and Malabron ¹² within a whyle came to⁹ Mommure, where as they founde kyng Oberon, to whome they shewed all that they had done. 'wel,' quod kyng Oberon, 'as now the lady Esclaramonde and the other presoners ar ¹⁶ at theyr ease and well seruyd / but or¹⁰ a ¹¹ moneth be passyd they shall derely aby the ease that they be in nowe / for the emperoure hateth them so sore bycause of the maleys that he berethe to⁵ Huon¹² / he ²⁰ wyll set them all agayne into preson in great¹³ mysery / and when Eester is past / he wyll brenne¹⁴ the lady¹⁵ and hange vp¹⁶ the presoners without they be rescued¹⁷ / 'syr,' quod Gloryand, 'I can not byleue that the ²⁴ emperour dare do it or thinke to do so.'¹⁸ 'Gloryand,' quod the¹⁹ kyng, 'know suerly that the great hate that is rootyd in the hart of the emperoure shal constreyn²⁰ him thus to do.' now let vs leue spekyng of²¹ kyng ²⁸ Oberon, and speke of the Emperoure.²²

The other lords gave the same counsel.

The Emperor promises to do what Oberon commands.

Gloryand says Oberon will then take the Emperor for his friend, and to the inuail of all, the two knights vanish.

They return to Oberon, and relate what they have done.


Oberon declares when Easter is past, the Emperor will carry out his intention of burning Esclaramonde, and of hanging the prisoners.

Gloryand cannot believe the Emperor will dare to do it.

His great hatred will force him so to do.

¹ well. ² and vnderstood. ³ and Barona.
⁴ turned. ⁵ vnto. ⁶ will. ⁷⁻⁷ knew not. ⁸ and.
⁹ the City of. ¹⁰ before. ¹¹ Fol. cxxxiii. col. 1.
¹² of Bourdeaux that. ¹³ pouertie and. ¹⁴ burne.
¹⁵ Escleremond. ¹⁶ all. ¹⁷ againe. ¹⁸ so to doe.
¹⁹ noble. ²⁰ and vrgē. ²¹ the noble. ²² Tirrey.

¶ Howe the emperoure¹ made the² lady
 esclaramonde to be well seruyd and apar-
 aylyd, and all the other presoners / but
 4 a³ .iii. wekys after he made the noble lady
 & the sayd presoners to be put agayne in
 to pryson, where as they were in great
 mysery. Ca. C.xlv.

8  Ow sheweth the hystory *that* after
 these⁴ .ii. knyghtis of y^e fayry were
 departid and vanysshid away out of
 the presence of the emperoure, and
 12 that the emperoure was retourned into
 the citey of Magence with the lady
 Esclaramond and with the other presoners, wherof the
 burgesses, ladyes, and damosels of y^e citey⁵ were
 16 ioyfull⁵ of theyr good aduerture / ⁶the emperoure had
 them into his palays and delyuerid to⁷ them chambers
 well drest and hangyd, as it aparteynyd,⁸ and the⁹ lady⁹
 had .iiii. ladyes to serue her / and she was baynyd¹⁰
 20 and stuyd,¹¹ and new aparaylyd as wel and¹² rychely
 as thoughe she had bene the empel¹³rouers¹⁴ proper
 doughter, so that within a shorte space she came agayne
 to her beautye,¹⁵ and in lyke wyse so dyd all the other
 24 presoners who were kepte¹⁶ in¹⁶ chambers and new
 aparayled, and had theyr ease¹⁷ as other knyghtis of y^e
 emperours courte had / but as sone as thre wekys was
 passyd / the great hate that the emperour had to⁷
 28 the² lady and to the¹⁸ presoners constrayned hym to
 take fro them theyr⁴ ioy and ease that they were in,

The Emperor
 returned to
 Mayence with the
 lady Esclara-
 monde and the
 other prisoners.
 All rejoice to see
 them.

The lady is
 treated just as
 though she was
 the Emperor's
 own daughter,

so that she
 regained her
 beauty.

The other
 prisoners were
 treated as knights
 of the court.

At the end of
 three weeks the
 Emperor's hate
 returned,

¹ Tirrey. ² noble. ³ about. ⁴ the.
⁵⁻⁵ had great ioy. ⁶ and. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ thereunto.
⁹⁻⁹ noble duches Escleremond. ¹⁰ bathed. ¹¹ washed.
¹² as. ¹³ Fol. cxxxiii. col. 2. ¹⁴ owne.
¹⁵ and to be as faire and well fauoured as euer she was.
¹⁶⁻¹⁶ also in faire and rich. ¹⁷ and pleasures.
¹⁸ other.

and tournyd the same ¹to wepynges and sorowe.¹
 And the emperour sware that for all kynge Oberon or
 for any thyng that he coude do / he wolde neuer be
 in peas in his harte tyll² he had set all that³ company ⁴
 agayne into pryson / and besyde *that*, he sware that
 Eester shulde no soner be past but *that* y^e lady
 Esclaramond shuld be brent⁴ and all the other presoners
 hangyd / and on⁵ them to take vengauce in the spyte ⁸
 of Huon of Burdeaux, who had done hym so moch
 trouble that he coud not forget it / then he com-
 maundyd to take agayne the duches Esclaramonde and
 to put her and all the other presoners in to the preson ¹²
 agayne / y^e which was done⁶ / Then the duches
 Esclaramonde and al the other presoners were ryghte
 sorowful, and were in great fere, and sayd eche to
 other, 'Alas, now our dethe aprocheth.' and when⁷ ¹⁶
 the lady saw that she was set agayne in pryson, she
 began sore to wepe and complayne for the duke Huon
 her husband, ⁸and sayd / 'a, dere lorde and husbonde⁸ /
 to longe⁹ ye tary, for I se none other owre¹⁰ but that ²⁰
 my dethe aprocheth / for ye shall not come in tyme /
 well may I curse the owre that¹¹ I was borne / for in all
 my lyfe I haue had but sorow, and heuynes, and dolours
¹²in portables¹² / better it had bene for me to haue ²⁴
 ben ded then¹³ to vse¹⁴ my lyfe in this derke presone⁷ /
 ryght deuoutly she called on⁵ our lord Iesu chryste
 to haue pyte¹⁵ of her / thus was this noble duches set
 agayn in presone, and also the .CCC. presoners, where ²⁸
 as they sufferyd great fayme¹⁶ and pouerte / for other
 thyng had they not to lyue by but barly brede &

and he swore that
 after Easter the
 lady should be
 burnt, and the
 prisouers hanged.

Esclaramonde
 and the others
 were again
 imprisoned.

The lady weeps
 for her husband
 Huon.

He taries so
 long, and will not
 come in time to
 save her.

They suffer great
 hunger;

¹⁻¹ into pitiful weepings and great lamentations.

² vntill. ³ the. ⁴ burnt. ⁵ vpon.

⁶ according to his commandment. ⁷ that.

⁸⁻⁸ omitted. ⁹ quoth she. ¹⁰ way. ¹¹ euer.

¹²⁻¹² insupportable. ¹³ Fol. cxxxiii. back, col. 1.

¹⁴ spend. ¹⁵ and compassion.

¹⁶ famine.

clere water. Now we wyll leue to speke of them and speke of¹ Huon, who was aryued at Marcyll.²

their only food is
barley bread and
clear water.

¶ How Huon departed fro Marcyll² and
4 came to his vncler, the³ abbot of cluny, in
habyte dysgysed / & to⁴ hym dyscouered
hymselfe, wherof the abbot had great ioy,
& so had Claryte his daughter. Ca. C.xlvi.

8 **S** ye haue harde here before, how Huon
was at Marcyll,² and after that he
had soiornd⁵ .iiii. dayes, he made
12 hym redy to departe, and brought
mules and horse for hym⁶ & for
barnard,⁷ and for his company / and
then he chargyd his summers / and vpon one of them
he trussyd the greffons fot, y⁸ which was great and
16 horryble, & coueryd it bycause euery man shulde not se
it / when he was redy and euery thyng trussyd, he
departed fro Marcyll² / and rode so by his iornyes that
he passyd by Prouence and came to⁴ Masconoys, and
20 on⁸ a thursday at nyght, he aryuyd at the towne of
Tornous. And when they had suppyd, he callyd
Barnard his cosyn, and sayd / 'cosy[n],⁹ I praye you
10 abyde me¹⁰ here / for I wyll go¹¹ se myne vncler the³
24 abbot of Cluny and Claryet my daughter, whome
I sore desyre to se, & shortely I shall retourne agayne
to⁴ you, I wyll go preuely dysgysed to y⁸ entent that I
wyll not be knowen' / 'syr,' quod Barnard, 'syn¹² it
28 is your plesure we must be content' / then they went
to bed, & in the mornynge Huon rose vp and aparelyd
hymselfe lyke a pylgryme, with a stafe, and a bage
about his necke / ¹³ with great botis on⁸ his legis;

Huon leaves
Marselles, passes
by Provence and
Masconoys, and
on a Thursday at
night reaches
Tournou.

After supper,
Huon announces
his intention of
going to see the
Abbot of Cluny
and Claryet his
daughter, in
disguise.

In the morning
Huon dressed
himself as a
pilgrim, with staff
and bag, great

¹ Duke. ² Marsellis. ³ good. ⁴ vnto.
⁵ iournd there. ⁶ selfe. ⁷ Fol. cxxxiii, back, col. 2.
⁸ vppon. ⁹ cosy in text. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ to stay. ¹¹ to.
¹² seeing that. ¹³ and.

boots, a beard,
and long hair.

Barnard and his
company laugh
at the disguise;

Huon looks like
a beggar indeed.

He reaches
Cluny,
and demands
entrance.

This being
granted, he asks
to see the abbot.

The porter gives
him leave to go
into the house;

the abbot is in his
hall, communing
with his brethren.

he had a great berd and long here, wherfore he semyd
well a pylgrime ¹come¹ fro a far countre, & so he had
done in dede / when Barnard & his company saw hym
so aparayld, they laughed & said / 'syr, it apereth ⁴
well by your maner that ye ar scapyd out of some
good place / it semeth to vs / *that* yf ye wyll shake
your stafe ye wyll make the money to a voyde out of
mens purses, ye ar so bold a begger' / when Huon hard ⁸
hym ²he laughed, & toke leue of them and departid
al alone with his bage aboute his necke / so a fote he
went tyll ³he came to ⁴Cluny / ⁵then he came to ⁴the
abbey gate & callyd y^e porter, ⁶& sayd / 'frend, I pray ¹²
you ⁷let me enter.' ⁸he openyd the weket & beheld
Huon, who semyd to hym to be a tall & a goodly man,
& sayd / 'pylgryme, enter when you ples' / ⁹Then
Huon enterid in at the weket, and sayd to ⁴y^e porter / ¹⁶
frend, 'I com strayt fro beyonde the great see, and
haue kyssed the holy sepulture, & I ¹⁰haue sufferyd
moche payne and pouerte / and bycause or ¹¹this tyme
I haue bene here with y^e abbot of this place, therefore I ²⁰
thought ¹²I wolde not pas by without spekyng with
hym; I pray you ⁷shewe me that courtoyse *that* I may
speke with hym / for he wyll sone know me.' 'Syr,'
quod y^e porter, 'it semeth ¹³by your maner ¹²ye seme to ²⁴
be a man of a good plase: therefore I gyue you leue ⁷go
into the house at youre pleasure / and ye shall fynde
our good abbot in his halle, where as he is comonyng
with his bretherne / serteynely I knowe well ¹²ye shall ²⁸
be welcome to ⁴hym yf he haue of you any knowlege,
for a more noble man cortoyse and large ¹⁴ye shal not
fynd on ¹⁵this syde ¹⁶the see.' 'Frend,' quod Huon,
'your curtoyse may auayle you.' Then Huon went ³²

1-1 that came out. ² them. ³ vntill. ⁴ vnto.
⁵ and. ⁶ vnto him. ⁷ to. ⁸ then.
⁹ Fol. cxxxiii. col. 1. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ before.
¹² that. ¹³ vnto me. ¹⁴ liberall. ¹⁵ vppon.
¹⁶ of.

into the hall, wheras he found the abbot with his
 bretherne / ¹then he saluted the abbot and all his
 couente. 'Frende,' quod y^e abbot, 'ye are welcome; I
 4 pray you² shew me fro whence ye come?' / 'Syr,'
 quod Huon, 'I shall shewe you the trouthe / I come
 now fro beyonde the see fro the holy citeye of Ierusalem,
 where as I haue kyssed y^e holy sepulture¹ where as³
 8 our lord⁴ was quycke and dede; I haue bene in those
 partyes more then these⁵ .vii. yerys / and the cause⁵ I
 am com hether to se you is this, I found there a
 yonge knyght of myne age namyd Huon of Burdeaux,
 12 and he ⁶saythe⁶ he is your nephue / and when he saw
 that I wold depart⁷ thence to come into this⁸ cowntre,
 he humbly prayed me to recommaunde hym to⁹ you /
 and therefore, syr,³ I am com to⁹ you to do this⁸
 16 message / for he and I haue bene together in ¹⁰dyuers
 bataylis / & great amyte¹¹ betwen vs' / when the good
 abbot¹² harde¹³ the pylgryme, ¹⁴great dropis¹⁴ fell fro
 his eyen¹⁵ when he harde his nephue Huon namyd /
 20 and sayd, 'frend, I pray you yf it be trewe as ye saye,
 to shew me the trouth yf ye haue sene my nephue
 Huon / for it is he that I loue best in all this worlde, and
 desyre moste to se hym / ¹I pray you shewe⁹ me what
 24 is his mynd, other to retourne hether or elles to abyde
 styll¹⁶ there; ¹⁷wold to god¹⁸ I were in det to pay a
 .M. marke of golde so *that* he were as nowe here in this
 hall.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'of youre nephue whome ye
 28 desyre so moche to se, ¹⁹or it be past a moneth¹⁹
 he wyll²⁰ be here with you, and, syr, he shewyd me at
 my departyng fro hym that he hath a daughter whom

Huon found the
 abbot,
 saluted him,

and in answer to
 his inquiry Huon
 describes himself
 as a pilgrim from
 Jerusalem,

who had met with
 a young knight
 named Huon of
 Bordeaux.

Huon prayed the
 pilgrim, since he
 was coming into
 this country,
 to deliver a
 message to the
 abbot.

In a month Huon
 will arrive here,

¹ and. ² to. ³ omitted. ⁴ Iesus chryst.
⁵ why. ⁶⁻⁶ said that. ⁷ from. ⁸ his. ⁹ vnto.
¹⁰ Fol. cxxxiiii. col. 2. ¹¹ haue bene. ¹² had well.
¹³ and vnderstood. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ many teares.
¹⁵ and trickled downe his cheeks. ¹⁶ there still. ¹⁷ I.
¹⁸ that. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ before a moneth be past.
²⁰ (by the grace of God).

and also he charged the pilgrim to see Clariet, for Huon knows not if she is alive or dead.

The abbot will summon Clariet into the hall.

Huon is most joyful,

The abbot sends a noble knight, Sir Emery, to fetch Clariet.

Sir Emery salutes her;

she returns his salutation, and demands his news.

A pilgrim has come from beyond the sea with tidings of Huon, her father; the abbot desires her to come and speak with him.

Clariet and her damsels enter the hall.

ye haue norysshed and brought vp / and he charged me greatly that I shuld desyre of you to se her or¹ I departyd fro you, he knoweth not whether she be a lyue or dede / I wolde gladly se her yf it were your 4 pleasure.' 'Frende,' quod the abbote, 'ryght gladly ye shall se her. I shal cause her to come hether, and then ye maye se her at your ease / and I dare well saye to² you that in all the world ye shall not³ fynd no 8 fayrer nor a sweter creature, nor more wyser of her age nor better lernyd, & yet she is but .x. yerys of age.

¶ When Huon vnderstode the abbot, ye maye well 12 know that he had great ioye at his harte peuely, & thankyd our lord Iesu chryste. Then the abbot callyd to² hym a ryght notable knyght, namyd syr Emery, and commaundyd hym to go & feche thether 16 his nece Claryet. y^o knyght went into the chaumbre wheras the fayre lady was with other .iiii. noble ladyes, who⁴ had brought her vp / then Syr Emery saluted the lady and the other that were with her / 20 when the yonge lady parseyued syr Emery, she rose vp and renderyd to hym his salutacyon, & ryght humbly saing, 'syr knyght, I am ioyous⁵ of your comynge, I pray you⁶ shew⁷ sum⁸ of your newes'⁸ / 'sertaynly, 24 fayre lady,' quod y^o knyght / 'hether is come a pylgryme, who is come fro beyond the see / and he hath shewyd² the abbot your vnclc tydynges of your father, duke Huon, therefore your vnclc desyareth you to 28 come and speke with hym.' when the lady harde spekyng of her father, with all her harte she desyred to know sum sertayne tydynges /⁹ she and her damesels departed out of y^o chambre and came in to the hall to 32 the abbot her vnclc, accompanied with .ii. notable

¹ before. ² vnto. ³ omitted.

⁴ Fol. cxxxiiii. back, col. 1. ⁵ ioyfull. ⁶ to. ⁷ mee.
⁸ and tidings. ⁹ and then.

knyghtes; when¹ she enteryd into the hall rychely
 aparalyd / no man coud dyscryue her beaute,² she was Her beauty is so
great; nature can
do no more;
 so well formyd *that* ³god and³ nature⁴ coude not
⁴ amende her / her skynne was as whyte as y^e floure in
 the mede⁵ / & colouryd lyke the red rose / her hanches
 low and her pappys sumwhat resynge, her throte smoth
 and clere / her chyne vaunted / her mouth as vermeyl
⁸ as a rose / her tethe small & well rengyde, and whyte /
 her face whyte and well colouryd, meddelyd⁶ whyte &
 red / her eyene smylynge, her chere ameraus to behold,
 her nose strethe / her forehed whyte / her here yelow /
¹² her eeres gentyll and close, I can not deuise the
 .x. parte of her excellent beaute / none coude regarde all who see her
praise and love
her.
 her⁷ but that praysed and louyd her / all her beaute
 and her swete demenor, and great humelyte that was
¹⁶ in her / yf I shulde⁸ dyscryue it / it shulde⁹ be ouer
 long to rehers; when Huon had¹⁰ sene his doughter¹¹,
 who was so fayre / he gladly beheld her with / ¹²out
 makynge of any knowlage / then y^e abbot toke his nese
²⁰ by the hande & led her to¹³ Huon, and sayd / ' pylgryme,
 howe say you by³ this damysell / ye maye well parsayue The abbot telle
the pilgrim of
her beauty and
wit.
 by³ her she hathe not bene sore trauelyd nor moche
 come in the sonne / I haue kept her a long space¹⁴ /
²⁴ and yf she be garnysshed with beaute / in lyke wyse
 so she is withe wytte and bounte / she is daughter to¹⁵
¹⁵ Huon of Burdeaux / the man in the worlde that I
 moost loue / *that*¹⁶ wold to god¹⁷ I dyd se hym as I do
²⁸ you¹⁸ / but yf god send me lyf¹⁹, this lady shall be
 rychely maryed, I shall²⁰ gyue her ³of my³ goodes that and how he
intends to dower
her richly.
 she shall be ryche and pusaunte.' ' syr,' quod Huon,
 ' I pray to our lorde Iesu chryst to gyue her good

¹ then. ² for. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ herself.
⁵ meadow. ⁶ mingled. ⁷ nor looke vpon her.
⁸ heere. ⁹ would. ¹⁰ well. ¹¹ clariet.
¹² Fol. cxxxiii. back, col. 2. ¹³ vnto. ¹⁴ time.
¹⁵ Duke. ¹⁶ I. ¹⁷ that. ¹⁸ nowe. ¹⁹ and helth.
²⁰ will.

Clariet asks for tidings of her father.

The pilgrim relates how he and Huon have been companions for a long space,

and the adventures they have had together.

Huon will return before two months are past.

Clariet hopes he will deliver her mother out of prison.

Huon then declares who he really is,

and that he is going to make war on the Emperor Thierry.

fortune / & that she may be so maryed that her blod may therby be lyft vp and exalted' / then the fayre lady Claryte sayd to¹ Huon / 'syr pylgryme, I pray you² shew me yf ye know any tydynges of my father, ⁴ duke Huon of Burdeaux?' / 'fayre lady,' quod Huon, 'he and I togyther haue bene a longe space³ beyonde the see / and companyons together / and we fought the sowdan of babylon that now is / it is not he that was ⁸ set there by Huon after that he had slayn ye great Admyrall gaudes, it is a nother who syn that tyme conqueryd⁴ y^e cytye & y^e countre of Egypt / many aduentures Huon and I⁵ sufferyd, but at the end ¹² we dyscumfyted the sowdan and his men⁶ slayne'⁷ / 'pylgrym,' quod⁸ Claryte, 'I requyre you² shewe me yf ye know that⁹ my dere father wyll retorne hether agayn¹⁰ / the whiche is the thynges in the world that I ¹⁶ most desyre' / 'fayre lady,' quod he, 'I answere you or¹¹ .ii. monethes be past ye shall se hym here in good helth' / 'I praye ¹²to¹² god ¹³it may be so,' quod the lady¹³ / 'that he maye delyuer my mother out of ²⁰ prysone, where as she ¹⁴is in great pouerte and mysery.'

¶ When Huon¹⁵ harde¹⁶ his doughter, he wold no lenger hyde hymselfe / but sayd, 'my ryght dere doughter, or¹⁷ august be past I shall delyuer her or ²⁴ dye in y^e payn, for I shall moue¹⁸ suche warre agaynst y^e emperoure Therry, that yet or¹⁷ I dye I shall stryke of his hede¹⁹ what so euer fall therof' / when the lady harde Huon how he sayd that he was her father, she ²⁸ changed coloure and blussyd as rudy as a rose, and thought to herself by the wordes that he spake that he was her father, where of she was²⁰ ioyfull, & sayd /

¹ vnto. ² to. ³ time. ⁴ bothe. ⁵ haue.

⁶ are. ⁷ and destroyed. ⁸ the faire Ladie.

⁹ whether. ¹⁰ or no. ¹¹ that before.

¹²⁻¹³ vnto our lord. ¹³⁻¹³ gouth the Ladie, it may be so.

¹⁴ Fol. cxxxv. col. 1. ¹⁵ had well. ¹⁶ and vnderstood.

¹⁷ before. ¹⁸ make. ¹⁹ from his bodie. ²⁰ right.

'A, syr, I praye you yf ye be duke Huon of Burdeaux,
 my father,¹ shewe me.' / 'my ryght dere doughter,
 byleue it suerly, for I wyll no lenger hyde it' / when
 4 the lady hard that he was her father she cleppyd hym,
 and .xx. tymes kyssed hym. Then the abbote came
 and embrassed hym, and sayd / 'my ryght dere
 nephew, the ioy that my harte desyreth² your comynge
 8 is to me so agreable³ that I can not tell whether I
 dreme or not *that* I se you'⁴ / then agayn⁵ embrassed
 hym, makyng the greatest ioy in the worlde. Also
 there was Claryet his doughter, who embrassed and
 12 kyssed hym / then all that were in y^e howse came
 thether to make⁶ chere and feest⁷ / 'fayre nephew,'
 quod the abbot, 'I am sore abashed that ye be returned
 with so small a company.' 'fayr⁸ vncler,' quod Huon /
 16 'it coude be none other wyse; I haue had suche
 fortunes on⁹ the see *that* the moost parte of my men ar
 dede and peryshed, and sum by malady, and sum ar
 returned to theyr owne countrees / and specyaly they
 20 that went with me ar abydyng at the rocke of the
 Adamant, and there al be dede for¹⁰ fayme, and they
 that were my gydes to haue brought me to¹¹ enphame
 ar in lyke wyse dede there' / then¹² ¹³Huon began to
 24 shewe¹¹ the abbot all the aduentures that he had syn he
 departed fro the noble cytye of Burdeaux / there were
 sum that hard it *that* toke it for a mock, & al ye he
 shewyd of so many great meruaylles / they thoughe¹⁴ the
 28 moost part of them were lyes / ¹⁵one sayd to an nother,
 'great auantage hath these vacaboundes to lye, bycause
 they fynde no man to say them naye / & yf any man
 say nay, theyr answey is rudy to saye go and se' /
 32 then the abbote sayd, 'fayre nephew, yf I were of y^e

Claryet, right joyful, embraces her father.

The abbot expresses his joy at Huon's return; he can hardly believe it true.

All in the house make a feast.

The abbot cannot understand why Huon has so small a company;

but he learns that of his companions, some are dead, and others have returned to their own country.

Huon relates all the adventures he has had since he left Bordeaux.

Some think he is mocking.

1 to. 2 hathe of. 3 acceptable. 4 heere and.
 5 hee. 6 great. 7 feasting. 8 good. 9 vppon.
 10 by. 11 vnto. 12 Duke. 13 Foi. cxxxv. col. 2.
 14 that. 15 and.

If the abbot were younger, gladly would he go with Huon to destroy the Emperor, but he will pay with his own treasure a number of men of war who shall aid Huon.

As the abbot is one hundred and fourteen years old, he will abandon all his treasure to Huon, who can take as much as he pleases.

age to bere harneys,¹ gladly I wold go with you² to destroy this Emperoure who hath done you so myche yll; I shall sende for suche a nombre of men of warre and pay them with my tresoure, the whiche I haue⁴ longe tyme gatheryd togyther, and shal ayed you to make such warre *that* it shall³ be euer³ had in remembraunce / or elles I wyll dye in the payne, and all they that shulde go with me / and to cause hym to⁸ make you amendes of al the ylles and damages that he hath done to⁴ you / yet sumwhat I haue done all redy / for it is not long⁵ that one of the Emperours nephewes was slayn by my men, and all they that¹² were with hym slayn or taken / for, nephew, I haue gatheryd togyther as⁶ great treasure *that* I may therwith wel⁷ entertayn a .C. M. men for .ii. yere without sellynge or laynge to plegge any fote of londe pertenyng¹⁶ to my churche / but as nowe I am so olde that I can not ryde out, for I am a .C. & xiiii. yere of age / and therefore syn⁸ I can not go with you / I shal abandone to⁴ you all my treasure; ⁹ take therof as moche as²⁰ it shall please you' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'ye make me so great an offere that ones or I dye I truste to rendere to⁴ you the doble¹⁰ by the grace of god.'

¶¹¹ How duke Huon of Burdeaux shewyd to²⁴ his vncl, the abbote of Cluny, all the aduentures that he had syn he departed fro the¹² cytye of Burdeaux / & how he gaue y^o abbot y^o appyll of yought, wherby²⁸ y^o good abbot became agayn to his beaute that he had when he was of .xxx. yere of age.

Ca. C.xlvii.

¹ armour. ² to ayde you. ³⁻³ alwayes be. ⁴ vnto.
⁵ since. ⁶ a. ⁷ omitted. ⁸ seeing that. ⁹ and.
¹⁰ value. ¹¹ Fol. cxxxv. back, col. 1. ¹² noble.

When¹ Huon of Burdeaux² vnderstod
 the³ abbot his vncler, and sawe the
 fayr offere and seruyce that he had
 4 offeryde⁴ hym, &⁵ sayd / 'syr, of your
 curtesie and largesse, and all the good
 that ye haue done to⁴ me and to my doughter claryet,
 god rewarde you for it / trewe it is after *that* I had fought
 8 with the gryffons ; I came to⁴ a fayr fountayn, & there
 by was a tree growynge charged full of fayr fruyte, the
 tree was called the tre of yought, of y^e which I gaderyd
 .iiii. appyls, wherof ye shall haue one and shall eete it,
 12 and as sone as ye haue eten thereof wherby ye shal
 become as yonge, and as stronge and lusty as ye were
 when ye were of the age of .xxx. yere.' Then there
 was a monke in the howse callyd dan Johan salmet,⁶
 16 who began to laugh, and hasted hym to speke, &
 sayd / 'A, syr, what is it that ye saye / thys .ii.M. yere
 there was neuer man at the tree of yought, therefore this
 tale is not to be byleuyd' / ⁷when Huon harde the
 20 monke he waxyde rede for angre, & lyft vp his staffe
 and wolde haue stryken therwith the monke, and⁸
 he had not skept backe, and sayd / 'A, thou false
 monke, *thou* lyst falsly / I haue bene there, and that
 24 *thou* shalt se the profe there ⁹of whether I say trewe or
 not' / then the abbot came bytwene them and stoppyd
 the stroke / and sayd to⁴ Huon / 'A, my ryght dere
 nephew, apayse yourself' / and then he sayd to the
 28 monke / 'A, thou ¹⁰gloutone,¹⁰ by the faythe *that* I owe
 to⁴ my lorde saynt bennet,¹¹ thy wordes ¹²shall¹² be
 sore punysshid' / then he causyd the monke to be set
 in presone / and then the abbote sayd to⁴ Huon / 'syr,
 32 I pray you be no lenger dyspleasyd' / then Huon toke

Huon telleth how
 he gathered the
 fruit of the tree of
 youth,
 and offers one of
 the apples to the
 abbot in order
 that he may
 become once
 again a young
 man.

Thereupon a
 monk, Johan
 Salmet, laughs
 and cries that the
 tale is false.

Huon waxes
 furious.

and the abbot
 sends the monk
 to prison.

¹ Duke. ² had well. ³ good. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ he.
⁶ Saliuet. ⁷ and. ⁸ if. ⁹ Fol. cxxxv. back, col. 2.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ rude groome. ¹¹ for.
¹²⁻¹² thou shalt.

one of his appyls and toke¹ it to his² vncler the abbote,
 and sayd / ' syr, take this appyll, y^e whiche I gaderyd
 of the tree of yought ; I gaderyd³ .iii., and one I gaue
 to the admyrall of Perce, and a nother I kept for **4**
 myself, the which I gyue you / ⁴I wolde haue gaderyd
 mo but I was defended⁵ by an aungell sent fro our
 lorde Iesu chryst / &, syr, knowe for trought that the
 admyrall of perce or⁶ I gaue hym y^e appyll he was of **8**
 the age of .vi. score yere & more / but as soone as he
 had eeten therof / he became as fayr and as stronge as
 when he was .xxx. yere of age, & he is as nowe one of
 the fayrest pryncys of⁷ the worlde ; By the whiche **12**
 myracle he and all his people of his realme forsok⁸
 the⁹ law of macomete and toke on¹⁰ them the byleue of
 our lorde Iesu chryst, and were chrystenyd / & they
 that wold not were hewen al to peses / and after that for **16**
 the loue that he bare¹¹ me, he passed the see with me
 with great pusaunce, and we enteryd in to y^e sowdans
 land / where as we dycumfyted hym in playne batayll /
 when the² abbote¹² harde¹³ his nephew he had great **20**
 ioy, and toke the appyll / & made therof¹⁴ the synges
 of y^e crosse, and dyd eete it vp euery deale,¹⁵ wherby
 incontynent in¹⁶ syght of all them that were there
 present, he became in to his fyrst youth as he was **24**
 when he was ¹⁷but of y^e age of .xxx. yeres, his whyte
 berd fell away & a new berd come / his iowes that
 were lene & pale, y^e flesse grew again new quycke flesse,
 so that he became a fayre¹⁸ man & wel fornyshyd of **28**
 body and membres / a farer man can¹⁹ no man see, nor
 lyghter, nor lustyer / wherof he had suche ioye at his
 harte that he ran and enbrasyd Huon, and kyssed hym

Huon tells how
 the Admiral of
 Persia ate one of
 the apples,
 and straightway
 became fair and
 strong as a man
 of thirty years,
 and how, on
 account of this
 miracle, all the
 men of his realme
 became Chris-
 tians.

Then the abbot,
 making the sign
 of the cross, took
 the apple and
 ate it,

and at once
 became as a man
 of thirty years.

In great joy he
 embraces Huon.

¹ gaue. ² good.

³ therof. ⁴ and. ⁵ forbidden.

⁶ before. ⁷ in. ⁸ did forsake. ⁹ false and detestable.

¹⁰ vpon. ¹¹ vnto mee. ¹² had well.

¹³ and vnderstood. ¹⁴ thereon. ¹⁵ whit. ¹⁶ the.

¹⁷ Fol. cxxxvi. col. 1. ¹⁸ young. ¹⁹ could.

more then x. tymes / when they *that* were¹ present
 saw the² great merueyll, they were greatly abashed, &
 sayd one to a nother / that Huon was worthy to be
 4 byleued / for out of suche a prynces mouthe³ neuer
 Issuyd a ley / there was moche ioy made / the tabels
 were set & they went to dyner / there sat the abbote
 and Huon, and claryet his doughter / of there seruyce
 8 and meetes I wyll make no rehersall, for they were
 rychely seruyd ; after² they had dyned & grace sayd /
 all y^e monkes of the couent came & knelyd downe
 before Huon, and humbly requyred hym of pardone for
 12 dan Johan salmet,⁴ who was to hasty to speke, & all
 was but⁵ throghe nyclygence of yought and yll
 aduysed / when Huon saw all the monkes before hym
 on⁶ theyr kneys desyryng hym to pardon the monke of
 16 his folly. He sayd to⁷ them, 'syrs, I am content to
 fulfyll your desyers / for I am not come hether to
 troble any man' / when the⁸ abbote⁹ harde Huon¹⁰
 pardon his monke, he thanked hym, and sayd / 'syr,
 20 by saynte bennet, yf ye had not pardonyd hym, he
 shuld not haue come out of presone this yere' / then
 the monkes went to the pryson, and they shewyd⁷ the
 monke that was in pryson what meruaylles was done
 24 in his absence / and how theyr abbote, who was a
 .C. and .xiii. yere of age, was¹¹ become of the age of
 .xxx. yeres / 'syrs,' quod he, 'I am glad of my
 delyuerance, but I can¹² not byleue it be so as ye say,
 28 nor I wyll not byleue it tyll¹³ I se it' / then he went in
 to the hall whereas the abbote and Huon was¹⁴ togyther /
 and when he sawe the abbote yonge agayne / then he
 knelyd downe and cryed Huon mercy / and requyrd
 32 hym of pardon / y^e whiche Huon granted. Then there

They dine, and
are well feasted.

After dinner, the
monks of the
convent humbly
ask Huon to
pardon John
Salmet.

Huon grants their
request ;

the abbot thanks
him.

They show the
monk what
marvels have
taken place in his
absence.

He will not
believe them until
he sees them,

but when he saw
the abbot young
again, he cries
Huon mercy, and
asks his pardon,

¹ there. ² that. ³ (quoth they).

⁴ Saliuet. ⁵ omitted. ⁶ vppon. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ good.

⁹ had well. ¹⁰ his Nephew. ¹¹ now.

¹² Fol. cxxxvi. col. 2. ¹³ vntill. ¹⁴ were.

which Huon grants.

Huon is to send for 20,000 men of war, to fight the Emperor.

Huon desires to lead the Emperor by peaceful means to yield him his lands and seignories,

and Huon would even become his liege man.

That night would Huon study the matter.

was great ioy / then the abbote sayd / 'nephew, send for men of warre on all sydes / & I shall pay theyr wages to the nombre of .xx.M. men / for I haue golde & seluer inought / and let vs send for all our frendes, 4 and we shall be a great nombre of men able to fyght with y^e Emperoure, who hath wrongfully,¹ without cause, dyssheryte you, & kepyth your wyfe in pryson, wherof my hart is so sorowfull that I can no lenger endure it' / 8 'syr,' quod Huon, 'yf I may fynde any other way to come to passe with the Emperoure / then by spere and sheylde and no man slayne / then² I wold thynke³ I had well spede / for yf I myght do so moch with the 12 Emperoure that he wolde render to⁴ me my londes and synnoryes, & my wyf & men / and that therby I myght become his lege man / I⁵ thynge I had made then⁶ an honorable ende / for I haue done him great 16 damage' / 'fayr nephew,' quod the abbote, 'I wolde fayne knowe by what maner ye coude bringe this mater aboute' / 'vnce,' quod Huon, 'this nyght I wyl study on⁷ y^e mater, y^e which I trust to⁸ our lord 20 god⁹ to brynge to a good¹⁰ end.'

¶ How Huon of Burdeaux departed fro Cluny & went to y^e noble cytye of Maience vpon a fryday, & how he came nere to⁴ the 24 Emperoures oratory. Ca. C.xlviii.

Huon wrote a letter summoning his men lying at Tournous to come to the abbey of Cluny.



11 After that Huon and the¹² abbot had deused togyther of dyuers thynges / Huon wrote a letter to⁴ his men 28 beyng at tornus, that they shulde come to⁴ hym to the abey of Cluny; he sent a gentylman of the abey to

¹ and. ² then *after* thinke. ³ that. ⁴ vnto.

⁵ would then. ⁶ then *before* thinke. ⁷ vpon.

⁸ in. ⁹ Iesu chryst. ¹⁰ and prosperous.

¹¹ Fol. cxxxvi. back, col. 1. ¹² good.

- fêche them / ¹when he was come to tornus and had
 delueryd his letters to ²Barnarde / they made them
 redy, and trussyd theyr sumners and departed ³thence /
 4 and they rode so longe that they came in at the gates Led by Barnard,
they reach the
abbey, with all
the sumpter-
horses.
 of the abey of Cluny / y^e same tyme Huon and the
 abbot were lenyng out at a wyndowe / the abbot sawe The abbot sees
them from a
window, and
marvels to whom
they can belong.
 .xv. summers charyd, & .vii. mules and mulettes /
 8 wherof he had great merueyll of whence they were,
 and sayd to Huon, 'fayre nephew, can ye tell to ²
 whom parteneth ⁴thes summers, or what be they *that*
 bryngeth them?' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'know for
 12 trouthe ⁵I haue conqueryd them and they ar myn, Huon has
conquered them;
they are his, and
Barnard is
conducting them.
 and yonder is Barnarde that doth conducte them / who
 hathe had moche payne and trouble or ⁶he coude fynde
 me' / 'fayre nephew,' quod y^e abbot, 'great ioy I haue
 16 at my harte that he hathe soughe you so longe to fynde
 you at ⁷last / nor I coude not haue sent a more noble
 man / ye oughth greatly to loue hym / and also he
 is our kynsman / and alwayes he hath bene to ²you
 20 good ⁸and trewe' ⁹ / 'syr,' ⁸quod Huon, ⁸'in hym
 I haue founde all that ye say / and, syr, the great The biggest
sumpter-horse
bears two coffers
full of precious
stones and jewels.
 summer that ye se yonder with the .ii. great coffers
 well bandyd / they be full of presyous stones and
 24 iowelles, more worthe then .iiii. good cytyes; I wyll
 leue them here with you to kepe for the maryage of my
 doughter,' and with those wordes he kyst her / 'dere
 nephewe,' quod the ¹⁰abbot / 'and besyde that ye wyll
 28 gyue her I shall departe with her large ¹¹ly of my
 treasure' / therwith ¹²thether came ¹²Barnarde and all
 the other of his company / ¹when ye abbot perseyuyd
 Barnard he came to ²hym ¹³with his armes abroad and
 32 clepyd and kysed hym / and made ²hym great feest

¹ and. ² vnto. ³ from. ⁴ appertaine.⁵ that. ⁶ before. ⁷ the. ⁸⁻⁸ omitted.⁹ and faithfull. ¹⁰ good. ¹¹ Fol. cxxxvi. back, col. 2.¹²⁻¹² after Barnarde. ¹³ right ioyfully.

The abbot made a great feast in Barnard's honour.

The sumpter-horses are discharged, and all the coffers opened.

The abbot thinks Huon has riches enough to buy the whole realm of France.

Huon gives Claret a rich necklace of gold and precious stones.

She humbly thanks her father.

Huon apparels himself as a prince of high degree, and was fair to look upon.

On the ninth day Huon secretly departs, accompanied by Barnard.

Only the abbot knows of their going.

and chere ¹to hym ¹and to all his company / then duke Huon and y^e ²abbot ³and ⁴Claryte his daughter went in to theyr chambre and dyscharged the summers and openyd euery coffer / when the abbot had sene the ⁴ ryches that was in them / he was neuer so abashed, and sayd / 'A, Huon, fayr nephew, I thynke ye haue broughe hether ryches to bye therwith the hole realme of france /, then ⁵Huon toke a color of golde full of ⁸ precyous stones, that the clerenes of them illumyned all the howse / ⁶Huon dyd put the coler about his daughters neke, & kyst her ¹in the ¹mouth, & sayd / 'my dere ⁷daughter, I gyue you this ryche ¹coler, ¹² I neuer gaue you any thyng before / it is so rych that the stones therin ar worth a realme or a duchy' / when the lady sawe the rych coler, she was ⁸ioyfull, and knelyd downe before her father and thanked hym ¹⁶ humbly ⁹ / then Huon shewed all his treasure to ¹⁰his ² vncl the abbot / ⁶when all had bene sene and aweuyd, y^e abbot dyd put them in to coffers / then Huon aparalyd hymselfe with a ¹rych aparyll / then ⁶he ²⁰ semyd ¹¹ to be a prynce of hie degre, he was so fayre to behold that all such as sawe hym had ¹²pleasur to behold hym / there he made good chere ¹³the space of .viii. dayes / & on ¹⁴the .ix. daye in the mornyng ²⁴ he departed thence pryuely, and toke Barnard with hym, without ¹⁵knowlage of any parson except the abbot, to ¹⁰whom he sayd / ' ¹⁶vncl, I and Barnarde wyll departe, and I requyre you ¹⁷lat no man lyuyng ²⁸ know of my departyng as long as ye can kepe ¹⁸it secrete tyll ¹⁹ye here fro me sum newes' ²⁰ / 'syr, it shall be done,' quod the abbot / 'and I commend you

1-1 omitted. ² good. ³ his vncl. ⁴ the faire Ladie.
⁵ Duke. ⁶ and. ⁷ and louing. ⁸ right.
⁹ humbly before thanked. ¹⁰ vnto. ¹¹ then.
¹² great. ¹³ and feasting for. ¹⁴ vpon. ¹⁵ the.
¹⁶ Faire. ¹⁷ to. ¹⁸ Fol. cxxxvii. col. 1. ¹⁹ vntill.
²⁰ tidings.

to the sauegard of our lorde Iesu chryst ¹ / then Huon
 and Barnarde departed or ² any man were resyn / and
 they toke theyr waye ³ to ³ Maience & restyd not tyll ⁴
 4 they came to Coloyne, & the nexte mornynge they
 rode tyll ⁴ they came within a lege of ⁵ Maience / ⁶ then
 they enteryd in to a wode, & there they lyghted / then
 Huon aparaled hym[s]el]fe lyke a pylgrym in habyte,
 8 hose & shoes / and he toke an herbe and rubbed ther-
 with his vysage, so ⁷ that he semyde that he had bene
 in the sonne .x. yere, so that he was vnknowyn, ⁶ so
 that ⁶ Barnard that was with hym coude not knowe
 12 hym by the face / ⁶ then Barnarde lawghyde / then he
 toke hys stafe and skryp, and sayd to ⁸ Barnarde, 'syr,
 go ye ⁹ your waye before in to the cete with our
 horses, and take none aquentance of me thoughe ye se
 16 me, and take vp sum smal loggyng' / so Barnarde
 wente / on before / and Huon fayre & easly went
 after, ¹⁰ and so enteryd in to the cytye; And he had
 with hym the .xxx. ryche stones in his bosume / when
 20 he was enterid in to the cytye, he restyd not tyll ⁴ he
 came to the palyes / and as he went vp the stayres,
 he mette the stewarde of the Emperou[r]s howse, to ⁸
 whom he sayd / 'syr, I praye you in y^e honoure of our
 24 lorde Iesu chryst, ⁹ and of the blessed vyrgyn mary
 his mother, ⁹ to gyue me sum meet, for I am soo hungry
 that I can skant ¹¹ go on ¹² my leges, nor I haue no
 mony to bye me a morsell of brede' / when the
 28 steward ¹³ hard ¹⁴ the pylgryme, he behelde hym well
 and saw how he stafe shakyd in his hande / the which
 he thought had bene for ¹⁵ feblenes and pouerte / and
 had of hym great pyte, ¹⁶ and demaunded ¹⁷ fro whens

Huon and
Barnard take
their way to
Mayence,
and rest not till
they come to
Cologne.

When within
a league of
Mayence, Huon
disguises himself
as a pilgrim,
and stains his
face brown.

Barnard hardly
knew him.

Barnard is to go
and lodge in the
city, but to take
no notice of
Huon.

Huon, with thirty
precious stones in
his bosom, comes
to the Emperor's
palace.

He meets there
the steward,

and asks him for
food.

¹ and I beseech him humbly that you may haue peace with the Emperour Tirrey.

² before. ³⁻³ towards the Citie of. ⁴ vntill.

⁶ the Citie of. ⁶ and. ⁷ in such sort. ⁸ vnto.

⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ him. ¹¹ scarce. ¹² vpon.

¹³ had well. ¹⁴ and vnderstood. ¹⁵ with.

¹⁶ and compassion. ¹⁷ of him.

The steward bids Huon tarry until he has carried some food to the duchess Esclaramonde and the other prisoners.

They are to be killed five days hence.

Huon sorely weeps at this bad news,

and returns into the town, where he is well lodged by a notable burgesse.

To-morrow is Good Friday, and Huon asks his host if the Emperor does not give alms on that day.

he came / 'syr,' ¹quod Huon, 'I come streght fro the holy sepulture, and I haue enduryd moch pouerte' ² / 'frende,' quod the stewarde, 'I pray you' ³ tary ⁴ me here a lytell season / tyll ⁵ I haue bene in y^e presone ⁴ to bere ⁶ meet to ⁷ y^e duches Esclaramond and to ⁸ other presoners, who cryeth out ⁹for fayme ⁹ that they ben in / for yf they be longe in this cayse that they be in, ¹⁰ they can not long ¹¹ endure ¹² / for the Emperoure hath ⁸ takynge suche an inwarde hate to ¹³ her and to ¹³ them that be ¹⁴ in presone with her / that he hathe made promyse that as soone as Ester be ¹⁵ past, the lady shall be brente ¹⁶ and the other ¹⁷ al hangyd / and ¹² this day is sher ¹⁸ thursdaye, so ¹⁹ they haue to lyue but .v. dayes / and I am ryght sory for y^e noble lady that our Emperoure wyll put her to dethe without ²⁰ cause' / when Huon ²¹ hard that / he had no membre ²² but that ¹⁶ trymbelyd, and he cast downe his vysage and began sore ²³ to wepe, & sufferyd the stewarde to passe and spake no worde ²⁴ / but retorned in to the towne and went & logyd in y^e towne ryght heuy and sorowfull; ²⁰ how be it he was ryght ioyfull / ²⁵that his wyfe was alyue, for he ²⁶ feryd ¹⁹ she had bene dede; he logyd in a notable burgesse howse, who receyued hym well for the loue of god, but what so euer he had there he coude ²⁴ nother eete nor drynke for sorowe ²⁷ that he had at his hart / then he sayd to ⁷ his host, 'syr, to morowe is good fryday, the which day I thynk the Emperoure wyll gyue great almys' / 'frende,' quod his hoost / ²⁸ 'ye may suerly hyleue that the Emperoure wyl gyue as to morowe great almes, he wyll gyue of his goodes so

¹ Fol. cxxxvii. col. 2. ² and miserie. ³ to. ⁴ for.
⁵ vntill. ⁶ carie. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ the.
⁹⁻⁹ through famine and rage. ¹⁰ now. ¹¹ omitted.
¹² it. ¹³ against. ¹⁴ are. ¹⁵ is. ¹⁶ burnt.
¹⁷ Prisoners. ¹⁸ Shroue. ¹⁹ that. ²⁰ a just.
²¹ had well. ²² nor ioynt. ²³ pitifully. ²⁴ vnto him.
²⁵ in. ²⁶ greatly. ²⁷ and greefe.

largely to¹ al poure men *that* ²commeth to² hym that
 day³ shall be⁴ satsfyed / ye shall not fynde a prynce
⁵of⁵ greater almes / & of one thyng I aduertyse you /
 4 the Emperoure hathe ⁶one coustume, that the fyrst
 pour pylgryme that comethe to¹ hym to morowe shall
 be happy / for there is no thyng in y^e world, be
 yt neuer so dere, ⁷yf he demaund it of the emperoure
 8 it shall not be denyed hym : it must be at the same
 owre that the emperour goeth to¹ his chapel to say his
 orysons' / when Huon⁸ vnderstode his hoste / he began
 to reioyce, and thought in ⁹hymselfe¹⁰ yf he coude
 12 in any wyse he wolde be the fyrst that shulde demaund
 almes¹¹ / but that shulde be nother golde nor syluer, it
 shulde be his wyfe and his men that he hathe in
 pryson ; and also yf he may he wyll axe therwith
 16 his londe¹² / Then the hoste went to his reste / &
 Huon abode in his chambre alone and slepte not of al
 the nyght, but thought how he myght delyuer his
 wyfe / and the presoners that be¹³ with her ; and all
 20 nyghte he was in¹⁴ his prayers¹⁵ desyringe¹⁶ god to
 cunsayle and ayde hym to recouer his wyfe.¹⁷ Erly
 in the mornynge he rose and made hym redy, and
 toke his scrippe and stafe and wente straye to the
 24 palays, and sat on¹⁸ y^e greses wheras the emperour
 shuld pas / at whiche tyme the emperour was¹⁹ rysen
 vp / ²⁰there were many other pylgrymes that were there
 abydyng for y^e emperours comynge, and euery man
 28 couetyd to haue the fyrste gyfte / but Huon dyd so
 moch by his subtyl that he was the fyrste that
 enteryd into the chapell, and none other parseuyd
 hym / and he dyd hyde hymselfe²¹ in a corner nere to¹

The Emperor will
give largely,

and to the first
pilgrim that
cometh to him
he will deny
nothing that he
demands.

Huon determines
to be the first,
and demand his
wife and the
prisoners.

Huon passed a
sleepless night
considering how
he might best
deliver his wife.

In the morning
he goes straight
to the Emperor's
palace,

and finds there
many other
pilgrims who
coveted the first
gift.

Huon, by his
subtlety, entered
the chapel first,

¹ vnto.

²⁻³ if they come vnto.

³ they.

⁴ all.

⁵⁻⁶ that doth giue. ⁶ Fol. cxxxvii, back, col. 1.

⁷ but.

⁸ had well. ⁹ within. ¹⁰ that. ¹¹ of the Emperour.

¹² and Signiores. ¹³ were. ¹⁴ at. ¹⁵ humbly.

¹⁶ our Lord. ¹⁷ Escleremond. ¹⁸ upon. ¹⁹ newe.

²⁰ and. ²¹ closely.

and in a corner
awaits the
Emperor's
coming.

the emperours oratory, and there he sate styll without
any worde spekyng, abydyng¹ the comynge of the
emperour.

¶ How Huon dyd so moche with the em-
perour Therry, that he had peas³ / & his
wyfe renderyd to⁴ hym and all his londys⁵ /
and howe the emperour brought hym to⁴
the Abbey of Cluny, where as they found⁸
the good abbotte in harnays,⁹ not know-
ynge⁷ of the peas that was made.

Ca. C.xlix.

The Emperor
came into the
chapel,
and made his
prayers before the
altar.



When he was
ready to go into
the oratory, Huon
drew out a rich
stone of such
virtue, that its
owner could not
be overcome by
his enemy, or
drowned, or
burnt.

The stone cast
such a brightness
in the chapel that

ow shewethe the story⁸ that anone¹²
after that Huon was enteryd into the
chapell / the emperoure came in and
knelyd downe before the aulter and
made his prayers; ⁹many pouver men¹⁶
were there abydyng y^e ende of his
prayers, and no man sawe Huon wheras he was hedyn¹⁰
in a corner harde by the emperours oratory / when y^e
emperour had made his prayers, he rose and tornyd him²⁰
to have gone into his oratory / and Huon who had great
desyre to be the fyrst & ¹¹to haue the fyrst gyfte of the
emperoure; he drewe out of his bage a rych stone / y^e
whiche was of suche vertue that who so euer dyd bere²⁴
it hym coude not be ouer come with his enemye, nor
coud not be drownyd nor brent¹²; the stone¹³ was so
vertuous¹³ that none coud esteme the valure therof. And
besyde that, it cast such a¹⁴ clerenes in the chapell that²⁸
the emperoure was abashid therof,¹⁵ nor he knew not

¹ there for.

² Fol. cxxxvii. back, col. 2.

³ with him.

⁴ vnto.

⁵ and Signories.

⁶ armour.

⁷ any thing.

⁸ Historie.

⁹ and.

¹⁰ closely.

¹¹ Fol. cxxxviii. col. 1.

¹² burnt.

¹³⁻¹⁵ had such great virtue.

¹⁴ omitted.

¹⁵ therat.

fro whence that lyght shulde come / then he behelde
 Huon and Huon helde¹ the stone in his hande, and
 shewyd it to² the emperour / and when the emperoure
 4 saw the riche stone he greatly³ dyd couet³ it / and
 auauunsyd hymselfe and toke it⁴ of the pylgrymes
 hande / who presentyd it to² hym / when the emperour
 had the stone in his hand, he had great ioy at his hart,
 8 for he was cunnynge in the discryuyng of stones, and
 sware to hymselfe that the pylgryme shulde neuer haue
 it agayne for any thyng that he coude do / but he
 thought⁵ if he wold sell it, he wolde gyue hym as
 12 moche golde & syluer as he coud resonably demaunde /
 or elles be thought to kepe it styll what so euer fell
 therof / ⁶then the emperoure sayd to³ Huon, 'pyl-
 gryme, I pray the⁷ shewe² me where ⁸hast thou get⁸
 16 this ryche⁹ stone' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I haue brought
 it fro beyonde y^e see' / 'frend,' quod the emperour,
 'wylt thou sel it, and I shall gyue the for it what so euer
 thou wylt haue; and to be in¹⁰ suertye to bere awaye
 20 my gyfte that I wyll gyue thee for it, I shall cause the
 to be conductyd into thyne owne countre wheresoeuer
 it be' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I wyll gyue it² you with a
 good hart: so it be trew that myne host hathe shewed²
 24 me this daye / for he hathe shewed² me that your
 costume is that y^e fyrst parsonne pylgryme that comethe
 to² ¹¹you on¹² this day, ¹³good friday, should haue of
 you a gyfte such as he wolde demaund after that ye haue
 28 made your praier to our lorde god' / 'pylgryme,' quod
 the emperoure, 'he that shewed the that said ¹⁴trouth¹⁴
 and therefore what so euer thou demaundeste other
 boroughe towne or citey, or what thyng so euer it
 32 be / I promyse to gyue the who so euer be dyspleasyd

the Emperor
knew not whence
the light came.

Huon showed the
Emperor the
stone,

and the Emperor,
who was cunning
in precious
stones, desires to
buy it of the
pilgrim for gold
and silver,

or even to keep it
happen what
might;

he asks Huon
how he came
by it.

Huon will give
the stone to the
Emperor if,
according to his
custom, he will
grant the first
pilgrim any
request he may
prefer.

This the Emperor
agrees to do.

¹ did holde. ² vnto. ³⁻³ desired to haue. ⁴ out.
⁵ within himself that. ⁶ and. ⁷ to.
⁸⁻⁸ thou hast gotten. ⁹ and bountifull. ¹⁰ the more.
¹¹ Fol. cxxxviii. col. 2. ¹² vpon. ¹³ being.
¹⁴⁻¹⁴ that which is true.

Huon wants
neither gold nor
silver.

Whatever it be,
the Emperor will
hold by his
promise.

Huon then
demands pardon
for the trespasses
and ill deeds that
he or his men
have done against
the Emperor;
and that all men
and women
belonging to him
shall be delivered
to him;
that all his townes,
borowhs, and
castles shall be
rendered him.

therwith I graunt it¹ the / therefore demaund what²
thou wylt' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'of your grace and
fayre gyfte I³ thanke you / therefore, syr, with a good
hart, I do⁴ gyue you that stone that I delyuerid to⁵ 4
you⁶ right⁶ now in the recompence of the courtoysy and
gyfte that ye haue grauntid⁵ me, the whiche shall be
nother golde nor syluer, and, syr, bycause I know sar-
tayne that the renome is ouer al the world that ye be⁷ 8
a iust and a trewe noble man, and that⁸ ye promyse ye
wyl vpholde and⁹ neuer swarue fro your promys / and
by cause¹⁰ I knowe suerly that the promys that ye haue
made⁵ me, ye wyl vpholde of what so euer gyfte I 12
desyre to haue' / 'frende,' quod the emperour, 'I wyl¹⁰
you¹¹ know that yf ye demaund .iiii. of my best cityes,
I shall gyue you them syn¹² I haue made¹⁰ promys, and¹³
god be pleasyd I shal not go fro¹⁴ my promyse / for I 16
had rather¹⁰ one of my handys were cut of then I shulde
be found false of my wordys / & therefore demaunde
and suerly ye shall haue your demaund withe out any
refuse.'¹⁵ 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I¹⁶ thanke you' / and 20
wolde haue kyssyd his feete / but the emperour wolde not
suffer hym, but toke hym vp / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'fyrste,
before all other thynges, I desyre of you pardon / of all
the yll dedis and trespasses that I or my men haue 24
done agaynst you; and yf ye haue in your preson other
men or women partaynyng to⁵ me or of¹⁷ my lynage
that ye wyl delyuer them all to⁵ me; and also yf ye
haue any thyng of myne other townes¹⁸ / borowe / or 28
castell / I requyre you by y^e promyse that ye haue
made⁵ me to render them to⁵ me quyte / syr, any
other thyng I demaunde not.' / 'pylgrim,' quod the
emperour, 'make no dought to haue that⁸ I haue 32

¹ to. ² so euer. ³ most hartely. ⁴ omitted.
⁵ vnto. ⁶⁻⁶ but euen. ⁷ are. ⁸ which.
⁹ kepe and. ¹⁰ that. ¹¹ well. ¹² seeing. ¹³ if.
¹⁴ for in text. ¹⁵ deniall. ¹⁶ hartely.
¹⁷ Fol. cxxxviii. back, col. 1. ¹⁸ or Citia.

promysyd¹ / therfore I graunt al your desyre / but I
 requyre you humbly² shew³ me what man ye be, & of
 what countre, and of what lynage, syn⁴ ye haue desyred
 4 of me suche a gyfte / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I am he that
 sumtyme was duke of Burdeaux, whome ye haue so
 moche hated, I come nowe fro beyonde the se, wheras
 I haue endurid moche payne and pouerte. I thanke
 8 our lorde Iesu Chryst that I haue done so moch that I
 am nowe agreyd with you, and I shall haue agayne the
 duches Esclaramonde, my⁵ wyfe and my men and⁶
 landes⁷ yf ye wyll⁸ holde⁸ your promyse / when the
 12 Emperoure⁹ vnderstode Huon / all his blode began to
 change and¹⁰ was a great space or¹¹ he spake any worde,
 he was so¹² abashed,¹³ at¹⁴ laste he sayde, 'A, Huon,
 ar you he by whome I haue sufferyd so many yllys and
 16 domages, and haue slayne so many of my nephues and
 other of my men / I wolde not haue thought that ye
 wolde haue ben so hardy to haue shewed your selfe
 before me, nor to haue com into my presence, ye haue
 20 well ouercome me and enchaunted me; I had rather
 haue lost .iiii. of my best cityes, ye and all my countre
 brent¹⁵ and destroyed / ye¹⁶ and my selfe banysshyd out
 of myn owne countre for .iii. yere rather than ye shuld
 24 haue thus come to my presence / but syn⁴ it is thus
 knowe for trouthe that¹⁷ I haue promysyd³ you I shall
 vpholde¹⁸ / and fro hence forthe in the honoure of the
 passyon of¹⁹ our lorde Iesu Chryst, and of this good
 28 daye on the whiche he was crucyfied & put to dethe.
 I pardon you all myne yll wyll and good wyll, I shall
 not be pariurid, your wyfe and your londis,⁷ & your
 men; I shall render them into your handes / speke

The Emperour
 then asks what
 man this pilgrim
 is.

The pilgrim is
 none other than
 the Duke of
 Bordeaux,

who thanks our
 Lord that he will
 haue again his
 wife, and his men,
 and his lands.

The Emperour is
 abashed, and

wonders at
 Huon's boldness
 in thus coming
 into his presence.

The Emperour
 must, however,
 abide by his
 word,

and will render
 Huon those who
 belong to him.

¹ vnto you. ² to. ³ vnto. ⁴ seeing. ⁵ louing.

⁶ my. ⁷ and Signiories.

⁸⁻⁸ be as good as your word and vphold.

⁹ had well heard and. ¹⁰ hee. ¹¹ before. ¹² sore.

¹³ but. ¹⁴ the. ¹⁵ burnt. ¹⁶ omitted. ¹⁷ which.

¹⁸ and keepe. ¹⁹ Fol. cxxxviii. back, col. 2.

therof who lyste / otherwyse shall it not be, nor I wyl
 neuer do the contrary' / then Huon knelyd downe
 before the emperour and¹ thanked hym, and desyred
 hym to forgeue hym all his trespasses / 'Huon,' quod 4
 the emperoure, 'god forgeue you,² and as for me, with a
 good harte, I do pardon you' / then the emperoure toke
 Huon by the hande and toke hym vp and kyste hym
³ on the mouth³ in token of good peas and amyte / 'syr,' 8
 quod Houn, 'great grace haue I found in you synne⁴
 ye kepe⁵ your promyse / but, syr, if it maye please our
 lorde god / your guerdon shall be double' / 'Huon,'
 quod y⁶ emperour, 'I requyre you⁶ shewe me of your 12
 newes and aduentures that ye haue had'⁷ / 'syr,' quod
 Huon with a good wyll, 'after that your deuyne ser-
 uyce be⁸ done, and the passyon of our lorde Iesu
 Chryste red' / 'Huon,' quod the emperour, 'I⁹ can 16
 you thanke⁹ for that you saye' / then the emperour /
 toke Huon by the hand and led hym into his oratory
 with him / wheras they harde the deuyne seruyce
 wherof many lordes and knyghtes¹⁰ were sore abashed, 20
 and hade¹¹ maruayle what pylgreme it was *that* y⁶
 emperoure dyd so moche honoure vnto. After that the
 deuine seruyce was done, the emperour retourned into
 his paleis holdyng Huon by the hande / the dyner 24
 was made redy,¹² they wasshed theyr handes and sate
 downe to dyner / and when dyner was done and the
 tables taken up, then in the emperours presence and
 in¹³ all the¹⁴ lordes there, Huon shewed all his 28
¹⁵ aduentures.

¶ Fyrste he shewed howe he had passed the Goulfe
 and spoken with Iudas / and after¹⁶ howe by fortune

¹ right humbly. ² thee. ³⁻³ verie kindly.

⁴ seeing. ⁵ and vpholde. ⁶ to.

⁷ since you departed from the Citie of Bordeaux. ⁸ is.
⁹⁻⁹ giue you good thanks. ¹⁰ and Lordes. ¹¹ great.

¹² and. ¹³ of. ¹⁴ other. ¹⁵ Fol. cxxxix. col. 1.

¹⁶ afterward.

of the se he aryued at the castell of the Adamante, and howe his company dyed there for¹ famyne : and shewed² of the beaute of that³ castell and of the great
 4 ryches therin / and after⁴ how he was borne⁵ thence
 by a gryffon to a great rocke, and howe he slewe .v. yonge Gryffons and the olde Gryffon *that* brought hym
 thether, wherof he hathe left at Cluny the fote of the
 8 same / then he shewed of the fountayne and of the tree of youth, and how he gathered therof three fayre
 apples, and more he wolde naue gathered but that our lord god commaunded hym by his aungel *that* he shuld
 12 not be so hardy⁶ to gather any more, and after that he shewed how⁷ he had passed the Goulfe of perse in
 great parell⁸ / and sayd, furthermore, 'syr, when I was passed that Goulfe I gathered many precious stones ;
 16 that⁹ I haue geuen you was one of them, the whiche stone is of great vertue / ¹⁰then I came to the great city of Thauris in Perse, whereas I founde a noble
 admirall, an olde auneynt knyght ; and he shewed¹¹
 20 me great courtoyses, and I gaue him one of myne apples to ete ; and as sone as he had eten therof he became¹²
 as yong as he was when he was but of .xxx. yere of age / and I thynke⁷ fro thens hether can not be founde a
 24 fayrer prynce ; and he was before of a¹³ .vi. score and .vii. yeres of age / and, syr, because I desyre withe all
 my harte to haue youre good grace, and that good peas and ferme maye be had betwene you and me, I wyll
 28 gyue you the thyrde apple y^e which¹⁴ I kepte for my selfe, by the whiche yf ye do ete it ye shall become
 agayn as yong and as lusty¹⁵ as ye were when ye were¹⁶ of the age of .xxx. yerys.' The emperoure when he
 harde that the apple that Huon wolde geue hym to eate

how he had visited the rich and beautiful castle of Adamant ;

how he had slain the gryffins,

and brought to Cluny the foot of the old gryffin ;

how he gathered three apples of the tree of youth ;

how he passed the Persian Gulf, and gathered there many precious stones ;

how the admiral of Persia became young again by eating of one of the apples.

Huon will give the third apple to the Emperor.

¹ by. ² declared. ³ the. ⁴ afterward.
⁵ caried from. ⁶ as. ⁷ that. ⁸ and daunger.
⁹ which. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹ to. ¹² to be. ¹³ omitted.
¹⁴ Fol. cxxxix. col. 2. ¹⁵ and as stronge.
¹⁶ but.

The Emperor is
joyful at the
thought he will
be young once
more,

and offers Huon
two good cities
and 60,000 men to
aid him in war.

The Emperor
eats the apple,

and becomes at
once as ruddy and
strong as a man
of thirty years.


All present
marvel greatly,

and tell the
Emperor he
should praise God,
that he ever was
acquainted with
duke Huon.

shulde cause hym to retourne to his yonge age agayne /
he was so ioyful that he neuer made suche chere before
in all his lyfe to any man as he dyd then to¹ Huon /
and sayde howe² he wolde be his frend for euer, and **4**
neuer fayle hym, and sayd, 'frend, I abandon my body
and my³ goodes at your pleasure / and I geue you two
good cityes to encrease your syngnorye / and besyde that
I promyse you if ye haue any busynes to do, I shall **8**
socoure you with .lx.⁴ thousande men, and shall ayde
you as y^e father shulde do the sone. Therwith Huon
wolde haue kneled downe to haue thanked the emperour,
but he wolde not suffer hym : ⁵then Huon toke the apple **12**
out of his bage and delyuered it to¹ the emperoure, the
emperoure who was sore desyrous to knowe yf he shuld
waxe yong agayne by reason of etinge of the apple ; he
callyd to¹ hym his lordes⁶ to the entent² they shulde **16**
se that maruayle / ⁵when the emperour had the apple
in his hand he put it⁷ to his mouthe and dyd eat it
euery dele,⁸ and as he was etynge therof his age
chaunged in to youthe, and by that tyme he had eten **20**
all the apple / his whyght berde fell of and the skynne
chaungyd lyke a man of .xxx. yeres of age / and also
his face and all his body that before was all ryuyled⁹
and rugged and pale, became then as whyght and¹⁰ **24**
ruddy, and felte hymselfe as lyght and fresshe & as
quycke to do any thyng, and as stronge as he was
when he was of the age of .xxx. yeres / wherof all that
were¹¹ present had ¹²great maruayle and were¹³ ioyful of **28**
that aduenture that was fallen to¹ the emperoure whom
they louyd / then they sayd, 'a,³ syr, suche a gyfte was
neuer geuen to any emperoure or kynge / well ye ought
to praise our lord god, what so euer losse y[e]¹⁴ haue **32**
had / that euer ye were aquaynted with duke Huon.'

¹ vnto. ² that. ³ omitted. ⁴ fortie. ⁵ and.
⁶ and Barons. ⁷ in. ⁸ whit. ⁹ wrinkled. ¹⁰ as. ¹¹ there.
¹² Fol. cxxxix. back, col. 1. ¹³ right. ¹⁴ yt in text.

¶ How the emperour made good cher to¹
²Huon of Burdeaux. Ca. C.xl[= cl.]

4  Hen the emperour saw hymselfe waxe
yonge agayne, he was so ioyfull that he
wyste not what to do; then he clyppyd
and kyssed huon more then .x. tymes,
sayenge, 'my ryghte dere frende, I
8 praye you³ forgeue me all the yles⁴ that I haue done¹
you, and for the sorowe and payne⁵ that I haue caused
your noble wyfe and men to suffer' / then the emperoure
called to¹ hym two of his lordes, and sayd / 'syr, I
12 wyll that all the pouer people that be in my chapell
this day be newly aparayed, and to haue mete and
drynke suffycyent, for the loue of the passyon of our
lorde Iesu chryst, who this day hath done me that grace
16 that I am retourned fro age to youthe.' 'syr,' quod they,
'your commaundemente shall be done' / ⁶they went
& executed his pleasure. Then Duke Huon aprochyd
to¹ the emperoure, and sayd, 'syr, I desyre humbly
20 your grace to delyuer my wyfe⁷ and my men out of
preson.' 'syr,' quod the emperoure, 'it is good reason
that I do it' / then he sente for the gayler who had the
lady and the other presoners in his keypyng, and com-
24 maunded hym that the lady Esclaramond & the other
presoners shuld be brought into the hall / the gayler
went to the pre⁸son, & Huon with hym / ⁹when they
came thether / Huon wente to the dore & cryed out
28 aloude, and sayd, 'A, my ryght swete syster, I byleue
ye¹⁰ haue bene here¹¹ but yl loged; I haue great fere that
by reason of y⁶ paynes that ye haue endurid ye can not
long contynue / sartaynely yf ye dye I shal neuer haue

In great joy,
the Emperour
embraces Huon,

and asks him to
forgive the illis
he has done him.

All the poor are
to be clothed and
fed by the
Emperor's
bounty.

Two lordes
execute the
command.

Huon humbly
desires that his
wife and men be
delivered out of
prison.

Huon goes with
the gaoler to the
prison door,

and cries aloud
his fear that the
lady cannot
endure her
sufferings much
longer.

¹ vnto. ² Duke. ³ to. ⁴ and dammages.
⁵ paine *before* sorowe. ⁶ then. ⁷ Escleremond.
⁸ Fol. cxxxix. back, col. 2. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ that.
¹¹ here *after* lodged.

ioy.¹ when the lady² Esclaramond³ hard the voice of hym that spake at the dore / she stode styl and studied what voyce it myght be: for she thought⁴ she had hard *that* voyce before⁵ / & when she had mused a⁶ lytell,⁶ she thought it shulde be the voyce of Huon her husband: wherof she had suche ioy & myrth at her hart, *that* of a great season she coude not speke, but fell in a swoune in the preson: & when she reuyued & 8 came agayne to herselfe, she cryed out & said, 'a, my⁷ dere lorde and husband, long haue you lefte me in payne & mysery all a lone in this stynkyng & horrible preson, in the handes of them that loue you nothyng / ¹² and haue sufferyd moche payne, colde, and hunger; and⁸ great pouerte and in great fere of dethe.'⁹ ¶ when Huon¹⁰ harde¹¹ his dere wyfe¹² speke¹² so petuously / sorow¹³ so closid his hart that he had no power ¹⁶ to speke one word, and the teres fell¹⁴ in his eyen¹⁵ for¹⁶ petye *that* he had of his¹⁷ wyfe¹⁸ / also y^e gayler for very petye¹⁹ was constrayned to wepe / and so went downe into y^e preson & brought the lady vp / and ²⁰ then Huon and she beheld eche other, and coude speke no worde of a great season: ²⁰ but ran and embraced and kyssed eche other / & so fall downe²¹ bothe in a traunce / and so²² laye tyll²³ other knyghtes came thether ²⁴ & ²⁴ ferid²⁴ that they had bene ded; there was none but *that* wepte for petye / then the emperour cam thether hymselfe, and sore wepte and repented hym selfe of the ylles that he had ²⁵ caused²⁶ the lady²⁷ to suffer: ²⁸ then ²⁸ the²⁹ lordes reuyued them / then they clyppyd & kyssyd

The lady Esclaramonde thought she had heard that voyce before, and when she recognized it as Huon's, she fainted for very joy.

When she revied she cried out that she had been so long left alone in pain and misery.

Huon's sorrow at hearing these words was so great that he could only weep.

The gaoler brought up Esclaramonde.

Huon and she embrace each other, and fall down in a trance;

the lordes revive them,

¹ at my heart. ² Duchesse. ³ had well.
⁴ within herself that. ⁵ that time. ⁶ while. ⁷ right.
⁸ haue endured. ⁹ and desperation. ¹⁰ had well.
¹¹ and vnderstood. ¹² who spake. ¹³ and greefe.
¹⁴ from. ¹⁵ and trickled downe his cheekes. ¹⁶ the.
¹⁷ louing. ¹⁸ Escleremond and. ¹⁹ that he had.
²⁰ space. ²¹ to the ground. ²² they. ²³ vntill.
²⁴⁻²⁴ fearing. ²⁵ Fol. clx. (xl.) col. 1. ²⁶ done to.
²⁷ and made her. ²⁸ and. ²⁹ knyghtes and.

together / and Huon sayd / 'fayre lady, I requyre you¹ and Huon asks
 pardon me² that I haue taryed so longe fro you, & his wife's pardon
 haue lefte you in suche pouerte / payne / & parell³ of for having tarried
 4 deth. I⁴ haue scapyd,⁵ the which I⁶ thanke⁷ god so long from her.
 of his grace' / 'syr,' quod she, 'we ought greatly to
 thanke⁸ god, when he hathe sente vs that grace to se
 eche other & to come together⁹ / and that y^e haue
 8 peas with y^e emperour' / then the gayler went to all y^e The gaoler
 presons, and toke out al Huons men, and brought them releases all
 to¹⁰ hym, who had great ioye when they saw theyr Huon's men,
 lorde and mayster in sauegarde, and thankyd our lord who rejoice
 12 god, and humblye saluted Huon, and sayd / 'a,¹¹ syr, greatly to see
 blessed be the cure of your comynge, wherby we ar him.
 deluyered fro the paynes, trauayles / and pouertes /
 that we haue bene in.' 'My ryght dere frendes,' quod
 16 Huon / 'thus goeth the worlde ; you and I ar bound to
 thanke⁷ god of that he sendeth to¹⁰ vs' / then the em-
 perour toke Huon by the one hande and Esclaramond
 by the other, and led them into his palays, where as
 20 the tables were sette / and there sate downe to gether The Emperor sits
 the emperour and Huon and the duches / and al the down to table
 presoners at another table / and were all rychly seruyd / with Huon and
 of theyr metys and seruyces & ioye that they made, I the duchess ;
 24 wyll make therof but small rehersayle. And when the prisoners are
 they had al dyned, the emperour ordayned ladyes & at another table,
 damoysselles to serue the duches Esclaramond, and and all are richly
 ordayned chaumbers for y^e duke and for¹¹ her, & for all served.
 28 the other / they were¹² sarued of all thynges that they Chambers are
 desyred / and they had newe aparayle acordynge to theyr prepared for them
 desgres / anone y^e newes¹³ was knowen in the citey of all,
 the peas¹⁴ betwene Huon and the emperour, & how¹⁵ he and the news of
 32 had his wyfe¹⁶ renderyd to¹⁰ hym, & his men deluyered through the city.

1 to. 2 in. 3 daunger. 4 and. 5 for.
 6 humbly. 7 our Lord. 8 almightie. 9 againe.
 10 vnto. 11 omitted. 12 there. 13 and tidynge.
 14 made. 15 Fol. clx. (xl). col. 2.
 16 the Duchesse Escleremond.

Barnard hastens
to the palace.

The lady knew
him at once.
She owes him
great love that he
has sought her
lord and brought
him hither.

Barnard tells of
Huon's sufferings.

At the end of
eight days, the
Emperor an-
nounces his
intention of
conducting duke
Huon and the
duchesse to
Bordeaux to set
them in posses-
sion of their
lands.
Ten thousand
men are to
accompany him.

They depart from
Mayence, and
reach Cluny.

The abbot, having
heard no news of
Huon, had

out of prison / wherof Barnard, as he was in y^e towne
harkenynge for newes, was ryght ioyfull / & wente in
hast to¹ the palays, wheras he found Huon in his
chambre, with his wyfe y^e fayre Esclaramond / ²as sone 4
as he saw the duchesse, the water fell fro his eyen for ioy ;
then he saluted Huon and the duchesse / ²y^e lady knew
hym incontynent, and sayde / 'a, syr Barnard, wel I
ought to loue and to cherysse you / that ye haue so 8
sought for my lorde and husbonde as ³to bryng³ hym
hether.' 'Madame,' quod he, 'I haue done no thyng
but that⁴ I was bounde⁵ to do / ⁶great payne &
trauayle⁷ my lorde hath suffered' / ⁸then he shewed 12
suche newes as he knewe, wherof many great lordes
and knyghtes had great ioy to here hym for the mer-
uaylles that he shewed⁸ / Thus,⁹ when they had bene
there the space of .viii. dayes, and that theyr men were 16
well refreshed / then¹⁰ the emperour assembelyd¹¹ his
lordes, and sayd / 'syr, it is my wyll to lede and con-
ducte duke Huon & the duchesse to Burdeaux, to set
them in possessyon of theyr londes and sygnories. ²I 20
wyl haue .x. M. men to go with me and them, and to
bryng me agayne hether to Magence: acordynge to
his commaundement the men were made redy / & when
the emperour had ordeyned for Huons estate as it 24
aparteyned for hym & his wyfe & his men, & when
euery thyng was redy, they¹¹ mounted on¹² theyr horses,
& the duchesse had a ryche lytter / then¹³ they departed
fro¹⁴ Magence / & seyd not tyll they came within .ii. 28
leges of the abbey of Cluny / the good abbot, who knew
nothyng of the agreement betwene the emperour & Huon,
had gathered together of men of warre a¹⁵ .xx. M., &

¹ vnto. ² and.

³⁻³ that now at last through your tedious trauaille you haue
found him, and brought.

⁴ what. ⁵ in duty.

⁶ I am sorry for the. ⁷ that.

⁸ discoursed vnto them. ⁹ Then. ¹⁰ omitted.

¹¹ all. ¹² vpon. ¹³ so. ¹⁴ the Citie of. ¹⁵ about.

they were logyd in ¹the toune of Cluny; and the abbot
 was aduertysed of the emperours comynge into those
 partyes, and he hard no newes of Huon, wherof he
 4 was² sorowfull³ / & thought that the emperoure had
 taken Huon prsoner: then he issued out of the towne,
 and renged his men in good order of batayle without
 the town in a fayre playne, there abydyng for y^e
 8 emperoure, whome he sawe comynge.

gathered 20,000
 men of war, who
 are lodged in the
 town of Cluny.

When he saw the
 Emperor coming,
 the abbot ranged
 his men in order
 of battle, and
 awaited the
 Emperor.

¶ How the emperour aryuyde at Cluny, and
 how the abbot set on⁴ hym / and of y^e
 pease that was ther made, and how the
 12 emperour conueyed Huon to Burdeaux, &
 renderyd to hym al his londys, and of the
 partinge of⁵ the emperour, and how Huon
 made his prouysion to go to kyng oberon.

16

Ca. cli.

When the emperour saw the town of
 Cluny, he demaunded of Huon⁶ to
 whome partayned that towne / 'syt,
 20 quod he, 'it ⁷is belonginge⁷ to an
 vncle of myne, who is abbot there,⁸
 & we must pas that waye, and also I must nedes speke
 with hym or⁹ I go to Burdeaux / the same tyme the
 24 abbot, who was¹⁰ on a pusaunte¹¹ courser well armed at
 all peces,¹² sawe the emperoure comynge towards
 Cluny / ¹³then he sayd to his men, 'syrs, thynke this
 day to do wel¹⁴ / for yonder before vs we may se y^e
 28 emperoure our enemye comynge, wherfore we cannot
 scape without batayle; I am sure he hath taken Huon

The Emperor
 demands of Huon,
 to whom belongs
 the town of
 Cluny.

It belongs to
 Huon's uncle,
 who is abbot
 there.

The abbot saw
 the Emperor
 coming,

and exhorts his
 men to do well.

¹ Fol. cli. (xl.) back, col. 1. ² right.
³ and sore displeased. ⁴ vpon. ⁵ them and.
⁶ if he could tell him. ⁷⁻⁷ belongeth. ⁸ of.
⁹ before. ¹⁰ then mounted. ¹¹ and strong.
¹² points. ¹³ and. ¹⁴ and valiantly.

my nephue, but by the faythe that I owe to my lord¹
²saynte Benet, my patron / that takynge shalbe derely
 bought.' then they couched theyr speres and sporyd
 theyr horses, & com rynnynge towardes the emperour; ⁴
 and when the emperour saw them, he called Huon,
 and sayd / 'syr, yonder ye maye se men of warre
 all armed come rynnynng agaynst vs / I wote not what
 they thynke³ to do / but they seme to be oure enemyes ⁸
 as far as I can parseyue / ⁴they be a great nombre,⁵
 they are to be doughted and feryd' / 'syr,' quod Huon,
 'it is myne vnclē the abbot of Cluny, who hath reysed
 vp his men to socoure me / for he is not aduerteyssed of ¹³
 the peas made betwene you and me, ⁶he thynkethe⁷
 ye haue taken me presoner.' ⁴therwith the abbot
 dashed in among the emperours company, and the
 fyrst that he mette he ran hym clene thrughe with his ¹⁶
 spere / and so he seruid the second, thyrde, and
 fourth / and when his spere was broken, he drewe out
 his sworde / wherwith he bet downe the Almaynes,
 that it was maruayle to behold hym / and then came in ²⁰
 his men / and they dyd suche dedys of armes that
 parforce the almayns were fayne to recule,⁸ & many
 were slayne⁹ and cast¹⁰ to the erthe. when y^e emperour
 saw that he was in a ¹¹great rage, and sayd to ¹²Huon / ²⁴
 'syr, ye are greatly to blame to suffer your vnclēs men
 to sle myne' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I am ryght sory
 of ¹³that they haue done / I am redy to make you
 amendes in what ¹⁴wyse¹⁴ it shall please you': ther-²⁸
 with duke Huon rode to ¹²the¹⁵ abbot his vnclē / and
 in great dyspleasure sayd, 'vnclē, ye haue done ¹⁶ryght
 yll.' ¹⁶when the abbot¹⁷ parseyued Huon, he was ryght
 ioyous¹⁸ / and he enbrasiid hym and sayd / 'fayre ³²

The Emperor
demands what is
the meaning of
the approach of
these men of war.

Huon explains
that the abbot
does not know of
the peace between
the Emperor and
Huon.

The abbot dashes
in among the
Emperor's men,
and slays many
of the Germans.

The Emperor, in
a great rage,
blamed Huon for
these ill deeds.

Huon is sorry,
and ready to
make amendes.

Huon rides to the
abbot his vnclē in
great displeasure.

¹ and to. ² Fol. cli. (xl.) back, col. 2. ³ meane.

⁴ and. ⁵ and therefore. ⁶ surely. ⁷ that.

⁸ retire backe. ⁹ and destroyed. ¹⁰ downe.

¹¹ omitted. ¹² vnto. ¹³ for. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ so euer.

¹⁵ good. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ great euill and ¹⁷ saw &. ¹⁸ ioyfull.

nephue, I thought¹ the emperour had taken you
 prisoner, & wold haue put you to deth / I knew not
*that ye had peas with*² hym.' then he made his men
 4 to retraye³ backe fro the almayns ; ⁴then he and Huon
 together come to⁵ the emperour ; then⁴ the abbot
 saluted hym, and sayde / ' syr, I pray you⁶ pardon me
 in that I haue thus come agaynst you / for sartaynly I
 8 had thought ye wolde haue hanged & slayne my
 nephue, duke Huon of Burdeaux, nor I knew not that
 there was any peas betwene you / therefore, syr, I
 requyre you pardon me / and I offer myselve to make
 12 to you a mendes at the deuyce⁷ of your cunsayle' /
 syr,' quod the emperour, ' I pardon you for the loue of⁸
 luke Huon,⁹ whom I take as¹⁰ my¹¹ specyall frende.'
 Thus as ye haue hard the peas was made betwene the
 16 emperoure and the abbot of Cluny / Then they rode
 together tyl¹² they came to⁵ Cluny, where y^o emperour
 was receyuyd with great ioye / when the good abbot
 had receyuyd the emperour and logyd hym in the
 20 abbey, then he came to⁵ y^o duches Esclaramond,
 and enbracid and kyssed her, and sayd, ' my ryght
 dere nese, your comynge¹³ hether is ¹⁴to me greatly
 agreeable,¹⁴ well I am pleasid to se you hole and in good
 24 poynt,¹⁵ & I am sore dyspleasid for the great ylls¹⁶ and
 pouertyes *that ye haue endured, yf I myght a mended*
 it / but syn it is the wyll and pleasure of our lorde Iesu
 chryst, bothe you and we all ought to be content,
 28 blessed be his name' / ' fayre¹⁷ vncler,' quod the duches /
 ' greatly we ought to thanke and to cheryashe you / for
 ye haue bene father and refuge of my daughter Claryet,
 whome I desyre greatly to se' / then y^o¹⁷ abbot led the
 32 duches¹⁸ into the chambre wheras her daughter Claryet

The abbot
 thought the
 Emperour had
 taken Huon
 prisoner, and
 seeing him alive
 and safe,
 the abbot with-
 draws his men,
 and he and Huon
 go and salute the
 Emperour.
 The abbot asks
 the Emperour to
 pardon him,

and for loue of
 Huon the
 Emperour does so.

The abbot
 received the
 Emperour with
 much joy at
 Cluny,

and welcomes
 most joyfully
 the duchess
 Esclaramonde.

The duchess
 greatly desires to
 see her daughter,

¹ that. ² Fol. clxi. (xli.) col. 1. ³ retire. ⁴ and.
⁵ vnto. ⁶ to. ⁷ aduice. ⁸ that I beare vnto.
⁹ of Bourdeaux. ¹⁰ for. ¹¹ faithfull and. ¹² vntill.
¹³ vnto me. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ greatly acceptable. ¹⁵ health.
¹⁶ euils. ¹⁷ good. ¹⁸ Escleremond.

was, who came and knelyd led¹ downe before her
 mother / ²when y^e duches³ saw her / it was no
 maruayle though she was ioyfull at her harte, for
 when⁴ she sawe her so fayre and so well endroctryned⁵ / ⁴
 ye may well thynke that her ioy excedyd all other /
 she embraced and kyssid her more then .xx. tymis, and
 said, 'my dere daughter, synne I saw you laste, I haue
 endured great⁶ mysery / but thankes be geuen to our ⁸
 lorde Iesu chryst and to his swete mother / your father
 and I ar come together,⁷ and haue peas withe the
 emperour' / then they went into the chambre wheras
 there dyner was aparayled⁸ redy for them, and there ¹²
 dyned together with great consolacyon, and all that
 dyner tyme the duches coude not cast her eyen fro y^e
 regardynge of her daughter Claryet / for the great
 beautye that she saw⁹ in her / and when they had ¹⁶
 dyned, the lordes and knyghtes and squyers cam to se
 the ladyes as they were acustomed to do; and as they
 were there deuysynge,¹⁰ Huon enteryd into the chambre,
 and ¹¹his vncl the abbot¹¹ with hym, and they said to ¹²
 the duches, ¹³' lady, ye muste come to ¹² the emperoure
 and brynge your daughter with you, for he desyrethe
 greatly to se her.' then the lady, who was redy to do
 her husbondes commaundement, whente into y^e hall, ²⁴
 and her daughter with her, where as they founde
 the emperour, who receyuyd them with great ioye / and
 toke the young lady Claryet in his armes & kyssed her
 swetely, and sayd / 'my ryght dere daughter, your ²⁸
 comyng hether is to me ryght agreable¹⁴ / god parfome
 in you *that* ¹⁵ fayleth;¹⁵ as for beaulte ye fayle¹⁶ not' /
 'Huon,' quod the emperoure, 'great graces¹⁷ ye ought

and is indeed
 joyful to find her
 so beautiful and
 good.

They dine all
 together;

the duchess
 cannot take her
 eyes off Claryet.

Huon tells the
 duchess the
 Emperor desires
 to see Claryet.

The Emperor
 embraces her,
 and praises her
 beauty.

¹ so in text. ² and. ³ her mother.

⁴ Fol. cli. (xli.) col. 2. ⁵ educated. ⁶ pouertie and.

⁷ in sauegard. ⁸ prepared. ⁹ and perceiued.

¹⁰ together. ¹¹⁻¹¹ the good abbot his vncl. ¹² vnto.

¹³ Faire. ¹⁴ acceptable. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ which wanteth.

¹⁶ want. ¹⁷ thanks.

to render to¹ our lorde Iesu chryst, that he is so
 fryndely to¹ you as to sende you such a chyld as
 this lady is here before me, for I thynke that of beauty
 4 this day there is no lady nor damosel² leuing in this
 world that may³ compare *with* your 'doughter' / 'syr,'
 quod Huon, 'I pray to⁵ god to parfourme⁶ that⁷
 she wantethe' / great pleasure had the emperoure to
 8 regarde⁸ the damoyzell, and so had all other⁹ that were
 there present / thus as ye haue hard, the emperoure was
 reseyued at Cluny / & was greatly feasted by y^e abbot
 there, for as sone as the emperoure was come thether,
 12 the¹⁰ abbot sente ouer all the cuntre for ladyes and
 damosels to feste the emperoure / ¹¹ there they were a¹²
 .iii. dayes with great iustis and sportes / ¹¹ when they
 departed there was nother lady nor damoyssel but that
 16 the emperoure gaue her some gyfte / the fourthe daye
 after that the emperour had hard mas,¹³ and his¹⁴
 caryage redy, then he and duke Huon, and the duches
 Esclaramonde and Claryet her doughter, departed fro
 20 Cluny, & with them the good abbot who brought them
 to¹⁵ Burdeaux / for he louyd so moche¹⁶ Huon and the
 Duches and Claryet whome he had brought vp, that he
 wolde not abandon them so sone; Huon sent barnard
 24 before to¹⁷ Burdeaux, syngnyfyenge¹ them of the city
 of the emperours comyng and his, and of the peas
 made betwene the emperour and hym / Barnard
 departed and was wel receyuyd at Burdeaux; then he
 28 assemblenyd together all the burgesses of the citye, and
 shewed¹ them of y^e emperours comynge thether, and
 withe hym duke Huon and the duches Esclaramond
 and claryet theyr doughter, and of the peas that

The Emperor tells
 Huon that he
 ought to render
 great graces to
 our Lord Iesus
 Christ for all his
 goodness to him.

The abbot sends
 all over the
 country for ladies
 and damsels to
 entertain the
 Emperor.
 For three days
 they have iousts
 and sports,
 and when they
 depart the
 Emperor gave
 each lady some
 gift.
 On the fourth day
 the Emperor and
 Huon, Esclara-
 monde and her
 daughter, and the
 good abbot set out
 for Bordeaux.
 Huon sends
 Barnard on first
 to warn the city
 of their coming.

He is well
 received, and
 when he has told
 his news to the
 burgesses,

¹ vnto. ² that is. ³ is able to.

⁴ Fol. clxi. (xli.) back, col. 1. ⁵ vnto our Lord.

⁶ in her. ⁷ which. ⁸ behold.

⁹ Lords, Ladies, and Damsels. ¹⁰ good. ¹¹ and.

¹² omitted. ¹³ Seruice. ¹⁴ baggage and.

¹⁵ vnto the Citie of. ¹⁶ well. ¹⁷ the citie of.

they send
immediately to
Blaye and
Geronell, and over
all the country of
Burdelays;
all the noblemen
and burgesses
hasten to
Bordeaux to
receive their
Duke.
They ride out on
horseback to meet
him;

they salute the
Emperor,

who delivers to
them their
rightful lord,
quit of fealties
and homages.

They praise the
Emperor for his
justice to them
while they were
under him.

The Emperor is
joyful to be so
praised before
Huon.

They all ride in
state through the
streets to the
palace.

The streets are
well adorned,
and in the
windows are
ladies and
maidens singing
melodiously.

was made betwene the emperour and¹ Huon / thes
newes were sent incontynent to Blaye and Geronyll-
and ouer all the countre of Burdelays / ²then all noble,
men as well as burgesses came hastily to³ Burdeaux for ⁴
to receyue theyr ryghtfull lorde, duke Huon. ²when
they were there assemblid, they mun⁴ted on⁵ theyr
horses and rode forthe to mete the emperour and duke
Huon theyr naturall lorde / they were together a ⁶.vi. ⁸
thousande horses / when they aproched nere to³ the
emperoure, they saluted hym, to³ whome the emperour
sayd openly / ' al ye syrs, noble men & burgesses that
hathe before this time made to³ me feaulte and ¹²
homage / I delyuer you quyte in to the handes of your
ryght naturall lorde, as ye haue bene before tyme /
and I quyte clerely your homages & fealties done to³
me' / then they all thanked the emperour of his good ¹⁶
iustyce and reason that haue alwayes done to³ them in
the seazon whyles they were vnder hym / the emperour
was⁷ ioyfull that they so praysed him before duke
Huon ; ²then they cam to³ duke Huon and to the ²⁰
duches⁸ and to Claryet,⁹ & dyd to³ them theyr
reuerence acordyng ; thus they cam to³ the citeye of
Burdeaux, wheras they were ioyfully receyued, & a
clothe of estate was borne ouer¹⁰ the emperour, vnder ²⁴
the which he rode, styl holdyng Huon by the hand,
tyll ¹¹ they came to³ the paleys / the stretes were
strawed with grene herbes and russes, and hangyd
rychely / the wyndowes garnysshed with ladies and ²⁸
damoyseles, burgesses / and maydens, melodyously
syngynge / wherof the emperoure was⁷ ioyfull / the
children rynnynge in the stretes² cryenge nowell¹²
for¹³ ioye¹⁴ that they had of the comynge of theyr ³²

¹ Duke. ² and. ³ vnto.

⁴ Fol. clxi. (xli.) back, col. 2. ⁵ vppon. ⁶ about.
⁷ right. ⁸ Escleremond his wife. ⁹ their Daughter.
¹⁰ before. ¹¹ vntill. ¹² noel, noel. ¹³ the great

¹⁴ and mirth.

lorde & lady; when they were come to¹ the palays /
 they alyghted and wente to theyr chaumbers redy
 apoynted for them / yf I wolde reherse y^e ioyes and
 4 sportes and solemynytes that was made at² Burdeaux
 it shulde be noyfull³ and ouer longe to declare it / for
 the feaste⁴ was suche that no man as then leuyng had
 sene any suche, the⁵ which endured⁶ .viii. dayes /
 8 duringe the whiche tyme the emperoure declared to¹
 them of that countre the peas that was made betwene
 hym and duke Huon, and howe he wolde deluyer
 all his londes⁷ in to his handes, and clerely aquyte
 12 euery man of theyr feaulte & hommage to hym made,
 whereof euery man was ioyfull / & on⁸ the .ix. daye
 that the emperour shuld depart, he called duke Huon
 to¹ hym, and sayd, 'my ryght dere frend, he that
 16 I loue best in this worlde, if any warre or busynes
 hap to fal to¹ you / let me haue knowlege therof /
 and I shall send you .xl.M. men of armes and myselfe
 in parson to come and⁹ ayde¹⁰ you' / 'syr,' quod Huon,
 20 'of y^e courtouse that ye offer me, I¹¹ thanke you, and
 alwayes I shal repute myselfe as your trewe seruant
 & feythfull frend.' Then the emperour went to the
 duches¹² and toke his leue of her, and of¹³ Claryet her
 24 doughter, and¹⁴ kyssed them at his departyng, and so
 he dyd all¹⁵ other ladys and damoyssellis, and gaue
 eche¹⁶ of them some gyfte; he gaue ryche gyftes to¹
 the duches and to her doughter / ¹⁷then he toke his
 28 leue and mounted on⁸ his horse, and so issued out of
 the towne¹⁸ / duke Huon & the¹⁹ abbot of Cluny
 conueyed hym a²⁰ .ii. leges, then they toke ther leue²¹

On reaching the palace they go to the chambers ready for them,

and for eight days there is such rejoicing as no man living had ever seen before.

On the ninth day the Emperor takes leave of Huon,

and promises to aid him in person with men of arms if ever Huon shall need him.

Huon thanks him, and will ever be his true servant and faithful friend.

The Emperor takes leave of the duchess and her daughter, and gives them rich gifts; to each of the other ladies he gives some gift.

Duke Huon and the abbot accompany him for two

¹ vnto. ² the noble Citie of. ³ too tedious.
⁴ and cheere. ⁵ Fol. cxliii. (*should be* cxlii.) col. 1.
⁶ for the space of. ⁷ and Signiories. ⁸ vpon. ⁹ to.
¹⁰ and succour. ¹¹ hartely. ¹² Escleremond.
¹³ the faire Ladie. ¹⁴ embraced and. ¹⁵ the.
¹⁶ euerie one. ¹⁷ and. ¹⁸ citie of Bourdeaux and.
¹⁹ good. ²⁰ about.

²¹ of the Emperour and of his Lords and Knightes.

leagues, and then return to Bordeaux. When he had sojourned there eight days, Huon visited all his towns and castles; he returned to Bordeaux, and remained there a month.

Huon reminds his wife how Oberon has given him all the realm of Fairyland, and made him promise after four years had passed to go to him, to be put in possession of the realm.

If Huon fail to go Oberon will utterly destroy him, and now, therefore, it is necessary for Huon to go. He leaves his wife in Barnard's care, and his daughter in that of the abbot.

Huon leaves with the abbot his riches and precious stones as dowry for his daughter.

and returned to¹ Burdeaux / then after that duke² Huon had sojourned there an³ .viii. dayes, he rode to⁴ Geronyl and to Blames, and to⁵ all other townes and castelles, where he was receyuyd with great ioy,⁴ and⁴ set offycers in them / then he retourned agayne to⁵ Burdeaux to the duches⁶ his wyfe / & after that he taryed there³ a monethe / duke Huon deuysed with his wyfe in the presence of the⁷ abbot his vncler, & of⁸ Bernarde,⁸ & sayd, 'my ryght dere wyfe, he that rememberethe not the goodnes⁹ done to¹ hym, may be reputed as vncourtoys;¹⁰ I say it bycause ye know well that kyng Oberon hath done¹ vs great good, & hath¹² delyueryd vs out of many great parelles of deth, and as ye sawe but late by the .ii. knyghtes that rescued you fro the dethe and fro the parell¹¹ that ye were in / and ye knowe well¹² the last tyme that kyng Oberon¹⁶ went¹³ fro Burdeaux, he gaue me all his realme of the Fayry / & the pusaunce that he hath there / and he made me to promyse¹⁴ that after that .iiii. yeres were passed that I shulde come to¹ hym, and *that* he wolde²⁰ then put me in pecessyon of his realme / and he sayd that yf I fayled my day he wolde vterly dystroy me / ye know¹⁵ what hath fallen to¹ me or¹⁶ this by brekyng of his commaundement / and therefore, dere lady and²⁴ wyf, it is necessary that I go to¹ hym; ¹⁷ I shall leue you with Barnarde, who shall haue the keypyng of my londes & of you / and as for my daughter, I wyl leue her with the abbot here, myn vncler, / who I desyre²⁸ here before you; that he wyl kepe & gouerne my daughter Claryte / and with hym I wyl leue all my ryches and precyous stones that I brough with me / to the entent to mary her so¹² it be to a man of great³²

¹ vnto. ² omitted. ³ about. ⁴ and mirth.

⁵ vnto the Citie of. ⁶ Escleremond. ⁷ good.

⁸ his Coozen. ⁹ Fol. cxliii[ii]. col. 2. ¹⁰ vngratefull.

¹¹ daunger. ¹² that. ¹³ departed. ¹⁴ hym.


¹⁵ well. ¹⁶ before. ¹⁷ and.

valure / but I wyll not that she be maried to¹ any
 parsons for riches, but a parsons that is worthy² I
 wolde shuld haue her / for she hath and shall haue
 4 ryches ynoughe for her selfe and for a man of great
 auctoryte' / 'fayre nephue,' quod y^e abbot, 'your
 goynge shal be to³ me dysplesant⁴ yf I myght amende
 it / yf god wyll no man leuyng shall haue your
 8 doughter my nece in maryage, without⁵ he be a man of
 hye parentage and garnysshed with vertues and good
 maners; and as for your ryches⁶ she shall not nede to
 ha⁷ue any therof, for I haue treasure⁸ ynoughe to mary
 12 her noblye.

She is not to
 marry a man for
 his wealth, but for
 his worthines.

The abbot has
 enough treasure
 himself to dower
 Clarist richly,
 and does not
 therefore need
 Huon's riches.

¶ How Duke Huon deuysed with the duches
 his wyfe of his departynge / and how she
 sayd she wold go with hym, and how he
 16 lefte his doughter and lond⁹ in the keypyng
 of his vncler, the¹⁰ abbot of Cluny, & of
 Barnarde his cosyng. Ca. C.lii.

20  Hen the duches¹¹ hard her husbonde
 the duke make his deuyses to go to¹
 kyng Oberon, ye maye well byleue¹²
 she had great dolour¹³ at her hart, and
 then all wepyng she kneled downe
 24 before her husbonde, and sayd, 'my ryght dere lorde,
 and¹⁴ god wyll ye shall not go one fote but that I wyll
 go with you / yf ye take any yll or anoyauce I wyll
 haue¹⁵ my part / ¹⁶yf ye haue any good aduenture I
 28 wyll¹⁷ part with you; ¹⁸for without me ye shall not

The duchess was
 sore grieved to
 think of Huon's
 departure, and
 begs him to
 take her with
 him.

She will share
 with him both
 fair aduenture
 and ill fortune.

¹ vnto. ² and valiant. ³ vnto after displeasing.

⁴ displeasing. ⁵ except. ⁶ pearles and Ieweles.

⁷ Fol. cxliiii[ii]. back, col. 1. ⁸ and ryches.

⁹ and Signories. ¹⁰ good. ¹¹ Escleremond had well.

¹² that. ¹³ and greefe. ¹⁴ if.

¹⁵ Fol. cxliiii[ii]. back, col. 2. ¹⁶ and. ¹⁷ haue my.

¹⁸⁻¹⁸ omitted.

departe¹⁸ / for your longe absence hath ben ryght harde
for me to endure.' 'fayer lady,' quod Huon, 'I pray
you¹ for bere your goynge, and abyde here with your
doughter, for y^e vyage shal be sore for you to do; here⁴
I shal leue Barnard² and myn vncl, the³ abbot, and
they shal be to⁴ you as faders.' 'syr,' quod she, 'I
shall haue meny ylls⁵ to abyde here without you / I
had rather to indure what so euer god do⁶ send vs to⁸
gether then to abyde here without you.'⁷ thus, as⁸ ye
haue hard,⁹ for eny excusasyon¹⁰ or shewynge¹¹ that
Huon kowde shew to⁴ the duches,¹² he kowde not torne
her fro hyr opynyon, But that she wold in eny wyse¹³
go with him. when Huon sawe that, he sayde, 'my
ryghte dere lady, syn it¹³ plese you¹³ to go with me and
to be contente what so euer god do sende vs, other good
or yll,¹⁴ your companye plesyth me,¹⁵ and I am ryghte¹⁶
ioyous¹⁶ therof' / when the good abbot and Barnard¹⁷
hard¹⁸ the wyll¹⁹ of²⁰ Huon and of the duches Esclara-
monde his wyfe, they were sore displeasyd therwith, yf
they coude in any wyse haue let it²¹ / but they coude²⁰
not turne hym for any thyng²² they coude do / Then
Huon sayd to⁴ the³ Abbot, 'syr,²³ I leue with you my
londes²⁴ and my doughter tyll²⁵ I retourne agayne /
the which shall be as shortely as I maye / But of force²⁴
nowe I am dreuen to go to²⁶ take possessyon of the
realme that kynge Oberon hath geuen¹ me / therfore,
fayre vncl & cosyne Barnarde, to⁴ you I recomende
my doughter, whom I loue enterly, and all my londis²⁸
and synnoryes, I leue all in your keypyng tyll²⁵ my
retourne / and with you, myne vncl, I leue²⁷ my trea-

The voyage will
be a hard one,

but the duchess
would rather
endure anything
than abide with-
out Huon.

As she is so
determined, Huon
allows her to
accompany him.

The abbot and
Barnard are
displeased,
and try to dis-
suade him from
this, but in vain.

Huon recom-
mends his
daughter and
lands into the
keeping of his
uncle and of
Barnard.

¹ to. ² my Coozen. ³ good. ⁴ vnto.
⁵ sorowes. ⁶ shall. ⁷ your company. ⁸ omitted.
⁹ heere before that. ¹⁰ excuse. ¹¹ reason.
¹² his wyfe. ¹³⁻¹³ your pleasure. ¹⁴ euill. ¹⁵ well.
¹⁶ ioyfull. ¹⁷ had well. ¹⁸ and vnderstood.
¹⁹ and pleasure. ²⁰ Duke. ²¹ them. ²² that.
²³ Faire vncl. ²⁴ Signiories. ²⁵ vntill. ²⁶ and.
²⁷ all.

sure¹ and precious stones for the maryage² of my
 daughter, whome I leue in youre kepyng³ / 'fayre
 nephue,' quod the⁴ abbot, 'syn⁴ it is your pleasure, I
 4 shall kepe her as well as thoughe she were myne owne
 chyld⁵.' 'Fayre³ vncl⁶,' quod Huon, 'I pray you that
 the Gryffons fote *that* I brought with me, ⁵send it fro
 me to⁵ y^e yonge kyng⁷ Loys of Fraunce, and salute
 8 hym fro me and present it to⁶ hym to do therwith his
 pleasure' / 'syr,' quod the³ abbot, 'or⁷ Ester be come
 your message shall be done' / and ⁸y^e whiche was⁸ done,
 and⁹ the yonge kyng⁸ was ioyfull therof / and caused
 12 it to be hanged in his paleys: and after¹⁰ by kyng⁹
 Phelyp it was hanged in the holy chappell, where as it
 is¹¹ as yette.¹¹ Now let vs leue spekyng¹⁰ of the Gryffons
 fote and retourne to our¹² mater.

Huon requests
 the abbot to send
 the griffin's foot
 to the young king
 Loys of France
 as a present.

This was done,
 and the young
 king, much
 delighted at the
 gift, hung it up
 in his palace.
 King Phillip after
 caused it to be
 hung in the holy
 palace, where it is
 to this day.

16 ¶ How Huon toke leue of his daughter and
 of the³ Abbot his vncl⁶, and of Barnard his
 cosyn, and enteryd into the ryuer of geroune,
 and the duches with hym, and of the strange
 20 fortunes that they hade. Ca. C.liii.

24 **W**hen the³ abbot and Barnard had well
 vnderstonde Huon and had hard his
 wyll¹³ / they answered, that as for his
 londes¹⁴ and for his daughter he shulde
 not nede to care / but they sayd it
 greatly dyspleased them, the vyage that they were in
 mynd to do / but syn it was his pleasure so to do it.
 28 was reason that they shuld be content / ¹⁵then Huon¹⁶
 ordeyned that Barnarde shulde make redy a lytel
 shyppe, aparayled and garnysshed with vytayles and

The abbot and
 Barnard promise
 to take good care
 of Huon's lands
 and daughter,

but are sorry that
 he must under-
 take this voyage.

Huon ordered
 Barnard to pre-
 pare a little boat
 to take them
 down the river
 Garonne,

¹ treasure *after* precious stones. ² Fol. cxliiii. col. 1.
³ good. ⁴ seeing. ⁵⁻⁵ may be sent vnto. ⁶ vnto.
⁷ before. ⁸⁻⁸ that being. ⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ afterwards.
¹¹⁻¹¹ vntill this day. ¹² former. ¹³ and pleasure.
¹⁴ and Signiorias. ¹⁵ and. ¹⁶ he.

and a great ship
to be ready at its
mouth.

Huon takes with
him six knyghtes
and a dozen
servants.

He and Esclara-
monde embrace
Clariet,

and can speak no
word, so great is
their grief at
leaving her.

Clariet herself
makes pitiful
complaint.

The abbot gives
Huon a hallowed
stool for a parting
gift.

They sail down
the Garonne in
the little boat,
and at the mouth
embark in the big
ship.

other thynges neces¹sary, and that another great shyp
shuld² be made redy at the mouthe of the see to enter³
it when they were out of the ryuer of Geroune / the
whiche thyng was done / then he toke .vi. knyghtes ⁴
of his owne⁴ and a dozen saruautes / and when Huon
sawe euery thyng redy and had shewed his enterpryse
to⁵ his noble⁶ men and to the men of his countre, and
that euery thyng was redy,⁷ then he toke his doughter ⁸
in his armes and kyssed her more then .x. tymes, and
in lyke wyse so dyd Esclaramond her mother, and her
hart was so closed with sorowe⁸ that she coude speke
no word / for the departyng fro her doughter / ye may ¹²
well thynke *that* great was the sorowe there at theyr
departyng, for he that had bene there and sene the
doloure and petefull complayntes that the lady Claryet
made for the departyng of her father and mother with ¹⁶
whome she had not bene no longe season, there is not
so harde a harte but that nedys⁹ must haue taken parte
of her sorowe / for there was neuer sene so heuy a
departyng. Then Huon, all wepyng, embrased y¹⁰ ²⁰
abbot, his vncl / who gaue Huon at his departyng a
halowed stoole, the which after dyd good saruyce to⁵
Huon and to Esclaramond. Also Huon toke leue of
Barnard¹¹ / then y⁶ duches sayd to⁵ the abbot & to ²⁴
Barnarde / 'syr, to⁵ you two I do recomende my
doughter' / thus Huon departed / ¹²they went to the
posterne, and there they founde redy theyr lytell shyp
and entered into it / & so made sayle downe alonge the ²⁸
ryuer of Geround, and when they came to the mouthe
of y⁶ see they toke theyr great shyppe and so made
sayle and had good wynd, so that shortely they were
far of fro any lond, & were in the hye se¹³ the space of ³²

¹ Fol. cxliii. col. 2. ² to. ³ into.

⁴ of his owne *after* seruaunts. ⁵ vnto. ⁶ omitted.

⁷ furnished. ⁸ and greefe. ⁹ he. ¹⁰ good.

¹¹ his Coozen. ¹² and. ¹³ for.


.vi. dayes,¹ and on² the .vii. daye a wynde arose with
 suche an orryble tempest that they were dreuen into
 the great spanysse see, and were so far fro any
 4 londe that they wyst not where they were / and euer
 the tempeste encreasyd in such wyse that there was
 neuer none suche sene nor hard³ before / the waues
 were lyke mountaynes, and lyke to a swallowed in⁴ the
 8 shyp / so *that* som tyme there entered into the shypp
 a tonne of water at ones.

With a fair wind
 they sail for six
 days.

On the seventh
 a great storm
 drives them into
 the Spaniah sea;
 they are so far
 from land, they
 know not where
 they are.

¶ How Huon lost all his men, and the shyp
 braste,⁵ and howe he & the duches sauyd
 12 themselfe on² a borde, and came⁶ and
 aryued at the castel of the monkes.

Ca. Cliiii.

16  Hen⁷ Huon⁸ and the duches⁹ his wyfe
 sawe¹⁰ this tourment so great & so
 horryble,¹⁰ they were in great fere of
 dethe / ¹¹ they complayned greatly¹²
 theyr doughter Claryet whom they
 20 had leftte at Burdeaux. Then Huon, who had with
 hym in his bag .ix. of his good¹³ precyous stones, he
 drewe out two of them, and knewe the vertue and
 bounte of them, ¹⁴ he toke¹⁴ his wyfe one of them
 24 and sayde, 'my dere¹⁵ wyfe, holde this stone in your
 hand and haue no fere / for the vertue of the stone wyl
 not let you perysshe, nor me nother' / he that had hard
 the cry and lamentacyons that the maryners made
 28 wolde haue had petye¹⁶ of them, for they sawe well
¹⁷ they must be perysshed¹⁷ / Huon and Esclaramonde

Huon and his wife
 are in great fear
 of death :

but the knight
 remembers that
 the virtue of the
 precious stones in
 his hand will
 preserve them.

¹ Fol. cxliiii. back, col. 1. ² vppon. ³ of. ⁴ vp.
⁵ brake. ⁶ same in text. ⁷ Duke. ⁸ of Bourdeaux.
⁹ Escleremond. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ these great and suddaine tempests.
¹¹ and. ¹² for. ¹³ deere. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ and gaue.
¹⁵ and louing. ¹⁶ and compassion.
¹⁷⁻¹⁷ that they should all perish and.

were on¹ ther knees sore wepyng, holdyng ech other
²by the hand, humbly prayng to our lorde Iesu
 cryst to haue pete and compassyon of them, and to
 bryng them to³ sum port in saue garde of ther lyues. ⁴
 great & horryble was the tempest, & long enduryde /
 so that the helme, mast, and saylles ⁴all to brast⁴ /
 and when the shyp was without a sterne to gyd yt, the
 great vaues enteryd in⁵ so that the shype was full of ⁸
 water, wherby it was constrayned to synke into the
 see, so⁶ that it was all couered with water, & all that
 were within⁷ drowned and perysshed excepte Huon
 and Esclaramonde, who sate together on¹ a table ¹²
 flotyng vpon the see / so that by the grace of ⁸god
 and⁹ bounte¹⁰ of the presyous stones that was⁷ on¹
 them they were saued / and when they sawe theyr
 shyp all to peces and theyr men drowned,¹¹ and them ¹⁶
 selfe flotyng on¹ the see / wherof Huon had suche
 sorowe¹² that¹³ petye it was to se hym, and sayde / 'a,
¹⁴very god,¹⁴ why was I euer borne into this world /
 when I am so enfortunat that I can haue no man ²⁰
 to serue me but at last they ende theyr lyues in my
 seruyce myserably. A, ¹⁵good lorde,¹⁵ why doste thou
 suffer me so longe to leue' / then the duches comforted
 hym as moche as she coude, and sayde / 'a syr, leue ²⁴
 your sorowe / and pray ¹⁶to god and to y^e vyrgyn Mary
 his mother¹⁶ that we myght aryue at some good porte' /
 thus the ¹⁷duches ¹⁸comforted ¹⁹Huon her husband ;
 how be it she was in as great fere, & not without²⁰ ²⁸
 cause / ²¹thus they floted on¹ y^e see greatly bewaylyng

The ship's sides
burst and the
waves enter.

All are drowned
but Huon and
Esclaramonde.

They float safely
on a table.

Huon grieues for
the loss of his
companions.

¹ vpon. ² Fol. cxliii. back, col. 2. ³ vnto.
⁴⁻⁴ burst all to pieces. ⁵ to it. ⁶ in such sort.
⁷ were. ⁸ our Lord. ⁹ by the great. ¹⁰ and vertue.
¹¹ and perished. ¹² and greefe at his heart.
¹³ great. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ good Lord. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ my God.
¹⁶⁻¹⁶ vnto our Lord God for his mercie and his grace, and
 to haue pittie and compassion of va.
¹⁷ noble. ¹⁸ Escleremond. ¹⁹ Duke. ²⁰ a.
²¹ and.

the dethe of theyr men whome they saw perysshe before
 theyr eyen. Then Huon, as fare of as he myght se, he
 sawe a castell stondynge on¹ a rocke, the which semyd
 4 darke & blacke; ²then he lauded³ god, prayenge hym
 deuoutly⁴ to brynge hym⁵ thether in saue⁶ gard.
 then the see was peasyble / and the tempest sessed /
 and the wynd fresshe, the whiche draue them in a
 8 short space to⁷ y^e porte vnder the rocke: and when
 they were nere to the londe Huon and the duches
 waded to⁷ the londe, holdynge eche other by the
 hand: when they were on¹ the drye londe they knelyd
 12 downe and lyfte vp theyr eyen to⁷ the⁸ heuen, and
 made theyr deuout prayers to⁷ our lord Iesu chryst,
 desyrnge hym to haue petye and compassion of the
 sowles of his⁹ men that he¹⁰ sawe drowned¹¹ / then they
 16 rose vp & sawe a lytell pathe¹² to the castell warde¹² /
 they entered into¹³ the waye¹³ / ²when they came nere⁷
 the castell they sawe a great ryuer goynge¹⁴ rounde
 a bought¹³ the castel¹³ / and saw¹⁵ the castel¹⁶ of a⁸
 20 marueylous¹⁷ beautye, thynkyng¹⁵ they neuer sawe no
 suche before / the towres were couered with gleterynge
 golde, shynynge so bryghte as though the sonne¹⁸ had
 shone¹⁸ theron: also they sawe an auncyent church
 24 ioynng to the castell with a goodly steple full of
 belles / the whiche began to sowne, wherof Huon had
 great maruayle / for he saw nother man nor woma
 comynge nor goynge / and when he had well regarded
 28 y^e castell he came to⁷ the gate and saw how¹⁵ there were
 .iii. breges to pas or¹⁹ he coude enter: when Huon sawe
 that he said, ' O²⁰ very god,²⁰ in all my lyfe I neuer
 sawe so fayre a castell, he that is lorde therof semeth to

He sees afar off a
 dark and black
 castle on a rock.

He and his wife
 reach land,

and thank Christ
 for their preserva-
 tion.

The castle is very
 beautiful: a great
 river goes round
 about it:

the towers are
 covered with
 glittering gold.

A church is had
 by, bells ring out
 from the steple.

Three bridges are
 to be passed
 before the castle
 is entered.

1 vpon. 2 and. 3 and praised our Lord.
 4 humbly. 5 them. 6 Fol. cxliiii. col. 1. 7 vnto.
 8 omitted. 9 their. 10 they. 11 and perished.
 12-13 way lying straight towards the castle and. 13-13 it.
 14 running. 15 that. 16 was. 17 great.
 18-18 did shine. 19 before. 20-20 good Lord.

be a great¹ man / for yf there were within it² .xl. men
to kepe it and garnysshed with vytailes, it wold neuer
be wonne for any man leuyng³ / so long Huon behelde
this castell that he forgate³ his sorow, the castell 4
pleasyd hym so well / and sayd to⁴ the duches⁵ /
‘dame,⁶ I byleue suerly this is the castell of Momur
partaynyng⁴ to⁴ kyng Oberon, we maye well ⁷thanke⁸
god that he hath brought vs hether / we shall 8
se hym ; ye knowe well⁹ he hathe promysed to geue
me his realme and all his dyngnyte / ‘syr,’ quod the
duches, ‘I haue hard saye or¹⁰ this that Momure is a
great and¹¹ noble citye, & full of people of all sortes / 12
wherfore ye may well parsayue that this is not that
citye, it may well be that this castell is his’ / ‘Dame,’¹²
quod Huon, ‘the kyng hath that pusaunce that he
may make citye or castell at his pleasure’ / ‘syr,’ quod 16
she, ‘I byleue it well’ / then Huon toke his way to y^e
gate / and as he wente deuysyng¹³ with¹³ Esclaramonde
his wyfe, he sawe before hym .iiii. monkes in whyghte
aparell / & when they came to⁴ hym they sayd / 20
‘Syr duke of Burdeaux, of your comyng^e we are ryght
ioyfull, for a more noble man came not here of a long
season, god bles you and y^e duches your wyfe’ / ‘syr,’
quod Huon, ‘god saue you ; I pray you¹⁴ shewe me 24
what ye be and howe¹⁵ hathe shewed you my name,
and who is lorde and gouernour of this castell’ / ‘syr,’
quod one of the monkes, ‘this castell is ours, and here
is no gouernour but I and my bretherne / we make 28
none answer^e to⁴ any lorde leuyng^e / therfore, yf it
please you to enter, we shall make you as good¹⁶ chere
as we can, ¹⁷and¹⁷ yf it please you to tary ¹⁷here a¹⁷ viii.
or xv. dayes, ye shalbe welcome, & when ye departe we 32

Huon thinks it
must be the castle
of Momur,
belonging to
Oberon.

Esclaramonde
doubts this.

Three monks in
white apparel
salute Huon by
name.

They own the
castle,

and invite him to
eater.

¹ and a noble. ² but. ³ had forgotten. ⁴ vnto.
⁵ his Wife. ⁶ Madame. ⁷ Fol. cxliiii. col. 2.
⁸ our Lord. ⁹ well. ¹⁰ before. ¹¹ a. ¹² Madame.
¹³ the Duchesse. ¹⁴ to. ¹⁵ who. ¹⁶ feast and.
¹⁷⁻¹⁷ omitted.

shal gyue you to cary with you mete and drynke suffy-
 cyent to serue you and your wyfe for xv dayes, & ye
 shall haue nede therof or¹ ye fynd out kynge Oberon' /
 4 'syrs,' quod² Huon, 'of your courtoysy I³ thanke
 you' / then Huon entered into the castell with them,
 and came into a great hall well garnysshed⁴ with ryche
 pyllers of wyghte marble vaulted aboue, and rychly
 8 paynted with ⁵golde and asure, and set full of rych
 precyous stones, y⁶ which cast a great lyght, for by
 reason of the⁶ stonis at mydnyght it was as bryght as
 at none dayes / Huon and Esclaramond thought⁷ they
 12 neuer sawe so ryche a thyng / 'dame,'⁸ quod Huon,
 'this place is delectable' / then they were brought into
 a rych chaumbre wheras the tables were set,⁹ garnysshed
 withe any¹⁰ thyng that a man wold¹¹ wysse for.
 16 Then came in many seruauntes, some brought in the
 basyns of golde garnysshed¹² with precyous stones, and
 some brought in¹³ towell and water / and they gaued the
 water to¹⁴ Huon and to¹⁵ Esclaramonde to wasshe theyr
 20 handes; then they sate downe at the table, and dyd eate
 & drynke at theyr pleasure / for they had there mete
 and drynke at theyr wysse / when they had eten¹⁶ and
 the clothes taken vp, then there was spyces broughte /⁹
 24 Huon dyd eate therof, but Esclaramond wold not¹⁷
 taste therof; then they were brought in to a gardayne
 to sporte them / ⁹when they were there they thought⁷
 they had bene in paradyse, for the swetnes of the
 28 flowers and frutes vpon euery tre / and they harde
 dyuers¹⁸ byrdes synge melodiously / 'syrs,' quod Huon
 to¹⁴ the monkys, 'well ye ought to thanke oure lorde
 Iesu chryst that he hathe geuen you suche a place to
 32 serue hym in / and, syrs, I praye you when it is

Huon and his wife
 are led into a hall
 of wondrous
 grandeur.

Servants wait on
 them with basins
 of gold.

A rich banquet is
 served :

afterwards Huon
 and Esclaramonde
 are brought into a
 beautiful garden.

¹ before. ² Duke. ³ most hartely. ⁴ and adorned.

⁵ Fol. cxliiii. back, col. 1. ⁶ precious. ⁷ that.

⁸ Madame. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ euerie. ¹¹ coulede.

¹² adorned. ¹³ the. ¹⁴ vnto. ¹⁵ omitted.

¹⁶ at their pleasure. ¹⁷ so much as. ¹⁸ kind of.

mydnyght awake me, to the entent that I may ryse to go & here your mataynes¹ when ye synge² it' / 'syr,' quod one of them, 'I shall awake you when³ tyme is that ye may come and here vs.' 'syr,' quod Huon, ⁴ 'therin shall ye do me great pleasure' / then⁴ Huon and Esclaramond were brought⁵ to a ryche chaumbre well aparayled⁶ with clothes of golde & sylke, wherin was a ryche⁷ bed, wherin Huon &⁸ ⁹his wyfe laye in¹⁰ ⁸ together: the chaumbre was¹¹ ryche, for all the nyghte it was as clere as thoughe the chaumbre had ben full of torches, by reason of³ shynynge of the precyous stones / for there was no banke¹² nor poste but that were set ful ¹² of ryche stones / the ryches of that chaumbre can¹³ not be dyscryued / and therin was paynted with gold and asure all the batayles of Troye / ¹⁴In this ryche chaumbre and bed they slepte tyll¹⁵ the oure of mydnyght was ¹⁶ come, ¹⁴ then all the monkes rose, and the bellis ¹⁶ range to matens; ¹⁶ then there came a monke to ¹⁷ Huon and waked hym, and said / 'syr, it is¹⁸ tyme that ye ryse, ¹⁹ it is past mydnyght, make you redy to come and ²⁰ here ²⁰ matens' ²⁰ / then Huon rose and called vp²¹ his wyfe / ²² she arose, & thus they made them redy, and wente to¹⁷ the churche, the whiche was paued with a whight marble powdered with flowre delyses of golde ²⁴ entermedelyd with red roses / and the vault was checkered with Ambre and Chrystall, & at euery poynt a ryche stone / wherby there was such clerenes that there neded no candelight; when⁴ Huon and⁸ Esclara- ²⁸ monde ²³ saw the²³ beautye and ryches of the churche they were sore abashed, and made the syngne of the

A rich chamber is prepared for them.

All the furniture was adorned with precious stone, shining like the sun.

At midnight Huon and his wife attend matins.

The church is resplendent with marble and amber and crystal.

¹ Service. ² doe. ³ the. ⁴ Duke. ⁵ in.
⁶ furnished. ⁷ and sumptuous. ⁸ the Duchesse.
⁹ Fol. cxliiii. back, col. 2. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ faire and.
¹² bench. ¹³ coulede. ¹⁴ and. ¹⁵ vntill.
¹⁶⁻¹⁶ began to ringe to Service. ¹⁷ vnto. ¹⁸ nowe.
¹⁹ for. ²⁰⁻²⁰ our Service.
²¹ the Duchesse Esclermond. ²² then.
²³⁻²³ had well scene and beheld the great.

crosse on¹ theyr forhed for the marueyles that they saw
 there / ²they entered into the quere and kneled downe
 before the hye autler and made theyr prayers to³ god, Huon and Eclair-
ramonde pray to
God to be their
safeguard, and
bring them to
Oberon.
 4 desyringe hym to be theyr sauegarde and to brynge⁴
 them ⁵in suertye to⁵ kynge Oberon / then the abbot
 began ⁶y^e matens,⁶ and red the fyrst lesson ; and when
 he was in the halfe therof he helde his peas, and
 8 departed clene out of the churche / then the pryour
 began another lesson, and in lyke wyse lefte it in the
 myddes and departed out of y^e churche / thus ⁷dyd⁸
 euery monke one after another, and there were .xxxii. Thirty-two monks
take part in the
service: each
reads a lesson,
and departs with
the matins half
unsaid.
 12 monkes, and in y^e myddes of euery lesson and salme
 they departed out of the churche one after another.
 when Huon sawe and hard that he was sore⁹ abashed,
 and sware that or¹⁰ the last monke departed he wold
 16 knowe the cause why they dyd so / ¹¹then he went to¹²
 the last monke, who wolde haue gone out of the
 churche / and Huon toke the halowed stole that he
 had in his bosum, & dyd cast it aboute the monkes
 20 necke, & helde it fast with bothe his handes / when
 the monke saw how he was holden he was sorowfull
 and angery, and dyd what he coude to haue scaped,
 but he coude not / ¹¹when he saw that he coude not
 24 scape, he embraced Huon, and prayed hym humbly
 to let hym go after his bretherne: 'sartaynelly,' quod
 Huon, 'out of my handes ye shall not scape tyll¹³
 ye haue shewed me why ye synge your ⁶matens⁶ after
 28 the maner that ye do, & euer to leue the one half
 vnsonge, and why the abbot and the other monkes do
 departe one after a nother without any word spekyng
 to¹² me, and without¹⁴ ye shew me the truth, with my
 32 sworde I shall stryke your¹⁵ hede to y^e braynes' / then

¹ vpon. ² then. ³ vnto our Lord. ⁴ conduct.
⁵⁻⁶ surely vnto. ⁶⁻⁶ Seruice. ⁷ Fol. cxlv. col. 1.
⁸ did after monke. ⁹ dismayed and. ¹⁰ before.
¹¹ and. ¹² vnto. ¹³ vntill.
¹⁴ except. ¹⁵ thy.

The monk refuses to reply, and Huon threatens to slay him.

sympely the monke fayned to wepe, and prayed Huon to suffer hym to departe, and sayde, 'syr, I am he *that* yesternyght brought you to your chaumbre, and made your bed' / then Huon, who had his sword in the one ⁴ hande and the stole in the other hande, sayde, 'without ¹y* show¹ me my demaunde, shortely I shal stryke of thy hede' / when the monke hard that he was in great fere / and stode styll as though he wold geue none ⁸ answe; ²when Huon sawe that, he lyfte vp his sword to haue stryken hym / but then incontynente the monke ioyned his han³des and cryed for marcy, and promysed hym to shewe hym the trouthe of his ¹² demaunde.

In fear, the monk yields to Huon's request.

¶ How⁴ Huon made semblant to haue slayne the monke, holdyng hym faste with the stole, to the entente he shulde shewe to⁵ ¹⁶ hym the trouthe. Ca. C.lv.



All the monks are evil angels chased with Lucifer from paradise.

Hen Huon put vp his sworde, and the monke began to speke, and sayde / 'syr, know for trouthe that al we that ²⁰ be here ar of the yll⁶ aungelles that were chasyd out of paradyse with lucyfer, who by his pryde wolde compare to⁷ god / he made vs beleue *that* we shuld be as ²⁴ good as god,⁸ & we byleued him / but as for vs that be here in this howse god was with vs displeasyd, and therby we were condempned to be conuersante abroad in the worlde amonge men and women when we lyste / ²⁸ and some be in lykenes of beres:² some lyke ware-wolfes, and thus we shall be vnto⁹ the day of iudgment, and some other ther be that be tempters of men & women, desyryng to bryng them to dampnacyon / ³²

God has condemned them to various shapes and hateful offices.

¹⁻¹ thou shewest vnto. ² and. ³ Fol. cxlv. col. 2.

⁴ Duke. ⁵ vnto. ⁶ euill. ⁷ with.

⁸ himselfe. ⁹ vntill.

& som ther be in the ayre and foloweth the thonder-
 ynges and tempestes / and some be on¹ the se and
 drowne many a man and perysshe the shyppes wherof,
 4 but late ye were in iopardye / for yf it had not bene
 for the great vertue² that is in the precyous stones that
 ye and your wyfe bereth vpon³ you both ye & your
 wyfe had bene perished for euer / and other ther be
 8 that ar ⁴in the botome of hell, wheras they tourment
 the pouer sowles, and there is Lucifer and they that be
 most yll⁵ with hym, and thoughe they were ones fayre
 now they be fowle and ⁶yll fygured,⁶ and they shall
 12 neuer departe⁷ thense / but we that be here yet we hope
 to come to⁸ saluacyon. ⁹Thus we shall be as longe as
 it please god' / then Huon demaunded the cause why
 they began the lessons in theyr matens¹⁰ and to leue it
 16 in the myddes, and euery monke to depart¹¹ one after
 another. 'Syr,' quod y^o monke, 'our lorde Iesu chryst
 hathe not as yet geuen vs that dyngnyte nor power to
 make an ende of our deuyne seruyce / but we haue
 20 that grace in this world that we haue all our desyres,
 and to be conuersant amonge the people, &¹² as well as
 they of the fayrey / there is nothyng but by wyssh-
 ynge we can haue it incontynent / ¹³when we wyll it
 24 is in oure power to make towne or castell set vpon hye
 rockes closyd with ryuers berynge shyppes / and we
 haue mynsterels, halles, and chaumbers garnysshed and
 ordeyned as ye haue sene herewith-in. Also we haue
 28 wyne and vytayle, and fysshe and flesshe at our plea-
 sure; this castell that ye se and church¹⁴ was yester-
 nyght made by the fayrey / but one owre before¹⁵ ye
 came hether / before¹² here was nother towre nor wall
 32 nor water nor rocke, and nothyng but a fayre grene¹⁶

Huon and his wife
 were in great
 danger from them
 lately, but the
 precious stones
 preserved them.

They still possess
 many of the
 marvel-working
 powers of fairies.

The castle and
 church in which
 they now stand,
 were built in an
 hour on the
 previous day.

¹ vpon. ² and bounte. ³ about.

⁴ Fol. cxlv. back, col. 1. ⁵ euill. ⁶⁻⁶ misfigured.

⁷ from. ⁸ vnto. ⁹ but. ¹⁰ seruice. ¹¹ so.

¹² omitted. ¹³ and. ¹⁴ and church after castell.

¹⁵ that. ¹⁶ great.

The monk fears the abbot will punish him for thus revealing all to Huon.

Huon asks the road to Oberon's land.

When daylight comes, castle and church have vanished, but the monk was still with Huon and Escalaramonde.

The monk will show them the road to Momur, although he longs to escape from them.

medow, the whiche ye shall sone parseyue / and, syr,
 we be tho that hathe the conducte of al the fayrey of¹
 the world. Now, syr, I haue shewed² you that we be
 and all oure secretes the whiche was neuer shewed be-⁴
 fore to² any mortall man / wherby I shal suffer of our
 abbot soche ponysshement that there was neuer so yll
 aduenture *that* fell to² me before / therfor, syr, now I
 ha³ue shewed² you euery thyng, suffer me to departe⁸
 to² my company.' 'Monke,' quod Huon, 'I wyl not
 let the go tyll⁴ thou hast shewed vnto me by what
 maner of way I may go tyll⁴ I haue founde kyng
 Oberon;' thus Huon and the monke talked together¹³
 tyll⁴ it was fayre daylyght / then Huon loked about
 hym and sawe nother castell nor churche, rocke nor
 ryuer, but he sawe⁵ they were in a fayre medow,
 wherof Huon and Escalaramonde were sore abashed¹⁶
 and blessed them, hauynge great maruayle of *that*
 they had sene; then the monke desyred Huon to let
 hym go, 'monke,' quod Huon, 'to drawe or to strogell
 can not auayle the / for thou shalte not scape out of²⁰
 my handes tyll⁴ thou hast shewed me y^o citey of
 Momure, wheras kyng Oberon is' / 'Huon,' quod the
 monke, 'I am content to do it, but fyrst I pray the take
 fro my necke the stole.' 'Monke,' quod Huon, 'thy²⁴
 resonynge can not awayle the / for thou shalte not
 scape fro me tyll⁴ thou hast set bothe me and my wyfe
 nere to³ the citey of Momure, for *thou* shalt go with vs
 fote by fote' / 'well,' quod y^o monke, 'syn it is thus,²⁸
 I am content to fulfill your pleasure / but one thyng
 I say to² you, ye neuer dyd a wyser dede then that ye
 wolde not let me go awaye / for yf the stole were not
 wherwith ye do holde me and the presious stones that³³
 ye haue on⁶ you / elles⁷ ye shuld neuer haue departed
 fro hence / I thoughte to haue begyled you so that ye

¹ in.

² vnto.

³ Fol. cxlv. back, col. 2.

⁴ vntill.

⁵ that.

⁶ about.

⁷ omitted.

myghte haue let me gone my wayes whether I wolde go.' 'Monke,' quod Huon, 'yf I can ye shall not departe fro me tyll¹ ye haue fyrste set me & my wyfe
 4 within the citey of Momure' / 'syr,' quod the monke,
 'that wyll I not do, nor I can not do it thoughe I wolde, but I shall set you both on² y^e moun^t of yrcany,³ and fro thence ye may well se⁵ the citey of
 8 Momure and all the countre of the fayrey, and then I wyll retourne to⁶ my company, who by this tyme are passe the great see of Tartary' / 'monke,' quod Huon,
 'I am contente so⁶ thou' set me⁸ in that plase, wheras
 12 I⁹ may se the citey of Momure.

¶ How the monke bare Huon and Esclaramond ouer hylles & valeyes in the ayer tyl¹ he came in to the countrye of kyng
 16 Oberon. Ca. C.lvi

20 **T**hen the monke toke Huon¹⁰ on his¹⁰ one arme and Esclaramond on² the other, but al wayes Huon helde styll the stole a bought the monkes necke to y^e entente that the monke shuld not begyle hym,¹¹ thus by the fayrey and enchaument the monke bare huon & Esclaramonde to⁵ a hye rocke to rest
 24 them, and fro thence he bare them as fast as y^e byrde flyethe in the ayre / at last they alighted in a fayre medowe / then the monke sayd / 'syr, in yll¹² oure I mette with you, for ye shall cause me to suffer great
 28 payne / and now, syr, I can go no further for ye be¹³ nowe in the londe of kyng Oberon, wheras we haue no pusaunce / but fyrst I wyll brynge you to⁵ your logyng, wheras ye shall reste' / then before them they

The monk takes Huon and Esclaramonde in his arms and carries them to a high rock through the air.

They reach the land of king Oberon,

1 vntill. 2 vppon. 3 Hircania. 4 Fol. cxlvi. col. 1.
 5 vnto. 6 that. 7 wilt. 8 vs. 9 we.
 10-10 vppon the. 11 and. 12 euill. 13 are.
 Q Q 2

and enter a rich
castle.

The monk
vanishes.

No man is in the
castle: after they
have refreshed
themselves in it,
it disappears.

Huon and his wife
wander to the foot
of a mountain,
and ascend it.

A great city lies
on the other side,
and a rich palace.

sawe a castell newly made, the whiche was so fayre
and¹ ryche and stronge that yf I shulde dyscryue it
to the vtter most it were ouer longe to reherse / then
the monke toke² leue of huon³ and lefte hym⁴ in the 4
castell that he had made / Huon sufferid hym to go and
thanked hym of his⁵ courtoysye, the monke sodeynely
vanished awaye they wyst not whether / ⁶then huon
and his⁷ wyfe entered into the castel and came into a 8
ryche chaumbre wel apareiled,⁸ and there they founde
a table set with dyuers metes and drynkes, but there
was no man to speke vnto / then they sate downe at
the table and dyd ete and drynke at theyr pleasure / 12
⁶then they went⁹ thens, and when they were¹⁰ a lytell
paste¹¹ they loked behynde them and saw nother towne
nor castel, wherof they were¹² abashed & recommaunded
themselve to¹³ our lorde ¹⁴Iesu chryste,¹⁴ then they went 16
forth in¹⁵ y^e medowe and coude se nother towne nor
castell, house nor village / nor man to demaunde the
way of: ⁶they went so longe that they came to the fote
of a mountayne, wheron they mounted with great payn 20
and trauayle; ⁶when they were on¹⁶ y^e heyght¹⁷ of the
hyll they rested them / and then within a lytell season
huon sawe before hym apere a great citey, and on¹⁶ the
one syde thereof a fayre and a¹ ryche palleys / the 24
walles and towers of the citey & paleys were¹⁸ of
whyghte marble polysshed, the whiche stone¹⁹ so bryght
agaynst the sonne as thoughe it had bene al of christall /
then Huon sayde to¹³ his wyfe, 'dame,²⁰ yonder, before 28
vs, we may se the²¹ citey of Momure, wheras kynge
Oberon is' / 'syr,' quod Esclaramond, 'our lorde god
hath done¹³ vs a great grace²² that he hath brought

¹ omitted. ² his.

³ and of the Duchesse Escleremond his wyfe. ⁴ them.
⁵ Fol. clvi. col. 2. ⁶ and, ⁷ louing. ⁸ furnished.
⁹ from. ¹⁰ gone. ¹¹ way. ¹² sore. ¹³ vnto.
¹⁴⁻¹⁵ god. ¹⁵ to. ¹⁶ vpon. ¹⁷ toppe. ¹⁸ all.
¹⁹ did shine. ²⁰ Madame. ²¹ noble. ²² in.

vs hether in sauegarde of our parsons / then they went
 forth tyll¹ they cam nere to² the city of Momure / and
 before the citye they sawe a marueylous great ryuer
 4 and³ depe, and two bowe shote in largnes, and⁴ was
 maruaylous plesant to behold / & when they cam to
 thee ryuer syde they founde there a man with a lytell
 wessell awaytynge vpon all them⁵ that wold come to²
 8 the citye to pas them ouer / then Huon and⁶ his wyfe
 entered into the lytel shyppes and saluted the gyder
 therof, but he wold geue⁷ none answeere / but merueyl-
 ously behelde them, & when they wer ouer / the pas-
 12 sanger,⁸ who was named Clarimodes, and he was sone
 to a damoysele of the fayrey / then he demaunded of
 Huon what he and his wyfe were / and sayde, ' Me
 thynke ye be none of the fayrey / wherfore I am not
 16 contente that I haue passed you ouer' / then Huon
 gaue hym none answeere, but went forthe and entered
 into the citye, and as they passid they were greatly
 regardid of them within y^e citye, and sayde one to a
 20 nother it is⁹ maruayle to se these two parsones to¹⁰
 enter into this citye / for kynge Oberon, who lyethe
 seke in his bed, gaue great charge to² Clarimodes that
 no straunger shuld pas the reuer to enter in to this
 24 citye / Huon harde them and was therof ryght sorow-
 full when he harde that the kynge laye syke in his
 bed / so he passed forth and came to² the paleys / euery
 man there beheld hym and his wyfe and had great
 28 marueyle to se any mortal parsons to enter into that
 palays, ¹¹ they were therof abashed & wyste not what to
 thynke, and¹² the same season Malabron and Gloryand
 were walkynge together in y^e hal they behelde¹³ Huon
 32 and Esclaramonde enterynge into the hal and incon-

A marvellous
 river runs before
 the entrance to
 the city;

but a little boat
 awaits them and
 they cross over.

The boatman was
 Clarimodes, son
 of a fairy damsel.

He asks Huon
 who he is.

The people of the
 town wonder to
 see Huon and
 Esclaramonde
 walk through the
 streets.

Oberon is sick.

They enter the
 royal palace.

¹ vntill. ² vnto. ³ verie. ⁴ it.

⁵ Fol. cxlvi. back, col. 1. ⁶ Escleremond. ⁷ them.

⁸ Marrison. ⁹ great. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ and. ¹² at.

¹³ saw.

Malabron and
Gloryand recog-
nize them.

tynent they knew them / and came to¹ them and
embraced them / and sayde, 'A, noble duke Huon and
duches Esclaramonde, ye ar welcome of your comynge,
we are ryght ioyfull' / then Malabron wente fro them ⁴

Oberon hears of
their arrival,

and wente into the chaumbre, wheras y^o kynge laye
seke and said / 'ryght dere syr, your good frend Huon
& Esclaramond his wyfe are come into your hall' / when
²the kynge harde that Huon and Esclaramonde were ⁸

and rises from his
bed.

come, for the great ioye *that* he had, he quyckely rose
out of his bed. Therwith Gloryand / Huon and Esclara-
mond entered into the chaumbre where kynge Oberon
was. ³when kynge Oberon saw them he came to¹ ¹²

He welcomes
Huon and Escla-
ramonde warmly.

them, and sayd, 'My ryght dere frend Huon, and you,
my dere louer Esclaramond, of your comyng I am
ryght ioyfull' / then he embraced & kyssed them bothe
more then .x. tymes, and sayd, 'Huon, my⁴ dere frend, ¹⁶

He will make
Huon king of
fairyland and
Esclaramonde
queen.

for the great trouthe & noblenes that I fynde in you I
shall make you kyng of all the fayrey, and your wyfe
Esclaramonde shall be lady and quene of the same, and
besyde that I wyll geue¹ you⁵ my dyngnyte.' ²⁰

¶ when the kynge had well saluted them then he
sate downe on⁶ a couche & made huon and Esclaramond
to sytte downe before hym,³ then he commaunded
Gloryand that incontynent he shulde feche to¹ hym ²⁴

Oberon takes his
bow and shoots
an arrow.

his bowe, and when he had it in his hand he toke an
arow and shot therwith / then incontynente it semed
that al the world had aryued in the towne and palays /
ther came thetherward⁷ so many knyghtes and ladyes ²⁸

At once the
palace is filled
with fairy knyghts
and ladies.

of the fayrey that all the towne and paleys was full /
when they were all assembeled together in the paleys

Oberon is borne
on a couch into
the great hall.

kynge Oberon commaunded to cary hym into the great
hall in his rych couche / then he commaunded scyience ³²
to be kepte among them all, and then he sayde / 'lordes
and ladyes who be here assembeled all, ye knowe

¹ vnto. ² Fol. cxlvi. back, col. 2. ³ and. ⁴ right.
⁵ all. ⁶ vpon. ⁷ thether.

that euery mortall thyng cannot alwayes¹ endure / I
 speke it for my owne selfe ²who² am sone to a mortall
 man, and was engendered on³ the ladye of the preuye
 4 Ile who can ⁴neuer dye, bycause she is one of the fairy
 engendered of a man of the fayrey and doughter to a
 woman of the fayrey, and where ⁵it was⁵ so that Iulius
 Sesar was a mortall man, therefore it behouethe me to
 8 pas out of this worlde by the commandement of our
 lorde god, who hathe ordeined that it shulde so be. He announces his
 approaching
 death;
 And bycause⁶ duryng the tyme that I haue bene here
 conuersaunt with you / therefore I wyll not leue you
 12 without a lorde / but fyrst in my lyfe dayes I wyll puruey
 you of one, who shall be duke Huon, whome I loue
 well and derely, & also I wyll that his wife, the duches
 Esclaramond, shall abyde with hym / for in no wyse I
 16 wyll separate them asonder: therefore I ordeyne that
 Huon who is here presente be your kynge and lorde,
 & Esclaramond⁷ quene and lady / and fro hensforthe I
 put my realme and dyngnyte into his handes / and I
 20 wyll he vse it as I haue done in my lyfe tyme / howe
 be it kynge Arthur hath sore pressed on⁸ me to haue
 my dignyte⁸ & realme, but I wyll that none shal haue
 it but alonly Huon of Burdeaux, who is here present,
 24 whom I wyl crowne kynge in all your presences. King Arthur has
 pressed Oberon
 in vain to bestow
 the kingdom on
 him.

¶ How⁹ kynge Oberon crowned Huon and
 Esclaramonde and gaue them his realme
 and dyngnite that he had in the¹⁰ fayrey,
 28 and made the peas betwene Huon & king
 Arthur. Ca. Clvi[a].

¹ long. ²⁻² because I. ³ vpon.
⁴ Fol. cxlvii. col. 1. ⁵⁻⁵ as it is. ⁶ of my loue.
⁷ your. ⁸ after realme. ⁹ the noble.
¹⁰ laud of the.



The subjects of
Oberon sorrow-
fully assent.

Oberon places
crowns on the
heads of Huon
and Esclara-
monde, and
delivers to Huon
his horn, napkin,
cup, and armour.

On a mountain
hard by a great
number of men
and tents is seen.

King Arthur and
his men are there:
they have come
too late to receive
Oberon's king-
dom.

Hen all¹ the people of the fayrey,
²knyghtes and ladyes, had well harde
and vnderstonde kyng Oberon, they
were right syrowfull³ that he 'shulde⁴
leue them, and sayde / 'syr, syn it
is your pleasure and that it is your wyll / of reason we
must be content to receyue Huon of Burdeaux for oure
kyng, and dame⁵ Esclaramonde his wyfe for oure 8
quene' / when the kyng vnderstode hys lordes and
people, then he caused to be brought thether .ii.
crownes / y⁶ one was set on⁶ Huons hede and the
other on⁶ Esclaramondes hede / then Oberon sent for 12
his horne / his¹ napkyn and cup / and the good
harnays:⁷ he delyuered them: to⁸ Huon to do with
them his pleasure / great ioye and feast⁹ was made in
the palays of¹⁰ the knyghtes and ladyes of the fayry; 16
then kyng Huon loked out at a wyndowe and sawe on⁸
a mountayne that he past ouer at his comynge thether,
¹¹great nombre of tentes and paulyons. then¹² he sayd
to⁸ kyng Oberon, 'syr, on⁶ yonder mountayne I se¹¹ 20
great nombre of men assemblyd, and many tentes and
paulyons pyghte vp' / 'Huon,' quod kyng Oberon,
'know for trouthe¹³ it is kyng Arthur, who wenethe to
haue my realme and dyngnyte, but he comethe to late / 24
for the promyse that ye made⁸ me ye haue kept,
therefore he faylethe and comethe to late / for yf ye had
not com I had geuen hym my realme and dyngnyte /
I knowe well¹³ he wyll be here sone to se me /¹²he wyll 28
be sorowfull and angery of your comynge hether / but
yf I canne I shall do so moche that ye shall be bothe
in peas and reste, for¹⁴ reason¹⁵ is that he do obey you.'
Therwith kynge Arthure and all his cheualrey entered 32

¹ omitted.

² both.

³ in.

⁴ Fol. cxlvii. col. 2.

⁵ Madame.

⁶ vpon.

⁷ Armour and.

⁸ vnto.

⁹ feasting.

¹⁰ by.

¹¹ a.

¹² and.

¹³ that.

¹⁴ good.

¹⁵ it.

in to¹ Momure, & cam & alyghted at y^e palays, and
 with hym his syster, quene Morgan le feye, and Transelyne
 theyr nese / they came and saluted kynge
 4 Oberon, who receyued them with great Ioye, and
 sayde / 'syr² kynge Arthure ye ³ar welcome, and
 Morgan your syster, and Transelyne your nese / and
 syr, I praye you⁴ shewe me what fayre chylde is that
 8 I se there before your syster Morgan' / 'syr,' quod
 Arthur, 'he is called Marlyn, & is sone to Ogyer
 y^e dane / who hath wedded my syster Morgan, and I
 haue lefte hym in my countre to rule it tyll⁵ I
 12 retourne' / 'syr,' quod kynge Oberon / 'y^e chylde shall
 haue good fortune, he shalbe in his tyme feryd &
 doughted / for Ogyer his father is a good and a
 valyant knyght: And syr⁶ kynge Arthur, ye ar
 16 welcome, & of your comynge I am ⁷ioyous⁷ / I haue
 sent for you to shew you the pleasure of our lorde
⁸Iesu Chryst⁸ that I shall departe out of this worlde,
 and to the entente that ye shulde be contente with⁹
 20 that I haue geuen you¹⁰ in the fayry so moche dyngnye
 and pusaunce, wherwith I desyre you to be content /
 syr¹¹ beholde here duke Huon of Burdeaux and his
 wyte y^e duches Esclaramonde, to¹² whome I haue geuen
 24 my realme and my dingnye, to vse it as I haue done
¹⁰ here before: ¹⁰ and therefore I praye and commaunde
 you that ye wyl obey hym as kynge and souerayne of
 al the fayry, and you to loue¹³ together with good lone
 28 and peas' / when kynge Arthur hard kynge Oberon,
 he answered fersly, and sayd / 'syr, I haue well hard
 you; and ye knowe well that your realme & dyngnye
 ye ¹⁴haue geuen¹⁴ me after your deces, and now I se¹⁵
 32 ye haue geuen it to duke Huon / syr, let hym go into his.

King Arthur comes to Oberon's palace with all his company.

Oberon welcomes them.

Merlin is with the new-comers: he is son of Ogyer the Dane, and Arthur's sister Morgan.

Oberon tells Arthur how his realm has been bestowed.

Arthur is angry at Huon's future.

¹ the Citie of. ² great. ³ Fol. cxlvii. back, col. 1.
⁴ to. ⁵ vntill. ⁶ noble. ⁷⁻⁷ right ioyfull.
⁸⁻⁸ God. ⁹ in. ¹⁰ heretofore. ¹¹ for. ¹² vnto.
¹³ liue. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ gaue. ¹⁵ well.

owne countre and ¹to the¹ citey of Burdeaux wheras
 he hathe lefte his doughter Claryet, and let hym go
 and marry her, for as here he hath no thyng to do ;
 I had rather be clene exyled for euer and chased out of ⁴
 my realme / then I shulde obeye hym or do² hym³
 homage / for he shall haue no ⁴thyng to do ouer me
 without he wyn it with the poynte of the sworde /
 when duke⁵ Huon⁶ harde kyng Arthur of Bretayne, ⁸
 he answered fersly and said / 'kyng Arthur, knowe for
 trouthe for all your wordes and thretenynges, I wyll not
 spare to say to² you that whether ye wyl or not
 it must behoue you to obey and to be vnder me, syn it ¹²
 is the pleasure of my lorde, kyng Oberon, here present,
 or elles ye may departe and go and dwell in your
 countre of Bretayne' / then kyng Oberon, seyng
 apparence of great warre to be moued betwene these ¹⁶
 two kynges, he spake and sayd⁷ he wolde haue theyr
 yll⁸ wyll layd downe & neuer to haue warre betwene
 them ; ⁹then he⁹ sayd to² kyng Arthur / 'syr, I wyll⁷
 ye holde your peas, for if ye speke one worde more ²⁰
 agaynst Huon the souerayne kyng of the fayry, that he
 wolde condempne hym perpetually to be a warwolfe in
¹⁰the se,¹⁰ and there to end his dayes in payne and
 mysery / but yf he wyll beleue hym he wolde agre ²⁴
 them together' / then kyng Arthur stode styll and
 wolde speke no word / then Morgan and Transelyne
 fell down on theyr knees and desyred kyng Oberon to
 haue petye of kyng Arthure, and to pardon hym¹¹ his ²⁸
 yll wyll : ⁹after that Morgan had spoken, then kyng
 Arthur kneled downe, and sayd, 'ryght dere syr, I pray
 you pardon me in that I haue spoken so moche agaynst
 your pleasure' / 'Arthur,' quod ⁵Oberon, 'I wyll well ³²

He will not obey
 the new fairy
 king.

Huon tells Arthur
 that he will force
 obedience from
 him.

Oberon keeps
 peace between
 them : if Arthur
 prove disobe-
 dient, he shall be
 transformed into
 a werwolf.

Arthur yields to
 Oberon, and begs
 forgiveness.

¹⁻¹ vnto his. ² vnto. ³ any.


⁴ Fol. cxlvii. back, col. 2. ⁵ Kinge. ⁶ had well.

⁷ that. ⁸ euill. ⁹⁻⁹ and. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ those parts.

¹¹ of all.

that ye know¹ yf it were not for the loue of your
 syster who hath desyred me to pardon you / elles²
 I wold haue shewed you the power that I haue in the
 4 fayry / the whiche fro hens forthe I do geue to³ duke
 Huon of Burdeaux, & all the dyngnye & pusaunce that
 I haue vsed⁴ all my lyfe.' Then duke Huon ryght
 5 humblye⁶ thankid kyng Oberon of his curtoysye.

8 ¶ Of the ordynaunces that⁷ kyng Oberon
 made before he dyed. Ca. C.lvii.

12  Hen⁸ Oberon had deposed hymselfe of
 his realme and dyngnye, and that he
 had put al his pusaunce into the
 handes of Huon, then he sayde to⁹
 kyng Arthure / 'syr, bycause I desyre
 with all my heart that after my dysces Huon and you
 16 shulde leue together in good peas and loue, I geue you
 all my realme of Boulquant and all the realme that
 Syble holdethe of me, to do therwith at your pleasure,
 and of all the fayryes that be in the playne of Tartare /
 20 and I wyll⁹ ye haue as moche pusaunce there as Huon
 hath here. Prouyded that here before me ye make
 homage to⁸ hym & ²to² that good peas and loue maye
 be betwene you' / then Arthur, Morgan, and Tran-
 24 selyne, and all¹⁰ other lordes¹¹ that were there thanked
 kyng Oberon, and sayd how they neuer hard nor saw
 so rych a gyfte geuen before as that kyng Oberon had
 geuen to¹² Arthur. Then kyng Arthure, in the
 28 presence of⁸ Oberon, came and made homage & kyssed
 duke Huon ²on the mouth / ²then⁸ Oberon and all
 other had therof great ioye bycause of the peas made
 betwene thos two kynges, ¹³great feaste¹⁴ and ioye was

Oberon promises
 to give Arthur
 his land of
 Boulquant,

and all the fairies
 of Tartary are to
 be under his
 control.

Arthur makes
 peace with Huon.

¹ well after ye. ² omitted. ³ vnto. ⁴ in.
⁵ Fol. cxlviii. col. 1. ⁶ ryght humblye after Oberon.
⁷ the noble. ⁸ King. ⁹ that. ¹⁰ the.
¹¹ and Ladies. ¹² vnto kynges. ¹³ and. ¹⁴ feasting.

Oberon's end
approaches.

He calls Huon,
Arthur, Gloryand,
and Malabron
before him.

He tells Huon
how all his
powers devolve
on him,

and bids him
establish a new
abbey where he
himself shall be
buried.

Huon thanks
Oberon humbly.

made in the paleys, for all the moste noble lordes and ladyes of the fayry were there assembelyd, there was great solempnyte made / Thus as they were in this great ioye kyng Oberon, felynge that ¹his last ende ⁴ aproched, ²he knewe y^e oure and day^s / then seyng *that* in his lefe dayes⁴ he had prouyded a kyng for his realme, he⁵ thankyd our lorde ⁶Iesu chryst⁶ of the graces that he had geuen hym in this worlde / then ⁸ he callid before hym Huon of Burdeaux, and kyng Arthur, & Gloryand, and Malabron, and sayd / ' syrs, I aduertise that longe I shall not abyde among you / therfore Huon, for your bountye and noblenes wher- ¹² with alwayes⁷ ye haue bene endowed, I haue chosen you amonge other to haue the keyngye and syngnary / and the mynystacyon of al y^e fayrey as well of the countre of the⁸ warwolfes as of other thynges ¹⁶ secrete, reserued⁹ to be shewed to any¹⁰ men / and also I haue geuen you my dyngnyte and pusaunce to do¹¹ as I haue done in my tyme ; & ¹²therfore, syn¹² I haue thus chosyn you / therfore I wyl that¹³ I depart out of ²⁰ this world / that ye do make a newe abbey of monkes, the which I wyll be set here in this¹⁴ medow¹⁵ before this citey, bycause al my dayes I haue loued this citey / and I wyll that in the church of the same abbey ye do ²⁴ bury my body as rychly as ye shall thynke conuenyent / and I recommaunde to¹⁶ you all suche as hath well serued me, and I wyll¹⁷ ye retayne *them* into your seruyce / when¹⁸ Oberon had said as moch as plesed ²⁸ hym, Huon answerid and sayd / ' dere syr, of the great goodnes and honours that ye haue done to¹⁶ me, I thanke you / and all that ye haue ordeyned or wyll do by the grace of ⁶our lorde Iesu chryst⁶ it shal be done ³²

¹ Fol. cxlviii. col. 2. ² for. ³ day before hour.
⁴ tyme. ⁵ humbly. ⁶⁻⁶ god. ⁷ always after bene.
⁸ omitted. ⁹ and not. ¹⁰ mortall. ¹¹ therewith.
¹²⁻¹² because. ¹³ when. ¹⁴ the. ¹⁵ heere.
¹⁶ vnto. ¹⁷ that. ¹⁸ King.

in suche wyse that my sowle shal bere no charge for it
 at the day of Iugment.' when the lordes and ladyes
 that were there assembeled hard the wordes of kynge
 4 Oberon / and sawe ¹clerely how¹ his last ende aproched
²neere / y^e cryes and clamours that was³ there made
 was⁴ maruel to here, and spesyally ther was suche
 wepyng and cryeng⁵ in the cete that⁴ pete it was
 8 to here,⁶ for they wer aduerteysid how⁷ king Oberon
 drewe faste⁸ to his laste end, who lay in a ryche
 cowche in the myddes of his palayes makyng his
 prayers to⁹ our lorde ¹⁰Iesu cryste,¹⁰ and holdyng Huon
 12 by the hande, and at¹¹ laste¹² sayde, 'my¹³ dere frende
 Huon, pray for me' / & then he made the synge of y^e
 cros¹⁴ recommendyng his sowle to⁹ god, the which
 incontynent was borne in to paradyce by a greate
 16 multytude of angelles sent fro ¹⁰our lord Iesu chryst,¹⁰
 who at ther depertyng made such shynyng and
 clerenes in y^e palays that ther was neuer none suche
 sene before / and there with there was so swete a smell
 20 that euery man thought⁷ they had bene rauysshed in
 to paradyse, wherby they knewe suerly that kynge
 Oberons sowle was saued / when kynge Huon, & kyng
 Arthur, & quene Esclaramonde / Morgan le faye and
 24 Transelyne / and kynge Carahew / Gloryand and
 Malabron / and all other knyghtes and ladyes, ¹⁵when
 they¹⁵ knewe that kynge Oberon was dede / there is
 no humayne tonge can tell the cryes, wepynges, and
 28 complayntes that was³ made there for the dethe of
 kynge Oberon / then his body was taken and borne to
 the plase where his sepulture was deuysed / the whiche
 kynge Huon caused to be made ryght rychely / &
 32 founde there an abbey as kyng Oberon had deuysed.

Oberon dies.

His soul is borne
at once to para-
dise by a great
multitude of
angels.All in the palace
weep bitterly.Oberon is buried
in the new abbey
as he willed
before his death.

1-1 well that. 2 Fol. cxlviii. back. col. 1. 3 were.
 4 great. 5 lamentations. 6 it. 7 that.
 8 neere vnto. 9 vnto. 10-10 god. 11 the. 12 hee.
 13 right. 14 and. 15-15 omitted.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100



